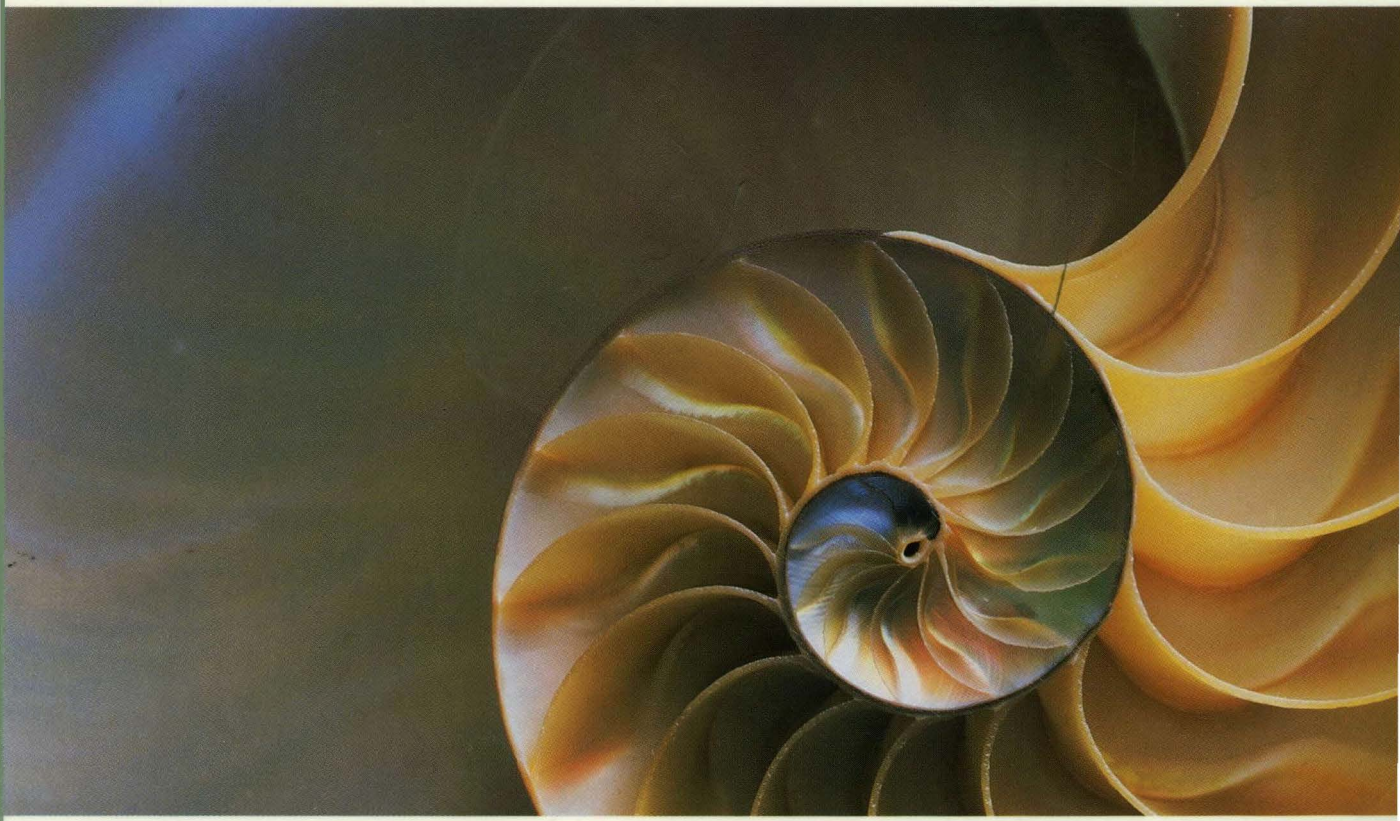


# COHERENT™

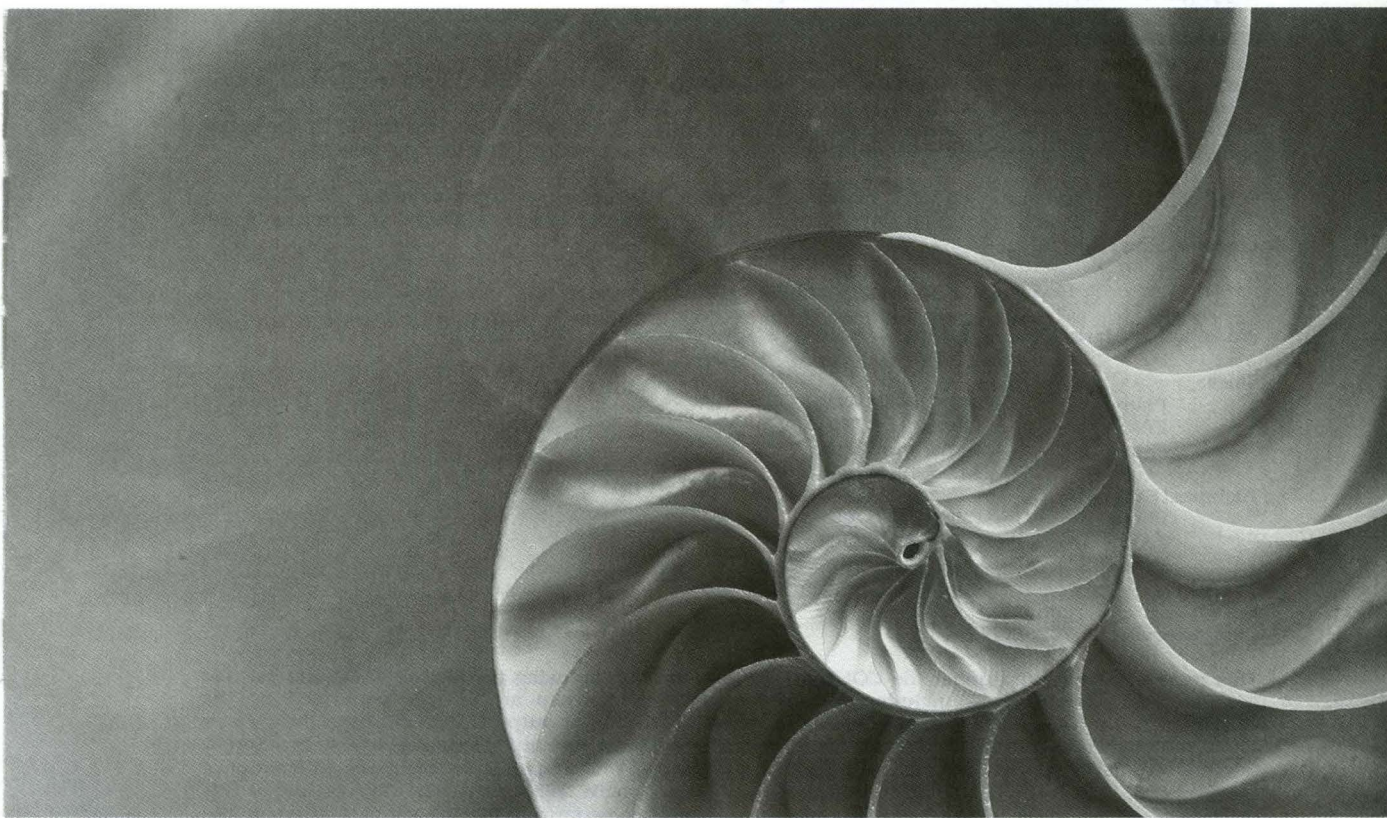
A Multi-User, Multi-Tasking Operating System  
for IBM PC Compatibles.



Mark Williams  
Company

# COHERENT™

A Multi-User, Multi-Tasking Operating System  
for IBM PC Compatibles.



Mark Williams  
Company



Copyright © 1982, 1992 by Mark Williams Company.

All rights reserved.

This publication conveys information that is the property of Mark Williams Company. It shall not be copied, reproduced or duplicated in whole or in part without the express written permission of Mark Williams Company. Mark Williams Company makes no warranty of any kind with respect to this material and disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose.

COHERENT is a trademark of Mark Williams Company. UNIX is a trademark of AT&T. MS-DOS is a copyright of Microsoft Corporation. All other products are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

Revision 8

Printing 5 4 3 2 1

Published by Mark Williams Company, 60 Revere Drive, Northbrook, Illinois 60062.

Sales:

Phone: (800) MARK-WMS  
FAX: (708) 291-6750  
E-mail: uunet!mwc!sales  
sales@mwc.com

Technical Support:

Phone: (708) 291-6700  
FAX: (708) 291-6750  
E-mail: uunet!mwc!support  
support@mwc.com

BIX: join mwc  
CompuServ: 76256,427

This manual was written under the COHERENT operating system, using the MicroEMACS and **ed** text editors. Text formatting — including positioning of PostScript clip art — was performed by the COHERENT edition of the **troff** text formatter, using its PostScript output function. Page design was implemented with custom-written macros written in the **troff** text-formatting language and in PostScript. Capitals are derived from the Golden Bible of Augsburg, and were supplied in encapsulated PostScript form by BBL Typographic, 137 Narrow Neck Rd., Katoomba, NSW 2780, Australia. Typesetting of this manual, from the table of contents through the index, was performed by one script written in the COHERENT Korn shell. Camera-ready copy was printed on a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet IIP printer using the Pacific Page PostScript cartridge.

Printed in the U.S.A.

---

# Preface

---

COHERENT is the work of a large number of exceptionally talented people. The development of a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system is a daunting task. Creating COHERENT took an enormous effort by all involved. The system and manual are dedicated to those who dedicated themselves to COHERENT.

These people include the following:

Jay Alter	Riyaz Asaria	Norman Bartek
Bob Beals	James Behr	Chris Berrios
Luddyne Blue	Barry Bowen	Denise Buirge
Fred Butzen	Henry Cejtin	David Conroy
Allan Cornish	Roger Critchlow	Richard Critchlow
Ella Dashevsky	Stephen Davis	Mimi Diaz
Tom Duff	Mark Epstein	Michael Farley
Charles Fitterman	Charles Forsyth	Kim Fruin
Johann George	Daniel Glasser	Michael Griffin
Walter Grogan	Robert Hemedinger	Scott Hermes
Randall Howard	Owen Jacobsen	Mary Karabatsos
Michael Kaufman	Nancy Kenston	J.T. Kittridge
William Lederer	Irene Lee	Dave Levine
Jeanne Lewis	Karen McBride	Scott Moody
Esther Munoz	Tim Murphy	Asia Negron
Gerson Negron	Steve Ness	Ciaran O'Donnell
Douglas Peterson	Frank Pfeiffer	Norma Reyes
Vladimir Smelyansky	Hal Snyder	Michael Spertus
Julie Stewart	Robert Swartz	Angus Telfer
Trevor Thompson	Diane Tracey	Rico Tudor
Bill Witt	La Monte Yarroll	Jim Yonan

The "port" of the COHERENT kernel to the 80386 was implemented using software provided by Ciaran O'Donnell, Bievres, France.





---

# Table of Contents

---

<b>Introduction</b>	1
Editions of COHERENT	1
COHERENT 286.	1
COHERENT 386.	1
How To Use This Manual	2
The Lexicon	2
Installation.	2
User Registration and Reaction Report	3
Technical Support	3
<b>Using the COHERENT System</b>	5
How Do I Begin?	5
Logging in	5
Special Terminal Keys	6
Try Some COHERENT Commands	7
Giving Commands to COHERENT	8
help, man: Help with Commands.	9
Shutting Down COHERENT and Rebooting.	9
Logging Out	10
Working With Files and Directories	11
File Names	11
Introduction to Directories	12
Path Names	12
ls, lc: Listing Your Directory.	14
cat: Print Contents of a File	15
more: List Files on the Screen	16
mkdir: Create a Directory	16
cd: Change Directory	16
pwd: Print Working Directory	17
mv, cp: Move and Copy Files	17
rm, rmdir: Remove Files and Directories	19
du, df: How Much Space?	20
ln: Link Files	20
File Permissions.	21
chmod: Change File Permissions	23
Creating and Mounting a File System	23
fdformat: Format a Diskette	23
mkfs: Create a File System	24
mount: Mount a File System	24
Using a Newly Mounted File System	25
umount: Unmount a File System.	25
fsck: Check a File System	26
Devices, Files, and Drivers	26
Character-Special Files	27
tty Processing	27
A Tour Through the File System	27
General File System Layout	27
/bin	28
/dev	28
/drv	28



## ii The COHERENT System

---

/etc . . . . .	28
/lib . . . . .	29
/usr . . . . .	29
/u . . . . .	29
Files: Conclusion . . . . .	29
Introduction to COHERENT Commands . . . . .	29
The Shell . . . . .	30
Redirecting Input and Output . . . . .	30
Pipes . . . . .	31
Superuser . . . . .	31
Manipulating Text Under COHERENT. . . . .	32
MicroEMACS: Text Screen Editor. . . . .	32
pr, prps, lpr: Print Files . . . . .	33
nroff, troff: Text Formatters . . . . .	34
Miscellaneous Commands . . . . .	35
who: Who Is On the System . . . . .	35
write: Electronic Dialogue . . . . .	36
mail: Send an Electronic Letter . . . . .	36
msgs: Cumulative Message Board . . . . .	38
grep: Find Patterns in Text Files . . . . .	39
date: Print the Date. . . . .	39
passwd: Change Your Password . . . . .	40
stty: Change Terminal Behavior . . . . .	40
Scheduling Commands For Regular Execution . . . . .	41
Managing Processes . . . . .	42
ps: List Active Processes . . . . .	42
kill: Signal Processes . . . . .	43
Programming Under COHERENT. . . . .	44
Basic Steps in COHERENT Programming. . . . .	44
Create the Program Source . . . . .	44
cc: Compile the Program. . . . .	45
m4: Macro Processing . . . . .	46
make: Build Larger Programs . . . . .	46
db: Debug the Program . . . . .	46
Administering the COHERENT System . . . . .	47
Adding a New User . . . . .	47
System Security. . . . .	48
Passwords . . . . .	48
File Protection . . . . .	48
Encryption . . . . .	48
Dumping and Saving Files. . . . .	49
Back-ups Using ustar . . . . .	49
Back-ups Using cpio . . . . .	50
Restoring Information . . . . .	51
System Accounting . . . . .	52
ac: Login Accounting . . . . .	52
sa: Processing Accounting. . . . .	53
Conclusion. . . . .	56
Introducing sh, the Bourne Shell. . . . .	57
Simple Commands . . . . .	57
Special Characters . . . . .	57
Running Commands in the Background . . . . .	58
Scripts . . . . .	58

## CONTENTS

.profile: Login Shell Script . . . . .	60
Substitutions . . . . .	60
File Name Substitution . . . . .	60
Parameter Substitution . . . . .	62
Shell Variable Substitution . . . . .	64
Command Substitution . . . . .	67
Special Shell Variables . . . . .	67
dot : Read Commands . . . . .	68
Values Returned by Commands . . . . .	68
test: Condition Testing . . . . .	68
Executing Commands Conditionally . . . . .	69
Control Flow . . . . .	70
for: Execute a Loop . . . . .	70
if: Execute Conditionally . . . . .	71
while: Execute a Loop . . . . .	73
until: Another Looping Construct . . . . .	73
case: Serial Conditional Execution . . . . .	73
Summary . . . . .	74
<b>Introduction to MicroEMACS . . . . .</b>	<b>75</b>
What is MicroEMACS? . . . . .	75
Keystrokes: <ctrl>, <esc> . . . . .	75
Becoming Acquainted with MicroEMACS . . . . .	75
Beginning a Document . . . . .	76
Moving the Cursor . . . . .	77
Moving the Cursor Forward . . . . .	78
Moving the Cursor Backwards . . . . .	78
From Line to Line . . . . .	78
Repetitive Motion . . . . .	79
Moving Up and Down by a Screenful of Text . . . . .	79
Moving to Beginning or End of Text . . . . .	79
Saving Text and Quitting . . . . .	79
Killing and Deleting . . . . .	80
Deleting Vs. Killing . . . . .	80
Erasing Text to the Right . . . . .	80
Erasing Text to the Left . . . . .	81
Erasing Lines of Text . . . . .	81
Yanking Back (Restoring) Text . . . . .	81
Quitting . . . . .	82
Block Killing and Moving Text . . . . .	82
Moving One Line of Text . . . . .	82
Multiple Copying of Killed Text . . . . .	82
Kill and Move a Block of Text . . . . .	83
Capitalization and Other Tools . . . . .	83
Capitalization and Lowercasing . . . . .	83
Transpose Characters . . . . .	84
Screen Redraw . . . . .	84
Return Indent . . . . .	85
Word Wrap . . . . .	85
Search and Reverse Search . . . . .	86
Search Forward . . . . .	86
Reverse Search . . . . .	87
Cancel a Command . . . . .	88
Search and Replace . . . . .	88



Saving Text and Exiting . . . . .	89
Write Text to a New File . . . . .	89
Save Text and Exit . . . . .	90
Advanced Editing . . . . .	90
Arguments . . . . .	91
Arguments: Default Values . . . . .	91
Selecting Values. . . . .	92
Deleting With Arguments: An Exception . . . . .	92
Buffers and Files . . . . .	92
Definitions . . . . .	92
File and Buffer Commands . . . . .	93
Write and Rename Commands . . . . .	93
Replace Text in a Buffer . . . . .	93
Visiting Another Buffer. . . . .	94
Move Text From One Buffer to Another . . . . .	94
Checking Buffer Status . . . . .	95
Renaming a Buffer . . . . .	95
Delete a Buffer. . . . .	95
Windows . . . . .	96
Creating Windows and Moving Between Them . . . . .	97
Enlarging and Shrinking Windows. . . . .	97
Displaying Text Within a Window . . . . .	98
One Buffer . . . . .	99
Multiple Buffers. . . . .	99
Moving and Copying Text Among Buffers . . . . .	99
Checking Buffer Status . . . . .	100
Saving Text From Windows . . . . .	100
Keyboard Macros . . . . .	100
Creating a Keyboard Macro . . . . .	100
Execute a Macro Repeatedly . . . . .	101
Replacing a Macro . . . . .	101
Renaming a Macro . . . . .	102
Renaming Macros: A Few Caveats. . . . .	102
Setting the Initialization Macro . . . . .	102
Flexible Key Bindings . . . . .	103
Changing a Keybinding . . . . .	103
Rebinding Metakeys . . . . .	103
Save and Restore Keybindings . . . . .	104
Sending Commands to COHERENT . . . . .	105
Compiling and Debugging Through MicroEMACS . . . . .	105
The MicroEMACS Help Facility . . . . .	106
Where To Go From Here . . . . .	107
<b>Introduction to ed, Interactive Line Editor . . . . .</b>	<b>109</b>
Why You Need an Editor. . . . .	109
Learning To Use the Editor . . . . .	109
General Topics. . . . .	109
ed, Files, and Text . . . . .	110
Creating a File. . . . .	110
Changing an Existing File . . . . .	111
Working on Lines . . . . .	111
Error Messages . . . . .	112
Basic Editing Techniques . . . . .	112
Creating a New File. . . . .	112

Changing a File . . . . .	113
Printing Lines . . . . .	115
Abbreviating Line Numbers . . . . .	115
How Many Lines? . . . . .	116
Removing Lines . . . . .	116
Abandoning Changes . . . . .	118
Substituting Text Within a Line . . . . .	118
Undoing Substitutions . . . . .	120
Global Substitutions . . . . .	121
Special Characters . . . . .	121
Ranges of Substitution . . . . .	121
Intermediate Editing . . . . .	122
Relative Line Numbering . . . . .	122
Changing Lines . . . . .	123
Moving Blocks of Text . . . . .	124
Copying Blocks of Text . . . . .	125
String Searches . . . . .	126
Remembered Search Arguments . . . . .	127
Uses of Special Characters . . . . .	128
Global Commands . . . . .	128
Joining Lines . . . . .	129
Splitting Lines . . . . .	130
Marking Lines . . . . .	130
Searching in Reverse Direction . . . . .	132
Expert Editing . . . . .	132
File Processing Commands . . . . .	132
Patterns . . . . .	134
Matching Many With One Character . . . . .	135
Beginning and Ending of Lines . . . . .	135
Replacing Matched Part . . . . .	136
Replacing Parts of Matched String . . . . .	136
Listing Funny Lines . . . . .	138
Keeping Track of Current Line . . . . .	139
When Current Line Is Changed . . . . .	139
More About Global Commands . . . . .	141
Issuing COHERENT Commands Within ed . . . . .	142
For More Information . . . . .	142
<b>Introduction to the sed Stream Editor . . . . .</b>	<b>143</b>
Getting to Know sed . . . . .	143
Getting Started . . . . .	143
Simple Commands . . . . .	144
Substituting . . . . .	144
Selecting Lines . . . . .	146
p: Print Lines . . . . .	147
Line Location . . . . .	150
Add Lines of Text . . . . .	151
Delete Lines . . . . .	152
Change Lines . . . . .	153
Include Lines From a File . . . . .	153
Quit Processing . . . . .	154
Next Line . . . . .	155
Advanced sed Commands . . . . .	156
Work Area . . . . .	156



Add to Work Area . . . . .	157
Print First Line . . . . .	158
Save Work Area . . . . .	159
Transform Characters . . . . .	162
Command Control . . . . .	163
{ }: Command Grouping . . . . .	163
!: All But . . . . .	164
= : Print Line Number . . . . .	164
Skipping Commands . . . . .	164
t: Test Command . . . . .	165
For More Information. . . . .	166
<b>The C Language . . . . .</b>	<b>167</b>
Compiling C Programs under COHERENT . . . . .	167
Try the Compiler . . . . .	167
Phases of Compilation . . . . .	168
Renaming Executable Files . . . . .	168
Floating-Point Numbers . . . . .	169
Compiling Multiple Source Files . . . . .	169
Linking Without Compiling . . . . .	170
Compiling Without Linking . . . . .	170
Assembly-Language Files . . . . .	170
Changing the Size of the Stack . . . . .	171
Where To Go From Here . . . . .	171
C for Beginners . . . . .	171
Programming Languages and C. . . . .	171
Assembly and High-Level Languages . . . . .	172
So, What Is C?. . . . .	172
Structured Programming . . . . .	172
Writing a C Program . . . . .	173
A Sample C Programming Session . . . . .	174
Designing a Program . . . . .	174
The main() Function . . . . .	175
Open a File and Show Text . . . . .	176
Accepting File Names. . . . .	178
Error Checking . . . . .	179
Print a Portion of a File . . . . .	182
Checking for the End of File. . . . .	183
Polling the Keyboard . . . . .	185
For More Information. . . . .	187
Bibliography. . . . .	187
<b>Introduction to the awk Language. . . . .</b>	<b>189</b>
Using awk . . . . .	189
Program Structure . . . . .	189
Records and Fields . . . . .	189
Command Line Arguments . . . . .	191
Printing with awk . . . . .	192
Printing Individual Fields . . . . .	193
Changing the Output Field and Record Separators . . . . .	193
Printing Predefined Variables . . . . .	193
Redirecting Output . . . . .	194
Formatting Output . . . . .	194
Piping Output . . . . .	195
awk Pattern Scanning . . . . .	195

Special Patterns: BEGIN and END. . . . .	195
Patterns . . . . .	196
Arithmetic Relational Expressions . . . . .	197
Boolean Combinations of Expressions. . . . .	198
Pattern Ranges . . . . .	198
Specifying awk Actions. . . . .	198
Functions . . . . .	198
Assignment of Variables . . . . .	200
Field Variables. . . . .	201
String Concatenation. . . . .	201
Arrays. . . . .	201
Control Statements . . . . .	202
if (condition) else . . . . .	202
while (condition). . . . .	203
for . . . . .	203
break . . . . .	203
continue . . . . .	203
next . . . . .	204
exit . . . . .	204
For More Information. . . . .	204
<b>Introduction to lex, the Lexical Analyzer . . . . .</b>	<b>205</b>
How To Use lex . . . . .	205
Translating Strings . . . . .	205
Remove Blanks From Input . . . . .	206
Trimming Blanks . . . . .	206
lex Specification Form . . . . .	206
Simple Form . . . . .	206
Rules in lex . . . . .	207
Statements in lex . . . . .	208
Groups of Statements . . . . .	209
Using the Same Action. . . . .	210
Patterns . . . . .	210
Simple Patterns . . . . .	210
Classes of Characters . . . . .	211
Repetition . . . . .	212
Choices and Grouping . . . . .	214
Matching Non-Graphic Characters. . . . .	214
More Patterns . . . . .	215
Line Context . . . . .	215
Context Matching. . . . .	215
Macro Abbreviations . . . . .	217
Context: Start Rules . . . . .	217
Separate Contexts . . . . .	218
More About Writing Actions. . . . .	220
ECHO. . . . .	220
Processing Overlapping Strings. . . . .	220
yylex . . . . .	221
Header Section . . . . .	222
Additional Routines. . . . .	223
Using lex With yacc. . . . .	223
Summary. . . . .	224
<b>Introduction to yacc . . . . .</b>	<b>225</b>
Examples. . . . .	225

Phrases and Parentheses . . . . .	225
Simple Expression Processing . . . . .	227
Background . . . . .	229
LR Parsing . . . . .	229
Input Specification . . . . .	229
Parser Operation . . . . .	229
Form of yacc Programs . . . . .	230
Rules . . . . .	230
Definitions . . . . .	231
User Code . . . . .	231
Rules . . . . .	231
General Form of Rules . . . . .	231
Suggested Style . . . . .	232
Actions . . . . .	233
Basic Action Statements . . . . .	233
Action Values . . . . .	233
Structured Values . . . . .	236
Handling Ambiguities . . . . .	237
How yacc Reacts . . . . .	238
Additional Control . . . . .	238
Precedence . . . . .	239
Error Handling . . . . .	240
Summary . . . . .	241
Helpful Hints . . . . .	242
Example . . . . .	243
Where to Go From Here . . . . .	249
<b>bc Desk Calculator Language . . . . .</b>	<b>251</b>
Entry and Exit . . . . .	251
Example of Simple Use . . . . .	251
Simple Statements . . . . .	252
Numbers with Fractions . . . . .	255
The Scale of Numbers . . . . .	255
Addition and Subtraction . . . . .	255
Scale During Multiplication . . . . .	256
Setting the Scale of Results . . . . .	256
Scale for Divisions . . . . .	256
Scale From Exponentiation . . . . .	257
What Is the Current Scale? . . . . .	257
The if Statement . . . . .	257
Using the if Statement . . . . .	257
Comparisons . . . . .	258
Grouped Statements . . . . .	258
Many Statements Per Line . . . . .	259
The while Statement . . . . .	260
Abbreviations in the while Statement . . . . .	260
The for Statement . . . . .	261
Three Parts of the for Statement . . . . .	261
Similarities Between the for and while Statements . . . . .	262
Functions in bc . . . . .	263
Example of Function Use . . . . .	263
Functions Using Other Functions . . . . .	264
Functions That Call Themselves . . . . .	264
The auto Statement . . . . .	264

Programs in a File . . . . .	265
Using a Program From a File . . . . .	265
Using Libraries . . . . .	266
The bc Library . . . . .	267
Summary . . . . .	267
<b>Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor . . . . .</b>	<b>269</b>
Definitions and Syntax . . . . .	269
Defining Macros . . . . .	270
Input Control . . . . .	272
Output Control . . . . .	273
String Manipulation . . . . .	273
Numeric Manipulation . . . . .	274
COHERENT System Interface . . . . .	276
Errors . . . . .	277
For More Information . . . . .	278
<b>The make Programming Discipline . . . . .</b>	<b>279</b>
How Does make Work? . . . . .	279
Try make . . . . .	280
Essential make . . . . .	281
The makefile . . . . .	281
Building a Simple makefile . . . . .	282
Comments and Macros . . . . .	282
Setting the Time . . . . .	283
Building a Large Program . . . . .	283
Command Line Options . . . . .	284
Other Command Line Features . . . . .	285
Advanced make . . . . .	285
Default Rules . . . . .	286
Source File Path . . . . .	287
Double-Colon Target Lines . . . . .	287
Alternative Uses . . . . .	288
Special Targets . . . . .	289
Errors . . . . .	289
Exit Status . . . . .	289
Where To Go From Here . . . . .	289
<b>nroff, The Text-Formatting Language . . . . .</b>	<b>291</b>
What is nroff? . . . . .	291
nroff Input and Output . . . . .	292
Printing nroff Output . . . . .	292
nroff Limitations . . . . .	293
The ms Macro Package . . . . .	293
Using this Tutorial . . . . .	293
The -ms Macro Package . . . . .	294
Text and Commands . . . . .	294
Command Names . . . . .	296
Paragraphs . . . . .	296
Section Headings . . . . .	301
Title Page . . . . .	302
Headers and Footers . . . . .	303
Fonts . . . . .	304
Special Characters . . . . .	305
Footnotes . . . . .	306
Displays and Keeps . . . . .	306

## x The COHERENT System

---

Other Commands . . . . .	308
Introducing nroff's Primitives . . . . .	308
Page Format . . . . .	308
Breaks . . . . .	309
Fill and Adjust Modes . . . . .	310
Defining Paragraphs . . . . .	312
Centering. . . . .	313
Tabs. . . . .	313
Page Breaks . . . . .	313
Macros and Traps. . . . .	314
What Is a Macro? . . . . .	314
Introducing Traps. . . . .	316
Headers and Footers . . . . .	317
Macro Arguments . . . . .	318
Double vs. Single Backslashes . . . . .	319
Designing and Installing Macros . . . . .	320
Strings . . . . .	323
Strings Within Strings . . . . .	324
Number Registers. . . . .	325
Incrementing and Decrementing . . . . .	327
Units of Measurement . . . . .	329
Conditional Input . . . . .	331
Environments and Diversions. . . . .	335
Buffers . . . . .	338
Headers and Footers . . . . .	339
More About Fonts. . . . .	340
Diversions . . . . .	341
A Footnote Macro . . . . .	344
Command Line Options . . . . .	344
For Further Information . . . . .	346
<b>UUCP, Remote Communications Utility . . . . .</b>	<b>347</b>
Contents of This Tutorial . . . . .	347
An Overview of UUCP . . . . .	348
The Programs . . . . .	348
Directories and Files . . . . .	349
Attaching a Modem to Your Computer . . . . .	350
Selecting Site and Domain Names . . . . .	352
Installing UUCP With uuinstall. . . . .	352
Setting Up Your Local Site. . . . .	353
Devices . . . . .	353
Describing a Remote Site . . . . .	354
Day and Time To Call . . . . .	355
The Chat Script . . . . .	356
Granting Permissions . . . . .	358
Polling a Remote Site Automatically . . . . .	360
Where To Go Next. . . . .	361
Setting Up UUCP for Dialout: An Extended Example . . . . .	361
Site and Domain Names . . . . .	361
Setting Up the Serial Port/Communications Device. . . . .	361
Configuring L.sys . . . . .	363
The Chat Script . . . . .	365
Configuring the Permissions File . . . . .	367
Requesting Files From a Remote UUCP System . . . . .	368

Sending Files to a Remote UUCP System . . . . .	368
Setting Up UUCP for Dial-in: An Extended Example . . . . .	369
Configuring /etc/ttys . . . . .	369
Setting Up a Modem for Logins . . . . .	370
Answering the Phone . . . . .	371
Setting Echo and Result Codes . . . . .	371
Modem Reinitialization . . . . .	372
Modem Registers . . . . .	372
Enabling a Serial Device for Remote Access . . . . .	372
Direct Connections . . . . .	373
Giving a Remote UUCP Site a Login . . . . .	373
Configuring L.sys for Remote UUCP Access . . . . .	374
Configuring Permissions for Remote UUCP Access . . . . .	374
Configuring a Spooling Directory for Remote UUCP Access . . . . .	374
One Last, Loose Thread . . . . .	374
Other UUCP Configuration Considerations . . . . .	375
Debugging UUCP Calls . . . . .	375
What Is the Problem? . . . . .	375
UUCP Reports: Cannot Get Own Name . . . . .	375
The Modem Isn't Dialing . . . . .	375
The Modem Dials, Carrier is Established, Nothing Else Happens . . . . .	376
UULOG Shows Incorrect Response... . . . .	376
Files Refuse to be Sent . . . . .	376
Non-COHERENT UUCP Site Problems . . . . .	376
UUCP Administration . . . . .	377
Where to Go From Here . . . . .	377
<b>The Lexicon . . . . .</b>	379
example . . . . . Give an example of Mark Williams Lexicon format . . . . .	381
# . . . . . String-ize operator . . . . .	382
## . . . . . Token-pasting operator . . . . .	383
#define . . . . . Define an identifier as a macro . . . . .	384
#elif . . . . . Include code conditionally . . . . .	385
#else . . . . . Include code conditionally . . . . .	385
#endif . . . . . End conditional inclusion of code . . . . .	386
#if . . . . . Include code conditionally . . . . .	386
#ifdef . . . . . Include code conditionally . . . . .	386
#ifndef . . . . . Include code conditionally . . . . .	387
#include . . . . . Read another file and include it . . . . .	387
#line . . . . . Reset line number . . . . .	387
#pragma . . . . . Perform implementation-specific preprocessing . . . . .	388
#undef . . . . . Undefine a macro . . . . .	389
_DATE_ . . . . . Date of translation . . . . .	389
_FILE_ . . . . . Source file name . . . . .	390
_LINE_ . . . . . Current line within a source file . . . . .	390
_STDC_ . . . . . Mark a conforming translator . . . . .	390
_TIME_ . . . . . Time source file is translated . . . . .	391
_exit() . . . . . Terminate a program . . . . .	391
abort() . . . . . End program immediately . . . . .	392
abs() . . . . . Return the absolute value of an integer . . . . .	392
ac . . . . . Summarize login accounting information . . . . .	393
access() . . . . . Check if a file can be accessed in a given mode . . . . .	394
access.h . . . . . Check accessibility . . . . .	395
acct() . . . . . Enable/disable process accounting . . . . .	395

acct.h . . . . .	Format for process-accounting file . . . . .	396
accton . . . . .	Enable/disable process accounting . . . . .	397
acos() . . . . .	Calculate inverse cosine . . . . .	397
action.h . . . . .	Describe parsing action and goto tables . . . . .	398
address . . . . .	. . . . .	398
aha154x . . . . .	Adaptec AHA-154x device driver . . . . .	399
alarm() . . . . .	Set a timer . . . . .	401
alarm2() . . . . .	Set an alarm . . . . .	401
alias . . . . .	Set an alias . . . . .	402
aliases . . . . .	File of users' aliases . . . . .	402
alignment . . . . .	. . . . .	404
alloc.h . . . . .	Define the allocator . . . . .	404
alloca() . . . . .	Dynamically allocate space on the stack . . . . .	404
ar . . . . .	The librarian/archiver . . . . .	405
ar.h . . . . .	Format for archive files . . . . .	406
arena . . . . .	. . . . .	407
argc . . . . .	Argument passed to main() . . . . .	407
argv . . . . .	Argument passed to main() . . . . .	407
ARHEAD . . . . .	Append options to beginning of ar command line . . . . .	408
array . . . . .	. . . . .	408
ARTAIL . . . . .	Append options to end of ar command line . . . . .	409
as 286 . . . . .	i80286 assembler . . . . .	410
as 386 . . . . .	i80386 assembler . . . . .	425
ASCII . . . . .	. . . . .	448
ascii.h . . . . .	Define non-printable ASCII characters . . . . .	450
asctime() . . . . .	Convert time structure to ASCII string . . . . .	451
asfix . . . . .	Convert assembly-language programs into as 80386 format . . . . .	451
ASHEAD . . . . .	Append options to beginning of as command line . . . . .	452
asin() . . . . .	Calculate inverse sine . . . . .	452
ASKCC . . . . .	Force prompting for CC names . . . . .	452
assert() . . . . .	Check assertion at run time . . . . .	452
assert.h . . . . .	Define assert() . . . . .	453
ASTAIL . . . . .	Append options to end of as command line . . . . .	453
asy . . . . .	Device driver for asynchronous serial lines . . . . .	453
at . . . . .	Drivers for hard-disk partitions . . . . .	457
at . . . . .	Execute commands at given time . . . . .	459
atan() . . . . .	Calculate inverse tangent . . . . .	460
atan2() . . . . .	Calculate inverse tangent . . . . .	461
ATclock . . . . .	Read or set the AT realtime clock . . . . .	461
atof() . . . . .	Convert ASCII strings to floating point . . . . .	461
atoi() . . . . .	Convert ASCII strings to integers . . . . .	462
atol() . . . . .	Convert ASCII strings to long integers . . . . .	462
atrun . . . . .	Execute commands at a preset time . . . . .	463
auto . . . . .	Note an automatic variable . . . . .	463
awk . . . . .	Pattern-scanning language . . . . .	463
bad . . . . .	Maintain list of bad blocks . . . . .	465
badscan . . . . .	Build bad block list . . . . .	465
banner . . . . .	Print large letters . . . . .	466
basename . . . . .	Strip path information from a file name . . . . .	466
bc . . . . .	Interactive calculator with arbitrary precision . . . . .	467
bind . . . . .	Bind key sequence to editing command . . . . .	469
bit . . . . .	. . . . .	470
bit-fields . . . . .	. . . . .	470



bit map . . . . .	471
block . . . . .	471
boot . . . . .	Boot block for hard-disk partition/nine-sector diskette . . . . . 471
boot.fha. . . . .	Boot block for floppy disk . . . . . 472
booting . . . . .	How booting works . . . . . 472
boottime . . . . .	File that holds time system was last booted . . . . . 477
brc. . . . .	Perform maintenance chores, single-user mode . . . . . 478
break . . . . .	Exit from shell construct . . . . . 478
break . . . . .	Exit from loop or switch statement. . . . . 478
brk(). . . . .	Change size of data area . . . . . 478
bsearch(). . . . .	Search an array . . . . . 479
buf.h . . . . .	Buffer header . . . . . 481
buffer . . . . .	481
build . . . . .	Install COHERENT onto a hard disk. . . . . 482
builtin . . . . .	Execute a command as a built-in command . . . . . 482
byte . . . . .	482
byte ordering. . . . .	Machine-dependent ordering of bytes . . . . . 482
c . . . . .	Print multi-column output . . . . . 484
cabs(). . . . .	Complex absolute value function. . . . . 484
cal. . . . .	Print a calendar . . . . . 485
calendar . . . . .	Reminder service . . . . . 485
calling conventions . . . . .	486
calloc(). . . . .	Allocate dynamic memory . . . . . 492
candaddr(). . . . .	Convert a daddr_t to canonical format. . . . . 493
candev(). . . . .	Convert a dev_t to canonical format . . . . . 493
canino(). . . . .	Convert an ino_t to canonical format . . . . . 493
canint(). . . . .	Convert an int to canonical format. . . . . 494
canlong(). . . . .	Convert a long to canonical format. . . . . 494
canon.h. . . . .	Portable layout of binary data. . . . . 494
canshort(). . . . .	Convert a short to canonical format . . . . . 496
cansize(). . . . .	Convert an fsize_t to canonical format. . . . . 496
cantime(). . . . .	Convert a time_t to canonical format . . . . . 497
canvaddr(). . . . .	Convert a vaddr_t to canonical format. . . . . 497
captoinfo . . . . .	Convert termcap data to terminfo form . . . . . 497
case . . . . .	Execute commands conditionally according to pattern . . . . . 497
case . . . . .	Introduce entry in switch statement. . . . . 498
cast . . . . .	498
cat. . . . .	Concatenate/print files . . . . . 499
caveat utilitor . . . . .	499
cc . . . . .	C compiler . . . . . 499
cc0 . . . . .	504
cc1 . . . . .	505
cc2 . . . . .	505
cc3 . . . . .	505
CCHEAD . . . . .	Append options to beginning of cc command line . . . . . 505
CCTAIL . . . . .	Append options to end of cc command line. . . . . 506
cd . . . . .	Change directory . . . . . 506
cdmp . . . . .	Dump COFF files into a readable form . . . . . 506
ceil(). . . . .	Set numeric ceiling. . . . . 507
cgrep . . . . .	Pattern search for C source programs . . . . . 508
char . . . . .	Data type. . . . . 509
chars.h . . . . .	Character definitions . . . . . 509
chase . . . . .	Highly amusing video game . . . . . 509

chdir(). . . . .	Change working directory . . . . .	510
check . . . . .	Check file system . . . . .	510
checklist . . . . .	File systems to check when booting COHERENT . . . . .	511
chgrp . . . . .	Change the group owner of a file . . . . .	511
chmod . . . . .	Change the modes of a file. . . . .	511
chmod(). . . . .	Change file-protection modes . . . . .	513
chmog. . . . .	Change mode, owner, and group simultaneously . . . . .	513
chown. . . . .	Change the owner of files . . . . .	514
chown(). . . . .	Change ownership of a file . . . . .	514
chroot. . . . .	Change root directory . . . . .	514
chroot(). . . . .	Change the root directory . . . . .	515
ckernit . . . . .	Interactive inter-system communication and file transfer . . .	515
C keywords. . . . .	. . . . .	520
C language. . . . .	. . . . .	520
clear. . . . .	Clear the screen. . . . .	525
clearerr(). . . . .	Present stream status . . . . .	525
close(). . . . .	Close a file . . . . .	525
closedir(). . . . .	Close a directory stream . . . . .	526
clri. . . . .	Clear i-node . . . . .	526
cmp . . . . .	Compare bytes of two files . . . . .	526
coeff.h . . . . .	Format for COHERENT 386 objects . . . . .	527
COHERENT . . . . .	Principles of the COHERENT System . . . . .	528
col . . . . .	Remove reverse and half-line motions . . . . .	530
com . . . . .	Device drivers for asynchronous serial lines . . . . .	531
com1 . . . . .	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM1 . . . . .	533
com2 . . . . .	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM2 . . . . .	533
com3 . . . . .	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM3 . . . . .	534
com4 . . . . .	Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM4 . . . . .	535
comm . . . . .	Print common lines . . . . .	535
commands . . . . .	. . . . .	535
compress . . . . .	Compress a file . . . . .	542
con.h . . . . .	Configure device drivers . . . . .	543
console . . . . .	Console device driver . . . . .	543
const . . . . .	Qualify an identifier as not modifiable. . . . .	546
const.h . . . . .	Declare machine-dependent constants . . . . .	547
continue . . . . .	Terminate current iteration of shell construct . . . . .	547
continue . . . . .	Force next iteration of a loop . . . . .	547
conv. . . . .	Numeric base converter . . . . .	547
core . . . . .	Core dump file format . . . . .	548
cos(). . . . .	Calculate cosine. . . . .	549
cosh(). . . . .	Calculate hyperbolic cosine . . . . .	549
cp . . . . .	Copy a file . . . . .	550
cpdir . . . . .	Copy directory hierarchy. . . . .	551
cpio . . . . .	Archiving/backup utility. . . . .	551
cpre . . . . .	C preprocessor . . . . .	554
C preprocessor . . . . .	. . . . .	554
creat(). . . . .	Create/truncate a file . . . . .	557
cron . . . . .	Execute commands periodically . . . . .	557
crontab . . . . .	Copy a command file into the crontab directory . . . . .	559
crypt . . . . .	Encrypt/decrypt text . . . . .	561
crypt(). . . . .	Encryption using rotor algorithm. . . . .	561
ct . . . . .	Controlling terminal driver . . . . .	562
ctags . . . . .	Generate tags and refs files for vi editor. . . . .	562

ctime()	Convert system time to an ASCII string . . . . .	563
ctype	. . . . .	564
ctype.h	Header file for data tests . . . . .	565
curses	Library of screen-handling functions . . . . .	566
curses.h	Define functions and macros in curses library . . . . .	578
cut	Select portions of each line of its input . . . . .	578
CWD	Current working directory . . . . .	579
daemon	. . . . .	580
data formats	. . . . .	580
data types	. . . . .	581
date	Print/set the date and time . . . . .	582
db	Assembler-level symbolic debugger . . . . .	582
dc	Desk calculator . . . . .	593
dcheck	Check directory consistency . . . . .	595
dd	File conversion . . . . .	595
decvax_d()	Convert a double from IEEE to DECVAX format . . . . .	596
decvax_f()	Convert a float from IEEE to DECVAX format . . . . .	597
default	Default label in switch statement . . . . .	597
defined	Perform an action if a macro is defined . . . . .	597
definitions	. . . . .	598
deftty.h	Define default tty settings . . . . .	598
deroff	Remove text formatting control information . . . . .	598
detab	Replace tab characters with spaces . . . . .	599
device drivers	. . . . .	599
df	Measure free space on disk . . . . .	600
diff	Summarize differences between two files . . . . .	601
diff3	Summarize differences among three files . . . . .	602
dir.h	Directory format . . . . .	603
directory	. . . . .	603
dirent.h	Define dirent . . . . .	604
dirs	Print the contents of the directory stack . . . . .	604
disable	Disable a port . . . . .	604
div()	Perform integer division . . . . .	604
do	Introduce a loop . . . . .	605
domain	Set your system's mail domain . . . . .	605
dos	Manipulate files on MS-DOS file systems . . . . .	606
doscat	Concatenate a file on an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	608
doscpc	Copy files to/from an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	608
doscpcdir	Copy a directory to/from an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	611
dosdel	Delete a file from an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	612
dosdir	List contents of an MS-DOS directory . . . . .	612
dosformat	Format a floppy disk . . . . .	613
doslabel	Label an MS-DOS floppy disk . . . . .	613
dosls	List files on an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	614
dosmkdir	Create a directory in an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	614
dosrm	Remove a file from an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	614
dosrmdir	Remove a directory from an MS-DOS file system . . . . .	615
double	Data type . . . . .	615
drvld	Load a loadable driver into memory . . . . .	615
drvld.all	Load loadable drivers at boot time . . . . .	616
du	Summarize disk usage . . . . .	617
dump	File-system backup utility . . . . .	617
dumpdate	Print dump dates . . . . .	618

dumpdir . . . . .	Print the directory of a dump . . . . .	619
dumptape.h . . . . .	Define data structures used on dump tapes . . . . .	619
dup() . . . . .	Duplicate a file descriptor . . . . .	619
dup2() . . . . .	Duplicate a file descriptor . . . . .	620
ebcdic.h . . . . .	Define constants for non-printable EBCDIC characters . . . . .	621
echo . . . . .	Repeat/expand an argument . . . . .	621
ed . . . . .	Interactive line editor . . . . .	622
EDITOR. . . . .	Name editor to use by default . . . . .	626
egrep . . . . .	Extended pattern search . . . . .	626
else . . . . .	Introduce a conditional statement . . . . .	628
elvis . . . . .	Clone of Berkeley-standard screen editor . . . . .	628
enable. . . . .	Enable a port . . . . .	635
endgrent() . . . . .	Close group file . . . . .	636
endpwent() . . . . .	Close password file . . . . .	636
enum . . . . .	Declare a type and identifiers . . . . .	637
ENV . . . . .	File read to set environment. . . . .	637
env . . . . .	Execute a command in an environment. . . . .	637
environ . . . . .	Process environment . . . . .	638
environmental variables . . . . .		638
envp. . . . .	Argument passed to main() . . . . .	639
EOF . . . . .	Indicate end of a file . . . . .	639
epson . . . . .	Print files on Epson printer . . . . .	640
errno . . . . .	External integer for return of error status . . . . .	641
errno.h . . . . .	Error numbers used by errno() . . . . .	641
eval . . . . .	Evaluate arguments . . . . .	643
ex . . . . .	Berkeley-style line editor. . . . .	644
exec . . . . .	Execute command directly . . . . .	645
execl() . . . . .	Execute a load module . . . . .	645
execle() . . . . .	Execute a load module . . . . .	645
execlp() . . . . .	Execute a load module . . . . .	645
executable file . . . . .		646
execution. . . . .		646
execv() . . . . .	Execute a load module . . . . .	647
execve() . . . . .	Execute a load module . . . . .	647
execvp() . . . . .	Execute a load module . . . . .	648
exit . . . . .	Exit from a shell. . . . .	649
exit(). . . . .	Terminate a program gracefully. . . . .	649
exp(). . . . .	Compute exponent . . . . .	649
export. . . . .	Add a shell variable to the environment. . . . .	650
expr . . . . .	Compute a command-line expression . . . . .	651
extern. . . . .	Declare storage class . . . . .	652
fabs() . . . . .	Compute absolute value . . . . .	654
factor . . . . .	Factor a number . . . . .	654
false . . . . .	Unconditional failure. . . . .	654
fbk.h . . . . .	Define the disk-free block . . . . .	654
fc . . . . .	Edit and re-execute one or more previous commands . . . . .	655
FCEDIT. . . . .	Editor used by fc command . . . . .	655
fclose() . . . . .	Close a stream. . . . .	655
fcntl() . . . . .	Control open files . . . . .	656
fcntl.h. . . . .	Manifest constants for file-handling functions . . . . .	656
fd . . . . .	Floppy disk driver. . . . .	656
fd.h . . . . .	Declare file-descriptor structure . . . . .	657
fdformat . . . . .	Low-level format a floppy disk . . . . .	657

fdioctl.h. . . . .	Control floppy-disk I/O . . . . .	658
fdisk. . . . .	Hard-disk partitioning utility . . . . .	659
fdisk.h . . . . .	Fixed-disk constants and structures. . . . .	660
fdopen(). . . . .	Open a stream for standard I/O . . . . .	660
feof(). . . . .	Discover stream status. . . . .	661
ferror(). . . . .	Discover stream status. . . . .	661
fflush(). . . . .	Flush output stream's buffer . . . . .	663
fgetc(). . . . .	Read character from stream. . . . .	664
fgets(). . . . .	Read line from stream . . . . .	665
fgetw(). . . . .	Read integer from stream . . . . .	666
field . . . . .	. . . . .	666
file . . . . .	. . . . .	666
file. . . . .	Guess a file's type. . . . .	667
FILE. . . . .	Descriptor for a file stream . . . . .	667
file descriptor . . . . .	. . . . .	668
file formats. . . . .	. . . . .	668
fileno(). . . . .	Get file descriptor . . . . .	669
filsys.h . . . . .	Structures and constants for super block. . . . .	669
filter. . . . .	. . . . .	669
find . . . . .	Search for files satisfying a pattern . . . . .	670
fixstack. . . . .	Change stack allocation . . . . .	671
fixterm(). . . . .	Set the terminal into program mode . . . . .	672
float . . . . .	Data type. . . . .	672
floor(). . . . .	Set a numeric floor . . . . .	676
floppy disks . . . . .	. . . . .	676
fnkey . . . . .	Set/print function keys for the console . . . . .	679
fopen(). . . . .	Open a stream for standard I/O . . . . .	679
for . . . . .	Execute commands for tokens in list . . . . .	681
for . . . . .	Control a loop . . . . .	681
fork(). . . . .	Create a new process. . . . .	682
fortune . . . . .	Print randomly selected, hopefully humorous, text . . . . .	682
fperr.h . . . . .	Constants used with floating-point exception codes. . . . .	683
fprintf(). . . . .	Print formatted output into file stream . . . . .	683
fputc(). . . . .	Write character into file stream. . . . .	683
fputs(). . . . .	Write string into file stream . . . . .	684
fputw(). . . . .	Write an integer into a stream . . . . .	684
fread(). . . . .	Read data from file stream. . . . .	685
free(). . . . .	Return dynamic memory to free memory pool . . . . .	685
freopen(). . . . .	Open file stream for standard I/O . . . . .	685
frexp(). . . . .	Separate fraction and exponent. . . . .	686
from. . . . .	Generate list of numbers, for use in loop . . . . .	687
fscanf(). . . . .	Format input from a file stream . . . . .	688
fsck . . . . .	Check and repair file systems interactively . . . . .	689
fseek(). . . . .	Seek on file stream . . . . .	690
fstat(). . . . .	Find file attributes . . . . .	691
fstatfs(). . . . .	Get information about a file system . . . . .	693
ftell(). . . . .	Return current position of file pointer . . . . .	693
ftime(). . . . .	Get the current time from the operating system . . . . .	694
function . . . . .	. . . . .	694
fwrite(). . . . .	Write into file stream . . . . .	694
fwtable . . . . .	Build font-width table . . . . .	695
gcd(). . . . .	Set variable to greatest common divisor. . . . .	696
general functions . . . . .	. . . . .	696

getc()	Read character from file stream	698
getchar()	Read character from standard input	699
getdents()	Read directory entries	699
getegid()	Get effective group identifier	700
getenv()	Read environmental variable	700
geteuid()	Get effective user identifier	701
getgid()	Get real group identifier	701
getgrnt()	Get group file information	702
getgrgid()	Get group file information, by group id	702
getgrnam()	Get group file information, by group name	702
getlogin()	Get login name	703
getopt()	Get option letter from argv	703
getopts	Parse command-line options	704
getpass()	Get password with prompting	705
getpgpr()	Get process group number	705
getpid()	Get process identifier	705
getpw()	Search password file	705
getpwent()	Get password file information	706
getpwnam()	Get password file information, by name	707
getpwuid()	Get password file information, by id	708
gets()	Read string from standard input	708
getty.	Terminal initialization	709
getuid()	Get real user identifier	710
getw()	Read word from file stream	711
getwd()	Get current working directory name	711
GMT.		711
gmtime()	Convert system time to calendar structure	712
goto	Unconditionally jump within a function	712
grep	Pattern search	713
group	Group file format	714
grp.h	Declare group structure	715
gtty()	Device-dependent control	715
guess	Extraordinarily amusing guessing game	715
hard disk		717
hash.	Add a command to the shell's hash table	720
hdioctl.h	Control hard-disk I/O	720
head.	Print the beginning of a file	720
header files		721
help	Print concise description of command	723
HOME.	User's home directory	723
hp	Prepare files for Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer	723
hpd	Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler daemon	724
hpr	Send file to Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler	724
hpskip	Abort/restart current listing on Hewlett-Packard LaserJet	725
hs	Device driver for polled serial ports	725
hypot()	Compute hypotenuse of right triangle	727
i-node	COHERENT system file identifier	728
icheck.	i-node consistency check	728
ieee_d()	Convert a double from DECVAX to IEEE format	729
ieee_f()	Convert a float from DECVAX to IEEE format	729
if.	Execute a command conditionally	729
if.	Introduce a conditional statement	730
IFS	Characters recognized as white space	730

index()	Find a character in a string . . . . .	730
infocmp.	De-compile a terminfo file . . . . .	731
init	System initialization . . . . .	731
initialization	. . . . .	732
ino.h	Constants and structures for disk i-nodes . . . . .	735
inode.h	Constants and structures for memory-resident i-nodes . . . . .	735
install.	Install a software update onto COHERENT. . . . .	735
int	Data type. . . . .	738
interrupt	. . . . .	738
io.h	Constants and structures used by I/O . . . . .	738
ioctl()	Device-dependent control . . . . .	738
ipc.h.	Definitions for process communications . . . . .	739
isalnum()	Check if a character is a number or letter . . . . .	739
isalpha()	Check if a character is a letter . . . . .	739
isascii()	Check if a character is an ASCII character . . . . .	740
isatty()	Check if a device is a terminal . . . . .	740
iscntrl()	Check if a character is a control character . . . . .	740
isdigit()	Check if a character is a numeral . . . . .	740
islower().	Check if a character is a lower-case letter. . . . .	741
ispos().	Return if variable is positive or negative. . . . .	741
isprint().	Check if a character is printable . . . . .	741
ispunct()	Check if a character is a punctuation mark . . . . .	741
isspace()	Check if a character prints white space . . . . .	742
isupper()	Check if a character is an upper-case letter . . . . .	742
itom()	Create a multiple-precision integer. . . . .	742
j0().	Compute Bessel function . . . . .	743
j1().	Compute Bessel function . . . . .	744
jn().	Compute Bessel function . . . . .	744
jobs	Print information about jobs . . . . .	744
join	Join two data bases . . . . .	745
kermit.	Inter-system communication and file transfer . . . . .	746
keyboard tables	How to write a keyboard table . . . . .	749
kill.	Signal a process. . . . .	753
kill()	Kill a system process . . . . .	754
ksh	The Korn shell. . . . .	754
KSH_VERSION	List current version of Korn shell. . . . .	773
l	List directory's contents in long format . . . . .	774
L-devices	Describe devices used by UUCP . . . . .	774
l.out.h.	Format for COHERENT 286 objects . . . . .	775
L.sys	Format for UUCP site descriptions. . . . .	776
l3tol()	Convert file system block number to long integer . . . . .	778
LASTERROR.	Program that last generated an error . . . . .	779
lc	List directory's contents in columnar format . . . . .	779
ld	Link relocatable object modules . . . . .	780
ldexp().	Combine fraction and exponent . . . . .	783
LDHEAD	Append options to beginning of ld command line . . . . .	783
ldiv().	Perform long integer division . . . . .	783
LDTAIL	Append options to end of ld command line . . . . .	784
let	Evaluate an expression . . . . .	784
lex.	Lexical analyzer generator. . . . .	784
Lexicon	. . . . .	787
lf.	List directory's contents in columnar format . . . . .	788
libmisc	Library of miscellaneous functions. . . . .	788

LIBPATH . . . . .	Directories that hold compiler phases and libraries . . . . .	795
libraries. . . . .		795
limits.h . . . . .	Define numerical limits . . . . .	796
lines . . . . .	Highly amusing board game. . . . .	797
link() . . . . .	Create a link . . . . .	798
linker-defined symbols . . . . .		798
ln . . . . .	Create a link to a file . . . . .	799
localtime() . . . . .	Convert system time to calendar structure . . . . .	799
log() . . . . .	Compute natural logarithm . . . . .	801
log10() . . . . .	Compute common logarithm . . . . .	801
login . . . . .	Log in or change user name. . . . .	801
logmsg . . . . .	Hold COHERENT Login Message . . . . .	802
long . . . . .	Data type. . . . .	802
longjmp() . . . . .	Return from a non-local goto . . . . .	803
look . . . . .	Find matching lines in a sorted file . . . . .	803
lp . . . . .	Line printer driver . . . . .	804
lpd. . . . .	Line printer spooler daemon . . . . .	805
lpioctl.h. . . . .	Definitions for line-printer I/O control . . . . .	805
lpr . . . . .	Send to line printer spooler . . . . .	805
lpskip . . . . .	Terminate/restart current line printer listing . . . . .	806
lr . . . . .	List subdirectories' contents in columnar format . . . . .	806
ls . . . . .	List directory's contents . . . . .	806
lseek(). . . . .	Set read/write position. . . . .	808
lto13() . . . . .	Convert long integer to file system block number . . . . .	809
lvalue . . . . .		809
lx . . . . .	List directory's contents in columnar format . . . . .	810
m4. . . . .	Macro processor. . . . .	811
machine.h . . . . .	Machine-dependent definitions . . . . .	813
macro . . . . .		813
madd() . . . . .	Add multiple-precision integers. . . . .	814
mail . . . . .	Electronic mail system . . . . .	814
mail . . . . .	Computer mail . . . . .	815
main(). . . . .	Introduce program's main function . . . . .	817
major number . . . . .	Device numbering. . . . .	818
make . . . . .	Program building discipline . . . . .	818
malloc(). . . . .	Allocate dynamic memory . . . . .	821
malloc.h . . . . .	Definitions for memory-allocation functions . . . . .	823
man . . . . .	Manual macro package . . . . .	823
man . . . . .	Print Lexicon entries . . . . .	824
manifest constant. . . . .		825
math.h . . . . .	Declare mathematics functions. . . . .	825
mathematics library . . . . .		825
mboot . . . . .	Master boot block for hard disk . . . . .	826
ncmp() . . . . .	Compare multiple-precision integers . . . . .	826
mcopy(). . . . .	Copy a multiple-precision integer . . . . .	827
mdata.h . . . . .	Define machine-specific magic numbers . . . . .	827
mdiv(). . . . .	Divide multiple-precision integers . . . . .	827
me. . . . .	MicroEMACS screen editor . . . . .	827
mem. . . . .	Physical memory file . . . . .	834
memccpy() . . . . .	Copy a region of memory up to a set character . . . . .	835
memchr(). . . . .	Search a region of memory for a character . . . . .	835
memcmp() . . . . .	Compare two regions . . . . .	837
memcpy(). . . . .	Copy one region of memory into another . . . . .	837



memmove(). . . . .	Copy region of memory into area it overlaps . . . . .	838
memok(). . . . .	Test if the arena is corrupted . . . . .	838
memory allocation . . . . .		838
memset(). . . . .	Fill an area with a character . . . . .	839
mesg . . . . .	Permit/deny messages from other users . . . . .	840
min(). . . . .	Read multiple-precision integer from stdin . . . . .	840
minit(). . . . .	Condition global or auto multiple-precision integer . . . . .	840
minor number . . . . .	Device numbering. . . . .	841
mintfr(). . . . .	Free a multiple-precision integer . . . . .	841
mitom(). . . . .	Reinitialize a multiple-precision integer . . . . .	841
mkdir . . . . .	Create a directory. . . . .	841
mkdir(). . . . .	Create a directory. . . . .	842
mkfnames . . . . .	Generate data base of user names . . . . .	842
mkfs. . . . .	Make a new file system. . . . .	843
mknod . . . . .	Make a special file or named pipe . . . . .	845
mknod(). . . . .	Create a special file. . . . .	846
mktemp(). . . . .	Generate a temporary file name . . . . .	846
mneg(). . . . .	Negate multiple-precision integer. . . . .	846
mnttab.h . . . . .	Structure for mount table . . . . .	847
modem . . . . .		847
modemcap . . . . .	Modem-description language . . . . .	851
modem control . . . . .		853
modeminit . . . . .	Initialize a modem . . . . .	853
modf(). . . . .	Separate integral part and fraction. . . . .	854
modulus . . . . .		854
mon.h. . . . .	Read profile output files . . . . .	855
moo . . . . .	Greatly amusing numeric guessing game. . . . .	855
more . . . . .	Display text one page at a time . . . . .	856
motd . . . . .	File that holds message of the day . . . . .	858
mount(). . . . .	Mount a file system. . . . .	858
mount.all. . . . .	Mount file systems at boot time . . . . .	859
mount. . . . .	Mount a file system. . . . .	859
mount.h . . . . .	Define the mount table. . . . .	860
mout(). . . . .	Write multiple-precision integer to stdout . . . . .	860
mprec.h. . . . .	Multiple-precision arithmetic . . . . .	860
ms. . . . .	Manuscript macro package . . . . .	860
MS-DOS . . . . .	That other operating system . . . . .	862
msg . . . . .	Message device driver . . . . .	867
msg . . . . .	Send a brief message to other users . . . . .	868
msg.h . . . . .	Definitions for message facility . . . . .	868
msgctl(). . . . .	Message control operations . . . . .	868
msgget(). . . . .	Get message queue . . . . .	870
msgrcv(). . . . .	Receive a message . . . . .	871
msgsgs . . . . .	Read messages intended for all COHERENT users . . . . .	872
msgsnd(). . . . .	Send a message . . . . .	873
msig.h . . . . .	Machine-dependent signals . . . . .	874
msqrt(). . . . .	Compute square root of multiple-precision integer . . . . .	875
msub(). . . . .	Subtract multiple-precision integers. . . . .	875
mtab.h . . . . .	Currently mounted file systems . . . . .	875
mtioctl.h . . . . .	Magnetic-tape I/O control. . . . .	876
mtoi(). . . . .	Convert multiple-precision integer to integer. . . . .	876
mtos(). . . . .	Convert multiple-precision integer to string . . . . .	876
mtype(). . . . .	Return symbolic machine type . . . . .	876

mtype.h . . . . .	List processor code numbers . . . . .	877
mult() . . . . .	Multiply multiple-precision integers . . . . .	877
multiple-precision mathematics . . . . .		877
mv . . . . .	Rename files or directories . . . . .	880
mvdir . . . . .	Rename a directory . . . . .	881
mvfree() . . . . .	Free multiple-precision integer . . . . .	881
n.out.h . . . . .	Define n.out file structure . . . . .	882
named pipe . . . . .		882
ncheck . . . . .	Print file names corresponding to i-node . . . . .	883
newgrp . . . . .	Change to a new group . . . . .	883
newusr . . . . .	Add new user to COHERENT system . . . . .	883
nkb . . . . .	Device driver for console keyboard . . . . .	884
nlist() . . . . .	Symbol table lookup . . . . .	887
nm . . . . .	Print a program's symbol table . . . . .	888
notmem() . . . . .	Check if memory is allocated . . . . .	890
nptx . . . . .	Generate permutations of users' full names . . . . .	891
nroff . . . . .	Text-formatting language . . . . .	891
NUL . . . . .		899
NULL . . . . .		900
null . . . . .	The 'bit bucket' . . . . .	900
nybble . . . . .		900
object format . . . . .		901
od . . . . .	Print an octal dump of a file . . . . .	901
open() . . . . .	Open a file . . . . .	901
opendir() . . . . .	Open a directory stream . . . . .	903
operator . . . . .		904
PAGER . . . . .	Specify Output Filter . . . . .	907
param.h . . . . .	Define machine-specific parameters . . . . .	907
passwd . . . . .	Set/change login password . . . . .	907
passwd . . . . .	Password file format . . . . .	908
paste . . . . .	Merge lines of files . . . . .	908
patch . . . . .	Modify portions of an executable . . . . .	910
path() . . . . .	Path name for a file . . . . .	911
PATH . . . . .	Directories that hold executable files . . . . .	912
path.h . . . . .	Define/declare constants and functions used with path . . . . .	912
paths . . . . .	Routing data base for mail . . . . .	912
pattern . . . . .		913
pause() . . . . .	Wait for signal . . . . .	914
pax . . . . .	Portable archive interchange . . . . .	914
pclose() . . . . .	Close a pipe . . . . .	914
Permissions . . . . .	Format of UUCP permissions file . . . . .	915
perror() . . . . .	System call error messages . . . . .	917
phone . . . . .	Print numbers and addresses from phone directory . . . . .	917
pipe . . . . .		917
pipe() . . . . .	Open a pipe . . . . .	918
pnmatch() . . . . .	Match string pattern . . . . .	920
pointer . . . . .		920
poll() . . . . .	Query several I/O devices . . . . .	923
poll.h . . . . .	Define structures/constants used with polling devices . . . . .	924
popd . . . . .	Pop an item from the directory stack . . . . .	924
popen() . . . . .	Open a pipe . . . . .	925
port . . . . .		925
portability . . . . .		925

pow()	Raise multiple-precision integer to power . . . . .	926
pow()	Compute a power of a number . . . . .	926
pr	Paginate and print files . . . . .	926
prep	Produce a word list . . . . .	927
print	Echo text onto the standard output . . . . .	928
printer	. . . . .	928
printf()	Print formatted text. . . . .	931
proc.h	Define structures/constants used with processes . . . . .	933
process	. . . . .	933
prof	Print execution profile of a C program. . . . .	933
profile	Set user's environment at login. . . . .	934
.profile	Set user's personal environment at login . . . . .	934
prps	Prepare files for PostScript-compatible printer . . . . .	935
ps	Print process status . . . . .	937
PS1	User's default prompt . . . . .	939
PS2	Prompt when user continues command onto additional lines . . . . .	939
ptrace()	Trace process execution . . . . .	939
pty	Device driver for pseudoterminals . . . . .	941
pun	. . . . .	942
pushd	Push an item onto the directory stack. . . . .	942
putc()	Write character into stream. . . . .	943
putchar()	Write a character onto the standard output . . . . .	943
putp()	Write a string into the standard window . . . . .	944
puts()	Write string onto standard output . . . . .	944
putw()	Write word into stream. . . . .	944
pwd	Print the name of the current directory . . . . .	945
pwd.h	Declare password structure. . . . .	945
qfind	Quickly find all files with a given name . . . . .	946
qsort()	Sort arrays in memory . . . . .	946
quot	Summarize file-system usage . . . . .	947
ram	Driver for manipulating RAM . . . . .	949
ramdisk	Script to create a RAM-disk . . . . .	950
rand()	Generate pseudo-random numbers . . . . .	951
random access	. . . . .	951
ranlib	Create index for object library. . . . .	952
rc	Perform standard maintenance chores . . . . .	952
read	Assign values to shell variables. . . . .	952
read()	Read from a file . . . . .	953
readdir()	Read a directory stream . . . . .	954
readonly	Mark a shell variable as read only . . . . .	954
readonly	Storage class. . . . .	954
read-only memory	. . . . .	955
realloc()	Reallocate dynamic memory. . . . .	955
reboot	Reboot the COHERENT system . . . . .	955
ref	Display a C function header. . . . .	955
register	Storage class. . . . .	956
register variable	. . . . .	956
rename	How to rename a file . . . . .	956
resetterm()	Reset the terminal to its previous settings . . . . .	957
restor	Restore file system . . . . .	957
return	Return a value and control to calling function . . . . .	959
rev	Print text backwards . . . . .	960
rewind()	Reset file pointer . . . . .	960

rewinddir()	Rewind a directory stream . . . . .	960
rindex()	Find a character in a string . . . . .	961
rm	Remove files . . . . .	961
rmail	Receive UUCP mail . . . . .	962
rmdir	Remove directories . . . . .	963
rmdir()	Remove a directory . . . . .	963
root	. . . . .	964
rpow()	Raise multiple-precision integer to power . . . . .	964
RS-232	COM port wiring . . . . .	964
rubik	Play Rubik's cube . . . . .	965
rvalue	. . . . .	966
sa	Print a summary of process accounting . . . . .	967
sbrk()	Increase a program's data space . . . . .	968
scanf()	Accept and format input . . . . .	968
scat	Print text files one screenful at a time . . . . .	970
sched.h	Define constants used with scheduling . . . . .	972
SCSI	SCSI device drivers . . . . .	972
sdiv()	Divide multiple-precision integers . . . . .	972
SECONDS	Number of seconds since current shell started . . . . .	973
security	. . . . .	973
sed	Stream editor . . . . .	974
seekdir()	Reset the position within a directory stream . . . . .	976
seg.h	Definitions used with segmentation . . . . .	977
sem	Semaphore device driver . . . . .	977
sem.h	Definitions used by semaphore facility . . . . .	978
semctl()	Control semaphore operations . . . . .	978
semget()	Get a set of semaphores . . . . .	980
semop()	Perform semaphore operations . . . . .	981
set	Set shell option flags and positional parameters . . . . .	983
setbuf()	Set alternative stream buffers . . . . .	984
setgid()	Set group id and user id . . . . .	985
setgrent()	Rewind group file . . . . .	985
setjmp()	Perform non-local goto . . . . .	985
setjmp.h	Define setjmp() and longjmp() . . . . .	986
setpgrp()	Set process group number . . . . .	986
setpwent()	Rewind password file . . . . .	987
settz()	Set local time zone . . . . .	987
setuid()	Set user id . . . . .	987
setupterm()	Initialize a terminal . . . . .	988
sgtty	General terminal interface . . . . .	988
sgtty.h	Definitions used to control terminal I/O . . . . .	993
sh	The Bourne shell . . . . .	993
SHELL	Name the default shell . . . . .	1003
shellsort()	Sort arrays in memory . . . . .	1003
shift	Shift positional parameters . . . . .	1003
shm	Shared memory device driver . . . . .	1004
shm.h	Definitions used with shared memory . . . . .	1005
shmctl()	Control shared-memory operations . . . . .	1005
shmget()	Get shared-memory segment . . . . .	1006
short	Data type . . . . .	1008
shutdown	Shut down the COHERENT system . . . . .	1008
signal()	Specify disposition of a signal . . . . .	1008
signal.h	Declare signals . . . . .	1011

signame	Array of names of signals	1011
sin()	Calculate sine	1011
sinh()	Calculate hyperbolic sine	1011
size	Print size of an object file	1012
sizeof	Return size of a data element	1012
sleep	Stop executing for a specified time	1013
sleep()	Suspend execution for interval	1013
sload()	Load device driver	1014
small	Send UUCP mail	1014
smult()	Multiply multiple-precision integers	1018
sort	Sort lines of text	1018
spell	Find spelling errors	1019
split	Split a text file into smaller files	1020
spow()	Raise multiple-precision integer to power	1021
sprintf()	Format output	1021
sqrt()	Compute square root	1021
srand()	Seed random number generator	1022
srcpath	Find source files	1022
ss	Future Domain/Seagate SCSI device driver	1022
sscanf()	Format a string	1024
stack		1025
standard error		1025
standard input		1025
standard output		1026
stat()	Find file attributes	1026
stat.h	Definitions and declarations used to obtain file status	1028
statfs()	Get information about a file system	1028
static	Declare storage class	1029
stdarg.h	Header for variable numbers of arguments	1029
stddef.h	Header for standard definitions	1029
stderr		1030
stdin		1030
STDIO		1030
stdio.h	Declarations and definitions for I/O	1031
stdlib.h	Declare/define general functions	1031
stdout		1032
sticky bit		1032
stime()	Set the time	1032
storage class		1033
strcat()	Concatenate strings	1033
strchr()	Find a character in a string	1033
strcmp()	Compare two strings	1034
strcoll()	Compare two strings, using locale-specific information	1034
strcpy()	Copy one string into another	1034
strcspn()	Return length a string excludes characters in another	1035
stream		1035
stream.h	Definitions for message facility	1035
strerror()	Translate an error number into a string	1035
string.h	Declarations for string library	1036
string functions		1036
strings	Print all character strings from a file	1038
strip	Strip debug, relocation, and symbol tables from executable file	1039
strlen()	Measure the length of a string	1039

strncat()	Append one string onto another	1039
strncmp()	Compare two strings	1040
strncpy()	Copy one string into another	1040
strpbrk()	Find first occurrence of a character from another string	1042
strrchr()	Search for rightmost occurrence of a character in a string	1042
strspn()	Return length a string includes characters in another	1042
strstr()	Find one string within another	1043
strtod()	Convert string to floating-point number	1043
strtok()	Break a string into tokens	1044
strtol()	Convert string to long integer	1046
strtoul()	Convert string to unsigned long integer	1047
struct	Data type	1049
structure		1050
structure assignment		1050
strxfrm()	Transform a string	1050
stty()	Set terminal modes	1051
stty	Set/print terminal modes	1052
su	Substitute user id, become superuser	1054
suload()	Unload device driver	1054
sum	Print checksum of a file	1054
superuser		1055
swab()	Swap a pair of bytes	1055
switch	Test a variable against a table	1055
sync	Flush system buffers	1056
sync()	Flush system buffers	1057
system()	Pass a command to the shell for execution	1057
system calls	COHERENT system calls	1057
system maintenance		1059
tail	Print the end of a file	1060
tan()	Calculate tangent	1060
tanh()	Calculate hyperbolic cosine	1061
tape	Magnetic tape devices	1061
tar	V7 tape archive manager	1062
tboot	Describe the tertiary bootstrap	1064
technical information		1065
tee	Branch pipe output	1065
telldir()	Return the current position within a directory stream	1066
tempnam()	Generate a unique name for a temporary file	1066
TERM	Name the default terminal type	1067
term	Format of compiled terminfo file	1067
termcap	Terminal-description language	1068
terminal		1078
terminfo	terminal description language	1080
termio	General terminal interface	1088
termio.h	Definitions used with terminal input and output	1093
test	Evaluate conditional expression	1094
tgetent()	Read termcap entry	1095
tgetflag()	Get termcap Boolean entry	1096
tgetnum()	Get termcap numeric feature	1096
tgetstr()	Get termcap string entry	1096
tgoto()	Read/interpret termcap cursor-addressing string	1097
tic	Compile a terminfo description	1097
tick()	Get time	1098

time . . . . .	1098
time . . . . .	Time the execution of a command . . . . .
time() . . . . .	Get current system time . . . . .
time.h . . . . .	Give time-description structure. . . . .
timeb.h . . . . .	Declare timeb structure . . . . .
timef.h . . . . .	Definitions for user-level timed functions . . . . .
timeout.h . . . . .	Define the timer queue. . . . .
times . . . . .	Print total user and system times . . . . .
times.h . . . . .	Definitions used with times() system call . . . . .
times() . . . . .	Obtain process execution times. . . . .
TIMEZONE . . . . .	Time zone information . . . . .
TMPDIR . . . . .	Directory that holds temporary files . . . . .
tmpnam(). . . . .	Generate a unique name for a temporary file. . . . .
tolower() . . . . .	Convert characters to lower case . . . . .
touch . . . . .	Update modification time of a file . . . . .
toupper() . . . . .	Convert characters to upper case . . . . .
tparam() . . . . .	Output a parameterized string . . . . .
tputs(). . . . .	Read/decode leading padding information . . . . .
tr . . . . .	Translate characters . . . . .
trap . . . . .	Execute command on receipt of signal . . . . .
troff . . . . .	Extended text-formatting language. . . . .
true . . . . .	Unconditional success . . . . .
tsort . . . . .	Topological sort . . . . .
ttt . . . . .	Play 3-D tic-tac-toe . . . . .
tty . . . . .	Print the user's terminal name . . . . .
tty.h . . . . .	Define flags used with tty processing . . . . .
tyname(). . . . .	Identify a terminal . . . . .
ttys . . . . .	Describe terminal ports . . . . .
ttyslot(). . . . .	Return a terminal's line number . . . . .
ttystat. . . . .	Get terminal status. . . . .
type checking . . . . .	1117
typedef . . . . .	Define a new data type. . . . .
type promotion . . . . .	1117
types.h . . . . .	Declare system-specific data types . . . . .
typeset . . . . .	Set/list variables and their attributes . . . . .
typo . . . . .	Detect possible typographical and spelling errors . . . . .
umask . . . . .	Set the file-creation mask . . . . .
umask(). . . . .	Set file-creation mask . . . . .
umount. . . . .	Unmount file system . . . . .
umount(). . . . .	Unmount a file system . . . . .
unalias . . . . .	Remove an alias . . . . .
uname(). . . . .	Get the name and version of COHERENT. . . . .
uncompress . . . . .	Uncompress a compressed file . . . . .
ungetc(). . . . .	Return character to input stream . . . . .
union . . . . .	Multiply declare a variable. . . . .
uniq . . . . .	Remove/count repeated lines in a sorted file . . . . .
unique(). . . . .	Return a unique long integer . . . . .
units . . . . .	Convert measurements . . . . .
unlink(). . . . .	Remove a file. . . . .
unmkfs . . . . .	Construct a prototype file system . . . . .
unsigned . . . . .	Data type. . . . .
until. . . . .	Execute commands repeatedly . . . . .
update . . . . .	Update file systems periodically . . . . .

uproc.h . . . . .	Definitions used with user processes . . . . .	1127
USER . . . . .	Name user's identifier . . . . .	1127
ustar . . . . .	Process tape archives. . . . .	1128
ustat(). . . . .	Get statistics on a file system. . . . .	1129
utime(). . . . .	Change file access and modification times . . . . .	1129
utmp.h . . . . .	Login accounting information. . . . .	1130
utsname.h . . . . .	Define utsname structure . . . . .	1130
uucheck . . . . .	Sanity-check the UUCP system. . . . .	1131
uucico . . . . .	Transmit data to or from a remote site . . . . .	1131
UUCP . . . . .	Unattended communication with remote systems. . . . .	1132
uucp . . . . .	Ready files for transmission to other systems . . . . .	1136
uucpname . . . . .	Set the system's UUCP name . . . . .	1138
uudecode. . . . .	Decode a binary file sent from a remote system . . . . .	1138
uuencode. . . . .	Encode a binary file for transmission . . . . .	1139
uinstall . . . . .	Install UUCP. . . . .	1140
uulog . . . . .	Examine UUCP operations . . . . .	1140
uumvlog . . . . .	Archive UUCP log files . . . . .	1140
uuname . . . . .	List UUCP names of known systems. . . . .	1141
uurmlock. . . . .	Remove UUCP lock files . . . . .	1141
uutouch . . . . .	Touch a file to trigger uucico poll. . . . .	1141
uux . . . . .	Execute a command on a remote system . . . . .	1142
uuxqt . . . . .	Execute commands requested by a remote system . . . . .	1144
va_arg(). . . . .	Return pointer to next argument in argument list. . . . .	1145
va_end(). . . . .	Tidy up after traversal of argument list . . . . .	1145
va_start(). . . . .	Point to beginning of argument list . . . . .	1146
variable arguments . . . . .	. . . . .	1146
vi . . . . .	Clone of Berkeley-style screen editor. . . . .	1147
vidattr(). . . . .	Set the terminal's video attributes . . . . .	1148
vidputs(). . . . .	Write video attributes into a function . . . . .	1148
view . . . . .	Screen-oriented viewing utility . . . . .	1148
virec. . . . .	Recover the modified version of a file after a crash . . . . .	1149
void . . . . .	Data type. . . . .	1150
volatile . . . . .	Qualify an identifier as frequently changing . . . . .	1150
wait . . . . .	Await completion of background process . . . . .	1151
wait(). . . . .	Await completion of a child process . . . . .	1151
wall . . . . .	Send a message to all logged-in users . . . . .	1152
wc . . . . .	Count words, lines, and characters in text files . . . . .	1152
whence . . . . .	List a command's type . . . . .	1152
whereis . . . . .	Locate source, binary, and manual files. . . . .	1153
which . . . . .	Locate executable files . . . . .	1154
while . . . . .	Execute commands repeatedly . . . . .	1154
while . . . . .	Introduce a loop. . . . .	1154
who . . . . .	Print who is logged in . . . . .	1155
wildcards. . . . .	. . . . .	1155
write. . . . .	Converse with another user . . . . .	1155
write(). . . . .	Write to a file . . . . .	1156
xgcd(). . . . .	Extended greatest-common-divisor function . . . . .	1157
yacc . . . . .	Parser generator. . . . .	1158
yes. . . . .	Print infinitely many responses. . . . .	1159
zcat . . . . .	Concatenate a compressed file . . . . .	1160
zerop(). . . . .	Indicate if multi-precision integer is zero . . . . .	1160
<b>Error Messages</b> . . . . .	. . . . .	1162
COHERENT System Error Messages. . . . .	. . . . .	1162



Compiler Error Messages . . . . .	1163
as 286 Error Messages . . . . .	1163
as 386 Error Messages . . . . .	1164
cpp Error Messages . . . . .	1168
cc0 Error Messages . . . . .	1171
cc1 Error Messages . . . . .	1180
cc2 Error Messages . . . . .	1180
ld 286 Error Messages . . . . .	1181
ld 386 Error Messages . . . . .	1182
fsck Error Messages . . . . .	1183
Initialization . . . . .	1183
Phase 1: Check Blocks and Sizes . . . . .	1184
Phase 1b: Rescan for more Duplicates . . . . .	1184
Phase 2: Check Path Names . . . . .	1184
Phase 3: Check Connectivity . . . . .	1185
Phase 4: Check Reference Counts . . . . .	1185
Phase 5: Check Free List . . . . .	1186
Phase 6: Salvage Free List . . . . .	1186
Cleanup . . . . .	1186
General Messages . . . . .	1186
make Error Messages . . . . .	1187
nroff Error Messages . . . . .	1188
<b>Index . . . . .</b>	<b>1193</b>



---

# Introduction

---

COHERENT is a professional operating system designed for use on machines that can run MS-DOS. It has many of the same features and functionality of the UNIX operating system, but is the creation of Mark Williams Company. COHERENT gives your computer multi-tasking, multi-user capabilities without the tremendous overhead, both in hardware and money, required by current editions of UNIX. COHERENT is what UNIX used to be: an efficient system of selected tools and well-designed utilities, that brings out the best in modest computer systems.

The COHERENT system consists of the following:

- A fully multi-tasking, multi-user kernel.
- Choice of Bourne or Korn shells.
- The Mark Williams C compiler, linker, assembler, archiver, and other tools.
- A suite of commands, including editors, languages, tools, and utilities.
- Drivers for peripheral devices, including terminals, ASCII printers, and the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer.
- Libraries, including the standard C library and the mathematics library.
- Sample programs, including full source code for the MicroEMACS editor.

For a list of third-party programs that you can run under COHERENT, see the Release Notes that accompany this manual. New programs are released regularly, so consult the Mark Williams Bulletin Board for the latest information.

---

## *Editions of COHERENT*

---

COHERENT comes in two editions: COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386.

### **COHERENT 286**

COHERENT 286 runs on all machines that are fully compatible with the IBM PC-AT. It requires 640 kilobytes of RAM, at least one high-density floppy disk drive, and a hard disk. It requires approximately ten megabytes of space on the hard disk, although it performs better when given more space than that.

COHERENT 286 is designed to work well on modest hardware. Therefore, all of its executables are compiled into the Intel SMALL model. This model uses 16-bit pointers and integers, and so allows a program a maximum of 64 kilobytes of code space and 64 kilobytes of data space. It uses the Mark Williams **l.out** format for its objects.

COHERENT 286 can also run on machines built around the Intel 80386 and 80486 microprocessors, but does not take advantage of their ability to address larger amounts of memory.

### **COHERENT 386**

COHERENT 386 runs on machines built around the Intel 80386 and 80486 microprocessors. It runs in 80386 protected mode, which means that it uses 32-bit pointers and integers, and can address far larger amounts of memory than can be addressed by COHERENT 286. It requires at least one megabytes of RAM (more is preferred), at least one high-density floppy disk drive, and a

## 2 Introduction

---

hard disk. It requires approximately 10 megabytes of space on the hard disk, although it performs better when given more space than that.

COHERENT 386 uses the Common Object File Format (COFF) for its executables. This offers many advantages, including the ability to execute some programs compiled under some versions of UNIX. The COHERENT-386 kernel can also execute programs compiled by COHERENT 286, which means that upgrading from COHERENT 286 to COHERENT 386 is relatively straightforward.

### *How To Use This Manual*

This manual is in two parts. The first part consists of a set of tutorials that introduce COHERENT and its utilities.

If you are new to COHERENT, you should first read the first tutorial, *Using the COHERENT System*. This gives you an overview of COHERENT, and will get you up and running. It also includes information for advanced users on how to administer a COHERENT system properly.

The subsequent tutorials introduce the COHERENT shell, its editors, its languages, and its utilities.

### *The Lexicon*

The second half of this manual is taken up by the Lexicon. The Lexicon consists of approximately 1,000 articles that summarize all library routines, system calls, and commands available under the COHERENT system. It also includes numerous articles that define terminology and give technical information.

The articles are arranged in alphabetical order, to make it easy for you to find information on any topic. The articles are also linked via their cross-references into a tree structure, with the "root" of the tree being the article titled **Lexicon**. You can trace from any one article in the Lexicon to any other article simply by following the cross-references up and down the Lexicon's tree. The Index also references all topics discussed in the Lexicon or the tutorials, should you wish to look something up quickly.

If you are unfamiliar with a technical term used in this manual, look it up in the Lexicon. Chances are, you will find a full explanation. If you are not sure how to use the Lexicon, look up the entry for **Lexicon** within the Lexicon. This will help you get started. If you have struggled with multi-volume manuals for other operating systems, we think you will quickly come to appreciate the Lexicon.

The Lexicon is followed by a table of error messages, and an index.

### *Installation*

The release notes that accompany this manual also describe how to install COHERENT.

The release notes also list hardware that is known to work with COHERENT, and they also list hardware that is known *not* to work with COHERENT. Before you begin to install COHERENT on your system, be sure to check those lists and make sure that your system is compatible with COHERENT.

Please note that Mark Williams Company tries to keep these lists up to date, but it is not possible to keep pace with the continual introduction of new machines and new models. If you do not find your machine on either list, the odds are that COHERENT will work correctly with it.

## TUTORIALS

### ***User Registration and Reaction Report***

Before you continue, fill out the User Registration Card that came with your copy of COHERENT. When you return this card, you become eligible for direct telephone support from the Mark Williams Company technical staff, and you will automatically receive information about all new releases and updates.

If you have comments or reactions to the COHERENT software or documentation, please fill out and mail the User Reaction Report included at the end of the manual. We especially wish to know if you found errors in this manual. Mark Williams Company needs your comments to continue to improve COHERENT.

### ***Technical Support***

Mark Williams Company provides free technical support to all registered users of COHERENT. If you are experiencing difficulties with COHERENT, outside the area of programming errors, feel free to contact the Mark Williams Technical Support Staff. You can telephone during business hours (Central time), send electronic mail, or write. This support is available *only* if you have returned your User Registration Card for COHERENT.

Before you contact Mark Williams Technical Support with your problem, *please check the manual first*. If you do not find an article in the Lexicon that addresses your problem, be sure to check the index at the back of the manual. Often, the information that you want is kept in an article that you didn't consider, and the index will point you to it.

If the manual does not solve your problem — or if you find it to be misleading or difficult to understand — then Mark Williams Technical Support is available to help you. If you telephone Mark Williams Company, please have at hand your manual for COHERENT, as well as your serial number and version number. Please collect as much information as you can concerning your difficulty before you call. Note as carefully as possible what you did that invoked the problem, and copy down exactly any error messages that appeared on the screen. If you write, be sure to include the product serial number (from the COHERENT Registration Form) and your return address. If you send electronic mail to the Mark Williams Bulletin Board, be sure to include your mailing address as well, to ensure that we can contact you even if return electronic mail fails.



---

# Using the COHERENT System

---

This tutorial introduces the COHERENT system. It introduces such basic concepts as *command* and *file system*, and walks you through simple exercises to help you gain some familiarity with the dimensions of COHERENT. If you are new to COHERENT, you should read through this tutorial first. Not every section in here will be immediately useful to every user; for example, a beginner will probably not need to study the section on system administration, at least at first. But sooner or later, you will need to work with all of the material in this tutorial.

If you are unfamiliar with what an *operating system* is, or if you are unsure how COHERENT differs from other operating systems (such as MS-DOS), turn to the Lexicon article for **COHERENT**. There, you will find a brief description of what an operating system is and what makes COHERENT special.

Before you can begin to use this tutorial, you must install COHERENT on your computer. If you have not yet done so, turn to the Release Notes that came with this manual and follow the directions in them.

## How Do I Begin?

For everyone, there's that first time. You have installed COHERENT on your computer, you've checked the file system, mounted all of your file systems, and have gone into multi-user mode. Now you are sitting in front of your computer and all you see on your screen is the enigmatic phrase:

Coherent login:

"What," you ask yourself, "do I do now?" Well, the rest of this section will tell you how to get started with COHERENT.

### Logging in

To begin, you must *log in*. Unlike MS-DOS, COHERENT is a multi-user system: many people can use the same computer, accessing it either via terminals that you plug into the computer's serial ports, or via modem. Each user owns his personal set of files, his special way of setting up his environment, his own mailbox, and other things which are special to him alone. Because many people can use COHERENT, before you begin to work with COHERENT you must tell it who you are. This process of identifying yourself to COHERENT is called *logging in*. That mysterious prompt

Coherent login:

is COHERENT's way of asking you who you are.

To log in, type your personal login identifier. You set this identifier when you first installed COHERENT on your computer. Most people set their login identifier to their initials or their first names, usually in all lower case letters. Once you type your login identifier, press the **<Return>** key (sometimes labelled as **<Enter>**). If you did not set up a login for yourself during installation, log in as the superuser **root** and add one for yourself. For information on how to log in as the superuser, see below. For information on how to add a new user, see the section on **Adding a New User**, below, or see the Lexicon article for the command **newusr**.

While you were installing COHERENT on your system, you were given the option of setting a password for your login identifier. This is done to stop other users from logging in as yourself — or to keep outside "crackers" from dialing into your system and vandalizing it. If you did set a password, after you enter your login identifier COHERENT will prompt you for it with the following

## 6 Using COHERENT

---

prompt:

    Password:

Type your password. Note that COHERENT does *not* display the password on the screen as you type it; this is to prevent bystanders from seeing your password over your shoulder as you enter it. After you type your password, again type **<Return>**.

If you entered your login identifier and passwords correctly, COHERENT will display the command prompt:

    \$

This is COHERENT's way of saying, "Give me a command, I'm ready to go!" If you made a mistake while logging in, either with the identifier or the password, COHERENT will reply,

    Sorry!

and display its

    Coherent login:

prompt again. Try again, until you do manage to log in. If you have received the '\$', congratulations! COHERENT is now ready to work with you.

### ***Special Terminal Keys***

The next sections will introduce you to a few elementary COHERENT commands. Before we continue, however, you must first become familiar with a few special keys on your computer's keyboard, and with the special meanings they have to the COHERENT system.

One special key on the keyboard will be used frequently in your work: the **<Return>** key. As noted above, this key is sometimes labelled **<Enter>**.

You must conclude every command you type into COHERENT by pressing the **<Return>** key. This tells COHERENT that you have finished typing, and that you now want it to execute your command. COHERENT will not execute your command until you press this key.

Another special key is the **control** key. This key is usually labelled **Ctrl** or **cntl** or **cont**. Most terminals place it to the left of the keyboard. This key is used to send certain special characters.

The **ctrl** key is like another kind of shift key: to use it, hold it down while you press another key. For example, to send the computer a **<ctrl-D>** character, hold down the **ctrl** key, strike the **D** key, then release both keys.

Because control characters have no corresponding printable characters, in this tutorial they will be represented in the form:

    <ctrl-D>

for the character **ctrl-D**.

While you are typing information into the COHERENT system, you can correct the information before it is processed. Two keys will help you do this. The first is the **<kill>** character, which erases the line entirely and allows you to begin again. This is usually **<ctrl-U>**.

The other key is the **<erase>** character, normally **<ctrl-H>** or **<backspace>**. This moves the cursor one character to the left, to erase the most recently typed character. **<ctrl-H>** also serves as the backspace key.

## TUTORIALS



One more special key is the **<Interrupt>** key. This key aborts a command before it normally finishes. By default, **<ctrl-C>** is the abort key on your keyboard.

### **Try Some COHERENT Commands**

Now that you've logged in to your COHERENT system, try a few simple COHERENT commands to get a feel for COHERENT. Type the following examples just as they are shown, and observe what COHERENT does in response to each. Be sure to end each line with a **<Return>** .

The first example uses the command **cat**, to let you type a small chunk of text and save it in a file.

```
cat >file01
This is a sample COHERENT file.
<ctrl-D>
```

Remember, don't type **<ctrl-D>** literally — rather, hold down the **ctrl** key and press 'D' at the same time.

In the above script, the characters **cat** tell COHERENT to invoke its concatenation program. The characters **>file01** tells COHERENT to write what you type into a file that you name **file01**. The line

```
    This is a sample COHERENT file.
```

is the text that COHERENT writes into **file01**. Finally, **<ctrl-D>** signals COHERENT that you have finished typing.

Now type:

```
cat file01
```

This command again invokes the concatenation program **cat**, but this time tell it to print on your screen the contents of **file01**, which you just created. In reply to your command, COHERENT should print on your screen:

```
    This is a sample COHERENT file.
```

which is the text you entered in the previous exercise.

Finally, type the command:

```
lc
```

This command lists all of the files that you have in the current directory. In reply to your command, COHERENT should print on your screen:

```
Files:
    file01
```

which is the file you just created. (You may see other files as well.)

Congratulations! You have just made COHERENT work for you.

To review: The first command, **cat**, created a file and filled it with some text; the second **cat** typed the file out on your terminal; and the command **lc** printed the name of each of your files. The following sections of this tutorial describe each of these commands in more depth. Each command also has its own entry in the Lexicon, which appears in the second half of this manual; look there for a full description of each command, what it does, and how you can use it.

## 8 Using COHERENT

---

### Giving Commands to COHERENT

Once you have logged into COHERENT, all of its resources are yours to command. COHERENT's *commands* give you control over these resources.

Every COHERENT command has the same structure: the *command name*, which tells COHERENT the command you want it to execute; and the *arguments*, which detail what you want the command to do, how you want it to do it, and to what you want it done.

Some commands consist only of the command name, and do not take arguments. For example, the command

```
lc
```

which was introduced in the previous section, has **lc** as the first part and prints the names of all files in the current directory, in columns. If you have no files, **lc** prints nothing.

The second part of the command consists of the *arguments* given to the command. (These are also known by the term *parameters*.) Arguments are separated from each other by spaces or tab characters.

The arguments of the command are further divided into *options* and *names*. *Names* usually name files; *options* modify the action of the command. An option is usually prefixed by a hyphen '-'.

An example of a *name* argument is shown in this example of a **cat** command:

```
cat file01
```

This command types the contents of **file01** on your terminal. The name argument is **file01**.

For an example of options, consider the command **ls**. **ls** lists your file names one name per line. Thus, typing

```
ls
```

produces a list of the form:

```
file01
```

However, **ls** can tell you more about a file than just its name. To see additional information about each file, type:

```
ls -l
```

The '-l' option to **ls** prints a "long" output, of the following form:

```
-rw-r--r-- 1 you      17 Sat Aug 15 17:20 file01
```

This listing shows the size of the file, the date it was created or last modified, and its degree of protection. The letters to the left of the listing give the permissions for the file; these describe who is allowed to do what to the file. These are described in detail in the Lexicon articles for the commands **ls** and **chmod**. The other entries on that line respectively name the owner of the file (in this case, *you*); the size of the file in bytes; the date and time the file was last modified; and finally, the file's name.

As an example of combining an option parameter with a name parameter, consider the command:

```
ls -l file01
```

This invokes the command **ls**, tells it to print a long listing, and tells it to list only the file **file01**.

## TUTORIALS

As you will see in the following sections, almost all COHERENT commands have this syntax.

### ***help, man: Help with Commands***

The COHERENT system has two commands that give information about other commands: the **help** command, which prints a brief summary of how to use a command; and the **man** command, which prints the full Lexicon entry for that command on your screen.

To find out about the **help** command, type

```
help
```

by itself, or type:

```
help help
```

The latter command tells **help** to print the help entry for the **help** command itself.

To get information on the **lc** command, type:

```
help lc
```

To obtain detailed information on a command, use the **man** command. (**man** is short for “manual”.) As noted above, the **man** prints on your screen a duplicate of that command’s entry in the Lexicon. To learn more about the **man** command itself, type:

```
man man
```

If your screen fills with information, **man** will wait for you to type <Return> to continue. This is to prevent you from missing information should it scroll too fast. **man** also waits for you to type <Return> after it prints the last line of the description.

Our survey of elementary commands will conclude by describing two important tasks: how to reboot the computer, and how to log out.

### ***Shutting Down COHERENT and Rebooting***

Under many operating systems, such as MS-DOS, rebooting is as simple as pressing a couple of keys or cycling power on the computer. The COHERENT system, however, is a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system that is more sophisticated than MS-DOS or similar operating systems. COHERENT maintains an elaborate system of internal buffers that are designed to reduce the frequency with which a program has to read data from, or write data to, the hard disk. If you were just to turn the computer off and turn it on again, all of the data in those buffers would be lost. At the very least, each user would lose whatever data he was working with at the time; at worst, the COHERENT file system could be damaged and files lost.

For this reason, it is extremely important that you shut down COHERENT properly. You *must* follow these procedures if you want to shut off the computer, or if you wish to reboot MS-DOS.

To shut down COHERENT, do the following:

- Log in as the superuser **root** by typing the following command:

```
su root
```

COHERENT will ask you for the superuser’s password; type the password that you assigned to the superuser when you installed COHERENT on your computer. The Lexicon article on **superuser** describes what the superuser is; as will later sections of this tutorial.

## 10 Using COHERENT

---

- Once you have logged in as the superuser, type the following command:

```
/etc/shutdown
```

As its name implies, this command shuts down the COHERENT system. The command will ask you if you really, truly wish to shut down COHERENT; reply 'y', for "yes".

- COHERENT will indicate that it has returned to *single-user mode* by printing the prompt '#'. When this prompt appears, type the command:

```
sync
```

This command flushes all buffers and writes their contents to the hard disk. When you first type this command, you should hear or see the disk in action. Now, type it again. You probably will not hear any activity from the disk: that is because the buffers have been flushed and nothing remains to be written to the disk.

- Now, you can turn the computer off. If you wish to reboot COHERENT, instead of turning the computer off type the command:

```
/etc/reboot
```

This will reboot COHERENT automatically. Or, you can type **<ctrl><alt><del>**, or press the reset button on your computer (should it have one).

After you have rebooted your computer, just sit back and wait until you receive the **Coherent login:** prompt on your screen.

If you wish to reboot MS-DOS, type the command:

```
/etc/reboot
```

Instead of sitting back, however, watch the computer: wait until you see the computer attempting to read from the floppy-disk drive. At that moment, press the number key that corresponds to the hard-disk sector on which you stored MS-DOS, from 0 to 7. For example, if MS-DOS is kept on partition 2, then press **2** when the computer is attempting to read the floppy-disk drive. Be sure to press the number key that is on the main bank of keys, — *not* the key on the numeric keypad.

That's all there is to it. Shutting down is relatively simple and straightforward; but if you do not take the time to shut COHERENT down properly, you will find that you have destroyed some or all of your data.

### Logging Out

As noted above, *logging in* tells COHERENT who you are and that you wish to work with COHERENT for a while. When you have finished working with COHERENT, you must tell COHERENT that you are done for now. This process is called *logging out*.

There are three ways to log out. Each involves typing a special command to the COHERENT prompt. The first way is to type **<ctrl-D>** at the COHERENT prompt. The second is to type the command:

```
login
```

which logs you out and prepares for another login.

The third way is to type the command:

```
exit
```

## TUTORIALS

Each of these commands has the same effect: the COHERENT system flushes all buffers that you "own" and prints the prompt

Coherent login:

on your screen. At this point, you cannot issue any commands to COHERENT; but you (or someone else) can log into COHERENT from this terminal.

Please note that logging out is *not* the same as shutting down COHERENT. When you shut down COHERENT, you are shutting down the entire system. When you log out, however, you are simply ceasing to work with COHERENT. After you log out, COHERENT continues to work on its own: organizing files, exchanging information with other computers via modem, executing programs for users who have logged in via modem or other terminals, and in general making itself useful. If you shut off the computer after you log out, you will damage the file system, just the same as if you shut it off while you were logged in.

The following sections in this tutorial will go into COHERENT's commands in much more detail. All, however, will build on the elementary actions presented here: logging into COHERENT; issuing commands; receiving responses from COHERENT; and logging out.

## Working With Files and Directories

The *file* and the *directory* are the cornerstones of the COHERENT system. Practically everything you do on the system will involve files: changing files, invoking files, transmitting or receiving files, filling files up or emptying files out. And directories let you organize masses of files into a rational hierarchy.

This section discusses manipulating files and directories under the COHERENT system. It covers the following:

- What *file* and *directory* mean to COHERENT
- Introduces the commands for manipulating files, directories and their contents
- Discusses more advanced topics, such as creating and mounting new file systems
- Tours the COHERENT file system

This section of the tutorial covers much ground in a relatively brief space. Readers who are new to personal computers should concentrate on the earlier sub-sections, which cover elementary topics; whereas more experienced readers may wish to concentrate on the later sub-sections, which cover the more technical material.

### File Names

A *file* is a mass of electronic impulses that is given a name and stored on a disk. Files are given names to make them easy for you to retrieve. COHERENT has rules about how files can be named, to ensure that each file's name is unique.

The following are examples of legal file names:

```
.profile
File01
cmd.sh
file01
test.c
```

File names are generally made up of upper-case and lower-case letters and numbers. COHERENT, unlike MS-DOS, distinguishes capital letters from lower-case letters; therefore, to COHERENT the

## 12 Using COHERENT

---

file names **File01** and **file01** are different.

Any character can be used to name a file, including a control character. We recommend, however, that you name files using only upper- or lower-case alphabetic characters, numerals, and the punctuation marks '.' or '\_'.

The file name must not be more than 14 characters long. If you specify a longer name, characters beyond the 14th will be lopped off and thrown away. For example, COHERENT regards the file names

```
this_is_very_long_file_name_1
```

and

```
this_is_very_long_file_name_2
```

as being identical.

### Introduction to Directories

A *directory* is a group of files that have been given a name. Directories let you organize files systematically. This may not seem important now, but as you work with COHERENT you will find that you accumulate hundreds, or even thousands, of files; without system of directories to organize files, you would quickly lose track of what each file held, and find it nearly impossible to find any given file within your system.

Because files are stored within directories, the complete name of a file actually consists of its name plus the name of the directory in which it is stored. This lets COHERENT distinguish files that have the same name but are stored in different directories. COHERENT uses the slash character '/' to distinguish a directory name from a file name; for example, to view the contents of file **junk** in directory **text\_files**, you would use the command:

```
cat text_files/junk
```

This system of naming will be described in full in the next sub-section; for the moment, just bear in mind that for COHERENT to find a file, you must tell COHERENT not only the name of the file, but the name of the directory in which it is kept.

When you work with COHERENT, you are always "in" a directory. The directory you happen to be "in" at any given moment is called the *current directory*. The current directory is the one whose files you are working with at this moment. When you type the name of a file and do not mention what directory it is stored in, COHERENT assumes that the file is kept in the current directory. COHERENT includes commands that let you shift from one directory to another.

When you log into COHERENT, COHERENT places you "in" a directory that you "own". This directory is called your *home directory*. You control all of the files in your home directory; it is your "base of operations" for working within COHERENT.

### Path Names

As you may have deduced by now, a directory can contain both files and other directories. The directories within a directory may themselves contain both files and directories; which then may contain other files and directories; and so on.

This design of directories branching into other directories, which in turn branch into still other directories, is called *tree structured*. As the tree-metaphor implies, the COHERENT system of directories has a *root directory*, that is, a directory that is not contained in any other directory but from which all other directories descend, directly or indirectly. The name of the root directory is simply:

## TUTORIALS

/

One subdirectory of the root directory is called **usr**. This subdirectory contains the home directories of all users. Other common paths for home directories are **/u** and **/usr/acct**. To list the names of all user directories, type the command:

```
lc /usr
```

If your login name is **henry**, then the command

```
lc /usr/henry
```

lists the names of the files in your home directory. Please note that in the argument **/usr/henry**, the first slash names the root directory; all subsequent slashes serve simply to separate one directory name from the next.

The name **/usr/henry** is called a *path name*. The term “path name” means the full name of a given file or directory — including all the directories that lead from the root directory to it.

Path names may be full or partial. All full path names begin with **/** for root, and continue with further subdirectory names. Path names that do not begin with a slash are partial; COHERENT automatically prefixes them with the path name of the current directory to make them complete before it uses them.

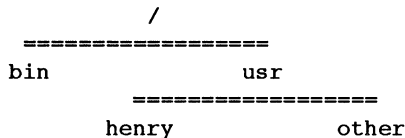
The elements of path names are separated by slashes, so if there were a file in **newdirectory** named **newfile**, you would refer to it as

```
newdirectory/newfile
```

The absence of a beginning slash indicates that the path name begins in the current directory. Thus, if your home directory name is **henry**, then another way to name the path to **newfile** is to type:

```
/usr/henry/newdirectory/newfile
```

The following diagram gives a rough description of the structure of the COHERENT file system:



Please note that unlike a real tree, the root of a tree structure has its root at the top rather than at the bottom. Here, the root directory **/** is at the top of the structure. It contains the directories **bin** and **usr** (among many others). Directory **usr** contains directories **henry** and **other** (again, among many others). These directories can contain many other directories and subdirectories.

In summary, a path name lists all the subdirectories leading from the root directory to the file in question. In the above example, **newfile** is a file in subdirectory **newdirectory**, which in turn is a file in the home directory **henry**, which is further a file in the directory **usr**. The directory **usr** is a file in the master or **root** directory for the system.

You don't need to specify all of this, fortunately, whenever you want to specify a file in a subdirectory. COHERENT assumes that partially specified path names are within the current directory. Therefore, you can specify a subdirectory by specifying the name of the directory first, followed by the rest of the path name.

## 14 Using COHERENT

---

COHERENT also allows two special abbreviations for directories. The abbreviation `..` always represents the current directory's *parent* directory. In the case of the directory `/usr/henry`, directory `usr` is the parent of directory `henry`. In other words, `..` stands for the directory in which the current directory resides. Every directory in the system except the root directory has a parent. For the root directory, `..` refers to itself.

Another directory abbreviation is `.`, which means the *current* directory.

The following sub-sections describe the commands that COHERENT includes for manipulating files and directories. As you work with COHERENT, you will use these commands continually, so it would be worth your while to spend a little time learning them.

### *ls, lc: Listing Your Directory*

This sub-section introduces two of the more commonly used commands: `ls` and `lc`. Both `ls` and `lc` list the files in a directory.

To see how these commands work, presume that your directory has the files created in previous sections and that you did not remove directory `newdirectory`. To list the files in your directory, simply use the command with no parameters:

```
ls
```

This produces a list of files, such as:

```
another
backup
doc1
doc2
file01
file02
newdirectory
stuff
```

The command `lc` also lists file names, but it prints the files and directories separately, in columns across the screen. For example, typing

```
lc
```

gives something of the form:

```
Directories:
  backup newdirectory
Files:
  another doc1 doc2 file01 file02
  stuff
```

If you want to list files in a directory other than your own, name that directory as an argument to the command. For example, `/bin` is a directory in the COHERENT system that contains commands. Type

```
lc /bin
```

and `lc` will print the contents of `/bin`.

Both `ls` and `lc` can take options. An option is indicated by a hyphen `-`. The option must appear before any other argument. For example, to list only the files in the directory for user `carol`, leaving out any directories, use the `f` option with `lc`:

## TUTORIALS



```
lc -f /usr/carol
```

Or, if you type the command

```
lc -f
```

the COHERENT system prints all of the files in the current directory. The following gives the commonly used options to the command **lc**:

```
-d      List directories only, omitting files
-f      List files only, omitting directories
-l      List files in single column format
```

**ls** produces a list of file names, one per line, and optionally much more information. To produce all the information, use the **-l** option (note that this is an “el”, not a numeral 1):

```
ls -l
```

The following gives a sample of the long list that this option produces. Headings have been added to show the meaning of each column:

Mode	#	Owner	Size, Bytes	Modification Date	Time	Name
-rw-r--r--	1	you	17	Wed Aug 19	17:51	file01
drwxrwxrwx	2	you	32	Wed Aug 19	17:53	backup
-rw-r--r--	1	you	17	Wed Aug 19	17:53	doc1

The meaning of each column will be explained later. For now, note that the last column gives the name of each file, and the fourth column from the left gives the size of each file, in bytes.

### **cat: Print Contents of a File**

The command **cat** opens and prints the contents of a text file — that is, a file of source code, a document, or a message file. For example, to list the contents of file **file01**, type:

```
cat file01
```

This command types the file’s contents on the terminal (sometimes also called the *standard output*).

Another use for **cat** — the use from which it gets its name — is to *concatenate* several files on the standard output. For example, the command

```
cat one two three
```

prints the files **one**, **two**, and **three**, one after the other, on the screen.

You can use **cat** to concatenate several files into one file by *redirecting* the standard output into a file. The special character ‘>’ tells COHERENT to redirect the standard output into a file. For example, the command

```
cat one two three >four
```

concatenates files **one two three** into file **four**. **four** need not exist prior to this command; if it does, its previous contents are replaced with the data redirected into it.

Redirection is a very useful feature of COHERENT that will be used through the rest of this tutorial. The ‘>’ operator also gives an example of the set of operators that can be used with COHERENT commands. These operators, which increase the power of each COHERENT command, will be described in detail later in this tutorial.

### ***more: List Files on the Screen***

If the file you list with **cat** is more than 24 lines long, the beginning lines of the file scroll off the screen too quickly for you to read them. To ensure that you see all of the lines in the file, use the command **more**.

**more** prints a file in 24-line chunks. After it has listed a chunk of text, it pauses and waits for you to press **<space>**. If you call **more** with an option of **-s**,

```
more -s file
```

it will skip all blank lines that are in the text file.

### ***mkdir: Create a Directory***

The command **mkdir** creates a new directory. For example, to create a new directory named **newdirectory**, type the following command:

```
mkdir newdirectory
```

If you follow this command with **ls**, it lists your regular files, but it also lists **newdirectory** separately as a directory:

```
Directories:
  newdirectory
Files:
  file01      file02
```

To refer to any files in **newdirectory**, use its name in specifying the path name.

Now, create a file in the new directory:

```
cat >newdirectory/newfile
lines to be
contained in newfile
<ctrl-D>
```

This command copies lines to the file described by the partial path name **newdirectory/newfile**.

### ***cd: Change Directory***

The command **cd** changes the current working directory. For example, the command

```
cd newdirectory
```

moves you into directory **newdirectory** that you created in the previous sub-section. Now, if you type the command **ls**, to show the contents of the current directory, it will show the following:

```
Files:
  newfile
```

To return to the previous directory, use the command:

```
cd ..
```

As noted earlier, the abbreviation **..** always indicates the current directory's parent directory.

### ***pwd: Print Working Directory***

The command **pwd** prints the name of the current, or *working*, directory. For example, if your login name is **henry**, then if you type

```
pwd
```

you will see:

```
/usr/henry
```

Now, use the **cd** command to switch to directory **newdirectory**, as follows:

```
cd newdirectory
```

When you type

```
pwd
```

you will see:

```
/usr/henry/newdirectory
```

Finally, use the **cd** command to return to the previous directory, as follows:

```
cd ..
```

When you type

```
pwd
```

you now see:

```
/usr/henry
```

If you are ever unsure what directory you are in, use the **pwd** command.

### ***mv, cp: Move and Copy Files***

The command **mv** moves files. You can move a file from one name to another within the current directory (in effect rename the file), or you can move a file from one directory to another. The **mv** command takes two parameters: the first names the file to be moved; the second names either the new name that you are giving to the file, or the directory into which you are moving the file.

For example, to move file **file01** into directory **newdirectory**, type:

```
mv file01 newdirectory
```

To see where **file01** is now, type the following command:

```
ls newdirectory
```

The result is:

```
Files:
newfile
```

To move **newfile** back into the current directory, use the command:

```
mv newdirectory/newfile .
```

Remember, the abbreviation **'.'** always stands for the current directory.

## 18 Using COHERENT

---

As noted above, the **mv** command can also be used to rename files within the current directory. For example, to change the name of **newfile** to **oldfile**, use the following command:

```
mv newfile oldfile
```

If the current directory already has a file named **oldfile**, it will be thrown away and replaced with the file that used to be named **newfile**.

The command **cp** copies a file. This command has two parameters: the first names the file to be copied, and the second names the file or directory into which it is to be copied. For example, to copy **oldfile** in the current directory back into **newfile**, use the following command:

```
cp oldfile newfile
```

If **newfile** already exists, it will be replaced by a copy of **oldfile**.

If you wished to copy **newfile** into directory **newdirectory**, use the command:

```
cp newfile newdirectory
```

Now, when you type the command

```
lc newdirectory
```

you will see:

```
Files:
    newfile
```

As you can see, **newfile** has been copied into **newdirectory**. If **newdirectory** had already contained a file called **newfile**, that file would have been replaced with the newer **newfile** being copied into **newdirectory**.

The following example summarizes what's been presented so far about files and directories. For purposes of the example, assume that your login name is **henry**, and that you have in your home directory files **doc1** and **doc2** that you wish to back up for safekeeping.

Before you can back up these files, you must first create them. First, use the command **cat** to create file **file01**, as follows:

```
cat >doc1
a few
lines of
text
<ctrl-D>
```

Likewise, create file **doc2**:

```
cat >doc2
second file
with some text
<ctrl-D>
```

(Don't forget that **<ctrl-D>** means to hold the control key down and simultaneously type **D**.)

The command **lc** will now show you the files and directories in your current directory:

```
Directories:
  newdirectory
Files:
  doc1    doc2    newfile    oldfile
```

The next step is to create the directory to hold the back-up copies. To help remind yourself what the directory is for, name it **backup**.

```
mkdir backup
```

Now, **lc** shows you:

```
Directories:
  backup    newdirectory
Files:
  doc1    doc2    newfile    oldfile
```

The next step is to use **cp** to copy your files into **backup**:

```
cp doc1 backup
cp doc2 backup
```

After you issue these commands, **lc** still says:

```
Directories:
  backup    newdirectory
Files:
  doc1    doc2    newfile    oldfile
```

However, if you list the contents of subdirectory **backup**

```
lc backup
```

you will see:

```
Files:
  doc1 doc2
```

The files have been successfully copied into the back-up directory.

For a full description of these commands and the options available with each, see their respective entries in the Lexicon.

### ***rm, rmdir: Remove Files and Directories***

The command **rm** removes a file. For example, if you wish to remove file **doc2** in directory **backup**, type the following command:

```
rm backup/doc2
```

After typing this command, use the command **lc** to show the contents of directory **backup**, as follows:

```
lc backup
```

You should see:

## 20 Using COHERENT

---

```
Files:
doc1
```

As you can see, file **doc2** has been removed.

You can remove several files at once, simply by listing them on the **rm** command's command line. For example:

```
rm file01 file02
```

removes files **file01** and **file02**.

Note that once you remove a file with **rm**, it is gone forever. The COHERENT system does not warn you if you **rm** several files at once; it will assume that you know what you're doing and carry out your command silently. For this reason, be careful when you use the **rm** command, or you may receive a rude surprise.

You cannot use the command **rm** to remove a directory. COHERENT does this to help prevent you from wiping out an entire file system with one simple **rm** command. To remove a directory, use the command **rmdir**. For example, to remove the directory **newdirectory**, type:

```
rmdir newdirectory
```

Note that before you can delete a directory, that directory must not have any files or directories in it. If you try to remove a directory that has files or directories in it, COHERENT will print an error message on your screen and refuse to remove the directory.

For a full description of these commands and the options available with each, see their respective entries in the Lexicon.

### ***du, df: How Much Space?***

Files occupy space on your hard disk. (A corollary to Parkinson's law states that files expand to fill the disk allotted to them.) It is somewhat disconcerting to attempt to save a large file, only to find that you have run out of disk space. To help you manage your hard disk, COHERENT includes the commands **du** and **df**.

The disk-usage command **du** tells you how much disk space the files in the current directory occupy. If the directory has sub-directories, these are listed separately. **du** prints disk usage in blocks; each block is 512 bytes (half a kilobyte).

The disk-free command **df** tells you how many blocks are left free on your disk. By default it prints information only about the file system you are now in.

If you find that you are running low on disk space, you must free up some space. You can do that by removing files you no longer need; by *compressing* files that you do not use often; or by backing files up to floppy disk and then removing them. We have already described how to remove files. Look in the Lexicon entry for the command **compress** for information on how to compress and uncompress files. Following sections in this tutorial will describe how to copy files to floppy disk.

For more information on these commands, see their respective entries in the Lexicon.

### ***In: Link Files***

COHERENT has a feature that allows a file to have more than one name. When you create a file, you give it a name; COHERENT *links* the name you give the file with its internal system of managing files. (For more information on how COHERENT identifies files, see the Lexicon entry for **i-node**.) COHERENT allows you to give a file more than one name; another way of expressing this is to say that you can give a file *multiple links*.

## TUTORIALS

To create a new link to an existing file, use the command **ln**. This command takes two arguments: the first names the file to which you wish to give a new link, and the second gives the name that you wish to link to that file. If the name you are linking to a file is already being used by a file, that name is unlinked from its current file and linked to the file named in the **ln** command line.

For example to link the file **doc1** to the name **another**, use the following command:

```
ln doc1 another
```

The “new” file has the same data in it as the “old” file; in fact, the names **doc1** and **another** are synonyms for the same file.

The next point is somewhat subtle. When you use the command **rm** to remove a file, what you are actually doing is breaking the link between that file and its name. The file is not actually removed from disk until all links are broken between it and all of its names. In the above example, if you use the command

```
rm another
```

to remove the file **another**, the file **doc1** remains in existence, and the data to which the names **another** and **doc1** remains on the disk. If you then use the command

```
rm doc1
```

to remove **doc1**, then you will have broken all links between that file and the COHERENT system, and COHERENT will remove it from the disk.

Links are useful if you wish a file to be used in two different contexts but have the same data. For example, if you file **doc1** in two different manuscripts, you can create links to the file in two different directories, one for each manuscript. Thus, any changes you make to the file under either its names will appear automatically in both manuscripts. Note that if you copy over one link to a file, all links still point to the same file. However, if you use either a command of the form

```
ln -f file01 file02
```

or a command of the form

```
mv file01 file02
```

only the link which is overwritten points to the new file; other links continue to point to the old file.

As always, see the Lexicon for a full description of the **ln** command.

## File Permissions

As you recall, the command **ls -l** prints a mass of information about each file. The following repeats the information that appeared when you typed **ls -l**:

Mode	#	Owner	Size,	Modification			Name
			Bytes	Date	Time		
-rw-r--r--	1	you	17	Wed Aug 19	17:51		file01
drwxrwxrwx	2	you	32	Wed Aug 19	17:53		backup
-rw-r--r--	1	you	17	Wed Aug 19	17:53		doc1

Column 3 names the owner; in this example, **you** represents your login name, whatever you have set it to. Column 4 gives the size of the file, in bytes. Columns 5 through 7 give the day of the week and the date on which the file was last modified. Column 8 gives the time the file was last modified or, if the file was last modified more than a year ago, the year it was last modified. Column 9 gives

## 22 Using COHERENT

---

the name of the file.

Column 1 gives the *mode* of the file. The mode summarizes the *permissions* attached to this file.

Before going further, the concept of file permissions should be reviewed. COHERENT is a multi-user operating system, which means that more than one person can log into the system, walk through its file system, execute commands, and manipulate files. Every user has files that she “owns” — that is, that she has created and that she wishes to protect against being altered or removed by others. After all, it would be disconcerting if you were to log into your system, only to find that some of your key files had been trashed by another user, without your knowledge or permission.

The COHERENT system protects files by its system of file permissions. Permissions have two aspects: the *type* of permission, and the *scope* of permission. There are three *types* of permission:

**read permission**

Permission to read a file.

**write permission**

Permission to write into a file.

**execute permission**

Permission to execute a file, assuming that file contains executable code instead of text.

Likewise, there are also three types of *scope*:

**user** The permissions extended to the owner of the file.

**group** The permissions extended to the group of users to which the owner belongs. For more information on what *group* is, see the Lexicon entry for **group**.

**other** The permissions extended to all other users.

The *mode* column describes all permissions attached to a file. It also gives other information about a file, such as whether the file is a directory. Taking the entry for file **file01** as an example, we see:

1	2	3	4	#	Owner	Size	Date	Time	File name
-	r	w	-	-	1	you	17	Sat Aug 15 17:20	file01

As you can see, the mode field is divided into four subfields, in this example labelled ‘1’ through ‘4’.

Subfield 1 indicates whether this file is a directory. If the file were a directory, this would contain a **d**; otherwise, it contains a hyphen.

Subfields 2 through 4 describe the type of permission extended to, respectively, the owner, the owner’s group, and other users. Each subfield consists of three characters. The first character indicates whether the file is readable; if it is, then the character is an ‘r’; otherwise, it’s a hyphen. The second character indicates whether the file is writable; if it is, then the character is a ‘w’; otherwise, it’s a hyphen. The third character indicates whether the file is executable; if it is, then the character is an ‘x’; otherwise, it’s a hyphen.

In the above example, file **file01** grants read and write permission to its owner, read permission to the other members of the owner’s group, and read permission to all other users.

The COHERENT system has a set of default permissions that it applies to every file when it’s created. To change this default set of permissions, use the command **umask**. For information about this command, see its entry in the Lexicon. To change the permissions of an existing file, use the command **chmod**, as described in the following sub-section.



### ***chmod: Change File Permissions***

To change the mode of a file, use the change-mode command **chmod**. For example, to protect file **doc1** in directory **backup** from being overwritten, use the command:

```
chmod -w backup/doc1
```

where the **-w** means "remove write permission" and is followed by the file name. Henceforth, if you try to write into this file, the COHERENT system will refuse to do so and will print an error message on your screen.

To allow other users to read the backup file **doc2**, type:

```
chmod o+r backup/doc2
```

where the letter **o** signifies "other users", and the **+r** tells **chmod** to grant read permission.

To see the new set of permissions, type the command:

```
ls -l backup
```

As you can see, the mode string has changed from what it was above.

Directory access permissions are similar to file access permissions in that they can easily be changed via command **chmod**. However, the permission bits have different meanings for directories. Permitting reads on a directory allows the user to see the contents of the directory via commands such as **lc** or **ls**; permitting execution on a directory allows access to the files in the directory; and permitting writes on a directory allows the user to create or delete files in the directory, regardless of the permissions on the actual file. The latter causes the most difficulty for new users since they mistakenly associate file deletion permissions with the actual file rather than with the directory containing the file.

### ***Creating and Mounting a File System***

Earlier, we described how the COHERENT system consists of a tree of directories; and how that tree branches from the root directory '/'. This is a useful description, and true as far as it goes; but the full situation is a little more complex.

The tree of COHERENT directories in fact consists of any number of *file systems*, each of which exists on its own physical device. A *physical device* may be a partition on your hard disk, a floppy disk, or even a chunk of RAM.

The COHERENT system contains a suite of commands that let you create a new file system on a physical device, and graft (or *mount*) that new file system onto the COHERENT directory tree. The following few sub-sections will walk you through the steps of creating a new file system on a floppy disk and mounting it onto your existing COHERENT directory tree. These descriptions may be a bit too advanced for beginners; but most users will file them to be interesting and helpful.

#### ***fdformat: Format a Diskette***

The first step in creating our new file system is to format a floppy disk. The command **fdformat** formats a diskette. When a diskette is formatted, COHERENT writes information on each track that makes it possible for the diskette to hold a file system.

**fdformat** uses the following syntax:

```
/etc/fdformat device
```

where *device* is the name of the device to be formatted. To format a high-density, 5.25-inch

## 24 Using COHERENT

---

diskette, use the command:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fha0
```

To format a high-density, 3.5-inch diskette, type:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/fva0
```

To format a low-density, 5.25-inch diskette, type:

```
/etc/fdformat /dev/f9a0
```

For this example, we'll assume that you have a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk. Insert into drive 0 (that is, drive A) of your computer, and type the command:

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0
```

The **-v** option to **fdformat** tells it to verify that the disk is sound. This option means that the command will take longer to execute, but in the long run it's worth it as it will ensure that you do not waste time to trying to copy data onto a flawed disk.

When this command has finished executing, leave the floppy disk in drive 0.

See the Lexicon entry for **fdformat** for more information on this command and its options.

### **mkfs: Create a File System**

The command **mkfs** creates a file system on a physical device. This command has the following syntax:

```
/etc/mkfs special proto
```

*special* names the physical device on which the file system is to be built. *proto* is either a number or a file name. If it is a number, **mkfs** builds a file system of that size in blocks.

For our example, type the command:

```
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 2400
```

This command will write a file system onto device **/dev/fha0**, which in this case represents the floppy disk in drive 0 that we just formatted. The number 2400 represents the number of blocks that fits onto such a disk. Please note that the above example is for a 5.25-inch, high-density floppy disk. For directions on how to create a file system on a floppy disk of different size or density, see the Lexicon article on **floppy disks**.

If *proto* is not a number, **mkfs** assumes that it is a prototype file. The command **badscan** scans a physical device for bad blocks and writes such a prototype file for you. Prototype files are beyond the scope of this example; but for information on them see the Lexicon entry for **badscan** or the Lexicon entry for **floppy disks**. The latter article summarizes all the ways in which floppy disks are used by the COHERENT system.

### **mount: Mount a File System**

Now that you have formatted your floppy disk and built a file system on it, you can *mount* the newly created file system. *Mounting* grafts this device's file system onto the COHERENT system's directory tree. Thereafter, you can write files onto that device, read them, remove them, or do anything else that you wish with that device and its contents.

**mount** has the following syntax:

## TUTORIALS

```
/etc/mount device directory
```

*device* names the physical device whose file system is to be mounted. *directory* names the *base directory* for that file system. The base directory is the directory by which the file system is accessed. For example, directory **/usr** is the base directory for the file system that holds all users' home directories. We'll describe base directories a little further in a few paragraphs.

For purposes of our example, type the following command:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /f0
```

This mounts the file system on the disk in drive 0 onto base directory **/f0**.

The base directory by convention is a directory in the root directory **'/'**. You do not have to do this, however. For example, if your user name was **henry** and you wished to mount the file system on the floppy disk in your home directory, you could type:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /usr/henry/backup
```

This will mount the file system on the floppy disk onto directory **/etc/henry** and name its base directory as **backup**. Note that if directory **backup** already existed in directory **/usr/henry**, its contents will be inaccessible until you unmount the file system on the floppy disk. Unmounting is discussed in the following sub-section.

For more information on mounting a file system, see (surprise!) the Lexicon article **mount**.

### ***Using a Newly Mounted File System***

Now that you have created and mounted a file system, you can use it like any other directory. To see how this works, type the following command:

```
cat >/f0/testfile
Here's some text we're writing onto the
newly mounted file system on a floppy disk.
<ctrl-D>
```

Here you can use the **cat** command to write some text into file **testfile** which lives on the floppy disk you just mounted. To see that this text has been written there, type:

```
cat /f0/textfile
```

You should see the floppy-disk drive whirl briefly, and the following appear on your screen:

```
Here's some text we're writing onto the
newly mounted file system on a floppy disk.
```

You can now use this file system like any other, even though it lives on a floppy disk rather than your hard disk. As you can see, this is an easy way to extend the size of your COHERENT system's file system.

### ***umount: Unmount a File System***

Finally, when you have finished working with a file system, you must use the command **umount** to un-mount it. This command prunes the file system on a given physical device from the COHERENT system's directory tree. You will use this command frequently as you use floppy disks.

**umount** takes one argument: the name of the physical device being unmounted. In our example, the command

```
/etc/umount /dev/fha0
```

unmounts the file system on the high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk insert into drive 0 (that is, drive A) on your computer.

Under unsophisticated operating systems like MS-DOS, you can insert or remove floppy disks without giving the matter a second thought. The COHERENT system, however, uses a complex set of buffers to speed the reading and writing of information to the floppy disk; for this reason, if you simply yank a floppy disk out of its drive, all of the information in the COHERENT system's buffers will be lost. Worse, if you yank out a floppy disk and insert a COHERENT-formatted floppy disk, the COHERENT system will write the data in its buffers onto that new floppy disk — and probably destroy its file system in the process. Unmounting a file system tells the COHERENT system to flush all information in its buffers and write it onto the disk.

To emphasize this point, please read the following carefully:

*If you mount a floppy disk, you must use the **umount** command to unmount it before you remove the disk from its drive. If you do not, data will be destroyed.*

This concludes the discussion of how to mount create a file system, mount it, and use it. See the Lexicon article **floppy disks** for further information on how to do this task.

The following two sub-sections discuss how to check a file system, to ensure its integrity.

### ***fsck: Check a File System***

The command **fsck** checks a file system, to ensure its integrity. For example:

```
fsck /dev/root
```

where **/dev/root** is a disk device, checks the file system located on device **/dev/root**.

If possible, you should **umount** the file system before you check it. You cannot **umount** the root file system. If you can't unmount it, be sure that no other users are on the system (i.e., that you are in single-user mode), then reboot the system immediately *without* performing a **sync**. If other users are creating or expanding files while the file systems are being checked, **fsck** will report false errors.

If **fsck** finds any discrepancies, it writes appropriate messages on the terminal. An absence of messages indicates that there are no problems with the file system. The appendix to this manual gives all of **fsck**'s error messages, and suggests how you should respond to each.

COHERENT's boot routines run **fsck** automatically, and will rerun it if necessary to fix problems with the file system. For more information on **fsck**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

### ***Devices, Files, and Drivers***

The next few sub-sections introduce the topic of special files and devices. You brushed this topic in the earlier section that described how to format and mount a file system on a floppy disk; the following few sections go into it more systematically. Beginners will probably find that much of this sub-section is mystifying, but experienced users and ambitious beginners probably will find much of value here.

To begin, the COHERENT system is designed to provide device-independent I/O. Devices and files are handled in a consistent way. Each I/O device is represented as a *special file* in directory **/dev**. For example, if your system has a line printer device named **lp**, you can list a file, named **prog** for example, on the printer by saying:

```
cat prog >/dev/lp
```

Another example is to copy the file **prog** with the **cp** command to your terminal:

```
cp prog /dev/tty
```

There are two types of special files represented in **/dev**, and when you list **/dev** with **ls** it will separate them.

The first type is a *block special* file. This type includes disks and magnetic tape. These devices are read and written in blocks of 512 bytes, and can be randomly accessed. (As a practical note, note that magnetic tape can be read in a random fashion only by positioning backwards and forwards one record at a time; disks can be read or written in a totally random fashion.)

The I/O to and from block devices is buffered to improve overall system performance. When a program writes a block of data, the data are held in a buffer to be written at a later time. If the same block is read twice in a row, the data for it is still available in memory and do not have to be fetched from the physical device.

A special program named **/etc/update** forces all buffered data to the physical device periodically by calling the command **sync**, to protect against losing data in the case of an accident, such as a power failure. If you must bring the system down, you must force the latest data to be written by typing the command **sync**.

### Character-Special Files

The second kind of special file is called a *character-special* file. Included in this class are devices that are not block special: terminals, printers, and so on. Disks and tapes can also be treated as character special files. For every block special file for a disk, such as

```
/dev/at0c
```

there is usually a character-special file:

```
/dev/rat0c
```

Character-special files are sometimes called *raw* files, hence the prefix **r** in **rat0c**. A raw file has no buffering or other intermediate processing performed on its information. This difference is an efficient benefit to commands such as **dump** and **fsck**, which do their own buffering.

### tty Processing

One special set of devices has other processing — the **tty** or terminal files. A terminal-special file with this special processing is called a *cooked* device. The processing includes handling the **kill**, **erase**, **interrupt**, **quit**, **stop**, **start**, and **end-of-file** characters. Processing can be disabled with the command **stty** so the program deals with the raw device. However, using a raw **tty** device generally has negative effects on performance of the COHERENT system.

### A Tour Through the File System

Our introduction to COHERENT's system of files and directories concludes with a tour of the COHERENT file system. Much of this material has been described earlier.

### General File System Layout

The base of the file system is the **root** directory, whose name is simply:

```
/
```

Most of the files in the root are directories. To list the files in the **root** directory, type:

## 28 Using COHERENT

---

```
lc /
```

### **/bin**

Most of the commonly used commands are programs contained in **/bin**, such as the command **lc** used in the above example. Foreign commands, such as MicroEMACS and **kermit**, are placed in directory **/usr/bin**.

The shell does not automatically look in **/bin** for commands, but consults the variable **PATH** to determine where commands are to be found. A typical value for **PATH** is:

```
/bin:/usr/bin:.
```

This tells the shell to look for commands in three places (in this order): **/bin**, **/usr/bin**, and finally **..**, the current directory. The shell does not consult **PATH** if the command contains one or more **/** characters, indicating a complete or partial path specification.

### **/dev**

Devices in the COHERENT system are accessed through files in the directory **/dev**. If there is a line printer available on the system named **lp**, you can print characters from a file named **testdata** by typing the command:

```
cat testdata >/dev/lp
```

All devices on the system are represented in the **/dev** directory. Note that it is not recommended you access devices directly, but use the COHERENT system's utilities that *spool* files to them. This will prevent two users attempting to write material to a device simultaneously, and so garbling the output. For example, to access the line-printer device, use the spooler **lpr**. See the Lexicon's entries on **lpr** and **device drivers**.

### **/drv**

A unique feature of the COHERENT system is the concept of loadable device drivers. This feature lets COHERENT system programmers write their own device drivers without modifying the rest of the system. Drivers can be unloaded, modified, and reloaded without halting and rebooting the system. Loadable drivers are kept in directory **/drv**. To load a driver, type:

```
/etc/drvld /drv/driver
```

where *driver* is the driver to load. See the Lexicon's entry on **drvld** for more information.

### **/etc**

Several commands that you will use in your role as system administrator are kept in directory **/etc**. These are described in detail elsewhere in this guide. They include commands for system accounting, booting the system, mounting the system, create file systems, and control system time.

Also in **/etc** are several data files used in system administration. These include **/etc/passwd**, the file containing user names, ids, and passwords; news files; and file **/etc/ttys**, which describes the properties of each user terminal attached to the system.

## **/lib**

The COHERENT system provides many useful functions for performing input and output (I/O) and mathematics, for use in your C programs. These and other libraries, along with the phases of the C compiler itself, are kept in directory **/lib**. This directory includes files containing standard system calls, standard I/O, and mathematical routines such as **sin**, **cos**, and **log**.

## **/usr**

The directory **/usr** contains user directories, along with a few system directories.

**/usr/adm** contains additional information of interest to the system administrator.

**/usr/bin** contains commands that were not entirely created by Mark Williams Company.

**/usr/games** contains computer games. **/usr/games/lib/fortunes** holds a set of *bon mots*; the game **fortune** selects one at random and prints it on your screen. A call to this game can be placed in a user's **.profile**, so he will see a new fortune each time that he logs on. To add fortunes of your own, just edit the file **/usr/games/lib/fortunes**.

The directory **/usr/include** contains header files for C programs, such as **stdio.h**. Other header files define formats of files and other important data structures in the system.

**/usr/lib** contains the macro files **ms** and **man** used the **nroff** text processor; the unit conversion tables for the command **units**; and the file **/usr/lib/crontab** used to hold commands for **cron**. This directory also holds the C libraries.

**/usr/man** contains manual sections referenced by the commands **man** and **help** commands.

**/usr/msg**s stores messages displayed by the command **msgs**.

**/usr/pub** contains public files, such as telephone numbers and a copy of the ASCII table.

**/usr/spool** contains information for line-printer spooling, and mail that has not yet been delivered.

## **/u**

In some systems, users' directories are placed on a separate device to save space. Because a separate device has a separate file system, the directory on that device is called **/u**.

## **Files: Conclusion**

This concludes this tutorial's discussion of files and directories. The rest of this tutorial introduces COHERENT's suite of commands, and discusses topics of special interest to persons who are administering COHERENT systems.

## **Introduction to COHERENT Commands**

This section introduces COHERENT's commands. The COHERENT system comes with more than 200 commands, which perform a variety of work, from formatting text, to editing files, to performing low-level administration of the system. The commands that manipulate files and directories were introduced in the previous section; there are, however, many other varieties of commands, many of which will be introduced here. To begin, we'll introduce the COHERENT system's master command, the *shell*.

### The Shell

When you type commands into the COHERENT system, it appears that you are communicating directly with the computer. This is not exactly true, however. When you type into the COHERENT system, you are actually working with a special COHERENT program, the shell. This program reads, interprets, and executes every command that you type into the system. The shell can also interpret, expand, and otherwise flesh out what you type; this is done to help spare you unnecessary typing, and to permit you to assemble powerful commands with only a few keystrokes.

Please note, in passing, that the COHERENT system comes with two shells: the Korn shell **ksh** and the Bourne shell **sh**. These shells have somewhat different features. The descriptions in this section assume that you are using **sh**, which is COHERENT's default shell.

The shell is so powerful that mastering it is a major accomplishment; however, you can take advantage of much of what the shell offers by learning a few simple commands and procedures.

This section introduces some commands commonly used by COHERENT users. For more information on these or other commands see **help** and **man**. Also, consult the Lexicon.

Please note the following special punctuation characters:

```
* ? [ ] | ; { }  
( ) $ = : ` ' " < > << >>
```

These characters have special meaning to the shell, and typing them can cause the shell to behave quite differently from what you may expect. Do not use these characters until you have read the following section, which discusses their use, or until they are presented in examples.

### Redirecting Input and Output

Most COHERENT commands write their output to the *standard output* device, which is normally your terminal's screen. For example, **who** prints on your terminal the name of each user currently logged into your COHERENT system:

```
who
```

By using the special character **>**, you can redirect the output of **who** into a file. The command

```
who >whofile
```

writes this information into **whofile**. The operator **>** tells COHERENT to *redirect* the standard output. Later, you can list the information on your terminal using **cat**:

```
cat whofile
```

Once the information is in a file, you can process it in other ways. For example

```
sort whofile
```

sorts the contents of **whofile** and prints the results on your screen. In this way, you can display the users' names on your terminal in alphabetical order.

You can also redirect the *standard input* to accept input from a file rather than from your terminal. To redirect the standard input, use the special character **<** before the name of the file that you want read as the standard input. For example, the command **mail** sends electronic mail to another user; normally, it "mails" what you type on the standard input, but you can use **<** to tell it to mail the contents of a file instead.



```
mail fred <whofile
```

mails the contents of **whofile** to user **fred**.

## Pipes

The *pipe* is an important feature of the COHERENT system. Pipes allow you to hook several programs together by redirecting the output of one into the input of the next. A pipe is represented by the character '|' in the command line.

Most COHERENT programs are written to act as *filters*. A filter is a program that reads its input one line at a time or one character at a time, performs some transformation upon what it has read, and then writes the transformed data to the standard output device. You can easily perform complex transformations on data by hooking a number of simple filters together with pipes. Consider, for example, the command:

```
who | sort
```

Here, the command **who** generates a list of persons who are logged into the system. The output of **who** is then piped to the program **sort**, which sorts the list of users into alphabetical order and prints them on the standard error device.

The power and flexibility of the COHERENT operating system owes much to the pipe.

## Superuser

A special user in the COHERENT system, called the *superuser*, has privileges greater than those of other users. The superuser can read all files (except encrypted files) and execute all programs. You must be logged in as the superuser during certain phases of your work as system administrator.

There are two ways to access the COHERENT system as the superuser. The first is to login under the user name **root**. When the system prompts

```
Coherent login:
```

reply:

```
root
```

This automatically makes you **superuser**. To remind you that you are superuser, the COHERENT system prompts you with **root:** instead of the usual **\$**.

The second way to acquire the privileges of superuser is to issue the command

```
su
```

when you are logged in as a user other than **root**. You must have privileges to access **root** to do this, and you must know the password for **root**. When you type

```
<ctrl-D>
```

in this mode, COHERENT returns you to your previous identity.

To be the superuser for only one command, use the form of the command

```
su root command
```

*command* is the command to be executed as superuser. For example, to edit the message of the day file **/etc/motd** if you are not the superuser, type

## 32 Using COHERENT

---

```
su root me /etc/motd
```

When you finish using MicroEMACS, your original user id will be unchanged.

To limit access to privileged resources, the COHERENT system requires users to enter *passwords* before being granted that privilege. Users may be required to enter passwords before logging in.

If the **root** user has a password, you will be prompted for it. If you do not enter it correctly, the system will tell you

```
Sorry
```

and not allow you to become the **superuser**.

It is normal practice to protect access to superuser status by setting the password. If you are the only user of your COHERENT system, or if you deeply trust all other users, you do not have to do so. However, because the superuser can perform any sort of mayhem on your system, it is advisable to set the password, especially if outsiders can dial into your system via modem.

### Manipulating Text Under COHERENT

The COHERENT system includes a number of commands and utilities with which you can process text. The phrase *process text* means to edit it and prepare it for printing.

#### MicroEMACS: Text Screen Editor

COHERENT includes a full-featured screen editor, called MicroEMACS. MicroEMACS allows you to divide the screen into sections, called *windows*, and display and edit a different file in each one. It has a full search-and-replace function, allows you to define keyboard macros, and has a large set of commands for killing and moving text.

Also, MicroEMACS has a full help function for C programming. Should you need information about any macro or library function that is included with COHERENT, all you need to do is move the text cursor over that word and press a special combination of keys; MicroEMACS will then open a window and display information about that macro or function.

For a list of the MicroEMACS commands, see the Lexicon entry for **me**, the MicroEMACS command. A following section of this manual gives a full tutorial on MicroEMACS. In the meantime, however, you can begin to use MicroEMACS by learning a half-dozen or so commands.

To invoke MicroEMACS, type the command

```
me hello.c
```

at the COHERENT prompt. This invokes MicroEMACS to edit a file called **hello.c**. Now, type the following text, as it is shown here. If you make a mistake, simply backspace over it and type it correctly; the backspace key will wrap around lines:

```
main()
{
    printf("hello, world\n");
}
```

When you have finished, *save* the file by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>** (that is, hold down the control key and type 'X', then hold down the control key and type 'S'). MicroEMACS will tell you how many lines of text it just saved. Exit from the editor by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**.

## TUTORIALS

Now, re-invoke MicroEMACS by typing

```
me hello.c
```

The text of the file you just typed is now displayed on the screen. Try changing the word **hello** to **Hello**, as follows: First, type **<ctrl-N>**. That moves you to the *next* line. (The command **<ctrl-P>** would move you to the *previous* line, if there were one.) Now, type the command **<ctrl-F>**. As you can see, the cursor moved *forward* one space. Continue to type **<ctrl-F>** until the cursor is located over the letter 'h' in **hello**. If you overshoot the character, move the cursor *backwards* by typing **<ctrl-B>**.

When the cursor is correctly positioned, delete the 'h' by typing the *delete* command **<ctrl-D>**; then type a capital 'H' to take its place.

With these few commands, you can load files into memory, edit them, create new files, save them to disk, and exit. This just gives you a sample of what MicroEMACS can do, but it is enough so that you can begin to do real work.

Now, again *save* the file by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>**, and exit from MicroEMACS by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**.

Just as a reminder, the following table gives the MicroEMACS commands presented above:

<b>&lt;ctrl-N&gt;</b>	Move cursor to the <i>next</i> line
<b>&lt;ctrl-P&gt;</b>	Move cursor to the <i>previous</i> line
<b>&lt;ctrl-F&gt;</b>	Move cursor <i>forward</i> one character
<b>&lt;ctrl-B&gt;</b>	Move cursor <i>backward</i> one character
<b>&lt;ctrl-D&gt;</b>	Delete a character
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-S&gt;</b>	Save the edited file
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-C&gt;</b>	Exit from MicroEMACS
<b>&lt;ctrl-Z&gt;</b>	Save a file and exit

Note that on some terminals, the arrow keys will not work. Note, too, that some remote terminals may have trouble using **<ctrl-S>**, if they use XON/XOFF to control flow. In this case, use **<ctrl-Z>** instead.

For more information, see the tutorial for MicroEMACS included with in this manual.

### ***pr, prps, lpr: Print Files***

The command **lpr** prints files for you, making sure that your request does not conflict with other uses of the printer. To print a file, type the command

```
lpr file
```

substituting the name of the file to be printed for "file". Normally, the system prints a banner page before it prints a job; if you wish to suppress the banner page, use the **-B** option:

```
lpr -B file
```

If no file is given, the standard input is printed. Thus, **lpr** can be used in pipes; this allows you to print immediately matter that you type on your keyboard.

**lpr** will take your file and try to print it on any printer you have plugged into your computer's parallel port. If you do not have a printer plugged in, or if it is not turned on, **lpr** will hold onto your files until the printer becomes ready; it will wait days, if necessary, until the printer becomes available.

**lpr** is also intelligent enough to handle requests from several different users: if more than one user wants to print a file, **lpr** will print them one at a time. In this way, the COHERENT system lets several users share one printer.

**lpr** does nothing to the file other than print it. This means that no page headings are printed, nor does it break it the file up neatly into page-sized chunks. Another command, **pr**, does this for you. It paginates the standard input, giving a header with date, file name, page number, and line numbers. The paginated output appears on the standard output.

To print a paginated file on the line printer, type:

```
pr file | lpr -b banner
```

Note the use of the pipe '|', which passes the output of **pr** as input to **lpr**.

### **nroff**, **troff**: Text Formatters

The commands **nroff** and **troff** format text for display or printing. They are, in fact, text-formatting languages: you type commands into your text file, and **nroff** or **troff** interprets the commands to format the text in the manner that you want.

**nroff** and **troff** differ in the style of formatting that they perform. **nroff** formats text into monospaced font, like that on an ordinary typewriter. Its output is suitable for display on the screen. **troff** formats text into proportionally spaced fonts, like those seen on this page. Its output is suitable for printing on a laser printer or other sophisticated typesetting device. The commands for **nroff** and **troff** closely resemble each other. The following descriptions will assume that you are using **nroff**, but they apply to **troff** as well.

**nroff**'s programming language is quite complex and sophisticated. This manual includes a tutorial that introduces **nroff**'s language. You can, however, use **nroff** to perform simple formatting tasks by using the **ms** macro package. The following describes some of the more commonly used **nroff** commands.

To see how **nroff** works, type the following script:

```
cat >script.r
.ds CF "Print on Bottom of Each Page"
Here is some text.
Here is some more text.
.PP
The above command set a new paragraph.
Yet more text.
.SH
Here is a Section Heading
.PP
More text.
\fbThis is printed in bold face.\fr
This printed in Roman.
\fiThis is printed in italics or underlined.\fr
.PP
Here's some more text.
Here's yet more text.
And more text yet.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, format and display the text with the following command:

```
nroff -ms script.r | more
```

You will see the text formatted for your screen. The string **Print on Bottom of Each Page** appears at the bottom of the display. The following describes the **nroff** commands with which this formatting was performed.

**nroff**'s commands are introduced in either of two ways: by a period '.' in the *first* column of a line; or by a backslash '\' occurring anywhere in a line. The following reviews this script in detail.

- .ds CF** This defines the text to appear on the bottom of each page. If the text is more than one word long, it must be enclosed within quotation marks.
- .PP** Begin a new paragraph. **nroff** skips one line and indents the following line by five spaces (one-half inch).
- .SH** Print a section heading. **nroff** skips one line and prints in boldface the line of text that follows this command.
- \fb** Print the following text in **boldface**.
- \fr** Print the following text in Roman.
- \fi** Print the following text in *italics*.

With these few commands, you can perform simple formatting of your text.

To print the formatted text on an dot-matrix line printer, use the command **lpr**; to print it on a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer, use the command **hpr**. For example, to print **script.r** on a line printer, use the command:

```
nroff -ms script.r | lpr
```

To print **script.r** on a laser printer, use the command:

```
nroff -ms script.r | hpr -B
```

The **-B** option to **hpr** tells it to *not* print a banner page.

This discussion is sufficient to get you started, but it just scratches the surface of what you can do with **nroff** and **troff**. See their respective entries in the Lexicon for details of what these commands can do. See the tutorial for **nroff** that appears later in this manual for a thorough introduction to the formatting language used by these commands.

## Miscellaneous Commands

COHERENT includes numerous commands that perform miscellaneous tasks. These include some of the most useful, and entertaining, commands in the COHERENT system.

### who: Who Is On the System

To find who is logged into the system, use the COHERENT command **who**. This command lists who is logged into the COHERENT system, one name per line. You will see your own user name there as well.

If you sit down at a terminal that is not in use, but at which someone has already logged in, the following command tells you who is logged in:

```
who am i
```

COHERENT replies with the name of the user logged in at that terminal.

### **write: Electronic Dialogue**

The command **write** lets you carry on a "conversation" with another user. The conversation continues until you or the other user type **<ctrl-D>** on his terminal.

For example, user **fred** can begin a conversation with user **anne** by typing:

```
write anne
```

On **anne's** terminal, the message

```
Message from fred...
```

will appear. To establish the other half of the communication, **anne** should then say

```
write fred
```

and a similar notification appears on **fred's** terminal.

At this point, both users simply type lines on their terminal and **write** sends the message to the other user. To avoid typing at the same time, each user should end a "speech" by typing a line that has the single letter

```
o
```

to signify "over", or "go ahead". When the other user sends you this, you know it is your turn to "talk", and vice versa.

When your communication is finished, you should type

```
oo  
<ctrl-D>
```

Here, **oo** means "over and out", and the **<ctrl-D>** terminates the **write** command. Note that **o** and **oo** are polite conventions, and are not necessary to using **write**.

### **mail: Send an Electronic Letter**

You can send electronic mail to another user on your COHERENT system by using the command **mail**. This command works whether or not that person is logged into the system at the time you type your message. The message is stored in an electronic "mailbox", and the user will be notified that a message is waiting for him the next time he logs into your system.

Before you can use **mail** on your system, you must run the program **uinstall**. This program will ask you some questions about how you have configured your COHERENT system, and will write files of information that **mail** and the communications protocol UUCP need to deliver your mail. For detailed directions on how to run **uinstall**, see the section *Installing UUCP* in the UUCP tutorial that appears later in this manual.

Among other things, this program will ask you to name your "site" and your "domain". Without going into too much detail at this point, the site is *nom de plume* by which your machine is known to other COHERENT or UNIX systems. Site names generally are not computer-ese; **conan**, **terminator**, **lepanto**, **chelm**, and **smiles** are all examples of site names. If you don't intend to communicate with other systems, use your first name as the site name. The domain is the name by which a group of related machines are together known. If you and a number of other local COHERENT systems wish to be known together, you can establish a domain and register it with the network. Domain names, too, should be descriptive. If you don't intend to use a domain, set the domain name to **UUCP**.

To mail a message to user **anne**, just type:

```
mail anne
```

**mail** immediately prompts you for a title for your message:

```
Subject:
```

You can type the message's subject, which will be used to title the message, or you can just press **<Return>**.

Once you have titled your message, type the body of the message. You can conclude your message in any of three ways: you can type **<ctrl-D>**, type a period '.' at the beginning of a line, or a question mark '?' at the beginning of a line. The first two methods end the message immediately; the last method, however, invokes an editor, and lets you edit the message further before sending it on to the intended recipient. Environmental variable **EDITOR**, if defined, selects the editor to be used.

For example, to send your message to user **anne**, you might do the following. First, invoke **mail**:

```
mail anne
```

Next, give your message a title:

```
Subject: I'll be working late
```

Finally, type the body of the message:

```
I'll be working late. I hope to get home before Catherine
and George go to bed. Please remind Ivan and Marian to do
their homework. Marian should remember to practice her
violin.
<ctrl-D>
```

If you wish, you can first type your message into a file and then mail it. For example:

```
cat >hb.msg
All come to the birthday party at four
next to the pump room.
<ctrl-D>
```

To mail the message to user **jill**, type:

```
mail jill <hb.msg
```

You can send a mail message to several users at one time by listing each user's name on the command line. For example, the command

```
mail jill jack ted barb <hb.party
```

mails the contents of file **hb.party** to **jill**, **jack**, **ted**, and **barb**. To illustrate the use of the mail command, send yourself a mail message. Type the following; substitute your user name for "you" in the mail command:

```
mail you
Subject: test the COHERENT mail system
This is a note to
myself to test
mail.
```

## 38 Using COHERENT

---

If someone has sent you mail, the COHERENT system will tell you:

You have mail.

when you log in.

To receive mail, type the **mail** command with no parameters:

mail

If you have no mail, COHERENT will tell you:

No mail.

If you do have mail, the system will print each message on your terminal, along with the user name of the sender, and the date and time that the message was mailed.

After each message, the **mail** program types a question mark **?** and waits for your reply. You can type any of the following commands in reply to the prompt:

**d** Delete the message.

**<Return>**

Proceed to the next message.

**s file** Save, or copy, the message into *file*.

**q** Quit — exit from **mail** and return to the shell.

You will know that you are finished with all of your messages when **mail** sends you a **?** without typing anything before it.

**mail** can also send messages to other COHERENT or UNIX systems via the UUCP utility. See the accompanying tutorial on UUCP to see how you can set up **mail** to do this.

### **msgs: Cumulative Message Board**

The message of the day is deleted when a new message is inserted. If a user does not log in for several days, the message of the day may no longer be there. For items that you want everyone to see, such as hours of operation or new operating procedures, you should use **msgs** instead of **motd**.

**msgs** helps users get all important messages, even if they don't log in every day. The system remembers which users have seen each message. After a user logs in, invoking **msgs** will show the number, date, and author of each message written since the user last logged in. Therefore it is easy for the user to stay up to date with the system-wide messages.

To add a message to the file, simply mail the message to **msgs**. To title the message, write it as the first line in the message, after the "Subject:" prompt from **mail**.

The home directory for **msgs** will grow over time, as more and more messages accumulate. Also, if a new user is enrolled on your COHERENT system, he may have to wade through several hundred messages when he first logs in. Therefore, you should purge the home directory for **msgs** every now and again; you may wish to throw away the announcements of office parties three Christmases ago, and save important information on diskette.

**msgs** keeps track of what messages each user has read by recording the number of the last message read in the file **\$HOME/.msgsrc**. When each user logs on, his version of **.msgsrc** is inspected to determine the last message seen. If messages were added after that, **msgs** prints the ones the user wants to see, and then updates **.msgsrc**.

## TUTORIALS



### **grep: Find Patterns in Text Files**

The command **grep** lets you find lines that contain a *pattern* within one or more files. Patterns are sometimes called *regular expressions*.

To illustrate **grep**, create file **doc1** by typing:

```
cat >doc1
a few lines
of text.
<ctrl-D>
```

Then the command

```
grep text doc1
```

prints the second line of file **doc1**:

```
of text.
```

The first parameter to **grep** is the *pattern* for which you are looking; the rest of the arguments are the names of files to be examined. **text** is the pattern and **doc1** is the file.

To find if a particular user is on the system, pipe **who** into **grep**:

```
who | grep you
```

(Substitute the user name in question for **you**.) Try it with your user name. The pattern is **you**, but no file name is specified. **grep** reads input from the standard input, which in this example is connected to the output of the **who** command.

You can specify several files to be searched; simply put the additional file names after the first:

```
grep pattern doc1 doc2
```

Or, you can search all files in the current directory for the pattern with

```
grep pattern *
```

The asterisk will be interpreted to mean all files, and **grep** will look for *pattern* in each.

The search pattern can be a *pattern*. Patterns are fully discussed in the tutorial for **ed**.

You can also locate lines that do *not* contain given patterns by using the **grep** option **-v**.

```
grep -v bugs prog1 prog2
```

This command finds and prints all lines in files **prog1** and **prog2** that do not contain the pattern **bugs**.

### **date: Print the Date**

The COHERENT system keeps track of the time and date. To find the date and time, use the command:

```
date
```

COHERENT responds with the day of the week, the month day and year, and the time of day.

Internally, the COHERENT system records the date and time as the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). This means that files created in one time zone and referenced in another time zone will bear the correct time. The time and date printed out is converted from the internal form to the local time.

### ***passwd: Change Your Password***

You should change your password from time to time, to ensure that no unauthorized person can gain access to your files (or to the system as a whole).

It is easy to change passwords on the COHERENT system: just type the command **passwd**. **passwd** first asks you for your current password (if you have one), and then asks you to enter your new password twice. Entering the new password twice helps ensure that the system gets the password as you want it. If you do not type it the same way both times, COHERENT will say:

Password not changed.

You must then begin again with the command **passwd**.

Be sure the password is something that you can remember. It is recommended that the password be at least six characters long. Do not write it down, but memorize it. You can use a four-letter password, but if you do, you should mix upper-case and lower-case letters to make it more difficult for outsiders to guess.

### ***stty: Change Terminal Behavior***

Because a wide variety of terminals can be used with the COHERENT system, you must pass some information to the COHERENT system so it can handle your terminal correctly.

The command **stty** describes the information COHERENT currently has for you; you can then use **stty** with arguments to change how COHERENT handles your terminal.

For example, COHERENT normally echoes each character you type, as you type it. However, if your terminal also echoes what you type, you will see double characters. To prevent this, issue the command:

```
stty -echo
```

The program **login** uses this feature when you type your password, to help keep it secret from anyone who is kibbitzing at your desk.

To set the echo feature again, type:

```
stty echo
```

When you first log in, the system presumes that your terminal does not directly handle the **tab** character, so when COHERENT sends a **tab** to your terminal it simulates it with spaces. If your terminal does handle tabs, issue the command:

```
stty tabs
```

The COHERENT system will no longer substitute spaces for tabs. To go back to substitution,

```
stty -tabs
```

The **<erase>** character lets you delete the previously typed character. The **<kill>** character lets you delete the line that you have been typing but have not yet finished. By default, COHERENT sets these to, respectively, **<ctrl-H>** and **<ctrl-U>**. To change them to, respectively, **<ctrl-E>** and **<ctrl-K>**, use the **stty** command as follows:

```
stty erase ^E kill ^K
```

The carat '^' tells **stty** that you want to specify a control character.

To reset erase and kill to the default values at login, the command

```
stty ek
```

suffices. This is equivalent to:

```
stty erase ^H kill ^U
```

To see what your current terminal parameter settings are, type

```
stty
```

with no arguments.

### ***Scheduling Commands For Regular Execution***

The command **cron** is a valuable tool for using your COHERENT system. With it, you can schedule commands to be executed, even in your absence.

To specify a command to be executed at some later time, simply enter one line of information in the file **/usr/lib/crontab**. You must be logged in as **root** to modify this file.

For example, assume that you want to greet user **norm**, if he is logged into the system on Monday morning. You can do this by sending him a message at 8:13 on Monday. Use MicroEMACS to add the following lines to the file **/usr/lib/crontab**:

```
13 8 * * 1    msg norm%You are sure in early!
```

The numbers and \* at the beginning specify the time:

```
13 8 * * 1
```

The **13** means "13 minutes past the hour". (**cron** numbers the minutes zero through 59.) The **8** means "8 AM". (**cron** numbers the hours of the day zero through 23, with zero indicating 12 AM.) The positions containing \* normally specify the day and month. The two \* characters mean "any day" and "any month". Finally, the **1** means "day 1 of the week," which is Monday. (**cron** numbers the days of the week zero through six, with zero indicating Sunday.) The breakdown of this command is shown as follows:

minute	13
hour	8
day of month	* — all days
month	* — all months
day of week	1 — Monday

Because each entry in **crontab** must be on one line, the symbol % represents the beginning of the input string. If the information is too long for one line, enter a backslash character before the <Return> at the end of the line. The backslash tells **cron** to ignore the <return>.

With this information in the file, **cron** executes the command

```
msg norm
Am Monday!
```

at 8:13 every Monday morning.

## 42 Using COHERENT

---

**cron** expects time to be in the 24-hour clock, so 1 PM is represented as 13 hours. If you need to print a literal percent sign '%', precede it with a backslash:

```
\%
```

The times for **cron** commands can be even more complex than the numbers and \* shown above.

You can express a range for any of the five parts of a time by separating two numbers with a hyphen. For example, to send user **marianne** a humorous message on week days, use the command:

```
59 11 * * 1-5 /usr/games/fortune | msg marianne
```

To list a choice of times, separate single numbers or ranges with commas but no spaces. To send notification about a meeting on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday at 3 PM, use:

```
0 15 * * 1,3,5 echo Meeting at 3:30 ... | mail fred anne joe
```

The time specification

```
0 15 * * 1,3,5
```

represents the time 1500 (3 PM) on every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday.

**mail** and **msg** are just some examples of commands that can be used with **cron**; many others can be used. For example, **cron** is commonly used to execute UUCP commands late at night, when telephone rates are low. See the Lexicon article on **cron** for more information about this command. If you wish to schedule commands to be run but not on a regular basis, use command **at**. See its Lexicon article for further details.

### Managing Processes

A *process* is a command that is undergoing execution. Because COHERENT is a multi-tasking operating system, numerous processes can be undergoing execution at the same time. The following commands let you monitor and, within limits, affect the operation of the processes your COHERENT system is executing.

#### **ps:** List Active Processes

Each process in the system is assigned a number called the *process id*, or *PID*. Each user logged into the system has one or more processes. Except in special circumstances, the first process that he has is the shell, or command-line interpreter. The commands he types are run by the shell.

The shell normally waits for a command to terminate before it begins to process the next command. However, if you use the '&' operator, the shell creates simultaneous processes: that is, while it executes one command it will let you type another. Thus, you can execute two or more commands simultaneously.

You can examine the processes associated with your login, or all processes in the system, with the command **ps**. Type:

```
ps
```

The result will resemble:

```
TTY    PID
console 3937 -sh
console 4010 ps
```

The first column

## TUTORIALS

```
TTY
console
console
```

names the terminal you are running on, in this case the console. This identifier is taken from the file `/etc/ttys`, with the prefix `tty` removed from name. The `tty` identifier is also printed by the command `who`. The second column

```
PID
3937
4010
```

lists the corresponding process identifier (PID). The third column names each command and gives its parameters, if any:

```
-sh
ps
```

`-sh` represents the shell process, and `ps` represents the `ps` command itself.

To see all the processes, type:

```
ps -a
```

The result will resemble:

```
TTY PID
3a: 41 -sh
39: 42 -sh
32: 47 - 3
31: 48 - 3
34: 193 -sh
36: 634 -sh
3e: 1738 -sh
20: 2568 -sh
3e: 2581 su
3c: 6317 -sh
3c: 6322 su
3f: 7333 - P
35: 7789 - P
3c: 8058
3d: 9053 - P
33: 9076 - P
30: 9814 -sh
30: 9829 ps -a
```

This display will, of course, differ quite a bit from system to system and from minute to minute.

For a full description of all options to `ps`, see its entry in the Lexicon.

### ***kill: Signal Processes***

Occasions will arise when the system administrator must log other users out of the system. For example, you may need to bring the system down quickly; or perhaps a user forgot to log out before leaving the terminal and did not see your broadcast message requesting that all users log out.

## 44 Using COHERENT

---

The command **kill**, when used by the superuser, terminates processes. To log out a user whose shell has process number 300, use the command:

```
kill -9 300
```

You must be logged in as **root** or use the command **su** to **kill** a process that belongs to another user. Each user can kill all processes that he owns, including his own shell process (which automatically logs him out).

**kill** has other uses as well — see the Lexicon's entry for **kill** for more information.

### Programming Under COHERENT

The COHERENT system provides a number of languages in which you can write programs.

The shells included with COHERENT — **sh**, the Bourne shell, and **ksh**, the Korn shell — not only process commands, but are powerful programming languages in their own right. For details on how to program in these languages, see their respective entries in the Lexicon; and see the tutorial *Introducing sh, the Bourne Shell*, which follows in this manual.

COHERENT includes a full-featured assembler, with which you can assemble your assembly-language programs. Assembly language is sometimes required for operations that require you to work very closely with the operating system or hardware. For more information on the COHERENT assembler, see the Lexicon entry for **as**.

Most programming that cannot be executed efficiently by a shell language is done in C, the language in which the COHERENT system was written. The COHERENT system comes with a full-featured C compiler, with which you can compile the program you write in that language. If you are new to C, the tutorial *The C Language*, which follows in this manual, will introduce you to it. The following sub-sections briefly describe the tools available under COHERENT with which you can write, compile, and debug your C programs.

#### Basic Steps in COHERENT Programming

The steps that are necessary to generate a program are:

1. Create the program source file
2. Compile the source program, correcting any errors
3. Test and debug the program
4. Run the program

If you have compilation errors in step 2, or program errors in step 3 or 4, return to step 1.

Use **ed** or MicroEMACS to build and change the source program, the **cc** command to compile the source program and produce an object program, and **db** to help debug the program. Although the C compiler provides a macro facility, other languages do not. Therefore, if the source program uses macros, you can use **m4** to expand the macros.

This section covers each of these steps and provides some example programs.

#### Create the Program Source

The first step is to use MicroEMACS, **vi**, **ed**, or some other editor to create the program's source file. Details on the use of **ed** and MicroEMACS are covered in their respective tutorials, which follow in this manual. Each editor's commands are summarized in its Lexicon article.

## TUTORIALS

For the first program, try a simple program that prints a short message on your terminal. For the sake of simplicity, we'll enter text using **cat** instead of invoking an editor. To build the program, type the following:

```
cat > small.c
main ()
{
    printf ("The COHERENT operating system\n");
}
<ctrl-D>
```

The first line invokes the concatenation program **cat** to enter the program's source code. The **<ctrl-D>** signals that you have finished entering text.

The program itself begins with the special word **main** which defines a function and must appear in every C program. The parentheses, here with nothing between them, enclose any arguments that are passed to the function. They are required even if there are no arguments. The body of the program appears between the braces { and }.

The function **printf** is part of the standard library of C programs. It prints formatted information on the terminal. In this case it will produce the string enclosed between quotation marks. The special character string

```
\n
```

means "newline". Two lines of output to the terminal can be produced by

```
"line 1\nline 2\n"
```

as an argument to **printf**. This appears in the output as:

```
line 1
line 2
```

For a fuller introduction to the C language, see the tutorial on the *The C Language*, which follows in this manual.

### ***cc: Compile the Program***

The command **cc** compiles C programs. It executes all the parts of the C compiler and the associated linker **ld**. The linker combines pieces of programs and includes necessary elements from the library, such as **printf**. The linker is occasionally called from the command line, but only for more complex problems than you are trying here. To compile our test program, type the command

```
cc small.c
```

If the compiler detects any errors, it prints a message on the terminal, along with the line number that contains the error. You can use this line number to find the error with your editor and fix it. You can now use the program by simply typing:

```
small
```

The tutorial on *The C Language* describes **cc** in greater detail; also see its entry in the Lexicon for a full summary of its many capabilities.

### **m4: Macro Processing**

To extend the capabilities of all languages, the COHERENT system provides a macro processor, called **m4**.

Program source for all languages consists of character strings. Macro processors perform string replacement, whereby a string in the input file may be replaced by another string. **m4** provides parameter substitution, as well as testing values of currently available strings and conditional processing. **m4** is unique in that you can rearrange large sections of the input text by using the macros. For more information on **m4**, see the tutorial *Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor*, which follows in this manual.

### **make: Build Larger Programs**

All the examples of programs thus far have been self-contained. As programs grow larger, it is usual to divide the source program into smaller files. This simplifies editing, speeds compilation, increases modularity, and lets several different programs share common functions.

Thus, in developing the larger program, you may have several source files in your directory, possibly a header file or two, and the object files that result from compilation. From these are built the executable file that runs when you type its name.

To change or fix the program, you must edit the source programs or header files in question with **ed**, recompile the required source, and relink all the modules. But, with a change that affects several modules, it can be tricky to remember exactly which modules need recompilation, and it can be time-consuming to recompile all modules.

COHERENT provides a command called **make**, which solves this problem. **make** examines the time a file was last modified, and the time of modification of files that it depends upon, and performs the necessary compilation or other processing. (COHERENT file system directories contain the time that each file was created or modified.)

The tutorial *The make Programming Discipline*, which follows in this manual, fully introduces this powerful and useful program.

### **db: Debug the Program**

The first and most critical step to debugging programs is to not put bugs in them! The methods of structured analysis, design, and programming, or the method of stepwise refinement can substantially reduce the number of errors in a program.

One can also place **printf** statements at strategic points throughout the program to display logic flow and key data values. These display statements should be designed so that they can be turned off for normal operation without removing them from the program.

On occasion, however, you may find that it is necessary to debug at the machine level. If you must, COHERENT's **db** will make it possible to do so.

**db** provides tools that make the machine program instructions visible in the most natural notation. That is, instructions are displayed in a fashion that resembles assembly language, numbers can be displayed in hexadecimal, octal, or decimal as needed, and strings of characters displayed in familiar graphic form. **db** can also patch a program to be run again, as well as to control the execution of a program with breakpoints and one step at a time.

Briefly, to use **db** on a program like our sample **small** above, use the command:

## TUTORIALS



```
db small
```

Now you can inspect and display instructions and data in the system, control execution, and even change the instructions in the program if you are bold enough.

To examine a data segment location in the program, simply type the address of the location. **db** knows about symbols in the program, so if you want to examine the location corresponding to **main**, type:

```
main
```

**db** types out the value in hexadecimal or octal (depending upon which is appropriate for your machine).

You can expand the display command to print many locations at one time, and choose the format of printout. To print five locations interpreted as instructions, type

```
main,5?i
```

where the format character **i** follows the question mark indicating format, and 5 is the count of locations to be printed. To exit **db**, type

```
:q
```

For a complete list of the format that **db** recognizes, and other details about **db**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

## Administering the COHERENT System

The COHERENT system can be used by many people at the same time. One person must coordinate its use, like a key operator does for an office copier. This person is called the *system administrator*, and he sees to it that the COHERENT system runs smoothly every day. The administrator can also customize the COHERENT system to the needs of an individual installation.

Although you may be the only person to use your COHERENT system, many of the ideas discussed here are important for making your system work at its best. Please spend a few minutes reading this manual to familiarize yourself with the elementary concepts of COHERENT system maintenance.

### Adding a New User

Each user allowed to use your COHERENT system must have a *user name* and a *user id*; the user may also have a *password*. The user name is usually the user's initials or a nickname. The *user id* is an integer number used to identify the user internally to the system. As system administrator, you will assign both of these for each user. This section tells you how.

To log in to the system, a user must have an entry in the *password* file **/etc/passwd**. The password file contains each user's name, id, and password if any. As system administrator, you will maintain this file.

Likewise, each group of users is assigned a *group name*, as well as a *group id*. Groups are not necessary to use the COHERENT system, but some installations prefer to set up groups by project or department.

It is simple to add a new user to the system. The command **newusr** takes care of all the details, and makes an entry in the password file. You must be logged in as **root**. For example, to create an entry for a user named Henry, log in as **root**, and then issue the command:

```
/etc/newusr henry "Henry Smith" /usr
```

This creates an entry in **/etc/passwd** for **henry**, creates his home directory in the **/usr** file system, creates all appropriate files for him (such as his **.profile** and his mailbox), and sets all permissions correctly.

### System Security

One of the most important tasks in running your COHERENT system is maintaining its security. Basically, security means two things: keeping outsiders from logging into your system, and keeping your system's users from doing untoward things. This section describes some steps you can take to ensure that your system is secure.

### Passwords

Passwords provide the first level of COHERENT system security.

For systems with passwords, each user with a password must type his password as part of the login process. If he enters the password incorrectly, he cannot log in.

Your system's administrator can assign a password when she creates a user's log-in account, as described above. If you do not assign a password, anyone will be able to log in as that user.

In any system with passwords, it is especially important to assign a password to the **root**, or *superuser*. If the superuser does not require a password, any user can log in as **root** and automatically have access to the powerful tools that control the operation of the system.

Any user with a password can restrict access to his files. Once you assign him his password, he can change it with the command **passwd**. However, because of higher privileges, **root** can always access everyone's files.

The passwords are kept in file **/etc/passwd**, with the rest of the user login information. Passwords are encrypted, so reading **/etc/passwd** will not reveal passwords.

### File Protection

The second level of COHERENT system security is *file protection*. A user can set each of three categories of protection for each of his files. A standard protection, or *access permission*, is given to each file when it is created.

The three categories of permissions are for the user himself, for other users in his group, and for all other users. To see the levels of protection of your files, type the command

```
ls -l
```

For more details on the meaning of each column in this printout, see the Lexicon entry for the change-mode command **chmod**.

### Encryption

The command **crypt** provides a third level of system security. It lets a user encode and decode information in a file. The superuser has access to every file in the system; so to protect sensitive information even from his prying eyes, a user can disguise it with encryption. Sensitive system information, such as passwords, are also encrypted for security purposes; and the **mail** command lets users send encrypted mail to each other. For details about encryption, see the entry on **crypt** in the Lexicon.

## Dumping and Saving Files

This section discusses how you can copy files to floppy disk. You should do this regularly, both to free up disk space and to back up valued files to protect them against catastrophe.

There are two general strategies for dumping files.

One strategy uses the commands **ustar** or **tar** to create archives of files on a floppy disk. This strategy is fine for systems that are used by a handful of users, and that are not used for "real-world" jobs, such as running a business.

The other strategy uses the command **cpio** to implement a system of regular dumps. This strategy is preferred for systems that daily amass data of importance for a real-world job, such as running a business or managing a research project.

You should always have a system of back-ups for your system. Which strategy you use depends on how you are using your system. The following sub-sections describe how to implement each strategy of back-ups.

Please note that the following descriptions assume that you are using a 5.25-inch, high-density floppy disks set in drive 0 (drive A).

### Back-ups Using *ustar*

This sub-section describes how to back-up files using the COHERENT command **ustar**.

The first step is to prepare floppy disks to receive files. Insert a 5.25-inch floppy disk into drive 0, and then type the following command:

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0
```

The command **fdformat** formats the diskette, verifying that no media defects exist. You must perform this task of formatting a floppy disk only before you use it the first time.

The next step is to create an archive of the files you wish to back up. Use the portable archive command **ustar** to collect a mass of files into an archive on the floppy disks. For example, to archive all files in directory **source**, use the following command:

```
ustar cvf /dev/rfha0 source
```

The options **cvf** tell **ustar** to create an archive, run in verbose mode, and write the archive onto the device or into the file named in the next argument. **/dev/rfha0** names the floppy device onto which you wish to write the archive. Finally, **source** is the directory whose files you wish to back up.

To perform a listing of the contents of the newly created archive, enter

```
ustar tvf /dev/rfha0
```

The options **tvf** tell **ustar** to list the contents of the archive, run in verbose mode, and read the archive from the device or file named in the next argument.

To extract several files from the archive, enter a command of the form

```
ustar xvf /dev/rfha0 source/myfile 'source/*.c'
```

The options **xvf** tell **ustar** to extract or unarchive the specified files, run in verbose mode, and read the archive from the device or file named in the next argument. Note that the second file argument contains a "wildcard" character and thus must be quoted to prevent expansion by the shell.

For more information on how to use **ustar**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

### **Back-ups Using cpio**

The following sub-sections describe how to perform back-ups using the COHERENT command **cpio**. **cpio** is a public domain program written by Mark H. Colburn for the USENIX association, which is included with the COHERENT system. This program performs mass dumps and restores of files using a universally recognized file format. In general, **cpio** is easier to use than **dump** and **restor**, and its output can be portable among other COHERENT and UNIX systems.

In this example, dumps are performed monthly, weekly, and daily. You should prepare at least three sets of floppy disks for the monthly saves, giving you three months of full backup. You will use the diskettes in rotation, with the oldest always used next.

Once a week, you should dump information in the system that is new or has been changed since the end of the previous week. You will need five sets of diskettes, since some months have five weekends in them.

Finally, every day you should save information that has changed that day. For these dumps, you will need five sets of diskettes: one for each working day. You may need extras in case of weekend work.

Label each set of disks carefully as *monthly*, *weekly*, or *daily*. Label the daily diskettes Monday through Friday, the weekly diskettes Week 1 through Week 5, and the monthly diskettes Month 1 through Month 3. When you do the dump, write the date on the label.

The following gives a step-by-step description of how to use **cpio** to back up files.

1. Log into the system as **root**. You must have superuser privileges to perform a dump.
2. If you have not yet done so, use the command **fdformat** to format a set of diskettes, as shown above. With high-density, 5.25-inch diskettes, a rule of thumb is to prepare one diskette for each megabyte of data to be dumped.
3. Tell other users to log off the system by typing:

```
/etc/wall
Please log off.
Time for file dump.
<ctrl-D>
```

If you are the only user on your system, skip this and the following step.

4. Be sure that all users are logged off the system by typing the command:

```
who
```

This command names all users who are still on the system.

If they have not logged off in a few minutes, send another message. Repeat the process until **who** shows no users except yourself.

5. When all other users have logged off, execute **/etc/shutdown** as described near the beginning of this tutorial.
6. If this is the last workday of the month, perform a *monthly* dump, to back up the entire system. Insert the first volume of the correct monthly dump floppy disk into the floppy drive, after adding today's date to the label, and type the commands:

```
cd /
find . -type f -print | cpio -oc >/dev/rfha0
```

This will dump all files to the raw, 2400-block, floppy-disk device **/dev/rfha0**. **cpio**

As more floppies are needed, **cpio** will ask you to insert them. After you insert the floppy disk, you will have to type the device name, e.g., **/dev/rfha0**, at **cpio**'s prompt. Be sure to label each floppy disk with its volume number.

7. If this is the last work day of the week, but not the last workday of the month, perform a *weekly* dump. Prepare the correct weekly dump diskettes, add today's date to the label, insert the first diskette, and type the command:

```
cd /
find . -type f -newer cpio.weekly -print | cpio -oc >/dev/rfha0
touch cpio.weekly
```

This will dump all files that are younger than file **cpio.weekly**.

8. If this is neither the last workday of the month nor the last workday of the week, you will perform a *daily* dump. Prepare the daily dump diskette with today's day of the week, add today's date to the label, insert the first diskette into the drive, and type the command:

```
cd /
find . -type f -newer cpio.daily -print | cpio -oc >/dev/rfha0
touch cpio.daily
```

This will dump files that are younger than file **cpio.daily**.

9. Type **sync** to ensure that all buffers are flushed.
10. When you are finished dumping data, reboot the system by typing the command:  
**/etc/reboot**

For more information on how to use **cpio** and **find**, see their respective entries in the Lexicon.

## Restoring Information

If you find that a file has been inadvertently destroyed, you can restore the information to disk from backup floppy disk.

To restore a file from a compressed **tar** archive, use the following commands. First, select the appropriate back-up disk, insert it into its drive, and mount it with the following command:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /f0
```

Next, use the commands **zcat** and **tar** to extract the file you want. For example, if your archive is called **backup.tar.Z** and the file wish to restore is called **myfile**, use the following command to extract it from its archive:

```
zcat /f0/backup.tar.Z | tar xf - myfile
```

The **zcat** command reads the compressed archive without requiring that you uncompress it. The **tar** command reads the standard input (as indicated by the hyphen '-') and extracts **myfile** from what it reads.

Once you have extracted your file or files, you can unmount the floppy disk in the usual way and put it away.

To restore information from back-ups created with **cpio**, the process is a little more complicated. To begin, you must first determine the date and time that the file was last known to have been modified. From this date, determine on which set of disks the file was last correctly dumped. Find the set of floppy disks labeled with that date, and mount the first one in the set. For example, if you wish to restore the file **myfile**, use the command:

```
cpio -icdv myfile < /dev/rfha0
```

This assumes that the disks high-density, 5.25-inch floppies that are in drive 0 (drive A). See the Lexicon article **floppy disk** for a table that shows which COHERENT device is associated with which size and density of disk, and which disk drive. You may have to insert more than one disk from the set of backups until you find the one that holds the file you want.

### System Accounting

The COHERENT system provides two types of computer time *accounting* to help you track the use of the system. Three commands control the accounting and provide reports at various levels of detail.

Note that system accounting adds overhead to your system, because your system has to do more work to record everything it does, and because the accounting files can quickly grow to unmanageable sizes. System accounting is useful for COHERENT systems that are being used by multiple users who must account for (i.e., pay for) their use of the system, or in other circumstances where it is important to note each user's activity. For most systems that support a handful of users, system accounting simply isn't worth the bother.

If, however, you decide that you need system accounting, read on.

### ac: Login Accounting

Whenever a user logs into the COHERENT system, it records the user's name, the terminal number, and the date and time of the login. It also records when he logs out.

You can use this information to compute the time each user, or all users, were logged into the system. The command **ac** prints the total of all login times recorded in the accounting file. An example of the result is

```
Total: 8357:00
```

You can ask for a summary of total login times for each day by typing:

```
ac -d
```

An example result would be:

```
Friday November 13:
    Total: 53:08
Saturday November 14:
    Total: 75:36
Sunday November 15:
    Total: 73:15
```

Finally, you can summarize the times for individual users with the command:

```
ac -p jack ted fred
```

This will show the total login times for these users:

```

fred      1100:42
jack      910:41
ted       641:58
Total:    2653:21

```

Also,

```
ac -pd
```

gives the time for each user, for each day that he logged in.

Login accounting is not automatically operational. The login information is collected only if the file **/usr/adm/wtmp** exists.

To start login accounting if it is not working, type the command

```
>/usr/adm/wtmp
```

while logged in as **root**. This creates the file **/usr/adm/wtmp** if it does not exist (and destroys existing information if it does) and thereby enables login accounting.

To turn off login accounting while it is running, you can type:

```
rm /usr/adm/wtmp
```

After you activate login accounting, you should purge **/usr/adm/wtmp** periodically as it grows continuously, and on an active system will eventually consume much disk space. To purge the current information but leave accounting turned on, type:

```
>/usr/adm/wtmp
```

### **sa: Processing Accounting**

While login accounting tells you how much time a user spends logged into the system, it does not tell you the individual commands used. *Process accounting* does so. Under COHERENT, each execution of each command constitutes a separate process. (COHERENT's ability to maintain a list of processes and swap each in and out of memory until all are executed, is what gives COHERENT its multi-tasking capability.) Process accounting records system time, user time, and real time for each command executed by each user on the system. The command **sa** reports this information for you, using a format that you set.

**sa** has several options, to generate different reports. When used with no options, **sa** lists the number of times each call is made, the total CPU time, and the total real time used by the command, ordered by decreasing CPU time. This is a summary by command; the following gives an example:

	#CALL	CPU	REAL
sh	61	1	832
ld	5	1	7
ar	5	0	1
ranlib	3	0	1
p	16	0	11
dld	2	0	1
lc	19	0	1
cc	4	0	8
atrun	43	0	1
find	1	0	0
ed	1	0	2

## 54 Using COHERENT

---

cat	4	0	1
rm	3	0	0
j	1	0	0
spin	2	0	1
grep	2	0	0
msg	4	0	0
ps	1	0	0
pr	2	0	0
watch	4	0	0
who	2	0	0
stty	3	0	0
chown	1	0	0
sort	1	0	0
mv	2	0	0
pwd	1	0	0
nm	1	0	0
df	1	0	0
ls	1	0	0
echo	3	0	0
accton	1	0	0

The listing will depend on what commands are used in your system, and the characteristics of your hardware. To summarize by user, use the **-m** option:

```
sa -m
```

The option **-l** separates CPU time expended by users from that expended by the system. This command

```
sa -l
```

produces:

	#CALL	USER	SYSREAL
sh	61	0	1832
ld	5	0	07
ar	5	0	01
ranlib	3	0	01
p	16	0	011
dld	2	0	01
lc	19	0	01
cc	4	0	08
atrun	43	0	01
find	1	0	00
ed	1	0	02
cat	4	0	01
rm	3	0	00
j	1	0	00
spin	2	0	01
grep	2	0	00
msg	4	0	00
ps	1	0	00
pr	2	0	00
watch	4	0	00
who	2	0	00
stty	3	0	00
chown	1	0	00



sort	1	0	00
mv	2	0	00
pwd	1	0	00
nm	1	0	00
df	1	0	00
ls	1	0	00
echo	3	0	00
accton	1	0	00

To list the user name and the command name, use **sa** with the option **-u**. No times or counts are given. The command:

```
sa -u
```

produces output of the form:

tj	p
tj	lc
tj	find
tj	pr
bin	lc
tj	spin
tj	sh
bin	cc
bin	cat
bin	ld
bin	dld
farl	who
farl	sh

This report has been truncated and edited to save space. In practice, it is longer. The **-u** option overrides other options.

Process accounting is on only if you turn it on. To turn on process accounting, type the command:

```
/etc/accton /usr/adm/acct
```

while logged in as **root**. The file **/usr/adm/acct** holds the raw accounting information.

To turn off process accounting, use the same command with no file name:

```
/etc/accton
```

If accounting is not on when you type this command, you will get an error message. No information is gathered when accounting is turned off.

When process accounting is in use, the file **/usr/adm/usracct** grows with each user command issued. You should regularly condense or remove the information, to keep the file from devouring all free space on your disk. To condense the information, invoke **sa** with the **-s** option. You must turn off accounting while condensing information.

The information summarized by user will appear in **/usr/adm/usracct**, and information saved by command is placed in **/usr/adm/savacct**. These summarized files are used in future requests to **sa**. After condensing, you can turn accounting back on.

Additional options give flexibility to the report. See the entry for **sa** in the Lexicon for additional details on these options.

### ***Conclusion***

The following sections of this manual give tutorials to teach you how to use many of COHERENT's tools and commands. The Lexicon contains brief synopses of all commands, library routines, system calls, and macros available under the COHERENT system. It also includes many technical references and definitions, to help you with terminology throughout this manual.

---

# Introducing sh, the Bourne Shell

---

**sh** is the command that invokes the Bourne shell, which is the COHERENT system's default command interpreter. The Bourne shell interprets commands, expands file names in various sophisticated ways, permits conditional execution of commands, and much more. The Bourne shell is, in effect, both a programming language and an interpreter.

At least one writer has noted that the shell is the original "fourth-generation language" — that is, a powerful programming language that is straightforward enough to be programmed by non-programmers. You will find that taking a little time to master the rudiments of the shell programming language will pay enormous benefits in making best use of your COHERENT system.

## *Simple Commands*

The shell command language is built around simple commands. For example, the following command lists all files in the current directory:

```
ls
```

You can combine several simple commands on one line by separating them with semicolons:

```
who;du;mail
```

The shell executes the commands in sequence as if they had been typed:

```
who
du
mail
```

In both of these examples, **du** does not begin execution until **who** is finished, and **mail** does not begin until **du** is done.

## *Special Characters*

The shell treats the following characters specially; if you want to use them without their special meaning, you must precede them with the backslash character `\`, or enclose them within quotation marks:

```
* ? [ ] | ; { } ( )
$ = : ` ' " < > << >>
```

The function of these characters will be explained later in this section. To use one of these characters in a command, for example `?`, type:

```
echo \?
```

In addition, the shell treats the following words in a special way when they appear as the first word of a command:

```
case do done elif else esac
fi if in then until while
```

### Running Commands in the Background

The shell can execute commands simultaneously as well as sequentially. This means that while the shell is executing one command, it lets you type and execute another command. Under the shell, the number of commands you can execute at the same time is limited mainly by the amount of memory and disk space on your system.

If a command is followed by the special character '&', the shell begins to execute it immediately, and prompts you to enter another command. For example, if you need to **sort** a large file but want to continue with other commands while the sort is executing, you can type:

```
sort >bigfile.sorted bigfile.unsorted &
ed prog
```

This allows you to edit file **prog** while your computer quietly executes the sort in the background.

When you run a command with **&**, the shell types the *process id* of the command started in background. When the COHERENT system runs a command, it assigns that command a *process id*, which is a number that uniquely identifies that command to COHERENT. Normally, there is no need to be concerned about these numbers. However, when you run commands in the background, the shell tells you the id of the background process so you can keep track of its execution.

The command

```
ps
```

lists the processes you are currently running. If you have no background jobs, the response is:

```
TTY PID
30: 362 -sh
30: 399 ps
```

The first column shows the number that COHERENT has assigned to your terminal. This is the same terminal number printed out by **who**. The second column shows the process id; the third column shows the program or command executing. The characters **-sh** in the third column means the login shell. There are two processes because the shell is running the **ps** command as a separate process.

Once you have started a background command, **ps** shows you the process entry, which has the process id that the shell typed out for you.

If you need the results from a background job, you can wait for it to finish by issuing the command:

```
wait
```

The shell will then accept no further commands until all your background jobs are finished. If there are no background jobs, there will be no delay.

### Scripts

Many of the commands that you use in COHERENT are *programs*, such as **ed**. Others, like the **man** command, are *scripts*, or files that merely contain calls to other commands. You can write scripts on your own, simply by using a text editor to type into a file the commands you wish to execute. If you frequently use a set of commands, you can save yourself from having to type them over and over by simply typing them once into a script.

For example, suppose that you wish to check periodically the amount of disk space that you have used, the amount of disk space still available, and see who is using the system. You can write a script to do all of this automatically. Create the script **good.am** by typing the following commands:

```
ed
a
du
df
who | sort
mail
.
w good.am
q
```

From now on, to execute the above-listed commands, you need only type:

```
sh good.am
```

where **sh** is a command that means: read commands from a file, in this case **good.am**. If you can issue a command from your terminal, you can also execute it from within a script.

You can make a command file directly executable by using the command **chmod**. For example, the command

```
chmod +x good.am
```

lets you execute the script **good.am** by typing

```
good.am
```

and leaving off the **sh**. Once you have done the **chmod** command, you can still issue the commands by typing:

```
sh good.am
```

as well as use **ed** or MicroEMACS to change the contents of the script.

Notice that the commands called by a script may themselves be scripts. This is illustrated by the following script, **second.sh**:

```
ed
a
sh good.am
lc
.
w second.sh
q
```

Thus, typing:

```
sh second.sh
```

calls the script **good.am**, and also calls the command **lc**.

### ***.profile: Login Shell Script***

When you log into the system and before you are issued your first prompt, COHERENT checks your home directory for a file named **.profile**; if it is present, the shell executes the commands it contains.

This enables you to have COHERENT execute commands as soon as you log in. Check if your installation provides one for you by doing an **ls** (be sure that your current directory is the home directory). If the file is there, print it by saying:

```
cat .profile
```

Some of the commands may be of the form:

```
PATH=':/bin:/usr/bin'
```

This sort of command will be discussed below.

### ***Substitutions***

Scripts of the form shown above are processed by the COHERENT shell without change. However, the COHERENT shell increases the power of commands by performing three kinds of substitutions within commands before it executes them.

First, it replaces special characters in commands with file names from the current or other directories. This allows you to issue a single command that processes several files.

Second, you can give a script *arguments*, much like arguments that are passed to a Pascal, Algol, or C procedure. This lets you target the action of the script to a specific file name specified when you call it.

Third, the output of one command can be “piped” into another command to serve as its input.

We will use the command **echo** to illustrate these kinds of substitution. Remember that substitutions take place for all commands in the same way that they do for **echo**.

### ***File Name Substitution***

File names are often used as command parameters. That is, you will often tell a command to do something to one or more files. By using special shell characters, you can substitute file names in commands. These special characters describe file name *patterns* for the shell to look for in the directory. When the shell finds the file names, it replaces the pattern with them.

The asterisk **\*** matches any number of any characters in file names. Thus,

```
echo *
```

echoes all the file names in the current directory, whereas

```
echo f*
```

gives all file names that begin with the letter **f**, and

```
echo a*z
```

lists all names that begin with **a** and end with **z**.

To illustrate more clearly, create two files by typing

```
cat >zz1
<ctrl-D>
cat >zz2
<ctrl-D>
```

Then the **echo** command

```
echo zz*
```

produces the output:

```
zz1 zz2
```

Thus, by using a single **\***, you can substitute several file names into a command. In other words, the command

```
echo zz*
```

is equivalent to

```
echo zz1 zz2
```

If no file names fit the pattern, the special characters are not changed, but left in the command exactly as you typed them. To illustrate, type the command

```
rm zz*
echo zz*
```

The first command will remove all files whose names begin with **zz**, and is therefore equivalent to:

```
rm zz1 zz2
```

The **echo** command that follows, however, echoes

```
zz*
```

because no files begin with **zz**; they were just removed.

Enclosing command words within apostrophes prevents the shell from matching file names with the enclosed characters. In the unlikely event that you have a file whose name is

```
zz*
```

that you want to remove, use the command

```
rm 'zz*'
```

The **\*** is enclosed within apostrophes, and therefore is not changed by the shell.

Another special character **?** match any one letter. To see how this works, create empty files **file1**, **file2**, and **file33** by typing:

```
>file1
>file2
>file33
```

The command

```
echo file?
```

replies

```
file1 file2
```

because `?` does not match `33`.

You can use brackets `[` and `]` to indicate a choice of single characters in a pattern:

```
echo file[12]
```

This command replies:

```
file1 file2
```

To match a range of characters, separate the beginning and end of the range with a hyphen. The command

```
echo [a-m]*
```

prints any file name beginning with a lower-case letter from the first half of the alphabet, and is exactly equivalent to:

```
echo [abcdefghijklm]*
```

When such patterns find several file names, they are inserted in alphabetical order.

Because the character `/` is important in path names, the shell does not match it with `*` or `?` in patterns. The slash must be matched explicitly; that is, it is matched only by a `/` itself. Therefore, to find all the files in the `/usr` directories with the name **notes**, type:

```
echo /usr/*/notes
```

The asterisk matches all the subdirectories of `/usr` that contain a file named **notes**.

In addition, a leading period in a file name must be matched explicitly. If you have a file in your current directory with the name **.profile**, the command

```
echo *file
```

does not match it.

These patterns can appear anywhere within a command or a command file.

### Parameter Substitution

Each shell script can have up to nine *positional parameters*. This lets you write scripts that can be used for many circumstances. Recall that command parameters follow the command itself and are separated by tabs or spaces. An example of a command reference with two parameters is:

```
show first second
```

where **first** and **second** are the parameters.

To substitute the positional parameters in the script, use the character `$` followed by the decimal number of the parameter. For example, build the script **show** by typing:



```
ed
a
cat $1
cat $2
diff $1 $2
.
w show
q
chmod +x show
```

**\$1** and **\$2** refer to the first and second parameters, respectively. Create two sample files:

```
cat >first
line 1
line two
line 3
<ctrl-D>
cat >second
line 1
line 2
line 3
<ctrl-D>
```

Then, issue the **show** command

```
show first second
```

which has the same effect as typing:

```
cat first
cat second
diff first second
```

If you issue the **show** command with fewer than the required number of parameters, the shell substitutes an empty string in its place. For example, using the command with only one parameter

```
show first
```

is equivalent to

```
cat first
cat
diff first
```

where the null string has been substituted for **\$2**.

The example above shows the parameter references separated from each other by a space. In some uses, you may wish to prefix a substituted parameter to a name or a number. When more than one digit follows a **\$**, the shell picks up the first digit as the number of the parameter. To illustrate, build a shell file **pos**:

```
ed
a
echo $167
.
w pos
q
chmod +x pos
```

Then call the script with

```
pos five
```

and the result will be:

```
five67
```

### Shell Variable Substitution

In addition to positional parameters, the shell provides *variables*. You can assign values to variables, test them, and substitute them in commands.

The variable name can be built from letters, numbers, and the underscore character; for example:

```
high_tension
a
directory
167
```

Note that keywords must not be single digits, because the shell then treats them as positional parameters. Be aware that the shell treats upper-case and lower-case letters differently in variable names.

An assignment statement gives a value to a shell variable:

```
a=welcome
```

You can inspect their value with the **echo** command:

```
echo $a
```

The shell substitutes the value of the variable **a** in the **echo** command, which then appears as

```
echo welcome
```

COHERENT responds to this command by printing:

```
welcome
```

Don't forget the **\$** when referring to the value.

Notice that the shell looks for special characters in any command that it sees — this includes the *space* character. To avoid problems, enclose the value to be assigned in apostrophes:

```
phrase='several words long'
```

There are several uses for variables. One is to hold a long string that you expect to type repeatedly as part of a command. If you are editing files in a subdirectory like

```
/usr/wisdom/source/widget
```

you can abbreviate if you set a variable **pw** to:

```
pw='/usr/wisdom/source/widget'
```

Then simply using **\$pw** in a command

```
echo $pw
```

substitutes the long path name.

Another use of shell variables is as keyword parameters to commands. These then can be used the same way as positional parameters. To see how this works, create another script resembling **show**:

```
ed
a
cat $one
cat $two
diff $one $two
.
w show2
q
chmod +x show2
```

To use **show2**, issue:

```
one=first two=second show2
```

This is equivalent in effect to:

```
cat first
cat second
diff first second
```

Unlike positional parameters, keyword parameters may be several characters in length. If you want some text to follow immediately a keyword parameter, enclose the keyword parameter in braces. To illustrate this, build a command file called **brace**, as follows:

```
ed
a
echo 'with brace:' ${a}bc
echo 'without brace:' $abc
.
w brace
q
chmod +x brace
```

Call the command file with **a** set:

```
a=567 brace
```

The result is:

```
with brace: 567bc
without brace:
```

When used in this way, the keyword parameters must be assigned before the command and on the

## 66 The Bourne Shell

---

same line as the command. In this case, the assignment of keyword parameters does not affect the variable after the command is executed. For example, if you type:

```
one=ordinal
one=first two=second show2
echo 'value of one is ' $one
```

**echo** produces:

```
value of one is ordinal
```

Variables set other than on the line of a command are not normally accessible to a script. To illustrate, build a parameter display script:

```
ed
a
echo 1 $1 2 $2 p1 $p1 p2 $p2
.
w pars
q
chmod +x pars
```

This will be used to show the behavior of parameters. The parameters to **echo** without a **\$** help to read the output. To pass positional parameters, type:

```
pars ay bee
```

The output is:

```
1 ay 2 bee p1 p2
```

To pass keyword parameters, type:

```
p1=start p2=begin pars
```

The result is:

```
1 2 p1 start p2 begin
```

To illustrate that the setting of **p1** and **p2** did not “stick”, type:

```
echo $p1 $p2 'to show'
```

**echo** replies:

```
to show
```

This indicates that **p1** and **p2** are not set.

Illustrating that variables set separately from a command are not seen by the command, type:

```
p1=outside1 p2=outside2
pars
```

This replies:

```
1 2 p1 p2
```

By using the **export** command, however, such variables can be made available to commands. The commands

## TUTORIALS

```
export p1 p2
p1='see me' p2=hello
pars
```

produce:

```
1 2 p1 see me p2 hello
```

This indicates that after the **export** of **p1** and **p2**, they are available to other commands. Once a variable has appeared in an **export** command, its value can be changed without a need to **export** it again.

### Command Substitution

By enclosing a command between ``` characters, you can feed its output onto the command line of another command. For example

```
echo `ls`
```

echoes the output of the **ls** command.

### Special Shell Variables

When you log into the COHERENT system, it sets the shell variable **HOME** to your *home* or default directory path. If your user name is **henry**, then the command

```
echo $HOME
```

on most systems prints:

```
/usr/henry
```

The change directory command **cd** sets the working directory to the path found in **HOME** if no argument is given.

The shell normally prompts you with **\$** for commands, and with **>** if more information is needed. These two prompts are taken by the shell from the variables **PS1** and **PS2**. You can change these if you want different prompts, for example

```
PS1="Fred's Software Palace: "
PS2='!'
```

To have these take effect each time you log in, put the assignment statements in your **.profile** file.

The shell variable **PATH** lists the path names of directories that contain commands. To show the contents of **PATH**, type:

```
echo $PATH
```

It typically will show:

```
:/bin:/usr/bin
```

This means that the shell looks for a command first in the current directory, then in **/bin**, and, if not found there, then in **/usr/bin**. The path names are separated by **:**. This means that an empty string precedes the first **:**, the current directory. Another common setting for **PATH** is:

```
...:/bin:/usr/bin
```

This means that the shell seeks commands first in the current directory, then in **..** (the parent

directory of the current directory), then in **/bin**, and finally in **/usr/bin**.

### *dot . : Read Commands*

Similar to the command **sh** is the **.** command. The command

```
. cfil
```

causes the shell to read and execute commands from **cfil**.

This differs from the **sh** command in several respects. First, there's no way to pass parameters to **cfil** with the **.** command. Second, the **sh** command executes another shell to read the commands, whereas **.** simply reads the commands directly. Finally, all the string variables and parameters are accessible by **cfil**.

The command file **good.am** created earlier can be executed with:

```
. good.am
```

This has the same effect. Similarly, the **.** can be itself be used within a command file:

```
ed
a
. good.am
lc
.
w third.sh
q
```

Then, the command

```
. third.sh
```

has the same result as the command:

```
sh third.sh
```

### *Values Returned by Commands*

Most COHERENT commands return a value that indicates success or failure. For example, if **grep** cannot find your file, it issues a diagnostic message and returns a value that tells the shell that something went wrong. You can examine this value by typing the command:

```
echo $?
```

This tells you the value returned by the last command executed. Zero indicates success (true), whereas a non-zero value indicates failure (false). Note that this convention is the opposite of that in the C language (a fact that has led to confusion on occasion).

You can use the value returned by a command to affect decisions about executing other commands.

### *test: Condition Testing*

For most commands, the return value is a side-effect of their operation. However, the **test** command's only task is to return a value. This command can test many conditions, and return a value to indicate whether the requested condition is true or false.

To determine if a file exists, the command

```
test -f file01
```

returns true (zero) if **file01** exists and is not a directory. To check if a file is a directory, use:

```
test -d file01
```

**test** can also test strings. This is useful when you are using parameter substitution. To illustrate, build the following command:

```
ed
a
test $1 = $2
echo 'test 1 & 2 for equal:' $?
test $1 != $2
echo 'test 1 & 2 for not equal:' $?
.
w test.ed
q
chmod +x test.ed
```

Because the '=' is a parameter, be sure to surround it with space characters.

This command file tests its two parameters for equality. Try the commands:

```
test.ed one two
test.ed one one
```

The **test** command has many other options; see the Lexicon entry for **test** for details.

## Executing Commands Conditionally

Type the following commands to create two files:

```
cat >file1
line one
line two
line three
<ctrl-D>
cat >file2
line one
two is different
line three
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, compare the files and print the return value:

```
cmp -s file1 file2
echo $?
```

The command **cmp** compares two files byte-by-byte; the **-s** option tells **cmp** merely to indicate whether the files were the same. This prints 1 (false) because the files are not the same.

To process a second command based on the result returned by the first, type:

```
cmp -s file1 file2 || cat file2
```

The characters `||` signify that the following command **cat** should be executed if the **cmp** command returns a non-zero value, which it will for this example.

The two characters **&&** execute the command that follows them only if the preceding command returns true (zero).

To see how this works, create a third file with the command:

```
cp file1 file3
```

Type the command:

```
cmp -s file1 file3 && rm file3
```

This command removes **file3** if **cmp** indicates that **file1** and **file3** are identical. Because **cmp** is preceded by the copy command **cp**, the files **file1** and **file3** are identical, and so **file3** is removed.

### Control Flow

Because the shell is a programming language as well as a program, it provides constructs for conditional execution and loops. These are **for**, **if**, **while**, **until**, and **case**. Also, a subshell can be executed within `(` and `)`.

### *for: Execute a Loop*

The **for** construct processes a set of commands once for each element in a list of items.

To illustrate **for**, type the following commands to COHERENT:

```
for i in a b c
do echo $i
done
```

The items **a**, **b**, and **c** form the list of value that the variable **i** assumes. The shell executes **echo** with **i** assuming each value in turn. The result of these commands is:

```
a
b
c
```

Notice that after you type the line containing **for**, COHERENT prompts with a different character `>` (on most COHERENT systems). The shell does this to remind you that you must type more information. After you type the line containing **done**, the prompt again becomes `$`.

The **for** command is usually used within a script. Also, you can leave off the list of value to the index variable; when you do this, the shell by default uses the arguments typed on the script's command line as the values for the index variable. To illustrate, type:



```
ed
a
for i
do echo $i
echo '----'
done
.
w script.for
q
chmod +x script.for
```

The

```
for i
```

statement is equivalent to:

```
for i in $*
```

where **\$\*** means “all positional parameters”. Notice that two commands are repeated for each value of **i**. Now, call **script.for** with the following command line:

```
script.for 1 2 3 4 test
```

The result is:

```
1
---
2
---
3
---
4
---
test
---
```

### ***if: Execute Conditionally***

**if** tests the result of a command and conditionally executes other commands based upon that result. It can be used instead of **&&** and **||**, as shown above. Instead of:

```
cmp -s file1 file2 && cat file2
```

you can use:

```
if cmp -s file1 file2
then cat file2
fi
```

This means that the shell executes

```
cat file2
```

if **cmp** returns zero (true).

## 72 The Bourne Shell

---

To get the same result as given by the previously illustrated command:

```
cmp -s file1 file3 || rm file3
```

with the **if** statement, also use **else**:

```
if cmp -s file1 file3
then
else rm file3
fi
```

The commands between **else** and **fi** are executed if the result of the command following the **if** is false or non-zero. Note that there is no command following **then**.

The **elif** statement lets you test several conditions with one **if** statement and act on the one that is true. In general terms,

```
if command1
then action1
elif command2
then action2
elif command3
then action3
else action4
fi
```

The items labeled *command* and *action* are both commands or lists of commands.

First, the shell executes **command1**. If the result is true, it performs **action1**. If the result from **command1** is not true, the shell then executes **command2**. If its result is true, then it performs **action2**. This process continues so long as none of the commands return a true result. If none of the command results are true, the action following the **else** is executed.

To illustrate, create a shell script that list on your terminal only one of the three file-name arguments. Use the command

```
test -f name
```

which returns true if *name* is an existing non-directory file.

```
ed
a
if test -f $1
then cat $1
elif test -f $2
then cat $2
elif test -f $3
then cat $3
else echo 'None are files'
fi
.
w cat.1
q
chmod +x cat.1
```

**while: Execute a Loop**

Another looping or repetitive shell statement is the **while** statement. The commands

```
while command1
do command2
done
```

first performs *command1*. If its result is true, *command2* is executed, and *command1* is again executed. This process continues until *command1* returns false (non-zero).

**until: Another Looping Construct**

The construct **until** resembles **while**. For example, the commands:

```
until command1
do command2
done
```

execute *command2* until *command1* returns true (zero).

**case: Serial Conditional Execution**

The **case** statement resembles the **if** statement in that it offers a multiple choice. To illustrate, type the following script, which lets you choose one of several ways to list the contents of a directory:

```
ed
a
case $1 in
  1) ls -l;;
  2) ls;;
  3) lc;;
  *) echo unknown parameter $1;;
esac
.
w dir
q
chmod +x dir
```

The words **case** and **esac** bracket the entire **case** statement. The effect of the command

```
dir 2
```

is equivalent to:

```
ls
```

Each choice within the **case** statement is indicated by a string followed by **)**:

```
2)
```

indicates what is to be executed if argument **\$1** has the value **2**.

The strings that select the choices may be patterns. The choice **\*)** signifies that a match can be made on any string. Notice that this resembles the use of **\*** to substitute any file name. An expression of the form

[1-9])

in a **case** statement matches any digit from 1 through 9. A list of alternatives can be presented by separating the choices with a vertical bar:

a|b|c) command

Each command or command list in the case choice must be terminated by a double semicolon ;:

### Summary

The shell is a command programming language that handles simple commands as well as complex commands that can iterate as well as make decisions. Three kinds of substitution are provided to increase the power of your commands.

For more information about the shell, see the tutorial for the shell that follows in this manual. For more information about a given command, see its entry in the Lexicon.

Note, too, that the COHERENT system also includes the Korn shell **ksh**. This is a superset of the Bourne shell described here, and has many features that you may find useful. For information about this shell, see the Lexicon entry for **ksh**.

---

# Introduction to MicroEMACS

---

This section introduces MicroEMACS, the interactive screen editor for COHERENT.

## What is MicroEMACS?

MicroEMACS is an interactive screen editor. An *editor* lets you type text into your computer, name it, store it, and recall it later for editing. *Interactive* means that MicroEMACS accepts an editing command, executes it, displays the results for you immediately, then waits for your next command. *Screen* means that you can use nearly the entire screen of your terminal as a writing surface: you can move your cursor up, down, and around your screen to create or change text, much as you move your pen up, down, and around a piece of paper.

These features, plus the others that will be described in the course of this tutorial, make MicroEMACS powerful yet easy to use. You can use MicroEMACS to create or change computer programs or any type of text file.

This version of MicroEMACS was developed by Mark Williams Company from the public-domain program written by David G. Conroy. This tutorial is based on the descriptions in his essay *MicroEMACS: Reasonable Display Editing in Little Computers*. MicroEMACS is derived from the mainframe display editor EMACS, created by Richard Stallman.

For a summary of MicroEMACS and its commands, see the entry for **me** in the Lexicon.

## Keystrokes: <ctrl>, <esc>

The MicroEMACS commands use **control** characters and **meta** characters. Control characters use the *control* key, which is marked **Control** or **ctrl** on your keyboard. Meta characters use the *escape* key, which is marked **Esc**.

**Control** works like the *shift* key: you hold it down *while* you strike the other key. This tutorial represent it with a hyphen; for example, pressing the control key and the letter 'X' key simultaneously will be shown as follows:

<ctrl-X>

The **esc** key, on the other hand, works like an ordinary character. You strike it first, *then* strike the letter character you want. This tutorial does *not* represent the *Escape* codes with a hyphen; for example, it represents **escape X** as:

<esc>X

## Becoming Acquainted with MicroEMACS

Now you are ready for a few simple exercises that will help you get a feel for how MicroEMACS works.

To begin, type the following command to COHERENT:

me sample

Within a few seconds, your screen will have been cleared of writing, the cursor will be positioned in the upper left-hand corner of the screen, and a command line will appear at the bottom of your screen.

Now type the following text. If you make a mistake, just backspace over it and retype the text. Press the carriage return or enter key after each line:

```
main()
{
    printf("Hello, world!\n");
}
```

Notice how the text appeared on the screen character by character as you typed it, much as it would appear on a piece of paper if you were using a typewriter.

Now, type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>**; that is, type **<ctrl-X>**, and then type **<ctrl-S>**. It does not matter whether you type capital or lower-case letters. Notice that this message has appeared at the bottom of your screen:

```
[Wrote 4 lines]
```

This command has permanently stored, or *saved*, what you typed into a file named **sample**.

Type the next few commands, which demonstrate some of the tasks that MicroEMACS can perform for you. These commands will be explained in full in the sections that follow; for now, try them to get a feel for how MicroEMACS works.

Type **<esc><**. Be sure that you type a less-than symbol '<'. Notice that the cursor has returned to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. Type **<esc>F**. The cursor has jumped forward by one word, and is now on the left parenthesis.

Type **<ctrl-N>**. Notice that the cursor has jumped to the next line, and is now just to the right of the left brace '{'.

Type **<ctrl-A>**. The cursor has jumped to the *beginning* of the second line of your text.

Type **<ctrl-N>** again. Now the cursor is at the beginning of the third line of the program, the **printf** statement.

Now, type **<ctrl-K>**. The third line of text has disappeared, leaving an empty space. Type **<ctrl-K>** again. The empty space where the third line of text had been has now disappeared.

Type **<esc>>**. Be sure to type a greater-than symbol '>'. The cursor has jumped to the space just below the last line of text. Now type **<ctrl-Y>**. The text that you erased a moment ago has reappeared, but in a new position on the screen.

By now, you should be feeling more at ease with typing MicroEMACS's *control* and *escape* codes. The following sections will explain what these commands mean. For now, exit from MicroEMACS by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**, and when the message

```
Quit [y/n]?
```

appears type **y** and then **<return>**. This will return you to COHERENT.

### ***Beginning a Document***

This section practices on the file **example1.c**. This file is stored in the directory **/usr/src/example**. Before beginning, copy it into the current directory with this command:

```
cp /usr/src/sample/example1.c .
```

Now, type the following command to invoke MicroEMACS:

me example1.c

In a moment, the following text will appear on your screen:

```
/*
 * This is a simple C program that computes the results
 * of three different rates of inflation over the
 * span of ten years. Use this text file to learn
 * how to use MicroEMACS commands
 * to make creating and editing text files quick,
 * efficient and easy.
 */
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    int i;                      /* count ten years */
    float w1, w2, w3;          /* three inflated quantities */
    char *msg = " %2d\t%f %f %f\n"; /* printf string */
    i = 0;
    w1 = 1.0;
    w2 = 1.0;
    w3 = 1.0;
    for (i = 1; i <= 10; i++) {
        w1 *= 1.07;             /* apply inflation */
        w2 *= 1.08;
        w3 *= 1.10;
        printf (msg, i, w1, w2, w3);
    }
}
```

When you invoke MicroEMACS, it *copies* that file into memory. Your cursor also moved to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. At the bottom of the screen appears the *status line*, as follows:

```
-- Coherent MicroEMACS -- example1.c -- File: example1.c --
```

The word to the left, MicroEMACS, is the name of the editor. The word in the center, **example1.c**, is the name of the *buffer* that you are using. (We will describe later just what a buffer is and how you use it.) The name to the right is the name of the text file that you are editing.

## Moving the Cursor

Now that you have read a text file into memory, you are ready to edit it. The first step is to learn to move the cursor.

Try these commands for yourself as we described them. That way, you will quickly acquire a feel for handling MicroEMACS's commands.

### Moving the Cursor Forward

This first set of commands moves the cursor forward:

<b>&lt;ctrl-F&gt;</b>	Move forward one space
<b>&lt;esc&gt;F</b>	Move forward one word
<b>&lt;ctrl-E&gt;</b>	Move to end of line

To see how these commands work, do the following: Type the *forward* command **<ctrl-F>**. As before, it does not matter whether the letter 'F' is upper case or lower case. The cursor has moved one space to the right, and now is over the character '\*' in the first line.

Type **<esc>F**. The cursor has moved one *word* to the right, and is now over the space after the word **this**. MicroEMACS considers only alphanumeric characters when it moves from word to word. Therefore, the cursor moved from under the \* to the space after the word **this**, rather than to the space after the \*. Now type the *end of line* command **<ctrl-E>**. The cursor has jumped to the end of the line and is now just to the right of the **e** of the word **three**.

### Moving the Cursor Backwards

The following summarizes the commands for moving the cursor backwards:

<b>&lt;ctrl-B&gt;</b>	Move back one space
<b>&lt;esc&gt;B</b>	Move back one word
<b>&lt;ctrl-A&gt;</b>	Move to beginning of line

To see how these work, first type the *backward* command **<ctrl-B>**. As you can see, the cursor has moved one space to the left, and now is over the letter **e** of the word **three**. Type **<esc>B**. The cursor has moved one *word* to the left and now is over the **t** in **three**. Type **<esc>B** again, and the cursor will be positioned on the **o** in **of**.

Type the *beginning of line* command **<ctrl-A>**. The cursor jumps to the beginning of the line, and once again is resting over the '/' character in the first line.

### From Line to Line

<b>&lt;ctrl-P&gt;</b>	Move to previous line
<b>&lt;ctrl-N&gt;</b>	Move to next line

These two commands move the cursor up and down the screen. Type the *next line* command **<ctrl-N>**. The cursor jumps to the space before the '\*' in the next line. Type the *end of line* command **<ctrl-E>**, and the cursor moves to the end of the second line to the right of the period.

Continue to type **<ctrl-N>** until the cursor reaches the bottom of the screen. As you reached the first line in your text, the cursor jumped from its position at the right of the period on the second line to just right of the brace on the last line of the file. When you move your cursor up or down the screen, MicroEMACS tries to keep it at the same position within each line. If the line to which you are moving the cursor is not long enough to have a character at that position, MicroEMACS moves the cursor to the end of the line.

Now, practice moving the cursor back up the screen. Type the *previous line* command **<ctrl-P>**. When the cursor jumped to the previous line, it retained its position at the end of the line. MicroEMACS remembers the cursor's position on the line, and returns the cursor there when it jumps to a line long enough to have a character in that position.



Continue pressing **<ctrl-P>**. The cursor will move up the screen until it reaches the top of your text.

### ***Repetitive Motion***

Some computers repeat a command automatically if you *hold down* the control key and the character key. Try holding down **<ctrl-N>** for a moment, and see if it repeats automatically. If it does, that will speed moving your cursor around the screen, because you will not have to type the same command repeatedly.

### ***Moving Up and Down by a Screenful of Text***

The next two cursor movement commands allow you to roll forward or backwards by one screenful of text.

<b>&lt;ctrl-V&gt;</b>	Move forward one screen
<b>&lt;esc&gt;V</b>	Move back one screen

If you are editing a file with MicroEMACS that is too big to be displayed on your screen all at once, MicroEMACS displays the file in screen-sized portions (on most terminals, 22 lines at a time). The *view* commands **<ctrl-V>** and **<esc>V** allow you to roll up or down one screenful of text at a time.

Type **<ctrl-V>**. Your screen now contains only the last three lines of the file. This is because you have rolled forward by the equivalent of one screenful of text, or 22 lines.

Now, type **<esc>V**. Notice that your text rolls back onto the screen, and your cursor is positioned in the upper left-hand corner of the screen, over the character '/' in the first line.

### ***Moving to Beginning or End of Text***

These last two cursor movement commands allow you to jump immediately to the beginning or end of your text.

<b>&lt;esc&gt;&lt;</b>	Move to beginning of text
<b>&lt;esc&gt;&gt;</b>	Move to end of text

The *end of text* command **<esc>>** moves the cursor to the end of your text. Type **<esc>>**. Be sure to type a greater-than symbol '>'; this symbol may have been placed anywhere on your keyboard, although on IBM-style keyboards it appears above the period. Your cursor has jumped to the end of your text.

The *beginning of text* command **<esc><** will move the cursor back to the beginning of your text. Type **<esc><**. Be sure to type a less-than symbol '<'; on IBM-style keyboards it appears above the comma. The cursor has jumped back to the upper left-hand corner of your screen.

These commands move you immediately to the beginning or the end of your text, regardless of whether the text is one page or 20 pages long.

### ***Saving Text and Quitting***

If you do not wish to continue working at this time, you should *save* your text, and then *quit*.

It is good practice to save your text file every so often while you are working on it. If an accident occurs, such as a power failure, you will not lose all of your work. You can save your text with the *save* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>**. Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>** that is, first type **<ctrl-X>**, then type **<ctrl-S>**. If you had modified this file, the following message would appear:

[Wrote 23 lines]

The text file would have been saved to your computer's disk. (MicroEMACS sends you messages from time to time. The messages enclosed in square brackets '[' ']' are for your information, and do not necessarily mean that something is wrong.) To exit from MicroEMACS, type the *quit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**. This will return you to COHERENT.

### Killing and Deleting

Now that you know how to move the cursor, you are ready to edit your text.

To return to MicroEMACS, type the command:

```
me example1.c
```

Within a moment, **example1.c** will be restored to your screen.

By now, you probably have noticed that MicroEMACS is always ready to insert material into your text. Unless you use the **<ctrl>** or **<esc>** keys, MicroEMACS assumes that whatever you type is text and inserts it onto your screen where your cursor is positioned.

The simplest way to erase text is simply to position the cursor to the right of the text you want to erase and backspace over it. MicroEMACS, however, also has a set of commands that allow you to erase text easily. These commands, *kill* and *delete*, behave differently; the distinction is important, and will be explained in a moment.

#### Deleting Vs. Killing

When MicroEMACS *deletes* text, it is erased completely and disappears forever. However, when MicroEMACS *kills* text, the text is copied into a temporary storage area in memory. This storage area is overwritten when you move the cursor and then kill additional text. Until then, however, the killed text is saved. This aspect of killing allows you to restore text that you killed accidentally, and it also allows you to move or copy portions of text from one position to another.

MicroEMACS is designed so that when it erases text, it does so beginning at the *left edge* of the cursor. This left edge is called the *current position*.

You should imagine that an invisible vertical bar separates the cursor from the character immediately to its left. As you enter the various kill and delete commands, this vertical bar moves to the right or the left with the cursor, and erases the characters it touches.

#### Erasing Text to the Right

The first two commands to be presented erase text to the *right*.

<b>&lt;ctrl-D&gt;</b>	Delete one character to the right
<b>&lt;esc&gt;D</b>	Kill one word to the right

**<ctrl-D>** deletes one *character* to the right of the current position. **<esc>D** deletes one *word* to the right of the current position.

To try these commands, type the *delete* command **<ctrl-D>**. MicroEMACS erases the character '/' in the first line, and shifted the rest of the line one space to the left.

Now, type **<esc>D**. MicroEMACS erases the '\*' character and the word **This**, and shifts the line six spaces to the left. The cursor is positioned at the *space* before the word **is**. Type **<esc>D** again. The word **is** vanishes along with the *space* that preceded it, and the line shifts *four* spaces to the left.

Remember that **<ctrl-D>** *deletes* text, but **<esc>D** *kills* text.

### Erasing Text to the Left

You can erase text to the *left* with the following commands:

<b>&lt;del&gt;</b>	Delete one character to the left
<b>&lt;backspace&gt;</b>	Delete one character to the left
<b>&lt;ctrl-H&gt;</b>	Delete one character to the left
<b>&lt;esc&gt;&lt;del&gt;</b>	Kill one word to the left
<b>&lt;esc&gt;&lt;backspace&gt;</b>	Kill one word to the left
<b>&lt;esc&gt;&lt;ctrl-H&gt;</b>	Kill one word to the left

To see how to erase text to the left, first type the *end of line* command **<ctrl-E>**; this will move the cursor to the right of the word **three** on the first line of text. Now, type **<del>**. The second **e** of the word **three** has vanished.

Type **<esc><del>**. The rest of the word **three** has disappeared, and the cursor has moved to the second space following the word **of**.

Move the cursor four spaces to the left, so that it is over the letter **o** of the word **of**. Type **<esc><del>**. The word **results** has vanished, along with the space that was immediately to the right of it. As before, these commands erased text beginning immediately to the *left* of the cursor. The **<esc><del>** command can be used to erase words throughout your text.

If you wish to erase a word to the left but preserve both spaces that are around it, position the cursor at the space immediately to the right of the word and type **<esc><del>**. If you wish to erase a word to the left plus the space that immediately follows it, position the cursor under the first letter of the *next* word and then type **<esc><del>**.

Typing **<del>** *deletes* text, but typing **<esc><del>** *kills* text.

### Erasing Lines of Text

Finally, the following command erases a line of text:

<b>&lt;ctrl-K&gt;</b>	Kill from cursor to end of line
-----------------------	---------------------------------

This command kills a line of text, from the line beginning from immediately to the left of the cursor to the end of the line.

To see how this works, move the cursor to the beginning of line 2. Now, strike **<ctrl-K>**. All of line 2 has vanished and been replaced with an empty space. Strike **<ctrl-K>** again. The empty space has vanished, and the cursor is now positioned at the beginning of what used to be line 3, in the space before **\* Use**.

### Yanking Back (Restoring) Text

The following command allows you restore material that you have killed:

<b>&lt;ctrl-Y&gt;</b>	Yank back (restore) killed text
-----------------------	---------------------------------

Remember that when you kill text, MicroEMACS temporarily stores it elsewhere. You can return this material to the screen by using the *yank back* command **<ctrl-Y>**. Type **<ctrl-Y>**. All of line 2 has returned; the cursor, however, remains at the beginning of line 3.

### Quitting

When you are finished, do not save the text. If you do so, the undamaged copy of the text that you made earlier will be replaced with the present mangled copy. Rather, use the *quit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**. Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**. On the bottom of your screen, MicroEMACS responds:

```
Quit [y/n]?
```

Reply by typing **y** and a carriage return. If you type **n**, MicroEMACS will return you to where you were in the text. MicroEMACS will now return you to COHERENT.

### Block Killing and Moving Text

As noted above, text that is killed is stored temporarily within memory. You can yank killed text back onto your screen, and not necessarily in the spot where it was originally killed. This feature allows you to move text from one position to another.

### Moving One Line of Text

You can kill and move one line of text with the following commands:

<b>&lt;ctrl-K&gt;</b>	Kill text to end of line
<b>&lt;ctrl-Y&gt;</b>	Yank back text

To test these commands, invoke MicroEMACS for the file **example1.c** by typing the following command:

```
me example1.c
```

When MicroEMACS appears, the cursor will be positioned in the upper left-hand corner of the screen.

To move the first line of text, begin by typing the *kill* command **<ctrl-K>** twice. Now, press **<esc>>** to move the cursor to the bottom of text. Finally, yank back the line by typing **<ctrl-Y>**. The line that reads

```
/* This is a simple C program that computes the results
```

is now at the bottom of your text.

Your cursor has moved to the point on your screen that is *after* the line you yanked back.

### Multiple Copying of Killed Text

When text is yanked back onto your screen, it is *not* deleted from memory. Rather, it is simply copied back onto the screen. This means that killed text can be reinserted into the text more than once. To see how this is done, return to the top of the text by typing **<esc><**. Then type **<ctrl-Y>**. The line you just killed now appears as both the first and last line of the file.

The killed text will not be erased from its temporary storage until you move the cursor and then kill additional text. If you kill several lines or portions of lines in a row, all of the killed text will be stored in the buffer; if you are not careful, you may yank back a jumble of accumulated text.

## Kill and Move a Block of Text

If you wish to kill and move more than one line of text at a time, use the following commands:

<b>&lt;ctrl-@&gt;</b>	Set mark
<b>&lt;esc&gt;.</b>	Set mark
<b>&lt;ctrl-W&gt;</b>	Kill block of text
<b>&lt;ctrl-Y&gt;</b>	Yank back text

If you wish to kill a block of text, you can either type the *kill* command **<ctrl-K>** repeatedly to kill the block one line at a time, or you can use the *block kill* command **<ctrl-W>**. To use this command, you must first set a *mark* on the screen, an invisible character that acts as a signal to the computer. The mark can be set with either **<esc>.** or **<ctrl-@>**.

Once the mark is set, you must move your cursor to the other end of the block of text you wish to kill, and then strike **<ctrl-W>**. The block of text will be erased, and will be ready to be yanked back elsewhere.

Try this out on **example1.c**. Type **<esc><** to move the cursor to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. Then type the *set mark* command **<ctrl-@>**. (By the way, be sure to type '@', not '2'.) MicroEMACS will respond with the message

[Mark set]

at the bottom of your screen. Now, move the cursor down six lines, and type **<ctrl-W>**. Note how the block of text you marked out has disappeared.

Move the cursor to the bottom of your text. Type **<ctrl-Y>**. The killed block of text has now been reinserted.

When you yank back text, be sure to position the cursor at the *exact* point where you want the text to be yanked back. This will ensure that the text will be yanked back in the proper place. To try this out, move your cursor up six lines. Be careful that the cursor is at the *beginning* of the line. Now, type **<ctrl-Y>** again. The text reappeared *above* where the cursor was positioned, and the cursor has not moved from its position at the beginning of the line which is not what would have happened had you positioned it in the middle or at the end of a line.

Although the text you are working with has only 23 lines, you can move much larger portions of text using only these three commands. Remember, too, that you can use this technique to duplicate large portions of text at several positions to save yourself considerable time in typing and reduce the number of possible typographical errors.

## Capitalization and Other Tools

The next commands perform a number of tasks to help with your editing. Before you begin this section, destroy the old text on your screen with the *quit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**, and read into MicroEMACS a fresh copy of the program, as you did earlier.

### Capitalization and Lowercasing

The following MicroEMACS commands automatically capitalize a word (that is, make the first letter of a word upper case), or make an entire word upper case or lower case.

<b>&lt;esc&gt;C</b>	Capitalize a word
<b>&lt;esc&gt;L</b>	Lowercase an entire word
<b>&lt;esc&gt;U</b>	Uppercase an entire word

To try these commands, do the following: First, move the cursor to the letter **d** of the word *different* on line 2. Type the *capitalize* command **<esc>C**. The word is now capitalized, and the cursor is now positioned at the space after the word. Move the cursor forward so that it is over the letter **t** in **rates**. Press **<esc>C** again. The word changes to **raTes**. When you press **<esc>C**, MicroEMACS capitalizes the *first* letter the cursor meets.

MicroEMACS can also change a word to all upper case or all lower case. (There is very little need for a command that will change only the first character of an upper-case word to lower case, so it is not included.)

Type **<esc>B** to move the cursor so that it is again to the left of the word **Different**. It does not matter if the cursor is directly over the **D** or at the space to its left; as you will see, this means that you can capitalize or lowercase a number of words in a row without having to move the cursor.

Type the *uppercase* command **<esc>U**. The word is now spelled **DIFFERENT**, and the cursor has jumped to the space after the word.

Again, move the cursor to the left of the word **DIFFERENT**. Type the *lowercase* command **<esc>L**. The word has changed back to **different**. Now, move the cursor to the space at the beginning of line 3 by typing **<ctrl-N>** then **<ctrl-A>**. Type **<esc>L** once again. The character **"\*"** is not affected by the command, but the letter **U** is now lower case. **<esc>L** not only shifts a word that is all upper case to lower case: it can also un-capitalize a word.

The *uppercase* and *lowercase* commands stop at the first punctuation mark they meet *after* the first letter they find. This means that, for example, to change the case of a word with an apostrophe in it you must type the appropriate command twice.

### Transpose Characters

MicroEMACS allows you to reverse the position of two characters, or *transpose* them, with the *transpose* command **<ctrl-T>**.

Type **<ctrl-T>**. MicroEMACS transposes the character that is under the cursor with the character immediately to its *left*. In this example,

```
* use this
```

in line 3 now appears:

```
* us ethis
```

The space and the letter **e** have been transposed. Type **<ctrl-T>** again. The characters have returned to their original order.

### Screen Redraw

**<ctrl-L>**                      Redraw screen

Occasionally, while you are working on a text another COHERENT user will write or mail you a message. COHERENT will write the message directly on your screen, which scrambles your screen. A message sent from another user or a message from the COHERENT system is *not* recorded into your text; however, you may wish to erase the message and continue editing. The *redraw screen* command **<ctrl-L>** will redraw your screen to the way it was before it was scrambled.

Type **<ctrl-L>**. Notice how the screen flickers and the text is rewritten. Had your screen been spoiled by extraneous material, that material would have been erased and the original text rewritten.

## TUTORIALS

The **<ctrl-L>** command also has another use: it can move the line on which the cursor is positioned to the center of the screen. If you have a file that contains more than one screenful of text and you wish to have that particular line in the center of the screen, position the cursor on that line and type **<ctrl-U><ctrl-L>**. Immediately, MicroEMACS redraws the screen, and places the line you selected in the center of the screen.

## Return Indent

**<ctrl-J>**                      Return and indent

You may often be faced with a situation in which, for the sake of programming style, you need to indent many lines of text: before every line you must tab the correct number of times before typing the text. These *block indents* can be a time-consuming typing chore. The MicroEMACS **<ctrl-J>** command makes this task easier. **<ctrl-J>** moves the cursor to the next line on the screen and automatically positions the cursor at the previous line's level of indentation.

To see how this works, first move the cursor to the line that reads

```
w3 *= 1.10:
```

Press **<ctrl-E>**, to move the cursor to the end of the line. Now, type **<ctrl-J>**.

As you can see, a new line opens up and the cursor is indented the same amount as the previous line. Type

```
/* Here is an example of auto-indentation */
```

This line of text begins directly under the previous line.

## Word Wrap

**<ctrl-X>F**                      Set word wrap

Although you have not yet had much opportunity to use it, MicroEMACS will automatically wrap text that you are typing. Word-wrapping is controlled with the *word wrap* command **<ctrl-X>F**. To see how the word wrap command works, first exit from MicroEMACS by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**; then reinvoke MicroEMACS by typing

```
me cucumber
```

When MicroEMACS re-appears, type the following text; however, do *not* type any carriage returns:

```
A cucumber should be
well sliced, and dressed
with pepper and vinegar,
and then thrown out, as
good for nothing.
```

When you reached the edge of your screen, a dollar sign was printed and you were allowed to continue typing. MicroEMACS accepted the characters you typed, but it placed them at a location beyond the right edge of your screen.

Now, move to the beginning of the next line and type **<ctrl-U>**. MicroEMACS will reply with the message:

```
Arg: 4
```

Type **30**. The line at the bottom of your screen now appears as follows:

Arg: 30

(The use of the *argument* command **<ctrl-U>** will be explained in a few minutes.) Now type the *word-wrap* command **<ctrl-X>F**. MicroEMACS will now say at the bottom of your screen:

[Wrap at column 30]

This sequence of commands has set the word-wrap function, and told it to wrap to the next line all words that extend beyond the 30th column on your screen.

The *word wrap* feature automatically moves your cursor to the beginning of the next line once you type past a preset border on your screen. When you first enter MicroEMACS, that limit is automatically set at the first column, which in effect means that word wrap has been turned off.

When you type prose for a report or a letter of some sort, you probably will want to set the border at the 65th column, so that the printed text will fit neatly onto a sheet of paper. If you are using MicroEMACS to type in a program, however, you probably will want to leave word wrap off, so you do not accidentally introduce carriage returns into your code.

To test word wrapping, type the above text again, without using the carriage return key. When you finish, it should appear as follows:

```
A cucumber should be well
sliced, and dressed with
pepper and vinegar, and then
thrown out, as good for nothing.
```

MicroEMACS automatically moved your cursor to the next line when you typed a space character after the 30th column on your screen.

If you wish to fix the border at some special point on your screen but do not wish to go through the tedium of figuring out how many columns from the left it is, simply position the cursor where you want the border to be, type **<ctrl-X>F**, and then type a carriage return. When **<ctrl-X>F** is typed without being preceded by a **<ctrl-U>** command, it sets the word-wrap border at the point your cursor happens to be positioned. When you do this, MicroEMACS will then print a message at the bottom of your terminal that tells you where the word-wrap border is now set.

To re-word wrap the text between the cursor and the mark, type **<ctrl-X>H**.

If you wish to turn off the word wrap feature again, simply set the word wrap border to one.

### ***Search and Reverse Search***

When you edit a large text, you may wish to change particular words or phrases. To do this, you can roll through the text and read each line to find them; or you can have MicroEMACS find them for you. Before you continue, close the present file by typing **<ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>**; then reinvoke the editor to edit the file **example1.c**, as you did before. The following sections perform some exercises with this file.

#### ***Search Forward***

<b>&lt;ctrl-S&gt;</b>	Search forward incrementally
<b>&lt;esc&gt;S</b>	Search forward with prompt

As you can see from the display, MicroEMACS has two ways to search forward: incrementally, and with a prompt.

## **TUTORIALS**



An *incremental* search is one in which the search is performed as you type the characters. To see how this works, first type the *beginning of text* command `<esc><` to move the cursor to the upper left-hand corner of your screen. Now, type the *incremental search* command `<ctrl-S>`. MicroEMACS will respond by prompting with the message

```
i-search forward:
```

at the bottom of the screen.

We will now search for the pointer `*msg`. Type the letters `*msg` one at a time, starting with `*`. The cursor has jumped to the first place that a `*` was found: at the second character of the first line. The cursor moves forward in the text file and the message at the bottom of the screen changes to reflect what you have typed.

Now type `m`. The cursor has jumped ahead to the letter `s` in `*msg`. Type `s`. The cursor has jumped ahead to the letter `g` in `*msg`. Finally, type `g`. The cursor is over the space after the token `*msg`. Finally, type `<esc>` to end the string. MicroEMACS replies with the message

```
[Done]
```

which indicates that the search is finished.

If you attempt an incremental search for a word that is not in the file, MicroEMACS will find as many of the letters as it can, and then give you an error message. For example, if you tried to search incrementally for the word `*msgs`, MicroEMACS would move the cursor to the phrase `*msg`; when you typed 's', it would tell you

```
failing i-search forward: *msgs
```

With the *prompt search*, however, you type in the word all at once. To see how this works, type `<esc><`, to return to the top of the file. Now, type the *prompt search* command `<esc>S`. MicroEMACS responds by prompting with the message

```
Search [*msgs]:
```

at the bottom of the screen. The word `*msgs` is shown because that was the last word for which you searched, and so it is kept in the search buffer.

Type in the words `editing text`, then press the carriage return. Notice that the cursor has jumped to the period after the word `text` in the next to last line of your text. MicroEMACS searched for the words `editing text`, found them, and moved the cursor to them.

If the word you were searching for was not in your text, or at least was not in the portion that lies between your cursor and the end of the text, MicroEMACS would not have moved the cursor, and would have displayed the message

```
Not found
```

at the bottom of your screen.

## Reverse Search

<code>&lt;ctrl-R&gt;</code>	Search backwards incrementally
<code>&lt;esc&gt;R</code>	Search backwards with prompt

The search commands, useful as they are, can only search forward through your text. To search backwards, use the reverse search commands `<ctrl-R>` and `<esc>R`. These work exactly the same as their forward-searching counterparts, except that they search toward the beginning of the file rather than toward the end.

For example, type **<esc>R**. MicroEMACS replies with the message

Reverse search [editing text]:

at the bottom of your screen. The words in square brackets are the words you entered earlier for the *search* command; MicroEMACS remembered them. If you wanted to search for **editing text** again, you would just press the carriage return. For now, however, type the word **program** and press the carriage return.

Notice that the cursor has jumped so that it is under the letter **p** of the word **program** in line 1. When you search forward, the cursor moves to the *space after* the word for which you are searching, whereas when you reverse search the cursor moves to the *first letter* of the word for which you are searching.

### Cancel a Command

**<ctrl-G>**            Cancel a search command

As you have noticed, the commands to move the cursor or to delete or kill text all execute immediately. Although this speeds your editing, it also means that if you type a command by mistake, it executes before you can stop it.

The *search* and *reverse search* commands, however, wait for you to respond to their prompts before they execute. If you type **<esc>S** or **<esc>R** by accident, MicroEMACS will interrupt your editing and wait for you to initiate a search that you do not want to perform. You can evade this problem, however, with the *cancel* command **<ctrl-G>**. This command tells MicroEMACS to ignore the previous command.

To see how this command works, type **<esc>R**. When the prompt appears at the bottom of your screen, type **<ctrl-G>**. Three things happen: your terminal beeps, the characters **^G** appear at the bottom of your screen, and the cursor returns to where it was before you first typed **<esc>R**. The **<esc>R** command has been cancelled, and you are free to continue editing.

If you cancel an *incremental search* command, **<ctrl-S>** or **<esc-S>**, the cursor returns to where it was before you began the search. For example, type **<esc><** to return to the top of the file. Now type **<ctrl-S>** to begin an incremental search, and type **m**. When the cursor moves to the **m** in **simple**, type **<ctrl-G>**. The bell rings, and your cursor returns to the top of the file, where you began the search.

### Search and Replace

**<esc>%**            Search and replace

MicroEMACS also gives you a powerful function that allows you to search for a string and replace it with a keystroke. You can do this by executing the *search and replace* command **<esc>%**.

To see how this works, move to the top of the text file by typing **<esc><**; then type **<esc>%**. You will see the following message at the bottom of your screen:

Old string:

As an exercise, type **msg**. MicroEMACS will then ask:

New string:

Type **message**, and press the carriage return. As you can see, the cursor jumps to the first occurrence of the string **msg**, and prints the following message at the bottom of your screen:

## TUTORIALS

Query replace: [msg] -> [message]

MicroEMACS is asking if it should proceed with the replacement. Type a carriage return: this displays the options that are available to you at the bottom of your screen:

<SP>[, ] replace, [.] rep-end, [n] dont, [!] repl rest <C-G> quit

The options are as follows:

Typing a space or a comma executes the replacement, and moves the cursor to the next occurrence of the old string; in this case, it replaces **msg** with **message**, and moves the cursor to the next occurrence of **msg**.

Typing a period '.' replaces this one occurrence of the old string and ends the search and replace procedure. In this example, typing a period replaces this one occurrence of **msg** with **message** and ends the procedure.

Typing the letter 'n' tells MicroEMACS *not* to replace this instance of the old string, but move to the next occurrence of the old string. In this case, typing 'n' does *not* replace **msg** with **message**, and the cursor jumps to the next place where **msg** occurs.

Typing an exclamation point '!' tells MicroEMACS to replace all instances of the old string with the new string automatically, without checking with you any further. In this example, typing '!' replaces all instances of **msg** with **message** without further queries from MicroEMACS.

Finally, typing <ctrl-G> aborts the search and replace procedure.

## Saving Text and Exiting

This set of basic editing commands allows you to save your text and exit from the MicroEMACS program. They are as follows:

<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>	Save text
<ctrl-X><ctrl-W>	Write text to a new file
<ctrl-Z>	Save text and exit
<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>	Exit without saving text

You have used two of these commands already: the *save* command <ctrl-X><ctrl-S> and the *quit* command <ctrl-X><ctrl-C>, which respectively allow you to save text or to exit from MicroEMACS without saving text. (Commands that begin with <ctrl-X> are called *extended* commands; they are used frequently in the commands described later in this tutorial.)

### Write Text to a New File

<ctrl-X> <ctrl-W>	Write text to a new file
-------------------	--------------------------

If you wish, you can copy the text you are currently editing to a text file other than the one from which you originally read the text. Do this with the *write* command <ctrl-X><ctrl-W>.

To test this command, type <ctrl-X><ctrl-W>. MicroEMACS displays the following message on the bottom of your screen:

Write file:

MicroEMACS is asking for the name of the file into which you wish to write the text. Type **sample**. MicroEMACS replies:

[Wrote 23 lines]

The 23 lines of your text have been copied to a new file called **sample**. The status line at the bottom of your screen has changed to read as follows:

```
-- MicroEMACS -- example1.c -- File: sample -----
```

The significance of the change in file name will be discussed in the second half of this tutorial.

Before you copy text into a new file, be sure that you have not selected a file name that is already being used. If you do, MicroEMACS will erase whatever is stored under that file name, and the text created with MicroEMACS will be stored in its place.

### ***Save Text and Exit***

Finally, the *store* command **<ctrl-Z>** will save your text *and* move you out of the MicroEMACS editor. To see how this works, watch the bottom line of your terminal carefully and type **<ctrl-Z>**. MicroEMACS has saved your text, and now you can issue commands directly to COHERENT.

## ***Advanced Editing***

The second half of this tutorial introduces the advanced features of MicroEMACS.

The techniques described here will help you execute complex editing tasks with minimal trouble. You will be able to edit more than one text at a time, display more than one file on your screen at a time, enter a long or complicated phrase repeatedly with only one keystroke, and give commands to COHERENT without having to exit from MicroEMACS.

Before beginning, however, you must prepare a new text file. Type the following command to COHERENT:

```
me example2.c
```

In a moment, **example2.c** will appear on your screen, as follows:

```

/* Use this program to get better acquainted
 * with the MicroEMACS interactive screen editor.
 * You can use this text to learn some of the
 * more advanced editing features of MicroEMACS.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    FILE *fp;
    int ch;
    int filename[20];

    printf("Enter file name: ");
    gets(filename);

    if ((fp =fopen(filename,"r")) !=NULL) {
        while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF)
            fputc(ch, stdout);
    } else
        printf("Cannot open %s.\n", filename);
    fclose(fp);
}

```

## Arguments

Most of the commands already described in this tutorial can be used with *arguments*. An argument is a subcommand that tells MicroEMACS to execute a command a given number of times. With MicroEMACS, arguments are introduced by typing **<ctrl-U>**.

### Arguments: Default Values

By itself, **<ctrl-U>** sets the argument at *four*. To illustrate this, first type the *next line* command **<ctrl-N>**. By itself, this command moves the cursor down one line, from being over the *'/'* at the beginning of line 1, to being over the *space* at the beginning of line 2.

Now, type **<ctrl-U>**. MicroEMACS replies with the message:

Arg: 4

Now type **<ctrl-N>**. The cursor jumps down *four* lines, from the beginning of line 2 to the letter **m** of the word **main** at the beginning of line 6.

Type **<ctrl-U>**. The line at the bottom of the screen again shows that the value of the argument is four. Type **<ctrl-U>** again. Now the line at the bottom of the screen reads:

Arg: 16

Type **<ctrl-U>** once more. The line at the bottom of the screen now reads:

Arg: 64

Each time you type **<ctrl-U>**, the value of the argument is *multiplied* by four. Type the *forward* command **<ctrl-F>**. The cursor has jumped ahead 64 characters, and is now over the **l** of the word **file** in the *printf* statement in line 11.

### Selecting Values

Naturally, an argument does not have to be a power of four. You can set the argument to whatever number you wish, simply by typing **<ctrl-U>** and then typing the number you want.

For example, type **<ctrl-U>**, and then type **3**. The line at the bottom of the screen now reads:

Arg: 3

Type the *delete* command **<esc>D**. MicroEMACS has deleted three words to the right.

You can use arguments to increase the power of any *cursor movement* command, or any *kill* or *delete* command. The sole exception is **<ctrl-W>**, the *block kill* command.

### Deleting With Arguments: An Exception

*Killing* and *deleting* were described in the first part of this tutorial. They were said to differ in that text that was killed was stored in a special area of the computer and could be yanked back, whereas text that was deleted was erased outright. However, there is one exception to this rule: any text that is deleted using an argument can also be yanked back.

To see how this works, first type the *begin text* command **<esc><** to move the cursor to the upper left-hand corner of the screen. Then, type **<ctrl-U> 5 <ctrl-D>**. The word **Use** has disappeared. Move the cursor to the right until it is between the words **better** and **acquainted**, then type **<ctrl-Y>**. The word **Use** has been moved within the line (although the spaces around it have not been moved). This function is very handy, and should greatly speed your editing.

Remember, too, that unless you move the cursor between one set of deletions and another, the computer's storage area will not be erased, and you may yank back a jumble of text.

## Buffers and Files

Before beginning this section, replace the edited copy of the text on your screen with a fresh copy. Type the *quit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>** to exit from MicroEMACS without saving the text; then return to MicroEMACS to edit the file **example2.c**, as you did earlier.

Now, look at the status line at the bottom of your screen. It should appear as follows: As noted in the first half of this tutorial, the name on the left of the command line is that of the program. The name in the middle is the name of the *buffer* with which you are now working, and the name to the right is the name of the *file* from which you read the text.

### Definitions

A *file* is a mass of text that has been given a name and has been permanently stored on your disk. A *buffer* is a portion of the computer's memory that has been set aside for you to use, which may be given a name, and into which you can put text temporarily. You can place text into the buffer either by typing it at your keyboard or by *copying* it from a file.

Unlike a file, a buffer is not permanent: if your computer were to stop working (because you turned the power off, for example), a file would not be affected, but a buffer would be erased.

You must *name* your files because you work with many different files, and you must have some way to tell them apart. Likewise, MicroEMACS allows you to *name* your buffers, because MicroEMACS allows you to work with more than one buffer at a time.

## File and Buffer Commands

MicroEMACS gives you a number of commands for handling files and buffers. These include the following:

<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-W&gt;</b>	Write text to file
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-F&gt;</b>	Rename file
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-R&gt;</b>	Replace buffer with named file
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-V&gt;</b>	Switch buffer or create a new buffer
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;K&gt;</b>	Delete a buffer
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-B&gt;</b>	Display the status of each buffer

## Write and Rename Commands

The *write* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-W>** was introduced earlier when the commands for saving text and exiting were discussed. To review, **<ctrl-X><ctrl-W>** changes the name of the file into which the text is saved, and then copies the text into that file.

Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-W>**. MicroEMACS responds by printing

Write file:

on the last line of your screen.

Type **junkfile**, then **<return>**. Two things happen: First, MicroEMACS writes the message

[Wrote 21 lines]

at the bottom of your screen. Second, the name of the file shown on the status line changes from **example2.c** to **junkfile**. MicroEMACS is reminding you that your text is now being saved into the file **junkfile**.

The *file rename* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-F>** allows you rename the file to which you are saving text, *without* automatically writing the text to it. Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-F>**. MicroEMACS will reply with the prompt:

Name:

Type **example2.c** and **<return>**. MicroEMACS does *not* send you a message that lines were written to the file; however, the name of the file shown on the status line has changed from **junkfile** back to **example2.c**.

## Replace Text in a Buffer

The *replace* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>** allows you to replace the text in your buffer with the text from another file.

Suppose, for example, that you had edited **example2.c** and saved it, and now wished to edit **example1.c**. You could exit from MicroEMACS, then re-invoke MicroEMACS for the file **example2.c**, but this is cumbersome. A more efficient way is to simply replace the **example2.c** in your buffer with **example1.c**.

Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>**. MicroEMACS replies with the prompt:

Read file:

Type **example1.c**. Notice that **example2.c** has rolled away and been replaced with **example1.c**. Now, check the status line. Notice that although the name of the *buffer* is still **example2.c**, the name of the *file* has changed to **example1.c**. You can now edit **example1.c**; when you save the edited text, MicroEMACS will copy it back into the file **example1.c** unless, of course, you again choose to rename the file.

### Visiting Another Buffer

The last command of this set, the *visit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>**, allows you to create more than one buffer at a time, to jump from one buffer to another, and move text between buffers. This powerful command has numerous features.

Before beginning, however, straighten up your buffer by replacing **example1.c** with **example2.c**. Type the *replace* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>**; when MicroEMACS replies by asking

Read file:

at the bottom of your screen, type **example2.c**.

You should now have the file **example2.c** read into the buffer named **example2.c**.

Now, type the *visit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>**. MicroEMACS replies with the prompt

Visit file:

at the bottom of the screen. Now type **example1.c**. Several things happen. **example2.c** rolls off the screen and is replaced with **example1.c**; the status line changes to show that both the buffer name and the file name are now **example1.c**; and the message

[Read 23 lines]

appears at the bottom of the screen.

This does *not* mean that your previous buffer has been erased, as it would have been had you used the *replace* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>**. MicroEMACS is still keeping **example2.c** “alive” in a buffer and it is available for editing; however, it is not being shown on your screen at the present moment.

Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>** again, and when the prompt appears, type **example2.c**. **example1.c** scrolls off your screen and is replaced by **example2.c**, and the message

[Old buffer]

appears at the bottom of your screen. You have just jumped from one buffer to another.

### Move Text From One Buffer to Another

The *visit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>** not only allows you to jump from one buffer to another: it allows you to *move text* from one buffer to another as well. The following example shows how you can do this.

First, kill the first line of **example2.c** by typing the *kill* command **<ctrl-K>** twice. This removes both the line of text *and* the space that it occupied. If you did not remove the space as well the line itself, no new line would be created for the text when you yank it back. Next, type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>**. When the prompt

Visit file:

appears at the bottom of your screen, type **example1.c**. When **example1.c** has rolled onto your screen, type the *yank back* command **<ctrl-Y>**. The line you killed in **example2.c** has now been moved into **example1.c**.



## Checking Buffer Status

The number of buffers you can use at any one time is limited only by the size of your computer. You should create only as many buffers as you need to use immediately; this will help the computer run efficiently.

To help you keep track of your buffers, MicroEMACS has the *buffer status* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>**. Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>**. The status line moves up to the middle of the screen, and the bottom half of your screen is replaced with the following display:

C	Size	Lines	Buffer	File
-	----	-----	-----	----
*	655	24	example1.c	example1.c
*	403	20	example2.c	example2.c

This display is called the *buffer status window*. The use of windows will be discussed more fully in the following section.

The letter **C** over the leftmost column stands for **Changed**. An asterisk indicates that that buffer has been changed since it was last saved, whereas a space means that the buffer has not been changed. **Size** indicates the buffer's size, in number of characters; **Buffer** lists the buffer name, and **File** lists the file name.

Now, kill the second line of **example1.c** by typing the *kill* command **<ctrl-K>**. Then type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>** once again. The size of the buffer **example1.c** shrinks from 657 characters to 595 to reflect the decrease in the size of the buffer.

To make this display disappear, type the *one window* command **<ctrl-X>1**. This command will be discussed in full in the next section.

## Renaming a Buffer

One more point must be covered with the *visit* command. COHERENT does not allow you to have more than one file with the same name. For the same reason, MicroEMACS does not allow you to have more than one *buffer* with the same name.

Ordinarily, when you visit a file that is not already in a buffer, MicroEMACS creates a new buffer and gives it the same name as the file you are visiting. However, if for some reason you already have a buffer with the same name as the file you wish to visit, MicroEMACS stops and asks you to give a new, different name to the buffer it is creating.

For example, suppose that you wanted to visit a new *file* named **sample**, but you already had a *buffer* named **sample**. MicroEMACS would stop and give you this prompt at the bottom of the screen:

Buffer name:

You would type in a name for this new buffer. This name could not duplicate the name of any existing buffer. MicroEMACS would then read the file **sample** into the newly named buffer.

## Delete a Buffer

If you wish to delete a buffer, simply type the *delete buffer* command **<ctrl-X>K**. This command allows you to delete only a buffer that is hidden, not one that is being displayed.

Type **<ctrl-X>K**. MicroEMACS will give you the prompt:

Kill buffer:

Type **example2.c**. Because you have changed the buffer, MicroEMACS asks:

Discard changes [y/n]?

Type **y**. Now, type the *buffer status* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>**. The buffer status window no longer shows the buffer **example2.c**. Although the prompt refers to *killing* a buffer, the buffer is in fact *deleted* and cannot be yanked back.

### Windows

Before beginning this section, it will be necessary to create a new text file. Exit from MicroEMACS by typing the *quit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**; then reinvoke MicroEMACS for the text file **example1.c** as you did earlier.

Now, copy **example2.c** into a buffer by typing the **visit** command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>**. When the message

Visit file:

appears at the bottom of your screen, type **example2.c**. MicroEMACS reads **example2.c** into a buffer, and shows the message

[Read 21 lines]

at the bottom of your screen.

Finally, copy a new text, called **example3.c**, into a buffer. (You can find it in the same place where the files **example1.c** and **example2.c** are kept.) Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>** again. When MicroEMACS asks which file to visit, type **example3.c**. The message

[Read 123 lines]

appears at the bottom of your screen.

The first screenful of text appears as follows:

```
/*
 * Factor prints out the prime factorization of numbers.
 * If there are any arguments, then it factors these. If
 * there are no arguments, then it reads stdin until
 * either EOF or the number zero or a non-numeric
 * non-white-space character. Since factor does all of
 * its calculations in double format, the largest number
 * which can be handled is quite large.
 */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <math.h>
#include <ctype.h>

#define NUL '\0'
#define ERROR 0x10 /* largest input base */
#define MAXNUM 200 /* max number of chars in number */
```

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc;
register char *argv[];
```

```
-- MicroEMACS -- example3.c -- File: example3.c -----
```

At this point, **example3.c** is on your screen, and **example1.c** and **example2.c** are hidden.

You could edit first one text and then another, while remembering just how things stood with the texts that were hidden; but it would be much easier if you could display all three texts on your screen simultaneously. MicroEMACS allows you to do just that by using *windows*.

### Creating Windows and Moving Between Them

A *window* is a portion of your screen that can be manipulated independent of the rest of the screen. The following commands let you create windows and move between them:

<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;2</b>	Create a window
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;1</b>	Delete extra windows
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;N</b>	Move to next window
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;P</b>	Move to previous window

The best way to grasp how a window works is to create one and work with it. To begin, type the *create a window* command **<ctrl-X>2**.

Your screen is now divided into two parts, an upper and a lower. The same text is in each part, and the command lines give **example3.c** for the buffer and file names. Also, note that you still have only one cursor, which is in the upper left-hand corner of the screen.

The next step is to move from one window to another. Type the *next window* command **<ctrl-X>N**. Your cursor has now jumped to the upper left-hand corner of the *lower* window.

Type the *previous window* command **<ctrl-X>P**. Your cursor has returned to the upper left-hand corner of the top window.

Now, type **<ctrl-X>2** again. The window on the top of your screen is now divided into two windows, for a total of three on your screen. Type **<ctrl-X>2** again. The window at the top of your screen has again divided into two windows, for a total of four.

It is possible to have as many as 11 windows on your screen at one time, although each window will show only the control line and one or two lines of text. Neither **<ctrl-X>2** nor **<ctrl-X>1** can be used with arguments.

Now, type the *one window* command **<ctrl-X>1**. All of the extra windows have been eliminated, or *closed*.

### Enlarging and Shrinking Windows

When MicroEMACS creates a window, it divides into half the window in which the cursor is positioned. You do not have to leave the windows at the size MicroEMACS creates them, however. If you wish, you may adjust the relative size of each window on your screen, using the *enlarge window* and *shrink window* commands:

<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;Z</b>	Enlarge window
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-Z&gt;</b>	Shrink window

To see how these work, first type **<ctrl-X>2** twice. Your screen is now divided into three windows:

two in the top half of your screen, and the third in the bottom half.

Now, type the *enlarge window* command **<ctrl-X>Z**. The window at the top of your screen is now one line bigger: it has borrowed a line from the window below it. Type **<ctrl-X>Z** again. Once again, the top window has borrowed a line from the middle window.

Now, type the *next window* command **<ctrl-X>N** to move your cursor into the middle window. Again, type the *enlarge window* command **<ctrl-X>Z**. The middle window has borrowed a line from the bottom window, and is now one line larger.

The *enlarge window* command **<ctrl-X>Z** allows you to enlarge the window your cursor is in by borrowing lines from another window, provided that you do not shrink that other window out of existence. Every window must have at least two lines in it: one command line and one line of text.

The *shrink window* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-Z>** allows you to decrease the size of a window. Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-Z>**. The present window is now one line smaller, and the lower window is one line larger because the line borrowed earlier has been returned.

The *enlarge window* and *shrink window* commands can also be used with arguments introduced with **<ctrl-U>**. However, remember that MicroEMACS will not accept an argument that would shrink another window out of existence.

### Displaying Text Within a Window

Displaying text within the limited area of a window can present special problems. The *view* commands **<ctrl-V>** and **<esc>V** roll window-sized portions of text up or down, but you may become disoriented when a window shows only four or five lines of text at a time. Therefore, three special commands are available for displaying text within a window:

<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-N&gt;</b>	Scroll down
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;&lt;ctrl-P&gt;</b>	Scroll up
<b>&lt;esc&gt;!</b>	Move within window

Two commands allow you to move your text by one line at a time, or *scroll* it: the *scroll up* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-P>**, and the *scroll down* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-N>**.

Type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-N>**. The line at the top of your window has vanished, a new line has appeared at the bottom of your window, and the cursor is now at the beginning of what had been the second line of your window.

Now type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-P>**. The line at the top that had vanished earlier has now returned, the cursor is at the beginning of it, and the line at the bottom of the window has vanished. These commands allow you to move forward in your text slowly so that you do not become disoriented.

Both of these commands can be used with arguments introduced by **<ctrl-U>**.

The third special movement command is the *move within window* command **<esc>!**. This command moves the line your cursor is on to the top of the window.

To try this out, move the cursor down three lines by typing **<ctrl-U>3<ctrl-N>**; now type **<esc>!**. (Be sure to type an exclamation point '!', not a numeral one '1', or nothing will happen.) The line to which you had moved the cursor is now the first line in the window, and three new lines have scrolled up from the bottom of the window. You will find this command to be very useful as you become more experienced at using windows.

All three special movement commands can also be used when your screen has no extra windows, although you will not need them as much.

## One Buffer

Now that you have been introduced to the commands for manipulating windows, you can begin to use windows to speed your editing.

To begin with, scroll up the window you are in until you reach the top line of your text. You can do this either by typing the *scroll up* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-P>** several times, or by typing **<esc><**.

Kill the first line of text with the *kill* command **<ctrl-K>**. The first line of text has vanished from all three windows. Now, type **<ctrl-Y>** to yank back the text you just killed. The line has reappeared in all three windows.

The main advantage to displaying one buffer with more than one window is that each window can display a different portion of the text. This can be quite helpful if you are editing or moving a large text.

To demonstrate this, do the following: First, move to the end of the text in your present window by typing the *end of text* command **<esc>>**, then typing the *previous line* command **<ctrl-P>** four times. Now, kill the last four lines.

You could move the killed lines to the beginning of your text by typing the *beginning of text* command **<esc><**; however, it is more convenient simply to type the *next window* command **<ctrl-X>N**, which moves you to the beginning of the text as displayed in the next window. MicroEMACS remembers a different cursor position for each window.

Now yank back the four killed lines by typing **<ctrl-Y>**. You can simultaneously observe that the lines have been removed from the end of your text and that they have been restored at the beginning.

## Multiple Buffers

Windows are especially helpful when they display more than one text. Remember that at present you are working with *three* buffers, named **example1.c**, **example2.c**, and **example3.c**, although your screen is displaying only the text **example3.c**. To display a different text in a window, use the *switch buffer* command **<ctrl-X>B**.

Type **<ctrl-X>B**. When MicroEMACS asks

Use buffer:

at the bottom of the screen, type **example1.c**. The text in your present window is replaced with **example1.c**. The command line in that window changes, too, to reflect the fact that the buffer and the file names are now **example1.c**.

## Moving and Copying Text Among Buffers

It is now very easy to copy text among buffers. To see how this is done, first kill the first line of **example1.c** by typing the **<ctrl-K>** command twice. Yank back the line immediately by typing **<ctrl-Y>**. Remember, the line you killed has *not* been erased from its special storage area, and may be yanked back any number of times.

Now, move to the previous window by typing **<ctrl-X>P**, then yank back the killed line by typing **<ctrl-Y>**. This technique can also be used with the *block kill* command **<ctrl-W>** to move large amounts of text from one buffer to another.

### Checking Buffer Status

The *buffer status command* **<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>** can be used when you are already displaying more than one window on your screen.

When you want to remove the buffer status window, use either the *one window command* **<ctrl-X>1**, or move your cursor into the buffer status window using the *next window command* **<ctrl-X>N** and replace it with another buffer by typing the *switch buffer command* **<ctrl-X>B**.

### Saving Text From Windows

The final step is to save the text from your windows and buffers. Close the lower two windows with the *one window command* **<ctrl-X>1**. Remember, when you close a window, the text that it displayed is still kept in a buffer that is *hidden* from your screen. For now, do *not* save any of these altered texts.

When you use the *save command* **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>**, only the text in the window in which the cursor is positioned is written to its file. If only one window is displayed on the screen, the *save command* will save only its text.

If you made changes to the text in another buffer, such as moving portions of it to another buffer, MicroEMACS would ask

Quit [y/n]:

If you answer 'n', MicroEMACS will *save* the contents of the buffer you are currently displaying by writing them to your disk, but it will ignore the contents of other buffers, and your cursor will be returned to its previous position in the text. If you answer 'y', MicroEMACS again will save the contents of the current buffer and ignore the other buffers, but you will exit from MicroEMACS and return to Exit from MicroEMACS by typing the *quit command* **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**.

## Keyboard Macros

A *keyboard macro* is a set of MicroEMACS commands that are stored in memory and given a name. After you create a keyboard macro, you can execute it again and again just by typing its name. If you are revising a big file, you will find that keyboard macros are one of the most useful features in MicroEMACS, and one that you will use often.

The following table summarizes MicroEMACS's keyboard-macro commands:

<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;{(</b>	Open a keyboard macro
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;)}</b>	Close a keyboard macro
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;E</b>	Execute a keyboard macro
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;M</b>	Rename a keyboard macro
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;I</b>	Bind current macro as initialization macro

### Creating a Keyboard Macro

To begin to create a macro, type the *begin macro command* **<ctrl-X>{(**. Be sure to type an open parenthesis '(', not a numeral '9'. MicroEMACS will reply with the message

[Start macro]

Type the following phrase:

## TUTORIALS

## MAXNUM

Then type the *end macro* command **<ctrl-X>)**. Be sure you type a close parenthesis ')', not a numeral '0'. MicroEMACS will reply with the message

[End macro]

Move your cursor down two lines and execute the macro by typing the *execute macro* command **<ctrl-X>E**. The phrase you typed into the macro has been inserted into your text.

If you give these commands in the wrong order, MicroEMACS warns you that you are making a mistake. For example, if you open a keyboard macro by typing **<ctrl-X>{**, and then attempt to open another keyboard macro by again typing **<ctrl-X>{**, MicroEMACS will say:

Not now

Should you accidentally open a keyboard macro, or enter the wrong commands into it, you can cancel the entire macro simply by typing **<ctrl-G>**.

## Execute a Macro Repeatedly

As with most MicroEMACS commands, you can use a keyboard macro with an argument to execute it repeatedly. For example, if you have defined a keyboard macro, then typing

**<ctrl-U><ctrl-X>E**

executes that macro four times. (Remember, four is the default value for **<ctrl-U>**.)

As described above, **<ctrl-U>** normally is used with a positive number, to indicate how often MicroEMACS should execute a given command or macro. With keyboard macros, however, you can use a special value for **<ctrl-U>**: -1. This tells MicroEMACS to repeatedly execute a keyboard macro until it fails.

For example, consider that you define the following keyboard macro:

**<ctrl-S> foo <ctrl-K>**

This macro searches for the string "foo", then kills the rest of line that that string is on. Now, when you type the command

**<ctrl-U> -1 <ctrl-X>E**

executes this macro until MicroEMACS can no longer find the string "foo"; it then quits.

Obviously, you should define your macro carefully before you execute it with this -1 option to **<ctrl-U>**; otherwise, you can commit tremendous mayhem on your file with one keystroke.

## Replacing a Macro

To replace this macro with another, go through the same process. Type **<ctrl-X>{**. Then type the *buffer status* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>**, and type **<ctrl-X>)**. Remove the buffer status window by typing the *one window* command **<ctrl-X>1**.

Now execute your keyboard macro by typing the *execute macro* command **<ctrl-X>E**. The *buffer status* command has executed once more.

### ***Renaming a Macro***

Many times during a long editing session, you will find that you use one keyboard macro, then use a second keyboard macro, then find that you need the first macro again. In previous releases of MicroEMACS, the only way to do this work was to type the first macro, replace it with the second macro, then retype the first macro when you need it again. The present edition of MicroEMACS, however, lets you define any number of keyboard macros, and save them by giving each one a unique “name” that is, its own unique keyboard binding.

To rename a keyboard macro that you have already created, use the *rename macro* command **<ctrl-X>M**. To see how this works, do the following: (1) Type **<ctrl-X>** to open the keyboard macro. (2) Now, type **<esc>s xyz <ctrl-U> <ctrl-D>** to fill the macro with something. (3) Finally, type **<ctrl-X>** to close the macro.

Now, type **<ctrl-X>M**, to rename the macro. MicroEMACS will reply with the prompt:

enter keybinding for macro

Type **<esc>L**. This tells MicroEMACS to take the keyboard macro you created and link it to the keystrokes **<esc>L**.

Now, whenever you type **<esc>L**, MicroEMACS will execute **<esc>s xyz <ctrl-U> <ctrl-D>**. You can now define another keyboard macro without wiping out the one you have renamed. There is no theoretical limit to the number of keyboard macros you can create, although there are practical limits imposed by the amount of memory available to MicroEMACS.

### ***Renaming Macros: A Few Caveats***

Please note that if you name a keyboard macro with a keystroke that is already defined, MicroEMACS will no longer be able to access that keystroke’s functionality.

For example, if instead of naming your new macro **<esc>L** you named it **<ctrl-A>**, then every time you typed **<ctrl-A>** MicroEMACS would execute **<esc>S xyz <ctrl-U> <ctrl-D>** and you would no longer be able to jump to the beginning of a line (which **<ctrl-A>** normally does).

The only exceptions are **<ctrl-X>**, **<esc>**, and the **<ctrl-X>R** command (described below), which MicroEMACS will not let you reassign. Obviously, you should be very careful when you assign a name to a keyboard macro, or you could easily clobber much of the editor’s functionality.

Note, too, that MicroEMACS lets you define reflexive keybindings, but these never work. For example, if you named the above example macro **<ctrl-D>** instead of **<esc>L**, then every time you typed **<ctrl-D>** MicroEMACS would try to execute a macro that included **<ctrl-D>** in it. Obviously, this can tie MicroEMACS into knots in no time. Again, please be very careful when you assign names to keyboard macros.

The commands **<ctrl-X>S** and **<ctrl-X>L** let you save all named keyboard macros into a file, and restore them during a later editing session. These commands are described in the next section.

### ***Setting the Initialization Macro***

MicroEMACS allows one macro to be specified which will be executed every time MicroEMACS is invoked. This “initialization macro” can be set using the key sequence **<ctrl-X>I** and causes MicroEMACS to “bind” the currently defined macro to the initialization macro.



## Flexible Key Bindings

As you have noticed by now, MicroEMACS works through standard *key bindings*: that is, one keystroke or combination of keystrokes tells MicroEMACS to perform a particular task. For example, typing **<ctrl-A>** tells MicroEMACS to move the cursor to the beginning of the line; typing **<ctrl-E>** tells MicroEMACS to move the cursor to the end of the line; and so on.

MicroEMACS allows you to change its key bindings, so you can bind a given keystroke or combination of keystrokes to a task other than the default one documented in this tutorial. In this way, you can reconfigure MicroEMACS so that it resembles another editor with which you are more familiar.

To perform this magic, MicroEMACS uses two tables for keybindings: a *default table* that is loaded at compile time and never changes, and a *dynamic table* that you can modify with MicroEMACS's keybinding commands.

The following table summarizes MicroEMACS's commands for flexible keybindings:

<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;R</b>	Replace one binding with another
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;X</b>	Rebind prefix keys
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;S</b>	Save flexible bindings and macros into file
<b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;L</b>	Load flexible bindings and macros from file

### Changing a Keybinding

The *replace binding* command **<ctrl-X>R** replaces one binding with another. For example, if you wished to replace the *beginning of line* command **<ctrl-A>** with **<esc>Z**, you would do the following:

1. Type **<ctrl-X>R** to invoke the rebinding command.
2. When you see the prompt
 

Enter old keybinding

 type the keybinding you wish to change in this case, **<ctrl-A>**.
3. When you then see the prompt
 

Enter new keybinding

 type the keybinding to which you wish to change it in this case, **<esc>Z**.

Note that you cannot rebind the command **<ctrl-X>R** itself; otherwise, you would paint yourself into a corner. Also, note that if you rebind a command to itself (that is, if you type the same keybinding in response to both prompts), then that keybinding is bound to the old meaning of the keybindings, should there be any.

### Rebinding Metakeys

MicroEMACS's keybindings depend on several pre-defined metakeys. A *metakey* is a keystroke that introduces a further set of commands. MicroEMACS's default keybindings use two metakeys: **<ctrl-X>** and **<esc>**. Other editors use other keystrokes as metakeys. If you wish to rebind a metakey, use the *rebind metakey* command **<ctrl-X>X**. This command prompts you to bind up to three metakeys, and the argument key **<ctrl-U>**.

For example, suppose that you wish to change the metakey **<ctrl-X>** to **<ctrl-Q>**. To begin, type the command **<ctrl-X>X**. You will see the prompt

Enter prefix character 1 or space

"Prefix character 1" is **<ctrl-X>** in the default bindings. Type **<ctrl-Q>**. You will then see the prompt:

Enter prefix character 2 or space

"Prefix character 2" is **<esc>** in the default bindings. Since you do not want to change it, type **<space>**. You will then see the prompt:

Enter prefix character 3 or space

There is no "prefix character 3" in the default bindings, but you can set a third one for your keybindings if you wish. Since (for the sake of this example) you do not wish to set one, type **<space>**. Finally, you will see the prompt:

Enter repeat code or space

The "repeat code" executes a command repeatedly; in this tutorial, it is often called the "argument key" or "argument command". Since (in this example) you do not wish to change it, type **<space>**.

Now that you have reset the **<ctrl-X>** metakey, you must now type **<ctrl-Q>** every time in place of **<ctrl-X>** throughout all of the MicroEMACS commands. For example, if you wished to change the metakey back from **<ctrl-Q>** to **<ctrl-X>**, you would have to type **<ctrl-Q>X** to invoke the *rebind metakey* command.

Note that because **<ctrl-Q>** already is bound in the MicroEMACS keybindings, when you rebind it the command to which it was bound is no longer available to you. However, if you un-rebind the key, then it automatically is rebound to its old command. In the above example, **<ctrl-Q>** is bound to the *insert literal character* command, which lets you insert control characters into your file. When you rebound the **<ctrl-X>** metakey to **<ctrl-Q>**, then the *insert literal character* command was no longer available to you. However, when you re-rebound the **<ctrl-Q>** metakey to **<ctrl-X>**, then **<ctrl-Q>** was automatically rebound to the *insert literal character* command.

### **Save and Restore Keybindings**

MicroEMACS lets you save your rebound keybindings into a file, and reload them during another editing session. To save your keybindings into a file, type the *save keybindings* command **<ctrl-X>S**. Try it. You will see the prompt:

Store bindings file:

Type the name of a file. MicroEMACS then writes its keybindings into that file. Note that this command also saves all named keyboard macros that you have created.

To restore a set of keybindings, use the *restore keybindings* command **<ctrl-X>L**. Try it. You will see the prompt:

Load bindings file:

Type the name of the file in which you saved the system's keybindings and all named keyboard macros. MicroEMACS will then load them into memory for you.

These commands let you prepare several sets of customized keybindings and macros. You can customize keybindings to suit your preference, or create custom sets of macros to suit any number of specialized editing tasks.

## **TUTORIALS**

By default, MicroEMACS checks for the existence of file **\$HOME/.emacs.rc** and executes it if found. The **-f** option lets you specify an alternate file of keybindings macros from the **me** command line. After loading the file, MicroEMACS then executes the initialization macro, if one exists. For example, if you wish to use the set of keybindings saved in file **keybind** to edit file **textfile**, then you would type the following:

```
me -f keybind textfile
```

As you can see, MicroEMACS's system of keyboard macros and flexible key bindings help make it an extremely flexible and powerful editor.

## Sending Commands to COHERENT

The only remaining commands you need to learn are the *program interrupt* commands **<ctrl-X>!** and **<ctrl-C>**. These commands allow you to interrupt your editing, give a command directly to COHERENT, and then resume editing without affecting your text in any way.

The command **<ctrl-X>!** allows you to send *one* command line (one command, or several commands plus separators) to the operating system. To see how this command works, type **<ctrl-X>!**. The prompt **!** has appeared at the bottom of your screen. Type **lc**. Observe that the directory's table of contents scrolls across your screen, followed by the message **[end]**. To return to your editing, simply type a carriage return. The *interrupt* command **<ctrl-C>** suspends editing indefinitely, and allows you to send an unlimited number of commands to the operating system. To see how this works, type **<ctrl-C>**. After a moment, the COHERENT system's prompt will appear at the bottom of your screen. Type **time**. The COHERENT system replies by printing the time and date. To resume editing, then simply type **<ctrl-D>**.

If you wish, you can suspend MicroEMACS's operation, tell the COHERENT system to invoke another copy of the MicroEMACS program, edit a file, then return to your previous editing. To see how this is done, type **<ctrl-C>**. When the prompt appears at the bottom of your screen, type

```
me example1.c
```

It doesn't matter that you are already editing **example1.c**. MicroEMACS will simply copy the **example1.c** file into a new buffer and let you work as if the other MicroEMACS program you just interrupted never existed.

Exit from this second MicroEMACS program by typing the *quit* command **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**. Then type **<ctrl-D>**. Your original MicroEMACS program has now been resumed. However, none of the changes you made in the secondary MicroEMACS program will be seen here.

It is not a good idea to use multiple MicroEMACS programs to edit the same program: it is too easy to become confused as to which edits were made to which version.

The only time this is advisable is if you wish to test to see how a certain edit would affect your text: you can create a new MicroEMACS program, test the command, and then destroy the altered buffer and return to your original editing program without having to worry that you might make errors that are difficult to correct.

Now type **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>** to exit.

## Compiling and Debugging Through MicroEMACS

MicroEMACS can be used with the compilation command **cc** to give you a reliable system for debugging new programs.

Often, when you're writing a new program, you face the situation in which you try to compile, but the compiler produces error messages and aborts the compilation. You must then invoke your editor, change the program, close the editor, and try the compilation over again. This cycle of

compilation editing recompilation can be quite bothersome.

To remove some of the drudgery from compiling, the `cc` command has the *automatic*, or MicroEMACS option, `-A`. When you compile with this option, the MicroEMACS screen editor will be invoked automatically if any errors occur. The error or errors generated during compilation will be displayed in one window, and your text in the other, with the cursor set at the number of the line that the compiler indicated had the error.

Try the following example. Use MicroEMACS to enter the following program, which you should call **error.c**:

```
main() {  
    printf("Hello, world!\n")  
}
```

The semicolon was left off of the `printf` statement, which is an error. Now, try compiling **error.c** with the following `cc` command:

```
cc -A error.c
```

You should see no messages from the compiler because they are all being diverted into a buffer to be used by MicroEMACS. Then MicroEMACS will appear automatically. In one window you should see the message:

```
3: missing ';'
```

and in the other you should see your source code for **error.c**, with the cursor set on line 3.

If you had more than one error, typing `<ctrl-X>` would move you to the next line with an error in it; typing `<ctrl-X><` would return you to the previous error. With some errors, such as those for missing braces or semicolons, the compiler cannot always tell exactly which line the error occurred on, but it will almost always point to a line that is near the source of the error.

Now, correct the error by typing a semicolon at the end of line 2. Close the file by typing `<ctrl-Z>`. `cc` will be invoked again automatically.

`cc` will continue to compile your program either until the program compiles without error, or until you exit from MicroEMACS by typing `<ctrl-U>` followed by `<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>`.

### ***The MicroEMACS Help Facility***

MicroEMACS has a built-in help function. With it, you can ask for information either for a word that you type in, or for a word over which the cursor is positioned. The MicroEMACS help file contains the bindings for all library functions and macros included with COHERENT.

For example, consider that you are preparing a C program and want more information about the function **fopen**. Type `<ctrl-X>?`. At the bottom of the screen will appear the prompt

Topic:

Type **fopen**. MicroEMACS will search its help file, find its entry for **fopen**, then open a window and print the following:

```
fopen - Open a stream for standard I/O  
#include <stdio.h>  
FILE *fopen (name, type) char *name, *type;
```

If you wish, you can kill the information in the help window and yank it into your program to ensure that you prepare the function call correctly.

## **TUTORIALS**

Consider, however, that you are checking a program written earlier, and you wish to check the call to **fopen**. Simply move the cursor until it is positioned over one of the letters in **fopen**, then type **<esc>?**. MicroEMACS will open its help window, and show the same information it did above.

To erase the help window, type **<esc>1**.

### ***Where To Go From Here***

For a complete summary of MicroEMACS's commands, see the entry for **me** in the Lexicon. The COHERENT system includes three other editors: the stream editor **sed**, the popular screen editor **vi**, and the interactive line editor **ed**. Each can help you accomplish editing tasks that may not be well suited for MicroEMACS. For more information on these editors, see their tutorials or check their entries in the Lexicon.



---

# Introduction to ed, Interactive Line Editor

---

This tutorial introduces the interactive editor **ed**. It is intended both for readers who want a tutorial introduction to **ed**, and those who want to use specific sections as a reference.

Related tutorials include those for **sed**, the stream editor, and for **me**, the MicroEMACS screen editor. This tutorial assumes that you already understand the basics of using the COHERENT system, such as what a file is, what it means to edit text, and how to issue commands to the operating system. If you not yet know your way around the COHERENT system, we suggest that you first study the *Using the COHERENT System*, which appears in the front of this manual. It covers the basics of using COHERENT and introduces many useful programs.

## ***Why You Need an Editor***

A significant feature of computers is the capacity to store, retrieve, and operate upon information. A computer can store many different kinds of information: programs, computer commands and instructions, data for programs, financial information, electronic mail, or natural-language text (e.g., French, English) destined for a manuscript or book.

**ed** is a program with which you can enter and edit text on your computer. You can use **ed** to create or change computer programs, natural-language manuscripts, files of commands, or any other file that consists of text that you can read.

**ed** is designed to be easy to use, and requires little training to get started. The fundamental commands are simple, but have enough flexibility to perform complex tasks.

## ***Learning To Use the Editor***

Practice on your part will help you learn quickly. The following sections contain examples that illustrate each topic discussed. We strongly recommend that you type each example presented as you encounter it in the text. Even if you understand the concept presented, performing the example reinforces the lesson, and you will learn more quickly how to use **ed**.

In addition to reading the text and doing the examples as you encounter them in the text, try your own variations on the commands, and branch out on your own. Try things that you suspect might work, but are not shown as examples.

---

## ***General Topics***

---

This section presents the background information you will need to understand how **ed** works.

To help illustrate the discussion to follow, log into your COHERENT system and type the following commands:

```
ed
a
this is a sample
ed session
.
w test
q
```

This example calls **ed**, then uses the **a** command to add lines to the text kept in memory. The period signals the end of the additions. The **w** command writes the lines of text to file **test**, and the command **q** tells **ed** to return to COHERENT. You will notice that after you type the **w** command, **ed** will respond with

```
28
```

which is the number of characters in the file.

Thus, to enter **ed**, simply type

```
ed
```

and to exit, type

```
q
```

You can also exit by typing **<ctrl-D>**: that is, hold down the **control** key on your keyboard, and at the same time strike the **D** key.

Notice that you are issuing two different kinds of commands in the above example. The command **ed** is an COHERENT command, whereas the rest are commands to the editor. After **ed** is given the **q** command, it exits, and following commands are processed by COHERENT.

### ***ed, Files, and Text***

**ed** works with one file at a time. With **ed**, you can create a file, add to a file, or change a file previously created.

As you use **ed** to create or change files, you will type both *text* and controlling *commands* into the editor. Text is, of course, the matter that you are creating or changing. Commands, on the other hand, tell **ed** what you want it to do. As you will see shortly, there is a simple way to tell **ed** whether what you are typing is text or commands.

**ed** has about two dozen commands. Almost every one is only one letter long. Although they may seem terse, they are easy to learn. You will appreciate the brevity of the commands once you begin to use **ed** regularly.

You must end each command to **ed** by striking the **<return>** key. This key is present on all terminals. However, the labeling of the key may vary. It may be called **newline**, **linefeed**, **enter**, or **eol**, and is larger than any key on the keyboard except for the space bar. This key will be called the **<return>** key in the remainder of this document.

### ***Creating a File***

The example shown above created a file. Here is another example of file creation — here, creating a file called **twoline**:

```
ed
a
Two line Example,
thank you.
.
w twoline
q
```

The letter **a** tells **ed** to add lines to the file. You are creating a new file with this example; and when **ed** creates a new file, it is initially empty. The **w** command writes the lines you have added to file **twoline**. The command **q** tells the editor that you are finished, whereupon it returns to



COHERENT. You can use the COHERENT command **cat** to list the contents of the new file:

```
cat twoline
```

the reply will be:

```
Two line Example,  
thank you.
```

Each command used here will be described in detail in later sections.

## Changing an Existing File

Suppose that a manuscript file of yours needs a few spelling corrections. **ed** will help you make them. To begin, simply name the file to correct when you issue the COHERENT command:

```
ed filename
```

where *filename* stands for the name of the file that you wish to edit. For example, the following adds a line to the file *twoline*, which we just created:

```
ed twoline  
$a  
This is the third line of the file.  
.  
w  
q
```

Listing the file with **cat** gives:

```
Two line Example,  
thank you.  
This is the third line of the file.
```

The command **\$a** tells **ed** to add one or more lines at the end of the file.

Correcting the spelling of a misspelled word is easy with **ed**. You can rearrange groups of words in a manuscript, and you can move or copy larger portions of text, such as a paragraph, from one spot to another.

## Working on Lines

**ed** uses the *line* as the basic unit of information; for this reason, it is called a *line-oriented* editor. A line is defined as a group of characters followed by an end-of-line character, which is invisible. When you type out a file on your terminal, each line in the file will be shown on your terminal as one line. The commands for **ed** are based upon lines. When you add material to a file, you will be adding lines. If you remove or change items, you will do so to groups of lines.

**ed** knows each line by its number. A line's number, in turn, indicates its position within the file: the first line is number 1, the second line is number 2, and so on.

**ed** remembers the line you worked on most recently. This can help shorten the commands you type, as well as reduce the need for you to remember line numbers. The line most recently worked on is called the *current* line. **ed** commands use a shorthand symbol for the current line: the period **.**.

Another shorthand symbol used in **ed** commands is **\$**, which represents the number of the last line in the file.

Many of the **ed** commands operate on more than one line at a time. Groups of lines are denoted by a range of line numbers, which appears as a prefix to the command.

### **Error Messages**

If you type a command to **ed** incorrectly, **ed** respond with:

?

This indicates that it has detected an error. Many times, this error will be evident to you when you review the command that you just typed.

If you do not see what the error is, you can get a more lengthy description by typing to **ed**:

?

It will reply with an error message.

### **Basic Editing Techniques**

This section discusses in more detail the elementary techniques and commands that you need to use **ed**. With the material presented in this section, you will be able to do most basic editing tasks.

Again, it is recommended that you type each example. This will help you understand each example, as well as remember the technique it demonstrates.

### **Creating a New File**

To begin, let us presume that you need to create an entirely new file named **first**. Perhaps you only want one line in the file, and it is to read

This is my first example

These are the steps that you will need to go through to create this file.

The first step is to invoke the **ed** program. To do this, simply type

ed

Remember that you must end each line of commands or text line by pressing the **<return>** key, because **ed** will not act upon it until you do. Thus, you invoke the editor by typing **ed** and a **<return>**. Notice that these two characters must be lower case.

**ed** is now ready for commands. The first command that you will use is the append command **a**. This tells **ed** to add lines to the text in memory, which will later be written to the file. The number of lines that **ed** can hold in memory depends upon the amount of memory in your computer. For editing very large files, you should use **sed**, the COHERENT stream editor, which is described in its own tutorial.

**ed** will continue to add lines until you type a line that contains *only* a period. While it is adding lines, **ed** does not recognize commands.

After you issue the **a** command, you can type the lines to be included, concluding with a line that consists only of a period. This special line signals **ed** that you want to stop appending lines. The information that you have typed so far is:

```
ed
a
This is my first example
.
```

Next, you must tell **ed** to write the edited text into a file. Do so by issuing the write command **w**, plus the name of the file that is to hold the edited text. For example, if you wish to store this example in a file named **first**, issue the command:

```
w first
```

**ed** will write the file and tell you how many characters were written, in this case 25.

Finally, to quit the editor issue the quit command:

```
q
```

The commands you type after this will be interpreted and acted upon by COHERENT.

Now, review the example in its entirety. First you invoked **ed** by typing **ed** at the COHERENT prompt. Then you issued the add command **a** to add lines to the file. added lines with the **a** command, and finished the adding by typing a line that consists only of a period. You then wrote the editing text into a file by issuing the write command **w**, and finally you exited from **ed** by issuing the quit command **q**. The complete example is:

```
ed
a
This is my first example
.
w first
q
```

**ed** replied to the **w** command by printing the number of characters it wrote into the file. After you typed **q**, COHERENT prompted you for a command again.

### ***Changing a File***

Suppose that you wish to change the file that you have just created: you want to add two more lines to the file so that the original line will be sandwiched between the new lines. You want the file to contain:

```
Example two, added last
This is my first example
Example two, added first
```

You will do this with **ed** using two new commands.

Again, you start by telling COHERENT to run **ed**. This time, however, you must type the name of the file that you are changing after the characters **ed**:

```
ed first
```

**ed** will remember this file name for later use with the **w** command.

**ed** reads the file in preparation for editing, and tells you the number of characters that it read in, again 25.

After reading the file, **ed** automatically sets the current line to the last line read in.

Now, add the third line shown in the second example by entering:

```
a
Example two, added first
.
```

This resembles the first example. In that case, however, the file had no information, whereas now it does. How did **ed** know where to add the lines?

The **a** command adds lines after the *current line*. When **ed** reads a file, it initially sets the current line to the last line read in; therefore, the **a** command added the new line after the last line.

The current line is used implicitly or explicitly by most commands, so it is helpful to know where it is. In general, the current line is left at the last line **ed** has processed. If you lose track of the current line, you can ask **ed** to tell you where it is, as you will see shortly.

To add the very first line to the second example, you will use yet another command, the insert command **i**. This command is identical to the **a** command, except that it inserts lines *before* the current line rather than after it.

Another word about the current line. After an **a** command finishes, the current line is the last line added. Thus, after the addition of "Example two, added first" above, the current line is now the last line in the file. So, if you were to do the **i** command immediately, you would be adding lines just before the last line, which is not what you want to do.

Nearly every **ed** command is flexible enough to allow you to specify the line upon which the command is to operate. Now you can complete the second example:

```
1i
Example two, added last
.
```

The numeral **1** before the **i** tells **ed** to insert lines before the first line in the file. The line-number prefix is used frequently, and applies to nearly every command.

Now, to finish the second example and save it into the same file, type:

```
w
q
```

Note that the file name was left off the **w** command. **ed** remembers the name of the file that you began with, and uses that name if none is used with the **w** command. Therefore, the edited text is written back into file **first**. Note, too, that the previous contents of the file **first** are lost when you write the new file **first**. Alternatively, you can type:

```
w second
```

This leaves the contents of **first** unchanged and creates a new file called **second**.

In case you forget, **ed** can tell you the name of the file with which you began. Simply type the command:

```
f
```

If you had used **f** any time while working on this second example, **ed** would have replied:

```
first
```

Remember to use the **q** command to leave **ed** and return to COHERENT.

## Printing Lines

As you use **ed** to edit a file, you will find it most useful to print sections of the file on your terminal. This helps you see what you have done (and sometimes what you have not done), and helps you pinpoint where you wish to make changes.

The print command **p** prints the current line unless you specify a line number.

Continuing with the example begun above, when you type the commands

```
ed first
p
```

**ed** replies by printing

```
Example two, added first
```

which is the last line in the file named **first** from the previous example.

Again, like the commands **i** and **a**, if you want **ed** to print a line other than the current one, just prefix the **p** command with a line number. Thus, if you want to print the second line in the file, type:

```
2p
```

**ed** will reply with:

```
This is my first example
```

If you wish to print more than one line of a file, you can tell **ed** to print a *range* of line numbers: type the numbers of the first and last lines you wish to see, separated by a comma. For example, to print all three lines in the second example, type:

```
1,3p
```

**ed** responds by printing all lines. This same principle applies to other commands. The print command can also appear after other commands such as **s** or **d**, which are discussed later in this section.

## Abbreviating Line Numbers

**ed** recognizes some shorthand descriptions for certain line numbers. The number of the last line can be represented by the dollar sign **\$**. Thus, the command

```
1,$p
```

prints every line in the file. The advantage of this shorthand is that the command as typed works for any file, regardless of its size. This construct of **1,\$p** is used often enough that it has an abbreviation of its own:

```
*p
```

The number of the current line can also be abbreviated by using the period or dot in the place of a line number. To print all lines from the beginning of the file through the current line, type:

```
1,.p
```

To print all lines from the current line through the end of the file, type:

`., $p`

The special symbol `&` prints one screenful of text. Simply type:

`&`

This is equivalent to:

`., .+22p`

If there are fewer than 23 lines between the current line and the end of the file, it is equivalent to

`., $p`

All forms of the `p` command change the current line to the last line printed. The command

`., $p`

after printing changes the current line to the last line of the file.

### ***How Many Lines?***

You can easily see the current line with `p`. Type:

`p`

This tells `ed` to print the current line. On your terminal, try the command:

`.p`

You will see that it does the same thing as `p`.

To discover how large your file is, just type:

`=`

`ed` will reply by typing the number of lines in the file.

To find the number of the current line, use the `dot equals` command:

`.=`

`ed` responds with the number of the current line.

### ***Removing Lines***

Editing means removing lines of text, as well as adding them. To illustrate how `ed` lets you remove lines of text, create another example file with `ed`:

```
ed
a
This is the first line.
The second line is good.
However, line three is bad.
line four wishes to go away.
line 5 similarly wants to be forgotten,
as does line 6.
the next to last line stays.
as does the last line in the file.
.
w example3
q
```

This creates a file named **example3**.

Now, you can practice removing lines that you no longer want. Begin editing the file by typing:

```
ed example3
```

Now, print the contents of the file by typing:

```
1,$p
```

Our first task is to delete lines 3 through 6. First, delete line 3, then print the entire file again.

```
3d
1,$p
```

and **ed** will respond with

```
This is the first line.
The second line is good.
line four wishes to go away.
line 5 similarly wants to be forgotten,
as does line 6.
the next to last line stays.
as does the last line in the file.
```

Notice that the original file's third line is no longer there. Line 3 is now what used to be line 4. Remember that the line numbers *always* begin with 1 for the first line of the file and progress consecutively even after the file has been changed. Thus, deleting a line will change the line number of each line from the deleted line to the the last line in the file.

You still need to remove three more lines. You can do this with one command:

```
3,5d
```

Again, type **\*p** to print the contents of the file:

```
This is the first line.
The second line is good.
the next to last line stays.
as does the last line in the file.
```

Finally, write the updated file and quit:

```
w
q
```

This illustrates how to delete lines, both singly and in a group.

### ***Abandoning Changes***

Sometimes, you may make a mistake; rather than damage your file with badly edited text, you may wish to abandon what you have done and begin all over again. You can do so by using the **q** command in a different fashion than is shown above.

If you tell **ed** to **q** before you tell it to write the file with **w**, you abandon any changes made since beginning editing. However, to prevent you from accidentally selecting this option, **ed** checks to see if you have made any changes to the file; and if you have, it responds with a question mark **'?**'. To tell **ed** that you know what you are doing and really do wish to abandon the edited file, reply with a second **q**. **ed** will then quit and return you to COHERENT.

You can avoid the question mark prompt by typing the upper-case **Q** rather than lower-case **q**: **ed** will exit without regard to unsaved changes. You can also exit from **ed** by typing the end-of-file key **<ctrl-D>**.

### ***Substituting Text Within a Line***

If you type a line incorrectly, or later wish to rearrange some words or symbols within it, you know enough about **ed** now to do so. You only need to delete the line with the delete command **d** and re-type the line with the insert command **i**. To see how this is done, prepare the file **example4**, as follows:

```
ed
a
Software technology today has
adbandced to the point that large
software projects unherd of in
earlier times are undertaken and
.
w example4
q
```

This example has two misspelled words. We will correct each of them using different **ed** features.

The first method will be the direct way that you probably can anticipate. Give the following commands to the editor exactly as shown:

```
ed example4
2d
i
advanced to the point that large
.
```

These commands use the delete command **d** to delete the second line, and then uses the insert command **i** to insert the correct new line in its place.

Use the command

```
*p
```

to verify that the file now contains:

## ***TUTORIALS***



```
Software technology today has
advanced to the point that large
software projects unherd of in
earlier times are undertaken and
```

You can also use a second method to change the spelling of a word. This is the substitute command **s**. This command is very powerful, and probably is used more frequently than any other **ed** command.

The substitute command **s** is more complex than commands we have discussed so far, in that it has more elements, as follows: First is a line number or optional range of line numbers. Then comes the letter **s**, to invoke the substitute command itself. Third comes two *patterns* or *strings*, which are set off from the rest of the command and from each other with the **slash** character. For example:

```
1,$s/pattern1/pattern2/
```

Here, *pattern1* represents the string that you want **ed** to replace, and *pattern2* is the string that **ed** is to substitute in place of *pattern1*. Note that three slashes separate the two patterns from the **s**, from each other, and from the end of the line. These slashes must always be present.

With this command, you can correct the second spelling error in the example4:

```
3s/herd/heard/
p
```

**ed** replies:

```
software projects unheard of in
```

Note that these two command lines can be condensed to one:

```
3s/herd/heard/p
```

The meaning of these commands is: on the third line of the file, change **herd** to **heard** and, when finished, print the entire line. Without the **p** command, **ed** will change the line as you direct, but will not show you the new line. It is a good idea to print lines that you substitute in this manner until you gain in confidence with **ed**. Some **ed** experts always print the lines after substitution.

After these two changes, the file will look like this:

```
Software technology today has
advanced to the point that large
software projects unheard of in
earlier times are undertaken and
```

Although the above example substitutes one word for another, note that the **s** command can replace any consecutive group of characters with any other: it may be one word, several words (including the space characters that separate them), or a fragment of a word.

Because **ed** looks for patterns rather words, you should keep in mind that it may find the wrong pattern. For example, assume that the current line in a file is

```
let not rain fall on a parade
```

and instead you want to say:

```
let not rain fall on the parade
```

You command **ed** to:

```
s/a/the/p
```

and are shocked to discover that the result is:

```
let not rthein fall on a parade
```

A better command to give **ed** would have been a substitute command that substituted the letter **a** preceded and followed by a space:

```
s/ a / the /p
```

Another correct way to do this task is to indicate within the substitution command which of several possible matches within the line is to be substituted. In our example, it is actually the third **a** that we are trying to match, so we could have used the special form of the command

```
s3/a/the/p
```

to get **ed** to select the one we wanted.

### ***Undoing Substitutions***

If you did change **a** to **the** inappropriately, you can retract the substitution by issuing the undo command

```
u
```

before you move on to another current line.

To illustrate this, enter this example:

```
ed
a
let not rain fall on a parade
.
w undo
q
```

Now, perform the substitution with

```
ed undo
s/a/the/p
```

which will result in:

```
let not rthein fall on a parade
```

To retract the substitution, simply type:

```
u
p
```

This undoes the substitution and prints the result.

Note that the undo command undoes the substitution only on the current line. Remember that if your substitution command operated over a range of lines, when it finishes the current line is the last one upon which the substitution was made. Thus, if you made an inappropriate substitution over a range of lines, the undo command will fix only the last line.

## Global Substitutions

As you saw with the above examples, the **s** command substitutes only the *first* occurrence of the requested pattern on a given line.

A different form of the substitute command finds every occurrence of the indicated string on a line. Simply add the letter **g** for *global* after the third slash in the substitute command, and **ed** finds and changes every one:

```
s/pattern1/pattern2/g
```

So, if the current line contains a phrase:

```
a rose is a rose is a rose
```

and we tell **ed** to substitute

```
s/a/the/g
```

the line is changed to:

```
the rose is the rose is the rose
```

Again, be careful that your command does not inadvertently match all or part of a word that you wish to keep untouched.

## Special Characters

In its first two parts, the substitute command uses some special punctuation characters. They will be discussed below in detail. However, you should be aware of these characters and avoid them until you progress to the advanced section, for unless used properly, they will give you undesired results. The characters are:

```
[ ^ $ * . \ &
```

They are used in **ed** and other COHERENT programs to form complex patterns.

## Ranges of Substitution

Perhaps you need to change several lines that have the same misspelling or need the same editorial change. **s** can do that for you also. Simply prefix the command **s** with the line-number range as you would do with **p**. Borrowing the "rose" example again, if the saying were typed:

```
a rose is  
a rose is  
a rose
```

then you could do the same change as before, but across the entire file by typing

```
1,$s/a/the/
```

Note that the **g** after the **s** command has been omitted here, because you know that the string that you want to change appears only once on each line.

If some of the lines do not have the string you want to change, **ed** will not complain that the string is missing. However, if none of the lines in the range has the requested string, **ed** will print a **?**.

### *Intermediate Editing*

This section introduces the more advanced command features of **ed**. Although you have already learned enough about **ed** to become productive, this section covers additional features that will increase your editing power considerably.

This section discusses the following topics: relative line numbering, moving blocks of text, finding strings, using special characters in substitution and search commands, processing global commands, and marking lines.

#### *Relative Line Numbering*

As discussed in the previous section, most commands allow you to use line numbers to control their range of operation. Before the command you can enter a single line number; for example:

1p

This, of course, prints the first line of the file. You may also specify a *range* of line numbers, by entering two numbers separated by a comma. For example, if the file contains at least ten lines, the command

1,10p

prints the first ten lines of the file.

The period (dot) always represents the number of the current line. For example, to print the file from the first line through the current line, just type:

1, .p

A command used without a line number always acts on the current line only. For example, typing

p

is equivalent to typing:

.p

There is yet another level of shorthand to line numbering — the plus and minus characters. These characters indicate *offsets* from the current line. For example, the command

+.3p

prints the third line after the current line. Likewise, the command

.-1p

prints the line that precedes the current line. Note that using a line offset changes the current line to the one addressed. Thus, after the above command is executed, the current line will be the one that preceded the original current line.

You can abbreviate this notation still further by leaving out the dot. The commands

+p

-p

do the following: First, **ed** advances to the next line and prints it; then it backs up to the previous line (which was the original current line) and printing it.

You can place several of these commands on one line to move the current line multiple lines. To back up three lines and then print, type:

```
---p
```

Note that in the absence of any other command, **ed** defaults to the **p** command. Thus

```
---
```

is equivalent to

```
---p
```

and

```
5
```

is identical to:

```
5p
```

The print command has one more abbreviation. If **ed** is expecting a command from you and you type nothing except **<return>**, **ed** interprets this as a command to advance the current line to the next line and print it. This action is equivalent to

```
+
```

or

```
+.1
```

**<return>** is the shortest command in **ed**.

All of the abbreviations for line numbers can be used by other commands that expect a range of line numbers. For example, if you want to delete five lines centered about the current line, you could type:

```
.-2, .+2d
```

and you would get your wish.

Note that **ed** does not allow you to specify a line number that is beyond the range of the file; this is regardless of whether you are typing a line number or any form of abbreviated line numbering. For example, suppose the current line is the last line in the file and you type:

```
+
```

This tells **ed** to “advance one line then print”; however, this is impossible because you are at the last line of the file, so there is no next line to print. When you request an impossible line number, **ed** replies by printing a question mark. Note, however, that the current line is always be valid so long as the file has at least one line in it. Thus, unless the file is empty, the command

```
.
```

will never give an error message.

## **Changing Lines**

Earlier, an example of spelling correction was solved two ways. The first way was the clumsy way of deleting a line and retyping the entire line. This strategy means much work to change a single letter, so the substitute command was introduced instead.

On occasion, however, it is handy to be able to change lines en masse — as was done by deleting then inserting. **ed** provides this power with the change command **c**. In general terms,

```
m,nc
new lines
to be inserted
.
```

removes lines *m* through *n*, and insert new lines up to the period in place of them.

### **Moving Blocks of Text**

When handling text, you will often need to shift a block of text from one position to another. In a manuscript, for example, you may need to rearrange the order of paragraphs to increase clarity. In a program, you may need to rearrange the order in which procedures appear.

To allow you to do this easily, **ed** provides a move command **m** that moves a block of text from one point in the file to another.

**m** is different from the other commands that we have discussed so far, in that line numbers follow as well as precede the **m** command itself. The line number that follows the command gives the line *after* which the text is to be moved. So, the general form of the move command is

```
b,emd
```

which means “move lines *b* through *e* to after line *d*”.

To see how this works, first build the following file:

```
ed
a
    This is a paragraph of natural language
    text. Due to stylistic considerations, it
    really should be the second paragraph.
    If you can read this paragraph first,
    the text has been properly arranged, and
    our move example has been successfully done.
.
w example5
q
```

The file **example5** contains two paragraphs, each three lines long. We will now move the first paragraph to after the second paragraph.

You can do this in either of two ways: you can move the first paragraph to after the second paragraph, or you can move the second paragraph to before the first paragraph. Either gives the same result, but the commands are somewhat different. To shift the first paragraph to after the second paragraph, type:

```
ed example5
1,3m$
*p
Q
```

Remember that **\$** always represents the last line in the file. The result is:

If you can read this paragraph first,  
the text has been properly arranged, and  
our move example has been successfully done.

This is a paragraph of natural language  
text. Due to stylistic considerations, it  
really should be the second paragraph.

To move the second paragraph to before the first, type:

```
4,6m0
```

Note that the destination is 0, which means that the text is to be moved to immediately after line 0. Because there is no line number 0, the move command interprets this to mean the beginning of the file.

Of course, in our small example, line number abbreviations and knowledge of the current line may be used in a number of different ways to perform exactly the same action. For example,

```
1,3m.
```

says to move lines 1 through 3 of the file to the line after the current line. When you invoke **ed**, it always sets the line number to the last line in the file. Thus, this form of the command has the same effect as the previous forms.

If the destination of a move command is not specified, **ed** assumes the current line. Therefore, the command

```
1,3m
```

also repositions the first paragraph correctly.

The move command changes the line numbers in the file, although the number of lines in the file remains the same. The different forms of the move command will, however, yield different settings for the current line.

After a move command, the current line becomes the number of the last line moved. Thus, if you moved the first paragraph to after the second paragraph, the current line will be reset to the last line in the file — the original line 3. However, if you moved the second paragraph to before the first paragraph, the current line would be reset to line 3 — which was originally the last line in the file.

## Copying Blocks of Text

The transfer command **t** resembles the move command, except that it copies text rather than moving it. When you move text, it is erased from its original position. When you copy text, however, the text then appears both in its original position and in the position to which you copied it. **ed** uses the term *transfer* rather than *copy* because the command **c** is already used as the change command.

The form of the transfer command is as follows:

```
b,etd
```

This means to transfer (copy) the group of lines that begins with *b* and that ends with *e* (inclusive) to after line *d*.

After copying the text, **ed** sets the current line to the last line copied.

## String Searches

The methods of line location that have been discussed to this point all involve line numbers. They specified an absolute line number, a relative line number, or a shorthand symbol such as `.` or `$`.

Often, however, line numbers are not useful, because there is no easy way to tell what number a line has, how many lines ago a block of text began, and so on.

**ed**'s solution to this problem is to locate a line by asking **ed** to search for a pattern of text. **ed** begins searching on the line that follows the current line, and looks for a line that matches the specified pattern. If it finds a line that contains the requested pattern, **ed** resets the current line to that line.

If **ed** encounters the end of the file before it finds a match, **ed** jumps to the first line in the file, and continues its search from there. If it finds no match by the time it returns to the line where the search began, **ed** gives up and issues an error message — the question mark `?`. Remember, if you type a question mark in response to an error message, **ed** will tell you in more detail what the error is.

What does it mean to “match” a pattern? The simplest meaning is that two patterns are the same — the strings have exactly the same characters in exactly the same order. To see how this works, type the following to create file **example6**:

```
ed
a
    This is an example that we will
    use for string searching. There
    is much natural language here as well
    as some genuine arbitrary strings.
    890,;+ foxtrot
    qwertyuiop ##
.
w example6
q
```

Now, to locate and print any line contains the pattern **fox**, type:

```
ed example6
/fox/p
```

In response, **ed** prints the line:

```
890,;+ foxtrot
```

Also, you can use string expressions to print a range of lines. For example:

```
ed example6
/This/,/much/p
```

This prints:

```
    This is an example that we will
    use for string searching. There
    is much natural language here as well
```

That is, it printed all lines from the first line that contains the pattern **This** through the first line that contains the pattern **much**.

## TUTORIALS



Pattern searches can also be combined with relative line numbers. If you have a Pascal program file with several procedures in it, but you find that you need to rearrange the procedures, you can combine the power of the move command with the string searches.

```
PROCEDURE A;
...
...
PROCEDURE B;
...
...
PROCEDURE C;
```

Assume that the section of text that begins with **PROCEDURE A** should follow the line that contains **PROCEDURE B**. The following command moves the text properly:

```
/PROCEDURE A/,/PROCEDURE B/-1m/PROCEDURE C/-1
```

This commands **ed** (1) to locate the chunk of text that begins with a line containing the pattern **PROCEDURE A** and ends with the line just before the first line that contains the pattern **PROCEDURE B**, and then (2) move that text to just before the first line that contains the pattern **PROCEDURE C**. As you can see, you can pack a lot of information into one **ed** command.

Let's look at this command in more detail, to see exactly how it works. First, remember that the move command **m** is defined as

```
b,emd
```

where *b* indicates the first line of the text to be moved, *e* indicates the last line of the text to be moved, and *d* indicates the line that the moved text is to follow. Thus, *b* corresponds to the number of the line that contains **PROCEDURE A** and is the first line of the procedure in question. *e*, however, corresponds to the line before the **PROCEDURE B** begins, by virtue of the -1. Here is an example of mixing pattern searches with relative line numbers, as mentioned above. Thus, you have found the beginning and ending lines of procedure A.

The final string search locates the first line of subroutine C. The move command normally moves text to **after** the given line; and because we wish to move the text to *before* the line that contains **PROCEDURE C**, we must include the -1 to move the text up one line.

## Remembered Search Arguments

As discussed earlier, line numbers may be abbreviated in many ways. They may be entered as **..**, or **+**, or **-**, and certain combinations of these. With some commands, pressing **<return>** tells **ed** to use the current line number.

**ed** encourages you to abbreviate the search string. If you enter no string between the slashes in a search or substitution, then **ed** uses the last-used search string. A common use is in the global substitution command (which will be discussed in detail later in this section):

```
g/please remove this string/s// /p
```

This does not quite remove it, but replaces it with a blank. The last-used string can be specified by a string search, a substitute command, or a reverse string search (also discussed later in this section). Also, the remembered search argument may also be used in any one of these. You can use the remembered search feature to "walk" through the file, finding the next occurrence of a remembered search pattern.

### **Uses of Special Characters**

As powerful as the line locator seems, some features are even even more powerful. These will be discussed in the Expert Editing section, below. However, these more powerful capabilities depend upon certain punctuation marks used in a special way. As you use the line locator (as well as the substitute command), be aware of these following characters:

[ ^ \$ \* . \ &

They have special significance to **ed** when they appear in a string search or a substitution pattern.

If you need to use one of these characters without invoking its special meaning, precede it with a backslash '\'. This tells **ed** not to interpret the character in a special way.

For example, to find a backslash character, type the search command:

/\\

If any of these characters is to be used in another context, for example, within lines that you are adding with the **a** command, it should *not* be preceded with the backslash. Only use the backslash to hide the meaning when it appears within the string search command, or within the first part of the substitution command.

### **Global Commands**

The global commands **g** and **v** let you repeat commands on all lines within a specified range. For example, to print all lines that contain the word **example**, type:

g/example/p

The global command can prefix almost any command. For example, the following command deletes all lines that contain three consecutive plus signs:

g/+++/d

Likewise, the command

g/foxtrot/.-2, .+2p

prints the five lines that surrounds any line that contains the word **foxtrot**.

A common use of the global command is to perform global substitution. The command

g/PROCEDURE/s/PROCEDURE/PROC/gp

performs the substitution on each line that contains the string **PROCEDURE** and prints the resulting line.

This may appear similar to the command

1,\$s/PROCEDURE/PROC/gp

but is different in that the global command prints each of the changed lines, whereas the substitute command prints only the last line changed. Also, the method of operation of these two commands is different.

A related command **v** performs much the same task, but executes the commands only for lines that do *not* contain the specified string. Thus, to print all the lines that do not have the letter **w**, use:

v/w/p

## **TUTORIALS**

For more sophisticated uses of the **g** and **v** commands and how they work, see the section on Expert Editing.

### Joining Lines

What do you do if you inadvertently hit **<return>** as you are adding lines and need to combine the two lines?

```
ed
a
Look out, I seem to have hit ret
urn in the
middle of a word and don't know
what to do!
w rid
q
```

Rather than retyping the entire line, you can use the join command **j**:

```
ed rid
1,2j
1,$p
```

This will give:

```
Look out, I seem to have hit return in the
middle of a word and don't know
what to do!
```

If no line number is specified, **j** joins the current line and the following line. If a single line number is specified, join operates on that and the following line.

Several lines can be joined by using the form of the command:

```
a,bj
```

This joins lines *a* through *b* into one line. Likewise, the command

```
1,$j
```

joins all the lines in the file into one line. Then, the command **.p** or **p** prints the entire file.

Note that the command

```
3j
```

does the same job as the command

```
3,4j
```

The join command generates its own second line number if none is specified, so that the command

```
nj
```

is equivalent to

```
n,n+1j
```

where **n** is a line number. This command is the only one that interprets a missing line number this way.

### ***Splitting Lines***

You can split one line into two with the substitute command **s**. To illustrate, suppose you typed in the following commands:

```
ed
a
This line wants to be two, with this second.
.
w split
q
```

To perform the split, type:

```
ed split
s/two, /two,\
/p
*p
wq
```

The line split is caused by the backslash that precedes the **<return>**. This tells **ed** that the **<return>** does not terminate the command, but that it is part of the substitution. The contents of file **split** are now:

```
This line wants to be two,
with this second.
```

### ***Marking Lines***

As you edit a manuscript or program, it is sometimes handy to be able to leave a “bookmark” in the text for later reference. **ed** provides this feature with the mark command **k**. To mark the next line that has the word **find**, use

```
/find/ka
```

where the letter **a** is the mark. To print the line that has been so marked, use:

```
'ap
```

You can place these references anywhere that a line number is expected.

The mark must be one lower-case letter. Also, each mark is associated with one line. Marking a line with the **k** command does not change the current line.

Marks can be especially handy when you move paragraphs with the **m** command. They give you a chance to review the sections that you will be moving before you do the move.

For example, suppose that you have a manuscript with a paragraph that must be moved to a different part of the document. Create the following example:

```

ed
a
    This is a paragraph, first line, that
needs to be moved.
text
text
And this is the last sentence of the paragraph.
    Next paragraph begins here.
text
text
text
    This is the spot that we want the paragraph
to precede.
.
w example7
q

```

Now, place three marks to help with the move:

```

ed example7
/first line,/ka
/Next paragraph/kb
/is the spot/kc

```

This marks the first line to be moved with **a**, the line after the last to be moved with **b**, and the paragraph's destination with **c**. But you can see that the move command moves lines to the line *after* the third number specified, so let's change the third mark:

```
'c-1kc
```

Now we can use **c** in the move command without arithmetic. Now, print the paragraph to be moved to be sure that the marks are correct.

```
'a,'bp
```

**ed** replies with

```

    This is a paragraph, first line, that
needs to be moved.
text
text
And this is the last sentence of the paragraph.
    Next paragraph begins here.

```

You can see that we would move one line too many if we used the marks as they are. So, change **b** also.

```
'b-1kb
```

Now, do the move:

```
'a,'bm'c
1,$p
```

The file now contains:

```
    Next paragraph begins here.
text
text
text
    This is a paragraph, first line, that
needs to be moved.
text
text
And this is the last sentence of the paragraph.
    This is the spot that we want the paragraph
to precede.
```

Marking sections of text can increase the ease with which you solve your complex **ed** problems.

### ***Searching in Reverse Direction***

All scanning, processing, and searching has been shown going from the beginning of the file toward the end. Sometimes it is useful to find some word that occurs **before** the current line.

You can get **ed** to do string searching in the reverse direction by specifying the search with question marks **?** rather than slashes **/**. To find the previous occurrence of the word **last**, use:

```
?last?
```

This form of searching can be useful in finding the beginning and end of a **repeat/until** statement. For example, if the current line is in the middle of a Pascal **repeat/until** group, you can print the group with the command:

```
?repeat?,/until/p
```

The reverse search is like the forward search in every way except the direction of search. The search begins one line before the current or specified line, and proceeds toward the beginning of the file. If the string is not found by the time that the search reaches the beginning of the file, the search resumes at the end of the file, and progresses towards the starting point of the search. If the string is not found when the search reaches the original starting point, the question-mark error message is issued signifying no match.

Also, the command

```
??
```

uses the remembered search argument.

## ***Expert Editing***

This section describes the most advanced **ed** commands.

### ***File Processing Commands***

Earlier, we discussed the commands

```
ed
```

and:

```
ed filename
```

## ***TUTORIALS***

**ed** also has file-handling commands that go beyond those already discussed.

If you decide that you were editing the wrong file, or have finished the current file with a **w**, you can begin to edit an entirely new file with the command:

```
e newfile
```

This forgets all the changes that you have made, if any, up to this point since the last **w** command and begins all over again with **newfile**.

The **e** command:

```
e new
```

has the same effect as

```
ed new
```

issued within COHERENT, but is handier because you do not need to exit **ed** and then reenter to edit a new file. Note that the **ed** command **e**, like the **q** command, issues an error message if another file is being edited and you have not stored it since your last change was made. If you immediately repeat the command, **ed** proceeds even if there are unsaved changes. The command

```
E new
```

commands **ed** to edit the new file, whether or not there are unsaved changes.

The **r** command also reads a new file, but adds it to the file being edited instead of using it to replace the current file. This can be handy for copying one file into another one. For example, if you have a manuscript prefix stored in the file **prefix** to include the prefix at the beginning of the file you are editing, type:

```
0r prefix
```

**r** inserts the file being read after the line number specified; in this case, line 0 means at the beginning of the file. If used without a line number, **r** appends the newly read lines to the end of the file.

The **w** command writes the entire file if no line number is specified; however, you can specify line numbers. For example

```
1,3w new
```

writes the first three lines to file **new**. If the file name is omitted, the lines are written to the remembered file name.

The **w** command is unique in that it never changes the current line. This is true regardless of what line numbers are specified in the range for the command, or how those line numbers were developed.

The **W** command resembles the **w** command, except that it appends lines to the end of the file, whereas **w** creates a new file and erases any previous contents.

The **f** command prints the remembered file name that was set in

```
ed filename
```

or

```
e filename
```

or

```
w filename
```

commands. You can also use **f** to reset the remembered name, by typing:

```
f newname
```

This form of the command tells you what the new remembered file name is, even though you just typed it in.

Note that the command

```
w filename
```

changes the remembered name only if there is currently no remembered name, as does the **r** command.

## Patterns

Earlier, you were cautioned that certain punctuation characters have special effect in search and substitute commands. These characters are:

```
[ ^ $ * . \ &
```

They are used to form powerful substitute and locator commands. An orderly combination of these special characters is called a *pattern*, sometimes called a *regular expression*. You can use a pattern to find or *match* a variety of strings with one search argument.

The simplest patterns use alphabetic characters and numeric digits, which match themselves. For example,

```
/ab/
```

finds and prints the next line containing the string **ab**.

The next simplest character to use in a pattern is the period or dot. It matches any character except the **newline** character that separates lines. Two periods in succession match any two consecutive characters, and so on. For example, if you have a file that contains algebraic statements of the form

```
a+b  
c+e  
a-b  
a/b  
d*e
```

and wanted to find and print any line involving **a** and **b** (in that order), then use the search statement:

```
/a.b/
```

The **.** in this example matches **+**, **-**, and **/**.

Then, you ask, how do I find a string that contains a period? For example, if you want to find all the sentences that ended with "lost." (that is, the word **lost** followed by a period), you might first try:

```
/lost./p
```

This, however, also matches the string "lost " (the word **lost** followed by a space), which is not what you want.

## TUTORIALS



This is where the special character backslash comes in handy. A backslash tells **ed** to treat the next character as a regular character, even if it usually is a special character. Thus, to find "lost.", you need only type:

```
/lost\./p
```

This will not incorrectly find "lost ". If you want to find backslashes in your file, simply say:

```
/\\p
```

### ***Matching Many With One Character***

The asterisk **\*** matches an indefinite number of characters. For example, to remove extra spaces between words in a document, type

```
g/##*/s//#/p
```

(The character **#** has been substituted here for the space character to make the example more readable.) This replaces each series of spaces by one space.

Note that there are two spaces before the **\*** in the search string. This is necessary because the **\*** matches any length of string, including zero. Therefore, searching for a space followed by any number of spaces finds strings that are at least one space long.

The **\*** matches the longest possible string of the previous character. This requires careful attention on your part, because the string matched by **\*** might be longer than your required string, or even zero in length. Either way could give you unexpected results.

If you have a line

```
a+b-c
```

in your file and want to change it to

```
a+c
```

type the command:

```
s/a.*c/a+c/p
```

However, if the line read instead

```
a+b-c*d+c
```

and you applied the command, the result would be

```
a+c
```

since the **.\*** matches the longest string between any **a** and any **c**.

### ***Beginning and Ending of Lines***

The characters **^** and **\$** match, respectively, the beginning and ending of a line. Thus, you can find and print all lines that end with a bang:

```
g/bang$/p
```

or those that begin with a whimper:

```
g/^whimper/p
```

These two characters can also help you find lines of specific length. If you need to see all lines

exactly five characters long, the command

```
g/^.....$/p
```

does the trick. To find and delete all blank lines, type:

```
g/^ *$/d
```

Note that this time the `*` matches a string of zero spaces. However, this is correct, because a blank line includes lines that have nothing in them, as well as lines that contain only spaces.

## Replacing Matched Part

In many cases of substituting, you find yourself extending a word, or adding information to the end of a phrase. This can lead to extensive retyping of characters. The special `&` character can help out.

This character is special only when used in the right part, or *pattern2* of the substitute command. It means “the string that matched the left part”. For example, to add **ing** to the word **help** in the current line, use:

```
s/help/&ing/
```

The ampersand may appear more than once in the right side.

This can be more interesting if the left part has a non-trivial *pattern*. For every word in a line that is preceded by two or more spaces, double the number of spaces before it:

```
s/##*/&&/gp
```

(Again, spaces have been replaced with `#` for clarity.)

## Replacing Parts of Matched String

A more sophisticated feature, which is similar to the ampersand, helps you to rearrange parts of a line. To see how this works, create a file by typing:

```
ed
a
first part=second part
.
w eql
q
```

Two special bracket symbols, `\(` and `\)` can be used to delineate patterns in the left part of a substitution expression. Then, you can use the special symbols `\1`, `\2`, etc., to insert the delimited parts. The symbol `\(` marks the beginning of the pattern, and `\)` marks the end. For example, to delete everything in the line except the characters to the left of the `=`, type

```
ed eql
s/^\(.*\)=.*\/\1/p
wq
.
```

In the substitute command, the `^` matches the beginning of the line, `.*` matches “first part”, and `=.*` matches the rest of the line. The symbol `\1` signifies the matched characters between the first `\(` (the only one in this example) and `\)`. The `p` then prints the result, which will be:

```
first part
```

## TUTORIALS

With this example, you can interchange parts of a line:

```
ed
a
first part=second part
.
w eq12
q
```

To interchange the two parts, type

```
ed eq12
s/\(.*\)=\(.*\)\/\2=\1/
p
wq
```

The result is

```
second part=first part
```

The first portion of the substitution expression,

```
\(.*\)=\(.*\)
```

can be thought of as being in three parts. The first part

```
\(.*\)
```

matches all characters up to but not including the =, which are

```
first part
```

The second part

```
=
```

matches the = in the line, and finally the third part

```
\(.*\)
```

matches all characters following the "=", or

```
second part
```

The remainder of the substitution expression

```
\2=\1
```

which is the replacement part, rebuilds the line in interchanged order. The symbol `\2` replaces the matched string enclosed in the second pair of `\( \)` delimiters, and the symbol `\1` inserts the matched string enclosed in the first pair of `\( \)`.

The right side of the substitution inserts the second matched expression (from `\2`), then inserts the = sign again, followed finally with the first part of the line from `\1`.

This may appear involved, but can be immensely valuable in situations that require rearrangement of a large number of lines.

The next special characters for patterns that we will consider are the bracket characters `[` and `]`. These are used to define the character class. Inside the brackets, put a group of characters; `ed` will match any of them if it appears. For example, to print a line that contains any odd digit, say:

```
g/[13579]/p
```

For even more power and flexibility, you can combine character classes with the asterisk. For example, the following command finds and prints all lines that contain a negative number followed by a period:

```
g/-[0123456789]*\./p
```

This matches lines containing the following example strings:

```
-1.  
-666.  
-3.7.77
```

You can also match all lower-case letters by listing them in brackets, but the following abbreviation simplifies this:

```
g/[a-z]/p
```

This can also be used for the negative number example above:

```
g/-[0-9]*\./p
```

Most special characters lose their original meaning within the brackets, but one of the special characters, **caret** `^`, gets a new meaning. In this context, it matches all characters *except* those listed in the brackets. For example, the following pattern matches a string that begins with **K** and continues with any character except a number:

```
/K[^0-9]/
```

This matches:

```
KQ  
KK  
KK9
```

but not:

```
K7  
kK0
```

Other special characters may be part of a character class, but lose their special meaning when used in that context. Remember, however, that if you want to match the right bracket, it must appear first in the list. So, to find all occurrences of special characters in the file, type:

```
g/[ ]^\.*[&]/p
```

### ***Listing Funny Lines***

The **p** command prints lines with graphic characters in them. It also prints lines with non-graphic (or *control*) characters, but these do not appear on the screen. For example, printing a line that contains the BEL character **<ctrl-G>** will ring your terminal's bell, but you will not see where the BEL character occurs within the line.

The **l** command behaves like the **p** command, except that it also decodes and prints control characters. For example, if you use the **l** command to print a line that containing the word **bell** followed by a BEL character, you would see:

bell\007

Note that "007" is the ASCII value for **<ctrl-G>**. (ASCII is the system of encoding characters within your computer; see **ASCII** in the Lexicon for the full ASCII table.) The **l** command displays the backspace character **<ctrl-H>** as a hyphen - overstruck with a <, which appears simply as < on your screen. It displays a tab character as a - overstruck with a >, which appears as a >. If the line being listed with **l** is too long to be displayed on one line on your screen, **l** separates it into two lines, with the backslash character placed at the end of the first line to indicate the split.

All other features of the **p** command apply to the **l** command.

### ***Keeping Track of Current Line***

The most commonly used abbreviation in **ed** is the dot, or period, which stands for the current line. Many commands can change the value of the dot, and it is useful to you to be able to anticipate this change when using the abbreviation.

Different classes of commands affect the value of the dot in different ways; in general, however, the simple explanation is usually correct: the current line is the last line processed by the last command to be executed.

Consider, for example, how the substitution command **s** changes the current line:

```
1,$s/flow/change/  
p
```

In this example, the current line will be the last line modified by the substitutions; and that will be the line that the **p** command prints.

The **w** command is an exception to this rule. It does not change the current line, regardless of any line range selection or how these ranges are developed.

The **r** command changes the current line to the last of the lines read.

The **d** command sets the current line to the line after the last line deleted unless the last line in the file was deleted, in which case the new last line becomes the current line.

The line insertion commands **i**, **c**, and **a** all leave the current line as the last line added. If no lines are added, however, their behaviors differ: **i** and **c** effectively back up the last line by one, whereas **a** leaves it the same.

### ***When Current Line Is Changed***

When the current line changes is also important. Normally, the current line does not change until the command is completed.

To illustrate, create a file **semi** by typing:

```
ed
a
begin
second
first
in between
second
last
.
w semi
q
```

Now, edit the file and type all lines from **first** to **second**:

```
ed semi
/first/,/second/p
Q
```

This will cause an error! The reason is that the search command begins with current line set to **\$**, so “first” is found on line 3. But the search for “second” also begins with the current line set at **\$**, and finds “second” on line 2. Thus, the command translates to

```
3,2p
```

which is clearly invalid.

To do what was intended, use the **semicolon ;** instead of the comma to separate the two searches. This forces **ed** to change the current line to be changed after the search for **first** rather than after the entire command. Thus, the commands

```
ed semi
/first;/second/p
Q
```

are correct and will do what is intended. The result will be:

```
first
in between
second
```

The search for **first** still begins with the current line set at **\$**. However, after it finds **first**, **ed** resets the current line to 3, and begins the search for **second** there, and succeeds on line 5.

Finally, to be sure of where the current line is, you can use the **p** command to show you the line; or you can have **ed** tell you the number of the current line by typing:

```
.=
```

To give you a perspective on where you are with respect to the end of the file, type

```
&=
```

and **ed** will tell you the number of the last line in the file.

You can put any line number expression before **=** and it will type the result. For example

```
/next/=
```

types the number of the next line to contain “next” (if there is one). The command **=** never changes

## TUTORIALS

the line number.

### More About Global Commands

All the global commands discussed thus far have been followed by only one command — substitute, print, and delete. You can, however, put several commands after a global command, and execute each of those commands for each line that matches.

To change all occurrences of the word **cacophonous** to the word **noisy** and print the three lines that follow, issue the command:

```
g/cacophonous/s//noisy/\
.+1, .+3p
```

Here, the additional commands are separated by the backslash before the **<return>**. Several commands can be added, and all but the last need the backslash at the end.

This will work for the line-adding commands, as well. To insert a spelling warning before each line that contains the word **occurrence**, issue the command:

```
g/occurrence/i\
((the following line needs spelling check))\
.
```

Note that the last line of the **i** group can be entered without a backslash, in which case the line containing only the period must be omitted. This has the same effect as:

```
g/occurrence/i\
((the following line needs spelling check))
```

You should not depend upon the setting of the current line in any multiline global command. There are two reasons for this. First, if one of the commands is a substitute and the string is not found in the matched line, the current line will not be changed.

Second, the global command operates in two phases. The first part scans the file for lines that match the string argument. **ed** marks these lines internally in a manner similar to the **k** command. The second phase then executes the commands on each of the marked lines. Therefore, you cannot count on a string search following the **g** to set the current line number.

Again, the **v** command behaves in the same way, except that it selects lines that do *not* match the pattern.

Caution is advised when using remembered search arguments, for a similar reason. A search argument is remembered only if the search has been executed. Thus, in a command of the form

```
g/backup/s//reverse/\
s/backin /backing/
```

the first remembered search may use **backup** on some occasion, and **"backin"** on others. The reason for this is that the second phase of the **g** command begins with a remembered search argument of **backup**. After the second line of the multiline command executes, the remembered search argument is **"backin"**. This remains throughout the remainder of the second **g** phase.

Thus, it is recommended that you avoid remembered search arguments when using multiline global commands.

### ***Issuing COHERENT Commands Within ed***

While you are using **ed**, you can issue COHERENT commands by prefixing them with the **!** command.

This can be useful if, for example, you need to discover a file name while in the middle of an edit, and you want to find it without leaving **ed**. Thus, to list your directory while in **ed**, type:

```
!lc
```

**ed** sends the command to COHERENT and echoes a **!** character when the command is finished.

There is no limitation on the type of command that you may issue with this feature. It is even plausible that you want to start another **ed**.

### ***For More Information***

The Lexicon article on **ed** summarizes its commands and options. The COHERENT system also includes three other useful editors: **sed**, the stream editor; MicroEMACS, the screen editor; and **vi**, a clone of the standard UNIX screen editor. MicroEMACS and **sed** are introduced with their own tutorials, and each is summarized in the Lexicon.



---

# Introduction to the sed Stream Editor

---

This is a tutorial for the COHERENT editor **sed**. It describes in elementary terms what **sed** does.

This guide is meant for two types of reader: the one who wants a tutorial introduction to **sed**, and the one who wants to use specific sections as references.

Related tutorials include *Using the COHERENT System*, which presents the basics of using COHERENT and introduces many useful programs, and the tutorials for the interactive line editor **ed** and for the screen editor MicroEMACS.

In a nutshell, **sed** edits files non-interactively; that is, **sed** applies your set of commands to every line of the file being edited. Although **sed** is not as easy to control as **ed** or MicroEMACS, both of which are interactive, it can edit a large file very quickly. You can use **sed** to change computer programs, natural language manuscripts, command files, electronic mail messages, or any other type of text file.

## Getting to Know sed

**sed** is a text editor. It reads a text file one line at a time, and applies your set of editing commands to each line as it is read. Because it does not ask you for instructions after it executes each command, **sed** is a *non-interactive* text editor.

The advantages of **sed** are that it can readily apply the same editing commands to many files; it can edit a large file quickly; and it can readily be used with *pipes*. A pipe takes the product of one program and feeds it into another program for further processing. If you are unsure of how a pipe works, refer to *sh Shell Command Language Tutorial*.

**sed** resembles closely **ed**. **sed** and **ed** use almost all of the same commands, and locate lines in much the same way. However, there are important differences between **ed** and **sed**. **ed** is interactive: when you give **ed** a command from the keyboard, it executes that command immediately and then waits for you to enter the next command. **sed**, on the other hand, accepts your editing commands all at once, either from the keyboard or, more often, from a file you prepare; then, as it reads your text file one line at a time, it applies every command to every line of text. Therefore, *addressing* (that is, telling the program what commands should be applied to which lines) is much more important with **sed** than with **ed**.

Keep in mind, too, that **sed** does not change your original text file; rather, **sed** copies it, changes it, and sends the edited file either to the standard output or to another file that you name in the command line.

## Getting Started

Here are a few exercises to introduce you to **sed**. Type them into your COHERENT system to get a feel for how **sed** works.

As explained above, **sed** applies a set of editing commands to your text file. To edit a file with **sed**, you must prepare three elements: (1) the text file that you wish to edit; (2) a command file (or *script*) that contains the **sed** commands you want to apply to the text file; and (3) a command line that tells the COHERENT system what you want done and with which files.

To begin, then, type the following text into your computer using the **cat** command. (Remember that **<ctrl-D>** is typed by holding down the *ctrl* key and simultaneously typing *D*.)

```
cat >exercisel
No man will be a sailor who has contrivance enough
to get himself into a gaol; for being in a ship is
being in a gaol, with the chance of being drowned.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, type in the following **sed** script. This script will substitute *jail* for *gaol*:

```
cat >script1
s/gaol/jail/g
<ctrl-D>
```

The last step is to prepare the command line. The command line consists of the **sed** command, the options that tell **sed** where its instructions will be coming from (either from a file or directly from the command line), the name of the file to be edited, and where the edited file should be send. The general form of the command line is as follows:

```
sed [-n] [-e commands] [-f scriptname] textfile [>file]
```

The **-n** option will be explained below, in the section on *Output*. The **-e** option tells **sed** that *commands* follow immediately. The **-f** option tells **sed** that the commands are contained in the file *scriptname*. *textfile* is the name of the text file to be edited. The greater-than symbol '**>**' followed by a file name redirects the edited version of the text file into *file*; if this option is not used, the edited copy of the text file will be sent to the standard output.

In this example, a command script has been prepared, so the **-f** option will be used. Also, the edited text should appear on the terminal screen, so the '**>**' will not be used. Type the command line as follows:

```
sed -f script1 exercisel
```

The following text will appear on your screen:

```
No man will be a sailor who has contrivance enough
to get himself into a jail; for being in a ship is
being in a jail, with the chance of being drowned.
```

You can use **sed** not only to substitute one word for another, but to add lines to files, delete lines, and perform more involved editing. No matter how complex your **sed** editing becomes, though, **sed** will always use the basic format just described.

The next few sections describe **sed**'s basic commands.

## Simple Commands

Type in the exercises exactly as shown and examine the results. Use the **cat** command to enter the command file as well as the input file. The edited text will appear on your terminal. Usually when you edit, you will want to redirect the edited text to a new file; however, for the exercises presented here, let the edited text appear on your terminal so you can examine the results immediately.

## Substituting

The substitution command is used very often when editing. **sed**'s substitution command **s** resembles the same command in **ed**. Its form is as follows:

```
s/term1/term2/
```

This tells **sed** to substitute *term2* for *term1*. To correct a misspelled word, for example, use this

command form:

```
s/mispel/misspell/
```

As written, this command changes only the first occurrence of **mispel** in each line of your text file. To change *every* occurrence of *mispel* in each line, add **g** (the **g**lobal option) at the end of the command:

```
s/mispel/misspell/g
```

If you want to change only the *third* occurrence of **mispel** on every line, put a **3** after the **s**:

```
s3/mispel/misspell/
```

When no digit follows the **s** and no **g** follows the command, only the first occurrence of the term in each line (should there be one) will be changed.

To practice the substitution, type the following file into your system (please include the misspellings):

```
cat >exercise2
From the Devils Dictionary:
Hemp, n. A plant from whose fibrous bark is made
an article of neckware which is frequently put on
after public speaking in the open air and prevents
the wearer from tking cold.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following **sed** script to correct the misspellings:

```
cat >script2
s/Devils/Devil's/
s/fibrous/fibrous/
s/tking/taking/
<ctrl-D>
```

Invoke **sed** with the following command:

```
sed -f script2 exercise2
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Hemp, n. A plant from whose fibrous bark is made
an article of neckwear which is frequently put on
after public speaking in the open air and prevents
the wearer from taking cold.
```

To see how the **g** command and the number option work, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise3
sd      sd      sd      sd
sd      sd      sd      sd
sd      sd      sd      sd
<ctrl-D>
```

The following **sed** script changes the *third* **sd** in each line to **sed**:

```
cat >script3
s3/sd/sed/
<ctrl-D>
```

Invoke **sed** with the following command line:

```
sed -f script3 exercise3
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
sd      sd      sed      sd
sd      sd      sed      sd
sd      sd      sed      sd
```

To change *every sd* to **sed**, use the **g** option. Prepare the following **sed** script:

```
cat >script3a
s/sd/sed/g
<ctrl-D>
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
sed      sed      sed      sed
sed      sed      sed      sed
sed      sed      sed      sed
```

The **g** command will be most useful for editing prose, when you have no way to tell how many times a given error will appear on a line. The numeric option will be most useful for editing tables and lists.

## Selecting Lines

Each of the substitution commands given above will be applied to every input line. Unlike **ed**, there is no error message if no line of text contains *term1*.

In certain instances, however, you may wish to apply a particular command only to specific lines. Lines can be specified (or *addressed*) by *preceding* the command with the identifying line number. The following exercise demonstrates line selection. First, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise4
When a man is tired of London,
he is tired of life; for there
is in London all that life can afford.
<ctrl-D>
```

To change the word **tired** to **fatigued** on line 2 only, prepare the following **sed** script:

```
cat >script4
2s/tired/fatigued/
<ctrl-D>
```

Begin the editing of your text file by typing the following command line:

```
sed -f script4 exercise4
```

The following will appear on your screen:

```
When a man is tired of London,  
he is fatigued of life; for there  
is in London all that life can afford.
```

Remember that to specify a line number, you must place the number *before* the command; but to specify the numeric option (that is, position within the line), you must place the number *after* the command.

You can define a *range* of lines to be edited. One way to do this is to list the first and last line numbers, separated by commas, of the block of text in question. For example, the following script will change **is** to **was** only in the first two lines of the text file you just prepared:

```
cat >script4a  
1,2s/is/was/  
<ctrl-D>
```

Entering the command line

```
sed -f script4a exercise4
```

will bring the following text to your screen:

```
When a man was tired of London,  
he was tired of life, for there  
is in London all that life can afford.
```

Note that the word **is** in line 3 was unaffected by the substitution command, because it lay outside the range of lines specified by the command.

You can also select lines by *patterns*. Patterns are *strings* (any collection of letters and numbers, such as a word) that can be combined with commands. A fuller description of *patterns* can be found in the tutorial for **ed**. Later on, when we show you other commands, you will see that line selection by pattern rather than by line number is quite useful.

You can use the end-of-file symbol '\$' for line selection. When you use this symbol, you do not have to know the exact number of lines in your text file. For example, if you want to apply a substitution command from line 10 through the end of your text file, the command form is:

```
10,$s/term1/term2/
```

## **p: Print Lines**

When **sed** edits a text file, the edited text is by default sent to the *standard output*, which usually is your terminal's screen. (As noted above, the edited text can be optionally redirected to another file by using the shell's '>' operator.) Normally, **sed** prints every line in the text file, whether the line is changed or not.

The next exercise will demonstrate these defaults. First, type in the following text file:

```
cat >exercise5
Bill          g7          r115
Nora          g8          r115
Steve         g7          r120
Ella          g8          r120
Dave          g7          r115
Robert        g8          r120
<ctrl-D>
```

Next, create a script that contains no commands, by typing:

```
cat >script5
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, execute this empty script:

```
sed -f script5 exercise5
```

Note that **sed** simply copied your text file to the screen, without changing it in any way.

This default, however, can be inconvenient if you want to print only a selected portion of a file. Fortunately, with a couple of commands you can control **sed**'s printing.

The command line option **-n** changes **sed**'s printing behavior. When you invoke **-n**, the text file no longer is printed automatically. **sed** prints only the lines specified by the **p** command. The **p** command makes **sed** print whatever line (or lines) to which it is applied. Use **-n** on the command line to stop **sed** from printing every line automatically; then use the **p** command in the script to target the lines you want to print. The following exercise will help you grasp this point. First, type in the following **sed** script:

```
cat >script5a
/g7/p
<ctrl-D>
```

Enter the command line:

```
sed -n -f script5a exercise5
```

and the following text will appear on your terminal:

```
Bill          g7          r115
Steve         g7          r120
Dave          g7          r115
```

**sed** prints only the records of the students in grade 7 (**g7**).

It is important to note the order, or *syntax*, of the **-n** and **-f** command line options. The correct order is to enter **-n**, then **-f**. (**-nf** or **-fn** are also acceptable.) If you type **-f** and then **-n**, however, all you will get is an error message.

When you use the **p** option with a **sed** command, **sed** will print every line of text in which that command makes a substitution. This can be useful, but if you are not careful it can also create some problems. **sed** normally prints every line in your text file, whether or not it is changed by your script, unless you specify the **-n** option in your command line. Therefore, if you *do not* use the **-n** option in your command line and you *do* use the **p** option with your **s** commands, every line that **sed** edits will be printed more than once.

The following script illustrates this point:

```
cat >script5b
s/g7/g8/gp
s/r115/r120/gp
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, execute it with the following command:

```
sed -f script5b exercise5
```

The result will look like this:

Bill	g8	r115
Bill	g8	r120
Bill	g8	r120
Nora	g8	r120
Nora	g8	r120
Steve	g8	r120
Steve	g8	r120
Ella	g8	r120
Dave	g8	r115
Dave	g8	r120
Dave	g8	r120
Robert	g8	r120

**Bill** and **Dave** were printed three times: the first time because the **p** option was specified after editing the grade number, the second time because the **p** option was specified after editing the room number, and the third time because the **-n** option was *not* used on the command line. **Steve** and **Nora** were printed twice: the first time because their lines were edited once each, and the second time because the **-n** option was not used on the command line. **Ella** and **Robert** appeared once because their lines were not edited at all and the **-n** option was not specified in the command line.

To get around this problem, use the **-n** option and use **p** only once, on the last substitution:

```
cat >script5c
s/g7/g8/g
s/r115/r120/gp
<ctrl-D>
```

When you enter the following command line

```
sed -n -f script5c exercise5
```

the new result will be:

Bill	g8	r120
Nora	g8	r120
Dave	g8	r120

The **w** command acts like the **p** command, except that matched lines are written to the file whose name follows the **w**. The following script shows the correct form:

```
cat >script5d
s/g8/g9/w grade.9
s/gu/g8/w grade.8
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute script5d with this command:

```
sed -f script5d exercise5
```

the normal product will be seen produced at your terminal, and the edited lines will be written to files **grade.8** and **grade.9**. File **grade.8** will contain:

Bill	g8	r115
Steve	g8	r120
Dave	g8	r115

Note the order in which the two **s** commands were given. If their order were reversed, every text line with **g7** in it would have **g7** changed to **g8** by the first **s** command, then have this newly created **g8** changed to **g9** by the second **s** command. Thus, *all* the students would be shown to be in **g9**, and every text line would be printed into the file **grade.9**.

### Line Location

When you edit a file with **sed**, it is hard to keep track of line numbers. As noted earlier, you can locate specific lines with **sed** by using patterns as *line locators*. To see how this works, type the following text file into your system:

```
cat >exercise6
From the Book of Proverbs:
As a door turneth upon his hinges, so the
slothful man turneth upon his bed.
A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous
words stir up anger.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following **sed** script:

```
cat >script6
/door/,/bed/s/turneth/turns/
<ctrl-D>
```

Execute it by entering the following command line:

```
sed -f script6 exercise6
```

The text will appear on your terminal this way:

```
From the Book of Proverbs:
As a door turns upon his hinges, so the
slothful man turns upon his bed.
A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous
words stir up anger.
```

Note that the word *turns* was substituted for the word *turneth* only in the first proverb, not the second. The reason is that the **s** command in this instance was preceded by the *patterns* **door** and **bed**. These told **sed** to begin making the substitution on the first line in which the word **door** appears, and to stop making the substitution with the first line in which the word **bed** appears. In



the text file, the fourth line also contained the word **turneth**, but because it lay outside the range of line specified by the line locators, no substitution was made.

When **sed** locates the last line of a block of text that you have defined, it will immediately look for the next occurrence of the first line locator. If it finds that first line locator, it will then resume making the substitution to your file until it again finds the second line locator or comes to the end of the file, whichever occurs first. In this example, when **sed** found the word **bed**, it began to look again for the word **door**; and if it had found the word **door**, it would have resumed substituting **turns** for **turneth**.

Remember that, as explained earlier, line numbers can also be used as line locators. For example, the **sed** script

```
2,3s/turneth/turns/
```

would have produced the same changes as did the script with the pattern line locators prepared earlier.

### Add Lines of Text

**sed** can add lines to your text file. To see how **sed** does this, first prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise7
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Syllogism, n. A logical formula consisting of a major
and a minor assumption and an inconsequent.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, type in the following script:

```
cat >script7
3a\
Economy, n. Purchasing the barrel of whiskey you do not \
need for the price of the cow you cannot afford.
<ctrl-D>
```

When you implement the script:

```
sed -f script7 exercise7
```

you will see this result:

```
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Syllogism, n. A logical formula consisting of a major
and a minor assumption and an inconsequent.
Economy, n. Purchasing the barrel of whiskey you do not
need for the price of the cow you cannot afford.
```

The append command **a** added text *after* the third line of the file. You defined where the text went. Notice the backslash **\** at the end of the line with the **a** command. This indicates that the next line is part of the command. When you append several lines of text, each line but the last one to be added must end with a **\** as in our example.

Note that no other editing command, such as **s**, can affect any line added with **a**. These lines go directly to your screen, or to a file, should you be sending the edited text there, and are invisible to all other **sed** commands.

The insert command **i** works like the **a** command, except that it adds its lines *before* the addressed line, rather than after. The following script shows how the **i** command works:

```
cat >script7a
2i\
Peace, n. In international affairs, a period of cheating\
between two periods of fighting.
<ctrl-D>
```

Invoking it with this command:

```
sed -f script7a exercise7
```

produces this:

```
From the Devil's Dictionary:
Peace, n. In international affairs, a period of cheating
between two periods of fighting.
Syllogism, n. A logical formula consisting of a major
and a minor assumption and an inconsequent.
```

As with the **a** command, no substitutions or other changes are performed on lines added with **i**.

Note, too, that you can *bracket* a text line by using the **a** and **i** commands at the same time. Adding a line with either **a** or **i** does not change line numbers of the text file you are editing (although it does, of course, change the line numbers of the file **sed** writes).

## **Delete Lines**

The **d** command deletes lines that you do not want in the edited text. The original file stays unchanged, of course.

Lines that match the address (be it a line number, range, or pattern) of a **d** command do not appear in the output. Exercise 8 illustrates the **d** command:

```
cat >exercise8
The sun was shining on the sea,
Shining with all his might.
He did his very best to make
The billows smooth and bright --
And this was odd, because it was
The middle of the night.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, you have to define the lines to be deleted by matching them with a unique pattern or a line number. To delete lines 3 through 6, prepare this script:

```
cat >script8
/best/,/night/d
<ctrl-D>
```

The command:

```
sed -f script8 exercise8
```

generates this result:

```
The sun was shining on the sea,  
Shining with all his might.
```

Note that when a line is deleted, no other commands are applied to it. Usually, if a **sed** script holds a number of commands, every one of those commands is applied to every line read from your text file; however, **sed** is logical enough to read the next text line immediately, should a **d** command delete the current line before the series of commands has finished.

### **Change Lines**

The **c** command combines the **i** and **d** options. Text is inserted before the addressed lines, which are then deleted. To see how this command works, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercise9  
Twas brillig, and the slithy toves  
Did gyre and gimble in the wabe;  
All mimsy were the borogoves,  
And the mome raths outgrabe.  
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, type in the following script:

```
cat >script9  
1,2c\  
Twas brilliant, and the shining cove\  
Did glare and glimmer in the wave;  
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute your script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script9 exercise9
```

the result is:

```
Twas brilliant, and the shining cove  
Did glare and glimmer in the wave;  
All mimsy were the borogoves,  
And the mome raths outgrabe.
```

Like the **i** and **a** commands, the **c** command requires all added lines but the last to end with `\'.

### **Include Lines From a File**

When you edit a file, you may wish to include, or *read in*, a second file as part of it. This is done with **r** command. To see how this works, type the following file into your computer, and call it **include**:

```
cat >include  
Then there comes the often-used refrain  
Whose repetitious writing dulls the brain.  
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the file to be edited:

```
cat >exercisel0
To write a poem doesn't take much time;
Just string some words to rhythm and a rhyme.
What poets do to language is a crime,
Words and syntax twisted for a rhyme.
<ctrl-D>
```

When you write your script, you must tell **sed** where to read in **include**. The form of the command should be familiar by now:

```
cat >script10
/rhyme/r include
<ctrl-D>
```

The result is:

```
To write a poem doesn't take much time;
Just string some words to rhythm and a rhyme.
    Then there comes the often-used refrain
    Whose repetitious writing dulls the brain.
What poets do to language is a crime,
Words and syntax twisting for a rhyme.
    Then there comes the often-used refrain
    Whose repetitious writing dulls the brain.
```

Note that the **r** command inserted **include** *after* the addressed line. You can address lines by number, of course, as well as by pattern.

### **Quit Processing**

The **q** command makes **sed** stop processing the text file. You will use this command most often to limit the application your **sed** script to a portion of your text file. For example, if you were editing a large file and you knew that your commands would be irrelevant to the last half of the file, you could insert an appropriately addressed **q** and save some computer time. You can also use this command to print portions of a file.

To see how this is done, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel1
An hourglass has a very wide top,
a very narrow
middle
and a bottom
that is also extremely wide.
<ctrl-D>
```

The following script will print the top of the text file. Note how the script uses **middle** to address the line where the file is to be split.

```
cat >script11
/middle/q
<ctrl-D>
```

The command:

```
sed -f script11 exercisel1
```

produces:

```
An hourglass has a very wide top,  
a very narrow  
middle
```

To print out only the lines *after* the pattern **middle**, simply delete the first half of the file with the **d** command, as follows:

```
cat >script11a  
1,/middle/d  
<ctrl-D>
```

The result is the output:

```
and a bottom  
that is also extremely wide.
```

### **Next Line**

The **n** command advances to the next line of the text file. The **n** command is useful for instances when you have two or more interrelated lines, and you want to ensure that a particular set of patterns is matched over the entire set of lines. To see how **n** works, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel2  
Alpha  
One  
Beta  
Two  
Gamma  
Three  
Delta  
Four  
Epsilon  
Five  
<ctrl-D>
```

To print a list of letters alone, type the following script:

```
cat >script12  
n  
d  
<ctrl-D>
```

and execute it with the following command line:

```
sed -f script12 exercise12
```

The result will be the following:

```
Alpha
Beta
Gamma
Delta
Epsilon
```

Remember that **n** does *not* stop processing, go to the next text line, and begin processing all over again. Rather, it simply reads the next input line and continues processing from where it left off. For example, if your **sed** file consisted of three commands, the second of which was the **n** command, **sed** would apply the first command to the first line it read, then jump to the second line and apply the last commands. Then, it would read the third line and begin the pattern over again. To see how this works, prepare the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel3
Alpha
Alpha
Alpha
Alpha
<ctrl-D>
```

Now type in this script:

```
cat >script13
s/Alpha/Apple/
/Apple/n
s/Alpha/Banana/
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute the script with this command line:

```
sed -f script13 script13
```

the following will appear on your terminal:

```
Apple
Banana
Apple
Banana
```

Note that the first substitution command changed the first **Alpha** to **Apple**; the **n** command moved **sed** to the next line; and the second **s** command changed that **Alpha** to **Banana**.

## ***Advanced sed Commands***

The following sections discuss **sed**'s advanced features. They also discuss the method of operation.

### ***Work Area***

As described earlier, **sed** reads your text file one line at a time, and applies all of your editing commands to that line. After the editing commands have been applied, the edited line is either sent to the *standard output*, written to a file you have named, or thrown away, depending on what you have told **sed** to do.

When **sed** reads a line from your text file, it copies that line into a *work area*, where it actually executes your editing commands. **sed** notes the number of the line in the work area, then executes each editing command in turn, first checking to see if the patterns or line numbers specified in each

## ***TUTORIALS***

command actually apply to that line. After each command is checked in turn and performed if indicated, **sed** prints the edited line (if it is supposed to be), and reads the next text line.

### Add to Work Area

The exercises so far have used only one line in the work area. The **N** command, however, tells **sed** to read a second line into the work area. The following exercise illustrates the use of the work area and the **N** command.

```
cat >exercisel4
This exercise has a brok
en word.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following **sed** script:

```
cat >script14
/brok$/N
s/brok\nen/broken/
s/has/had/
<ctrl-D>
```

and execute it with the following command line:

```
sed -f script14 exercisel4
```

which produces the following text:

```
This exercise had a broken sentence.
```

You will find it helpful to review this exercise in some detail. The first command in the script

```
/brok$/N
```

tells **sed** to search for the pattern **brok** at the *end* of the line of text. (The dollar sign '\$' in this instance indicates the end of the line; remember that when the '\$' is used with a line number, it indicates the end of the *file*.) The **N** command tells **sed** to keep this line in the working space, and copy the *next* line into the working space as well.

When **sed** executes this command on the present text file, the work area will look like this:

```
This example has a brok<newline>en word.
```

Note that the two lines now appear to **sed** as though they formed one long line. The word **<newline>** represents the end of line character that tells your terminal or printer to jump to a new line when the text file is printed out. This character is invisible, but it is there, and it can be changed or deleted. You can describe this character to **sed** by using the characters **\n**. The first substitution in this script

```
s/brok\nen/broken/
```

replaces **brok<newline>en** with **broken**. Because the newline character is deleted from the text, what used to be printed out as two lines on your screen will now be printed out as one.

Note the difference, too, between the **n** and **N** commands. The **n** command will *replace* the text line in the work area with the next line from your text file. The **N** command, however, *appends* the next line from your text file to the end of the text already in the working area. The next exercise demonstrates this difference. First, create the following text file:

```
cat >exercise15
Apple
Apple
Apple
Apple
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following two scripts:

```
cat >script15
/Apple/n
s/Apple/Banana/g
<ctrl-D>

cat >script15a
/Apple/N
s/Apple/Banana/g
<ctrl-D>
```

When script15 is executed with the following command line:

```
sed -f script15 exercise15
```

this will appear on your screen:

```
Apple
Banana
Apple
Banana
```

The **n** command told **sed** to print out the line already in the work area before reading in the next line from the text file. This meant that **sed** substituted **Banana** for **Apple** only on the *second* line of each pair.

Note what happens, however, when you run script15a, using this command line:

```
sed -f script15a exercise15
```

This text appears:

```
Banana
Banana
Banana
Banana
```

Because *both* lines of each pair were kept in the work area, the substitution command changed both of them.

### ***Print First Line***

The **P** command prints material from the work area. Unlike the **p** command, which prints *everything* in the work area, **P** prints only the *first* line in the work area. To see how this works, prepare the following text file:



```
cat >exercisel6
Student:  George
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
Student:  Marian
Teacher:  Miss Peterson
Student:  Ivan
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following scripts:

```
cat >script16
/Student/N
/Mr. Starzynski/p
<ctrl-D>

cat >script16a
/Student/N
/Miss Peterson/P
<ctrl-D>
```

When the first of these scripts is executed with the following command line (note the use of the **-n** option):

```
sed -n -f script16 exercisel6
```

the result is

```
Student:  George
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
Student:  Ivan
Teacher:  Mr. Starzynski
```

whereas script16a, when executed as follows:

```
sed -n -f script16a exercisel6
```

produces

```
Student:  George
Student:  Ivan
```

Note that the **N** command lines pull both the name of the student and the name of the teacher into **sed**'s work area; then the **P** command allows you to print only the names of the students whose teacher is Mr. Starzynski. Obviously, **P** is a powerful tool that will allow you to select material from tables, lists, and other repetitive files.

## Save Work Area

**sed** can create a second work area in addition to the primary work area in which **sed** performs its editing. **sed** does not execute any editing commands on the material stored in this secondary work area; rather, this work area can be used to store material that you want to edit or insert later.

The commands **h** and **H** copy material from the primary work area into the secondary work area. **h** and **H** differ in that **h** *displaces* any material in the secondary work area with the line being copied there, whereas **H** *appends* the line being copied onto the material already in the work area. Note, too, that both **h** and **H** merely *copy* the primary work area into the secondary work area — after

these commands have been executed, the material in the primary work area remains intact, and can be edited further, printed out, or deleted, whichever you prefer.

The commands **g** and **G** copy material back from the secondary work area into the primary work area. Again, these commands differ in that **g** *displaces* whatever is in the primary work area with the material from the secondary work area, whereas **G** *appends* the material from the secondary work area onto the material already in the primary work area.

The following exercises will demonstrate how these commands are used. First, create the following text file:

```
cat >exercisel7
fruit:  apple
berry:  gooseberry
fruit:  orange
berry:  raspberry
fruit:  pear
berry:  blueberry
<ctrl-D>
```

The first script uses the **h** and **g** commands:

```
cat >script17
/fruit/h
/fruit/d
/berry/g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script17 exercisel7
```

you receive the following text on your screen:

```
fruit:  apple
fruit:  orange
fruit:  pear
```

Review the last script in detail. The first command, **/fruit/h**, copied the line beginning with “fruit” into the secondary work area, displacing whatever happened to be there. The command **/fruit/d** then deleted the line from the primary work area; if this were not done, it would then have been printed out. The third command, **/berry/g** then recopied the material from the secondary work area into the primary work area, displacing whatever was already in the primary work area. The result of all this shuffling and displacing was that the three lines that begin with **fruit** were printed out.

The next script demonstrates the **H** command:

```
cat >script17a
/fruit/H
/fruit/d
/berry/g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script17a exercise 17
```

you see:

```
fruit: apple
fruit: apple
fruit: orange
fruit: apple
fruit: orange
fruit: pear
```

Because the **H** command *appends* material into the secondary work area, rather than replacing it as **h** does, all three lines that began with **fruit** were cumulatively stored in the secondary work area. Because the **g** command was used for every line that began with **berry**, the contents of the secondary work area (that is, the **fruit** lines) were written over each of the three lines that began with **berry**.

The next script demonstrates the use of the **G** command:

```
cat >script17b
/fruit/H
/fruit/d
/berry/G
s/berry://g
s/fruit://g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script17b exercise17
```

you will see:

```
gooseberry
  apple
raspberry
  apple
  orange
blueberry
  apple
  orange
  pear
```

The **H** command copies the lines that begin with **fruit** into the secondary work area. The **G** command then re-copies them from the secondary work area into the primary work area, and appends them to the material already in the primary work area — that is, to a line that begins with **berry**.

The two substitution commands then strip off the **fruit** and **berry** prefixes; obviously, these substitutions do not affect the operation of the **H** and **G** commands, but they do create a tidier result.

By the way, be sure you distinguish the **g** command from the **g** option used with the **s** command. If you do not, what **sed** finally prints out for you may appear very strange.

The final command that uses the secondary work area is **x**, which exchanges the two work areas. The following script shows how this is used:

```
cat >script17c
/fruit/H
/fruit/d
/blueberry/x
s/berry://g
s/fruit://g
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script17c exercise17
```

you see:

```
gooseberry
raspberry
apple
orange
pear
```

The text lines that began with **fruit** were moved into the secondary working area. The **x** command was executed when the line that contained the word **blueberry** was reached, and the two working areas exchanged their contents. The **fruit** lines were then printed out, while the **blueberry** line was simply left in the secondary working at the end of the program, and disappeared when the program concluded.

Note that **x** simply swaps the two working areas — there is no “**X**” command that appends the work areas onto each other.

### ***Transform Characters***

The **y** command is a special form of the **s** command. With the **y** command, you can replace a number of characters easily, without having to write a series of **s** commands.

The form of the command is:

```
y/123/abc/
```

In the above example, **1** will be replaced with **a**, **2** with **b**, and **3** with **c** throughout the document (no **g** option is needed). For **y** to work properly there must be a one-to-one relationship between the characters being replaced and the characters replacing them. Also, **y** cannot make exchanges that involve more than one character — it cannot, for example, replace **apple** with **banana**.

One useful task for the **y** command is to change all upper-case letters in a file to lower case. Prepare the following text file to see how this is done:

```
cat >exercisel8
NOW IS THE TIME FOR ALL GOOD MEN TO COME
TO THE AID OF THE PARTY.
<ctrl-D>
```

And prepare the following script, which will change these capitals:

```
cat >script18
y/ABCDEFGH/abcdefghi/
y/JKLMNOPQR/jklmnopqr/
y/STUVWXYZ/stuvwxyz/
<ctrl-D>
```

The alphabet is entered here in three chunks, to prevent the command from being too long to type easily. Execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script18 exercise18
```

The result is:

```
now is the time for all good men to come
to the aid of the party.
```

## Command Control

**sed** gives you advanced control over the execution of commands. The next subsections describe how these command controls help you write compact, powerful scripts.

### { }: Command Grouping

In several of the exercises presented so far, more than one command specified the same line locator. By using braces '{' and '}', you can bundle commands, which makes writing your scripts easier and lessens the chance of making a typographical error.

To see how this is done, type the following script:

```
cat >exercise19
When my love swears that she is made of truth,
I do believe her, though I know she lies,
That she might think me some untutored youth,
Unlearned in the world's false subtleties.
<ctrl-D>
```

Now, prepare the following script:

```
cat >script19
/truth/{N
P
}
/lies/d
<ctrl-D>
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script19 exercise19
```

the result on your terminal is:

```
When my love swears that she is made of truth,
That she might think me some untutored youth,
Unlearned in the world's false subtleties.
```

Note the syntax of this command. Each subsequent command must go on a line of its own, as must

the right brace `}`. If this syntax is not observed, you will receive an error message.

### **! : All But**

The **!** flag inverts a line selector; that is to say, the command will be performed on every line *but* the one named in the line selector. The following script will show how this works:

```
cat >script19a
2!d
<ctrl-D>
```

which, when run with the following command line:

```
sed -f script19a exercise19
```

produces

```
I do believe her, though I know she lies,
```

This script deleted every line *except* line 2. The **!** flag may also be used with a range of lines, as indicated by line numbers or line patterns; in either case, you must place the **!** flag *after* the line selectors and immediately *before* the command. Obviously, the **!** flag is very powerful, and can be used to sift out a few desired lines from a large file.

### **= : Print Line Number**

You may wish to print only the *line number* of lines that contain a selected pattern. This is done with the **=** command. For example, you may wish to know the number of each line in the exercise that contains the word **she**. The following script:

```
cat >script19b
/she/=
<ctrl-D>
```

when executed with the following command line (note the **-n** option):

```
sed -n -f script19b exercise19
```

produces this result:

```
1
2
3
```

These numbers can be stored in a file and used in further editing, or included with the text of the fully edited file to provide a series of line markers.

### **Skipping Commands**

**sed** normally processes editing commands in order, beginning with the first command and proceeding sequentially to the last. This behavior can be modified by the branching commands: **b**, **t**, and **:**.

These commands must be used with the colon (**:**) command, which defines a *label* point in the list of commands.

The **branch** command **b** allows you to skip unconditionally some editing commands in your script. The following exercise demonstrates how this can be used:

## **TUTORIALS**

```
cat >exercise20
They went to sea in a sieve, they did;
In a sieve they went to sea;
In spite of all their friends could say,
On a winter's morn, on a stormy day,
In a sieve they went to sea.
<ctrl-D>
```

The following script uses the **b** command to avoid making certain changes to the first line of the poem:

```
cat >script20
s/sea/drink/g
/They/bend
s/sieve/ship/g
:end
```

When you execute this script with the following command line:

```
sed -f script20 exercise20
```

you will see:

```
They went to drink in a sieve, they did;
In a ship they went to drink;
In spite of all their friends could say,
On a winter's morn, on a stormy day,
In a ship they went to drink.
```

Note that the word **sea** is changed to **drink** throughout the file; however, when **sed** noted that the word **They** appeared in line 1, the **b** command forced it to seek the **:** command that was labeled with the word **end**, and to continue editing only *after* it found the labelled **:** command. In so doing, **sed** skipped the command to substitute **ship** for **sieve**, which is why that substitution was not made in line 1.

Note the syntax of the **b** command: the label follows it without a break. The text of the label is unimportant, just so long as it matches that used in the **b** command; however, the use of a label allows you to place several **b** or (as will be seen) **t** commands in the same script without mixing them up.

### ***t: Test Command***

The **test** command, **t**, also allows you to change the order in which editing commands are executed. Unlike the **b** command, which simply examines a line for a given pattern, the **t** command *tests* to see if a particular substitution has been performed.

The following script demonstrates the use of the **t** command:

```
cat >script20a
s/They/they/g
tend
s/sieve/ship/
:end
s/sea/drink/g
<ctrl-D>
```

which, when executed with the following command line:

```
sed -f script20a exercise20
```

produces:

```
they went to drink in a sieve, they did;
In a ship they went to drink;
In spite of all their friends could say,
On a winter's morn, on a stormy day,
In a ship they went to drink.
```

Note that the **t** command checked to see that **they** was substituted for **They** before branching to the **:** command labeled with the word **end**.

Also note the syntax of the **t** command: Like the **b** command, the label immediately follows the command and is not separated by a space; unlike the **b** command, however, the **t** command appears on the line *below* the substitution command for which it is testing.

### ***For More Information***

The Lexicon entry for **sed** summarizes its command-line options and commands. The COHERENT line editor **ed** resembles **sed**, except that it works interactively instead of in a stream. For information on **ed**, see its tutorial or its entry in the Lexicon.



---

# The C Language

---

C is a computer language invented by Dennis Ritchie and Ken Thompson at AT&T Bell Laboratories in the early 1970s. In the approximately 20 years since its creation, C has become one of the most popular computer languages in the world. C is powerful, flexible; it is highly portable, and has been implemented on practically every computer, and under practically every operating system, in the world.

C is the “native language” of the COHERENT system. COHERENT is written in C, and it includes a powerful C compiler among its suite of language tools for your use. You do not need to know C to use COHERENT to great advantage; however, if you plan to program under COHERENT, you would be well advised to become at least passably acquainted with it.

This tutorial is an introduction to the COHERENT C compiler and to the C language itself. The first part of this section describes how to compile programs under COHERENT. The second part is a brief tutorial in the C language itself.

## *Compiling C Programs under COHERENT*

A C compiler is a program that transforms files of C source code into machine code. Compilation is a complex process that involves several steps; however, COHERENT simplifies it with the command **cc**, which controls all the actions of the compiler.

### *Try the Compiler*

Before we launch into a lengthy explanation of what **cc** is and what it does, you can get a feel for it by trying it with a simple example. To begin, type the following to create a simple C program:

```
cat >hello.c
main() {
    printf("Hello, world\n");
}
<ctrl-D>
```

This creates a simple C program called **hello.c**. Now, compile your program by typing the following command:

```
cc -V hello.c
```

If you typed the program correctly, **cc** will print something like the following on your screen:

```
/lib/cc0 D23400000100 hello.c /tmp/cc15029b
/lib/cc1 D23000000100 /tmp/cc15029b /tmp/cc15029a
/lib/cc2 D23000000100 /tmp/cc15029a hello.o /tmp/cc15029b
rm /tmp/cc15029a
rm /tmp/cc15029b
/bin/ld -X /lib/crts0.o hello.o /lib/libc.a
rm hello.o
```

What each of these messages means will be described below. If you receive an error message, try re-typing the program, and then re-compile it. When compilation is successfully completed, you will now have an executable program called **hello**. To invoke it, type:

```
hello
```

It should print the following on your screen:

```
Hello, world
```

As you can see, **cc** makes it easy to transform a file of C code into an executable program.

### **Phases of Compilation**

As you noticed, **cc** printed a number of messages on your screen as it compiled **hello.c**. The reason you saw the messages was that compilation was performed with the **-V** option to **cc**; this tells **cc** to print a verbose output that describes each of its actions. **cc** prints numerous messages because the COHERENT C compiler is not just one program, but a number of different programs that work together. Each program performs a *phase* of compilation. The following summarizes each phase:

- cpp** The C preprocessor. This processes any of the '#' directives, such as **#include** or **#ifdef**, and expands macros.
- cc0** The parser. This phase parses programs. It translates the program into a parse-tree format, which is independent of both the language of the source code and the microprocessor for which code will be generated.
- cc1** The code generator. This phase reads the parse tree generated by **cc0** and translates it into machine code. The code generation is table driven, with entries for each operator and addressing mode.
- cc2** The optimizer/object generator. This phase optimizes the generated code and writes the object module.
- cc3** COHERENT also includes a fifth phase, called **cc3**, which can be run after the object generator, **cc2**. **cc3** generates a file of assembly language instead of a relocatable object module. **cc3** allows you to examine the code generated by the compiler. You did not see this phase when you compiled **hello.c** because this phase is optional and you did not request it. If you want COHERENT to generate assembly language, use the **-S** option on the **cc** command line.

Unless you specify the **-S** option, **cc** creates an *object module* that is named after the source file being compiled. This module has the suffix **.o**. An object module is *not* executable; it contains only the code generated by compiling a C source file, plus information needed to link the module with other program modules and with the library functions.

As the final step in its execution, **cc** calls the linker **ld** to produce an executable program.

As you can see, **cc** also removes the temporary files it creates to pass information from one compiler phase to another. If your program is built out of only one file of C source code, it also deletes the object module that it creates after that module is linked to create an executable program.

### **Renaming Executable Files**

When **cc** compiles a source file, by default it names the executable program after the *first* source file named on the **cc** command line. If you wish, you can give the executable file a different name. Use the **-o** (output) option, followed by the desired name.

## Floating-Point Numbers

Often, you will need to use floating-point numbers in your programs. If you are unsure what a floating-point number is, see the Lexicon entry for **float**.

The routines that print floating-point numbers are large, and most C programs do not need to print floating-point numbers; therefore, the code to perform floating-point arithmetic is not included in a program by default. You must ask **cc** to include these routines with your program by using the **-f** option to **cc**.

To see how this works, let's modify **hello.c** to use floating-point numbers. Edit **hello.c** by typing the following commands:

```
ed hello.c
2
c
    printf("Hello, world %f\n", 123.4);
.
w
q
```

Now, compile the program with the same command line as before:

```
cc -V hello.c
```

When compilation has finished, type **hello**. You'll see the following output:

```
You must compile with the -f flag
to include printf() floating point.
```

```
Hello, world
```

COHERENT is telling you that you are using a floating-point number but that you did not compile the program to include code to process floating-point numbers. Now, recompile the program using the **-f** option to **cc**:

```
cc -V -f hello.c
```

When compilation has finished, type **hello**. If you typed the program correctly, you will see the following:

```
Hello, world 123.400000
```

As you can see, **hello** is now displaying the floating-point number **123.4** for you. For detailed information on **printf**, see its entry in the Lexicon; **printf** is also discussed in the tutorial section below.

## Compiling Multiple Source Files

Many programs are built from more than one file of C source code. For example, the program **factor**, which is provided with COHERENT, is built from the C source files **factor.c** and **atod.c**. To produce the executable program **factor**, both source files must be compiled; the linker **ld** then joins them to form an executable file.

To compile a program that uses more than one source file, type all of the source files onto the **cc** command line. For example, to compile **factor** you would type the following:

```
cc -o factor -f factor.c atod.o -lm
```

This command compiles both C source files to create the program **factor**.

In the above example, **cc** produces the non-executable object modules **factor.o** and **atod.o**, and then links them to produce the executable file **factor**.

The argument **-lm** tells **cc** to include routines from the mathematics library when the object modules are linked. This option must come *after* the names of all of the source files, or the program will not be linked correctly.

### Linking Without Compiling

When you are writing a program that consists of several source files, you will need to compile the program, test it, and then change one or more of the source files. Rather than recompile all of the source files, you can save time by recompiling only the modified files and relinking the program.

For example, if you modify the **factor** program by changing the source file **factor.c**, you can recompile **factor.c** and relink the entire program with the following command:

```
cc -o factor -f factor.c atod.o -lm
```

This **cc** command refers to the C source file **factor.c** and the object module **atod.o**. **cc** recognizes that **atod.o** is an object module and simply passes it to the linker **ld** without re-compiling it. You will find this particularly useful when your programs consist of many source files and you need to compile only a few of them.

To simplify compiling, especially if you are developing systems that use many source modules, you should consider using the **make** utility that is included with COHERENT. For more information on **make**, see its entry in the Lexicon, or see the tutorial for **make** that appears later in this manual.

### Compiling Without Linking

At times, you will need to compile a source file but not link the resulting object module to the other object modules. You will do this, for example, to compile a module that you wish to insert into a library. Use **cc**'s option **-c** to tell **cc** not to link the compiled program. This option is often used to create relocatable object modules that can be archived into a library for later use.

For example, if you wanted just to compile **factor.c** without linking it, you would type:

```
cc -c factor.c
```

To link the resulting object module with the object module **atod.o** and with the appropriate libraries, type the following command:

```
cc -o factor -f factor.o atod.o -lm
```

### Assembly-Language Files

C makes most assembly language programming unnecessary. However, you may wish to write small parts of your programs in assembly language for greater speed or to access processor features that C cannot use directly. COHERENT includes an assembler, named **as**, which is described in detail in the Lexicon.

To compile a program that consists of the C source file **example.c** and the assembly-language source file **example.s**, simply use the **cc** command as usual:

```
cc -o example example1.c example2.s
```

**cc** recognizes that the suffix **.s** indicates an assembly-language source file, and assembles it with **as**; then it links both object modules to produce an executable file.

## Changing the Size of the Stack

The *stack* is the segment of memory that holds function arguments, local variables, and function return addresses. COHERENT by default sets the size of the stack to two kilobytes (2,048 bytes). This is enough stack space for most programs; however, some programs, such as the example program on page 26 of the first edition of *The C Programming Language*, require more than two kilobytes of stack. A program that uses more than its allotted amount of stack will cause a *stack overflow*, which will cause your program to crash.

The size of the stack cannot be altered while a program is running. Should your program need more than two kilobytes of stack, use the COHERENT command **fixstack**. For more information, see the entry for **fixstack** in the Lexicon.

## Where To Go From Here

This discussion of the **cc** command is by no means complete, but it includes enough information for you to begin to compile your programs. The Lexicon's entry for **cc** gives all of the command-line options available with **cc**. The Lexicon also has entries for **cpp**, the compiler phases, and for the linker **ld**, and describes them at greater length. All error messages generated by **cc** and by the assembler **as** appear in the appendix to this manual.

The next section in this tutorial introduces the C programming language.

## C for Beginners

This section briefly introduces the C programming language. It is in two parts. The first part describes what a programming language is, and gives the history of the C programming language. This section also introduces some concepts basic to C, such as *structured programming*, *pointer*, and *operator*. The second part walks through a C programming session. It emphasizes how a C programmer deals with a real problem, and demonstrates some aspects of the language.

This chapter is not designed to teach you the entire C language. It introduces you to C, so you can read the rest of this manual with some understanding. We urge you to look up individual topics of C programming in the Lexicon, and especially to study the example programs given there.

## Programming Languages and C

Before beginning with C, it is worthwhile to review how a microprocessor and a computer language work.

A *microprocessor* is the part of your computer that actually computes. Built into it is a group of *instructions*. Each instruction tells the microprocessor to perform a task; for example, one instruction adds two numbers together, another stores the result of an arithmetic operation in memory, and a third copies data from one point in memory to another.

Together, a microprocessor's instructions form its *instruction set*. The instruction set is, in effect, the microprocessor's "native language".

A microprocessor also contains areas of very fast storage, called *registers*. The registers are essential to arithmetic and data handling within the microprocessor. How many registers a microprocessor has, and how they are designed, help to determine how much memory the microprocessor can read and write, or *address*, and how the microprocessor handles data.

A *computer language*, as the name implies, lets a human being use the microprocessor's instruction set. The lowest level language is called "assembly language". In assembly language, the programmer calls instructions directly from the microcomputer's instruction set, and manipulates the registers within the microprocessor. To write programs in assembly language, a programmer must know both the microprocessor's instruction set and the configuration of its registers.

### **Assembly and High-Level Languages**

With assembly language, the programmer can tailor the program specifically to the microprocessor. However, because each microprocessor has a unique instruction set and configuration of registers, a program written in one microprocessor's assembly language cannot be run on another microprocessor. For example, no program written in the assembly language for the Motorola 68000 microprocessor can be run on the IBM PC or any PC-compatible computer. The program must be entirely rewritten in the assembly language for the Intel i8086 microprocessor, which is difficult and time consuming.

A *high-level language* helps programmers to avoid these problems. The programmer does not need to know the microprocessor in detail; instead of specific microprocessor instructions, he writes a set of logical constructions. These constructions are then handed to another program, which translates them into the instructions and register calls used by a specific microprocessor. In theory, a program written in a high-level language can be run on any microprocessor for which someone has written a translation program.

A high-level language allows the programmer to concentrate on the task being executed, rather than on the details of registers and instructions. This means that programs can be written more quickly than in assembly language, and can be maintained more easily.

### **So, What Is C?**

As noted earlier, C was invented at AT&T Bell Laboratories by Dennis Ritchie and Ken Thompson. They created C specifically to re-write the UNIX operating system from PDP-11 assembly language. Ritchie designed C to have the power, speed, and flexibility of assembly language, but the portability of high-level languages.

In 1978, Ritchie and Brian W. Kernighan published *The C Programming Language*, which describes and defines the C language. *The C Programming Language* is the "bible" of C, a standard work to which all programmers can refer when writing their programs.

Because C is modeled after assembly language, it has been called a "medium-level" language. The programmer doesn't have to worry about specific registers or specific instructions, but he can use all of the power of the computer almost as directly as he can with assembly language.

Because C was written by experienced programmers for experienced programmers, it makes little effort to protect a programmer from himself. A programmer can easily write a C program that is legal and compiles correctly but crashes the program. Also, C's punctuation marks, or "operators", closely resemble each other. Thus, a mistake in typing can create a legal program that compiles correctly but behaves very differently from what you expect.

### **Structured Programming**

C is a *structured language*. This means that a C program is assembled from a number of sub-programs, or *functions*, each of which performs a discrete task. If this concept is difficult to grasp, consider the following example.

Suppose you want to turn a file of text into upper-case letters and print it on the screen. This job seems simple, but a program to do it must perform five tasks:

1. Read the name of the file to open.
2. Open the file so it can be read, in much the same way that you must open a book before you can read it.
3. Read the text from the file.
4. Turn what is read into upper-case letters.
5. Print the transformed text onto the screen.

A good program will also perform the following tasks:

1. Check that the file requested actually exists.
2. Check that the file requested is actually a text file rather than a file of binary information; the latter makes very little sense when printed on the screen.
3. Close the program neatly when the work is finished.
4. Stop processing and print an error message if a problem occurs.

A structured language like C allows you to write a separate function for each of these tasks.

A structured programming language offers two major advantages over a non-structured language. First, it is easier to debug a function than an entire program because the function can be unplugged from the program as a whole, made to work correctly, and then plugged back in again. Second, once a function works, it can be used again and again in different programs. This allows you to create a *library* of reliable functions that you can pull off the shelf whenever you need them.

The functions within a program communicate by passing values to each other. The value being passed can be an integer, a character, or — most commonly — an address within memory where a function can find data to manipulate. This passing of addresses, or *pointers*, is the most efficient way to manipulate data because by receiving one number, a function can find its way to a large amount of data. This speeds up a program's execution.

C adds some extra tools to help you construct programs. To begin, C allows you to store functions in compiled form. These precompiled functions are added only when the program is finally loaded into memory; this spares you the trouble of having to recompile the same code again and again. Second, C adds a preprocessor that expands definitions, or *macros*, and pulls in special material stored in *header files*. This allows you to store often-used definitions in one file and use them just by adding one line to your program.

## Writing a C Program

As noted above, a C program consists of a bundle of sub-programs, or *functions*, which link together to perform the task you want done. Every C program must have one function that is called **main**. This is the main function; when the computer reads this, it knows that it must begin to execute the program. All other functions are subordinate to **main**. When the **main** function is finished, the program is over.

To see how these elements work, review the program **hello.c**, which you worked with earlier in this tutorial:

```
main()
{
    printf("Hello, world\n");
}
```

As you can see, this program begins with the word **main**. The program begins to work at this point. The parentheses after **main** enclose all of the *arguments* to **main** — or would, if this program's **main** took any. An argument is an item of information that a function uses in its work.

The braces '{' and '}' enclose all the material that is subsidiary to **main**.

The word "printf" *calls* a function called **printf**. This function performs formatted printing. The line of characters (or "string") *Hello, world* is the argument to **printf**: this argument is what **printf** is to print.

The characters '\n' stand for a newline character. This character "tosses the carriage", or moves the cursor to a new line and returns it to the leftmost column on your screen. Using this character ensures that when printing is finished, the cursor is not left fixed in the middle of the screen. Finally, the semicolon ';' at the end of the command indicates that the function call is finished.

One point to remember is that **printf** is *not* part of the C language. Rather, it is a *function* that was written by Mark Williams Company, then compiled and stored in a library for your use. This means that you do not have to re-invent a formatted printing function to perform this simple task: all you have to do is *call* the one that Mark Williams has written for you.

Although most C programs are more complicated than this example, every C program has the same elements: a function called **main**, which marks where execution begins and ends; braces that fence off blocks of code; functions that are called from libraries; and data passed to functions in the form of arguments.

### A Sample C Programming Session

This section walks you through a C programming session. It shows how you can go about planning and writing a program in C.

C allows you to be precise in your programming, which should make you a stronger programmer. Be careful, however, because C does exactly what you tell it to do, nothing more and nothing less. If you make a mistake, you can produce a legal C program that does very unexpected things.

#### Designing a Program

Most programmers prefer to work on a program that does something fun or useful. Therefore, we will write something useful: a version of the COHERENT utility **scat**, that we'll call **display**. It will do the following:

1. Open a text file on disk.
2. Display its contents in 23-line chunks (one full screen).
3. After displaying a chunk, wait to see if the user wants to see another chunk. If the user presses the <return> key alone, display another chunk; if the user types any other key before pressing the <return> key, exit.
4. Exit automatically when the end of file is reached.

As you can see, the first step in writing a program is to write down what the program is to do, in as much detail as you can manage, and preferably in complete sentences.



Now, invoke **ed** or MicroEMACS and get ready to type in the program:

```
ed display.c
```

or:

```
me display.c
```

We suggest that you use the MicroEMACS editor, because this tutorial will make numerous changes to the program as it progresses and it will be easier to see these changes in context if you use a screen editor rather than a line editor. The rest of this tutorial assumes that you are using MicroEMACS. If you are not familiar with MicroEMACS, it is briefly described in *Using the COHERENT System*. A tutorial for MicroEMACS also appears in this manual, or you may wish to see the entry for **me** in the Lexicon.

In the above commands, the suffix **.c** on the file name indicates that this is a file of C code. If you do not use this suffix, the **cc** command will not recognize that this is a file of C code and will refuse to compile it.

Begin by inserting a description of the program into the top of the file in the form of a *comment*. When a C compiler sees the symbol `/*`, it throws away everything it reads until it sees the symbol `*/`. This lets you insert text into your program to explain what the program does.

Type the following:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */
```

Save what you have typed by pressing **<ctrl-X>** and then **<ctrl-S>**. Now, anyone, including you, who looks at this program will know exactly what it is meant to do.

## The `main()` Function

As described earlier, the C language permits *structured programming*. This means that you can break your program into a group of discrete functions, each of which performs one task. Each function can be perfected by itself, and then used again and again when you need to execute its task. C requires, however, that you signal which function is the *main* function, the one that controls the operation of the other functions. Thus, each C program must have a function called **main()**.

Now, add **main()** to your program. Type the code that is shaded, below:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */
```

```
main()
{
}
```

The parentheses “()” show that **main** is a function. If **main** were to take any arguments, they would be named between the parentheses. The braces “{}” delimit all code that is subordinate to **main**; this will be explained in more detail below.

Note that the shortest legal C program is **main(){}.** This program doesn't do anything when you run it, but it will compile correctly and generate an executable file.

Now, try compiling the program. Save your text by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>**, and then exit from the editor by typing **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**. Compile the program by typing:

```
cc display.c
```

When compilation is finished, type **display**. The shell will pause briefly, then return the prompt to your screen. As you can see, you now have a legal, compilable C program, but one that does nothing.

### Open a File and Show Text

The next step is to install routines that open a file and print its contents. For the moment, the program will read only a file called **tester**, and not break it into 23-line portions.

Type the shaded lines into your program, as follows:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */
```

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
{
```

```
    char string[128];
    FILE *fileptr;
```

```
/* Open file */
    fileptr = fopen("tester", "r");
```

```
/* Read material and display it */
    for (;;) {
        fgets(string, 128, fileptr);
        printf("%s", string);
    }
}
```

Note first how comments are inserted into the text, to guide the reader.

Now, note the lines

```
    char string[128];
    FILE *fileptr;
```

These *declare* two data structures. That is, they tell COHERENT to set aside a specific amount of memory for them.

The first declaration, **char string[128];**, declares an array of 128 **chars**. A **char** is a data entity that is exactly one byte long; this is enough space to store exactly one alphanumeric character in memory, hence its name. An *array* is a set of data elements that are recorded together in memory. In this instance, the declaration sets aside 128 **chars**-worth of memory. This declaration reserves space in memory to hold the data that your program reads.

The second declaration, **FILE \*fileptr**, declares a *pointer* to a **FILE** structure. The asterisk shows that the data element points to something, rather than being the thing itself. When a variable is declared to be a pointer, the C compiler sets aside enough space in memory to hold an *address*. When your program reads that address, it then knows where the actual data are residing, and looks for them there. C uses pointers extensively, because it is much more efficient to pass the address of data than to pass the data themselves. You may find the concept of pointers to be a little difficult to grasp; however, as you gain experience with C, you will find that they become easy to use.

The **FILE** structure is the data entity that holds all the information your program needs to read information from or write information to a file on the disk. For a detailed discussion of the **FILE** structure, see its entry in the Lexicon. For now, all you need to remember is that this declaration sets aside a place to hold a pointer to such a structure, and the structure itself holds all of the information your program needs to manipulate a file on disk. In effect, the variable **fileptr** is used within your program as a synonym for the file itself.

Now, the line

```
fileptr = fopen("tester", "r");
```

opens the file to be read. The function **fopen** opens the file, fills the **FILE** structure, and fills the variable **fileptr** with the address of where that structure resides in memory.

**fopen** takes two arguments. The first is the name of the file to be opened, within quotation marks. The second argument indicates the *mode* in which to open the file; **r** indicates that the file will be read rather than written into.

The lines

```
for(;;)
{
```

begin a *loop*. A loop is a section of code that is executed repeatedly until a condition that you set is fulfilled. For example, you may define a loop that executes until the value of a particular variable becomes greater than zero.

**for** is built into the C language. Note that it has braces, just like **main()** does; these braces mean that the following lines, up to the next right brace (**}**) are part of this loop. You can set conditions that control how a **for** loop operates; in its present form, it will loop forever. This will be explained in more detail shortly.

Two library functions are executed within the loop. The first,

```
fgets(string, 128, fileptr);
```

reads a line from the file named in the **fileptr** variable, and writes it into the character array called **string**. The middle argument ensures that no more than 128 characters will be read at a time. The second line within this loop,

```
printf("%s", string);
```

prints the line. **printf** is a powerful and subtle function; in its present form, it prints on the screen the string contained in the variable *string*.

Finally, the line at the top of the program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

tells the C preprocessor **cpp** to read the *header file* called **stdio.h**. The term “STDIO” stands for “standard input and output”; **stdio.h** declares and defines a number of routines that will be used to read data from a file and write them onto the screen.

When you have finished typing in this code, again compile the program as you did earlier. If an error occurs, check what you have typed and make sure that it *exactly* matches the code shown on the previous page. If you find any errors, fix them and then recompile. If errors persist, check it in the table of error messages that appear at the end of this tutorial.

When compilation is finished, execute **display** as you did earlier. You will see the text from **tester** scroll across the screen. When the text is finished, however, the COHERENT prompt does not return; you have not yet inserted code that tells the program to recognize that the file is finished. Type **<ctrl-C>** to break the program and return to COHERENT

### Accepting File Names

Of course, you will want **display** to be able to display the contents of any file, not just files named **display.c**. The next step is to add code that lets you pass arguments to the program through its command line. This task requires that you give the **main()** function two arguments. By tradition, these are always called **argc** and **argv**. How they work will be described in a moment.

The enhanced program appears as follows. You should change or insert the lines that are shaded:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */
```

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128
```

```
main(argc, argv)
/* Declare arguments to main() */
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;

    /* Open file */
    fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r");

    /* Read material and display it */
    for (;;) {
        fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr);
        printf("%s", string);
    }
}
```

First, a small change has been added: the line

```
#define MAXCHAR 128
```

defines the *manifest constant* **MAXCHAR** to be equivalent to 128. This is done because the “magic number” 128 is used throughout the program. If you decide to change the number of characters that this program can handle at once, all you would have to do is to change this one line to alter the entire program. This cuts down on mistakes in altering and updating the program. If you look lower in the program, you will see that the declaration

```
char string[128]
```

has been changed to read

```
char string[MAXCHAR]
```

The two forms are equivalent; the only difference is that the latter is easier to use. It is a good idea to use manifest constants wherever possible, to streamline changes to your program.

Now, look at the line that declares **main()**. You will see that **main()** now has two arguments: **argc** and **argv**.

The first is an **int**, or integer, as shown by its declaration — **int argc**;. **argc** gives the *number* of entries typed on a command line. For example, when you typed

```
display filename
```

the value of **argc** was set to two: one for the command name itself, and one for the file-name argument. **argc** and its value are set by the compiler. You do not have to do anything to ensure that this value is set correctly.

**argv**, on the other hand, is an array of pointers to the command line’s arguments. In this instance, **argv[1]** points to name of the file that you want **display** to read. This, too, is set by COHERENT, and works automatically.

If you look below at the line that declares **fopen()**, you will see that **tester** has been replaced with **argv[1]**; this means that you want **fopen()** to open the file named in the first argument to the **display** command.

Now, try running the program by typing

```
display display.c
```

**display** will open **display.c** and print its contents on the screen. You still need to type <ctrl-C> when printing is finished; the code to recognize the end of the file will be inserted later.

Also, be sure that you give the command only one file name as an argument, no more and no less. Code that checks against errors has not yet been inserted, and handing it the wrong number of arguments could cause problems for you.

## Error Checking

Obviously, the program runs at this stage, but is still fragile, and could cause problems. The next step is to stabilize the program by writing code to check for errors. To do so, a programmer must first write code to capture error conditions, and then write a routine to react appropriately to an error.

Our edited program now appears as follows:

```
/*  
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.  
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
```

```
* If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.  
* If user types any other key, exit.  
* Exit when EOF is read.  
*/
```

```
#include <stdio.h>  
#define MAXCHAR 128
```

```
main(argc, argv)  
/* define arguments to main() */  
int argc;  
char *argv[];  
{  
    char string[MAXCHAR];  
    FILE *fileptr;
```

```
/* Check if right number of arguments was passed */  
    if (argc != 2)  
        error("Usage: display filename");
```

```
/* Open file */  
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)  
        error("Cannot open file");
```

```
/* Read material and display it */  
    for (;;) {  
        fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr);  
        printf("%s", string);  
    }  
}
```

```
/* Process error messages */  
error(message)  
char *message;  
{  
    printf("%s", message);  
    exit(1);  
}
```

The additions to the program are introduced by comments.

The first addition

```
    if (argc != 2)  
        error("Usage: display filename");
```

checks to see if the correct number of arguments was passed on the command line; that is to say, it checks to make sure that you named a file when you typed the **display** command.

As noted above, **argc** is the number of arguments on the command line, or rather, the number of arguments plus one, because the command name itself is always considered to be an argument. The statement **if (argc != 2)** checks this. The **if** statement is built into C. If the condition defined between its parentheses is true, then do something, but if it is not true, do nothing at all. The operator **!=** means "does not equal". Therefore, our statement means that if **argc** is not equal to two (in other words, if there are not two and only two arguments to the **display** command — the

command name itself plus a file name), execute the function **error**. **error** is defined below.

Our **fopen** function also has some error checking added (which will be described in a moment):

```
if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
    error("Cannot open file");
```

**fopen** returns a value called "NULL" if, for any reason, it cannot open the file you requested. Thus, our new **if** statement says that if **fopen** cannot open the file named on the command line (that is, **argv[1]**), it should invoke the **error** function.

C always executes nested functions from the "inside out". That means that the innermost function (that is, the function that is enclosed most deeply within the pairs of parentheses) is executed first. Its result, or what it *returns*, is then passed to next outermost function as an argument; that function is then executed and what it returns is, in turn, passed to the function that encloses it, and so on. In this instance, the innermost function is

```
fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")
```

**fopen** is executed and what it returns is written into **fileptr**. What **fopen** returned is then passed to the next outer operation; in this case, it is compared with NULL, as follows:

```
(fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
```

What that operation returns is then passed to the outermost function, in this case the **if** statement, which evaluates what it is passed, and acts accordingly. If **fileptr** is NULL (that is, if **fopen** couldn't open the file), the **if** statement will be true and the **error** function called. If, however, the file was opened, **fileptr** will not equal NULL and the program will proceed.

As this example shows, C allows a programmer to nest functions quite deeply. Although nested functions are sometimes difficult to untangle when you read them, they make programming much more convenient.

Finally, at the bottom of the file is a new function, called **error**:

```
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}
```

This function stands outside of **main**, as you can tell because it appears outside of **main**'s closing brace. This function is called only when your program needs it. If there are no errors, the program progresses only until the closing brace in **main** and the **error** function is never called.

**error** takes one argument, the message that is to be printed on the screen. This message is defined by the routine that calls **error**. **error** uses the function **printf** to print the message, then calls the **exit** function; this, as its name implies, causes the program to stop. The argument **1** is a special signal that tells COHERENT that something went wrong with your program.

When the error checking code is inserted, recompile the program without an argument. Previously, this would cause the program to crash; now, all it does is print the message

```
Usage: display filename
```

and terminate the program.

### *Print a Portion of a File*

So far, our utility just opens a file and streams its contents over the screen. Now, you must insert code to print a 23-line portion of the file. At present, it will only print the first 23 lines, and then exit.

To do so, you must insert another **for** loop. Unlike our first loop, which ran forever, this one will cycle only 23 times, and then stop. Our updated program appears as follows:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;
    int ctr;

    /* Check if right number of arguments was passed */
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");

    /* Open file */
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        error("Cannot open file");

    /* Output 23 lines */
    for (;;) {
        for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++) {
            fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr);
            printf("%s", string);
        }
        exit(0);
    }
}

/* Process error messages */
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}
```



The new **for** loop is nested inside the loop governed by **for(;;)**. The program also declares a new variable, **ctr**, at the beginning of the program. **ctr** keeps track of how many times the loop has executed. Now, look at the line:

```
    for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++)
```

It has three sub-statements, which are separated by semicolons. The first sub-statement sets **ctr** to zero; the second says that execution is to continue as long as **ctr** is less than 23; and the third says that **ctr** is to be increased by one every time the loop executes (this is indicated by the **++** appended to **ctr**). With each iteration of this loop, **fgets** reads a line from the file named on the **display** command line, and **printf** prints it on the screen.

Also, an **exit** call has been set after this new loop. This ensures that the program will exit automatically after the loop has finished executing. This is a temporary measure, to make sure that you no longer have to type **<ctrl-C>** to return to the shell.

When you have updated the program, recompile it in the usual way. When you run it, **display** will show the first 23 lines of the file, and then the shell's prompt will return.

The program is now approaching its final form.

### **Checking for the End of File**

The next-to-last step in preparing the program is teaching it to recognize the end of a file when it sees it. This does not appear to be needed now because the program exits automatically after 23 lines or fewer, but it will be quite necessary when the program begins to display more than one 23-line portion of text.

The function **fgets** checks to see if it has arrived at the end of a file, and returns a special value if it has. **fgets** normally returns the address of the string into which it writes its output; however, if it runs into the end of a file (or if any other error occurs), it returns the special value **NULL**. By reading the value of what **fgets** returns, **display** can detect if the end of the file has been encountered, and stop reading. To do so, the **fgets** statement must be set within an **if** statement. The **if** statement will capture what **fgets** returns, and continue execution as long as the value of the number returned is not **NULL**.

The updated program now appears as follows:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;
    int ctr;
```

```
/* Check if right number of arguments was passed */
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");

/* Open file */
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        error("Cannot open file");

/* Output 23 lines, while checking for EOF */
    for (;;) {
        for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++) {
            if (fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr) != NULL)
                printf("%s", string);
            else
                exit(0);
        }
        exit(0);
    }

/* Process error messages */
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}
```

First, note that the comment that describes the program's output has been changed to reflect our changes to the program. It is important for a programmer to ensure that the comments and the code are in step with each other.

Our new **if** statement

```
if (fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr) != NULL)
```

checks what **fgets** returns: if it does not return **NULL**, the end of the file has not been reached, the **if** statement is true and the program prints out the next line. (The operator **!=** indicates "not equal".) If it returns **NULL**, however, the end of file has been reached, the **if** statement is false so the **else** statement is executed, which causes **display** to exit.

Note, too, that a new control statement is introduced: **else**. This, like **if**, is built into the C language. An **else** statement is always paired with an **if** statement; together, they mean that if the condition for which **if** is testing is true, the program should do one thing; otherwise, it should do something else. In this case, the program says that if the end of file has not been reached, another line has been read from the file and should be printed on the screen; however, if it has been reached, then the program should exit. As you can imagine, **if/else** pairs are common in C programming; they are logical and useful.

One more task must be done on our program; then it is finished.

### Polling the Keyboard

For the program to be complete, it has to ask you if you want to see another 23-line portion of text. The program should write another portion if you press the <return> key alone; if you type any other key before you press <return>, then it should exit.

To do so, we will print a query on the screen, then read what the user has typed and interpret it. When these changes are inserted, the program is complete:

```
/*
 * Truncated version of the 'scat' utility.
 * Open a file, print out 23 lines, wait.
 * If user types <return>, print another 23 lines.
 * If user types any other key, exit.
 * Exit when EOF is read.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXCHAR 128

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    char string[MAXCHAR];
    FILE *fileptr;
    int ctr;

    /* Check if right number of arguments was passed */
    if (argc != 2)
        error("Usage: display filename");

    /* Open file */
    if ((fileptr = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        error("Cannot open file");

    /* Output 23 lines, while checking for EOF */
    for (;;) {
        for (ctr = 0; ctr < 23; ctr++) {
            if (fgets(string, MAXCHAR, fileptr) != NULL)
                printf("%s", string);
            else
                exit(0);
        }

        /* Query if user wishes to continue */
        printf("Continue? ");
        fflush(stdout);
        fgets(string, MAXCHAR, stdin);

        if (string[0] != '\n')
            exit(0);
    }
}
```

```
/* Process error messages */
error(message)
char *message;
{
    printf("%s", message);
    exit(1);
}
```

These new lines introduce a few new twists. The lines

```
printf("Continue? ");
fflush(stdout);
```

print the prompt **Continue?** on the screen. Note that no `'\n'` appears after the the prompt; this ensures that the cursor does *not* jump to the next line, but stays next to the prompt. Because no `'\n'` appears after the line, however, you have to force it to appear on the screen; this is accomplished with the statement:

```
fflush(stdout);
```

**fflush** flushes matter to an output device. **stdout** points to a file stream, just like the stream that you opened with the call to **fopen**, earlier in the program. **stdout** is opened in the header file **stdio.h**, which was read at the beginning of the program; it always points to the user's screen.

The next line reads the user's keyboard:

```
fgets(string, MAXCHAR, stdin);
```

This version of **fgets** reads matter into our array **string**; however, instead of reading the file pointed to by **fileptr**, it reads what is pointed to by **stdin**. **stdin** is a stream that is also defined in **stdio.h**; it always points to the user's keyboard.

Finally, the statement

```
if (string[0] != '\n')
```

checks what the user typed by reading the first (that is, the zero-th) character written in the array **string** by the preceding call to **fgets**. (Note that with C, counting always begins with zero rather than one.) If the user just types **<return>**, then **string[0]** will hold `'\n'`; and the **if** statement will *not* be true, the program jumps to the preceding **for** statement, and more text is written to the screen. However, if the user types anything before typing **<return>**, the **if** statement will succeed and the program will exit. This may seem a little convoluted, but it actually is a straightforward and efficient way to receive information from the user.

After you have inserted these changes, again compile the program.

When compilation is finished, try typing

```
display display.c
```

The first 23 lines of the source code to the program now appear on your screen. Hit **<return>**; the next 23 lines appear. Now, type any other key, and then press **<return>**: the program exits.

You now have a simple but helpful **display** utility.

### For More Information

This section has given you a brief, concentrated introduction to writing a C program. If you are new to programming, much of what happened must seem strange, but we hope it helped you to appreciate the logic of how C works.

Numerous books are on the market to teach beginners how to program in C; the following section gives a small bibliography of books on C. Also, look at the sample C programs in the Lexicon. These demonstrate how to use many of the functions available to you with COHERENT.

### Bibliography

The following books may be helpful in developing your skills with C. This list also contains all books that are referenced in this manual. It is by no means exhaustive; however, it should prove helpful to both beginners and experienced programmers.

American National Standards Institute: *Draft Programming Language C (October 1986 Draft)*. Washington, D.C.: X3 Secretariat, Computer and Business Equipment Manufacturers Association, 1986.

AT&T Bell Laboratories: *The C Programmer's Handbook*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1985.

Bentley, J.: *Programming Pearls*. Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, 1986. *Not, strictly speaking, about C — but belongs on every programmer's bookshelf.*

Brooks, F.P., Jr.: *The Mythical Man-Month: Essays on Software Engineering*. Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc., 1975. *Not about programming, but should be read by every programmer.*

Chirlin, P.M.: *Introduction to C*. Beaverton, Or.: Matrix Publishers, Inc., 1984.

Derman, B. (ed.): *Applied C*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., Inc., 1986.

Feuer, A.R.: *The C Puzzle Book*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1982.

Gehani, G.: *Advanced C: Food for the Educated Palate*. Rockville, Md.: Computer Science Press, 1985.

Hancock, L.; Krieger, M.: *The C Primer*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Publishers, Inc., 1982.

Harbison, S.; Steele, G.: *C: A Reference Manual*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1984.

Haviland, K.F., Salama, B.: *UNIX System Programming*. Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc., 1987.

Hogan, T.: *The C Programmer's Handbook*. Bowie, Md.: Brady Publishing, 1984.

Kelley, A.; Pohl, I.: *C by Dissection: The Essentials of C Programming*. Menlo Park, Ca.: The Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Company, Inc., 1987.

Kernighan, B.W.; Ritchie, D.M.: *The C Programming Language*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1978.

Kernighan, B.W.; Plauger, P.J.: *The Elements of Programming Style*, ed. 2. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1978.

Kochan, S.G.: *Programming in C*. Hasbrouck Heights, N.J.: Hayden Book Co., Inc., 1983.

- Knuth, D.E.: *The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 1: *Basic Algorithms*. Reading, Ma.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1969.
- Knuth, D.E.: *The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2: *Sem numerical Algorithms*. Reading, Ma.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1969.
- Knuth, D.E.: *The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 3: *Sorting and Searching*. Reading, Ma.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1969.
- Lapin, J.E.: *Portable C and UNIX System Programming*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1987.
- Mark Williams Company: *ANSI C: A Lexical Guide*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1988.
- Plum, T.: *C Programming Guidelines*. Cardiff, N.J.: Plum Hall, Inc., 1984.
- Plum, T.; Brodie, J.: *Efficient C*. Cardiff, NJ: Plum Hall, Inc., 1985.
- Purdum, J.: *C Programming Guide*. Indianapolis: Que Corp., 1983.
- Purdum, J.; Leslie, T.C.; Stegemoller, A.L.: *C Programmer's Library*. Indianapolis: Que Corp., 1984.
- Rochkind, M.J.: *Advanced UNIX Programming*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1985.
- Traister, R.J.: *Going from BASIC to C*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1984.
- Traister, R.J.: *Mastering C Pointers*. New York: Academic Press, Inc., 1990.
- Traister, R.J.: *Programming in C for the Microprocessor User*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1984.
- Vile, R.C., Jr.: *Programming in C with Let's C*. Glenview, IL: Scott, Foresman and Company, 1988.
- Waite, M.; Prata, S.; Martin, D.: *C Primer Plus*. Indianapolis: Howard W. Sams, Inc., 1984.
- Weber Systems, Inc.: *C Language User's Handbook*. New York: Ballantine Books, 1984.
- Zahn, C.T.: *C Notes*. New York: Yourdan Press, 1979.

---

# Introduction to the awk Language

---

**awk** is a general-purpose pattern scanning language available with the COHERENT operating system. **awk** performs pattern matching, string manipulation, record processing, and report generation.

The syntax for **awk** is simple. It uses only one kind of statement, consisting of one or both of two elements: a *pattern* and an *action*. Patterns select the data to be processed, and actions specify the function to be performed on the selected data.

This tutorial explains how to write **awk** programs to process input. It will teach you how to use the **awk** interpreter and how to create an **awk** program. It describes the basic function of printing and the specification of input and output field and record separators. It explains the pattern scanning capabilities of **awk**. Finally, it describes the actions **awk** performs in addition to printing, such as assigning variables, defining arrays, and controlling the flow of data.

## Using awk

**awk** reads input from the standard input (entered from your terminal or from a file you specify), processes each input line according to a specified **awk** program, and writes output to the standard output. This section explains the structure of an **awk** program and the syntax of **awk** command lines.

### Program Structure

The basic element of an **awk** program is a statement in the form:

```
pattern {action}
```

A program may contain as many sets of *patterns* and *actions* as you need to accomplish your purposes.

**awk** checks each line of input with the *patterns* specified for a match, one pattern at a time. Each time the line matches a *pattern*, **awk** performs the corresponding *action*. After **awk** has compared the line with each *pattern* in the program, **awk** tests the next input line against the *patterns*.

An **awk** program may specify an *action* without a *pattern*. When **awk** processes an *action* which has no *pattern*, each input line matches. Therefore, **awk** performs the *action* on every line of the input.

An **awk** program may also specify a *pattern* without an *action*. In this case, when an input line matches the *pattern*, **awk** prints the line to the standard output.

One of the special *patterns* that **awk** recognizes is the word **FILENAME**. This *pattern* causes **awk** to print the name of the file that it is reading. Other special *patterns* are discussed below.

### Records and Fields

**awk** divides its input into separate records, and subdivides each record into fields. Records are separated by a character called the input record separator (**RS**), and fields are separated by the input field separator (**FS**).

The default input record separator is the newline character, so **awk** normally regards each input line as a separate record. Because the default input field separator is either the space or the tab character, white space normally separates fields.

In addition to input record and field separators, **awk** provides output record and field separators (**ORS** and **OFS**), which it prints between output records and fields. The default output record separator is the newline character; **awk** normally prints each output record as a separate line. The default output field separator is the space character.

To process input with a record separator other than the newline character, use the special **BEGIN** pattern (fully described below) with an *action* that assigns the desired record separator to the variable **RS**. For example,

```
BEGIN {RS = ":"}
```

changes the record separator to a colon. You may specify any one character as the record separator. Specifying the null string (**RS=""**) makes two consecutive newlines the record separator. If you include more than one character within quotation marks, **awk** ignores all characters after the first one.

To change the output record separator, assign the desired character to the variable **ORS**. The output record separator may be a single character or a string. For example, the following program assigns the string **\*\*\*record end\*\*\*** to **ORS**:

```
BEGIN {ORS = "***record end***"}
```

The variable **NR** gives you the number of the current record. In the following program, **awk** prints this number at the beginning of each record to make editing easier:

```
{print NR, $0}
```

Here is a program that prints the total number of records in the input file.

```
END {print NR}
```

**awk** can also use the record number in relational expressions. To select a particular record for printing (for example, line 6), use the following program:

```
NR == 6 {print $0}
```

which tells **awk** to print the whole record when the number of the record is equivalent to 6.

Each record is subdivided into fields. Within the record, you may refer to each field separately by the name **\$n**, where *n* is the field number. For example, the fourth field is called **\$4**. The entire current record is called **\$0**.

Like records, fields have a default separator. For fields, the default separator is white space for both input and output fields (usually spaces or tabs; newlines can separate fields when **RS** is null).

You may change the field separator (variable **FS**) in two ways. The first way is to specify the change within the **awk** program, as follows:

```
BEGIN {FS = ":"}
```

The sample statement changes the field separator to a colon. When you specify several characters within quotation marks, each character becomes a field separator, and all separators have equal precedence. For example, you can specify commas, colons, and periods to separate fields. In the following program, **awk** looks for any of these separators, and breaks the record into fields at each occurrence of each character:

```
BEGIN {FS = ",:."}
```

The second method of changing the field separator is to use a command-line argument. The command line method enables you to declare the field separator at the time you invoke **awk**. To show how changing the input field separator affects the output, consider the following record from



the file "now":

```
Now is the time for all good men
```

and the **awk** statement:

```
{print $1,$2}
```

When the input field separator is the default, the result of the **awk** program is:

```
Now is
```

When using the same statement but setting **FS** = "I", **awk** prints the following:

```
Now s the t
```

As the input field separator, 'I' is not printed; however, in its place a blank separates the two output fields. The first field consists of uppercase 'N', lowercase 'o' and 'w', and a space. The second field consists of the 's', a space, the word "the", and the 't' of time.

When you use an input field separator other than the default, the printed output can look confusing, as in the example above. However, you can change the output field separator by assigning a character or string to the variable **OFS**.

To indicate where fields are divided when the output is printed, you can assign a character such as \* to **OFS** as follows:

```
BEGIN {OFS = "*"}
      {FS = "I" ; print $1, $2}
```

This program prints the following:

```
Now *s the t
```

Notice that a semicolon (;) separates two statements on the same line.

The variable **NF** contains the number of fields in the current record. In the following program, **awk** prints the number of fields at the beginning of each output record, telling you the number of elements in the record:

```
{print NF,$0}
```

**awk** can also use the variable **NF** in relational expressions. For example, to print all records with ten or more fields, you could use this program:

```
NF >= 10 {print $0}
```

## Command Line Arguments

As with any COHERENT program or command, you invoke **awk** by typing the lowercase letters **awk**. To process files with **awk**, you must include some additional elements on the command line, called *arguments*.

The complete form for the **awk** command line is:

```
awk [-y] [-Fc] [-f progfile] [prog] [file1] [file2] ...
```

Each argument is described below.

The **-y** option enables you to name *patterns* in lowercase characters, which **awk** then matches to both uppercase and lowercase characters in the input file. This option is similar to its counterpart in the regular expression pattern-matching utility, **egrep**.

The following programs show how the **-y** option works on the file named **the**, which contains the following two lines:

```
The time is right.
Now is the time.
```

Command	Output
<code>awk -y '/the/' the</code>	The time is right. Now is the time.
<code>awk '/the/' the</code>	Now is the time.

The option **-Fc** is the command-line version of

```
FS = "c"
```

which is an assignment like the one described earlier. This option changes the input field separator from the default (white space) to the character *c*. You may include any characters you want **awk** to use as field separators after the **-F** flag.

The **-f progfile** option enables you to use a file *progfile* containing **awk** commands as an **awk** program. The option flag (**-f**) must precede the name of the file to be used as a program.

If you do not use the **-f progfile** option, you must use the *prog* option. This option specifies the **awk** program on the command line. When writing a command-line **awk** program, use an apostrophe before the first statement (*pattern*, *action*, or both); then enter the subsequent lines of the program. After the last statement of the program, type another apostrophe mark followed by the file or files to be processed. Note that COHERENT prompts you to enter more information by displaying the '>' at the beginning of each line until you enter the closing apostrophe and newline character.

The following program is an **awk** command-line program. It prints a heading before **awk** reads the input file **test**, and then prints the entire file with each line preceded by its line number.

```
$ awk 'BEGIN {print "sample output file"}
>      {print NR, $0}' test
```

The *file1 file2 ...* option enables you to process existing files. When you want to process more than one file, separate the file names with white space. If you do not specify a file name in the command line, **awk** takes input from the standard input.

The following program prints the files **test1** and **test2**. Each line is preceded by its record number.

```
$ awk '{print NR, $0}' test1 test2
```

### Printing with awk

Printing is an **awk** *action*. In fact, it is the action most often used, because it is the simplest to use. The following short **awk** program prints its entire input:

```
{print}
```

When you specify **awk** actions, you may include several actions within one set of braces; however, each action must be separated from the others by semicolons (;) or newlines.

### Printing Individual Fields

With **awk**, you can print output fields in a different order from the input fields.

You can print fields in any order you desire. For example, you can print the second and third fields in reverse order:

```
{print $3,$2}
```

When this program processes the input file **now** containing the sample record used above, the printed result is:

```
the is
```

Because the field names are separated by a comma, **awk** inserts an output field separator between the fields when printing them.

If you do not separate field names by commas in the print statement, **awk** concatenates the fields when printing them. For example, the following program prints the second and third fields:

```
{print $2 $3}
```

The result is:

```
isthe
```

### Changing the Output Field and Record Separators

You may change the output field separator by assigning your desired separator to the variable **OFS**. To use the same field separator with the entire input, make the assignment before the first print statement. For example, to make the colon your output field separator, use a statement like this:

```
{OFS=":"; print $2,$3,$4}
```

You will receive this output:

```
is:the:time
```

To change the separator for the first line only, use the statement:

```
NR ==1{ OFS=":";print $2,$3,$4}
```

To change the output record separator from the default newline, assign required separator to the variable **ORS** in the same manner.

### Printing Predefined Variables

As discussed earlier, you can print either or both of the **NF** (number of fields) or **NR** (number of records) predefined variables. To print a predefined variable, simply name it in the print statement. For example, to include the **NF** variable before the other output in the previous example, edit the program to read as follows:

```
{OFS = ":"; print NF,$2,$3,$4}
```

The output resulting from this statement is:

```
4:is:the:time
```

You can specify the **NR** variable in the same way. When you add the name of the variable to the desired place in the list of fields to be printed, **awk** prints the record number in that place in the

output.

### **Redirecting Output**

In addition to printing to the standard output, you also may redirect output to a file or files of your choosing. This ability to direct output to any file enables you to extract information from a given file and construct new documents.

Suppose you have a file named **accounts** with accounting information stored in it. The first column of the file contains payroll information, the second column shows income for the year, and the third column reports accounts payable information. You are to make an income report for the year containing text and tables.

To extract the income information from the **accounts** file and put it into a separate file named **income**, you can use the following **awk** program:

```
{print $2 > "income"}
```

With this program, **awk** creates the file **income** if it does not already exist, and enters the second column of the **accounts** file as the contents of the new file. If a file named **income** already exists, **awk** replaces the current contents of the file with the second column of the **accounts** file.

If you need the first two columns for two separate reports, you can redirect both columns to separate files using one statement.

```
{print $2 > "income"; print $1 > "payroll"}
```

You can specify a maximum of ten files for output.

If text for your report is already contained in the file **report**, you can append the second column of the **accounts** file to the end of your report using this **awk** program:

```
{print $2 >> "report"}
```

Appending enables you to complete your report without retyping a column of numbers that exists in another file.

### **Formatting Output**

When you use **awk** to process a column of text or numbers as in the example above, you may want to specify a consistent format for the output. The statement for formatting a column of numbers follows this *pattern*:

```
{printf "format", expression}
```

where *format* is prescribed by the format control characters and separators defined below. *expression* specifies the fields for **awk** to print.

The following table shows the names and meanings of the most frequently used **awk** format control characters. To be recognized as format control characters by **awk**, these characters must be preceded by the percent sign **%** and a number in the form of *n* or *n.m*.

#### *Format-Control Characters    Meaning*

<b>%nd</b>	Decimal number
<b>%n.mf</b>	Floating-point number
<b>%n.ms</b>	String

When you call the **printf** function through **awk** to format the output, you must specify the output separators you want to use.

<i>Output-Separator Character</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<code>\n</code>	Newline
<code>\t</code>	Tab
<code>\f</code>	Form feed
<code>\r</code>	Carriage return
<code>\"</code>	Quotation mark

For example, if you wish to print a column of numbers with up to nine places to the left of the decimal and two to the right (for a total of 12 places, including the decimal), and you want a new entry for each line, use a format like this:

```
{printf "%12.2f\n", $2}
```

### Piping Output

You can pipe the output of your **awk** program to another process. The pipe connects the standard output of **awk** to the standard input of another process, program, or utility.

For example, you can pipe output to the **mail** utility with the following program, which mails the output to **name**:

```
{print | "mail name"}
```

The pipe operator is the vertical bar character between the print and mail commands in this statement.

### awk Pattern Scanning

The previous section described printing in terms of fields. Fields are generally the best way to select single elements from columnar input files. In addition to names of fields, **awk** can scan records for the following:

- Two special *patterns*: **BEGIN** and **END**
- Regular expressions
- Arithmetic relational expressions
- Boolean combinations of expressions
- Pattern ranges

#### Special Patterns: BEGIN and END

**BEGIN** is a special *pattern* that matches the beginning of the input, before **awk** processes any of the input. As mentioned above, **BEGIN** is the best place to set the field and record separators if you want the same separators for the entire input. **BEGIN** is also a good place to perform the *action* of assigning values to variables when the values are known.

*Actions* that require **awk** to compare input with the variable **NR** may not produce the results you expect from a **BEGIN** *pattern*, because all **BEGIN** processing is finished before **NR=1**. Also, **awk** does not permit field references in **BEGIN** or **END** statements.

**END** is a special *pattern* which matches the end of **awk** input. The **END** *pattern* enables you to request an *action* to occur when all processing is finished. A common use of **END** is printing the value of variables. For example:

```
END {print NR}
```

tells **awk** to print the value of **NR** after processing is finished, giving the total number of records processed. When you reach the **END pattern**, you may not return for further processing.

You may make **awk** into a calculator by using **END** with no *action*. At the end of the input, you may enter any arithmetic equation or **awk** function and have the result automatically printed on the standard output. When you are finished using **awk** as a calculator, type <ctrl-D>.

### Patterns

You can enclose strings of characters in slashes '/' for **awk** to match, as **ed** (the COHERENT text editor) and **egrep** (the COHERENT text pattern matching command) do. For example, take this pattern:

```
/ted/
```

When a statement contains this expression, **awk** prints every record with the string **ted**, whether **ted** occurs as a word or as part of a word. For example:

```
interested
busted
tedious
```

In addition to specific strings, you can scan for classes and types of characters. To do so, enclose the characters within brackets, and place the bracketed characters between the slashes. For example, to specify a range of lowercase letters, enclose the range of letters within brackets:

```
/[a-z]/
```

You can specify ranges of uppercase letters or numerals the same way.

In addition, you can use the following special characters for further flexibility:

[ ]	Class of characters
( )	Grouping subexpressions
	Alternatives among expressions
+	One or more occurrences of the expression
?	Zero or more occurrences of the expression
*	Zero, one, or more occurrences of the expression
.	Any non-newline character

When adding a special character to a pattern, enclose the special character as well as the rest of the pattern within slashes.

To search for a string that contains one of the special characters, you must precede the character with a backslash. For example, if you are looking for the string "today?", use the following *pattern*:

```
/today\?/
```

When you need to find an expression in a particular field, not just anywhere in the record, you can use one of these operators:

~	Contains the data in question
!~	Does not contain the data in question

For example, if you need to find the characters **jam** in the fourth field of the input, you can use the following statement:

## TUTORIALS

```
$4~/[Jj]am/
```

This statement prints all lines where the fourth field contains **Jam** or **jam**. The statement also prints lines where the fourth field contains words like **James**, **jammed**, and **pajamas**. To prevent the **awk** program from selecting lines with characters other than separators on either side of the required expression, use the following special characters:

```
^      Beginning of the record or field
$      End of the record or field
```

With these characters, you can be still more specific about which field or record you want printed. For example, to allow **James** to be printed, but not **pajamas**, use the following statement:

```
$4~/^[Jj]am/
```

To allow only **Jam** or **jam**, use this statement:

```
$4~/^[Jj]am$/
```

## Arithmetic Relational Expressions

An **awk** pattern may consist of relational expressions using the following operators:

```
<      Less than
<=     Less than or equal to
=      Equivalent
!=     Not equal
>=     Greater than or equal to
>      Greater than
```

With these operators, you can select fields according to their relation to one another. For example, if you want to print the first field only when it does not equal the second field, use this statement:

```
$1 != $2 {print $1}
```

You also can establish relationships among records. If you want to print no more than the first ten records, use the following statement:

```
NR <= 10
```

Because this example specifies no action, the statement prints all the records whose record number is ten or less.

Relational tests default to string comparison if either operand is nonnumeric. Thus, if one operand is numeric and the other is a string, **awk** makes a string comparison. The following example shows how **awk** compares one field to part of the alphabet:

```
$1 <= "C"
```

This statement selects all lines beginning with an ASCII value less than or equal to that of the letter 'C' (octal 103).

When you compare fields that have numeric values to one another, **awk** performs a numeric comparison. Consider the comparison in this example:

```
$2 < $1 + 100 {print $2}
```

This statement causes field 2 to be printed only when the value of field 2 does not exceed the value of field 1 by 100. If field 2 is alphabetic, it always matches in this comparison because strings

evaluate to 0 in numeric comparisons.

### Boolean Combinations of Expressions

**awk** tests logical combinations of expressions in its pattern-scanning process. Use the following operators for combining expressions:

<b>  </b>	Boolean OR
<b>&amp;&amp;</b>	Boolean AND
<b>!</b>	Boolean NOT

The following example tests for records that begin field 1 with a character that is less than **u**, greater than or equal to **t**, and begin field 1 with a string other than **the**.

```
$1 < "u" && $1 >= "t" && $1 != "the"
```

The effect of this *pattern* is to select records that have a **t** as the first character in field 1 but do not begin field 1 with the letters **the**.

### Pattern Ranges

**awk** may cause an *action* to be performed on all records between two specified *patterns*. For example, to print all records between the *patterns* **April 10** and **April 19** inclusive, enclose the strings in slashes and separate them with a comma; then indicate the **print** action, as follows:

```
/April 10/,/April 19/ {print}
```

You also may specify a range of record numbers using a statement such as this:

```
NR == 5, NR == 17 {print}
```

This statement specifies that records 5 through 17 of the input are to be printed.

## Specifying awk Actions

This section describes **awk** *actions* other than printing *actions*. In addition to printing, **awk** is capable of:

- Performing functions
- Assigning variables
- Using fields as variables
- Concatenating strings
- Defining arrays
- Using control statements

## Functions

**awk** includes functions that enable you to perform specific calculations with input information. You may assign these functions to any variable and use them in patterns. The following list shows the functions and their definitions; an argument can be any expression.

**length** Return the length of the current record.

**length(argument)**  
Return the length of *argument*.



**sqrt**(*argument*)  
Return the square root of *argument*.

**exp**(*argument*)  
Return *e* to the power of *argument*.

**log**(*argument*)  
Return the natural logarithm of *argument*.

**int**(*argument*)  
Return the integer part of *argument*.

**abs**(*argument*)  
Return the absolute value of *argument*.

**substr**(*str*,*beg*,*len*)  
Return the substring of *str* that is *len* characters long beginning at position *beg*. When **substr** occurs in a statement, **awk** scans *str* for the position *beg* within the string. When **awk** finds *beg*, it prints a substring *len* characters long starting at *beg*. If *len* is not included in the argument, the substring includes everything from *beg* to the end of the record.

**index**(*s1*,*s2*)  
Return the position of *s2* within *s1*, or zero if *s2* does not occur in *s1*.

**sprintf**(*f*,*e1*,*e2*)  
Return strings *e1* and *e2* in the **printf** format *f*

**split**(*str*,*array*,*fs*)  
Divide *str* into fields associated with *array* (an array is a collection of fields listed under a single name) that are separated by *fs* or the default field separator.

The **sprintf** function lets you format expressions *e1* and *e2* according to format specification *f*. The following example demonstrates the operation of the **sprintf** function.

```
> awk 'x = sprintf("%7.2s",$1)
> {print $1}
> END {print x}'
```

When you run this sample program, **awk** accepts input data from the keyboard of the terminal. The first line of the program begins the **awk** program and sets variable *x* so that it contains five blank spaces and the first two characters of the first input field. The second line causes **awk** to print the first field as it was received. The third line ends the program by printing *x*, the formatted version of the first input field.

If you enter the word **chicago** as the first input field for this program, **awk** prints:

```
chicago
ch
```

The **split** function divides fields into subfields, breaking *str* into elements of *array* separated by *fs*, or white space when *fs* is not specified. In the following example, **awk** splits the first field of the record into subfields. If the record has a single colon in the first field, **awk** splits the field into two subfields. These subfields become the first and second fields of the array named **time**:

```
{split ($1,time,":")}
```

At this point, you may manipulate the information stored in the array **time** or simply print the subfields.

### Assignment of Variables

In addition to the intrinsic variables, such as **NR** (which contains the number of the current input record) and **FILENAME** (which contains the name of the current file), you may assign other variables as described below.

Variables in **awk** may be string or numeric variables, depending on the context. By default, variables are set to the null string (numeric value zero) on start-up of the **awk** program. To set the variable **x** to the numeric value one, you can use the following assignment statement:

```
x = 1
```

To set **x** to the string **ted**, use the following statement:

```
x = "ted"
```

When the context demands it, **awk** converts strings to numbers or numbers to strings. For example, the statement

```
x = "3"
```

assigns to **x** the string **3**. When an expression contains an arithmetic operator such as the **'-'**, **awk** interprets the expression as numeric. (Alphabetic strings evaluate to zero.) Therefore,

```
x = "3" - "1"
```

assigns the value two to variable **x**.

When the operator is included within the quotation marks, **awk** treats the operator as a character in the string. In the following example

```
x = "3 -1"
```

assigns the string

```
"3 - 1"
```

to variable **x**.

You also can perform numeric calculations on fields. For example, you can calculate the sum of the fourth field in the following manner:

```
{sum += $4}
END {print sum}
```

The following table includes all the available operators for **awk**:

+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
/	Division
%	Modulus
++	Increment
--	Decrement
+=	Add and assign value
-=	Subtract and assign value
*=	Multiply and assign value
/=	Divide and assign value
%=	Divide modulo and assign value

You may use any of these operators in **awk** expressions.

### Field Variables

In **awk**, fields may receive assignments, be used in arithmetic, and be manipulated in string operations. The following **awk** statement shows some of the available uses of fields as variables.

```
{print $i, $(i+1), $(i+n)}
```

**awk** permits you to use numeric expressions to refer to fields. Here, print fields *i*, *i+1*, and *i+n*.

### String Concatenation

As mentioned earlier, you can concatenate strings by omitting comma separators from printing actions. For example, the following print statement concatenates the first two fields by inserting a new connecting string:

```
{print $1 " telephones " $2}
```

If \$1 contains "Tom" and \$2 contains "John", this statement prints:

```
Tom telephones John
```

### Arrays

Under **awk**, an array is a collection of values that is labeled with the name of the array. Each element has at least one named **index**. The array is implicitly declared because **awk** creates the array when you name it. Also, you can name the individual indices with any legal string or numeric value.

Because the indices for any array may have any value, the ordering of array elements is arbitrary. However, when you use numeric index names exclusively, **awk** follows an ascending numeric sequence.

You should specify the array element using an identifier followed by the array index, an arbitrary expression enclosed in brackets ([]). For example, consider an array called **surname**. This example uses array indices named **tom**, **van**, and **gordon**. The following action assigns a value to each of these indices:

```
BEGIN {surname ["tom"] = "jones"
surname ["van"] = "johnson"
surname ["gordon"] = "smith"}
```

You can print the contents of the array by naming the array in a **print** statement. **awk** also enables you to print the name of the index by associating another variable with the index, using a special form of the **for** statement. This form of **for** is:

```
for (index in array)
```

To retrieve the index names of the array **surname**, you may use the following statement:

```
END {for (person in surname)
print person, surname[person]}
```

This statement yields the following output:

```
tom jones
van johnson
gordon smith
```

In addition to being a generic term for the indices in the array **surname**, **awk** creates an array of names called **person**, to which you can make further associations as needed.

To store the number of occurrences of a pattern, you may use the associative array capabilities of **awk**. For example, if you want to determine the number of occurrences of **mark** and **test**, and print the number next to its respective word, you can use the following program:

```
/[Mm]ark/ {n["mark"]++}
/[Tt]est/ {n["test"]++}
END      {for (word in n)
          print word, n[word]}
```

With each occurrence of **Mark** or **mark**, **awk** increments the variable **n[mark]**. (**awk** automatically initializes **n[mark]** and **n[test]** to zero at the start of execution.) After **awk** processes the last line of the input, the program prints each word and the number of occurrences of that word as stored in **n[word]**.

### Control Statements

**awk** has seven defined control statements. The following section explains the statements and gives examples of their use.

#### *if (condition) else*

If the *condition* within the parentheses is true, the statement following the **if** is executed. If there is a clear alternative, the **else** precedes the action to be performed when the condition is false. The **else** is optional. If **awk** does not perform the *action* of the **if** statement and there is no **else** statement, **awk** continues with the next statement. For example:

```
{
  if (NR % 2 == 1)
    print "odd-numbered record"
  else
    print "even-numbered record"
}
```

### **while (condition)**

While *condition* remains true, the statement following **while** is executed. For example:

```
{
    i = 1
    while (i <= NF){
        print $i
        i++
    }
}
```

### **for**

The **for** statement lets you execute actions a specified number of times. This statement may contain an initialization portion, a Boolean test, and an incremental counter. The initialization portion sets the initial value of the count variable, which **awk** changes each time it performs the action. The Boolean test defines the conditions under which **awk** should continue the action. The incremental counter specifies how **awk** is to alter the count variable each time it performs the action. For example:

```
{
  for (i = 1; i <= NF; i++)
    print $i
}
```

### **break**

The **break** statement immediately interrupts a **while** or **for** execution. For example:

```
{
  for (i in numbers){
    if (numbers [i] == "stop")
      break
    print i, numbers [i]
  }
}
```

### **continue**

The **continue** statement immediately begins the next iteration of the **while** or **for** statement. For example:

```
$1~ /Smith/ {
    for (i = 2; i <= NF; i++){
        if ($i < 100)
            continue
        sum += $i
    }
}
```

### **next**

The **next** statement causes processing to skip to the next record for comparison with all the *patterns*, beginning with the first, and in order. For example:

```
NR % 2 == 1{
    print "odd-numbered record"
    next
}
{
    print "even-numbered record"
}
```

### **exit**

The **exit** statement forces the **awk** program to skip any remaining input and to execute the *actions* at the **END** patterns. For example:

```
sum >= 1000 {exit}
            {sum += $4}
END        {print NR, sum}
```

## **For More Information**

The Lexicon's article on **awk** gives a quick reference of its features and options.

---

# Introduction to **lex**, the Lexical Analyzer

---

Many computer applications involve reading text strings. This is especially true for man-machine communication.

For some forms of textual input, a programmer can design a program by hand to process it. However, it is much easier to implement such programs when you use a software tool that will automatically construct a program to process the data. The COHERENT command **lex** is such a tool.

**lex** accepts expressions that describe the text input, and generates a program to process it. In computer-ese, **lex** is a "lexical scanner program generator".

This document tells you how to use **lex**. It presents many simple examples to illustrate how to use its features and how to use the generated program with other tools provided with COHERENT, notably the parser generator **yacc**.

Readers of this document are presumed to be familiar with the C programming language and the use of the COHERENT system. Related documents include *Using the COHERENT System* and the tutorial to **yacc**, the COHERENT parser generator.

---

## How To Use **lex**

---

**lex** generates lexical scanners for compilers, to do statistical analysis of text, and to generate filters for many diverse tasks. This section gives examples of how to use **lex**. Later sections discuss the concepts used in these examples in detail.

### Translating Strings

The first example tells **lex** to match an input string and replace it with a different string; strings not recognized by the program are output unchanged. Enter the following program into the file **rmv.lex**.

```
%%
removeable    printf ("executable");
```

This creates the **lex** specification. Use the following command line to pass this specification through **lex**:

```
lex rmv.lex
```

This produces a C program named **lex.yy.c**, which you can compile by typing:

```
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o rmv
```

The executable program **rmv** is now ready to use. To illustrate its use, type:

```
rmv
Is this file removeable?
<ctrl-D>
```

**rmv** replies:

```
Is this file executable?
```

Note that the generated program reads from standard input and writes to standard output.

### ***Remove Blanks From Input***

The next example deletes all blanks and tabs from the input. Type the following **lex** program into file **nosp.lex**:

```
%%  
[ \t]+ ;
```

Generate and compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex nosp.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o nosp
```

To invoke the program, type **nosp**. Now, test it by typing the following:

```
This may be hard to read after processing.  
<ctrl-D>
```

**nosp** outputs:

```
Thismaybehardtoreadafterprocessing.
```

### ***Trimming Blanks***

The previous example can be rewritten to remove strings of blanks or tabs and replace them with one space. Type the following into file **onesp.lex**:

```
%%  
[ \t]+ printf (" ");
```

Generate and compile this with the following commands:

```
lex onesp.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o onesp
```

Invoke your new program with the command **onesp**. Now, type the following text to test the program:

```
This should be easier to read.  
<ctrl-D>
```

The words in this input are separated by two spaces. **onesp** prints the following:

```
This should be easier to read.
```

## ***lex Specification Form***

This section discusses the form of the **lex** specification.

### ***Simple Form***

The examples shown above use the simplest form of a **lex** program. Consider the text of the example **rmv.lex**:

```
%%  
removeable    printf ("removable");
```



The symbol

```
%%
```

divides sections of the **lex** specification. Not all specifications need to be present, but at least one **%%** must appear in a **lex** program.

This symbol separates **lex** *definitions* from *rules*. With nothing before the **%%**, there are no definitions. Rules follow the **%%**. No definitions are needed in the simplest of **lex** specifications.

### Rules in lex

The format of a **lex** rule is simple. Every rule has two parts. Refer to the program **rmv**:

```
removeable    printf ("removable");
```

The first part begins at the beginning of the line and ends with a space or tab. In the example rule, the first part is

```
removeable
```

This part is called the *pattern*.

The second part follows the space or tab, and is called the *action*. The action in this example is:

```
printf ("removable");
```

When the pattern specified by the rule is found in the input, the corresponding action is performed. Thus, this rule detects every appearance of *removeable* and outputs the correct spelling.

A **lex** program tries each rule's pattern in turn, and performs the associated action if and only if the pattern matches. Actions often modify the input that matched the pattern; they may also do nothing for certain patterns. To illustrate this, type the following specification into file **erase.lex**:

```
%%
erase ;
```

Then compile the generated program with the following commands:

```
lex erase.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o erase
```

This program copies all its input to its output, except for any appearance of the string **erase**. Invoke the program by typing **erase**, and then test it by typing:

```
Have you erased the blackboard?
<ctrl-D>
```

**erase** then prints:

```
Have you d the blackboard?
```

If the input contains patterns that do not match any of the patterns in the suite of rules you typed into **lex**, they are simply output unchanged. Usually, you will want to write a rule to cover every case.

### Statements in *lex*

As noted earlier, **lex** is a program generator. It reads the specifications that you prepare for it, and writes a C program that is used with the **lex** library. Many of the actions in the rules you specify, such as

```
printf ("removable");
```

are themselves C statements. These statements are included in the resulting program, along with other statements that **lex** provides so the program can run.

You can include other statements, should the program need them, by placing them in appropriate places. The following program, called **count.lex**, shows how this is done. It counts the number of *tokens*, or strings of non-blank characters. Type the following into the file **count.lex**

```
int count;

%%
[^\t\n]+    count++;
[ \t\n]+    ;
%%
yywrap ()
{
    printf ("Number of tokens:%d\n", count);
    return (1);
}
```

Statements other than rule actions appear in two places in the program. The first such statement is in the definition section, which precedes the rule section delimiter **%%**:

```
int count;
```

This C statement declares the variable **count** to be an integer variable. Notice that it is preceded by a tab; a tab or a space indicates to **lex** that an input line is not a rule.

The second kind of non-rule statement follows the second **%%**, which marks the end of the rules section. **lex** regards anything that follows the second delimiter as being source statements.

The above example includes a function named **yywrap**. **lex** programs always call this function at the end of processing. The above program fills this function with code that prints the number of tokens in the text.

Compile the program by typing the following commands:

```
lex count.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o count
```

Run the program by typing:

```
count <count.lex
```

This counts the tokens in the **count.lex** file itself. **count** will print the following:

```
Number of tokens:21
```

If you do not include a routine named **yywrap**, **lex** will use a standard one.

### Groups of Statements

In previous examples, the C statement in the action part of the rule is a single statement. In many **lex** applications, however, you will need to use more than one statement per rule.

To do so, enclose the statements in the braces {}. The following example illustrates grouping. This **lex** specification generates a program to add numbers found in the input and print the total whenever it reads asterisk \*. Type the following program into **nsum.lex**:

```
int number, sum;

%%
[0-9]+ {
    sscanf (yytext, "%d", &number);
    sum += number;
    printf ("%s", yytext);
}
"*" {
    printf ("%s", yytext);
    printf ("%d", sum);
    sum = 0;
}
```

To run the generated **nsum** program, enter a sample data file by typing

```
cat >numbers
one two three
1 2 3 4 * 1 2 3 5 *
*
done
<ctrl-D>
```

This builds a sample data file. Run the program by typing:

```
nsum <numbers
```

**nsum** will print:

```
one two three
1 2 3 4 *10 1 2 3 5 *11
*0
done
```

The statements that follow the definitions

```
[0-9]+
```

and

```
*
```

are enclosed in braces, because each action triggers several statements. Consider the first of these:

```
[0-9]+ {
    sscanf (yytext, "%d", &number);
    sum += number;
    printf ("%s", yytext);
}
```

The pattern looks for strings of digits. **sscanf** converts each such string into a number and saves it in the variable **number**. Now, consider the second rule:

```
"*" {
    printf ("%s", yytext);
    printf ("%d", sum);
    sum = 0;
}
```

This specifies that upon detection of **\*** in the input, the program is to print the sum of the numbers and then reset the counter to zero. In both of these rules, the statement

```
printf ("%s", yytext);
```

prints the number or **\*** so that the output shows the input as well as the total. **lex** defines the variable **yytext**. It always contains the string that matches the rule.

If the input is neither a number or an asterisk, no rule specifically matches it. Therefore, the program echoes it unchanged to the standard output.

### Using the Same Action

To make it easier for you to write actions, **lex** allows you to *abbreviate* rules; that is, you have to write only once any action that is performed by several rules. To abbreviate rules represented symbolically by

```
p1    action1
p2    action1
```

use the vertical bar operator:

```
p1    |
p2    action1
```

The vertical bar means "use the action from the rule that follows."

## Patterns

The first part of each rule in the **lex** rules section is a pattern that may match parts of the input. This section describes how to construct these patterns, sometimes called *regular expressions*. If you are familiar with **ed** and how its patterns work, this will be familiar to you.

### Simple Patterns

The simplest kind of pattern is a string of characters that matches itself. A previous section presented an illustration of this:

```
%%
removeable    printf ("executable");
```

This regular expression matches all occurrences of *removeable* that appear in the input text.

## TUTORIALS

Certain characters have special meaning to **lex** patterns. To match a special character literally, you must *quote* it. For example, **\*** has special meaning. To match the asterisk literally (that is to match any **\*\***s that appear in the input), surround it with quotation marks:

```
"*"
```

Another way to quote characters is to precede it with the backslash character **\**.

```
\*
```

The following characters each have special meaning and must be quoted to be matched as text characters:

```
" \ ( ) < > { } % * + ? [ ] - ^ / $ . |
```

However, within **"**, the **\** still has its meaning, so to match the string **\\*** use the regular expression:

```
"\\*"
```

Also, to match a quote character, use:

```
\"
```

## Classes of Characters

The power of patterns comes from special characters that match more than one character. The following examines each special character in detail.

The *period* or *dot* matches any character except newline. The following regular expression matches any pair of characters that begins with **J**:

```
J.
```

The following example prints in square brackets any sequence of five characters that ends with a blank. Type the following into the file **five.lex**:

```
%%
....." "      printf("[%s]", yytext);
```

Compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex five.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o five
```

Invoke it by typing **five**, and test it with the following text:

```
how well does this work?
no match
<ctrl-D>
```

The result is

```
how[ well ]does[ this ]work?
no match
```

The second line of the input does not have any matches. Because the **dot** pattern character does not match the end-of-line character, all five characters that precede the blank must be on the same line.

Another way to match many characters, but selectively, is with the *character class* operation. Enclose in square brackets the set of characters to be matched. Any of the characters listed there will match one character of the input. For example,

```
[0123456789]
```

matches any decimal digit in the input. Characters may be in any order within the brackets. Thus

```
[0246813579]
```

is equivalent to the example above.

To simplify specifying for character classes, you can specify ranges of characters. The beginning and end of the range is separated by a hyphen. To match all decimal digits as above, use:

```
[0-9]
```

To match all alphabetic characters, type:

```
[a-zA-Z]
```

The special character `^`, when used after the opening bracket `[`, tells **lex** to match any character *except* those enclosed. The following example finds all two-digit numbers not followed by a period or alphabetic character and prints them surrounded by `{` and `}`. Type the following into file **twodig.lex**:

```
%%  
[0-9][0-9][^\.a-zA-Z]      printf ("%s", yytext);
```

Process and compile the program by typing the following commands:

```
lex twodig.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o twodig
```

Invoke the program by typing **twodig**, and test it by entering the following text:

```
12. 12 12a 1 12 b  
<ctrl-D>
```

**twodig** prints the following in reply:

```
12. {12 }12a 1 {12 }b
```

### ***Repetition***

In the patterns shown so far, each character matches only one character at a time. However, many interesting input patterns involve repetition of characters.

To match one or more instances of a character, follow it with the pattern operator `+`. Consider the summation example in **nsum.lex**, shown earlier, which recognized strings of input numbers and added them to a total:

```
[0-9]+ {  
    sscanf (yytext, "%d", &number);  
    sum += number;  
    printf ("%s", yytext);  
}
```

The pattern

```
[0-9] +
```

matches a string of one or more digits.

The operator `*` will match *zero* or more characters of a specified type. The following example deletes all characters between square brackets. Type it into file **star.lex**:

```
%%  
\[.*\] printf ("[]");
```

Type the following commands to generate and compile the program:

```
lex star.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o star
```

Invoke the program by typing **star**, and test it by typing the following text:

```
[This should disappear]  
[what happens with two] of them [on a line?]  
<ctrl-D>
```

A backslash precedes each bracket, because the bracket has a special meaning in regular expressions. The output from this example is:

```
[]  
[]
```

In looking at the example's input, you might have expected the output to be:

```
[]  
[] of them []
```

**lex** does not produce the latter output because it generates recognizers that find the longest match if several matches are possible. Therefore, **star** matched the first `[`, then all characters up to and including the second `]`. When you write a pattern that matches many characters, you should bear this possibility in mind.

To change the program to match the first `]`, rewrite it as follows:

```
%%  
\[([^\\])*\\] printf ("[]");
```

The regular expression now matches a string of all characters except a `]`, when that string is enclosed in square brackets.

The `?` character signals that the previous character or regular expression is optional. In other words, `?` signals zero or one instance of a character or regular expression.

To see how this would be used in a program, consider a text processor that regards a word as being a strings of alphabetic characters that may or may not be followed by a period. The following example does this, and encloses the recognized words in parentheses. Enter it into file **word.lex**:

```
%%  
[a-zA-Z]+\.? printf("(%s)", yytext);
```

Generate and compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex word.lex  
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o word
```

Invoke the program by typing **word**, and test it the program with the following text:

```
These are words.  
Question mark not included?  
<ctrl-D>
```

The result is

```
(These) (are) (words.)  
(Question) (mark) (not) (included)?
```

The question mark, like the **\*** and **+** operators, can also follow another specification of a pattern. If you wanted to be able to end a sentence with a character other than a period, the following code will do the job for you:

```
[a-zA-Z]+[.?! , ]?
```

The characters

```
.?! ,
```

are optional.

The **+** and **\*** operators may match many characters. If you wish to match a specific number of characters or patterns, follow the patterns with the repetition within braces **{** and **}**. For example

```
[0-9]{3}
```

matches a string of exactly three digits.

You can also specify a range of counts. To match from seven to nine occurrences of lower-case alphabetic characters, use:

```
[a-z]{7,9}
```

### **Choices and Grouping**

To indicate alternate choices of characters or regular expressions, separate them in the regular expression with a vertical bar operator **|**. For example, if you wish to match either three decimal digits or the character **a**, use:

```
[0-9]{3}|a
```

Parentheses help to group the parts of the pattern that are separated by the vertical bar:

```
(abc)|(def)
```

This pattern will match either the string **abc** or the string **def**.

### **Matching Non-Graphic Characters**

Non-special, graphic characters in patterns match themselves. Most non-graphic characters, such as space, tab, and control characters, cannot be matched directly. **lex** provides special sequences to match control characters. The following example removes tabs and blanks from the beginning and end of input lines. Type it into file **deblank.lex**:

```
%%  
[ \t]+\n    printf ("\n");  
\n[ \t]+    printf ("\n");
```



Generate and compile the program with the following commands:

```
lex deblank.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o deblank
```

Invoke the program by typing **deblank**, and test it by typing the following input:

```
begins with no space or tab
    begins with tab
        begins with three spaces
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be

```
begins with no space or tab
begins with tab
begins with three spaces
```

The special regular expression `\t` represents *tab*, and `\n` represents *newline*.

To match the backspace character, use `\b`. Form feed is matched by `\f`. To match an arbitrary character with a known octal value, use three octal digits after the backslash; for example,

```
\007
```

## More Patterns

This section discusses more advanced capabilities of patterns.

### Line Context

Like **ed**, **lex** patterns can include characters that represent the beginning and end of line. To match a line that contains exactly five alphabetic characters, type:

```
^[a-zA-Z]{5}$
```

The character `^` matches the beginning of the line, and `$` matches the end of the line.

### Context Matching

A slash (virgule) `/` shows that a following context is necessary to match a string. For example, the following program matches the string **match** only if it is immediately followed by the string **ing**. Type it into file **match.lex**:

```
%%
match/ing    printf ("%s", yytext);
```

To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex match.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o match
```

To invoke the program, type **match**; and test it by typing the following input:

```
Will this match?
This is a matching test.
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be

```
Will this match?
This is a {match}ing test.
```

Notice that the string before the slash is matched. The program does not match the part that follows the slash, even though the string must be there for the first part to be matched. Thus, the regular expression that follows the slash may also be matched on its own. To see how this works, type the following into the file **match2.lex**:

```
%%
match/ing      printf ("%s", yytext);
ing            printf ("ed");
```

To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex match2.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o match2
```

To invoke the program, type **match2**; then test it by typing the following input:

```
Will this match?
This is a matching test.
You must now sing for your supper.
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be

```
Will this match?
This is a {match}ed test.
You must now sed for your supper.
```

The context-string that follows the / may be a regular expression. The following example matches the whole-number portion of a decimal fraction. Type it into the file **wholept.lex**:

```
%%
"-"?[0-9]+/"."[0-9]+      printf ("%s", yytext);
```

To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex wholept.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o wholept
```

Invoke the program by typing **wholept**; then type the following to test it:

```
123 12345 1234.567
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be:

```
123 12345 (1234).567
```

As you can see, the part of the regular expression

```
"-"? 
```

matches an optional leading minus sign. Then

```
[0-9]+
```

matches a string of at least one decimal digit. Then, the following context must match the regular

expression

```
"." [0-9] +
```

which matches the fractional part of the number. When it finds a number that matches, it prints the number's whole part enclosed in parentheses.

### Macro Abbreviations

**lex** also provides a macro facility that can substantially simplify the writing of complex regular expressions.

A *macro* is a named body of text. A macro processor simply replaces the name of the macro with the text of the macro.

To illustrate, type following example into file **float.lex**. It recognizes integer and floating point constants according to the C format:

```
d [0-9] +
e [Ee][+-]?[0-9] +
%%
{d} \.      |
{d} \. {d}  |
\. {d}      |
{d} \. {e}  |
\. {d} {e}  |
{d} \. {d} {e} |
{d} {e}      | printf ("F:[%s]", yytext);
```

**lex** replaces the macro name **e** with the code that matches a string of digits at least one digit long. It replaces the macro name **d** with code that matches the number's exponent. These two are invoked in the manner of

```
{d}
```

within a pattern. To compile the program, type the following commands:

```
lex float.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o float
```

Invoke the program by typing **float**, and then test it by typing the following text:

```
1 1. 1.2 1.e4 1e4
.1e4 e4 .1 . 0 1.2e3
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be:

```
1 F:[1.] F:[1.2] F:[1.e4] F:[1e4]
F:[.1e4] e4 F:[.1] . 0 F:[1.2e3]
```

### Context: Start Rules

Many tasks in lexical processing require the program to be aware of a token's context. **lex** lets you make processing conditional upon previously processed input. This is done by using **start conditions**.

Start conditions are named in the definitions section as follows:

```
%S name1 name2
```

where **name1** and **name2** are names of start conditions. These start conditions are then used by prefixing a pattern with the start condition's name enclosed in angle brackets. For example:

```
<name1>
```

For example, you can use one start condition to control the scanning of comments in a Pascal-like language. The start condition is set by the **lex** statement **BEGIN** when the beginning bracket of the comment is found. The comment is scanned for strings that begin with **\$** to signal compiler operation. To see how this works, type the following into the file **comment.lex**:

```
%S CMNT
%%
<CMNT>\$[ler]printf ("Option is %s.\n", yytext);
<CMNT>[^\\} ] ;
<CMNT>\}          BEGIN 0;
\{                BEGIN CMNT;
```

To compile, use the following commands:

```
lex comment.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o comment
```

Now, invoke the program by typing **comment**; and test it by typing the following input:

```
{This is a comment}
{This comment has options $l $e $r}
program
information
<ctrl-D>
```

The result will be:

```
Option is $l.
Option is $e.
Option is $r.

program
information
```

The context start condition is named following **BEGIN** in the action part of the rule. To return to the normal condition, use **0** as the context name.

### **Separate Contexts**

If you wish to perform context-dependent processing that is more complex than that shown in the example above, you will find it convenient to use separate contexts.

The names of the contexts are defined in the definitions sections, after the definitions of any start conditions: For example:

```
%C name name ...
```

The **lex** function **yyswitch** switches to a new context.

The body of the context's rules is preceded in the rules section by:

```
%C name
```

To see how this works, type the following into file **pre.lex**. It is part of a program that recognizes the preprocessor statements in a C program:

```
%C PRE
%%
^#      yyswitch (PRE);
[^\n]+  printf ("[%s]", yytext);
%C PRE
include.+ |
define.+  {
            printf("{%s}", yytext);
            yyswitch(0);
        }
.+       {
            printf ("{??%s}", yytext);
            yyswitch (0);
        }
```

A # in column 1 signals the beginning of a preprocessor statement. Upon recognizing this condition, this program uses **yyswitch** to activate the context **PRE**.

Within this separate context, individual rules recognize different preprocessor statements; this example includes only two. Each of the rules prints the preprocessor line enclosed in braces {}. In addition, the rules switch back to the original (and unnamed) context by the statement

```
yyswitch (0);
```

To compile and test this program, use the following commands:

```
lex pre.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o pre
pre <lex.yy.c
```

This example uses the function **yyswitch** to return to the original context at the end of each rule in the secondary context. Some applications require a return to the context that was previously in force. To assist in this, **yyswitch** returns the value of the previous context.

To modify the example to switch to the previous context, add a statement to the definitions section to declare a variable to hold the previous context:

```
int prev;
```

Then, when switching, save the current context:

```
prev = yyswitch (NEW);
```

To switch back, use:

```
yyswitch (prev);
```

To summarize, you can specify a match at the beginning and end of input lines. You may need a following context for a match. Macros provide a means of abbreviating elements of patterns. **lex** can qualify some patterns based on a start context, or process entirely separate contexts.

### More About Writing Actions

This section discusses predefined **lex** actions and how to use them. It also presents other **lex** routines that are useful in writing actions.

#### ECHO

Many **lex** actions simply output the matched pattern:

```
[0-9]+ printf ("%s", yytext);
```

This form has been used in the examples because many examples also output additional material, such as enclosing braces, to illustrate the matched token.

**lex** provides a simpler way to echo the exact token matched:

```
[0-9]+      ECHO;
```

The following example echoes all strings of digits twice, and everything else once. Type it into file **double.lex**:

```
%%
[0-9]+      {ECHO; ECHO;}
[^0-9]+     ECHO;
```

To compile the program, use the commands:

```
lex double.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o double
```

To invoke the program, type **double**; and to test it, type the following text:

```
abcdef 123 1234
<ctrl-D>
```

**double** will reply:

```
abcdef 123123 12341234
```

#### Processing Overlapping Strings

The **lex** processing illustrated to this point has been restricted to programs whose rules recognize distinct strings. That is, once any character of a string is matched by a regular expression, it cannot be matched by another.

Some applications require that strings be matched by more than one rule; such multiply-matched strings are called *overlapping strings*. The **lex** action word **REJECT** provides this capability. When **REJECT** appears in a rule, other rules can also match the string. Remember, however, that **lex** programs give precedence to the longest string that matches a regular expression.

The following example determines the number of letter pairs, or *digrams*, in its input. The input is presumed to be lower-case letters. Enter the following into **digram.lex**:

```

        int digram [128] [128];
%%
[a-z][a-z]    {
                digram [yytext [0]] [yytext [1]]++;
                REJECT;
            }
.             ;
\n            ;
%%
yywrap ()
{
    int i1, i2;
    for (i1 = 'a'; i1 <= 'z'; i1++)
        for (i2 = 'a'; i2 <= 'z'; i2++)
            if (digram [i1] [i2] != 0)
                printf ("%d\t%c%c\n",
                        digram [i1] [i2], i1, i2);
}

```

To compile the program, type the commands:

```

lex digram.lex
cc lex.yy.c -ll -o digram

```

To invoke the program, type **digram**; and test it with the following text:

```

this is a test of digrams.
<ctrl-D>

```

The result will be:

```

1      am
1      di
1      es
1      gr
1      hi
1      ig
2      is
1      ms
1      of
1      ra
1      st
1      te
1      th

```

## yylex

**lex** places the actions you provide for the rules in your **lex** program into a C routine named **yylex**.

If you add variable declarations in the definitions section before the first **%%**, **yylex** can access them, as in the example **digram.lex**, shown above. You can also declare variables that are local to **yylex**, if you place the declarations after the rules section delimiter and before the first rule. A tab or space must precede the declaration.

The following program is a different version of **digram.lex**, called **digram2.lex**; it uses such a declaration.

```
        int digram [128] [128];
%%
        int t0, t1;
[a-z][a-z] {
            t0 = yytext [0];
            t1 = yytext [1];
            digram [t0] [t1]++;
            REJECT;
        }
%%
yywrap ()
{
    int i1, i2;
    for (i1 = 'a'; i1 <= 'z'; i1++)
        for (i2 = 'a'; i2 <= 'z'; i2++)
            if (digram [i1] [i2] != 0)
                printf ("%d\t%c%c\n",
                        digram [i1] [i2], i1, i2);
}
```

### Header Section

You can insert additional code at the beginning of the generated program by including such code in the definitions section. An earlier example, **count.lex**, demonstrated how to do this:

```
        int count;
%%
[^\t\n]+      count++;
[\t\n]+      ;
%%
yywrap ()
{
    printf ("Number of tokens:%d \n ", count);
    return (1);
}
```

A tab or space character must precede the code you include.

If you wish to insert **include** or any other C preprocessor statement at the beginning of the program, however, a different technique must be used. This stems from the fact that the preprocessor statements must begin at the beginning of the line, and the blank or tab precludes this.

The alternative method to add code to the beginning is as follows:

```
%{
... code ...
%}
```

where the % symbols are at the beginning of the line.



## Additional Routines

If your version of **yywrap** or any of the rules that you write need other routines, you can include code for them after a second **%%**. (This was where **yywrap** was shown in **digram.lex**.) If you wish to provide your own version of **input** or **output**, you must define it there.

## Using lex With yacc

Although **lex** can handle many applications by itself, it is often used with the parser-generator **yacc**. For example, programming-language compilers often have parts generated by both **lex** and **yacc**.

Like **lex**, **yacc** is a program generator. Its programs can recognize input that is structured according to a grammar fed to the **yacc** program generator. In most instances, **yacc**-generated programs require *tokens* as input, instead of individual characters. In the context of a programming language, a token is a variable name or a special character (such as an operator). **lex** is often used with **yacc** because **lex** is especially well suited for partitioning text input into tokens.

A **yacc**-generated program expects a token number as input from the routine **yylex**. **yacc** assigns a unique number, or constant definition, to each unique type of token, and expects **yylex** to return these numbers as input.

For your **lex** program to access these predefined constant definitions for token types, you must include the generated **lex** source in the **yacc** specification.

The following examples process very simple input, to illustrate how to assemble **lex**- and **yacc**-generated programs. To begin, type the following into the file **yacclex.yy**:

```
%token beginning midtok ending
%start simplistic
%%
simplistic : beginning middle ending
            {printf ("recognized"); };
middle :    midtok;
middle :    middle midtok;
%%
```

When **yacc** processes this program, it produces the file **y.tab.h** that contains the token-name definitions. The following **lex** source reads **y.tab.h** to learn of the constant definitions that **yacc** generated; type it into file **yacclex.lex**:

```
%{
#include "y.tab.h"
%}
%%
"("      return (beginning);
")"      return (ending);
[a-zA-Z] return (midtok);
```

The symbolic definition of the token names are **beginning**, **ending** and **midtok**.

To compile the programs, type the following commands:

```
yacc yacclex.yy
lex yacclex.lex
cc y.tab.c lex.yy.c -ly -ll -o yacclex
```

Type **yacclex** to invoke the new program; and test by typing the following:

```
(abcdef)
```

The result will be:

```
recognized
```

### *Summary*

**lex** is a utility that generates lexical analyzers according to a set of specifications that you write. *Lexical analysis* means to read a mass of text, recognize strings within that mass, and react appropriately when each type of string is discovered. With **lex**, you can write programs to perform complex analysis of text simply by describing what analysis you want to perform, without worrying about the messy details of how that analysis is actually performed; thus, **lex** is a fine example of what is nowadays called a “fourth-generation language”.

**lex** is especially well suited to work with the parser-generator **yacc**. By using them together, you can efficiently build command processors and even entire computer languages.

---

# Introduction to yacc

---

The first high-level programming language compiler took a very long time to write. Since then, much has been learned about how to design languages and how to translate programs written in high-level languages into machine instructions. With what is known today, the writing of a compiler takes a fraction of the time it used to require.

Much of this improvement is due to the use of more powerful software development methods. In addition, we know about the mathematical properties of computer programming languages. Software tools that apply this mathematical knowledge have played a large part in this improvement.

The COHERENT system provides two tools to simplify the generation of compilers. These tools are the lexical analyzer generator **lex** and the parser generator **yacc**. The following introduces **yacc**, and gives a basic course in its use.

Although initially intended for the development of compilers, **lex** and **yacc** have proven their utility in other, simpler, tasks. Examples of very simple languages are included in this tutorial.

**yacc** accepts a free-form description of a programming language and its associated parsing, and generates a C program that, when compiled, will parse a program written in the described language. It uses a left-to-right, bottom-up technique, to detect errors in the input as soon as theoretically possible. **yacc** generates parsers that handle certain grammatical ambiguities properly.

This manual presumes that you are familiar with computer-language parsing and formal methods of description of languages. Because **yacc** generates its programs in C and uses many of C's syntactic conventions, you should have a working knowledge of C. Related documents include *Using the COHERENT System* and *Introduction to lex*.

## Examples

The following presents a few small examples that you can experiment with to get a feel of how to use **yacc**. Feel free to experiment with the examples to investigate new ideas.

### Phrases and Parentheses

The first example describes a language we call **slang**, or *simple language*. **slang** consists of sentences. A sentence, in turn, consists of strings of letters or groups of letters enclosed in parentheses, terminated by a period. A group of letters can also include other groups of letters.

The simplest "sentence" in **slang** is:

a.

The following demonstrates a sentence that consists only of a group:

(ab).

As described above, a group can have another group inside it:

ab(cd(ef)).

The following gives the **yacc** grammar for **slang**. Type it into the file **slang.y**. Note that the lexical-analyzer routine **yylex** is included in the **yacc** input file. Note also that, as in C, comments are strings placed between the characters **/\*** and **\*/**.

```
/* Tokens (terminals) are all caps */
%token LPAREN RPAREN OTHER PERIOD
%%
run      :      sent      /* Input can be a single */
          |      run sent /* sentence or several */
          ;
sent     :      phrase PERIOD
          {printf ("sentence\n");}
          ;
group    :      LPAREN phrase RPAREN
          {printf ("group\n");}
          ;

phrase   :      /* empty */
          |      others
          |      group
          |      others group
          ;
others   :      OTHER /* letters and other chars */
          |      others OTHER
          ;
%%

#include <stdio.h>
#include <ctype.h>
/* Called by the parser to get a token */
yylex ()
{
    int c;
    c = 0;

    while (c == 0) {
        c = getchar();
        if (c == '.') return (PERIOD);
        else if (c == '(') return (LPAREN);
        else if (c == ')') return (RPAREN);
        else if (c == EOF) return (EOF);
        else if (! isalpha(c)) c = 0;
    }
    return (OTHER);
}
```

To generate and compile the parser described by this input, issue the commands

```
yacc slang.y
cc y.tab.c -ly -o slang
```

Now, invoke your new parser by typing

```
slang
```

and test it by typing the following input:

```
a
a.
abc(def) .
aaa(bbb(ccc)) .
(a) .
```

**slang** will reply as follows:

```
sentence
group
sentence
group
group
sentence
group
sentence
```

As you can see, **slang** recognized groups and sentences within the input you typed, and reacted by printing an appropriate message on the screen.

### ***Simple Expression Processing***

The next example creates a small language that includes two types of statements. The first type of statement resembles a procedure call, and the second is an expression. Procedure names are in upper-case letters, whereas the variables in expressions are in lower-case letters. Both procedures and expressions are terminated by a semicolon.

The following code generates a parser that identifies either the procedure being called or the arithmetic expression being calculated. The lexical input routine is independently generated by **lex**.

Enter the following program into the file **calc.y**:

```
%token VARIABLE PROCEDURE
%%
prog   :      stmt
        |      prog stmt
        ;
stmtnt :      stat
        |      stat '\n'
        |      error '\n'
        ;
```

```

stat      :      PROCEDURE ';'
           |      expr ';'
           {printf ("PROCEDURE is %c\n", $1);}
           {printf ("Expression\n");}
;
expr      :      expr '-' expr
           {printf
            ("Subtract %c from %c giving E\n",
             $3, $1);
            $$ = 'E';
           }
           |      VARIABLE
           {$$ = $1;}
;

```

Enter the lexical-analyzer part of the program into the file **calc.lex**:

```

%{
#include "y.tab.h"
%}
%%
[A-Z]      {
            yyval = yytext [0];
            return PROCEDURE;
            }

[a-z]      {
            yyval = yytext [0];
            return VARIABLE;
            }

\n         return ('\n');
.          return (yytext [0]);

```

Now, generate the programs and compile them by typing:

```

yacc calc.y
lex calc.lex
cc y.tab.c lex.yy.c -ly -ll -o calc

```

The following messages will appear on your console:

```

1 S/R conflict
y.tab.c:
lex.yy.c:

```

To invoke the newly generated program, type:

```
calc
```

To test it, type the following:

```
A;B;
C;
a-b-c;
a-b-c-d-e;
<ctrl-D>
```

**calc** will reply as follows:

```
PROCEDURE is A
PROCEDURE is B
PROCEDURE is C
Subtract c from b giving E
Subtract E from a giving E
Expression
Subtract e from d giving E
Subtract E from c giving E
Subtract E from b giving E
Subtract E from a giving E
Expression
```

## Background

Now that you have tried **yacc**, the following gives some background to it, and how the parsers that it generates operate.

### LR Parsing

**yacc** generates a “bottom up” parser. More specifically, **yacc** generates parsers that read LALR(1) languages.

LR parsers scan the input in a left-to-right fashion. Unfortunately, LR parsers for interesting languages are unpractically large. LALR(k) parsers, which are derived from LR parsers, use a “look ahead” technique, in which the next **k** elements of the input stream are used to help determine reductions. LALR(1) parsers are small enough to be practical, are easy to generate, and are fast.

### Input Specification

To generate a language with **yacc**, you must specify its grammar in Backus-Naur Form (BNF). (For a good introduction to BNF, see the section on parsing in *Applied C*.) The languages recognized by **yacc**-generated parsers are rich and compare favorably with modern programming languages. The time required to generate the parser from the input grammar is very small — less than the time required to compile the generated parsers.

In addition to generating the parser to recognize the input language, **yacc** lets you include compiler actions within the grammar rules that are executed as the constructs are recognized. This greatly simplifies the entire task of writing your compiler. When used in combination with **lex**, **yacc** can make the process of writing a recognizer for a simple language the task of an afternoon.

### Parser Operation

**yacc** generates a compilable C program that consists of a routine named **yyparse**, and the information about the grammar encoded into tables. Routines in the **yacc** library are also used.

The basic data structure used by the parser is a *stack*, or *push down list*. At any time during the parse, the stack contains information describing the state of the parse. The state of the parse is related to parts of grammar rules already recognized in the input to the parser.

At each step of the parse, the parser can take one of four actions.

The first action is to *shift*. Information about the input symbol or nonterminal is pushed onto the stack, along with the state of the parser.

The second type of action is to *reduce*. This occurs when a grammar rule is completely recognized. Items describing the component parts of the rule are removed from the stack, and the new state is pushed onto the stack. Thus, the stack is *reduced*, and the symbols corresponding to the grammar rule are *reduced* to the left part of the rule.

Third, the parser can execute an *error* action. If the current input symbol is incorrect for the state of the stack, it is not proper for the parser either to shift or reduce. As a minimum, this state will result in an error message being issued, usually

Syntax error

**yacc** provides capabilities for using this error state to recover gracefully from errors in the input.

Finally, the parser can *accept* the input. This means that the *start* symbol, such as *program*, has been properly recognized and that the entire input has been accepted.

Later sections discuss how you can have the parser describe its parsing actions step-by-step.

### *Form of yacc Programs*

A **yacc** program can have up to three sections. Each section is marked by the symbol `%%`. The first section contains declarations. The second section contains the rules of the grammar. User-written routines that are to be part of the generated program can be included in the third section. The outline of **yacc** specifications is as follows:

```
definitions
%%
rules
%%
user code
```

If there are no definitions or user code, the input can be abbreviated to

```
%%
rules
```

### *Rules*

Your language's grammar rules must be entered in a variant of BNF. The two following rules illustrate how to define an expression:

```
exp    :    VARIABLE;
exp    :    exp '-' exp;
```

Action statements that are enclosed in braces `{ }` specify the semantics of the language, and are embedded within the rules. More information about how rules are built is given below.



## Definitions

The first section in a **yacc** specification is the definitions section. This section includes information about the elements used in the **yacc** specification. Additional items are user-defined C statements, such as **include** statements, that are referenced by other statements in the generated program.

Each token, such as **VARIABLE** in example program **calc**, must be predefined in a **token** statement in the definitions section:

```
%token VARIABLE
```

Tokens are also called **terminals**. Only nonterminals appear as the left part of a rule, and terminals can appear only on the right side of a rule. This helps **yacc** distinguish terminals from nonterminals. Other types of statements that assist in ambiguity resolution appear here, and will be discussed in later sections.

Each grammar that **yacc** generates a parser for must have a **start** symbol. Once the start symbol has been recognized by the parser, its input is recognized and accepted. For a programming-language grammar, this nonterminal represents the entire program.

The start symbol should be declared in the definitions section as:

```
%start program
```

If no start symbol is declared, it is taken to be the left side of the first rule in the rules section.

## User Code

Action statements may require other routines, such as common code-generating routines, or symbol table building routines. Such user code can be included in the generated parser after the rules section and a **%%** delimiter.

The following sections discuss definitions and rules in detail.

## Rules

**Rules** describe how programming-language constructs are put together. Any given language can be described by many configurations of rules. This frees you to write the rules for clarity and readability.

A rule consists of a left part and a right part. The left part is said to *produce* the right part; or, the right part is said to *reduce to* the left part. A rule can also include the action the parser is to perform once it (the rule) is reduced.

## General Form of Rules

Blanks and tabs are ignored within rules (except in the action parts). Comments can be enclosed between **/\*** and **\*/**. The left part of the rule is followed by a colon. Then come the elements of the right part, followed by a semicolon.

Rules that have the same left part can be grouped together with the left part omitted and a vertical bar signifying "or". For example, the grammar

```
exp    :    VARIABLE;
exp    :    exp '-' exp;
```

can be written as:

```
exp    :      VARIABLE
      |      exp '-' exp;
```

Note that these are equivalent to the BNF:

```
<exp> ::=      VARIABLE
<exp> ::=      <exp> - <exp>
```

A rule can also contain C statements that are the compiler actions themselves. These actions are enclosed in braces { and } and are executed by the generated parser when the grammar rule has been recognized. More will be said about actions in the following section.

### ***Suggested Style***

Rules can be written completely free form for **yacc**. For example, the rules for the above rule can be written:

```
exp:VARIABLE|exp'-'exp;
```

However, this form is much less readable.

Two styles of **yacc** grammar are in common use. The first of these is used throughout this manual.

First, start the left part at the beginning of the line; follow it with a tab; then a colon. The right part should be on the same line, also preceded by a tab.

Second, group all rules with the same left part together, and use the vertical bar aligned under the colon for all but the first rule in the group.

Third, place action items on a separate line following the associated rule, preceded by three tabs.

Finally, precede the terminating semicolon with a single tab, to align it with the colon and vertical bar.

The outline of this style is:

```
left   :      right1 right2
      |      right3 right4
      {action1}
      {action2}
      ;
```

This style is compact and works well for languages whose rules and actions together are simple.

For somewhat more extensive languages, or for additional flexibility in adding statements to the action part, use the following modification of the style.

```
left   :      right1 right2 {
      action1
      }
      |      right3 right4 {
      action2
      }
      ;
```

For specifications that have larger rules or more complex actions, another style is recommended.

As in the first style, group rules with the same left part, and use the vertical bar. Place the left part, with its terminating colon, on a line by itself. Then indent the right parts of the rule one or more tabs as necessary to make the rule and actions readable. Finally, the vertical bar and the semicolon should be at the beginning of the line.

The outline for this style is as follows:

```
left:
    right1 right2 {
        action1
    }
|    right3 right4 {
    action2
    }
;
```

Since the input to **yacc** can be entirely free form, there is no restriction on how to write your rules. However, if you use a consistent style throughout, it will make your job easier.

## **Actions**

In addition to generating a parser to recognize a specific language, **yacc** also lets you include parsing action statements. With this feature, you can include C-language action statements that will be performed when specified constructs are recognized.

### **Basic Action Statements**

The example language **slang**, described above, the action statements simply print information on the terminal as productions are recognized:

```
sent  :      phrase PERIOD
        {printf ("sentence\n");}
;
group :      LPAREN phrase RPAREN
        {printf ("group\n");}
;
```

Even if your actions will be more complex, using **printf** statements in this way can help verify your grammar early in the development process.

### **Action Values**

If the specification is for the grammar of a programming language, the actions will normally interface to routines that access symbol tables or generate code.

**yacc** lets rules assume a *value* to help keep track of intermediate results within rules. These values can contain symbol-table information, code-generation information, or other semantic information.

To set a value for a rule, simply use a statement of the form

```
$$ = <value>;
```

within an action statement. The symbol **\$\$** is the value of the production. This value can be used by other rules that use this rule as a non-terminal part.

The example program **calc**, given above, illustrates the use of the value of productions:

```

expr  :      expr '-' expr {
            printf
            ("Subtract %c from %c giving E\n",
             $3, $1);
            $$ = 'E';
        }
      |      VARIABLE
            {$$ = $1;}
;

```

The first rule's action statement sets the value of the production **expr** to 'E':

```

$$ = 'E';

```

The *value* of a rule is significant in that it can be used in productions including that rule as a nonterminal part.

An example is given in the first rule above. The **printf** statement refers to the items **\$1** and **\$3**. **yacc** interprets these symbols to mean the value of elements one and three of the right side, respectively; that is to say, **\$1** refers to the value of the first **expr** in the right side of the first rule, and **\$3** refers to the second **expr**, as illustrated below:

```

expr  :      expr '-' expr
            $1  $2  $3

```

**calc** does not reference **\$2**.

The value for the tokens is provided by the lexical analyzer. The second rule for **expr** uses this to get the value of the token **VARIABLE**. The value represented by **\$1** is provided by the lexical analyzer in the statement

```

yyval = yytext [0];

```

To give another example, here is a simple calculator language, called **digit**, which performs arithmetic on one-digit numbers and prints the results. Type the following grammar into the file **digit.y**:

```

%token DIGIT
%%
session      :      calcn
            |      session calcn
            ;

calcn :      expr '\n' /* print results */
            {printf ("%d\n", $1);}
            ;

```

```
expr  :      term '+' term
        { $$ = $1 + $3; }
      |      term '-' term
        { $$ = $1 - $3; }
      ;

term   :      DIGIT
        { $$ = $1; }
      ;

%%
#include <stdio.h>
yylex ()
{
    int c;
    c = 0;

    while (c == 0) { /* ignore control chars and space */
        c = getchar();
        if (c <= 0) return (c) /* could be EOF */;
        if (c == '\n') return (c); /* set c to ignore */

        if ((c <= '9') && (c >= '0')) {
            yylval = c - '0';
            return (DIGIT);
        }
        if (c <= ' ') c = 0;
    }
    return (c);
}
```

This creates the **yacc** specification file. To turn it into a program, type

```
yacc digit.y
cc y.tab.c -ly -o digit
```

To invoke the compiled progra, type:

```
digit
```

And to test it, type the following:

```
1+2
2+2
8+9
```

**digit** will reply:

```
3
4
17
```

This program is essentially an interpreter — results are calculated as numbers are typed in. When you type in

```
1+1
```

the parser recognizes the construct

```
term '+' term
```

and executes the statement that adds two numbers together. The two numbers each in turn came from the construct

```
term : DIGIT
```

and the value of the digit came from **yylex**. When the statement **calcn** is recognized, the value is printed as the result. Thus, the calculations are performed at the time that the constructs are recognized. If a compiler were being generated, the actions would likely build some form of intermediate code, or expression tree, as in:

```
expr : term '+' term
      { $$=tree (plus, $1, $3); }
```

## Structured Values

All the examples thus far have shown action values as simple **int** types. This is not sufficient for a large interpreter or compiler, because at different points in the language a value can represent a constant values, a pointer to code generation trees, or symbol table information.

To solve this problem, **yacc** allows you to define the values of **\$\$** and **\$n** as a *union* of several types. This is done in the definitions section with the **union** statement. For example, to declare action values as an integer, tree pointer, or a symbol-table pointer, you would use the following code:

```
%union {
    int cval;
    struct tree_t tree;
    struct sytp_t sytp;
}
```

This says that action values can be a constant value **cval**, a code tree pointer **tree**, or a symbol-table pointer **sytp**.

To ensure that the correct types are used in assignments and calculations in actions in the generated C program, each token whose value will be used is declared with the appropriate type:

```
%token <tree> A B
%token <cval> CONST
```

In addition, the rules themselves can have a type declaration, as they also can pass action values. Their type is declared in the **%type** statement:

```
%type <sytp> variable
```

This declares the nonterminal **variable** to reference the **sytp** field of the value union.

The values referenced in the action statements do not need to be qualified (unless they are referencing a field of one of the union elements). **yacc** generates the necessary qualification for the references, based upon the type information provided in the **type** and **token** statements.

Keep in mind that productions that do not have explicit actions will default to an action of

```
$$ = $1
```

which might cause a type clash when compiling the generated parser. This is more likely to arise during debugging, when you have defined the types but have not put in the actions.

### Handling Ambiguities

The ideal grammar for a language is readable and unambiguous. If the grammar is readable, its users will find it easy to use. If the language is unambiguous, the parser generator will parse the programs correctly. However, many common programming language constructs are ambiguous. Consider the following definition of an **if** statement:

```
statement      :      if_statement
                |      others
if_statement   :      IF cond THEN statement
                |      IF cond THEN statement ELSE statement
```

Consider a program that contains a statement

```
if a > b then if c < d then a = d else b = c;
```

The parser does not know by the grammar specification which **if\_statement** the **else** belongs with. At the point of the **else**, the parser could correctly recognize it as part of the first **if** or the second **if**. The indentations illustrate the interpretation of the ambiguity associating the **else** with the first **if**.

```
if a > b then
    if c < d then
        a = d;
    else
        b = c;
```

Associating it with the second **if**:

```
if a > b then
    if c < d then
        a = d;
    else
        b = c;
```

One solution to this ambiguity is to modify the language and rewrite the grammar. Some programming languages (including the COHERENT shell) have a closing element to the **if** statement, such as **fi**. The grammar for this approach is:

```
statement      :      if_statement
                |      others
if_statement   :      IF cond THEN statement FI
                |      IF cond THEN statement ELSE statement FI
```

Another ambiguity arises from a grammar for common binary arithmetic expressions. The following sample specifies binary subtraction:

```
exp    :      TERM
        |      exp '-' exp
        ;
```

For the program fragment

a - b - c

the parser can correctly interpret the expression as

(a - b) - c

or as

a - (b - c)

While for the **if** example, the language can be reasonably modified to remove the ambiguity, it is unreasonable in the case of expressions. The grammar can be rewritten for **exp** but it is less convenient.

### ***How yacc Reacts***

Because some ambiguities, such as the ones detailed above, are common, **yacc** automatically handles some of them.

The ambiguity exemplified by the **if then else** grammar is called a *shift-reduce* conflict. The parser generator can either choose to shift, meaning to add more elements to the parse stack, or to reduce, meaning to generate the smaller production. In the terms of **if**, the shift would match the **else** with the first **then**. Alternatively, the reduce choice will match the **else** with the latest (rightmost) unmatched **then**.

Unless otherwise specified, **yacc** resolves shift-reduce conflicts in favor of the shift. This means that the **if** ambiguity will be resolved in favor of matching the **else** with the rightmost unmatched **then**. Likewise, the expression

a - b - c

will be interpreted as

a - (b - c)

### ***Additional Control***

**yacc** provides tools to help resolve some of these ambiguities. When **yacc** detects shift-reduce conflicts, it consults the precedence and associativity of the rule and the input symbol to make a decision.

For the case of binary operators, you can define the associativity of each of the operators by use of the defining words **left** and **right**. These appear in the definition section with **token**. Any symbol appearing in **left** or **right**.

The usual interpretation of

a - b - c

is

(a - b) - c



which is called *left* associative. However, the shift/reduce conflict inherent in

`exp '-' exp`

is resolved in favor of the reduce, or in a right-associative manner:

`a - (b - c)`

To signal **yacc** that you want the left-associative interpretation, enter the grammar as:

```
%left '+' '-'
%token TERM
%%
expr :      TERM
      |      expr '-' expr
      |      expr '+' expr
      ;
```

Some operators, such as assignment, require right associativity. The statement

`a := b + c`

is to be interpreted as

`a := (b + c)`

The **%right** keyword tells **yacc** that the following terminal is to right associate.

## Precedence

Most arithmetic operators are left associative. For example, with the grammar

```
%right =
%left '-' '+' '*' '/'
%%
expr :      expr '-' expr
      |      expr '*' expr
      |      expr '+' expr
      |      expr '/' expr
      |      expr '=' expr
      ;
```

The expression

`a = b + c * d - e`

based on associativity alone will be evaluated

`a = ((b + c) * d) - e`

which is not according to custom. We normally think of `*` as having higher precedence than `+` or `-`, meaning that it is evaluated before other operators with the same associativity. The evaluation preferred is

`a = (b + (c * d) - e)`

To generate a parser with this evaluation, use several lines of **left**, one line for each level of precedence. Each line containing **%left** describes tokens of the same precedence. The precedence increases with each line. Thus, to get the common notion of arithmetic precedence, use a grammar of

```
%right =
%left '-' '+'
%left '*' '/'
%%
expr :      expr '-' expr
      |      expr '*' expr
      |      expr '+' expr
      |      expr '/' expr
      |      expr '=' expr
      ;
```

This method of **%left** and **%right** gives tokens a precedence and an associativity. This can eliminate ambiguities where these operators are involved. But what about the precedence of rules or nonterminals?

To specify the precedence of rules, the **%prec** keyword at the end of the rule sets the precedence of the rule to the token following the keyword. To add unary minus to the grammar above, and to give it the precedence of multiply, use **%prec \*** at the end of the unary rule.

```
%right =
%left '-' '+' '*' '/'
%%
expr :      expr '-' expr
      |      expr '*' expr
      |      expr '+' expr
      |      expr '/' expr
      |      expr '=' expr
      |      '-' expr %prec *
      ;
```

If associativity is not specified, **yacc** will report the number of shift/reduce conflicts. When associativity is specified with **%left**, **%right** or **%nonassoc**, this is considered to reduce the number of conflicts, and thus the number of conflicts reported will not include the count of these.

## Error Handling

Parsers generated by **yacc** are designed to parse correct programs. If an input program contains errors, the LALR(1) parser will detect the error as soon as is theoretically possible. The error is identified, and the programmer can correct the error and recompile.

However, in most programming environments, it is unacceptable to stop compiling after the detection of a single error. **yacc** parsers attempt to go on so that the programmer may find as many errors as possible.

When an error is detected, the parser looks for a special token in the input grammar named **error**. If none is found, the parser simply exits after issuing the message

```
Syntax error
```

If the special token **error** is present in the input grammar error recovery is modified. Upon

detection of an error, the parser removes items from the stack until **error** is a legal input token and processes any action associated with this rule. **error** is the lookahead token at this point.

Processing is resumed with the token causing the error as the lookahead token. However, the parser attempts to resynchronize by reading and processing three more tokens before resuming normal processing. If any of these three are in error, they are deleted and no error message is given. Three tokens must be read without error before the parser leaves the error state.

A good place to put the **error** token is at a statement level. For example, the **calc.y** example in chapter 2 defines a statement as

```
stmtnt :      stat
        |      stat '\n'
        |      error '\n'
        ;
```

Thus, any error on a line will cause the rest of the line to be ignored.

There is still a chance for trouble, however. If the next line contains an error in the first two tokens, they will be deleted with no error message and parsing will resume somewhere in the middle of the line. To give a truly fresh start at the beginning of the line, the function **yyerrok** will cause the parser to resume normal processing immediately. Thus, an improved grammar is

```
stmtnt :      stat
        |      stat '\n'
        |      error '\n'
                {yyerrok;}
        ;
```

will cause normal processing to begin with the start of the next line.

Error recovery is a complex issue. This section covers only what the parser can do in recovering from syntax errors. Semantic error recovery, such as retracting emitted code, or correcting symbol table entries, is even more complex, and is not discussed here.

**yacc** reserves a special token **error** to aid in resynchronizing the parse. After an error is detected, the stack is readjusted, and processing cautiously resumes while three error-free tokens are processed. **yyerrok** will cause normal processing to resume immediately. The token causing the error is retained as the lookahead token unless **YYCLEARIN** is executed.

## Summary

**yacc** is an efficient and easy-to-use program to help automate the input phase of programs that benefit by strict checking of complex input. Such programs include compilers and interactive command language processors.

**yacc** generates an LALR(1) parser, that implements the grammar specifying the structure of the input. A simple lexical analyser routine can be hand-constructed to fit in among the rules, or you can use the COHERENT command **lex** to generate a lexical analyzer that will fit with the parser.

As the structured input is analyzed and verified, you assign meaning to the input by writing semantic **actions** as part of the grammatical rules describing the structure of the input.

**yacc** parsers are capable of handling certain *ambiguities*, such as that inherent in typical **if then else** constructs. This simplifies the construction of many common grammars.

**yacc** provides a few simple tools to aid in error recovery. However, the area of error recovery is complex and must be approached with caution.

### **Helpful Hints**

Until you have mastered **yacc**, the best way to build your program is to do it a piece at a time. For example, if you are writing a Pascal compiler, you might start with the grammar

```
%token PROG BEG END OTHER
program      :      PROG tokens BEG END '.'
;
tokens :      OTHER
          |      tokens OTHER
;
```

and with a simple lexical analyzer of:

```
PROGRAM      return (PROG);
BEGIN        return (BEG);
END          return (END);
.            return (yytext [0]);
```

With the generated program, you can easily test the grammar by feeding it simple programs. Then add items to both the lexical analyzer and **yacc** grammar. With this approach, you can see the parser working, and if it behaves differently than you expect, you can more easily pinpoint the cause.

If you have difficulty understanding what actions your parser is taking, **yacc** will produce for you a complete description of the generated parser. To use this, you should be familiar with the way LALR(1) parsers work. To get this verbose output, specify the **-v** option on the command line. The result will appear in the file **y.output**.

In addition, you can have the parser give you a token-by-token description of its actions while it does them, by specifying the debug option **-d**. This also generates the file **y.output**, which is helpful in reading the debug output. The debug code is generated when the **-d** option is used, but is not activated unless the **YYDEBUG** identifier is defined. Include some code in the definitions section to activate it:

```
%{
    define YYDEBUG
%}
```

Your parser can turn on and off the debugging at execution time by setting the variable **yydebug**: one for on, zero for off.

A frequent cause of grammar conflicts is the empty statement. You should use it with caution. **yacc** generates empty statements when you specify actions in the middle of a rule rather than at the end; for example:

```
def      :      DEFINE {defstart();}
          identifier {defid ($2);}
;
```

**yacc** generates an additional rule:

```
$def : /* empty */
      {defstart();}
;
def : DEFINE $def identifier {defid ($2);}
;
```

The resulting empty statement can cause parser conflicts if there are similar rules and the empty statement is not sufficient to distinguish between them.

### Example

This tutorial closes with a larger example that incorporates most of the features of **yacc** discussed here. You can type it as shown, and modify it to improve its operation.

This example, called **nav**, calculates the great circle path and bearing from one point on the globe to another. Each pair of points is input on one line. The coordinates of the origin and destination are preceeded, respectively, by the keywords **FROM** and **TO**, and can appear in either order. Longitude and latitude are followed, respectively, by the letters **E** or **W**, and **N** and **S**. Lower-case may also be used for these letters.

The numeric part of the coordinates may be entered in degrees, minutes, and optional seconds, or in fractional degrees. You can use the symbols **^**, **o**, or **d** to specify degrees because the raised circle customarily used for degrees is not available on most terminals. An apostrophe **'** follows minutes, and a quotation mark **"** follows seconds.

As an example of using **nav**, calculate the great circle distance and initial heading from Charlestown, Indiana, to Charlestown, Australia:

```
from 38d27'n 85d40'w to 151d42'e 32d58's;
```

The result will be:

```
From lat 38.450 long 85.667 To lat -32.967 long -151.700
Distance 8030.623, Init course is 258.417
```

Here, the coordinates are echoed in decimal degrees. To exit the program, type <ctrl-D>.

To begin, type the following **yacc** specification file into the **nav.y**:

```
%{
#include "ll.h"
#define YYTNAMES
    double fromlat, fromlon, tolat, tolon;
    extern calcpath();
}%

%union {
    double dgs;
    long dgsi;
    struct ll wh;
}
```

```
%token NEWLINE FROM TO CIRCLE QUOTE DQUOTE SEP SEMI COMMA
%token NSYM SSYM WSYM ESYM
%token <dgs> FNUM
%token <dgsi> NUM
%type <dgs> degrees long lat deg
%type <wh> where from to
%%
```

```
prob  :      single
      |      prob single
      ;

single :      sing {
              calcpath();
            }
      |      error NEWLINE {
              yyerrok; YYCLEARIN;
              printf ("Enter line again.\n");
            }
      ;

sing  :      from SEP to SEMI NEWLINE {
              fromlat = $1.lat;
              fromlon = $1.lon;
              tolat = $3.lat;
              tolon = $3.lon;
            }

      |      to SEP from SEMI NEWLINE {
              tolat = $1.lat;
              tolon = $1.lon;
              fromlat = $3.lat;
              fromlon = $3.lon;
            }

      |      to SEMI NEWLINE {
              tolat = $1.lat;
              tolon = $1.lon;
            }
      ;

from  :      FROM SEP where {
              $$ = $3;
            }
      ;
```

```

to      :      TO SEP where {
                $$ = $3;
            }
        ;

where   :      lat SEP long {
                $$ .lat = $1;
                $$ .lon = $3;
            }
        |      long SEP lat {
                $$ .lon = $1;
                $$ .lat = $3;
            }
        ;

lat     :      degrees NSYM {
                $$ = $1;
            }
        |      degrees SSYM {
                $$ = - $1;
            }
        ;

long    :      degrees WSYM {
                $$ = $1;
            }
        |      degrees ESYM {
                $$ = - $1;
            }
        ;

degrees :      FNUM /* e. g. 128.3 */ {
                $$ = $1;
            }
        |      NUM CIRCLE NUM QUOTE /* deg min */ {
                $$=$1 + $3/60.0;
            }
        |      NUM CIRCLE NUM QUOTE NUM DQUOTE
                /* and seconds */ {
                $$=$1 + $3/60.0 + $5/3600.0;
            }
        |      NUM CIRCLE NUM QUOTE FNUM DQUOTE {
                $$=$1 + $3/60.0 + $5/3600.0;
            }
        ;

```

%%

```
#include <stdio.h>
yyerror (s)

char *s;
{
    struct yytnam *p;
    fprintf (stderr, "%s ", s);

    for (p = yytnames; p -> tn_name != NULL; ++p)
        if (p->tn_val == yychar) {
            fprintf (stderr, "at %s", p->tn_name);
            break;
        }
    fprintf (stderr, "\n");
}
```

Both the lexical analyzer and the parser need the following header file **ll.h**:

```
struct ll {
    double lat;
    double lon;
};
```

To turn **yacc** file **nav.y** into a program, type

```
yacc -hdr nav.tab.h -d -v nav.y
mv y.tab.c nav.y.c
```

The grammar is straightforward. The types used in the actions require a **union**, because integer degrees, floating-point degrees, and pairs of floating point degrees are used as action values. The lexical analyzer recognizes integer and floating-point numbers, and passes the value through **yyval**. The rule for **degrees** combines different degree representations to one double-precision number.

The **N**, **S**, **E**, and **W** symbols convert a location to a signed representation: **S** and **E** result in negative degrees, **N** and **W** as positive.

The rule for **where** converts the single-numbered latitude and longitude into a double number of **<wh>** type. Note that it can process the coordinates in either order.

The rule **single** handles the destination and origin in either order. It takes the pairs of coordinates from **from** and **to** and stores them in the global variables that the calculation routine uses. The error token will halt error recovery at the end of the line, so that in case of error the user can reenter the correct line. If many great circles are being computed from the same origin, you need to enter only the destination after the first time.

Once a set of coordinates has been recognized, the function **calcpath** calculates the great circle.

The error routine **yyerror** accepts an error message from the parser, and examines the table of tokens to find the name of the token where the error is detected. If it is found, it is printed. To get these token names in the program, the symbol **YYTNAMES** must be defined.

The following code gives the lexical analyzer. Type it into the file **nav.l**:



```
%{
#include "ll.h"
#include "nav.tab.h"
%}

    int integer;
    double real;

%%

[nN]      return (NSYM);
[sS]      return (SSYM);
[eE]      return (ESYM);
[wW]      return (WSYM);
o|"^"|d   return (CIRCLE);
\"         return (DQUOTE);
\'         return (QUOTE);
\n        return (NEWLINE);
from       return (FROM);
FROM       return (FROM);
to         return (TO);
TO         return (TO);

[0-9]+     {
    sscanf (yytext, "%d", &integer);
    yylval.dgsi = (long) integer;
    return (NUM);
}

[0-9]+ "." ([0-9]+)? {
    sscanf (yytext, "%f", &real);
    yylval.dgs = (double) real;
    return (FNUM);
}
,          return (COMMA);
;          return (SEMI);
[ \t]      return (SEP);
.          {
    printf ("Illegal character [%s]\n", yytext);
    return (yytext [0]);
}
```

The lexical analyzer partitions the input into the tokens expected by the parser. For the symbols in the grammar, it returns the token type. It also recognizes integer and floating-point numbers, and converts them to integers.

Note that the **ll.h** file is required even though there is no explicit reference to its contents. This is needed because the **%union** in **nav.y** generates the header file **nav.tab.h**, referring to the **ll** structure.

Turn **lex** file **nav.l** into program by typing:

```
lex nav.l
mv lex.yy.c nav.l.c
```

Finally, you should type the following code into file **navcalc.c**. It is C code that calculates the great circle route:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <math.h>
/*
 *   Given latitude and longitude of start and finish,
 *   calculate the great circle path.
 */
extern double fromlon, fromlat, tolon, tolat;

calcpath ()
{
    double rad = PI / 180.0;
    double initcourse, arg, dist, d60;
    double rfromlat, rfromlon, rtolat, rtolon;

    printf ("From lat %.3f long %.3f ",
            fromlat, fromlon);
    printf ("To lat %.3f long %.3f\n",
            tolat, tolon);

    rfromlat = fromlat * rad;
    rfromlon = fromlon * rad;
    rtolat = tolat * rad;
    rtolon = tolon * rad;

    d60 = acos (
        sin (rfromlat) * sin (rtolat) +
        cos (rfromlat) * cos (rtolat) *
        cos (rfromlon - rtolon)
    );
    dist = 60 * d60 / rad;

    arg = (sin (rtolat) - cos (d60) * sin (rfromlat))
        /
        (sin (d60) * cos (rfromlat));

    initcourse = acos (arg) / rad;
    if (sin (rfromlon - rtolon) < 0)
        initcourse = 360 - initcourse;

    printf ("Distance %.3f, Init course is %.3f\n\n",
            dist, initcourse);
}
```

And now compile all three programs together.

```
cc nav.y.c nav.l.c navcalc.c -ly -lm -ll -f -o nav
```

The standard formula is used to calculate great circle path and bearing. Note that there are several limitations that are not checked for here; For example, diametrically opposite points on the globe have no unique great circle path between them. In addition, neither of the points should be at either of the poles. These checks can be added if you wish to use **nav** program as a general rather than a tutorial tool.

### ***Where to Go From Here***

The Lexicon article for **yacc** summarizes its command syntax and features. The tutorial for **lex**, the COHERENT lexical analyzer, describes how to combine **lex** with **yacc** to build applications simply.



---

# bc Desk Calculator Language

---

This tutorial introduces **bc**, the calculator language for COHERENT. If you have not used **bc** before, this tutorial will introduce you to its features and functions. If you are familiar with **bc**, you can use it as a reference.

**bc** is a language that can calculate to high precision. It automatically adjusts the number of digits in a number to represent it correctly. It is like having a powerful calculator at your fingertips.

## *Entry and Exit*

The **bc** calculator for COHERENT is easy to use. Whenever you wish to invoke **bc**, all you do is type its name (**bc**), followed by a stroke of the carriage return key. When you are finished using the calculator and wish to exit, just type the word 'quit' or **<ctrl-D>**. **bc** exits and returns control to COHERENT.

## *Example of Simple Use*

**bc** performs calculations on formulas that you type into it. The formulas are laid out as you would naturally write them. For example, to invoke **bc**, have it add 2+2, and then exit, type:

```
bc
2 + 2
```

**bc** replies:

```
4
```

Then, leave **bc** by typing:

```
quit
```

**bc** is an arbitrary precision calculator: the number of digits carried by **bc** depends upon the requirements of the calculation, and is automatically expanded by **bc**. Thus, **bc** will never overflow. The number of digits it carries is limited only by the amount of available computer memory. For example, try this calculation:

```
2^500
```

The carat '^' character signifies a superscript; thus, we are asking **bc** to raise 2 to the 500th power. After a moment, **bc** will reply:

```
327339060789614187001318969682759915221664\
204604306478948329136809613379640467455488\
327009232590415715088668412756007100921725\
6545885393053328527589376
```

You have probably already noticed one nice thing about this calculator: you don't have to include a print statement as part of your command, because **bc** automatically prints the results onto your terminal screen. When **bc** sees any expression, like "2+2" or "3777", it prints the result.

**bc** provides the common arithmetic operators for add, subtract, multiply, and divide, as illustrated by the following commands:

```
7 + 5
7 - 5
7 * 5
7 / 5
```

**bc** also provides the remainder operator '%'. To get a sense of how it works, type:

```
7 % 5
5 % 7
```

Here, **bc** prints the *remainder* of the first number divided by the second; in the case of the first example, **bc** prints 2, and in the second prints 5. As you saw above, **bc** also includes the exponentiation operator '^'.

With **bc**, you can also enter numbers with fractional parts. Type the following to illustrate:

```
9.999 * 9.999
```

**bc** replies:

```
99.980
```

You can save temporary calculations or repeated constants in *variables*. The following example shows you first how to define variables, and second how to use them:

```
a = 1.1
b = 2.2
a
b
a * b
```

Variable names can be longer than one letter.

The basic calculations in the above examples show only part of what **bc** can do. The following section describes simple statements — the assignment of variables and abbreviations — that allow you to perform complex calculations easily.

### ***Simple Statements***

Although you can use **bc** as a simple calculator for manipulating numbers, you can take advantage of its greater power by using *variables*. Variables, as noted above, store parts of calculations or constants that you will use repeatedly in calculations. Variable names are simply “words” that you make up. Here are some examples of possible variable names:

```
a
b
totaltaxesdue
ratio
```

To use variables, simply give them a value, use them in a calculation in place of a number, or print them out.

To see how a variable can save you repetitive typing, and protect you from possible errors, invoke **bc** and type the following:

```
x = 9.999
x
x * x
x = x * x
x
```

The following gives the example with **bc**'s replies *in italics*:

```
x = 9.999
x
9.999
x * x
99.980
x = x * x
x
99.980
```

**bc** did not reply to the assignment statements **x=9.999** and **x=x\*x**. However, it did print the value of **x** when requested, and the results of arithmetic using **x**.

Calculations executed with hand-held calculators, with programming languages like C, or with **bc** often use the following formula:

```
x = x + 1
```

To decrease the likelihood of error, **bc** offers you a shorthand expression for this common phrase:

```
x += 1
```

What it means is, "add one to **x**". Type the following example into **bc** to see how this expression works:

```
x = 1
x * x
x += 1
x * x
x += 1
```

Likewise, **bc** provides an abbreviation for:

```
x = x - 2
```

The form should now be familiar:

```
x -= 2
```

The number to the right of the **-=** or **+=** operator can be replaced with a variable or even another calculation. When you type:

```
i = 4
x = 48
x -= i
x
```

**bc** in each case replies:

```
44
```

Alternatively, if you type:

```
i = 4
x = 48
x -= i * i
x
```

then **bc** replies:

```
32
```

Similar abbreviations are provided for multiplication, division, remainder, and exponentiation. Here is a summary of this class of operation.

```
a += 2 /* replace a with a plus 2          */
b += a /* replace b with b plus a          */
b -= a /* replace b with b minus a         */
c *= b /* replace c with c multiplied by b */
c /= a /* replace c with c divided by a    */
c %= b /* replace c with remainder of c    */
d ^= 3 /* replace d with d raised to the 3rd power
```

**bc** also has an operator that increases a variable by one: '++'. When you type:

```
a = 1
++a
```

then **bc** replies:

```
2
```

To use this operator in an expression, combine it with a variable anywhere that a variable would normally be used. For example, entering

```
b = 1
a = 3
b = ++a
a
b
```

yields:

```
4
4
```

The '++' operator can also be put after a name. The resulting value in the expression is the value of the name *before* it is incremented. However, after the expression is evaluated, the name will have an incremented value. The following example shows the use of '++' both before and after a name:

```
a = 1
b = 1
a++
++b
a
b
```

**bc** replies:



```
1
2
2
2
```

Operators are used in this manner:

```
a = 1
b = 2
c = a++ + ++b
```

Similar to '++' is '--'. It behaves the same way, except that rather than adding one, it subtracts one.

## Numbers with Fractions

Most of the examples presented earlier use whole numbers (integers). However, **bc** can use numbers with fractional parts. This section discusses the use of fractional numbers in **bc** and their precision under different operations.

### The Scale of Numbers

The number of digits to the left of the decimal point carried by **bc** depends upon the requirements of the calculation. If you calculate a large number, as in:

```
2^500
```

the result will contain as many digits as needed to express the product.

The number of digits to the right of a decimal point is called the *scale* of the number. Scale depends upon the operation that produces the number of digits, and a variable called **scale** that will be described shortly.

To illustrate simple uses of numbers with fractions, invoke **bc** and then type:

```
a = .01
b = 0.99
a+b
```

**bc** replies:

```
1.00
```

### Addition and Subtraction

**bc** will dynamically adjust the number of digits in the calculation. It deals similarly with fractional numbers. To the following example

```
a = 0.01
b = 0.001
a + b
```

**bc** reply:

```
.011
```

In addition and subtraction, the scale of the result is the *larger* of the scales of the two numbers involved. Results are not truncated in addition or subtraction operations.

### **Scale During Multiplication**

Other arithmetic operations act differently with numbers that contain fractions. In the multiplication of two numbers, the scale of the product will at least equal the larger of the scales of the two numbers. For example, the input:

```
1.1 * 1.11
```

results in:

```
1.22
```

### **Setting the Scale of Results**

To increase the number of fractional digits for higher accuracy, **bc** provides the built-in variable **scale**. The following example illustrates the **scale** variable:

```
scale = 3
1.1 * 1.11
```

The result from this example is:

```
1.221
```

Note, however, the scale of the product of a multiplication procedure never exceeds the sum of the scales of the two numbers being multiplied. For example,

```
scale = 10
1.1 * 1.11
```

yields the result:

```
1.221
```

If the variable **scale** is less than the sum of the scales of the numbers being multiplied, then the product will have a scale equal to that of the variable **scale**. For example,

```
scale = 4
1.11 * 2.222
```

yields:

```
2.4664
```

The scales of the operands are 2 and 3. The larger scale is 3, so the result of a multiplication will have a scale of at least 3, no matter what **scale** is set to. Also, the sum of the scales is 5, so the result will never have more than 5 digits to the right of the decimal point. In this example, **scale** has been set to a number between 3 and 5, namely 4. Therefore, the result has a scale of 4.

### **Scale for Divisions**

For division and remainder, the scale of the result is determined only by the value of the variable **scale**. For example,

```
scale = 13
14 / 13
14 % 13
```

yields:

```
1.0769230769230
.0000000000010
```

For non-whole numbers, as well as for integers, the definition of remainder is chosen so that the relationship

$$\text{dividend} = (\text{divisor} * \text{quotient}) + \text{remainder}$$

is true.

### ***Scale From Exponentiation***

**bc** sets the **scale** of a result of exponentiation as if repeated multiplications had been performed. Thus, for

```
5.992 ^ 5
```

the scale is chosen as if you typed:

```
n = 5.992
n * n * n * n * n
```

That is, the default is the scale of the largest (or, in this case, the only) number being multiplied; and scale cannot exceed the sum of the scales of the numbers being multiplied. Thus, the scale of the product in this example has a default setting of 3, and can be reset up to 15.

### ***What Is the Current Scale?***

The variable **scale** is just like other variables: you can assign values to it, as above. Because it is like regular variables, you can also use it in operations, as in this example:

```
scale += 1
```

You can also print its value:

```
scale
```

The value of the **scale** variable is zero until you explicitly change it.

## ***The if Statement***

The statements shown so far have been either assignment statements, giving a new value to a variable; or an expression, which prints the resulting value. Several other kinds of statements are available. These give you power to write programs that make decisions and perform iterative computations.

### ***Using the if Statement***

To see the **if** statement in action, type the following example into **bc**:

```
x = 3
if (x < 5) x
if (x > 5) -x
```

The reply is:

3

If the input is:

```
x = 6
if (x < 5) x
if (x > 5) -x
<return>
```

**bc** replies:

-6

The part of the **if** statement in parentheses, such as **(x > 5)**, determines whether **bc** executes the statement that follows it, such as **-x**. If the expression is false, the following statement is not executed. If the expression is true, the following statement is executed.

### **Comparisons**

The decision expression in an **if** statement is enclosed in parentheses. The decision can be based upon a comparison of two operands, or numbers. The kinds of comparisons that can be done are:

<b>==</b>	First operand equal to second
<b>!=</b>	First operand not equal to second
<b>&lt;=</b>	First operand less than or equal to second
<b>&lt;</b>	First operand less than second
<b>&gt;=</b>	First operand greater than or equal to second
<b>&gt;</b>	First operand greater than second

The **if** statement can include the sorts of the simple statements already shown. You can also include an **if** statement, as well as the **while**, **do**, and **for** statements, which will be discussed below. The following example illustrates the use of an **if** statement within an **if** statement:

```
a = 2
b = 6
if (a >= 2) if (b > a) a + b
<return>
```

**bc** replies, simply:

8

Because both of the **if** conditions were true, **bc** proceeded to add **a** and **b**.

### **Grouped Statements**

You can place more than one statement after the expression part of the **if** statement by using grouping braces **{** and **}**. This can be useful if you want to perform several calculations based on the result of an **if** statement comparison. The following example prints the value of **a** and **b** if the value of **b** is less than the value of **a**:

```
a = 1
b = .99
if (a > b) {
    a
    b
}
```

**bc** replies:

```
1
.99
```

Any statement may be enclosed within the group braces, as the following example shows:

```
a = 1
b = .99
if (a > b) {
    a
    b
    if ((a + b) >= 2) a + b
}
```

### ***Many Statements Per Line***

To this point, all of our examples typed each statement on its own line. This includes the group braces '{' and '}', the latter of which must appear on a line by itself. You can, however, place several statements on one line if you separate them with semicolons. If you do this, remember that the semicolon rather than the carriage return separates the statements. For example, if you type:

```
a = 1;b = 2;c = 3
a;b;c
```

**bc** replies:

```
1
2
3
```

You can use this in combination with the group braces:

```
a = 1;b = 2;c = 3
if ((a + b) >= c) {
    a; b; c; a + b; }
```

The reply from **bc** is:

```
1
2
3
3
```

This example can be compressed even further by putting all of the **if** statement on one line:

```
a = 1;b = 2;c = 3
if ((a + b) >= c) { a; b; c; a + b; }
```

You do not need to follow the `};` with a semicolon.

### *The while Statement*

The **while** statement repeats calculations. This is useful in successive approximation calculations. The following example of the **while** loop prints the numbers one through ten:

```
i = 1
while (i <= 10) {
    i
    i = i + 1
}
```

**bc** replies:

```
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
```

The statement

```
i = i + 1
```

adds 1 to the variable **i**. The expression

```
(i <= 10)
```

compares **i** with 10. While **i** is less than or equal to 10, the **while** loop executes. When **i** is increased to greater than 10, the loop stops executing.

**bc** checks the comparison expression for the **while** loop before the loop is entered for the first time. If the comparison fails, the loop is not executed at all; otherwise the processing repeats as long as the comparison is true. For example, the following statements do not print anything:

```
i = 0
while (i > 1) i
quit
```

### *Abbreviations in the while Statement*

If we recall the assignment statements from the previous section, we can shorten the **while** counting-to-ten example to:

```
i = 1
while (i <= 10) {
    i
    i += 1
}
```

The result remains the same — a list of numbers from one to ten.

Another abbreviation of the example uses the '++' operator. The variable **i** is incremented, then tested in the **while** expression, which simplifies the entire example to:

```
i = 0
while (++i <= 10) i
```

Before the **while** is executed, **i** is set to zero. Then, the **while** expression increments the value of **i** before it is used or compared. Thus, the first value compared, then printed, is one.

Finally, the example calculation can be shortened to one line. If a variable in **bc** is used before it is initialized, it will have the value of zero. For example:

```
zip
prints:
0
```

Using this in our counting-to-ten example yields:

```
while (++i <= 10) i
```

## The for Statement

**for** is a statement that controls the execution of other **bc** statements. You should use **for** to write a formula to control the number of times a value is computed.

The previous section demonstrated how to print the numbers one to ten using a **while** statement. The following does the same task with a **for** statement:

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

### Three Parts of the for Statement

The **for** statement is more complex than the **while** statement; its controlling expressions have three parts.

The first part, shown here in italics

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

sets up the initial condition. The second part

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

tests whether more iterations should be performed. **bc** performs this test *before* it executes the statements that are subordinate to the **for** statement. If the test fails, no more iterations are performed.

The third part

```
for (i=1; i <= 10; ++i) i
```

is performed at the end of each iteration. In practically every instance, this part of the **for** statement modifies the value of the variable that the second part tests.

Taken together, these statements (1) set **i** to zero; (2) check whether **i** is less than or equal to ten; (3) if **i** proves to be so, prints **i**, and then increases it by one.

The following example of the **for** statement adds the squares of the numbers one through ten, prints each square, and then prints the sum of the squares at the end.

```
sum = 0
for (n=1; n <= 10; ++n) {
    sq = n * n
    sq
    sum += sq
}
sum
```

The result is:

```
1
4
9
16
25
36
49
64
81
100
385
```

### ***Similarities Between the for and while Statements***

To illustrate the similarity between the **for** statement and the simpler **while** statement, the following rewrites the above example, substituting the **while** for the **for**:

```
sum = 0
n = 1
while (n <= 10) {
    sq = n * n
    sq
    sum += sq
    ++n
}
sum
```

You should notice one difference when you enter this example. In the **while** version of the example, the

```
++n
```

prints out the new value of **n**, whereas in the **for** example, the value is not printed.



## Functions in bc

**bc** allows you to name routines that you use repeatedly. You can then call them by name without having to retype them; obviously, this can be a great time-saver. These named routines are called *functions*. This section shows you how to define and use functions for your **bc** calculations.

### Example of Function Use

The following example defines a function that calculates the area of a circle from its radius.

```
scale = 5
pi = 3.14159
define area (radius) {
    r2 = radius * radius
    return (pi * r2);
}
area (1.00);
area (2.00);
area (56);
```

The results will be:

```
3.14159
12.56636
9852.02624
```

The **define** keyword tells **bc** that you are defining a function. The name of the function follows. Then, in parentheses, come the *parameters* of the function. In this example, the only parameter, or *argument*, of the function is **radius**. Most functions have arguments, but they are not mandatory.

The **return** statement defines the value of the function. In the area example, the expression:

```
area (1.00)
```

references the function **area**. **bc** then performs the calculation described by your definition of the function **area**. The number

```
1.00
```

is substituted wherever the parameter **radius** is shown.

The statement

```
r2 = radius * radius
```

is then executed, yielding this result:

```
1.00
```

Then, the statement

```
return (pi * r2)
```

calculates the area and returns its value. The statement

```
area (1.00)
```

then has the value calculated in the return statement.

### **Functions Using Other Functions**

Functions in **bc** perform calculations using the same expressions as the rest of the **bc** program. This includes the use of functions. The **area** program can be written using another function, **sq**, to calculate the square of a number:

```
scale = 5
pi = 3.14159
define sq (number) {
    return (number * number)
}
define area (radius) {
    return (sq (radius) * pi)
}
area (1.00);
area (2.00);
area (56);
```

Again, the results will be identical:

```
3.14159
12.56636
9852.02624
```

### **Functions That Call Themselves**

Not only can functions call other functions and perform regular calculations; a function can use itself in calculations. An example of this is the Fibonacci calculation:

```
define fib (f) {
    if (f==0) return (0)
    if (f==1) return (1)
    if (f > 1) return (fib (f-1) + fib (f-2))
}
fib (5)
fib (20)
```

Fibonacci numbers are defined in the following way: Fibonacci number zero is zero; similarly, Fibonacci number one is one. Any other Fibonacci number is defined as the sum of the two previous Fibonacci numbers. Fibonacci numbers are defined only for non-negative integers.

The defined function **fib** follows this definition by returning zero if the number requested is zero and one if the argument is one. If the number is neither of these, then the function calls itself to calculate the previous two numbers of the series and adds them together.

### **The auto Statement**

Many functions that call other functions, including themselves, may require variables that are not changeable by the rest of the program. This is signalled to **bc** by the **auto** statement:

```
auto var1, var2
```

This declares **var1** and **var2** as local to the function that contains them.

To illustrate the use of **auto**, the following **bc** program calculates the factorial of a number:

```
define factorial (number) {
    auto value, i
    value = 1
    for (i = 1; i <= number; ++i) value *= i
    return (value)
}
value = 3
factorial (value)
i = 99
factorial (20)
value
i
```

The result is:

```
6
2432902008176640000
3
99
```

The first number, 6, results from:

```
factorial (value)
```

The second number is from:

```
factorial (20)
```

The last two numbers are from **value** and **i**, and are included to demonstrate that the variables in the function **factorial** appearing in this statement:

```
auto value, i
```

are separate from the variables of the same name in the rest of the program.

If the function calls itself, as the **fib** example does above, any variable names noted in the **auto** statement are handled separately for each call of the function.

## Programs in a File

Because its programs can be quite complex, **bc** lets you keep them in files. This lets you build a library of **bc** programs and functions that can be called up easily.

### Using a Program From a File

To illustrate the use of programs stored in a file, type the following example into file **fib.bc** using the editor of your choice. The program defines the function **fib**:

```
define fib (f) {
    if (f==0) return (0)
    if (f==1) return (1)
    if (f > 1) return (fib (f-1) + fib (f-2))
}
```

To use a **bc** program that has been stored in a file, enter the file name on the **bc** command line, like

this:

```
bc fib.bc
```

The function definition will be read in by **bc** and ready for your use. To use the function, simply type the function name with parameters.

So, if you type:

```
bc fib.bc
fib (6)
quit
```

**bc** will reply:

```
8
```

### *Using Libraries*

You can enter several useful programs in their own files and call them into **bc** at the same time. The following example creates another function that calculates the sum of the squares of integers up to a given number. Enter it into COHERENT, and name it **sumsq.bc**:

```
define sumsq (number) {
    auto i, sum
    sum = 0
    for (i = number; i > 0; --i) sum += i ^ 2
    return (sum)
}
```

Now, you can use the **sumsq** function to print the sum of the squares for each number from one to ten:

```
bc sumsq.bc
for (i = 1; i <= 10; ++i) sumsq (i)
quit
```

The result is:

```
1
5
14
30
55
91
140
204
285
385
quit
```

You can use the two functions stored in a file to print the difference between the sum of the squares of numbers, and the Fibonacci number:

```
bc fib.bc sumsq.bc
for (i = 1; i <= 10; ++i) sumsq (i) - fib (i)
quit
```

The result of this questionable computation is:

```
0
4
12
27
50
83
127
183
251
330
```

### ***The bc Library***

COHERENT provides an extended library to go with **bc**. It includes the following functions:

```
atan(z)  arctangent of z
cos(z)   cosine of z
exp(z)   exponential function of z
j(n,z)   nth order Bessel function of z
ln(z)    natural logarithm of z
pi       the value of pi to 100 digits
sin(z)   sine of z
```

The library is stored in file **/usr/lib/lib.b**. To use the library, invoke the **bc** command with the **-l** option.

To show how the library can be used in your work the following example computes the sine of an angle of one-third radian with scale set to 20:

```
bc -l
scale = 20
sin (1/3)
quit
```

The result is:

```
.32719469679615224418
```

## ***Summary***

The Lexicon entry for **bc** summarizes its commands, features, and libraries. It will also refer you to related commands and functions.



---

# Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor

---

**m4** is a macro processor for the COHERENT system. It is a powerful and flexible text processing tool. You can tell it, with a great degree of generality, to search for macro names and replace them with other strings. Macros can also take arguments.

**m4** is useful as a front end for the COHERENT assembler **as**, which has no built-in macro facility. It is also useful for higher-level languages like C, as well as for other applications that require replacement of text.

**m4** also has powerful facilities for manipulating files, making decisions conditionally, selecting substrings, and performing arithmetic, so it is useful for processing forms.

The command

```
m4 [ file ... ]
```

invokes **m4**. **m4** reads each *file* in the order given on the command line; if no *file* is given, **m4** reads from the standard input. The *file* '-' also indicates the standard input; this allows you to perform interactive input while **m4** is processing files. **m4** reports any *file* that it cannot open, and eliminates it from the input stream.

**m4** writes its output to the standard output stream. As with other COHERENT commands, the optional output redirection specification *>outfile* on the command line redirects the output into *outfile*.

## Definitions and Syntax

**m4** reads text one line at a time from its input stream. When it reads a line of text, it scans the line for a macro that you have defined. A legal macro name is a string of alphanumeric characters (letters, digits, underscore '\_'), the first of which is not a digit. **m4** recognizes the macro name only if it is surrounded by nonalphanumeric characters (i.e., spaces or newline characters) on both sides.

When **m4** finds a macro, it removes it from the input stream and replaces it with its definition. It then writes the resulting modified text (called *replacement text*), onto the input stream. **m4** then reads another line from the input stream, and continues processing.

Text that is contained within single quotation marks is quoted (i.e., is contained between a grave mark ` on the left and an apostrophe ' on the right). All other text is *unquoted*. **m4** searches only unquoted text for macros.

A *macro call* can be either a macro or a macro immediately followed by a set of arguments:

```
macroname(arg1, ..., argn)
```

A set of arguments must start with a left parenthesis that follows the macro immediately (i.e., no space can come between the macro and the left parenthesis). The entire argument set must be enclosed by balanced, unquoted parentheses: parentheses may appear within the text of an argument, but they must always come in balanced pairs. A single left or right parenthesis may be passed by quoting it, e.g. '(' or ')

Arguments are separated commas that are both not inside single quotes or inside an inner set of unquoted parentheses. **m4** strips from each argument all leading unquoted spaces, tabs, and newlines. It processes the text of each argument in the same manner that it processes ordinary text; that is, it removes, evaluates, and replaces any recognized macro calls *before* it stores the

argument text for possible use within the replacement text. If you wish to pass a macro name or an entire macro call as an argument, it must be quoted. **m4** stores the values of the first nine arguments for possible use in the replacement text. It processes arguments after the ninth, but throws away the results.

**m4** does not search quoted text for macros. Instead, it removes the quotation marks and copies the text to the standard output unchanged. Quotes can be nested; that is, quoted text can contain other blocks of quoted text. **m4** removes only the outermost level of quotation marks each time it reads a piece of quoted text. This aids in delaying macro expansion in text until the second (or later) time the text is read by **m4**.

**m4** includes numerous predefined macros, which perform various functions. The remainder of this document describes the predefined macros in detail. The final section is a summary, which contains an alphabetized list and brief description of each predefined macro.

### Defining Macros

The macro

```
define(`name', `definition')
```

defines a macro *name* and its replacement text *definition*. **m4** replaces every subsequent unquoted occurrence of *name* with *definition*, as described above. For example, the **m4** input

```
define(`her', `COHERENT')
To know, know, know her
Is to love, love, love her ...
```

produces the output

```
To know, know, know COHERENT
Is to love, love, love COHERENT...
```

*name* should usually be quoted. If it is not quoted and it is being redefined, **m4** sees its old *definition* as the first argument to **define**, which will not have the intended effect. Similarly, *definition* should be quoted if the macro names that occur in it should not be replaced.

Any legal macro name may be the first argument of a **define**. If you redefine a predefined macro, its original function is lost and cannot be recovered.

As noted above, **m4** recognizes a macro name only if it is surrounded by non-alphanumeric characters. For example,

```
define(`her', `COHERENT')
Coherent software is reliable software.
```

produces the output

```
Coherent software is reliable software.
```

**m4** does not recognize the characters **her** in the word **Coherent** as a macro name.

The value of the **define** macro is the null or empty string (the string which contains no characters). In other words, **m4** puts nothing (the null string) back on its input stream when it processes a **define** call.

Like predefined macros, user-defined macros may take arguments. **m4** replaces the string  $\$n$  in the macro definition with the value of the  $n$ th argument, where  $n$  is a digit (1 to 9). It replaces  $\$0$  with the macro name. If the argument set contains fewer than  $n$  arguments, **m4** replaces  $\$n$  with the null string. **m4** uses functional notation to specify argument sets. Unlike a normal function,

## TUTORIALS



however, an **m4** macro does not require a fixed number of arguments. The same macro may be called with or without an argument set, or with argument sets containing different numbers of arguments.

The following macro concatenates its arguments:

```
define(`cat', $1$2$3$4$5$6$7$8$9)
```

Then

```
cat(one, `two', ``three'', `four, four ',
    five(also,),,seven)
```

becomes

```
onetwo`three'four, four five(also,)seven
```

A more complex definition is:

```
define(`comma', ``$0 (which looks like `,')'')
```

This turns each subsequent unquoted occurrence of

```
comma
```

into

```
comma (which looks like `,')
```

Two sets of quotation marks around the replacement text are necessary. When **m4** reads this call to macro **define**, the resultant argument text is:

```
comma
```

for the *name* and

```
`$0 (which looks like `,')
```

for the *definition*. When **m4** sees the text

```
comma that is not quoted
```

it evaluates and replaces the now-defined macro name **comma** to produce the text

```
`comma (which looks like `,')' that is not quoted
```

on the *input* stream. Because **comma** appears inside a set of quotation marks, **m4** does not treat it as a macro name. For the same reason, the string `'` also passes through unmodified. The final output is:

```
comma (which looks like `,') that is not quoted
```

When the predefined macro **dumpdef** is used without arguments, it returns the names and definitions of all defined macros. For each macro, it returns its quoted name, a tab character, and then its quoted definition; no definition is given for a predefined macro. When used with arguments,

```
dumpdef(name)
```

returns the quoted definition of each macro name that is appears as an argument.

The predefined macro

```
undefine(`name')
```

removes a macro definition. As noted for **define** above, the argument must be quoted to have the desired effect. **undefine** ignores arguments which are not defined macro names. The value of the **undefine** call is the null string. If a predefined macro is undefined, its original function cannot be recovered.

### **Input Control**

The predefined macro **changequote** changes the quote characters. For example:

```
changequote( {, } )
```

makes the quote characters the left and right braces. It also removes the effect of the previously defined quotation characters. Missing arguments default to ``` for open quotation and `'` for close quotation. Thus, **changequote** without arguments restores the original quote characters ``` and `'`. If the arguments are identical, the nesting ability of quotation marks is temporarily lost. Instead, the first instance of the new quote character turns on quoting and the next instance turns off quoting. The value of the **changequote** call is the null string.

The predefined macro **dnl** (delete to newline) “eats” all characters from the input stream up to and including the next newline and returns the null string. It is particularly useful in a string of **define** macro calls. Although **m4** replaces each **define** by the null string, newlines often separate macro definitions, and **m4** copies the newlines to the output stream unchanged. Two ways of using **dnl** are:

```
define(this, that)dnl
define(something, else)dnl

dnl(define(this, that), define(something, else))
```

The first examples use **dnl** without arguments. The final example uses **dnl** with an argument set, which **m4** processes (performing each **define**) and subsequently ignores. The following section describes an alternative (and generally preferable) method of eliminating extraneous newlines in a sequence of **define** calls.

**m4** includes two decision-making macros. The predefined macros with the form above, this call of **ifdef** compares *arg1* and *arg2*, and returns *arg3* if they are equal. Otherwise, it compares *arg4* and *arg5*. It returns *arg6* if they are equal, *arg7* otherwise. If more than seven arguments are present and *arg4* and *arg5* are not equal, **ifndef** compares *arg7* and *arg8*. It returns *arg9* if they are equal and the null string otherwise.

In addition to each *file* specified in the command line, any other accessible file may be included in the input stream with the predefined macro

```
include(file)
```

**m4** replaces this macro call on the input stream with the entire contents of the specified *file*. If *file* cannot be accessed, **include** causes a fatal error; **m4** prints an error message and exits. The alternative predefined macro

```
sinclude(file)
```

functions exactly like **include**, except that it does not print an error message and stop processing if *file* is inaccessible.

## Output Control

**m4** maintains ten output streams, numbered zero through nine. Stream 0 is the standard output, where **m4** normally directs its output. Streams 1 through 9 are temporary files. The predefined macro

```
divert(n)
```

diverts output away from stream 0, appending it instead to stream *n*. Any *n* outside the range 0 to 9 causes output to be thrown away until the next **divert** call. **divert** without any arguments or with a nonnumeric argument is equivalent to **divert(0)**. The value of a **divert** call is the null string.

The preceding section described the use of **dnl** to eliminate extraneous newlines on the output stream when processing a sequence of **define** calls. A more readable method of eliminating the newlines is to precede the definitions with **divert(-1)** and follow them with **divert**. **m4** then diverts the extraneous newlines to the nonexistent stream -1.

The predefined macro

```
undivert(streams)
```

fetches text diverted to one or more temporary streams. It appends the text from the specified *streams* in the given order to the *current* output stream. **m4** does not allow diverted text to be undiverted back to the same stream. **undivert** with no arguments undiverts all diversions in numerical order. The value of **undivert** is the null string; undiverted text is *not* scanned for macro calls, but is simply moved from one place to another. **m4** automatically undiverts all diversions in numerical order to the standard output (stream 0) at the end of processing.

The predefined macro **divnum** returns the current diversion number.

The predefined macro

```
errprint(message)
```

sends the given *message* to the standard error stream. The value of **errprint** is the null string.

## String Manipulation

The predefined macro

```
substr(string, start, count)
```

returns a substring of a string of characters. The first argument *string* can be anything. The second argument *start* is a number giving the starting position of the desired substring in *string*. Position 0 is the leftmost character of *string*, position 1 is the next character to the right, and so on. If *start* is negative, the orientation switches to the right. Position -1 is the rightmost character of *string*, position -2 is the character to its left, and so on. The third argument *count* specifies the length and direction of the substring. Zero returns the null string. A positive *count* returns a substring consisting of the character addressed by *start* and *count*-1 characters to the right of it. A negative number does the same thing, but to the left. If *count* is omitted, it is assumed to be of the same sign as *start* and large enough to extend to the end of *string* in that direction. If *start* is omitted, it is assumed to be 0 if *count* is positive or omitted, or -1 if *count* is negative. For example:

```
define(`alpha', `abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz')
substr(alpha, , )
```

returns

```
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
```

Here both *start* and *count* are omitted and are therefore assumed to be 0 and 26, respectively.

```
substr(alpha, 0, 6)
substr(alpha, , 6)
```

both return

```
abcdef
```

Similarly,

```
substr(alpha, , -6)
substr(alpha, 21, )
```

both return

```
vwxyz
```

Finally,

```
substr(alpha, -6, )
substr(alpha, 0, 21)
```

both return

```
abcdefghijklmnopqrstu
```

The predefined macro

```
translit(string, characters, replacements)
```

transliterates single characters within a string. It returns *string* with every occurrence of a character specified in *characters* replaced with the corresponding character from *replacements*. If there is no corresponding character, **translit** simply deletes the character. For example:

```
translit(alpha, aeiouy, *+==/)
```

returns

```
*bcd+fgh-jklmn=pqrst/vwxz
```

### **Numeric Manipulation**

**m4** can simulate variables typical of most programming languages by using **define** as the assignment operator. Whenever the defined macro name appears unquoted, **m4** immediately replaces it by its numeric value.

The predefined macros **incr** and **decr** return their argument incremented or decremented by 1. Thus,

```
define(`x', 1234)
incr(x)
```

returns

```
1235
```

**incr** and **decr** assume an argument which is omitted or not a valid number to be 0.

More generally, the predefined macro

**eval**(*expression*)

evaluates an integer-value arithmetic *expression* and returns the resulting value. The operators available, in order of decreasing precedence, are:

( )	Parentheses for grouping
+ -	Unary plus, negation
^ **	Exponentiation
* / %	Multiplication, division, modulus
+ -	Addition, subtraction
> < >= <= == !=	Comparisons
!	Logical negation
&& &	Logical and
	Logical or

The comparisons and logical operators return either 0 (false) or 1 (true). **eval** performs all arithmetic in **long** integers. **eval** reports an error if its argument is not a well-formed expression.

The predefined macro

**len**(*string*)

returns a numeric value corresponding to the length of *string*.

The predefined macro

**index**(*string*, *pattern*)

returns a numeric value corresponding to the first position where *pattern* appears in *string*. If it does not appear, **index** returns -1. Both *pattern* and *string* may be arbitrary strings of any length.

The following example defines a macro **repeat** that repeats its first argument the number of times specified by its second argument.

```
define(`repeat',
  `ifelse(eval($2<=0),1,,`repeat($1,decr($2) )'$1)')
```

The definition is recursive; that is, **repeat** calls itself within its own definition. The entire definition is quoted to defer the evaluation of **ifelse** from when **m4** encounters the definition to when it encounters a **repeat** macro call. Similarly, the recursive **repeat** call is quoted to defer its evaluation within the **ifelse**. **eval** checks if the first argument is less than or equal to 0; if so, it returns 1 (true) and **ifelse** returns the null string. Otherwise, **decr** decrements the count, so each successive recursive call has a smaller second argument, and each call appends a copy of the first argument to the previous result. For example:

```
repeat(`Ho! ',3)
```

produces

```
Ho! Ho! Ho!
```

## COHERENT System Interface

The predefined macro

```
maketemp(string)
```

creates a unique file name for a temporary file. *string* is a six-character string that is normally initialized to **XXXXXX**; **mktemp** replaces all of the **Xs** with a pattern of six numerals that form a unique file name in the directory where temporary files are being written. It is the same as the C library routine **mktemp**. It returns the null string if its argument is less than six characters long.

The predefined macro

```
syscmd(command)
```

performs the given COHERENT *command* and returns the null string. It is the same as the C library routine **system**.

A common use of **syscmd** is to create a file which **m4** subsequently reads with an **include**. For example, to get the output from the COHERENT **date** command:

```
define(`tempfile', maketemp(/tmp/m4XXXXXX))
define(`get_date',
    `syscmd(date >tempfile)``include(tempfile)`')
```

In subsequent input, **m4** replaces each occurrence of **get\_date** with the system date information. The definition of **tempfile** is unquoted, so **m4** executes the **maketemp** call only once (when it processes the **define**), and it creates only one temporary file. On the other hand, the definition of **getdate** is quoted, so **m4** executes **syscmd** and **include** to get the current time and date each time it processes a **getdate** call. The temporary file should be removed with

```
syscmd(rm tempfile)
```

at the end of the **m4** program.

The following example is more complex. It defines a macro **save** which appends a macro definition to a file.

```
define(`save', `syscmd(`cat >>$2 <<\#
define(`$1', `dumpdef(`$1')`)
#
`)'`')
```

The arguments to **define** are the *name*

```
save
```

and the *definition*

```
syscmd(`cat >>$2 <<\#
define(`$1', `dumpdef(`$1')`)
#
`')
```

A typical call of this macro is:

```
save(`sample', `defs.m4')
```

which saves the macro definition of **sample** in a COHERENT file **defs.m4** containing macro

definitions. When **m4** processes this call, the argument of **syscmd** becomes

```
cat >>defs.m4 <<\#
define(`sample',
```

followed by the definition of **sample** returned by **dumpdef**, followed by

```
)
#
```

Then **syscmd** executes the COHERENT **cat** command to append the here document delimited by # to the macro definition file **defs.m4**. The leading # delimiter of the here document is quoted with \ to prevent interpretation by the COHERENT shell. Because **save** uses the character # to delimit the here document, it does not work correctly for macro definitions containing #. For example,

```
save(`save',`defs.m4')
```

does not work as expected.

## Errors

**m4** reports all errors to the standard error stream. An error produces a line of the form

```
m4: line: message
```

where *line* is a decimal line number and *message* describes the error. For example, the error message

```
m4: 7: illegal macro name: ab*c
```

indicates an attempt to **define** a macro with the illegal macro name **ab\*c** in line 7 of the input stream.

The following error messages may occur:

```
cannot open file
eval: invalid expression
eval: missing or unknown operator
eval: missing value
illegal macro name: name
out of space
/tmp open error
unexpected EOF
```

The *file* or *name* will be the file name or macro name which caused the error, or {NULL} if the required argument is omitted.

**m4** does not recognize (and therefore does not report) the most common of **m4** errors, namely invoking recursive macro definitions that never terminate. A simple example is the definition

```
define(`recursive', `recursive')
```

When **m4** subsequently encounters a call of **recursive** in its input stream, it replaces it on the input stream with its definition. Because the definition is another call to **recursive**, **m4** replaces it in turn with its definition; the process never terminates. More complicated examples may involve many macro definitions and may be difficult to discover. If **m4** enters an endless loop, you can terminate it from the keyboard by typing the interrupt character (normally <ctrl-C>) or the kill character (normally <ctrl-\>). If **m4** enters an endless loop while being run in the background, you can terminate it with the **kill** command.

***For More Information***

The Lexicon entry for **m4** gives a summary of its functions and options.



---

# The make Programming Discipline

---

**make** is a utility that relieves you of the drudgery of building a complex C program.

## How Does make Work?

To understand how **make** works, it is first necessary to understand how a C program is built: how COHERENT takes you from the C source code that you write to the executable program that you can run on your computer.

The file of C source code that you write is called a *source module*. When COHERENT compiles a source module, it uses the C code in the source module, plus the code in the header files that the code calls to produce an *object module*. This object module is *not* executable by itself. To create an *executable file*, the object module generated from your source module must be handed to a linker, which links the code in the object module with the appropriate library routines that the object module calls, and adds the appropriate C runtime startup routine.

For example, consider the following C program, called **hello.c**:

```
main()
{
    printf("Hello, world\n");
}
```

When COHERENT compiles the file that contains C code shown above, it generates an object module called **hello.o**. This object module is not executable because it does not contain the code to execute the function **printf**; that code is contained in a library. To create an executable program, you must hand **hello.o** to the linker **ld**, which copies the code for **printf** from a library and into your program, adds the appropriate C runtime startup routine, and writes the executable file called **hello**. This third file, **hello**, is what you can execute on your computer.

The term *dependency* describes the relationship of executable file to object module to source module. The executable program *depends* on the object module, the library, and the C runtime startup. The object module, in turn, depends on the source module and its header files (if any).

A program like **hello** has a simple set of dependencies: the executable file is built from one object module, which in turn is compiled from one source module. If you changed the source module **hello.c**, creating an updated version of **hello** would be easy: you would simply compile **hello.c** to create **hello.o**, which you would link with the library and the runtime startup to create **hello**. COHERENT, in fact, does this for you automatically: all you need to do is type

```
cc hello.c
```

and COHERENT takes care of everything.

On the other hand, the dependencies of a large program can be very complex. For example, the executable file for the MicroEMACS screen editor is built from several dozen object modules, each of which is compiled from a source module plus one or more header files. Updating a program as large as MicroEMACS, even when you change only one source module, can be quite difficult. To rebuild its executable file by hand, you must remember the names of all of the source modules used, compile them, and link them into the executable file. Needless to say, it is very inefficient to recompile several dozen object modules to create an executable when you have changed only one of them.

**make** automatically rebuilds large programs for you. You prepare a file, called a **makefile**, that describes your program's chain of dependencies. **make** then reads your **makefile**, checks to see which source modules have been updated, recompiles only the ones that have been changed, and then relinks all of the object modules to create a new executable file. **make** both saves you time, because it recompiles only the source modules that have changed, and spares you the drudgery of rebuilding your large program by hand.

### **Try make**

The following example shows how easy it is to use **make**.

To see how **make** works, try compiling a program called **factor**. It is built from the following files:

```
atod.c
factor.c
makefile
```

All three are included with your copy of COHERENT.

Use the **cd** command to shift into directory **/usr/src/sample**.

Now, type **make**. **make** will begin by reading **makefile**, which describes all of **factor**'s dependencies. It will then use the **makefile** description to create **factor**. The following will appear on your screen:

```
cc -c factor.c
cc -c atod.c
cc -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm
```

Each of these messages describes an action that **make** has performed. The first shows that **make** is compiling **factor.c**, the second shows that it is compiling **atod.c**, and the third shows that it is linking the compiled object modules **atod.o** and **factor.o** to create the executable file **factor**.

When **make** has finished, the COHERENT prompt will return. To see how your newly compiled program works, type

```
factor 100
```

**factor** will calculate the prime factors of its argument **100**, and print them on the screen.

To see what happens if you try to re-make your file, type **make** again. **make** will run quietly for a moment, and then exit. **make** checked the dates and times of the object modules and their corresponding source modules and saw that the object modules had a time later than that of the source modules. Because no source module changed, there was no need to recompile an object module or relink the executable file, so **make** quietly exited.

To see what happens when one of the source modules changes, try the following. Use the MicroEMACS screen editor to open the file **factor.c** for editing. Insert the following line into the comments at the top, immediately following the **/\***:

```
* This comment is for test purposes only.
```

Now exit. Type **make** once again. This time, you will see the following on your screen:

```
cc -O -c factor.c
cc -O -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm
```

Because you altered the source module **factor.c**, its time was later than that of its corresponding object module, **factor.o**. When **make** compared the times of **factor.c** and **factor.o**, it noted that

## **TUTORIALS**

**factor.c** had been altered. It then recompiled **factor.c** and relinked **factor.o** and **atod.o** to re-create the executable file **factor**. **make** did not touch the source module **atod.c** because **atod.c** had not been changed since the last time it was compiled.

As you can see, **make** greatly simplifies the construction of a C program that uses more than one source module.

## Essential make

Although **make** is a powerful program, its basic features are easy to master. This section will show you how to construct elementary **make** scripts.

### The makefile

When you invoke **make**, it searches the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH** for a file called **makefile**. As noted earlier, the **makefile** is a text file that describes a C program's dependencies. It also describes the type of program you wish to build, and the commands for building it.

A **makefile** has three basic parts.

First, the **makefile** describes the executable file's dependencies. That is, it lists the object modules needed to create the executable file. The name of the executable file is always followed by a colon ':' and then by the names of files from which the target file is generated.

For example, if the program **feud** is built from the object modules **hatfield.o** and **mccoy.o**, you would type:

```
feud:    hatfield.o mccoy.o
```

If the files **hatfield.o** and **mccoy.o** do not exist, **make** knows to create them from the source modules **hatfield.c** and **mccoy.c**.

Second, the **makefile** holds one or more *command* lines. The command line gives the command to compile the program in question. The only difference between a **makefile** command line and an ordinary **cc** command is that a **makefile** command line *must* begin with a space or a tab character.

For example, the **makefile** to generate the program **feud** must contain the following command line:

```
cc -o feud hatfield.o mccoy.o
```

For a detailed description of the **cc** command and its options, refer to the entry for **cc** in the Lexicon.

Third, the **makefile** lists all of the header files that your program uses. These are given so that **make** can check if they were modified since your program was last compiled. For example, if the program **hatfield.c** used the header file **shotgun.h** and **mccoy.c** used the header files **rifle.h** and **pistol.h**, the **makefile** to generate **feud** would include the following lines:

```
hatfield.o: shotgun.h
mccoy.o: rifle.h pistol.h
```

Thus, the entire **makefile** to generate the program **feud** is as follows:

```
feud: hatfield.o mccoy.o
    cc -o feud hatfield.o mccoy.o

hatfield.o: shotgun.h
mccoy.o: rifle.h pistol.h
```

A **makefile** may also contain *macro definitions* and *comments*. These are described below.

### ***Building a Simple makefile***

The program **factor** is built from two source modules, **factor.c** and **atod.c**. No header files are used. The **makefile** contains the following two lines:

```
factor: factor.o atod.o
    cc -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm
```

The first line describes the dependency for the executable file **factor** by naming the two object modules needed to build it. The second line gives the command needed to build **factor**. The option **-lm** at the end of the command line tells **cc** that this program needs the mathematics library **libm** when the program is linked. No header file dependencies are described because these programs use no special header files. (Header files are described by the **#include** preprocessor instruction.)

### ***Comments and Macros***

You can embed comments within a **makefile**. A *comment* is a line of text that is ignored; this lets you "document" the file, so that whoever reads it will now know what it is for. **make** ignores all lines that begin with a pound sign '#'. For example, you may wish to include the following information in your **makefile** for **factor**:

```
# This makefile generates the program "factor".
# "factor" consists of the source modules "factor.c" and
# "atod.c". It uses the standard mathematics library
# "libm", but it requires no special header files.
# "-f" lets you use printf for floating-point numbers.
```

```
factor: factor.o atod.o
    cc -f -o factor factor.o atod.o -lm
```

Anyone who reads this file will know immediately what it is for by looking at the comments.

**make** also lets you define macros within your **makefile**. A *macro* is a symbol that represents a string of text. Usually, a macro is defined at the beginning of the **makefile** using a *macro definition statement*. This statement uses the following syntax:

```
SYMBOL = string of text
```

Thereafter, when you use the symbol in your **makefile**, it must begin with a dollar sign '\$' and be enclosed within parentheses.

Macros eliminate the chore of retyping long strings of file names. For example, with the **makefile** for the program **factor**, you may wish to use a macro to substitute for the names of the object modules out of which it is built. This is done as follows:

```
# This makefile generates the program "factor".
# "factor" consists of the source modules "factor.c" and
# "atod.c". It uses the standard mathematics library
# "libm", but it requires no special header files.
# "-f" lets you use printf for floating-point numbers.
```

```
OBJ = factor.o atod.o
factor: $(OBJ)
    cc -o factor $(OBJ) -lm
```

The macro **OBJ** is used in this **makefile**. If you use a macro that has not been defined, **make** substitutes an empty string for it. The use of a macro makes sense when generating large files out of a dozen or more source modules. You avoid retyping the source module names, and potential errors are avoided.

Note that you can define macros in the **makefile**, in the environment, or as a command-line argument. A macro defined as a command-line argument always overrides a definition of the same macro in the environment or in the **makefile**. Normally, a definition in a **makefile** overrides a definition of the same macro name in the environment; however, the **-e** option to **make** forces definitions in the environment to override those in the **makefile**.

### Setting the Time

As noted above, **make** checks to see which source modules have been modified before it regenerates your C program. This is done to avoid wasteful recompiling of source modules that have not been updated.

**make** determines that a source module has been altered by comparing its date against that of the target program. For example, if the object module **factor.o** was generated on March 16, 1987, 10:52:47 A.M., and the source module **factor.c** was modified on March 20, 1987, at 11:19:06 A.M., **make** will know that **factor.c** needs to be recompiled because it is *younger* than **factor.o**.

## Building a Large Program

As shown earlier, **make** can ease the task of generating a large program. The following is the **makefile** used to generate the screen editor MicroEMACS:

```
# makefile for "MicroEMACS"

CFLAGS = -O
LFLAGS = /usr/lib/libterm.a
OBJ=ansi.o basic.o buffer.o display.o file.o \
    fileio.o line.o main.o random.o region.o \
    search.o spawn.o termio.o vt52.o window.o \
    word.o tcap.o

me: $(OBJ)
    cc -o me $(OBJ) $(LFLAGS)

$(OBJ):    ed.h
```

The first line is commentary that describes the file.

The next five lines define macros that are used on the target and command line. The first macros will be discussed in the following section. The second macro substitutes for the name of a special library that is needed to create this program. The third macro, which is three lines long, stands for the names of the source modules that produce MicroEMACS. A backslash '**\**' must be used to tell **make** that the definition is carried over onto the next line.

The next line names the target file (**me**) and the files used to construct it, here represented by the macro **OBJ**.

Next comes the command line, which gives the compilation to be performed. This line *must* begin with a space or a tab.

The last line lists the header file **ed.h**, which is required by all of the files used to generate MicroEMACS.

### **Command Line Options**

Although **make** is controlled by your **makefile**, you can also control **make** by using command line options. These allow you to alter **make**'s activity without having to edit your **makefile**.

Options must follow the command name on the command line and begin with a hyphen, '-', using the following format. The square brackets merely indicate that you can select any of these options; do *not* type the brackets when you use the **make** command:

```
make [ -deinpqrst ] [ -f filename ]
```

Each option is described below.

- d** (debug) **make** describes all of its decisions. You can use this to debug your **makefile**.
- e** "Environment" option: force definitions in the environment to override those in the **makefile**. For example, if the **makefile** defines

```
foo=makefoo
```

and the environment defines

```
foo=envfoo
```

then **\$(foo)** expands to **makefoo** if you use the command **make** but expands to **envfoo** if you use the command **make -e**.

#### **-f filename**

(file) option tells **make** that its commands are in a file other than **makefile**. For example, the command

```
make -f smith
```

tells **make** to use the file **smith** rather than **makefile**. If you do not use this option, **make** searches the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH**, and then the current directory for a file entitled **makefile** or **Makefile** to execute.

- i** (ignore errors) **make** ignores error returns from commands and continues processing. Normally, **make** exits if a command returns an error status.
- n** (no execution) **make** tests dependencies and modification times but does not execute commands. This option is especially helpful when constructing or debugging a **makefile**.
- p** (print) **make** prints all macro definitions and target descriptions.
- q** Return a zero exit status if the targets are up to date. Do not execute any commands.
- r** (rules) **make** does not use the default macros and commands from **/usr/lib/makemacros** and **/usr/lib/makeactions**. These files will be described below.
- s** (silent) **make** does not print each command line as it is executed.
- t** (touch) **make** changes the modification time of each executable file and object module to the current time. This suppresses recreation of the executable file, and recompilation of the object modules. Although this option is used typically after a purely cosmetic change to a source module or after adding a definition to a header file, it must be used with great caution.

### Other Command Line Features

In addition to the options listed above, you may include other information on your command line.

First, you can define macros on the command line. A macro definition must *follow* any command line options. Arguments, including spaces, must be surrounded by quotation marks, as spaces are significant to the shell. For example, the command line

```
make -n -f smith "OPT=-DTEST"
```

tells **make** to run in the *no execution* mode, reading the file **smith** instead of **makefile**, and defining the macro **OPT** to mean **-DTEST**.

The ability to define macros on the command line means that you can create a **makefile** using macros that are not yet defined; this greatly increases **make**'s flexibility and makes it even more helpful in creating and debugging large programs. In the above example, you can define a command line as follows:

```
cc $(OPT) example.c
```

When you define the macro **OPT** on the command line, then the program is compiled using the **-DTEST** option, which defines the preprocessor variable **TEST**.

As noted above, a macro defined on the command line always overrides an identically named macro defined either in the environment or in the **makefile**.

Another command-line feature is the ability to change the name of the *target file* on the command line. Normally, the target file is the executable file that you wish to create, although, as will be seen, it does not have to be. As will be discussed below, a **makefile** can name more than one target file. **make** normally assumes that the target is the first target file named in **makefile**. However, the command line may name one or more target files at the end of the line, after any options and any macro definitions.

To see how this works, recall the program **factor** described above. **factor** is generated out of the source modules **factor.c** and **atod.c**. The command

```
make atod.o
```

with the **makefile** outlined above would produce the following **cc** command line:

```
cc -c atod.c
```

if the object module **atod.o** does not exist or is outdated. Here, **make** compiles **atod.c** to create the target specified in the **make** command line, that is, **atod.o**, but it does not create **factor**. This feature allows you to apply your **makefile** to only a portion of your program.

The use of special, or *alternative*, target files is discussed below.

### Advanced make

This section describes some of **make**'s advanced features. For most of your work, you will not need these features; however, if you create an extremely complex program, you will find them most helpful.

### Default Rules

The operation of **make** is governed by a set of *default rules*. These rules were designed to simplify the compilation of a typical program; however, unusual tasks may require that you bypass or alter the default rules.

To begin, **make** uses information from the files `/usr/lib/makemacros` and `/usr/lib/makeactions` to define default macros and compilation commands. **make** uses the commands in **makemacros** and **makeactions** whenever the **makefile** specifies no explicit regeneration commands. The command line option **-r** tells **make** not to use the macros and actions defined in **makemacros** and **makeactions**.

As shown in earlier examples, **make** knows by default to generate the object module **atod.o** from the source module **atod.c** with the command

```
cc -c atod.c
```

The macro **.SUFFIXES** defines the suffixes **make** knows about by default. Its definition in **makemacros** includes both the **.o** and **.c** suffixes.

**make's** files **makemacros** and **makeactions** use pre-defined macros to increase their scope and flexibility. These are as follows:

- \$<** This stands for the name of the file or files that cause the action of a default rule. For example, if you altered the file **atod.c** and then invoked **make** to rebuild the executable file **factor**, **\$<** would then stand for **atod.c**.
- \$\*** This stands for the name of the target of a default rule with its suffix removed. If it had been used in the above example, **\$\*** would have stood for **atod**.  
**\$<** and **\$\*** work *only* with default rules; these macros will not work in a **makefile**.
- \$?** This stands for the names of the files that cause the action and that are younger than the target file.
- \$@** This stands for the target name.

You can use the macros **\$?** and **\$@** in a **makefile**. For example, the following rule updates the archive **libx.a** with the objects defined by macro **\$(OBJ)** that are out of date:

```
libx.a:      $(OBJ)
ar rv libx.a $?
```

**makemacros** also contains default commands that describe how to build additional kinds of files:

- **AS** and **ASFLAGS** call the *assembler* to assemble **.o** files out of source modules written in assembly language rather than C.
- **YACC** and **YFLAGS** call **yacc** to build **.o** or **.c** files from **.y** files.
- **LEX** and **LFLAGS** call **lex** to build **.o** or **.c** files from **.l** files.

You can change the default rules of **make** by changing them in **makeactions** and changing the definition of any of the macros as given in **makemacros**.



### Source File Path

If a file is not specified with an absolute path name beginning with '/', **make** first looks for the file in the current directory. If the file is not found in the current directory, **make** searches for it in the list of directories specified by the macro **\$(SRCPATH)**. This allows you to compile a program in an object directory separate from the source path.

For example

```
export SRCPATH=/usr/src/local/me
make
```

or alternatively

```
make SRCPATH=/usr/src/local/me
```

builds objects in the current directory as specified by the **makefile** from sources kept in directory **/usr/src/local/me**. To test changes to a program built from several source files, copy only the files you wish to change to the current directory; **make** will use the local sources and find the other other sources on the **\$(SRCPATH)**.

Note that **\$(SRCPATH)** can be a single directory, as in the above example, or a list of directories. In the latter case, each entry in the list must be separated by a colon ':', as described in the Lexicon entry for the function **path()**.

### Double-Colon Target Lines

An alternative form of target line simplifies the task of maintaining archives. This form uses the double colon "::" instead of a single colon ':' to separate the name of the target from those of the files on which it depends.

A target name can appear on only one single-colon target line, whereas it can appear on several double-colon target lines. The advantage of using the double-colon target lines is that **make** will remake the target by executing the commands (or its default commands) for the *first* such target line for which the target is older than a file on which it depends.

For example, for the program **factor** described earlier, assume that two versions of the source modules **factor.c** and **atod.c** exist: **factora.c** plus **atoda.c**, and **factorb.c** plus **atodb.c**. The **makefile** would appear as follows:

```
OBJ1 = factora.o atoda.o
OBJ2 = factorb.o atodb.o

factor:: $(OBJ1)
    cc -c $(OBJ1) -lm

factor:: $(OBJ2)
    cc -c $(OBJ2) -lm
```

This **makefile** tells **make** to do the following: (1) Check if either **factora.o** or **atoda.o** is younger than **factor**. (2) If either one is, regenerate **factor** using this version of these files. (3) If neither **factora.o** nor **atoda.o** is younger than **factor**, then check to see if either **factorb.o** or **atodb.o** is younger than **factor**. (4) If either of them is, then regenerate **factor** using the youngest version of these files.

This technique allows you to maintain multiple versions of source files in the same directory and selectively recompile the most recently updated version without having to edit your **makefile** or otherwise trick the system.

You cannot target a file in both a single-colon and a double-colon target line.

### **Alternative Uses**

**make** is a program that helps you construct complex things from a number of simpler things.

**make** usually is used to build complex C programs: the executable file is made from object modules, which are made from source modules and header files. However, **make** can be used to create any type of file that is constructed from one or more source modules. For example, an accountant can use **make** to generate monthly reports from daily inventories: all the accountant has to do is prepare a **makefile** that describes the dependencies (that is, the name of the monthly report they wish to create and the names of the daily inventories from which it is created), and the command required to generate the monthly report. Thereafter, to recreate the report, all the accountant has to do to generate a monthly report is type **make**.

In another example, the **makefile** can trigger program maintenance commands. For example, the target name **backup** might define commands to copy source modules to another directory; typing **make backup** saves a copy of the source modules. Similar uses include removing temporary files, building archives, executing test suites, and printing listings. A **makefile** is a convenient place to keep all the commands used to maintain a program.

The following example shows a **makefile** that defines two special target files, **printall** and **printnew**, to be used with the source files for the program **factor**.

```
# This makefile generates the program "factor".
# "factor" consists of the source modules "factor.c" and
# "atod.c". It uses the standard mathematics library
# libm, but it requires no special header files.

OBJ = factor.o atod.o
SRC = factor.c atod.c

factor: $(OBJ)
    cc -o factor $(OBJ) -lm

# program to print all the updated source modules
# used to generate the program "factor"

printall:
    pr $(SRC) | lpr
    >printnew

printnew: $(SRC)
    pr $? | lpr
    >printnew
```

In this instance, typing the command

```
make printall
```

forces **make** to generate the target **printall** rather than the target **factor**, which is the default as it appears first in the **makefile**. The **pr** and **lpr** commands are then used to print a listing of all files defined by **SRC**. The macro **OBJ** cannot be used with these commands because it would trigger the

printing of the object files, which would not be of much use. It also creates an empty file **prnew**. This new file serves only to record the time the listing is printed. This tactic is performed in order to record the time that the listing was last generated so that **make** will know what files have been updated when you next use **printnew**.

Typing the command

```
make printnew
```

forces **make** to generate the target **printnew** rather than the default target **factor**. **printnew** prints only the files named in the macro **SRC** that have changed since any files were last printed.

### Special Targets

A few target names have special meanings to **make**. The name of each special target begins with **.'** and contains upper-case letters.

The target name **.DEFAULT** defines the default commands **make** uses if it cannot find any other way to build a target. The special target **.IGNORE** in a **makefile** has the same effect as the **-i** command line option. Similarly, **.SILENT** has the same effect as the **-s** command line option.

### Errors

**make** prints "*command* exited with status *n*" and exits if an executed *command* returns an error status. However, it ignores the error status and continues processing if the **makefile** command line begins with a hyphen **'-** or if the **make** command line specifies the **-i** option.

**make** reports an error status and exits if the user interrupts it. It prints "**can't open file**" if it cannot find the specification *file*. It prints "**Target file is not defined**" or "**Don't know how to make target**" if it cannot find an appropriate *file* or commands to generate *target*. Other possible errors include syntax errors in the specification file, macro definition errors, and running out of space. The error messages **make** prints are generally self-explanatory; however, a table of error messages and brief descriptions of them are given in a later section of this manual.

### Exit Status

**make** normally returns a status of zero if it succeeds, and of one if an error occurs. With the **-q** option (described above), **make** returns zero if all files are up to date and two if they are not up to date.

## Where To Go From Here

The Lexicon article on **make** summarizes **make**'s options and features. The source code included with the COHERENT system, such as that for the MicroEMACS screen editor, includes **makefiles**. Studying them will show you how **make** has been used to control the building of large, real-world applications.



---

# nroff, The Text-Formatting Language

---

**nroff** is the COHERENT system's text-formatting language. You provide both the text you want formatted and commands to control the formatting; the commands are embedded within the lines of text. **nroff** will then process the text, following the commands that you embedded in the text, and print the formatted text on the standard output.

This tutorial describes how to work with **nroff**. It assumes you are familiar with the basic features of the COHERENT system. In particular, you should know what a *command* is, what a *file* is, and how to create and edit a file. If you are not familiar with these concepts, read *Using the COHERENT System* before you read this tutorial. Relevant Lexicon articles include the one for **nroff**, which summarizes the material in this tutorial, and those for the related program **troff**, **printer** (which summarizes printer-related information), **hpr**, **epson**, and **lpr**.

## What is nroff?

**nroff** is the text processor for the COHERENT system. A *text processor* is a utility that accepts commands and text, and uses the commands to format the text on a page. The commands may call for simple formatting, such as indenting each new paragraph five spaces, to complex formatting of columns and entire pages.

A file that contains text mixed with **nroff** commands is called a *script*. For example, the following **nroff** script

```
.nr Z 0 5
.nf
I tire of love,
.ti \n+Z
I sometimes tire of rhyme;
.ti \n-Z
But money makes me happy
.ti \n+Z
All the time!
.fi
```

produces the following printed text:

```
I tire of love,
      I sometimes tire of rhyme;
But money makes me happy
      All the time!
```

An **nroff** script allows you to change your output very easily. For example, change the minus sign '-' in line 7 of the **nroff** to a plus sign '+', and the formatted text suddenly becomes:

```
I tire of love,
      I sometimes tire of rhyme;
          But money makes me happy
          All the time!
```

As you can see, **nroff** is a powerful and versatile formatter.

In truth, however, **nroff** is both a text formatter and a text formatting *language*. With **nroff**, you can write your own text-formatting commands to handle automatically the unique requirements of whatever formatting you need.

### **nroff** Input and Output

*Input* is what you give to **nroff**. *Output* is what **nroff** returns to you. If you simply type

```
nroff
```

then **nroff** accepts input from your keyboard, and prints its output on your screen. For example, if you want **nroff** to process the contents of a file named **script.r**, type the command line

```
nroff script.r
```

**nroff** then takes the file **script.r**, processes it, and in a few moments it displays the formatted text on your screen. Note that the suffix **.r** is used by convention to indicate that a file contains an unprocessed **nroff** script.

You can save **nroff**'s output by *redirecting* it into another file. For example, you can redirect **nroff**'s processed output of the file **script.r** into the file named **target** by using the following command:

```
nroff script.r > target
```

### Printing **nroff** Output

The COHERENT system's implementation of **nroff** currently can be used with any variety of printer. COHERENT, however, fully supports three varieties of printer: Epson-compatible dot-matrix printers, printers that use the Hewlett-Packard Page Control Language (PCL) (including the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet and DeskJet families of printers), and any printer that has implemented the PostScript page-control language. The following descriptions assume that you have plugged your printer into a parallel port on your computer, and have installed COHERENT correctly so that it can access your printer.

To print **nroff** output on an Epson-compatible printer, use the commands **epson** and **lpr**. For example, to print the **nroff** output that you have directed into file **text.out**, use the following command:

```
epson text.out | lpr
```

Or, you can pipe the output of **nroff** directly into **epson**, as follows:

```
nroff -ms text.r | epson | lpr
```

In the above example, **text.r** is your input, and **-ms** invokes the **ms** package of macros.

To print on a printer that uses PCL, use the commands **hp** and **hpr**. For example, to print the file **text.out** on a PCL printer, use the command:

```
hp text.out | hpr -B
```

The option **-B** to **hpr** suppresses the printing of a banner page. If you wish, you can pipe the output of **nroff** directly into **hp**, as follows:

```
nroff -ms text.r | hp | hpr -B
```

To access a printer that uses PostScript, use the command **hpr**, but do not use the command **hp**. Also, you must use the **-p** switch to **nroff**, which tells it to generate PostScript output. For example, the following command processes file **text.r** into PostScript output, and passes that output to a PostScript printer:

## TUTORIALS

```
nroff -p -ms text.r | hpr -B
```

All of the above commands are described in their respective entries in the Lexicon. The Lexicon article **printer** summarizes information about using printers with the COHERENT system.

### **nroff Limitations**

Because **nroff** is a text-formatting language rather than a text-formatter *per se*, it makes no assumptions about how you want to lay out your page. It does not automatically leave margins at the top and bottom of pages; it does not automatically number pages; it does not automatically format paragraphs. You must use or create a set of formatting commands, called *macros*, to generate these features. This tutorial will teach you how to write macros that can solve nearly every conceivable formatting problem. As you have seen, too, your copy of the COHERENT system comes with a set of predefined macros, the **-ms** macro package.

### **The ms Macro Package**

A macro package called **-ms** is included with your copy of **nroff**. It provides macros to format paragraphs, produce headers and footers (the areas at the top and bottom of pages, respectively), and perform most other page-formatting tasks. **-ms** is easy to use. The command

```
nroff -ms
```

tells **nroff** to accept input from your keyboard, process it using the **-ms** macro package, and print the output on your screen. The command

```
nroff -ms script.r
```

tells **nroff** to process **script.r** with the **-ms** package and print the output on your terminal; while the command

```
nroff -ms script.r >target
```

redirects the output of **nroff** into the file **target**; and

```
nroff -ms script.r | lpr
```

prints the output on the line printer.

Working with the **-ms** macro package is a good way to gain confidence in working with **nroff** commands. Soon you will learn the correct way to encode **nroff** commands in your scripts.

### **Using this Tutorial**

The only way to learn about **nroff** is to use it. You should type all the examples in this tutorial into your computer and observe how they work. You should also alter the example and examine how your changes affect what **nroff** produces. Don't hesitate to experiment! You can learn more from analyzing why something unexpected happens than you can from simply copying an example that works as you were told it would.

The first section describes how to use **nroff** with the **-ms** macro package. The second section describes how to perform sophisticated formatting. For most users, this chapter contains all the information they need to know.

The rest of the tutorial describes how **nroff** actually works with the input text to produce its output. This will teach you how to write your own **nroff** macros for your special word processing needs.

### The -ms Macro Package

As explained above, **nroff** is the text formatter for the COHERENT system. You give **nroff** a *script* — that is, text interspersed with commands that control its processing; **nroff**, in turn, formats your text in the manner dictated by your commands.

**nroff**'s most outstanding feature is its flexibility: you can control line length, page offset, page length, paragraph format, beginning- and end-of-page format, and every other aspect of formatting a document.

**nroff** has built into it a set of basic commands, called *primitives*, that are used to control formatting. A basic formatting function might require several primitives. For example, formatting a new paragraph requires one primitive to force the printing of the fragment of a line left at the end of the previous paragraph; another primitive to skip a blank line; and a third primitive to indent the first line of the new paragraph. If you were to type directly into your script all the primitives required to control every feature of your document, formatting would be a very difficult task, and mistakes would be common.

Fortunately, another feature of **nroff** makes it easier for you to prepare input: **nroff** allows you to bundle together a group of primitives and give the bundle its own name. Such a bundle is called a *macro*. Whenever you want all the commands in that bundle to be executed, you simply insert the name of the macro into the text. For example, you might group the primitives needed to format a paragraph, and call that bundle **PP**. Then, instead of retyping the primitives, all you need to do is insert the command **.PP** before the start of a paragraph.

**-ms** is a package of macros that are ready for you to use. When you include the option **-ms** on the **nroff** command line, **nroff** automatically uses the macros that have been defined in the **-ms** package. These macros will take care of setting line length and page length, numbering pages, formatting paragraphs, and all other formatting tasks. You do not need to know how **nroff**'s primitives are used in the macros; you only need to know the names of the macros and what they do, so that you can insert them correctly into your text.

Using the **-ms** package is a good way to become accustomed to preparing input for **nroff**, so that the features of the primitives will not seem so alien when you eventually choose to work with them. When you become familiar with **nroff**, you may wish to write your own macro packages, to handle the unique requirements of different types of documents. For now, however, you will find that the **-ms** package will get you up and running with **nroff**.

### Text and Commands

**nroff** input includes both *text* and *commands*. The commands control the processing of the text. **nroff** distinguishes between text and commands by looking at the first character of each input line. If that character is a period or an apostrophe, the line is a *command*; otherwise, it is *text*.

Earlier in this tutorial, you used the **-ms** package to format a text file that had already been prepared for you. To become more accustomed to using **nroff**, try entering the following text into a file that can be formatted later. Use a text editor (either **ed** or MicroEMACS) to create a file named **script2.r** that contains the following text. It is important for this exercise that you break up the lines as they are shown here:



```
London. Michaelmas Term lately over,
and the Lord Chancellor sitting in
Lincoln's Inn Hall. Implacable November weather.
As much mud in the streets, as if the waters
had but newly retired from the face of the
earth, and it would not be wonderful to meet
a Megalosaurus, forty feet long or so, waddling
like an elephantine lizard up Holborn Hill.
```

Note that this file contains no commands; every line is a text line. Process the file with the command:

```
nroff script.r | more
```

The output is piped to **more** so that it will not all rush past your screen. **nroff** will process the text, and in a moment you will see the following:

```
London. Michaelmas Term lately over, and the Lord Chancellor sitting in
Lincoln's Inn Hall. Implacable November weather. As much mud in the
streets, as if the waters had but newly retired from the face of the
earth, and it would not be wonderful to meet a Megalosaurus, forty feet
long or so, waddling like an elephantine lizard up Holborn Hill.
```

When you see this example, the spacing will be different; the spacing for the examples in this tutorial is adjusted to conform to the rest of the tutorial text. Notice that **nroff** automatically adjusts the spacing between words to justify the right margin, even though the input text has a ragged right margin. Each output line contains 65 characters, and each output page contains 66 lines.

Now try processing **script.r** again, this time with the **-ms** macro package. Type

```
nroff -ms script.r | more
```

As you can see, **nroff** again adjusted the spacing to keep a strict right margin. Each line was indented with ten leading spaces, followed by 65 characters of text. The pages output by both the **nroff** command and the **nroff -ms** command both contain 66 lines, but the page built with the **-ms** package left blank lines at the top of the page and printed the page number in a blank space at the bottom of the page. When **nroff** constructs its output, it assumes that your printer prints ten characters per inch (Pica, or 10-pitch spacing) and six lines per inch. Given these assumptions, each page of output from **nroff -ms** fits onto an 8.5 by 11 inch page, with an inch of blank space at the top, at the bottom, and on each side.

As this example shows, **nroff** adjusts the spacing between words to keep a strict right margin. When you type in the text, don't worry about the right margin. You must, however, keep a strict left margin, because when **nroff** encounters a line of text that begins with blank spaces, it breaks the line it was working on and begins a new, indented line.

Also, do not hyphenate words; if you do, **nroff** treats each part as a separate "word" (the first ending with the hyphen character), rather than keeping them joined, as you want.

**nroff** normally interprets as a command every line that begins with a *period* or an *apostrophe*. However, to include an initial apostrophe or period as a literal part of your document, you must place the characters **\&** before the period or apostrophe.

The remainder of this will show you how to use commands in input text to change the appearance of the output. You can control many aspects of the printed document simply by including the appropriate commands within your text.

### Command Names

The name of every **nroff** primitive consists of two lower-case letters. Some commands can also include additional information, or *arguments*. For example, **.sp** is the command to leave vertical space between output lines. The command line

```
.sp
```

leaves one space, whereas

```
.sp 2
```

leaves two spaces. The information that follows the command name on the command line is an argument. Each macro defined in the **-ms** macro package is named with one or two upper-case letters. For example, **.PP** is the name of the macro that begins a new paragraph.

### Paragraphs

Every time you want to begin a new paragraph, enter the *paragraph* command **.PP**; that is, place the command line **.PP** in the text. To test this macro, enter the following text under the name **script3.r**:

```
.PP
It is a truth universally acknowledged,
that a single man in possession of a good fortune,
must be in want of a wife.
.PP
However little known the feelings or views of such
a man may be on first entering a neighbourhood, the
truth is so well fixed in the minds of the surrounding
families, that he is considered as the rightful
property of some one or the other of their daughters.
```

When you process this text with the command

```
nroff -ms script3.r | more
```

the result resembles the following:

```
It is a truth universally acknowledged, that a single man in
possession of a good fortune, must be in want of a wife.
```

```
However little known the feelings or views of such a man may
be on first entering a neighbourhood, the truth is so well fixed in the
minds of the surrounding families, that he is considered as the rightful
property of some one or the other of their daughters.
```

As the output shows, the **.PP** command inserts a blank line before beginning a new paragraph, and indents the first line of the new paragraph by half an inch.

The **-ms** package also provides another paragraph format: the **.IP** command. This macro creates an *indented paragraph*. The **.PP** macro indents only the first line of each paragraph; however, **.IP** indents every line *except* the first. For example,

```
.IP
This is an indented paragraph.
All the lines are indented by
the same amount.
.PP
This is a normal paragraph.
nroff indents the first line
but does not indent the following lines.
```

gives the output

```
    This is an indented paragraph. All the lines are indented by the
    same amount.
```

```
    This is a normal paragraph. nroff indents the first line but does
not indent the following lines.
```

Several options are available for the basic **.IP** macro. You can add two *arguments* to it. **nroff** interprets the first argument after the **.IP** as a *tag* to the paragraph, and it interprets the second argument as the amount of indentation you want. For example,

```
.IP A. 8
This is the first line of text.
nroff indents the following lines by the same
amount as the first.
The indent is eight spaces.
The paragraph includes a tag in the indent.
```

produces

```
A.    This is the first line of text. nroff indents the following lines
      by the same amount as the first. The indent is eight spaces. The
      paragraph includes a tag in the indent.
```

You must make sure the indent leaves enough spaces for the tag. If the tag contains blank spaces, enclose it within quotation marks. To see how this works, enter the following script under the title **script4.r**:

```
.IP "King Lear:" 16
Is man no more than this?
Consider him well.
Thou owest the worm no silk,
the beast no hide,
the sheep no wool,
the cat no perfume...
Unaccommodated man is no more
but such a poor, bare, forked
animal as thou art.
```

When processed with the command

```
nroff -ms script4.r >script4.p
```

you see:

```
King Lear:      Is man no more than this? Consider him well. Thou owest
                  the worm no silk, the beast no hide, the sheep no wool, the
                  cat no perfume... Unaccommodated man is no more but such a
                  poor, bare, forked animal as thou art.
```

As this example shows, this form of the **.IP** macro can be used to format the script for a play.

If you do not want a tag, but merely wish to set the indentation to something other than the default setting of five spaces, then use a pair of quotation marks with nothing between them for the first field:

```
.IP "" 8
```

If you forget the quotation marks, you will not get what you expect: **nroff** will interpret '8' as a tag and use the normal indentation of five spaces.

Once you set the amount of indentation, the new indentation stays in effect until you change it again. For example, if you format a paragraph with

```
.IP "" 8
```

and follow it with another paragraph that begins with **.IP**, **nroff** will also indent the second paragraph by eight spaces. The indentation will remain in effect until you explicitly change it — for example, by beginning a paragraph with

```
.IP "" 6
```

which resets the indent to six spaces.

Normally, **nroff** measures the paragraph indentation from the left margin. Another variation of **IP** allows you to measure the indentation of a new indented paragraph from the left-hand edge of a previous indented paragraph, thus producing *relative indentation*. To do this, enclose the new paragraph between the macros **RS** and **RE** (for **r**elative **i**ndent **s**tart and **r**elative **i**ndent **e**nd). Copy the following script into the file **script5.r**:

```
.IP
And it came to pass in an eveningtide,
that David arose from off his bed ...
and from the roof he saw a woman washing
herself; and the woman was very beautiful
to look upon. And David sent and enquired
after the woman. And one said,
.RS
.IP
Is not this Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam,
the wife of Uriah the Hittite?
.RE
.IP
And David sent messengers and took her; and
she came in unto him, and he ...
and she returned unto her house.
```

When processed through **nroff** with the command

```
nroff -ms script5.r >script5.p
```

the output resembles the following:

And it came to pass in an eveningtide, that David arose from off his bed  
... and from the roof he saw a woman washing herself; and the woman was  
very beautiful to look upon. And David sent and enquired after the woman.  
And one said,

Is not this Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam, the wife of Uriah  
the Hittite?

And David sent messengers and took her; and she came in unto him, and he  
... and she returned unto her house.

You can include any number of indented paragraphs between **.RS** and **.RE**. Also, you can specify tags and different indents just as for ordinary indented paragraphs. You can even nest **.RS** and **.RE** pairs inside each other to produce multiple relative indents. Just remember that an **.RS** must always be balanced by an **.RE**. Type the following into the file **script6.r** to see how **nroff** handles nested flashbacks:

```
.IP
In England during World War II, a captain tells the
story of his Free French bomber squadron.
.RS
.IP
In the early days of the war, a French ship picks up
five men adrift in a small boat. One tells of their
life on Devil's Island.
.RS
.IP
A convict tells others of his past.
.RS
.IP
Publication of anti-Nazi material leads to arrest on
false charges.
.RE
.IP
The convicts escape to help France in the war.
.RE
.IP
When France surrenders, the crew overpowers pro-Vichy
officers and heads for England instead of Marseilles.
.RE
.IP
The captain concludes his story as the bombers return
from a mission.
```

When you process this file with the **-ms** package, the output file **script6.p** should resemble the following:

In England during World War II, a captain tells the story of his Free  
French bomber squadron.

In the early days of the war, a French ship picks up five men  
adrift in a small boat. One tells of their life on Devil's Island.

A convict tells others of his past.

Publication of anti-Nazi material leads to arrest  
on false charges.

The convicts escape to help France in the war.

When France surrenders, the crew overpowers pro-Vichy officers  
and heads for England instead of Marseilles.

The captain concludes his story as the bombers return from a mission.

As you can see, each **.RE** command peels away the current layer of indentation and moves you into the previous one. To return to an even earlier level, you must input the appropriate number of **.RE** commands before you begin a paragraph.

A third type of paragraph is the *quoted* paragraph. It produces a paragraph that is indented on both on the right side and on the left side, in order to set off a quotation from the surrounding text. To produce such a paragraph, precede it with the **.QS** macro and follow it with the **.QE** macro. To break the quotation into different sections, insert a blank line in the text before each line that you want to begin a new section. For example, type the following example as **script7.r**:

Form of Tender of Rescue from Strange Young Gentleman  
to Strange Young Lady at a Fire.

**.QS**

Although through the fiat of a cruel fate, I have been  
debarred the gracious privilege of your acquaintance,  
permit me, Miss [here insert name, if known], the  
inestimable honor of offering you the aid of a true  
and loyal arm against the fiery doom which now  
o'ershadows you with its crimson wing. [This form  
to be memorized, and practiced in private.]

**.QE**

Should she accept, the young gentleman should offer  
his arm - bowing, and observing "Permit me" -  
and so escort her to the fire escape and deposit  
her in it.

After processing with the **-ms** package, the output file **script7.p** should resemble the following:

Form of Tender of Rescue from Strange Young Gentleman to Strange Young  
Lady at a Fire.

Although through the fiat of a cruel fate, I have been  
debarred the gracious privilege of your acquaintance,  
permit me, Miss [here insert name, if known], the  
inestimable honor of offering you the aid of a true  
and loyal arm against the fiery doom which now o'ershadows you  
with its crimson wing. [This form to be memorized, and  
practiced in private.]

Should she accept, the young gentleman should offer his arm - bowing, and  
observing "Permit me" - and so escort her to the fire escape and deposit  
her in it.

## Section Headings

The *section heading* macro **.SH** prints a heading or title. For example:

```
.SH
Section Headings
```

The heading may be more than one line long; consequently, you should follow a section heading with a **.PP** or an **.IP** macro. **nroff** leaves a blank line before the heading and prints the heading flush with the left margin in **boldface** type, as described below in the section on Fonts.

The *numbered heading* macro **.NH** produces consecutively numbered section headings. For example:

```
.NH
Guess What's Coming to Dinner?
.NH
Guess Why I Won't be There?
```

produces

1. Guess What's Coming to Dinner?
2. Guess Why I Won't Be There?

You can number subsection headings by entering a number from two to five to the **.NH** macro. The number indicates the level of section headings; for example, **.NH 2** numbers subsection headings, **.NH 3** numbers sub-subsection headings. For example:

```
.NH
Guess What's Coming to Dinner?
.NH 2
Guess What it Looks Like?
.NH 3
Teeth Like That Might Frighten the Children!
.NH 2
What Does it Eat?
.NH
Guess Why I Won't be There?
```

produces:

1. Guess What's Coming to Dinner?
  - 1.1 Guess What it Looks Like?
    - 1.1.1 Teeth Like That Might Frighten the Children!
  - 1.2 What Does it Eat?
2. Guess Why I Won't be There?

The number on the **.NH** command line is *not* the number that appears before the heading; instead, it controls how many "parts" appear in the number. For example, **.NH 3** produces a three-part number, such as **2.5.3**, whereas **.NH 4** produces a four-part number, such as **7.4.5.2**.

You can reset the entire numbering scheme by using the command **NH 0**; for example,

```
.NH 0
Through The Mandelbrot Set With Rod and Gun

produces

1. Through The Mandelbrot Set With Rod and Gun

with numbering starting at one.
```

### ***Title Page***

If you want your output to begin with a title page, begin the input with the following.

```
.TL
Title of Document (may be more than one line)
.AU
Name(s) of Author(s) (may be more than one line)
.AI
Institution(s) of Author(s)
.AB
Abstract (line length 5.5 inches)
.AE
```

The **.TL** macro indicates the *title*, the **.AU** macro indicates the *author*, the **.AI** macro indicates the *author's institution*, and the **.AB** macro precedes the *abstract*. The **.AE** macro, for **abstract end**, marks the end of the abstract. If you do not want some of these headings to appear, simply omit the relevant macros. Begin the body of the document immediately after the **.AE** macro. The body must begin with a formatting command, such as **.PP** or **.SH**.

Note that the *end abstract* macro **.AE** also prints today's date automatically. To do so, **nroff** reads the date as encoded in the COHERENT system. Before you use these macros, be sure that you have set the correct date in the COHERENT system.

To see how these macros work, type the following script into file **script8.r**:



```
.TL
Tickling in the Therapy of
von Muenchausen's Syndrome
.AU
P. R. Sanserif
.AI
The Department of Parapsychology
The University of Southern North Dakota
at Hoople
.AB
Study of 150 subjects (75 men and 76 women)
indicated that hard tickling may prove beneficial
to patients with von Muenchausen's syndrome.
Applications for a seven-figure grant have been
made to continue research in this area.
.AE
.PP
Due to complications in our experiment, this paper
has now been withdrawn.
```

After processing with the **-ms** macro package, you will see that in the outputfile **script8.p**, **nroff** placed the text on the same page as the title information. You may or may not want this to happen. If you do not, one solution is to insert two additional commands between the **.AE** macro and the body of your text:

```
.PP
.bp
```

## **Headers and Footers**

The *header* macro controls the format of the top of each page. It automatically skips one inch at the top of the page. The *footer* macro controls the format of the bottom of each page. It stops printing text one inch above the bottom of the page, and prints the page number.

It is easy to print either a page header or a page footer. Both the page header and the page footer are three-part titles: **nroff** prints the first part on the left side of the page, the second part in the middle, and the third part on the right side of the page. The parts of the header title are named:

**LT:** left, top  
**CT:** center, top  
**RT:** right, top

and the parts of the footer title are named:

**LF:** left, footer  
**CF:** center, footer  
**RF:** right, footer

These parts are called *strings*. A later section of this tutorial describes strings in detail. Normally, these strings are undefined, except for **CF**, which prints the current page number; therefore, the header macro normally prints nothing, and the footer macro prints only the page number in the center of the block of space at the bottom of each page. However, you can set any portion of the header or footer to print what you like. To set the left portion of the header, for example, type the

following:

```
.ds LT "Walnuts in History"
```

Note that you do *not* type a period before the **LT**. After you define **LT** in this fashion, **nroff** will print

```
Walnuts in History
```

at the top of each page on the left-hand side. If you want the date to appear on the right-hand side of the header, type:

```
.ds RT "\*(Ds"
```

The string **Ds** is automatically initialized to today's date, as set on your COHERENT system. A later section of this tutorial will present strings in detail. For now, all you need to know is that whenever you want **nroff** to insert today's date into your script automatically, just type the entry **\\*(Ds**. This entry does *not* have to be at the beginning of a line to work.

Use the same procedure to define the strings in the footer title. If you want something other than the page number to appear in the position allocated to **CF**, use the **.ds** primitive to redefine **CF**. If you want nothing to appear there, type

```
.ds CF ""
```

Wherever you want the current page number to appear in the header or footer, use the symbol **%**. For example, if you want the page number to appear in the upper right-hand corner of each page, type

```
.ds RT "Page %"
```

Be sure to type in all of the macros to define headers and footers *before* you begin to type in your text. Otherwise, your headers and footers will not appear on the first page of the formatted output.

To see how this works, try editing the file **script1.r**. At the top, insert the macro

```
.ds RT "\*(Ds"
```

and reprocess the file using the **-ms** macro package. Each output page should have today's date written in the upper right-hand corner.

### Fonts

**nroff** normally prints ordinary, or "Roman", characters. In addition, **nroff** can print **boldface** and *italic* characters. Each of the three styles of type — Roman, boldface, and italic — is called a *font*, in keeping with typesetting terminology.

**nroff** prints each boldface and italic character by generating a special three-character output sequence. It prints the boldface character **c**, for example, by printing a 'c', then the backspace character **<ctrl-H>**, and then another 'c'. This sequence emphazizes 'c' by forcing your printer to print it twice. **nroff** represents an italic character *c* with the underscore character **'\_'**, followed by the backspace character **<ctrl-H>**, followed by 'c'.

Because of these special representations, the appearance of **nroff** boldface and italic fonts depends on the device on which you see the output. On your terminal, the **<ctrl-H>** backspaces the cursor, and the third character of each sequence replaces the first; therefore, boldface and italic characters appear the same as Roman characters. On a printer, the appearance depends on the characteristics of the printer. The COHERENT system provides a *filter* or a printer *driver* to print boldface and italic character sequences appropriately on certain devices.

The **-ms** macro package includes three commands for easy printing in specific fonts: the *boldface* command **.B**, the *italic* command **.I**, and the *Roman* command **.R**. To print a single word in boldface, do the following:

```
The last word is printed in
.B boldface.
```

Likewise for italics:

```
The last word is printed in
.I italics.
```

These examples print a word in a different font. You can print several words in a different font by enclosing the words within quotation marks on the command line:

```
This sentence ends with
.B "three bold words".
```

You can also switch fonts by using one of the font commands with nothing after it on the command line. For example,

```
.B
This entire sentence is printed in boldface.
.R
```

or

```
.I
This entire sentence is printed in italics.
.R
```

In these examples, the Roman font command **.R** is needed to return to the normal font after completing the boldface or italic text.

On rare occasions, you might want different parts of one word to be in different fonts. You cannot use the **-ms** macros to produce mixed-font words directly. A later section of this tutorial gives additional information about **nroff** fonts. As explained there, the input

```
This manual describes \fBnroff\fR's powerful features.
```

produces the output:

```
This manual describes nroff's powerful features.
```

The word **nroff** is boldface but the following apostrophe and 's' are Roman.

## **Special Characters**

A few characters have special meaning to **nroff**. You should be aware of these characters if you want **nroff** to process your text properly.

As mentioned earlier, the period and the apostrophe introduce **nroff** command lines. Each is a special character if it is the *first non-space character* on an input line. If you wish to use a period or an apostrophe at the start of an input line simply as part of your text, you must precede it with a backslash and ampersand "**\&**". For example, the input

The footnote command

```
.DS
```

```
\&.FT
```

```
.DE
```

generates footnotes for you automatically.

produces the output

The footnote command

```
.FT
```

generates footnotes for you automatically.

Neither the period nor the apostrophe is a special character unless it is the first non-space character on a line.

The most important special character for **nroff** is the backslash `\`. It changes the meaning of the following character or characters. If you simply want a backslash to appear as part of your text, you must follow it with the letter `e`; that is, use `"\e"` in your input to have `\` appear in your output. Later sections of this tutorial describe other special uses for backslash.

### Footnotes

You can place footnotes between the *footnote start* command **.FS** and the *footnote end* command **.FE**, as in the following example:

```
.FS
```

```
*MicroKVETCH Electronic Nag is a  
copyrighted trademark of Caveat Emptor  
Software, Inc.
```

```
.FE
```

You should insert each footnote into your text where the reference to it occurs; **nroff** will see to it that the footnote appears at the bottom of the correct page. Footnotes should be inserted as follows:

```
The notion that we have been visited  
by visitors from outer space may seem  
outlandish(1)
```

```
.FS
```

```
1. Raucus J, O'Hooligan R: "Viruses  
from Venus?" \fIJ Earth Med Assoc\fR,  
1985;36:412-414.
```

```
.FE
```

```
but reason compels us to exclude no ...
```

The journal article cited in the footnote will appear at the bottom of the page, with the journal name in italics.

### Displays and Keeps

A *display* is a portion of text, such as a graph or a table, that should appear in the output exactly as it is typed in the input. **nroff** normally alters the spacings between elements in your text, which, of course, would destroy the appearance of a display. Therefore, **nroff** has macros to tell it that a portion of text is a display, and so not to alter spacings between elements or split it between two pages. These macros are the *display start* macro **.DS** and the *display end* macro **.DE**. You should

## TUTORIALS

your display between these macros, as follows:

```
.DS
The text of the display goes here,
exactly
as
you
want
it
to appear in the output.
.DE
```

The **.DS** macro comes in three varieties. The *display start centered* macro **.DS C** centers every line of your display. Because **nroff** centers each line individually, both right and left margins are ragged. The *display start block-centered* macro **.DS B** takes the entire display at once and centers it. You can think of this as simply shifting the display to the right by an appropriate amount. The *display start indented* macro **.DS I** indents the entire display by half an inch.

If your display is longer than one page, do not use **.DS** or any of its variants. Instead, begin the display with one of the following.

The *centered display* macro **.CD** centers each line of the display. The *block-centered display* macro **.BD** considers the entire display as a block and centers it. The *left display* macro **.LD** performs no indenting or centering, but simply begins each line at the left margin. Finally, the *indented display* macro **.ID** indents each line by half an inch. If you begin the display with one of these macros, do *not* end it with **.DE**; rather, just type **.PP** or **.SH** or whatever other macro is needed at that point.

To see how displays work, type the following into the file **script9.r** and process it with the **-ms** macro package:

```
.PP
.DS C
Tyger! Tyger! burning bright
In the forests of the night,
What immortal hand or eye
Could frame thy fearful symmetry?
Burma Shave
.DE
```

When the output file **script9.p** is read, the results will appear as follows:

```
Tyger! Tyger! burning bright
In the forests of the night,
What immortal hand or eye
Could frame thy fearful symmetry?
Burma Shave
```

You must remember one important fact when you use display macros: the normal length of output lines is 6.5 inches, but if the display contains lines longer than this **nroff** simply prints them as they are. If a line is too long to fit onto the page, what occurs afterwards depends upon the output device. If you are displaying the output on the screen, the text will be displayed as far as possible to the right, then the remainder will be wrapped around onto the next line, without indentation. On most printers, however, the chunk of text that extends past the right margin will simply be lopped off and thrown away. In any event, the effect is usually quite unsightly. The only restriction on what you can safely put in a display, then, is that lines should be no longer than 6.5 inches. If you are using an indented display, lines should be no longer than six inches.

A *keep* is a display macro: you put text between the *keep start* macro **.KS** and the *keep end* macro **.KE** when you want it all kept on the same page. If you put a block of text between these macros that proves to be longer than one page, **nroff** moves the excess text onto a new page.

The major difference between the *keep* and the *display* is that normal processing occurs in the *keep*: **nroff** adjusts spacings between words, hyphenates words, justifies lines, and performs all other formatting tasks, just as it normally does.

### Other Commands

Several of **nroff**'s primitives can be used with the **-ms** macro package. The primitive

**.sp N**

skips *N* lines on the output page; for example, **.sp 4** skips four lines.

The *begin page* primitive **.bp** tells **nroff** to begin a new page, no matter where it is on the current page.

The remaining sections of this tutorial provide more information about these other **nroff** primitives.

### Introducing *nroff*'s Primitives

The rest of this tutorial describes **nroff**'s *basic commands* — the commands that are “built into” **nroff**, and from which macros are assembled. These basic commands, or *primitives*, form **nroff**'s text formatting language. Once you have mastered the primitives, you will be able to write macros to control automatically even the most difficult text formatting tasks.

The rest of this tutorial includes a number of exercises. You should type them into your system and execute them as described in the tutorial; this will greatly increase the rate at which you master **nroff**. None of the following examples should be processed with the **-ms** macro package; the purpose of this portion of the tutorial is to teach you how to create your own text processing routines, rather than how to use ones that have already been written.

### Page Format

When deciding how to process text, you must first decide how to position the text on the printed page. You must control line length, left and right margins, page offset (i.e., how far from the left edge of the page each line begins), and page length. Controlling these functions is quite easy with the appropriate **nroff** commands.

The *line length* primitive **.ll** controls the line length; and the *page offset* command **.po** controls the page offset. If you are writing an **nroff** script, you should include these commands before the beginning of your text, so that **nroff** can put them into effect immediately. The following example uses a line length of three inches and a page offset of two inches. Type this into your system under the name **ex1.r**. Note, by the way, that the text to the right of the characters “\” is a *comment*, and there is no need for you to type it into your system:

```
.ll 3i      \" set line length
.po 2i      \" set page offset
Along outside of the front fence ran the country
road, dusty in the summertime, and a good place for
snakes -- they liked to lie in it and sun themselves;
when they were rattlesnakes or puff adders, we killed
them; when they were black snakes, or racers, or belonged
to the fabled "hoop" breed, we fled, without shame; when
they were "house snakes", or "garters", we carried them
home and put them in Aunt Patsy's work basket for a
surprise; for she was prejudiced against snakes, and
always when she took the basket in her lap and they
began to climb out of it it disordered her mind.
```

Process this script by typing the command

```
nroff ex1.r >ex1.p
```

From this point on, you should *not* use the **-ms** macro package with your **nroff** examples. When you display the output stored in the file **ex1.p**, you will see that the length of each line is three inches, and each line begins two inches from the left-hand margin.

As you noticed, line length and page offset were set in *inches*. **nroff** output can be controlled using a number of different units of measurements, including inches, number of characters, or lines, or *machine units*. A following section discusses **nroff** units of measurement in detail.

As noted above, this example contains two *comments*. **nroff** ignores any text that appears on a line after "`\`". You should use comments, for the benefit of anyone who must read your **nroff** script (including yourself). The above example used the comments

```
\ " set line length
\ " set page offset
```

to help you understand the **.ll** and **.po** commands. Judicious comments can make a complex script much easier to understand.

## **Breaks**

Before you look at the *break* primitive **.br**, it is helpful to examine how **nroff** constructs a finished line of output. Suppose, for example, that you tell **nroff** that you want each output line to be five inches long. **nroff** takes your input one word at a time, and attempts to squeeze that word into the space that has not yet been taken up in the line. When **nroff** finally picks up a word that is too large to fit into the amount of space left in the line, it either puts the word aside entirely, or hyphenates the word and places the hyphenated portion into the line. **nroff** then inserts extra blank spaces between the words to justify the line. The *break* primitive **.br**, however, tells **nroff** to print whatever words have already been put into the line, even if they do not form a complete line, and without performing right justification.

The idea of a break might seem strange at first, but you are familiar with a simple example: the end of a paragraph. You do not want the start of a new paragraph to be on the same line as the end of the previous paragraph: you want to print the end of the previous paragraph whether or not it fills a complete line; and you want to begin the new paragraph on a new line. As you will learn later, some **nroff** commands cause breaks automatically; you should be aware of this when you use them.

### Fill and Adjust Modes

Two terms describe how **nroff** processes your input to create its output: *filling*, and *adjusting* or *justifying*. Unless you order it not to, **nroff** operates in the *fill* and *adjust* modes. The *no-fill* primitive **.nf** tells **nroff** to stop using fill mode. The *fill* primitive **.fi** tells it to resume using the fill mode. In a similar way, the *adjust* primitive **.ad** tells **nroff** to use adjust mode, whereas the *no adjust* primitive **.na** tells it to use no-adjust mode.

As mentioned above, **nroff** by default is in both fill mode and adjust mode, so you do not need to begin your script with **.fi** and **.ad** if you want **nroff** to fill and adjust your text. However, if you turn off filling and adjusting by using the **.nf** and **.na** commands, you must use the **.fi** and **.ad** commands to turn filling and adjusting back on.

When you use **.nf** to turn off fill mode, **nroff** no longer tries to fill lines to a fixed line length. It prints each line of input text exactly as received. However, a sufficiently long line of text would run off the right-hand edge of the page if **nroff** were to print it as entered. If the input line cannot fit on one line, **nroff** prints as much as it can fit on one line, then breaks the line and prints the rest on the next line with no page offset.

In adjust mode, **nroff** inserts extra spaces between words to justify lines of text, as described above. When **nroff** is in no-fill mode, it is automatically in no-adjust mode: with no fixed line length, there is no need to insert extra spaces. *Moral:* you can fill without adjusting, but you cannot adjust without filling.

If you request filling but not adjusting, **nroff** fills the output line as described earlier, but does not insert extra spaces between words; that is, it does not try to keep an even right margin. Every output line either is shorter than the line length you specified, or exactly as long.

The **.ad** primitive includes several options. If you use the command **.ad** without an argument, **nroff** keeps strict left and right margins. The primitive **.ad l** justifies the left margin only; **.ad r** justifies the right margin only; and **.ad b** justifies both margins (this, of course, is the default). Finally, **.ad c** centers output lines while keeping their lengths less than or equal to the line length, as set with the **.ll** command.

Remember that **nroff** ignores adjustment requests if you are in no-fill mode. If **nroff** is in fill mode and you request any variety of adjustment, it adjusts accordingly until you issue either a no-fill or a no-adjust command. If you give a no-fill command, only a fill command restores adjustment; any plea for a different kind of adjustment is ignored while **nroff** is in no-fill mode.

To see how this works, type the following script under the name **ex2.r**, and process it as above:

```
.ll 3.75i
.sp          \" space
When we were alone, I introduced the subject
of death, and endeavored to maintain that the fear
of it might be got over. I told [Johnson] that
David Hume said to me, he was no more uneasy to
think that he should not be after this life, than
that he had not been before he began to exist.
.sp
.na          \"no adjust
JOHNSON: "Sir, if he really thinks so,
his perceptions are disturbed;
he is mad: if he does not think so, he
lies .... When he dies, he at
least gives up all he has."
.sp
```



```
.ad r      \"right-adjust
BOSWELL:  "Foote, sir, told me that
he was not afraid to die."
.sp
.nf        \"no-fill
JOHNSON:  "It is not true, sir.
Hold a pistol to Foote's
breast or to Hume's breast,
and threaten to kill them,
and you'll see how they behave."
.sp
.fi        \"fill
BOSWELL:  "But may we not fortify our minds for
the approach of death?"
.sp
JOHNSON:  "No, sir, let it alone.  It matters not
how a man
dies, but how he lives.  The act of dying is not of
importance, it lasts so short a time .... A man
knows it must be so, and submits.
It will do him no good to whine."
```

When you process this input with **nroff**, your output should look like this:

When we were alone, I introduced the subject of death, and endeavored to maintain that the fear of it might be got over. I told [Johnson] that David Hume said to me, he was no more uneasy to think that he should not be after this life, than that he had not been before he began to exist.

JOHNSON: "Sir, if he really thinks so, his perceptions are disturbed; he is mad: if he does not think so, he lies .... When he dies, he at least gives up all he has."

BOSWELL: "Foote, sir, told me that he was not afraid to die."

JOHNSON: "It is not true, sir.  
Hold a pistol to Foote's  
breast or to Hume's breast,  
and threaten to kill them,  
and you'll see how they behave."

BOSWELL: "But may we not fortify our minds for the approach of death?"

JOHNSON: "No, sir, let it alone. It matters not how a man dies, but how he lives. The act of dying is not of importance, it lasts so short a time .... A man knows it must be so, and submits. It will do him no good to whine."

After the **.na** primitive, **nroff** fills but does not adjust the second paragraph. After **.ad r**, it fills and right adjusts the third paragraph. After **.nf**, it neither fills nor adjusts the fourth paragraphs. Finally, after **.fi**, it fills the fifth and sixth paragraphs and uses the **.ad r** adjust option that was in effect previously.

Under certain extreme conditions, **nroff** cannot adjust a line even though it is in adjust mode. If, for example, you specified a line length of one inch, a seven-letter or eight-letter word would then take up most of a line. When such a word was then followed by a word that could not fit into the

line after it, **nroff** would begin a new line with the second word rather than violate the right margin by inserting the into the line. When a line has only one word in it, **nroff** obviously cannot adjust the line by inserting extra spaces between words; therefore, the right margin is left uneven, as though **nroff** were in no-adjust mode.

### **Defining Paragraphs**

What happens if you copy text from several pages of a book into a file without adding any formatting commands, and then process the file with **nroff**? There is no page offset, because **nroff**'s default page-offset setting is zero; and the processed lines are set to the default length of 6.5 inches (65 Pica characters).

More interesting things happen with paragraphs. Suppose you skip a line between paragraphs and begin each paragraph by indenting five spaces. The blank line in the input text causes a break, and forces **nroff** to print a blank line. The last line of each paragraph is unadjusted, and a blank line appears before the next paragraph. Initial blank spaces in a line of input also cause a break. In this example, the breaks caused by initial blank spaces at the beginning of each paragraph do nothing, because the preceding blank line forces out the last line of the preceding paragraph. **nroff** always considers initial blank spaces in a line to be significant, and preserves them in the output.

To see how blank lines and initial spaces affect **nroff**'s output, copy the following example and run it through **nroff**:

```
    Here is a little text so you can see
whether nroff will ignore the initial
indentation
        in this very very long sentence.
Here is a little bit more text.
```

```
    And here is something to mimic
the beginning of a new paragraph.
```

The output should look like this:

```
    Here is a little text so you can see whether nroff will ignore the
initial indentation
        in this very very long sentence. Here is a little bit more text.
```

```
    And here is something to mimic the beginning of a new paragraph.
```

Instead of leaving a blank line in the text, you could use the *space* primitive **.sp 1**, which causes a break and inserts one blank line into the output. In a similar way, **.sp 5** causes a break and inserts five blank lines in the output. Edit the example and replace the blank line with the command line:

```
.sp 1
```

You will see that it has the same effect. You can also use the form **.sp**; **nroff** assumes you want one space if you omit the argument.

Most **nroff** input consists of many paragraphs that contain text, and you probably want each paragraph to have the same format in the output. Rather than formatting each paragraph explicitly, as in this example, you can use the *macro* facility of **nroff** to define a sequence of commands to format a paragraph. Macros are described in detail later in this tutorial.

## Centering

The *center* primitive **.ce** centers one or more lines of text. For example, you can center a two-line heading as follows:

```
.ce 2
Heading Printed
In Center of Page
```

If you use the **.ce** command with no argument, **nroff** assumes a default argument of one, and centers only the next line of input. The command **ce 0** cancels any earlier centering command that is in operation.

## Tabs

If your **nroff** input includes tables, you may find it convenient to use tabs to separate items in a line of the table. **nroff** recognizes the **<tab>** character and expands it into spaces. If you use tabs to format a table, remember to use no-fill mode; otherwise, **nroff** tries to fill and adjust your output lines.

By default, **nroff** sets a tab stops after every eight characters. You can use the *tab* primitive **.ta** to change the positions of the tab stops. For example,

```
.ta 10 20 30 40 50 60
```

sets tab stops ten characters apart rather than eight. **.ta** can also be used to fix tab stops in inches rather than after a number of characters; for example,

```
.ta 0.8i 2.0i
```

sets tab stops after 0.8 inches and 2.0 inches on the output line. This is quite helpful when you are designing a table.

You can use the *tab character* command **.tc** to change the character **nroff** prints between its current position and the next tab stop. Enter the following text to see how this primitive works:

```
.ta 9 19 29 39
.tc *
.nf
<tab>1<tab>2<tab>3<tab>4
```

The output file, **ex3.p**, should appear as follows:

```
*****1*****2*****3*****4
```

## Page Breaks

The *begin page* primitive **.bp** causes a break and forces **nroff** to the next output page. By default, **nroff** assumes a page length of 11 inches (66 lines). You can change the page length with the *page length* command **.pl**. For example,

```
.pl 2i
```

specifies a two-inch page length.

At this point, the question arises about how **nroff** top and bottom page margins, number pages, and other and other aspects of page layout. The answer is that **nroff** merely keeps track of the current output page number and the current line number on the current output page; designing top and bottom margins, page headers and footers, and other aspects of page layout is up to you.

Can **nroff** execute a set of commands whenever it reaches a certain position on the page? This would solve the problem of producing top and bottom margins, and you would not have to guess where to insert the commands in your script. In fact, you can tell **nroff** to do this, by using *traps*. The next section of this tutorial describes macros and traps and how to use them to format a page.

### Macros and Traps

This section presents **nroff** macros: how to write them, how to tell **nroff** to execute them at a give point on every output page, and how to install a macro file under the COHERENT system

As with previous sections, this one uses a number of exercises. Working the exercises will help you master **nroff** quickly. When you format the exercise scripts, do not use the **-ms** option. Also, it is not necessary for you to copy the comments into your system; they are here to help you understand what each **nroff** command does, but they have no effect on how the script executes.

#### What Is a Macro?

To become familiar with the idea of a *macro*, consider the problem of formatting a paragraph. Whenever you come to a new paragraph, you want **nroff** to skip a line and indent the first line five spaces. Because **nroff** preserves blank lines and initial indentations, you could force **nroff** to break your text into paragraphs simply by inserting a blank line and spaces directly into your text. The same effect, however, can be achieved by inserting following set of **nroff** commands

```
.br          \" break
.sp          \" skip a line
.ti 5        \" indent next line 5 spaces
```

between the end of each paragraph and the start of the next paragraph. You should recognize the first two commands: **.br** causes a break, so that **nroff** prints the last line of the previous paragraph even though it might not be a complete line; **.sp** skips a line before the next paragraph begins. The third command is the *temporary indent* command **.ti**, which tells **nroff** to indent the next line; the number indicates how many spaces to indent. The following exercise, **ex4.r**, demonstrates how this works:

```
.ll 31          \" line length
.po 31          \" page offset
.ti 5           \" indent next line
Adam was human--this explains it all.  He did
not want the apple for the apple's sake, he
wanted it because it was forbidden.  The mistake
was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would
have eaten the serpent.
.br            \" break
.sp           \" skip a line
.ti 5         \" indent next line
Training is everything.  The peach was once a bitter
almond; cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a
college education.
.br
.sp
.ti 5
Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window
by any man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.
```

After you have processed this file, the output file **ex4.p** should resemble the following:

```
Adam was human--this explains it all.  He did not want the
apple for the apple's sake, he wanted it because it was forbidden.  The
mistake was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would have eaten the
serpent.
```

```
Training is everything.  The peach was once a bitter almond;
cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a college education.
```

```
Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window by any
man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.
```

Now, in a small file it would be easy to type all of the **nroff** primitives directly into your input text; however, what if your file is very long, with hundreds of paragraphs? Every time you wanted to begin a paragraph, you would have to include that set of commands within the text. You would save considerable agony if you could bundle these commands together under a common *name*; then you could simply put that *name* into your text whenever you wanted **nroff** to perform these commands, rather than typing the commands themselves over and over again.

As you probably have guessed by now, you can do just that; the set of commands is called a *macro*. The following shows the selections from Pudd'nhead Wilson's calendar set with a macro called **.PP** that takes care of formatting each paragraph. The following exercise, **ex5.r**, shows how to bundle together the **nroff** primitives for formatting paragraphs into the **.PP** macro:

```
.de PP          \" define the PP macro
.br            \" break the line
.sp           \" insert a blank line
.ti 5         \" indent next line 5 spaces
..            \" two periods ends the macro definition
.PP           \" execute PP macro
Adam was human--this explains it all.  He did
not want the apple for the apple's sake, he
wanted it because it was forbidden.  The mistake
was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would
have eaten the serpent.
.PP
Training is everything.  The peach was once a bitter
almond; cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a
college education.
.PP
Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window
by any man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.
```

As you can see, using a macro can save you a considerable amount of work when you prepare your script.

### **Introducing Traps**

Now, consider the problem of formatting the beginning and ending of each page of output. You could define what are traditionally called *header* and *footer* macros, which contain the commands you want performed at the top and bottom of each page. However, how can you tell **nroff** when to execute these macros? You cannot possibly know where to call these macros in the input text, because you cannot know where any given text line will appear in the output until you have processed it through **nroff**. This problem is solved by using *traps*.

**nroff** keeps track of its vertical position on each output page. You can set a *trap* that tells **nroff** to execute a macro at a particular vertical position on every page. When a line of output reaches or extends past the position that is specified in your *trap*, **nroff** then executes the commands named in the trap command before processing any more input text.

You can set a trap by using the *when* command **.wh**. For example, if you want **nroff** to call your header macro **.HD** at the very top of each page, the command

```
.wh 0 HD        \" set header trap
```

sets a trap for the macro **.HD** at vertical position 0 (the very top of the page) of every output page. The macro **.HD** will then be executed every time **nroff** begins a new page. To have your footer macro **.FO** execute one inch from the bottom of each page, use the command

```
.wh -1i FO      \" set footer trap
```

The negative number tells **nroff** to measure distance from the *bottom* of the page rather than from the top; the **i** is an abbreviation for inches. (**nroff** recognizes various units of measurement; this will be described in more detail later.)

## Headers and Footers

Suppose you want to design the output page by defining the header and footer macros. A simple header macro merely skips an inch of space at the top of each page; a simple footer macro forces printing to stop an inch from the bottom of each page and prints the page number. **nroff** does not print page numbers automatically, but it does automatically keep track of which output page it is on. It stores the page number internally in a *number register* that you can access with the symbol `%`. (A later section gives more information about number registers and how to use them.)

The following gives a simple footer macro that prints the page number:

```
.de FO          \" define footer macro FO
'sp 4v          \" skip four vertical lines (no break)
.tl '- % -'     \" print hyphen, page number, hyphen
'bp            \" jump to new page
..            \" end macro definition
```

There are several points of interest raised by this macro.

First, notice that some commands are preceded with an apostrophe rather than with a period. The use of the apostrophe instead of the period tells **nroff** to suppress the break these commands normally cause. You might run into problems if you define your header macro as follows:

```
.de HD          \" header macro
.sp 1i          \" skip an inch (break)
..
```

You want this to leave a blank space of one inch at the top of each page; however, the `.sp` command causes a break, so that if a word were left over from the last line on the preceding page, **nroff** would print it at the very top of the next page. The effect would be quite unsightly. However, if you use `'sp` instead of `.sp` in the macro, **nroff** suppresses the break and does not print the partial word until *after* it performs the macro commands. The same is true for the footer macro: you do not want anything unplanned to be printed in the blank space at the bottom of the page. You should always be conscious of these considerations when you use commands that cause breaks.

Another new item in the above example is the *title* command `.tl`, which prints a three-part title. A three-part title contains a left part (aligned to the left margin of the page), a center part (centered), and a right part (aligned to the right margin). The command name `.tl` is followed by four apostrophes: **nroff** prints the characters between the first two apostrophes as the left part of the title line, those between the second and third apostrophes as the center part, and those between the third and fourth apostrophes as the right part of the three-part title. If you do not want **nroff** to print anything in one of these positions, simply put nothing between the appropriate pair of quotes. In the above example, the `.tl` primitive tells **nroff** to print nothing in the left and right portions of the footer title line, but to print the page number in the center. If you want an apostrophe to appear as a part of the title, precede it with the backslash character `'\`.

**nroff** considers the length of the title line to be independent of the length of normal output lines; therefore, you must set it with the *length of title* primitive `.lt` unless you want **nroff** to use the default title length of 6.5 inches. For example, to set the length of the title to five inches, use the command

```
.lt 5i
```

In light of all you now know, you should give Pudd'nhead Wilson's calendar the treatment it deserves:

```
.ll 3i          \" set line length to 3 inches
.po 2i          \" set page offset to 3 inches
.pl 9i          \" set page length to 9 inches
.wh 0 HD        \" set the header trap
.wh -1i FO      \" set the footer trap
.de HD          \" define header macro HD
'sp 1i          \" skip 1 inches of space
..             \" end macro definition
.de FO          \" define footer macro
'sp 2           \" skip 2 lines
.tl '- % -'     \" define footer title
'bp            \" begin new page
..             \" end macro definition
.de PP          \" define paragraph macro
.sp 1           \" skip 1 line of space
.ti 5           \" indent the first line 5 characters
..             \" end macro definition
.PP
Adam was human--this explains it all.  He did
not want the apple for the apple's sake, he
wanted it because it was forbidden.  The mistake
was in not forbidding the serpent; then he would
have eaten the serpent.
.PP
Training is everything.  The peach was once a bitter
almond; cauliflower is nothing but cabbage with a
college education.
.PP
Habit is habit, and not to be flung out of the window
by any man, but coaxed downstairs a step at a time.
```

As a point of technique, always set header and footer traps early in your input script; otherwise, **nroff** may not print the header on the first page.

### **Macro Arguments**

You can affect how macros function by passing them modifiers, called *arguments*. An argument may be a bit of text that is arranged in a special way by the macro, or it may be a number or other parameter that dictates exactly what the macro does.

As an example of how a macro can handle arguments, consider a macro to format the list of ingredients for a recipe. You want the ingredients to be printed as follows:

```
3 cups of pumpkin
1 cup of milk
1 cup of sugar
1 tsp of ground ginger
1 tbl of cinnamon
```



Each of these lines has the same format: the amount of ingredient, the unit of measurement, the word “of”, and the name of the ingredient. You can create a macro (call it **.RE**, for **recipe**) that encodes the format of these lines and contains three “slots”: one slot for the amount, one for the unit of measurement, and one for the name of the ingredient. Each time you use the macro, you indicate what you want to go into each slot, and **nroff** substitutes it for you. The macro **.RE** can be constructed as follows:

```
.de RE          \" define macro RE
\\$1 \\$2 of \\$3\" set RE's arguments
..            \" end definition
Here is some text.
.nf          \" don't fill the recipe
.RE 3 cups pumpkin
.RE 1 cup milk
.RE 1 cup sugar
.RE 1 tsp "ground ginger"
.RE 1 tbl cinnamon
.fi          \" resume filling
Here is some more text.
.bp          \" begin a new page, to force printing
```

When you call a macro that takes arguments, the arguments must appear on the same line as the macro command itself. A macro may have up to nine arguments; they are denoted by **\\$1**, through **\\$9**, respectively: the first field after the macro name is called **\\$1**, the second **\\$2**, and so on.

If you want to use as an argument a string of characters that includes blank spaces, you must enclose the string within quotation marks, as with the words “ground ginger”, in the example above. If you forget to include the quotation marks, **nroff** regards each word in the string as a separate argument, and treats them accordingly.

Note that macros that are called by traps cannot accept arguments.

### ***Double vs. Single Backslashes***

If you carefully examine the definition of **RE**, you will see that it identifies each argument with two backslashes:

```
\\$1 \\$2 of \\$3
```

Whenever you identify an argument within a macro, always preface it with two backslashes, rather than one. The reason is that **nroff** in effect processes a macro *twice*: when it first reads it, and later when you call it within your text. Prefacing an argument with *one* backslash tells **nroff** that you want to expand that argument when the macro is first read; prefacing it with two backslashes tells **nroff** that you want to expand it when the macro is called in your text. In nearly every circumstance, you want to expand the arguments in your text, so you should use two backslashes. As you will see, this rule also applies to the use of *strings* and *number registers* within macros.

To see how this works, consider again the **.RE** macro:

```
.de RE
\\$1 \\$2 of \\$3
..
Here is some text.
.nf
.RE 3 cups pumpkin
.RE 1 cup milk
.RE 1 cup sugar
.RE 1 tsp "ground ginger"
.RE 1 tbl cinnamon
.fi
Here is some more text.
.bp
```

Using two backslashes, as above, allows you to redefine what **\$1**, **\$2**, and **\$3** mean many times throughout your text, to generate the following output:

```
Here is some text.
3 cups of pumpkin
1 cup of milk
1 cup of sugar
1 tsp of ground ginger
1 tbl of cinnamon
Here is some more text.
```

If you used only one backslash, however, your output would appear as follows:

```
Here is some text.
  of
  of
  of
  of
  of
Here is some more text.
```

**nroff** could not expand the argument calls (**\\$1** etc.), because you had not yet defined them; therefore, it threw them away; and because all of the argument calls had been thrown away, **nroff** then threw all the arguments away. All that was left was word **of**.

### *Designing and Installing Macros*

Now that you have been shown how to write a macro, the next step is to design some macros and install them, so you can call them over and over again.

The first step in designing a macro is to analyze the problem that you want to solve. Suppose that in this instance you want to print a list of names. Each name will consist of a first name, a last name, and the department with which he is associated, and the list will be printed in columns; for example:

Firstname	Lastname	Department
-----------	----------	------------

Moreover, you want to be able to switch the order in which the columns appear without having to retype your list; for example:

Lastname	Firstname	Department
----------	-----------	------------

or

Department	Lastname	Firstname
------------	----------	-----------

In effect, then, you want three macros: one for each of the three orders of columns shown above.

When you have finished designing your macros, they should look something the following. Type the following into the file **tmac.lst**; note that the symbol **<tab>** represents a *tab* character, and should not be entered literally:

```
.\" List macros. $1 represents first name,
.\" $2 last name, $3 department
.de LA
.nf
.ta 1.5i 2.75i
\\$1<tab>\\$2:<tab>\\$3
.Rt
..
.de LB
.nf
.ta 1.5i 2.75i
\\$2,<tab>\\$1:<tab>\\$3
.Rt
..
.de LC
.nf
.ta 1.5i 2.75i
\\$3:<tab>\\$2,<tab>\\$1
.Rt
..
```

The first lines are *comments*, so that anyone who looks at these macros will know what they do. The first command line, introduced with the **.de** command, names each macro. These names were selected after checking the file **tmac.s**, which is where the **-ms** macro package is kept, to confirm that they are not used elsewhere. Naturally, using the same macro name in two different places can lead to a great deal of trouble.

The next command, **.nf**, turns off the **nroff**'s normal right justification, which otherwise would smear a table. The **.ta** command sets the tab characters at certain points on the page, measured from the left margin.

The next line gives the order in which the arguments appear. The arguments are separated by tab characters, and punctuation is inserted. The last command, **.Rt**, calls a macro in the file **tmac.s**; this macro resets **nroff** to its normal fill mode and returns the tab settings to normal. Note that these macros can be used only when you also use the **-ms** macro package.

After you have typed the macros into **tmac.lst**, carefully read over what you type to ensure that no there are no errors; if you find any, be sure to correct them. The final step is to move **tmac.lst** into the directory **/usr/lib**, which is where **tmac.s** is also kept.

To test your new macros, type the following text into the file **ex6.r**:

The following lists give the personnel who are involved in this project:

```
.sp
.LA Ivan Sanderson Engineering
.LA Marian Maddux Design
.LA George Sutcliffe Electrical
.LA Catherine Williams "Metal Shop"
.LA Fred Wilson Carpentry
.LA Anne Bilecki "Machine Shop"
.sp
.LB Ivan Sanderson Engineering
.LB Marian Maddux Design
.LB George Sutcliffe Electrical
.LB Catherine Williams "Metal Shop"
.LB Fred Wilson Carpentry
.LB Anne Bilecki "Machine Shop"
.sp
.LC Ivan Sanderson Engineering
.LC Marian Maddux Design
.LC George Sutcliffe Electrical
.LC Catherine Williams "Metal Shop"
.LC Fred Wilson Carpentry
.LC Anne Bilecki "Machine Shop"
.sp
```

We expect that they will receive your full cooperation.

The same set of names is used three times; the only difference is the macro call employed.

Now, process this file with the following command:

```
nroff -ms -mlst ex6.r >ex6.p
```

As you can see, when you installed **tmac.list** into **/usr/lib**, you could invoke it in the same way that you invoke **tmac.s** with **-ms**.

When you look at the output file **ex6.p**, you should see something that resembles the following:

The following lists give the personnel who are involved in this project:

Ivan	Sanderson:	Engineering
Marian	Maddux:	Design
George	Sutcliffe:	Electrical
Catherine	Williams:	Metal Shop
Fred	Wilson:	Carpentry
Anne	Bilecki:	Machine Shop
Sanderson,	Ivan:	Engineering
Maddux,	Marian:	Design
Sutcliffe,	George:	Electrical
Williams,	Catherine:	Metal Shop
Wilson,	Fred:	Carpentry
Bilecki,	Anne:	Machine Shop
Engineering:	Sanderson,	Ivan

Design:	Maddux,	Marian
Electrical:	Sutcliffe,	George
Metal Shop:	Williams,	Catherine
Carpentry:	Wilson,	Fred
Machine Shop:	Bilecki,	Anne

We expect that they will receive your full cooperation.

As you grow proficient in writing **nroff** macros, you will probably find it most efficient to keep special macros in their own files; this will save time by ensuring that **nroff** does not have to process macros that are never called.

## Strings

Suppose you are writing a script for **nroff** and, to relieve the tedium, decide to punctuate the text occasionally with a rousing cry of "FOOD FIGHT!!". If you plan to interject this phrase more than a few times in your script, you can take advantage of another labor-saving device, called a *string*. You can use a string name as an abbreviation for a long string of characters you use frequently. Like a macro, a string is a *name* that **nroff** associates with a *definition* that you supply. Wherever you put the name in your text, **nroff** prints the definition. Although macros refer to sets of *commands* that you define, strings refer to strings of *characters* that you define.

You define a string with the *define string* primitive **.ds**:

```
.ds FF "FOOD FIGHT!!"
```

The first field after the **.ds** gives the name of the string, in this case **FF**. Like a macro name, a string name may be either one or two characters. The second field after the **.ds** gives the definition of the string, in this case

```
"FOOD FIGHT!!"
```

As in this example, you must enclose the definition within quotation marks if it contains spaces.

Be careful whenever you define a macro or a string. If you already have a macro or a string named **X** and you define a new macro or string named **X**, **nroff** forgets the previous meaning of **X**.

Once you have defined a string, you can refer to it anywhere in your text. The string itself appears in the output text wherever a reference to it appears in the input text. You refer to the string **FF** in the following fashion:

```
\*(FF
```

Use the left parenthesis '(' only when the name of the string is two characters long. If the string name is only a single character, such as **S**, refer to it as follows:

```
\*S
```

As an example, type the following script into **ex7.r**, and process it through **nroff**; do *not* use the **-ms** macro package:

```
.ds FF "FOOD FIGHT!!"
.ds W "WHOOPEE!!"
.ce
From Aristotle's "Poetics"
.br
.sp
A tragedy is the imitation of an action \*(FF
that is serious and also, \*W as having magnitude,
complete in itself, with incidents \*(FF
arousing pity and fear, wherewith to accomplish \*W
\*(FF its purgation of such emotions \*(FF \*(FF.
.bp
```

**nroff** adjusts the spacings between words in a string but does not hyphenate any word that is within a string. If you use a very short line length, such as two inches, and define a string that includes a three-inch long word, that word would not be hyphenated but would extend past the right-hand margin.

You cannot include a newline character in a string. However, you can spread the definition of a string out over more than one line with the aid of *concealed* newlines (preceded by the backslash character '\'). **nroff** ignores each concealed newline. For example, add the following string to the previous example:

```
.ds PR "GO TEAM \
GO!!!"
```

As you can see, **nroff** ignores concealed newlines anywhere in its input.

### **Strings Within Strings**

You can define a string that has embedded within it a reference to another string. Whenever you refer to the bigger string in your text, **nroff** substitutes the definition of the smaller string for any reference to the smaller string. When you embed strings, though, you should use *two* backslashes to refer to the embedded string, for the same reason that you should use two backslashes to refer to an argument within a macro:

```
.ds S "This string \\*x has embedded \\*y strings"
```

To help understand this better, type following three scripts into your computer and format them with **nroff**. The first script contains proper references to embedded strings (using double backslashes); it works as expected:

```
.ds S "strings \\*X, strings \\*Y, strings \\*Z"
.ds X "here"
.ds Y "there"
.ds Z "everywhere"
\\*S
```

The next script contains embedded references that use only single backslashes. Because the embedded strings are defined after the larger string, they are not available when **nroff** defines the larger string, and so the references are ignored:

```
.ds S "strings \*X, strings \*Y, strings \*Z"
.ds X "here"
.ds Y "there"
.ds Z "everywhere"
\*S
```

The third script again contains embedded references using single backslashes. This time, the embedded strings are defined *before* the larger string, and so are available when the larger string is defined:

```
.ds X "here"
.ds Y "there"
.ds Z "everywhere"
.ds S "strings \*X, strings \*Y, strings \*Z"
\*S
```

To avoid unnecessary worry, you should always play it safe and use double backslashes to refer to embedded strings.

## Number Registers

You learned in previous sections that **nroff** keeps track of the output page number while it prints its output. You made use of this fact when you created a footer macro that printed page numbers. **nroff** also keeps track of other housekeeping information, such as the current line length, page offset, page length, and vertical position of the last output line. It keeps this information in storage locations called *number registers*.

You can use the *name* of a number register to refer to the number that is stored in it. When you place a reference to a number register in your text, **nroff** substitutes for the name whatever number is currently in the register.

Number register names are one or two characters long, just like macro and string names. You can have a number register with the same name as a string or a macro without confusing **nroff**, even though you cannot give a macro and a string the same name. However, *you* might become confused; **nroff** scripts usually are easier to understand if you keep all macro names, string names, and register names distinct.

Another difference between number registers, macros, and strings is that **nroff** itself does not define any macros or strings (although the **-ms** macro package does), but it does automatically define and update quite a few number registers. You can use these predefined number registers in much the same way that you use registers you define yourself, except that you cannot change their values.

To define a number register, you must specify the *register name* and the *initial value* for the register. The *number register* primitive **.nr** looks like this:

```
.nr X 5
```

Here **X** is the name of the register and **5** is the initial value to store in it. To refer to number register **X** in your text, use **\nX**; if the name is two characters long (for example, **XY**), use **\n(XY)**. This is exactly like the way you refer to a string, except that you use the letter 'n' instead of an asterisk '\*'. When **nroff** sees a reference to number register **X**, it automatically substitutes the value stored in **X**. As you will see shortly, **nroff** can do arithmetic, and learning to use number registers is an important part of learning to take advantage of **nroff**'s arithmetic abilities.

A reference to a number register can occur anywhere a number would normally occur. For example, if you set register **X** to 5, as above, you can set the line length to five inches as follows:

```
.ll \nXi
```

This command is essentially the same as

```
.ll 5i
```

if the current value of register **X** is 5.

A familiar problem arises when you refer to a number register inside a macro or a string definition. If you use just one backslash, **nroff** substitutes the value in the register for the reference when it first processes the macro or string. If you have not yet defined the number register in your script, **nroff** inserts **0** into the macro or string. Normally, you should use a double backslash, such as `\\nX` or `\\n(XY`, when referring to a number register within a macro or string. Using the double backslash is particularly important if you *change* the value of the register throughout your script, and want the current value to appear in the macro or string each time you call it.

Try typing the following examples into your computer, and processing them with **nroff**. See if you can describe why **nroff** prints what it does in each case. The first example defines a string with a register reference preceded by a single backslash.

```
.ds S "Here is a number \nX"  
.nr X 55  
\*S  
\nX
```

You should see the following output:

```
Here is number 0  
55
```

**nroff** printed what it did because number register **X** had not yet been defined when it was called in string **S**; **nroff** therefore erased the reference to **X** and substituted zero for it. Number register **X** was then set to 55, which was printed when the register was specifically called later in the script.

The second example is similar, but now the number register is set *before* the string is called:

```
.nr Y 56  
.ds T "Here is a number \nY"  
\*T  
\nY
```

Now the output is

```
Here is a number 56  
56
```

The third example uses a double backslash for the register reference.

```
.ds U "Here is a number \\nZ"  
.nr Z 57  
\*U  
.nr Z 58  
\*U
```

This script produces the following:

```
Here is a number 57  
Here is a number 58
```



The final example uses a single backslash again.

```
.nr W 59
.ds V "Here is a number \nW"
\*V
.nr W 60
\*V
```

The following is produced:

```
Here is a number 59
Here is a number 59
```

The last example illustrates the danger of using a single backslash to refer to a number register within a string definition. You defined the number register **W** before you defined the string **V**, so the value for **W** was available when **nroff** read the definition of **V**. **nroff** substituted the value when it reads the definition; the reference to the number register **W** is no longer there. You then change the value of **W**, but as you see in the next call of **V**, the change does not affect the number that appears in **V**. In contrast to this, notice in the third example that the double backslash in the definition of **U** allows the reference to number register **Z** to remain within the definition of string **U**. Whenever you change the value of **Z** and then call **U**, **nroff** substitutes the new value of **Z** for the reference to **Z** within **U**.

You can also use the **.nr** primitive to increase or decrease the value in a number register. For example, suppose you initially store the value five in **X**:

```
.nr X 5
```

### *Incrementing and Decrementing*

You can change the value of **X** to 9 by adding 4, as follows:

```
.nr X +4
```

You can then change the value of **X** to 7 by subtracting 2:

```
.nr X -2
```

A plus or minus sign before a number on the **.nr** command line tells **nroff** to add or subtract the given amount to or from the value in the register. Because a negative number is always preceded by a minus sign whereas a positive number usually is not preceded by a plus sign, you can use **.nr** to set a register to a positive value in a way that cannot be imitated for negative values. For example, suppose you again start out with number register **X** set to a value of 5:

```
.nr X 5
```

If you immediately follow this with

```
.nr X 7
```

then **nroff** replaces the value of 5 with 7. The second **.nr** does not increase the value of **X** by 7 to produce 12; rather, it wipes out the previous value of 5 and replaces it by the value 7. The command line to increase **X** by 7 is

```
.nr X +7
```

If you again start with a value of 5 in **X** and want to change the value to -4, you cannot use the following command line:

```
.nr X -4
```

**nroff** interprets this as a command to *decrease* the current value of **X** by 4, which is not what you intended. This command places the value 1 in **X**, since  $5-4=1$ . If **X** initially has a value of 5 and you want to change the value to -4, you could use the command

```
.nr X -9
```

You can also increase or decrease the value of a number register without using **.nr**. If number register **X** currently has the value 10, the reference **\n+X** increases the value in **X** by 1 to 11 and substitutes the new value for the reference. The value in **X** becomes 11; **nroff** replaces the next reference **\nX** by 11, whereas another reference **\n+X** increments the value in **X** to 12 and replaces the reference by 12. Similarly, if number register **XY** currently has the value 15, the reference **\n+(XY)** increases the value in **XY** to 16 and replaces the reference by 16.

You can also decrease a register's value. The reference **\n-X** decreases the current value in **X** by 1 and substitutes the new value for the reference. Likewise, the reference **\n-(XY)** decreases the current value in **XY** by 1 and substitutes the new value for the reference.

You can change the size of the increment or decrement by means of another option to the **nr** command. If you define **X** with

```
.nr X 1 5
```

then **nroff** sets the value of **X** to 1 and sets the increment value for **X** to 5. The next reference **\n+X** increments the value in **X** from 1 to 6 (the '+' now causes **nroff** to add 5 to the current value of **X** rather than adding 1) and substitutes 6 for the reference. In the same manner, **\n-X** subtracts 5 from the current value of **X** and substitutes the new value for the reference. This is convenient if you plan to repeatedly increment or decrement **X** by the same fixed amount. If you wish to change the size of the increment, simply redefine **X** with another **.nr** that specifies the new initial and increment values. If you define a number register but do not specify an increment value, **nroff** assumes the increment value to be 1.

The following example of a macro illustrates a typical use of a number register and incrementing.

```
.nr W 1                                \" set W to 1, inc by 1
.ds X \"Here's Wrestler No. \\nW,\"    \" define string X
.de B                                  \" define macro B
.br
\\*X \\$1!!!                          \" define arg to macro B
.nr b \\n+W                           \" increment W
..                                    \" end definition
.B \"Alex 'Killer' Bovine\"            \" call B with arguments
.B \"William 'Crusher' Risible\"
.B \"Vlad 'the Impaler' Acephalous\"
.bp                                  \" force printing of page
```

to produce the following output:

```
Here's Wrestler No. 1, Alex 'Killer' Bovine!!!
Here's Wrestler No. 2, William 'Crusher' Risible!!!
Here's Wrestler No. 3, Vlad 'the Impaler' Acephalous!!!
```

A reference to a number register may appear any place a number can normally appear. For example:

```
.nr X \nY \nZ
```

sets register **X** to the value of register **Y** and sets the increment for **X** to the value of register **Z**.

As mentioned before, **nroff** performs arithmetic. It understands and evaluates properly formed arithmetic expressions involving numbers, references to number registers, the arithmetic operators '+', '-', '\*', '/', '%', and parentheses. The first four operators represent addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The '%' is the *modulus* or *remainder* operator: the value of 7%3 is 1, which is the remainder when 7 is divided by 3.

One word of caution: **nroff** evaluates expressions from left to right without any preference for performing some operations before others. For example,

```
.nr X 5+4*3/9
```

stores 3 in **X**. **nroff** does not perform the multiplication and division before the addition, as you might expect.

Another important fact is that number registers hold only integers. If you write

```
.nr X 3.6
```

**nroff** truncates the value 3.6 and stores 3 in **X**. Also, an assignment such as

```
.nr X 3.9*3.9
```

stores 9 in **X**; **nroff** truncates each factor before it performs the multiplication. The assignment

```
.nr X 0.4*8
```

stores 0 in **X** rather than 3: truncation occurs before **nroff** performs the multiplication rather than after.

A final word of caution: when you use numbers with commands other than **.nr**, the results may *not* be what you expect. **nroff** understands several different units of measurement and converts between units automatically. The next section explains units and conversion in detail.

## **Units of Measurement**

As mentioned above, **nroff** maintains many number registers during processing. For example, it stores the current page length in the register **.l** (Note that the period '.' is actually part of the name of this register.) If you set the line length to five inches with the command

```
.ll 5i
```

**nroff** stores the length in register **.l** automatically; however, if you print the value in register **.l** by entering **\n(.l**, you find the value is 600. What does this mean?

Many **nroff** commands require that you specify lengths or measurements as arguments. You are already familiar with many of these commands: for example, **.ll**, **.po**, **.pl**, and **.lt**. **nroff** accepts various units of measurement, but for purposes of calculation, it converts each into a basic unit called a *machine unit*, which is abbreviated **u**. A machine unit is 1/120 of an inch long. Because one inch is 120 machine units, the length of a five-inch line is 5 times 120, or 600 machine units.

The conversion table for units of measurement is as follows:

inch:	1i = 120u
vertical line space:	1v = 20u
centimeter:	1c = 47u
em:	1m = 12u
en:	1n = 6u
pica:	1P = 20u
point:	1p = 1u

Most of these are traditional typesetting terms.

As noted briefly earlier, **nroff**'s output actually consists of a sequence of characters. It is useful, though, to think of the output as being "printed" at ten characters per inch (Pica or 10-pitch spacing) and six lines per inch. Many output devices use this spacing. With these assumptions, **5l** is equivalent to five inches of printed output.

Every **nroff** command has a default unit of measurement. For example, the default unit for **.ll** is **m**, whereas the default unit for **.sp** is **v**. If you type

```
.ll 5
```

**nroff** interprets it not as five inches or five centimeters, but as **5m**, which it converts to 5 times 12, or 60 machine units (**60u**).

**nroff** always assumes a unit specification as part of each number and automatically converts each number and its unit specification into machine units. If you append an explicit unit specification to the number, **nroff** uses it; if you do not, **nroff** uses the default unit for the command.

For example, suppose you write the following commands:

```
.nr X 2i
.ll \nX
```

What line length results? The first command stores the number 2 times 120, or 240, in register **X**. The second command is therefore equivalent to typing

```
.ll 240
```

However, the default unit for **.ll** is **m**. Because **1m** equals **12u**, **nroff** sets the line length to 12 times 240, or 2,880 machine units. If you wanted a line length of two inches to result from the above commands, you will be unpleasantly surprised, because **2i** equals only **240u**. Instead, you should write:

```
.nr X 2i
.ll \nXu
```

By including the **u** in the **.ll** primitive, you do not accidentally multiply your results by 12, as happened earlier.

You should think of the unit specification as a part of a number. Because **nroff** accepts so many different units of measurement, a number without a unit specification is ambiguous. What does '5' mean? Five inches? Centimeters? Ems? **nroff** must know what unit of measurement you are using. If you think of the unit specification as a part of the number, you will have less trouble with potentially mystifying situations like the following. As mentioned, number registers store only integers and **nroff** truncates each number in an arithmetic expression to an integer before evaluating the expression. Therefore, the following stores 0 in register **X**:

```
.nr X 0.4*9
```

But now try the following:

## TUTORIALS

```
.nr X 0.4i
\nX
```

This does not store 0 in **X** like the previous command; it stores 0.4 times 120, or 48 in **X**. The 0.4 is not truncated to 0 here! Truncation occurs *after* conversion to machine units, so **nroff** truncates 0.4u in the first example. But the number in the second example is given in inches **i** instead of machine units **u**. **nroff** converts it to **u** before truncating to get an integer.

As another example, the following stores 1 in **X**:

```
.nr X 0.01i
```

**nroff** converts 0.01 inches to 0.01 times 120, or 1.2u, and then truncates 1.2 to 1.

The following command illustrates that **nroff** understands *each* number in an arithmetic expression to have an attached unit specification, whether you supply one or not.

```
.ll 2*8
```

Recall that **nroff** stores the current line length in the register **.l**; if you type

```
\n(.l
```

you will receive the number 2,304. **nroff** interprets the 2 as 2m and the 8 as 8m, because the default unit for **.ll** is **m**. Then it converts each to machine units and multiplies to give the result: (2\*12)\*(8\*12), or 2,304.

Consider one final example that illustrates the unusual consequences of seemingly innocent assignments. Suppose you set the page offset as follows:

```
.po 8/3
```

**nroff** stores the current page offset in register **.o**. To see what number it stores there, type

```
\n(.o
```

You see that the page offset is 2. Because the default unit for **.po** is **m**, the calculation is (8\*12)/(3\*12)=8/3, which **nroff** truncates to 2. Two machine units is equivalent to only 1/60 of an inch. This is not a physically reasonable value for most typewriter-like devices, so a page offset of 0 characters results. On the other hand,

```
.po 8/3u
```

produces a page offset of approximately 1/4 of an inch.

## Conditional Input

Now that you have been introduced to number registers, you can use them in conjunction with powerful *conditional commands* to create more elaborate **nroff** scripts.

To see how conditional statements help you construct an **nroff** script, consider again the problem of creating header and footer macros. Earlier, you constructed macros that skipped space at the top of the page and printed the page number at the bottom of each page.

Suppose, however, that you are formatting a paper that has a title. You want to print the page number for page 1 at the bottom of the page, and to print the rest of the page numbers at the top of the page. Both the header and the footer need some kind of conditional mechanism to perform differently on the first page than on subsequent pages. On page 1, the header should skip to where the title will be printed; on other pages, the header should print the page number. On page 1, the footer should print the page number; on other pages, the footer should leave a block of blank space

at the bottom of the page.

To execute commands conditionally, use the *if/else* commands **.ie** and **.el**, which are demonstrated in the following example. Note that the formation `''`, which is used with the **.tl** command, represents two apostrophes, *not* a quotation mark.

```
.de HD          \" define header
.ie \\n%1 .A    \"
.el .B          \" else do B
..
.de A           \" define macro A
.sp |1.0i       \" space down to 1 inches from top of page
..
.de B           \" define macro B
.sp 2v          \" skip 2 spaces
.tl ''- % -''   \" print page no.
.sp |1.0i       \" skip to 1 inch from top of page
..
.de FO          \" define footer
.ie \\n%1 .C    \" if page no. is 1 then do C
.el .D          \" else do D
..
.de C           \" define macro C
.sp |-4v        \" move to 4 in. above bottom of page
.tl ''- % -''   \" print page no.
.bp            \" begin new page
..
.de D           \" define macro D
.bp            \" begin new page
..
```

As you can see, the **.ie** and **.el** commands always occur in pairs. **.ie** consists of three parts: the command name **.ie**, then a *condition* that **nroff** tests, followed by a *command* **nroff** performs if the condition is true. If the condition on the **.ie** command line is not true, **nroff** performs the command on the **.el** line instead.

In the example, each conditional invokes a macro on the command line. Actually, the conditional can specify *input* text rather than the command after the condition. If you want to execute several commands or include several text lines conditionally, enclose the lines with the special sequences `'{'` and `'}'`.

Note, too, that one other new element was introduced in the construction of these macros. Some of the **.sp** commands have a vertical bar immediately in front of the measurement; for example,

```
.sp |1.0i
```

Normally, when **nroff** sees a command like **.sp 1.0i**, it moves down one inch on the output page. The movement is relative to where **nroff** happens to be on the output page when it received the request. The vertical bar tells **nroff** that the following measurement is an *absolute* measurement, measuring either from the top of the page (if positive) or from the bottom of the page (if negative). Therefore,

```
.sp |1.0i
```

tells **nroff** to move to one inch from the top of the page;

```
.sp |(-4v)
```

tells it to move to four vertical spaces from the bottom of the page.

The **.if** primitive is formed exactly like **.ie**. Unlike **.ie**, which must always be used with **.el**, the **.if** command may be used by itself. If the condition on the **.if** line is true, **nroff** performs the command that follows the condition; if the condition is false, it ignores the command altogether.

This chapter ends with two substantial examples that incorporate most of what you have studied so far. To illustrate the use of conditionals, the first example begins each even paragraph of output with the phrase **Even Paragraph:** and begins each odd paragraph with the phrase **Odd Paragraph:**. Type this into the file **ex8.r**, and process it through **nroff** without using the **-ms** macro package, and as before, there is no need to copy the comments:

```
.wh 0 HD          \" set header trap
.wh -2i FO        \" set footer trap
.nr EO 1          \" set EO register to 1
.po 2i           \" page offset 2 inches
.pl 6i           \" page length 6 inches
.lt 4i           \" title length 4 inches
.ll 4i           \" line length 4 inches
.de HD           \" define header
'sp |(1i-1v)     \" space down to 1 inch minus 1 line
.tl '\\*(WS'     \" set WS macro in title
'sp |1.5i        \" space down to 1.5 inches
..
.de FO           \" define footer
'sp |(3i+3v)     \" space down to 3 inches plus 3 lines
.tl '- % -'     \" set page number in footer
'bp             \" begin new page
..
.ds WS "From the Devil\\'s Dictionary"
.               \" define string WS
.de PP          \" define paragraph macro
.ie \\n(EO=0 .EP \" if EO = 0 (even) then do EP
.el .OP        \" else do OP
..
.de EP          \" define EP (even paragraph)
.br
.nr EO 1        \" set register EO to 1
.sp 1v         \" skip 1 line
.ll 4i         \" set line length to 4 inches
.lt 4i         \" set title length to 4 inches
\\*E           \" insert string E
..
.ds E "Even Paragraph:"
.               \" define string E
.de OP          \" define macro OP (odd paragraph)
.br
.nr EO 0        \" set register EO to 0
.sp 1v         \" skip 1 line
.ll 3i         \" set line length to 3 inches
.lt 3i         \" set title length to 3 inches
\\*O           \" insert string O
..
```

```
.ds O "Odd Paragraph:"
.      \" define string O
.PP
Debt, n. An ingenious substitute for the whip
and chain of the slave-driver.
.PP
Bore, n. One who talks when you wish him to listen.
.PP
Brandy, n. A cordial composed of one part
thunder-and lightning, one part remorse, two parts
bloody murder, one part death-hell-and-the-grave,
and four parts clarified Satan.
.PP
Responsibility, n. A detachable burden easily
shifted onto the shoulders of God, Fate, Fortune,
Luck, or one's neighbor.
```

This example uses an “even/odd” register called **EO** to determine whether you are beginning an even or an odd paragraph. To distinguish between even and odd paragraphs, it uses a line length of four inches for even paragraphs and one of three inches for odd paragraphs. It changes the title length with each paragraph, so **nroff** centers the page number with respect to whichever kind of paragraph happens to occur at the bottom of a page.

The final example illustrates a loop constructed with the **if/else** commands. The first paragraph is six inches long with no page offset; each succeeding paragraph is one inch shorter with a page offset one inch longer. The line length of the sixth paragraph is one inch; the next paragraph renews the cycle with a six-inch line length. Type this into file **ex9.r**, and process it as you did the above example:

```
.nr PO 0 1      \" set register PO to 0, increment by 1
.de PP         \" define paragraph macro
.ie \\n(PO=6 .A \" if register PO=6 then do A
.el .B         \" else do B
..
.de A          \" define macro A
.br
.nr PO 0        \" set register PO to 0
.nr LL 6-\\n(PO \" set register LL to 6 minus PO
.ll \\n(LLi     \" set line length to LL inches
.po \\n(POi     \" set page offset to PO inches
.nr PO \\n+(PO  \" increment register PO
.sp           \" skip a space
..
.de B          \" define macro B
.br
.nr LL 6-\\n(PO \" set LL to 6 minus PO
.ll \\n(LLi     \" set line length to LL inches
.po \\n(POi     \" set page offset to PO inches
.nr PO \\n+(PO  \" increment register PO
.sp           \" skip a space
..
.PP
Future, n. That period of time in which our affairs prosper,
our friends are true, and our happiness is assured.
.PP
Gallows, n. A stage for the performance of miracle plays, in
```



```

which the leading actor is translated into heaven.
.PP
Genealogy, n. An account of one's descent from an ancestor
who did not particularly care to trace his own.
.PP
Guillotine, n. A machine which makes a Frenchman shrug
his shoulders with good reason.
.PP
History, n. An account most false, of events
most unimportant, which are brought about by
rulers mostly knaves, and soldiers mostly fools.
.PP
Idiot, n. A member of a large and powerful tribe
whose influence in human affairs has always been
dominant and controlling.
.PP
Kiss, n. A word invented by the poets as a rhyme
for "bliss".

```

You should try this example to see verify that "loop" works as advertised.

## ***Environments and Diversions***

Another aspect of **nroff**'s power is the ability to shift from one *environment* to another.

The **nroff** *environment* is the overall manner in which **nroff** processes your input text. The environment's definition includes such aspects as line length, fill and adjust modes, and indentation.

**nroff** allows you to define three independent environments, called 0, 1, and 2. In each, you can set as you wish such parameters as line length, filling, adjustment, and indentation. You can call a different environment with the **.ev** command; the parameters you define for the new environment control text processing until you change them within the present environment or shift to another environment.

Not all **nroff** parameters change when you switch to a new environment. For example, different environments do *not* have independent page offsets; the **.po** command affects all environments. Parameters that may be set to different values in different environments are *environmental parameters*; parameters that cannot be switched according to environment, like page offset, are *global parameters*. Macro and string definitions are global.

When you first call **nroff**, you are by default in environment 0. In all the examples used in this tutorial thus far, everything happened in environment 0. The following example illustrates how to switch back and forth between environments. Type in the following **ex10.r** and process it to see the output as you go along.

```
.po 1i          \" set global page offset to 1 inch
.ll 4i          \" set line length in ev 0 to 4 inches
.de PP          \" define paragraph macro
.sp
.ti 0.5i        \" indent first line 1/2 inch
..
.PP
The heart of the righteous studieth to answer,
but the mouth of the wicked poureth out evil things.
.br
.ev 1           \" switch to environment 1
.ll 3i          \" set line length to 3 inches
.ls 2           \" line spacing now double space
.PP
A froward man soweth strife, and a whisperer
separateth chief friends.
.br
.ev            \" return to previous ev (0)
.PP
It is naught, it is naught, sayeth the buyer;
but when he is gone his way, then he boasteth.
.br
.ev 1           \" switch to ev 1
.PP
Wealth maketh many friends; but the poor is separated
from his neighbors.
.br
.ev            \" return to ev 0
```

The first **.ll** command sets a line length of four inches in environment 0. After defining the paragraph macro **.PP** and an initial paragraph in environment 0, you switched to environment 1 with the command

```
.ev 1
```

You now enter a new environment. If you do not explicitly set environmental parameters, such as line length, **nroff** automatically uses default values for them. **nroff** assigns the same default values in environments 1 and 2 as it does in environment 0.

The line length in environment 1 is set to three inches with the output text double-spaced. The *line space* primitive

```
.ls 2
```

leaves one blank line between each output line. Thus, paragraphs processed in environment 0 have four-inch single-spaced lines, whereas paragraphs processed in environment 1 have three-inch double-spaced lines.

The example used the command line

```
.ev
```

without an argument to *leave* environment 1. This leaves environment 1 and restores (or “pops”) the previous environment — in this case, environment 0. The next time you enter environment 1,

you will not need to set the line length to three inches again: the value stays in effect in environment 1 until you specifically change it. The same is true of all environmental parameters.

To understand how **nroff** switches between environments, imagine that you have a set of plates, each marked with either a 0, a 1, or a 2. You have as many plates of each type as you wish. You stack the plates on a table; the top plate represents your current environment. You begin with a '0' plate on the table, to represent the initial environment when you enter **nroff**.

Switching to environment 1 with the command **.ev 1** corresponds to placing a '1' plate on top of the '0' plate. You can again change the stack of two plates either by placing a new plate on top of the stack, or by removing the top plate from the stack: the former corresponds to calling a new environment, whereas the latter corresponds to restoring the previous environment with the command line **.ev**.

Because you can have as many plates of each type as you wish, you can call environment 1, then call environment 2, then restore environment 1, then call environment 0, and so on. The command **.ev N**, where *N* is 0, 1, or 2, places (or "pushes") a plate onto the stack; the command **.ev** removes (or "pops") the top plate from the stack.

To illustrate this, add the following text to the end of the previous example. Use a piece of paper and pencil to keep track of how the **.ev** commands add or remove environments. Because the line lengths are different in each environment, it should be easy to tell in which environment **nroff** has processed each paragraph:

```
.ev 2          \" introduce environment 2
.ll 5i         \" set line length
.in 1i         \" set indentation
.PP           \" paragraph in ev 2
A poor man that oppreseth the poor is like
a sweeping rain which leaveth no food.
.br
.ev 0          \" push ev 0
.PP
As a roaring lion, and a ranging bear; so is
a wicked ruler over the poor people.
.br
.ev 1          \" push ev 1
.PP
Wrath is cruel, and anger is outrageous;
but who is able to stand before envy?
.br
.ev 2          \" push ev 2
.PP
A good name is rather to be chosen than
great riches; and loving favour rather than
silver and gold.
.br
.ev 0          \" push ev 0
.PP
Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty
spirit before a fall.
.br
.ev           \" return to ev 2
.ev           \" return to ev 1
.PP
He that answereth a matter before he heareth it,
it is folly and shame unto him.
.br
.ev           \" return to ev 0
.ev           \" return to ev 2
.PP
A merry heart doeth good like a medicine, but a
broken spirit drieth the bones.
.br
```

## Buffers

Earlier, it was shown that **nroff** uses a buffer to assemble words from its input into output lines. Actually, each environment has its own buffer. Switching to a new environment does *not* cause a break. Suppose you are currently in environment 1 with an unfinished line in the buffer. When you give the command **.ev 2**, the unfinished line remains undisturbed in the environment 1 buffer until you return to environment 1. Text you process in the meantime in environment 2 or in environment 0 has no effect on the partial line in the environment 1 buffer, because **nroff** assembles

text processed in other environments in different buffers.

In the following example, you process some text in environment 0 and then switch to environment 2. Any partial line collected in environment 0 when you switch to environment 2 waits patiently in the buffer until you return to environment 0 and issue the break command to flush the buffer. You then return to environment 2 and flush any partially filled line left when you restored environment 0. Enter the following into the file **ex11.r** and process it through **nroff**:

```
.ll 3i          \" set line length in ev 0
.po 2i          \" set page offset in ev 0
This is environment 0.
.ev 2           \" introduce ev 2
This is environment 2
.br             \" flush ev 2 buffer
.ev            \" return to ev 0
.br            \" flush ev 0 buffer
```

As you can see, the order of the two sentences is reversed from the way you entered them. If you were to delete the **.br** commands after the texts in **ex10.r**, the output would be very badly affected.

### ***Headers and Footers***

A common use of environment switching is for the creation of header and footer macros. As the following example demonstrates, the length of title set by the **.lt** command is an environmental parameter. The following constructs header and footer macros that print strings of asterisks in the margins above and below the text; type it into your computer as **ex12.r**:

```
.wh 0 HD          \" set header trap
.wh |2.5i FO      \" set footer trap
.de HD           \" define header macro
.ev 1            \" define ev 1
.lt 5i           \" set title length to 5 inches
'sp 3v           \" move down three spaces
.tl '*****'     \" define header title
'sp 2v           \" skip two more spaces
.ev             \" pop environment
..
.de FO           \" define footer macro
'sp 2
.ev 1            \" push ev 1
.tl '*****&'    \" define footer title
.ev             \" pop environment
'bp             \" begin new page
..
.ll 4i           \" set line length in ev 0
.pl 3i           \" set page length
.in 1i           \" set indentation
.po 2i           \" set page offset
.de PP           \" define paragraph macro
.sp 1
.ti 0.5i         \" indent 1st line 1/2 inch
..
.PP
When in the course of human events ...
```

The following section explains why header and footer macros often use a different environment.

### **More About Fonts**

As earlier described in some detail, **nroff** output includes representations for **boldface** and *italic* characters, in addition to the normal Roman characters. The visual appearance of boldface and italic characters depends on the device you use to print your **nroff** output.

If you want a word or a phrase to appear in boldface, enclose the word or phrase between **\fb** and **\fr**:

The last word of this sentence appears in **\fbBoldface\fr**.

The sequence **\fb** tells **nroff** to print in boldface, whereas the sequence **\fr** tells **nroff** to return to the Roman font. Italics are used in a similar manner:

An entire phrase **\fi**appears in italics**\fr**.

To print more than a few words in a different font, you should use the *font* command **.ft**:

```
.ft I
Here is text you want to
appear in italics.
.ft R
```

The initial **.ft I** switches the print to italic font, and the concluding **.ft R** returns it to Roman font.

## **TUTORIALS**

As you might have suspected, the command **.ft B** switches to boldface.

You have two additional options when you use the **.ft** primitive. The command **.ft P** returns to the *previous* font. You can use **.ft P** within a macro or a string to return to the previous output font, even though you do not know which font was previously in effect. You can also use the sequence **\fP** to return to the previous font. The **.ft** primitive without an argument tells **nroff** to return to the Roman font.

In scripts that frequently change fonts, you should switch to a new environment for header and footer macros, in order to protect their font settings.

## **Diversions**

The *diversion* is a powerful feature that allows you to suspend outputting lines until **nroff** has collected all of a block of text. For example, suppose you use **nroff** to format a chapter of a book. The chapter includes footnotes at various places in the text; you want **nroff** to collect these footnotes and print at the end of the chapter. To do this, **nroff** must store the processed footnote text somewhere until the end of the chapter, when you want it printed. Where do you store the text until the time comes for it to appear? To handle situations like this, **nroff** provides a *diversion* mechanism: you can *divert* text into temporary storage within a macro.

Diversion normally involves passing to a new environment to process the footnote without causing a break in the main environment. When the text of the diversion ends, **nroff** returns to the main environment, again without causing a break, and continues processing just as if the text of the note had never been in the input.

However, before you attempt to write a footnote macro, type the following text into the file **ex13.r**, and process it with **nroff**. This example illustrates the basic features of diversion. The example exchanges two paragraphs of text, so that **nroff** prints the second before the first.

```
.di X          \" divert the following to macro X
.sp
A soft answer turneth away wrath:
but grievous words stir up anger.
.br           \" send last line of paragraph to X
.di           \" end diversion
.sp
He that is slow to anger is better than the
mighty; and he that ruleth his spirit than he
that taketh a city.
.br
.sp
.X           \" print the paragraph diverted to X
```

The new command here is the *divert* primitive **.di**. The command **.di X** tells **nroff** to divert the text that follows into macro **X**; the matching **.di** with no argument marks the end of the diversion.

The break is necessary before the end of the diversion because **nroff** diverts *processed* text into the macro. Without the break, **nroff** would not divert any partially filled line in its buffer to **X**; the last few words of diverted text might not form a complete line in the buffer, so **nroff** might not divert them. However, if you break the input before you end the diversion, **nroff** will also divert those last few words.

As you saw earlier, the **.br** command must be used to flush that environment's buffer before switching environments.

The next example, **ex14.r**, illustrates a similar point.

```
.br          \" clear buffer
testword     \" put 'testword' into buffer
.di X        \" divert to X
Piracy, n. Commerce without its folly-swaddles,
just as God made it.
.br          \" divert last line
.di          \" end diversion
.X           \" print text in X
```

Here **nroff** diverts **testword** into **X** along with the text between **.di X** and **.di**. Why did this happen? The command **.di X** does *not* cause a break. Because you did not pass to a new environment in this example before you diverted, **nroff** formed the diversion text in the same buffer in which it stored **testword**. You did not break the input, so **nroff** appended the diverted text to **testword**.

To make sure **nroff** diverts only text between **.di X** and **.di** into **X**, do one of the following: If you want to process the diverted text within the current environment, empty the buffer by inserting the **.br** command before you start the diversion. If you switch to a new environment before starting the diversion, flush the buffer for the new environment before you begin to process diverted text.

Diverting processed text into a macro that already holds material will erase whatever had already been stored there. In some cases, such as the footnote example, you need to append information into the same macro. The *divert and append* variation **.da** of the diversion construction allows you to do so. The following example, **ex15.r**, demonstrates this command:

```
.ll 3i          \" set line length
.po 2i          \" set page offset
.de PP          \" define paragraph macro
.br
.sp 1
.ti 0.5i        \" indent first line 1/2 inch
..
.di X           \" divert the following into X
.PP
Litigation, n. A machine which you go into as a pig
and come out of as a sausage.
.br
.di            \" end diversion
.X            \" print what is in X
.br
.da X          \" divert and append material into X
.PP
Inventor, n. A person who makes an ingenious arrangement
of wheels, levers and springs, and believes it
civilization.
.br
.di            \" end diversion
.X            \" print what is now in X
```

In this example, you first diverted a single paragraph into the macro **X**. **nroff** stored in **X** the *processed* paragraph; in other words, the command line **.PP** is *not* stored in **X**; its *output* is. When you invoke **X** with the command line **.X**, **nroff** takes the processed text in **X** as input. To **nroff**, there is no difference between processed text and unprocessed text as input: it processes the



contents of **X** in the current environment, just like any other text. Therefore, **nroff** processes diverted text *twice*: first when it stores the text within the macro, and again when you invoke the macro.

The fact that **nroff** processes diverted text twice can cause problems if you are not careful. Fortunately, nothing strange happens in the example above. You store a processed paragraph with lines three inches long in **X**. When you invoke **X**, the line length is three inches. Because each line in **X** is already exactly three inches long, nothing happens to it when reprocessed; the layout of the output paragraph is unchanged.

But now, consider what happens in the following example, **ex16.r**:

```
.ll 3i          \" set line length
.po 2i          \" set page offset
.de PP          \" define PP macro
.sp 1
.ti 0.5i        \" indent first line 1/2 inch
..
.di X           \" divert following into X
.ev 2           \" push environment 2
.ll 4i          \" set line length to 4 inches
.PP
Justice, n. A commodity which in a more or less
adulterated condition, the State sells to the
citizen as a reward for his allegiance, taxes
and personal service.
.br
.ev            \" pop environment (return to ev 0)
.di           \" end diversion
.X
```

A paragraph processed in environment 0 in this example has three-inch lines; you want your diverted paragraph to have four-inch lines. However, when you print the diverted paragraph with the command line **.X**, what happened? **nroff** did *not* print four-inch lines. The four-line text lines set in environment 2 were reprocessed into three-inch lines when the diversion macro is called in environment 0.

There are two ways to prevent such disasters. First, if you wish to invoke **X** in the main environment, use no-fill mode:

```
.nf            \" begin no-fill mode
.X
.fi            \" return to fill mode
```

In no-fill mode, **nroff** outputs lines of input exactly as it receives them, so it keeps four-inch lines four inches long and does not change the format of the diverted text. The second strategy is to return to environment 2 and then invoke **X**; again, the format of the diverted paragraph does not change, because the line length in environment 2 is four inches.

```
.ev 2          \" push environment 2
.X
.ev            \" restore original environment
```

### A Footnote Macro

The footnote macro that follows does not print notes at the bottom of each page; rather, it prints everything at the end of the chapter. In the processed text, number register **Fn** is used to keep track of the footnote number; the footnote number will be printed in square brackets where the footnote originally appeared in the text.

Type this macro into the file **ex17.r**. If you wish to use it in your text processing, transfer it to the directory **/usr/lib** under the name **tmac.fn**. Then, whenever you wish to use this macro, be sure to include the option

```
-mfn
```

when you invoke **nroff**:

```
.de FN          \" define macro FN
[\\n+(Fn]       \" print footnote no. in main text
.ev 1          \" push environment 1
.da Z          \" divert and append following into Z
.sp
\\n(Fn. \\$2, \\fI\\$1\\fR,
  \\$3, \\$4. \" format & print footnote in Z
.br           \" flush diversion buffer
.di           \" end diversion
.ev          \" pop environment (return to ev 0)
..
```

Note that requests to change fonts are preceded by double backslashes, because they are within a macro. The change to the italic font prints the first macro argument, which should be the title of the work, in italics. Number register **Fn** contains the number of the last footnote; you should initialize it with the command

```
.nr Fn 0 1
```

As shown above, each footnote entry in your text should have four arguments. In your input text, each footnote will look like this:

```
.FN "Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to\
El-Medinah and Mecca" "Richard F. Burton"\
London 1856.
```

When you print the diversion **.Z** at the end of the chapter, each footnote will be laid out as follows:

```
8.      Richard F. Burton,
        Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to
        El_Medinah and Mecca,
        London, 1856.
```

## Command Line Options

In the previous sections, you learned how to control **nroff** by including *commands* in the input along with the *text*. You can also supply information in another way: on the command line you type to call **nroff**. Unlike the commands discussed above, this information is *not* part of the script you input into **nroff**.

You already know about some simple **nroff** command lines. For example, the command

```
nroff
```

forces **nroff** to accept input from the keyboard (sometimes called the *standard input*) and print output on the terminal (the *standard output*). Type **<ctrl-D>** (that is, hold down the **ctrl** key and type **D**) to exit from **nroff** if it is reading input from your terminal.

The command line

```
nroff script1.r
```

forces **nroff** to take accept input from the file **script1.r** instead of from your terminal, while the command

```
nroff -ms script.r
```

processes **script1.r** with the **-ms** macro package. You can also redirect **nroff** output to another file **target**:

```
nroff -ms script1.r >target
```

The general form of the **nroff** command line is:

```
nroff[ option ... ][ file ... ]
```

This means that the command line consists of the **nroff** command, followed by zero or more *options*, followed by zero or more *files*. **nroff** processes each named *file* and prints the result on the standard output (the terminal, unless redirected). If no *file* argument is given, as in the first example above, **nroff** reads from the standard input.

Each *option* on the command line must begin with a hyphen '-' to distinguish it from a *file* specification. Using **nroff** with the **-ms** macro package is one example of entering an option. In general, the **-m** option takes the form

```
-mname
```

which means the option consists of the characters **-m** immediately followed by a *name*. This tells **nroff** to process the macro package found in the COHERENT file

```
/usr/lib/tmac.name
```

For example, the **ms** macro package discussed in chapter 2 is in the file **/usr/lib/tmac.s**, whereas the **man** macro package used for the **man** command and to process manual pages is in the file **/usr/lib/tmac.an**.

Any macro packages that you customize for your own use should be stored in the directory **/usr/lib** under such a name if you wish to use them with the **-mname** option.

The **-i** option tells **nroff** to read input from the standard input after processing each given *file*. This allows you to supply additional input interactively from your terminal.

The **-x** option tells **nroff** not to move to the bottom of the last output page when done. This is especially useful if you want to see the output on the screen of a CRT terminal.

The **-nN** option sets the page number of the first output page to the number *N*, rather than starting at page 1. This is useful for processing large documents with input text in several files which **nroff** processes separately.

The **-rXN** option sets the value of number register *X* to *N*. This option lets you initialize number registers when you invoke **nroff**.

The COHERENT system provides many useful features which can be helpful while you are using **nroff**. In particular, you can use a number of special characters. The *stop-output* and *start-output* characters, usually **<ctrl-S>** and **<ctrl-Q>**, stop and restart output on your terminal. The *interrupt* character, usually **<ctrl-C>**, interrupts program execution; you can use it to stop an **nroff** command if you typed the command line incorrectly. The *kill* character, usually **<ctrl-\\>**, also terminates program execution. Some COHERENT systems use different characters than those mentioned above; consult *Using the COHERENT System* for details.

### *For Further Information*

The Lexicon entry for **nroff** summarizes its primitives, dedicated number registers, escape sequences, and command-line options. The related program **troff** also performs text formatting, except that it produces proportionally spaced output that can be printed on printers that support the Hewlett-Packard Page Control Language (including the LaserJet and DeskJet families of printers) or on printers that support the PostScript page-control language. See the Lexicon entry for **troff** for details on how to use this program.

The Lexicon also has entries for two macros packages that are included with the COHERENT system: **man**, which produces manual pages similar to those that appear in the Lexicon; and **ms**, which performs formatting somewhat similar to that seen in this tutorial. You will find that these two packages already perform practically all of the formatting tasks that you will commonly need to do.

The error messages generated by **nroff** are given in the appendix at the rear of this manual.

---

# UUCP, Remote Communications Utility

---

UUCP is a set of programs that together let you communicate in an unattended manner with remote COHERENT and UNIX sites. The term *UUCP* is an abbreviation for "UNIX to UNIX copy"; as its name implies, UUCP was developed under the UNIX operating system. Mark Williams Company has recreated UUCP for COHERENT.

UUCP allows your COHERENT system to talk to other computers that also run COHERENT or UNIX. It can transmit files and mail to other systems and receive material from them, without needing you to guide it by hand every step of the way. Moreover, you can instruct UUCP to telephone other computers at the same time each day; this permits regular, orderly exchange of mail, news, and files among computers, and allows you to take advantage of lower telephone rates during off-peak periods. In a similar fashion, UUCP allows other systems to log into your system, to exchange mail or other information, and otherwise perform useful tasks.

Numerous UUCP systems have linked together to create an informal network called the *Usenet*. Many megabytes of source code, news, and technical information are available across the Usenet. Anyone who is connected to the Usenet can exchange mail with anyone else who is also connected to the Usenet. All that is required to hook into the Usenet is to obtain a UUCP connection to anyone else who is connected to the Usenet.

You can use UUCP only if you have telephone access to another computer that runs UUCP, and if your system and the remote system with which you wish to communicate have been described to each other. UUCP is standard with COHERENT and UNIX, and can be purchased for MS-DOS. If you wish to copy files from another system, you must arrange with the system administrator of that system before you can begin to use UUCP. Likewise, if you want someone else to dial into your system to upload or download files, you must first describe that system to your copy of UUCP.

## ***Contents of This Tutorial***

This tutorial describes UUCP and tells you how to set up and run your UUCP system.

The first section gives an overview of UUCP. Following sections show how to set up UUCP using the command **uuinstall**; then give extended examples of how to set up your system to dial out to other UUCP sites, and how to set it up to enable other UUCP sites to dial into to you.

The final sections discuss how to debug UUCP problems, and how to administer your UUCP system.

Try as we might, there is no way to present all of UUCP in a brief tutorial. If you wish to explore the heights and depths of UUCP, we urge you to acquire the following books:

- O'Reilly, T.: *!%@: A Directory of Electronic Mail Addressing and Networks*. Sebastapol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates Inc., 1989.
- O'Reilly, T.; Todino, G.: *Managing UUCP and Usenet*. Sebastapol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates Inc., 1987.
- Seyer M.D.: *RS-232 Made Easy: Connecting Computers, Printers, Terminals, and Modems*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice-Hall Inc., 1984.

### *An Overview of UUCP*

UUCP is a set of programs that exchange files with other computers that run UUCP. You can set aside files or mail messages to be transferred to another computer; UUCP regularly checks to see if material has been set aside to be transferred, dials the remote system, and exchanges the files without requiring your assistance.

This appears to be a simple function, but it can be extremely useful to you. Suppose, for example, that you run a real-estate office that is a member of an organization with regional and national offices. You can tell UUCP to call your regional office each night, to send a file of your new listings and to accept a file of new listings in your district that had come from other local offices. Likewise, your association's regional office can telephone the national office each night to receive new listings in your region, which can then be passed on automatically to the appropriate neighborhood offices. All of this information can be transferred at night, when telephone rates are lowest, and without needing you to be at the console. When you come to work the next morning, you will have the latest listings instantly available on your terminal.

In brief, what UUCP offers is the ability to join a *network* of computers, in which every user of every computer can exchange information with every user on every other computer, automatically. What computer networks can do is limited only by your need to exchange information with other computer users, and by your imagination.

### *The Programs*

UUCP consists of the following programs:

<b>uucico</b>	Call remote systems: log in to the remote system and transfer files.
<b>uucp</b>	The UUCP user interface. <b>uucp</b> copies files from one computer to another. Be sure not to confuse the <b>uucp</b> command with the UUCP system, despite their similar names.
<b>uudecode</b>	Translate files encoded by <b>uuencode</b> back into object code.
<b>uuencode</b>	Translate binary files into printable ASCII characters for transmission to another system.
<b>uuinstall</b>	This program displays a template on your screen, and helps you describe a system to UUCP relatively painlessly.
<b>uulog</b>	Read the UUCP logs, which record what UUCP does.
<b>uumvlog</b>	Copy the current UUCP log files into backup files. Throw away all log files older a requested number of days. UUCP logs everything that it does; and since it does a lot, its log files can grow very large very quickly. <b>uumvlog</b> ensures both that you have enough information on your system to diagnose problems with UUCP, and that the UUCP log files do not overwhelm your system.
<b>uuname</b>	List the systems that your computer can reach.
<b>uutouch</b>	Create a file that triggers a call to a named remote system.
<b>uux</b>	Execute a command on a remote system.
<b>uuxqt</b>	Check directory <code>/usr/spool/uucp/sitename</code> and execute all files therein that have the prefix "X."

## **TUTORIALS**

Two other programs, while not part of UUCP *per se*, are used by it:

- ttystat** Check the status of your asynchronous ports. If UUCP is not receiving files from other systems or not sending files to other systems, it may be because the appropriate ports have not been enabled.
- mail** Send "electronic mail" to another person, either on your system or on another system via UUCP.

### ***Directories and Files***

UUCP uses the following files and directories:

- /bin/uulog**  
The **uulog** command.
- /etc/domain**  
This file lists the UUCP domain. It is read by **mail**.
- /etc/modemcap**  
This file holds descriptions of modems that are understood by the COHERENT system.
- /etc/uucpname**  
Holds the name of your system, as it is known to other UUCP sites.
- /usr/bin/uucp**  
The **uucp** command. Copy a file to another system that runs UUCP.
- /usr/bin/uuname**  
The **uuname** command.
- /usr/bin/uudecode**  
The **uudecode** command.
- /usr/bin/uuencode**  
The **uuencode** command.
- /usr/lib/uucp**  
Contains UUCP commands and system data files.
- /usr/lib/uucp/L-devices**  
Describe the outgoing lines. Note whether they are directly wired or modems; give the protocol needed to manipulate them.
- /usr/lib/uucp/L.sys**  
Gives login data for remote sites. It gives the way to call remote sites and the sites that only call you.
- /usr/lib/uucp/Permissions**  
For each site, list the programs that that site has permission to execute on your system.
- /usr/lib/uucp/ttystat**  
The **ttystat** command.
- /usr/lib/uucp/uucico**  
The **uucico** command.
- /usr/lib/uucp/uumvlog**  
The **uumvlog** command.

**/usr/lib/uucp/uutouch**

The **uutouch** command.

**/usr/lib/uucp/uuxqt**

The **uuxqt** command.

**/usr/spool/logs/uucp**

Log of UUCP activity.

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log**

Directory containing UUCP logfiles, as follows:

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/sitename**

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uux/sitename**

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucp/sitename**

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uuxqt/sitename**

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename/C.\***

Files that instruct the local system either to send or to receive files.

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename/D.\***

Work files for outgoing and incoming files.

**/usr/spool/uucp/LCK.\***

The “lock” files UUCP uses to coordinate its resources. When a UUCP program attempts to access a remote site, it writes a “lock” file for that site. This is to prevent UUCP from accidentally attempting to access the same site more than once simultaneously. When the program that wrote the lock file exits successfully, it erases its lock files, and so makes that site accessible to other UUCP programs.

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Sequence**

This directory contains the sequence number of the last file handled by UUCP.

**/usr/spool/uucp/TM\***

Temporary files that **uucico** generates while it receives files from remote sites.

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename/X.\***

Executed files. These files will be executed by the command **uuxqt**, and are generated by a remote system.

**/usr/spool/uucppublic**

Public directory accessible by all remote UUCP systems.

### Attaching a Modem to Your Computer

UUCP can be used to network computers that are within the same office or the same building. It is far more common, though, to use UUCP to connect computers that are far apart via modem. This tutorial assumes that you will be using UUCP to exchange files via modem.

If you have not yet attached a modem to your computer, this section will give you some useful hints. It is straightforward to attach a modem to your computer, but you must be careful.

First, read the documentation that comes with your modem, and look for the following: (1) the baud rate at which the modem operates, and (2) the command protocol that your modem uses.

Second, check the plug on the back of your modem. The modem will connect to your computer via a nine-pin or 25-pin D plug, also known as an RS-232 interface. Such a plug can be either *male* or *female*: the male plug has nine or 25 small pins projecting from it, whereas the female does not.



Due to what can only be termed extreme stupidity, IBM AT and AT-computatible computers use RS-232D plugs for both serial and parallel ports. *Be sure to plug your modem into a serial port, not the parallel port, or you can damage your computer and your modem!*

Third, obtain a cable to connect one of the serial ports on your computer to the modem. The serial ports on an IBM AT or AT compatible are almost always male. If your modem has a female plug, you will need a male-to-female cable, whereas if your modem's plug is male (which is very rare), you will need a female-to-female plug. Be sure to purchase a standard modem cable for an IBM AT; practically all computer dealers carry them. The cable you purchase should support "full modem control"; if it doesn't say on the package, be sure to ask your dealer before you buy it. If you are handy with a soldering iron you may be able to solder up such a cable for yourself, but unless you know precisely what you are doing it probably is not worth the trouble.

The Lexicon entry **RS-232** contains pinouts for both nine- and 25-pin connectors. When you plug in your cable, be sure to note whether you plugged it into port **com1**, **com2**, **com3** or **com4**.

Fourth, reconfigure the serial port to suit your modem. This involves the following steps:

1. Log in as the superuser **root**.
2. Edit the file **/etc/ttys**. This file normally has several lines in it, one that describes the console and one for each serial port. Each line has four fields: a one-character field that indicates whether a login prompt should be displayed (used only for devices from which people will be logging into your system); a one-character field that describes whether the device is local or remote (a local would be a modem from which you wished to dial out, a remote device would be a modem from which someone could dial in); a one-character field that describes the speed (or baud rate) at which the device operates; and a field of indefinite length that names the device being described.

If you have plugged into serial port **com1** a 1200-baud modem that will allow remote logins, edit the line for **com1** to read as follows:

```
1rIcom1r
```

If you have plugged into serial port **com2** a 2400-baud modem from which you are only going to dial out, edit the line for **com2** to read as follows:

```
0lIcom2l
```

Note that the second and last character are a lower-case **el**, not a one. For more information, see the Lexicon entries for **com**, **getty** and **ttys**.

3. When you have finished editing **/etc/ttys**, type the following command:

```
kill quit 1
```

This will force COHERENT to read **/etc/ttys** and set up its ports in the manner that you have configured them.

Finally, test if you have connected your modem. Turn on your modem; then log in as the superuser **root** and type the following command:

```
echo "FOO" >/dev/port
```

where *port* is the "local" version of the port, depending on which serial port you have plugged your modem. If the systems are connected, the lights on your modem should blink briefly. For a more sophisticated test, try to communicate with your modem by using the command **kermit**. If you are not familiar with **kermit**, see its entry in the Lexicon for details.

If you continue to have problems making connections with your modem, see the volume *RS-232 Made Easy*, referenced above. It describes in lavish detail how to connect all manner of devices via the RS-232 interface. Also check the Lexicon articles **modem** and **RS-232** for helpful information.

### Selecting Site and Domain Names

The first step to setting up UUCP is to select a site name for your system. The name must have eight characters or fewer, and must be unique — or unique, at least, to the system into which you will log in. Avoid names taken from popular culture, such as “calvin,” “hobbes,” or “arnold” — these have already been used many times. The site name is written into file `/etc/uucpname`. See the Lexicon entry **uucpname** for more details.

Next, select a domain name for your system. A *domain* is a set of UUCP system that together form one group with a common name. Even if you do not belong to a domain, you must set a domain for your system, because **mail** expects it. By convention, you can use your site name plus the suffix **.UUCP** to create a domain. The domain name is written into file `/etc/domain`. See the Lexicon entry **domain** for details.

If you wish to use **uucinstall** to set up UUCP, then that utility will show you how to install your site and domain names. Otherwise, you must edit `/etc/uucpname` and `/etc/domain` to install them.

### Installing UUCP With uucinstall

Installing UUCP means giving it the information it needs so it can dial out and make connection with another system; and so another system can dial in and make connection with it.

You can edit the necessary UUCP files by hand, if you wish. Two sections later in this tutorial will walk you through how to do that, should you be interested. COHERENT, however, comes with the command **uucinstall**, which uses a series of interactive screens to walk you through the set-up process. This section introduces you to **uucinstall**.

To begin, before you can use UUCP to log into a remote system, you must find a remote system that will let you log in via UUCP. This section uses the Mark Williams bulletin board system **mwcbbs** as an example. **mwcbbs** is available via UUCP to all users of COHERENT. Through **mwcbbs** you can exchange mail with Mark Williams Technical Support, download source code for interesting and amusing programs, and download the latest versions of COHERENT binaries that repair reported bugs.

To begin, log in as the superuser **root** and type:

```
uucinstall
```

In a moment, the screen will clear and the following menu will appear:

```
H - Help for screens
S - Sitename
L - Lsys
D - Devices
P - Permissions
```

You should type **H** first. **uucinstall** will show you the keystrokes it expects to move from one field to another. These keystrokes are the same as used by the MicroEMACS screen editor. If you're not familiar with MicroEMACS, the keystrokes are easy enough to learn.

## Setting Up Your Local Site

If you are describing a system to UUCP for the first time, type **S** for site name. This will ask you for your site name and your domain name. Type each in the space indicated.

When you have finished entering this information, type **<ctrl-Z>** to exit this screen and return to the main menu.

## Devices

The next step in setting up UUCP is to tell it what type of modem it will working with. If you are working with UUCP for the first time, type **D** for devices. You will see the following template in the right half of your screen:

```

H Help for screens
M Modify this entry
N Next entry
P Previous entry
A Add an entry
C add Comment
D Delete this entry
X eXit [  ]

```

Press **A** to add a new device. As soon as you do so, **uucinstall** displays the following template in the upper left half of your screen:

```

Type:
Line:
Remote:
Baudrate:
brand:

```

The first field, **Type:** can take one of two entries: **DIR** or **ACU**. The former indicates that the device is directly wired into your computer, such as another computer in your office area; the latter is for remote devices like modems. For purposes of this example, we assume that you are using a mode; so type **ACU**. Now type **<ctrl-N>**, to move to the next field.

In the next field, **Line:**, enter the serial port into which you've plugged your modem: **com11**, **com21**, etc. Then type **<ctrl-N>**.

The next field, **Remote:**, gives the name of the port into which a remote device is connected. Enter the port into which you plugged your modem, followed by the letter 'r'. For example, if your modem is plugged into port **com21**, enter **com2r**. Type **<ctrl-N>** to move to the next field.

The next field, **Baudrate:**, is the speed at which your modem operates, e.g., 2400 or 9600. Enter it, then type **<ctrl-N>**.

Finally, enter the type of modem that you are using. The COHERENT system's file **/etc/modemcap** contains descriptions for a number of popular modems, to spare you the trouble of typing control sequences for your modem. The following table gives the code name for each of the modems described in **/etc/modemcap**, plus a description:

<b>hayes</b>	Hayes Smartmodem 1200
<b>tbfast</b>	Trailblazer, 9600 baud
<b>xtb2400</b>	Trailblazer, 2400 baud
<b>avatex</b>	Hayes clone, 2400 baud
<b>promodem</b>	Prometheus Promodem 1200
<b>mk12</b>	Signalman Mark XII
<b>dc300</b>	Radio Shack Direct-Connect 300

Enter the code name for the appropriate modem. One hint: if you have a Hayes or Hayes-compatible modem that runs at 2400 baud, enter **avatex** instead of **hayes** — their **modem** descriptions are virtually identical except for the baud rate.

Please note that the dialing commands in **modemcap** assume that you have a Touch-Tone telephone. If you have a pulse telephone, you must modify your modem's entry in **modemcap**. First, consult the documentation for your modem and find the correct command for dialing a pulse telephone; on Hayes and Hayes-compatible modems, it is **DP**. Then open the file **/etc/modemcap** and locate the description of your modem; then change the characters that follow the string **ds=** to the command you just looked up. For example, to edit the **avatex** entry in **modemcap** so it will dial a pulse telephone, change the string **ds=DT** to **ds=DP**.

Once you have described your modem correctly, there should be no need for you to do it again. Type **<ctrl-Z>** to save your changes and return to the main menu.

### Describing a Remote Site

The next step is to enter information about the site you will be contacting. When you have returned to **uuinstall**'s main menu, type **L**, for **L.sys**. **L.sys** is a file that hold a description of every system with which you will exchange files. As soon as you type **L**, **uuinstall** displays the following template:

Connected system list			
System	[		
Line	[		
baud rate	[		
phone number	[		
Day to call		Time From	Time To
[	[	[	
[	[	[	
[	[	[	
[	[	[	
[	[	[	
[	[	[	
expect [			send [
expect [			send [
expect [			send [
expect [			send [
expect [			send [
expect [			send [
expect [			send [
expect [			send [

Brackets '[' indicate a point where you are to enter data.

Type **M**, to *modify* this entry.

In the first entry, **System**, type the name of the system with which you will be connecting. Since you will be contacting the Mark Williams Bulletin Board, type **mwcbbs**. Type **<ctrl-N>**, to move to the next field.

The next field, **Line**, names the line to which you have connected your modem, either **ACU** or a port from the aforementioned **devices** screen. This may seem redundant with the description in the **device** file; however, it's not, because it's possible to connect to a remote system via more than one route or device. Type the name of the port (e.g., **com21**), then **<ctrl-N>**.

In the next field **baud rate**, type your modem's baud rate; then **<ctrl-N>**.

In the next field, **phone number**, enter the remote system's telephone number. For this example, enter the telephone number for **mwcbbs**, which is **17085590412**. (If you live in the 708 area, do not include the "1708" area code.) Note that no hyphens are included. Now, type **<ctrl-N>**.

### Day and Time To Call

The next of fields let you set the days of the week and times to call the remote system. **Day to Call** recognizes the following values:

<b>Wk</b>	Every weekday, i.e., Monday through Friday
<b>Su</b>	Sunday
<b>Mo</b>	Monday
<b>Tu</b>	Tuesday
<b>We</b>	Wednesday
<b>Th</b>	Thursday
<b>Fr</b>	Friday
<b>Sa</b>	Saturday
<b>Never</b>	Don't call remote system
<b>Any</b>	Call at any time

**Time From** and **Time To** set a "window" during which UUCP will attempt to contact the remote system. Both are set using a 2400-hour clock; for example, with the setting

```
We      2100   2300
```

UUCP will try to contact this remote system between 9:00 PM and 11:00 PM. Likewise, with the setting

```
We      2300   0200
```

UUCP will try to contact **mwcbbs** between 11:00 PM and 2:00 AM the following morning. If on the first try UUCP fails to make connection with the remote system (the line is busy, say), it will try again periodically until either it connects with the remote system or the time period for that system and day has ended. (The following section will tell you how to set when UUCP checks for newly queued files.) When the next "window" opens up, UUCP will then try again.

If you do not set the time for a given day, then UUCP will attempt to contact the remote system as soon as it discovers that a file for that system has been queued. The advantage of setting times is that you can force UUCP to work in the evening and on weekends, when telephone rates are cheaper, and you can spread UUCP's work around so it never overloads the system at any given point. After all, if you need your modem yourself during the day, you don't want to wait for UUCP to finish a call before you use it.

As you can see, the template for days and times has seven rows. This lets you establish different times for each day of the week; for weekdays and weekends; for weekdays alone; or weekends alone. You do not have to dial a remote site every day! Depending upon the importance of the site, weekdays or weekends alone may be sufficient. Consider the following set of entries:

<i>Day to Call</i>	<i>Time From</i>	<i>Time To</i>
Wk	2300	0200
Sat	2300	0200
Sun	1300	1500

This scheme dials the remote site between 11 PM and 2 AM Monday through Saturday, and between 1 PM and 3 PM on Sunday. This takes advantage of the fact that on Sundays, lower telephone rates are in the afternoon rather than the evening; and it also takes advantage of the fact that like most sensible people, you have better things to do on a Sunday afternoon besides work on your computer.

The default setting, **Any** with no times, forces UUCP to transmit files as soon as they are queued. If you wish to change this, do so. Type **<ctrl-N>** to move from field to field and from line to line.

If you are interacting with a number of remote sites, be sure to stagger the times during which UUCP attempts to contact them. The more systems UUCP has to contact during a given time period, the fewer attempts it will be able to make to contact any of them.

### ***The Chat Script***

The last eight fields on this template let you enter the "chat script". This script walks your UUCP system through the prompts and responses by which you actually log into the remote system.

To understand the structure of the chat script, consider the process by which you log into the system for International Widget. When you make the connection, the phrase

Welcome to the Wonderful World of Widgets!

appears on the screen. What you really want to see, however, is the prompt

Login:

so you press the carriage return key to the system to get on with it. The remote system then displays the **Login:** prompt, and you reply by typing your login ID, say **frank**. Finally, the system displays the prompt

Password:

and your reply by typing your password, say "bahHumBug". All then proceeds accordingly.

The chat script mimics this sequence of events. It is constructed out of a set of **Expect/Send** pairs: the **Expect** portion tells UUCP what to expect the remote system to send, and the **Send** portion tells UUCP how to respond. Optionally, an entry may take the form

expect-subsend-subexpect send

where **subsend** is a possibly empty string, enclosed in hyphens, to be sent if the "expect" string is not received. For example,

ogin:--ogin: nuucp

waits for **ogin:**; if this string is not received, a newline is sent and the system waits for **ogin:** again. If **ogin:** is received either time, **nuucp** is sent followed by a newline.

The first **Expect/Send** pair should hold the prompt that UUCP needs to log in — and how to respond if it *doesn't* get it. In most cases, you should set the **Expect** field to "ogin:" and leave the **Send** field as the pair of quotation marks, which sends a carriage return.

Type **<ctrl-N>** until the cursor is position in the first **Expect** field; then enter the first **Expect/Send** pair as follows:

```
Expect " "          Send \r\d\r
```

The empty quotation marks "" in the **Expect** field represent nothing or anything. Entering this first lets you skip over any line noise or grandiose messages that may accompany the login prompt. The sequence **\r\d\r** in the **Send** field means, "Send a carriage return, wait one second, then send another carriage return." By sending carriage returns and delaying, your system has a fighting chance of moving to the actual login prompt.

Note, by the way, that you can use the following escape sequences in your chat script:

Notation	Meaning
""	Expect a null string
<b>\b</b>	Send backspace
<b>\c</b>	If send string ends with <b>\c</b> , suppress newline after send string
<b>\d</b>	Delay one second while sending
<b>\n</b>	Send a newline
<b>\r</b>	Send a carriage return
<b>\s</b>	Send a space
<b>\t</b>	Send a tab

Press **<ctrl-N>** to move to the next **Expect/Send** pair; then enter the following:

```
Expect ogin:        Send nuucp
```

**mwcbbs** sends the login prompt **Coherent login:.** It is sufficient to look for the tail of that prompt, or **ogin:.** Every user who logs into **mwcbbs** should use the login ID **nuucp**, so you should type that into the the **Send** field, to send in response to the login prompt.

Next, you must enter the password. Type **<ctrl-N>** to enter the next **Expect/Send** pair, and enter:

```
Expect ssword:      Send public
```

**mwcbbs** sends the prompt **Password:** to ask for the password. Again, it is sufficient to include only the tail of the prompt. The password for **mwcbbs** is always **public**, so that must go into the **Send** portion of the **Expect/Send** pair.

Press **<ctrl-N>** to move to the next **Expect/Send** pair. Now, you must enter the BBS password, which is serial number of your copy of COHERENT. The prompt is **BBS access Password:;** again, the stub **ssword:** is sufficient. If your COHERENT serial number is 1234567, then this **Expect/Send** pair should appear as follows:

```
Expect ssword:      Send 1234567
```

When you have finished writing the chat script, your description of the remote system is complete. Type **<ctrl-Z>** to indicate that you have finished editing, and then type **X** to exit from this screen and return to the main menu. Then type **P** to enter the last template needed for installation: the one that sets permissions on your system.

### Granting Permissions

The last task in describing a remote site is setting its permissions. Unless you grant the remote system permissions, it can execute nothing on your system, not even the **mail** program to send you a letter. When you grant permissions, you do the following:

- Name the remote system in question.
- Give the name by which the remote system knows you (if it is other than the name in **/etc/uucpname**).
- Name the programs it can execute on your system.
- Name the directories into which it can write files, and the directories from which it can copy files.

If permissions were not set rigidly, then every UUCP connection would be potentially a breach of system security.

**uuinstall**'s "permissions" appears as follows:

```
Items in all lists are separated by : (colon)

Remote site name [
Provide an entry for that site calling in <y/n> [
    LOGNAME      [
Add an entry to /etc/passwd <y/n> [
Identify myself as [
Can the remote site request file transfers ... <y/n/c> [
Can this computer initiate file transfers ... <y/n> [

Commands which can be executed at this computer ...
[
Read directory list
[
Exceptions to the read directory list
[
Write directory list
[
Exceptions to the write directory list
[
```

Note that an ellipsis '...' indicates that some text has been left out so this display will fit onto a printed page. Also, a bracket '[' indicates a point where you should enter data.

The first slot in the template asks you to name the remote site. Enter the name of the site as you entered it in the **L.sys** template; in this example, enter **mwcbbs**. **uuinstall** automatically uses this entry to fill in the **LOGNAME** slot by default to the site name with the letter 'u' appended to the beginning.

The second slot in the template asks if you want to provide an entry in **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions** for that site to call you. Enter 'y' only if that site will be dialing into your system; otherwise, enter 'n'. Since **mwcbbs** will never call you, enter 'n'.



The next question

Add an entry to `/etc/passwd` <y/n> :

asks if you want **uuinstall** to update the file `/etc/passwd` automatically. If you answer 'y', **uuinstall** adds a new entry for **LOGNAME** to file `/etc/passwd` when you exit from this screen. Again, since **mwcbbs** will never call, it will never need to log in; so answer 'n'.

The next question

Identify myself as :

asks if you wish to identify yourself to the remote system as something other than your usual system name — that is, if you wish to identify yourself by a name other than the one that is in the file `/etc/username`. The Mark Williams Bulletin expects that you identify yourself as **bbsuser**, so type that into this field.

The next two slots ask if the remote site can request files from your system and if you can, on your own, upload files to the remote system. For this example, you will want to send files to **mwcbbs**, and have it send files to you; so answer 'y' to both questions.

The last five fields are "long fields". When data are to be entered into a long field, **uuinstall** opens a window at the top of the screen, which looks like this:

Data entry for potentially long field	
[	
[	
[	
[	
[	
[	

Enter the long field's data into the window. Typing a carriage return at the beginning of a line ends the long field. **uuinstall** then displays a convenient chunk of the long field on the main screen.

Typing <ctrl-P> or <ctrl-N> moves you to, respectively, the previous or next field on the screen. Typing <ctrl-Z> finishes the entire screen.

The first long field asks you to name the commands that the remote site can execute on your computer. Enter **rmail:rnews**. The former will let **mwcbbs** send electronic mail to your system, and **rnews** will let it transfer news files to you. For other remote systems, you can add other commands to this list; but remember that the shorter the list is, the less the chance an intruder will be able to do mischief on your system.

In the next long field, enter the directories from which **mwcbbs** can copy files. Enter **/usr/spool/uucp/uucppublic:/tmp**. For other remote systems, more directories may be appropriate.

The third long field requests exceptions to the read list. When you enter a directory on the read list, that directory plus all of its children become available for reading. If you wanted to place "off limits" a subdirectory of any directory named in the previous slot, you would enter it here. For this example, skip this field.

The next long field asks you to name the directories into which the remote system can write files. Enter **/usr/spool/uucp/uucppublic:/tmp**.

In the last long field, enter the list of exceptions to the write list. Again, you can skip this field.

Type **<ctrl-Z>** to end data entry and return to the main menu; then enter 'X' to exit. Type 'y' when asked if you wish to save your changes into the system's files.

And that's all there is to it.

Every time you wish to make contact with a new system, you can use **uuinstall** as described above.

A UUCP description may need several revisions, as you attempt to make contact with the remote system. Writing these descriptions is something of a black art. Be patient and persistent: once contact is made, the connection should work without further maintenance being needed for months to come.

### ***Polling a Remote Site Automatically***

The last step in setting up your UUCP system is to edit the file **crontab**. This file contains a description of programs that are to be executed periodically. The program **cron** reads this file once every minute, checks its contents against the system time, and executes the appropriate programs. By inserting descriptions of the UUCP commands into **crontab**, you will ensure that UUCP will execute regularly to poll the remote sites you have described to it. If you do not insert entries into **crontab**, UUCP will connect with a remote system only if it has a file to upload to it.

Since each user has his own **crontab** file, you will need to need the **crontab** owned by user **uucp**. Login in as **uucp**, then execute the following command:

```
crontab -l >crontab.tmp
```

This copies **uucp**'s current **crontab** file into **crontab.tmp**, where you can edit it.

The format of **crontab** is described in detail in the Lexicon entry for **crontab**. In brief, a **crontab** entry has six fields:

1. The minute in the hour when a command is to be executed (0 through 59).
2. The hour of the day when the command is to be executed (0 through 23)
3. The day of the month (1 through 31).
4. The month of the year (1 through 12).
5. The day of the week (0 through 6, with 0 indicating Sunday).
6. The command to be executed.

Fields are separated by space characters. Note that a command can be executed more than once in any given period; just separate the multiple entries with commas.

For example, if you wish to print the date and time on your terminal every 15 minutes around the clock, insert the following entry into **crontab**:

```
0,15,30,45 * * * * date >/dev/console
```

An asterisk in a field indicates that every value of the field is to be used.

To enable polling of **mwcbbs**, edit **crontab.tmp** and insert the following entries:

```
30 * * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uucico -smwcbbs
0 22 * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uutouch mwcbbs
0 0 * * * su uucp sh /usr/lib/uucp/uumvlog 2
```

The first line invokes the program **uucico** every hour on the half hour around the clock. **uucico** checks to see if there is a file to be sent to site **mwcbbs**, and dispatches it if need be. Note that the file will be sent only if the current time is "legal" for contacting **mwcbbs**, as you established in the

previous screen. Otherwise, **uucico** will wait until the next legal time comes around.

The second line invokes the program **uutouch** every night at 10 PM. **uutouch** to schedule a poll to site **mwcbbs** to see if it has a file to send to you. The next time that **uucico** is invoked, it will then call site **mwcbbs**. You may wish to change this command so you force a poll to **mwcbbs** only once a week, rather than every night.

The third lines invokes the command **uuvlog** to clean up your set of logfiles. **uuvlog** copies all of UUCP's log files into backup files that are named by the date they were saved. This command takes one argument, the number of days' worth of backup files to save. The above example tells **uuvlog** to save the last two days' files; this is the number most users save. UUCP is designed to log everything that it does; and since it does a great many things, the log files can grow very large, very quickly. On a small system especially, you should be ruthless in purging your UUCP log files, or you may find them overwhelming the available disk space on your system. For most users, two days' worth of log files is sufficient.

Now that you have edited your temporary **crontab** file, you must install it. Type the command:

```
crontab -f crontab.tmp
```

This takes the newly edited **crontab** file and installs it as the **crontab** for user **root**. See the Lexicon entries for **cron** and **crontab** for more information on how to use COHERENT's **crontab** mechanism.

## **Where To Go Next**

You have now used **uucinstall** to set up UUCP so it can contact **mwcbbs**. For many users, **uucinstall** is sufficient for setting up UUCP to access a remote site.

The following two sections of this tutorial are extended examples of how to set up UUCP by hand. They go into depth on UUCP's file structure. You should read them if you want to work with UUCP in any depth.

## **Setting Up UUCP for Dialout: An Extended Example**

To "set up" UUCP means instructing it on how to communicate with a remote site. "Communicate" means, basically, to exchange files and execute tasks on each other's systems. Not everyone cares to use **uucinstall** to set up UUCP. Also, you may wish to perform more complex installations than can be done easily with that utility.

The best way to learn about UUCP tasks is to walk through setting up an installation by hand. The following sections walk you through setting up your UUCP system so it can dial out to **mwcbbs**, the Mark Williams bulletin board.

## **Site and Domain Names**

If you have not done so yet, edit **/etc/uucpname** and **/etc/domain** to set your site's site and domain names. This is described above; also, see the Lexicon articles **uucpname** and **domain** for details.

## **Setting Up the Serial Port/Communications Device**

The first step to setting up UUCP is telling it which serial device it is to use to communicate with the remote site. To set up the serial device, you must answer the following questions:

1. Is this a direct connection to another computer via a data line?

2. Is this a modem connection to another computer?
3. Which serial port is used (ie. com1)?
4. At what baud rate will communications take place?
5. Will this same modem/serial port be used for remote logins?

The file that governs interaction to the serial port is `/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices`. In this file, we describe the type of device to use, either asynchronous communications (ACU) or direct (DIR). An asynchronous communications device would be a modem. A direct communications device would be a data line between the two computers.

An entry in **L-devices** consists five fields, separated from each other by blank spaces or tabs. The fields are as follows:

<b>type</b>	The type of connection. Valid values are DIR (direct connect) or ACU (modem).
<b>line</b>	The device used for the UUCP link (e.g., <code>/dev/com1l</code> ).
<b>remote</b>	The device to disable before making the UUCP connection.
<b>baud</b>	The baud rate used on the specified line.
<b>brand</b>	Modem description from <code>/etc/modemcap</code> , or "direct" for direct connections.

Let's edit **L-devices** to use a 2400-baud modem to call **mwcbbbs**. Because you will use a modem, type **ACU** into the first field as the device *type*.

Before making the appropriate entries into the second and third fields, we must review some information about the conventions of naming and using serial devices. A serial port can be referenced as a *local* device or a *remote* device. When a local device is referenced, COHERENT ignores certain modem control signals from the serial port; but when a remote device is referenced, COHERENT uses the modem-control signals for internal functions.

When enabling a serial port with a modem attached to it, COHERENT uses the remote version (e.g., **com1r**) of the serial port. With the remote version of the port, COHERENT can "see" through control signals when a call terminates, which lets it reset the port for the next login. The file `/etc/ttys` contains entries for all enabled serial ports. For a specific description of the contents of `/etc/ttys`, refer to its entry in the Lexicon.

When enabling a serial port for direct connection — that is, for a terminal directly plugged into a serial port or for another computer connected via a NULL-modem cable — COHERENT uses the *local* version of the port (e.g., **com1l**) because no modem is attached to the port that can generate signals for COHERENT to interpret.

When dialing out on a serial port via a modem, use the *local* version of the port, because the modem gives modem-control signals to COHERENT only for incoming calls, not outgoing.

In the second field, enter the name of the serial device to which the modem is connected. For example, if the modem is attached to **com1**, enter **com1l**. Remember, use the *local* version of the serial device because the specified *line* is used for calling out.

Before making the appropriate entry in the third, or *remote*, field, look at the answer to the fifth question asked earlier ("Will this modem be used for remote logins?"). If the answer to this question is "yes", then this port must be disabled before you can make an outgoing call. The *remote* field specifies the device to be disabled (if previously enabled for remote logins) before the outbound call can be made. For example, if the enabled port is **com1**, then specify **com1r**. If the port is not enabled for remote logins, then insert a '-' (hyphen) into this field. (If this is a direct connection to another computer, then name the local device here, because the local device would have been enabled for remote logins to begin with. Since **mwcbbbs** is being used as the example, this will not

be the case.)

Now for the fourth, or *baud* field. Enter **2400** as the baud rate.

The fifth field names the make of modem you are using. The name must come from the file **/etc/modemcap**. (For information on **/etc/modemcap**, see its entry in the Lexicon.) This example assumes that you have a Hayes-compatible modem. Enter **avateX** into the fifth field. Please note that there are both Hayes and AvateX entries in **/etc/modemcap**. Both describe the information UUCP needs to “talk” to Hayes-compatible modems. The only difference between them is that the **hayes** entry describes a 1200/300 bps modem, whereas the **avateX** entry describes a 2400/1200 bps modem.

The following gives typical entries into **L-devices**:

<i>type</i>	<i>Line</i>	<i>Remote</i>	<i>Baud</i>	<i>Brand</i>
ACU	com11	com1r	2400	avateX
DIR	com21	-	9600	direct

The above **ACU** entry tells UUCP that it will find a Hayes-compatible modem on **/dev/com11**, but that the port is enabled for remote logins to take place and must therefore disable **/dev/com1r** before dialing out. The **ACU** entry also indicates that 2400-baud communications is supported.

The above **DIR** entry tells UUCP that a direct connection is possible at 9600 baud on device **/dev/com21**, and that it is not necessary to disable the port (**/dev/com2r**) as it is not enabled for remote logins.

If the **L-devices** entry just created resembles the above **ACU** entry, feel free to save the changes and to move on to the next item to configure.

Now, where does **L-devices** come in to play? It tells UUCP where it can initiate communications — but what reads the **L-devices** entries to tell UUCP which device to use? This is explained in the next section, which describes the file **/usr/spool/uucp/L.sys**.

## Configuring L.sys

The previous section described how to configure **/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices**, from which UUCP receives the information it needs about devices used initiate a UUCP session. With **L-devices** configured properly, the question remains about how to determine which device to use.

Before proceeding any farther, it is necessary to know the following information in advance:

1. What is the name of the site?
2. When should this system be permitted to call the remote site?
3. Will this site be called via a direct connection or modem?
4. If a modem is used, what phone number is to be dialed?
5. What baud rate will be used between the two systems?
6. What information must be passed to the site being called to complete a successful login?

The file **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** not only tells UUCP the device to use to initiate a call: it also names the other UUCP sites that can be called, valid times to call, telephone numbers to dial, and information on how to log into the system being called.

An **L.sys** entry consists of the following fields, separated by spaces:

1. Site name (name of the site being called).
2. Times to call the specified site.
3. Device to use when calling the specified site.
4. Baud rate to use.
5. Telephone number to dial.
6. "Chat script" — that is, the script to use when logging into the remote system.

To continue our example of setting up UUCP to contact **mwcbbs**, use an editor to edit file **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys**.

Completing the first field is obvious enough: enter **mwcbbs** as the site to call.

The second field requires the information from question 2 at the beginning of this section. There are several possible combinations of valid times to allow the system to call **mwcbbs**. If you want to call **mwcbbs** at any time, then enter **Any**. (Note the capital 'A'). If you want never to call **mwcbbs** is never to be called by this system, enter **Never**. (Note the capital 'N'). These are easy choices to make, but one can restrict the valid times even farther.

The following abbreviations can be used with military time format to further restrict valid calling times:

<b>Wk</b>	Every weekday (Monday through Friday)
<b>Su</b>	Sunday
<b>Mo</b>	Monday
<b>Tu</b>	Tuesday
<b>We</b>	Wednesday
<b>Th</b>	Thursday
<b>Fr</b>	Friday
<b>Sa</b>	Saturday

To specify that it is valid to call **mwcbbs** between 1 AM and 2 AM every day, enter:

**0100-0200**

To further restrict this to Sunday only between 1 AM and 2 AM, use:

**Su0100-0200**

Perhaps calling on Mondays and Fridays from 3 AM to 4 AM would be better:

**MoFr0300-0400**

To call on Saturdays only:

**Sa**

For more information on specifying valid times to call, refer to the Lexicon article for **L.sys**.

For this example, specifying the device to use in the third field is pretty straightforward. Enter:

**ACU**

When you call remote sites via a modem, this is the norm. This is where the information in **/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices** is put to use. For direct connections to remote sites, however, do not specify

DIR

because of the direct connection; instead, the local reference to the serial port to be used (as defined in **/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices**) is entered in this field. For example, if this system is directly connected to site **foo** and the **L-devices** entry for **DIR** specifies the line to use as **com11**, then you would enter **com11** into this field.

The fourth field in this **L.sys** entry is the baud rate that your system uses to “talk” to **mwcbbs**. For purposes of this example, enter **2400** in this field.

The fifth field is the telephone number to use when dialing the remote site, **mwcbbs**. For 2400-baud communications with **mwcbbs**, insert the telephone number **17085590412**. If you live within the 708 area code, omit the area code. If this were a direct connection, then you would enter quotation marks (") in place of a telephone number.

The **L.sys** entry for **mwcbbs** should now look like this:

```
mwcbbs Any ACU 2400 17085590412
```

### **The Chat Script**

The final portion of the **L.sys** entry is the *chat script*. The chat script tells UUCP what prompts to expect from the site called, and how to respond to each prompt. Each pair of prompt-response is called a *expect-send string*.

When your system calls **mwcbbs**, it should not expect the first prompt to appear immediately; it should wait a few seconds first. Therefore, the first expect-send string should expect nothing, wait a few seconds, and send out some carriage returns to ensure that **mwcbbs** returns a **login** prompt. The following *expect-send string* encodes this behavior:

```
" " \r\d\r
```

The quotation marks (") tell UUCP to expect nothing. The **\r** sends a carriage return, and **\d** is our delay. Other escape characters can be used; for a table of them, see the above section on the **Chat Script**, or see the Lexicon entry for **L.sys**.

The **L.sys** entry for **mwcbbs** should now look like this:

```
mwcbbs Any ACU 2400 17085590412 " " \r\d\r
```

So far, so good; but the chat script is nowhere near finished. After a few seconds' delay, site **mwcbbs** send the prompt:

```
Coherent login:
```

Your site should expect this login prompt. The appropriate response to the login prompt is

```
nuucp
```

Add the following to the chat script:

```
in:--in: nuucp
```

But wait a minute — aren't we expecting

```
Coherent login:
```

Actually, we're not. We're expecting the tail of

Coherent login:

or **in:**. We have also added '--in:' as part of the expect message. This tells UUCP to expect '**in:**', but if it does not receive '**in:**', send a carriage return and expect '**in:**' again. The send portion of this expect-send pair is what we expected in the previous paragraph.

The **L.sys** entry for **mwcbbs** should now look like this:

```
mwcbbs Any ACU 2400 17085590412 "" \r\d\r in:--in: nuucp
```

Like most systems, **mwcbbs** has passwords. Your site should now expect the password prompt.

```
Password:.
```

The password to send is

```
public
```

Add the following to the chat script:

```
word: public
```

Again, we have not expected the entire prompt sent from **mwcbbs**. It is not important to expect the entire prompt, just enough for UUCP to know what it will respond to. Expecting

```
Password:
```

is the same as expecting

```
word:
```

The **L.sys** entry for **mwcbbs** should now look like this:

```
mwcbbs Any ACU 2400 17085590412 "" \r\d\r in:--in: nuucp \  
word: public
```

Please note that the '\' has been added to the end of the first line of this chat script to show that this script continues to the next line. We do this because since the entire script won't fit within the formatted text width of this page.

The chat script doesn't end here. **mwcbbs** now sends yet another prompt:

```
BBS access Password:
```

The response to this prompt is the serial number you used to install COHERENT. If your serial number were 1234567, you would add the following to the chat script:

```
word: 1234567
```

The entire chat script for site **mwcbbs** should now look like:

```
mwcbbs Any ACU 2400 17085590412 "" \r\d\r in:--in: nuucp \  
word: public word: serial-number
```

Congratulations! Your system now knows how to call and log into **mwcbbs**.

However, configuring **L-devices** and **L.sys** alone do not constitute a complete configuration.



## Configuring the Permissions File

With **L-devices** and **L.sys** configured properly (plus an appropriate directory in place, which we will discuss later), you can call any UUCP site. However, you must now make some security decisions: for each remote site, you must decide which directories it can access and which commands it can execute on your system.

Obviously, you can't give a remote system *carte blanche* on your system; but permissions on each directory and command can be tedious, and you probably will overlook something important. Fortunately, UUCP contains an easy way to set these permissions for each remote system. The file **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions** lets you set the permissions for every remote system that can log into your system. **Permissions** names each remote site your system recognizes the name by which your system identifies itself to the remote site (if other than the name in **/etc/uucpname**), and restricts each remote system's access on your system.

We will now analyze a typical **Permissions** entry, using **mwcbbs** as the example. Your system's **Permissions** entry for **mwcbbs** should resemble the following:

```
MACHINE=mwcbbs MYNAME=bbsuser \
    COMMANDS=rmail:uucp \
    READ=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp \
    WRITE=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp \
    SENDFILES=yes REQUEST=yes
```

The first line of this entry lists the remote sitename (**LOGNAME=mwcbbs**). It also tells UUCP that after the host has logged into the remote system, it (the host computer) should identify itself to the remote site as **bbsuser** rather than the name defined in **/etc/uucpname**. All sites that call **mwcbbs** identify themselves as **bbsuser** unless arrangements have been made for mail accounts or other purposes. Because the **Permissions** entry continues to the next line, the first line ends with a '\'.

Please note that after the host computer has completed the chat script in **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** for the specified site, more transactions take place that are generally invisible. In one of the transactions, the machine identifies themselves to each other. **mwcbbs** identifies itself with the contents of the file **/etc/uucpname**, which is merely **mwcbbs**. Your system will do the same, unless there is a **MYNAME=** statement in **Permissions**. If a **MYNAME=** statement exists for the site specified in the **Permissions** entry, the name specified by **MYNAME=** is used instead of the contents of **/etc/uucpname**.

Site names under COHERENT are limited to seven characters. Any extra characters are ignored. Other implementations of UUCP allow different number of characters, from as few as six to as many as ten.

There is an optional **LOGNAME=** statement for the first line. This option specifies the entry in **/etc/passwd** that another site must use to log into this system.

For example, the entry in **mwcbbs's Permissions** file for sites that identify themselves as **bbsuser** looks like:

```
MACHINE=bbsuser LOGNAME=nuucp \
```

Please note that if a remote system does specify **LOGNAME**, or if the host site does not use the **LOGNAME** specified, the remote site will issue a set of default permissions that may severely limit the host's access to the remote system.

The second line names the commands that the remote site can run on this host. Naming **rmail** and **rnews** is typical. Specifying **rmail** allows the host site to send and process mail. Specifying **rnews** allows the host site to transfer news files to the remote site if it can accept news feeds.

The third and fourth lines are relatively straightforward: they name, respectively, the directories that the remote site can write into or read. On **mwcbbs**, sites identifying themselves as **bbsuser** can read files from **/usr/spool/uucppublic** and its subdirectories, and can only write to **/usr/spool/uucppublic/uploads** and its subdirectories.

The fifth line specifies that the remote site can request files from the directories specified by **READ=** and that the remote site can write (or transfer files to) the directories specified by **WRITE=**.

More, optional information can be configured in **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions**. For details, refer to its Lexicon entry.

We have now configured **L-devices**, **L.sys**, and **Permissions**. The major configuration is now completed, but there are still some items to check before you can request a file from **mwcbbs**.

### **Requesting Files From a Remote UUCP System**

To request a file from a remote UUCP system, you must know where that file is on the remote system. The file **howto.start** can be found in the directory **/usr/spool/uucppublic/mwcnews** on **mwcbbs**. This file introduces **mwcbbs**, its features and intended uses, and how to request files from it.

With this bit of knowledge, we can now request the file with the command **uucp**.

**uucp** is very simple. Invoked it with a specific site to call, and file to upload or download. For example, the command:

```
uucp mwcbbs!:/usr/spool/uucppublic/mwcnews/howto.start /tmp
```

tells your machine to call **mwcbbs**, download the file **/usr/spool/uucppublic/mwcnews/howto.start**, and it into directory **/tmp**. The call will take place seconds after you enter the command, unless you tell **uucp** to spool the request. For more information on this and other arguments, see the Lexicon entry for **uucp**.

Please note that the entry for **mwcbbs** in **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions** must specify that **mwcbbs** can write to **/tmp** as part of the

```
WRITE=
```

statement.

To send a file to **mwcbbs**, use the command:

```
uucp FILENAME mwcbbs!:/usr/spool/uucppublic/uploads/
```

This command uploads a copy of **FILENAME** to the directory **/usr/spool/uucppublic/uploads** on **mwcbbs**. Again, the call takes place within seconds, unless you tell **uucp** to spool the request.

At this point, we have completed our **uucp** configuration to “talk” to **mwcbbs**, and we have requested our first file. You can tell **uucp** to download other files from **mwcbbs**; only the file names and path names will change.

### **Sending Files to a Remote UUCP System**

Suppose, for example that site **santa** has been described to your UUCP system, and everyone has permission to read from your current directory. Suppose, too, that you have permission to write into directory **/usr/spool/reports/parents**. To send the files **good.kids** and **bad.kids** to **santa**, type the following command:

```
uucp good.kids bad.kids santa!:/usr/spool/reports/parents
```

The **uucp** command compels UUCP to copy one or more files from your site to a remote site. UUCP queues both files automatically and sends them at the next scheduled time.

Note, too, the use of the '!' in the above command. The '!' separates a site name from another site name, from a directory name, or from a user ID. In the above example, the '!' indicates that directory **/usr/spool/reports/parents** can be found at site **santa**. One feature of a UUCP network is that any member can send files to any other member. That does not mean that every member must have full permissions with every other member; rather, for the sake of efficiency it is possible to route files through one or more intermediate computers, to allow batch transmissions of files. For example, to send the file **visibility** to user **blitzen** via machines **santa** and **reindeer**, use the following command:

```
uucp visibility santa!reindeer!blitzen!:/usr/spool/weather/usa
```

In this example, the string **santa!reindeer!blitzen!:/usr/spool/weather** indicates that directory **/usr/spool/weather** can be contacted at site **blitzen**, which in turn can be contacted via site **reindeer**, which in turn can be contacted via site **santa**. This scenario assumes that site **reindeer** has permission to write into directory **/usr/spool/weather** on site **blitzen**, and that site **santa** has permission to upload files to site **reindeer**. (And, of course, that you have permission to upload files to site **santa**.) If any of these are not true, the transaction will fail.

With UUCP networks growing to international dimensions, such path names can become quite complex. The command **mail** has an **alias** function that allows you to define a user's UUCP path name under a simpler name that serves as that user's alias. **mail** reads the file **/usr/lib/mail/aliases** for every user listed on its command line. If it finds a match, then it substitutes the description in **aliases** for the user name. If the entry in **aliases** consists of two or more fields separated by exclamation points, **mail** then invokes the **uucp** command to copy the mail message to the named site. For example, if you regularly send mail to user **joe** at site **widget**, then insert the following entry into **/usr/lib/mail/aliases**:

```
joe: widget!joe
```

Make sure, first, that you have described site **widget** to UUCP or this will not work. Second, make sure that your local system does not have a user named **joe**; if it does, his mail thereafter will be shipped to the other **joe** at the remote site.

## Setting Up UUCP for Dial-in: An Extended Example

We began this chapter of the book by showing you how to set up your system to call another UUCP site, using **mwcbbs** as our example. Now we will show you how to configure your system to accept a call from another UUCP site. Since you should now be familiar with enabling a port for remote access, much of the work is behind you.

### Configuring /etc/ttys

File **/etc/ttys** is a text file that contains information about serial devices used for remote access to your COHERENT system. By default, your COHERENT system was shipped with an **/etc/ttys** file with the following contents:

```
11Pconsole
01Pcom1r
01Pcom2l
```

Only three devices are described in the default **/etc/ttys**: the console, serial port **com1**, and serial port **com2**. An entry in **/etc/ttys** consists of four fields:

- The *first field* is the first character in the **ttys** entry. It is either zero or one: zero indicates that the device is *not enabled* for users to log in to the system, whereas one indicates that the device is enabled. Notice that the console is enabled for people to log in, whereas serial ports **com1** and **com2** are not.
- The *second field* is the second character in **/etc/ttys**. It is either an **l** or **r**: **r** indicates that if the indicated device is enabled for users to log in, the remote-access password is asked of users logging in via that device, whereas **l** indicates that the remote-access password is not requested. The remote-access entry is in file **/etc/passwd** and does not have a password assigned to it by default. To assign a remote-access password to the system, log in as **root**, and run the following command:

```
passwd remacc
```

If there is no remote access password assigned to the system and the character **r** is specified in the second field of the **ttys** entry, the system does *not* ask for a remote-access password when a user attempts to log into the system.

- The *third field* is the third character of the **ttys** entry. The character in this field is usually an upper-case letter or a number that indicates the baud rate of the port. Valid baud rates range from 110 to 19,200 baud. See the Lexicon entry on **ttys** for specific information on which characters represent which baud rates.
- The *fourth field* is the name of the serial device, which must be in directory **/dev**.

When editing **/etc/ttys**, take care not to leave any extra characters, such as trailing spaces at the end of line. Extra characters can result in errors enabling a port for logins, disabling a port, or running UUCP.

Now that we've reviewed the structure of a **ttys** entry, we will now edit one to suit your needs. We assume for the sake of this tutorial that a Hayes-compatible 2400-baud modem will be used on serial port **com2**.

Because a modem is in use, we want to enable serial port **com2r**. (For a discussion on why we chose **com2r** rather than **com2l**, see Lexicon entry for **L-devices**.) Edit the **ttys** file for port **com2r**. The line should read:

```
01Pcom2r
```

Because most Hayes-compatible, 2400-baud modems support 1200 and 300 baud, we must make a decision: do we want port **com2r** to change automatically among 2400/1200/300 baud? If so, set the third field in **ttys** to '3' (see the Lexicon entry on **ttys**). To lock the port at 2400 baud (no autobauding to slower baud rates), use the letter 'L' in the third field of our **ttys** entry (again, refer to the Lexicon entry on **ttys**). For purposes of this tutorial, use a fixed rate of 2400 baud on your port. Edit the **ttys** entry to reflect this decision. It should now look like this:

```
01Lcom2r
```

Our **ttys** entry is now complete, but we must still enable the port for users to log in. Before we do this, we must discuss modem register settings, and touch upon direct connections to a terminal versus using modems.

### Setting Up a Modem for Logins

The next step to setting up your system to receive calls is telling your modem to answer the phone, and setting up the modem's port to send a login prompt to anyone who dials in.

After you configure `/etc/ttys` for the serial port to be enabled, but before you actually enable that port for remote logins, it is necessary to properly set the modem's registers. Improper modem register settings can cause unpredictable behavior and unnecessary processing overhead for the COHERENT system.

For the purposes of this tutorial, we will assume that a 2400-baud, Hayes-compatible modem will be used. It must be stressed, however, that this tutorial may refer to modem register settings that are not supported by your modem; likewise, your modem may use different registers to perform the same functions as the ones described here. We will, however, try to be as generic as possible. You may wish to have your modem's manual on hand while reading this section of the tutorial, since it is vital that you understand all of your modem's functions and capabilities.

### ***Answering the Phone***

First and foremost, the modem must be initialized to answer the telephone when someone tries to dial in. The most common register associated with this is the **S0** register. It should be set to a non-zero value.

### ***Setting Echo and Result Codes***

For remote accesses to function properly via modems, a modem must *not* return unexpected data to the operating system. If this occurs, the modem and the operating system may enter an infinite loop that can bring your system to its knees.

For example, while using **ckernit** under COHERENT, you may notice that when you give a modem the command to dial a telephone number, it displays the command as you type it. This indicates that the modem is in *echo mode*. You may also notice that when a modem connects to the desired system, it returns a **CONNECT** message or some numeric value to indicate that a connection was made. This indicates that the modem is returning **result codes**. A modem must *not* return result codes or echo input when plugged into an enabled serial port. The reason is that when a port is enabled, the COHERENT sends the prompt

Coherent Login:

to the serial port. When a modem is set to echo input, it echoes

Coherent Login:

back to the operating system. COHERENT then think that someone is attempting to log under the name of

Coherent Login:

and so send a

Password:

prompt to the serial port. The modem echoes

Password:

to the operating system.

This process continues without end until the port is disabled, or the echo or result code registers are set to be inactive. If this condition occurs on your system, the visible result is an immediate and ceaseless increase in hard-drive activity, tying up your system and slowing down your system's operation.

The register commonly associated with echo is **E**. To turn off echoing, set the echo register to zero. The register commonly associated with result codes is **Q**. To disable result codes, set this register to one.

Some modems support an **echoplex** register that puts a modem back into echo mode when a connection is made. This is typically called the **F** register, and should also be set to one to disable this feature of the modem.

### Modem Reinitialization

It is very important that you understand what your modem does when a call terminates. A modem usually resets itself with some parameters that are specified somewhere in the register settings of the modem. The most common method that modems use to reset themselves is to return to some factory default setting. This is rarely the desired setting for remote logins.

When you have decided on your modem register settings, save them to the modem's non-volatile RAM. This preserves your settings if the modem loses power, and, most importantly, makes them available to reinitialize the modem to the desired settings every time a call terminates.

To make a modem reinitialize itself, find the registers that tell the modem how to reset itself when a call terminates. In a typical Hayes-compatible (2400 baud) setting, two registers play a key role here. They are the registers that govern **DCD** (carrier detect) and **DTR** (data terminal ready). Again, different makes of modem have different settings, but the rules to follow are:

1. Carrier detect must be TRUE and never forced.
2. DTR must be TRUE, or DTR must follow DCD.

With your modem's registers configured to follow these rules, DTR will drop whenever a call terminates (or DCD drops), which forces the modem to reset itself.

At this point, you must know which registers govern what the modem does when DTR drops. You should configure the modem so that when DTR drops, it reinitializes itself with the values stored in non-volatile memory.

Sometimes it is only necessary to configure two registers to accomplish these tasks. They are usually known as **&C** and **&D**. In our experience, you should set **&C** to one and **&D** to 2 or, in some cases, 3.

### Modem Registers

We can not instruct you on how to set your modem registers. There are several possible methods. If your modem supports data-compression and error-correction protocols, the settings may become very involved. You may use **/usr/bin/ckernit** to help configure your modem.

### Enabling a Serial Device for Remote Access

At this point, you have configured your **/etc/ttys** file for the proper serial port and baud rate to be used on that port. You have also configured your modem so that it will act properly when the port is enabled.

It is now time to enable the port. The suspense and tension build as you enter the command to enable the port:

```
/etc/enable com2r
```

This command does two things: First, it changes the first field of the port's entry in **/etc/ttys** from zero to one. Second, it spawns a **getty** process for the port, to enable people to log in. Please note that it is not advisable to edit **/etc/ttys** to enable a port by changing the first field of a port from a

zero to a one, or *vice versa*.

Now, telephone the system and see if the modem answers the telephone. If it does not, then the modem is not properly configured for answering the telephone. Once you get a connection, see if you get the prompt:

Coherent Login:

If you do not, check the following items:

1. First, redial the system and see if a login prompt is sent when the modem answers and carrier is established. If you have an external modem, you can see this by watching the send/receive indicators on the modem. If you have an internal modem, look for hard-drive activity to take occur when a connection has been made. Press the **<return>** key several times on the system from which you are dialing in to see if this triggers drive activity.
2. The system dialing must be set to eight word-bits, one stop-bit, and no parity bits. Improper settings here could result in "garbage" characters, or no characters, appearing your screen.
3. If none of these seem to be the problem, review the modem's register settings. If data compression or error correcting protocols are supported on either end of the connection, disable them. If variable-speed modems are involved, set them so that they talk to each other at only one speed. Finally, check to see that a login process is enabled on the port by using the command **/bin/ps**.

If none of these suggestions helps, call Mark Williams Technical Support.

## Direct Connections

If you are wiring a terminal to a serial port as a means of remote access, you must use a NULL-modem cable, *not* the same cable that you use to connect a modem to your system. Because there will be no modem registers to complicate matters, you merely need to set the baud rate in the file **/etc/ttys** and use the *local* serial device. For the purposes of altering our example case for a terminal, use port *com2l*. Be certain that your terminal's baud rate is set to the speed set in **/etc/ttys**, and that its word bits and parity are those described above.

## Giving a Remote UUCP Site a Login

At this point, you are now the systems administrator of your COHERENT system who must tell someone else how to set up her UUCP to log into your system. We've shown you the flip side of this by showing you how to access **mwcbs**: now the job is yours.

When a UUCP site calls your system, it must log in as would any ordinary user would. Once it has logged in, however, it runs the command **/usr/lib/uucp/uucico** rather than a shell, which a normal user would run. This portion of what you must set up is configured in the file **/etc/passwd**.

You can create a UUCP login by running the command **newusr**; then edit the last field of the **/etc/passwd** entry for the login you just established to run the command **/usr/lib/uucp/uucico** instead of a **/bin/sh** or **/usr/bin/ksh**.

You could also create a UUCP login by manually editing **/etc/passwd** and copy the entry for user **uucp**, but change the user name of **uucp** to something else.

You must also define the home directory if using **newusr**. Because this is a UUCP account, the home directory appears under the directory **/usr/spool/uucp**. For example, if you wanted site **dalek** to call you, you might establish an **/etc/passwd** entry that looks like:

```
dalek:password:6:6:Coherent-Coherent \
      copy:/usr/spool/uucp:/usr/lib/uucp/uucico
```

Please note that

password

in the entry for **dalek** represents the encrypted password you assigned to site **dalek**. Give the password to the system administrator of site **dalek** so that she may properly configure her chat script to log into your system.

If we were to stop right here, **dalek** could call your system, log in, and begin a UUCP session. Unfortunately, since we've yet to configure the UUCP files themselves to know about **dalek**, your site would quickly terminate the call when **dalek** identified itself to your system after completing its chat script.

### Configuring L.sys for Remote UUCP Access

For all UUCP sites that will call you, there must be an entry in the file **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys**. MWC supplies a dummy entry in **L.sys** that you can easily modify for site **dalek**. You should make an entry that looks like this:

```
dalek Any ACU 1200 5551212 "" "" ogin:--ogin: uucp ssword: FATCHANCE
```

### Configuring Permissions for Remote UUCP Access

As with **L.sys**, there must be an entry in the file **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions** for each UUCP site that will call your system. As with **L.sys**, we have shipped a dummy entry in **Permissions** that you can modify for site **dalek**. You should make an entry which resembles this:

```
MACHINE=dalek LOGNAME=dalek \
      COMMANDS=rmail:rnews:uucp \
      READ=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp \
      WRITE=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp \
      SENDFILES=yes REQUEST=no
```

### Configuring a Spooling Directory for Remote UUCP Access

Each UUCP site that calls your system must have a *spooling directory* in **/usr/spool/uucp**. While logged in as **root**, go to the directory **/usr/spool/uucp** and run the command:

```
/usr/lib/uucp/uumkdir dalek
```

### One Last, Loose Thread

With the spooling directory created, we are almost done. Run this command:

```
/usr/lib/uucp/uutouch dalek
```

It will place a dummy command in **dalek's** spooling directory. More important, it returns an error if it finds some errors in the UUCP configuration for **dalek**.

Try it out!



Unfortunately, we cannot give you a test system that will call your system to test your UUCP configuration. You will have to use this section as a guide to configure for another UUCP site to call yours.

### Other UUCP Configuration Considerations

For UUCP transactions to be processed properly, two very important items need to be discussed.

The first item regards the **permissions** on the serial port from which you will dial out. UUCP must have permission to read and write to that port. The device specified by the **line** entry in **/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices** should have permissions of **666** (see the Lexicon entry for the command **chmod**).

The second item regards the *spooling directory* for the site calling in or being called. The spooling directory temporarily stores data and command files for the site being contacted. The spool directory resides under **/usr/spool/uucp** and is named after the remote site.

For example, your system will use directory **/usr/spool/uucp/mwcbbs** to store files being exchanged with **mwcbbs**. Likewise, **mwcbbs** has the directory **/usr/spool/uucp/yoursystem**, where UUCP stores files to be exchanged with *yoursystem*.

**uucp** should own all of its spooling directories.

For more information on ownership of files or directories, please refer to the Lexicon entries for the commands **chown** and **chgrp**.

We have just completed a basic tutorial on how to configure UUCP and call another UUCP site.

### Debugging UUCP Calls

When you call site **mwcbbs** and experience problems, you must first check several items before you pick up the telephone to call the Mark Williams Company.

#### What Is the Problem?

UUCP problems can take many forms. Statements like "I'm having a problem using UUCP," or "I'm having a problem calling your (mwc)bbs," do not describe problems relating to UUCP. We need to know **exactly** what is/is not happening when you try to connect with another site.

The rest of this section walks you through problems that can arise, and some solutions to them. Please review it before you call Mark Williams Technical Support. If you do not, MWC will only ask that you do review it and call back if you still cannot solve the problem.

#### UUCP Reports: Cannot Get Own Name

If invoking the command **/usr/bin/uucp** says it can not get its own name, then you give yourself a UUCP site name of no more than seven characters in the file **/etc/uucpname**.

The command **/bin/mail** command may also return a similar message. The cure is the same.

#### The Modem Isn't Dialing

When you try to call a system via the commands **/usr/bin/uucp** or **/usr/lib/uucp/uucico** and the modem does not dial out, look at file **/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices**. Check the permissions on the serial port used to dial out on, as specified therein.

If the send/receive lights flicker on the modem after you invoking the commands **uucp** or **uucico**, but no call is made, a review of the modem's register settings may be necessary.

Sometimes a modem will dial out but no connection made. This is typically caused by plugging the telephone line into the wrong port on the modem.

Check the log file for the site you are calling. It will usually give a message that indicates what the problem really is. If calling **mwcbbs**, use the command:

```
uulog mwcbbs
```

### *The Modem Dials, Carrier is Established, Nothing Else Happens*

The first suspect is the modem's register settings. The modem register settings that we discussed in the section for configuring modems for remote logins, generally work well for **uucp** to dial out to another system.

To get a good picture of what is or is not happening, run the command **/usr/lib/uucp/uucico** with a level-3 debug. If calling **mwcbbs**, use the command:

```
/usr/lib/uucp/uucico -Smwcbbs -x3 > debugfile
```

This tells your system to call **mwcbbs** and to write debugging information into file **debugfile**, which you can review at your leisure. This is very useful in determining if there is a problem in a chat script.

### *UULOG Shows Incorrect Response...*

This points to one of four problems:

1. Your site is sending an improper site name to the remote system (in other words, the remote site doesn't know about your system).
2. The remote site does not have a spooling directory for your site.
3. Your site does not have a spooling directory for the remote site
4. **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** contains an error or incorrect chat script.

### *Files Refuse to be Sent*

In the case of **mwcbbs** (or any other UUCP site), review the complete path list and file name you specified to download. Another possibility — and one that is harder to track — is the read/write path lists specified in file **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions**.

### *Non-COHERENT UUCP Site Problems*

It is important to understand that COHERENT's UUCP is designed to be compatible with other flavors of UUCP, but does not use the same configuration files. Beyond the information supplied in this section, it may not be easy to debug problems with other units calling your system, or vice versa. We will supply whatever assistance we can, but if it is determined that the non-COHERENT site is at least part of the problem, you must find out its configuration, possibly even telephone involving MWC Technical Support, yourself, and the remote site's administrator.

## **UUCP Administration**

Once you have written and debugged the descriptions of your devices, systems, and permissions, administering UUCP consists mainly of reviewing the log files periodically to ensure that all connections are being made, and all programs executed correctly. The command **uulog** will assist you in this. When you type the command

```
uulog widget
```

**uulog** will open all of the log files associated with site **widget**, and display them for you. Given that the log files for given site are kept in four different directories, this can be a great convenience.

Logfiles are organized as follows:

```
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/sitename  
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucp/sitename  
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uux/sitename  
/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uuxqt/sitename
```

As you can see, one logfile for each site is kept in a directory named after a given UUCP command. UUCP records every transaction; so by reading these files, you can see whether your UUCP commands are succeeding.

If you are having trouble with your UUCP connections, send files through UUCP and observe how they fail. You may need to use **uulinstall** a few times to tweak your description of the remote site. If all else fails, contact Mark Williams Company.

If all is going well, you should run **/usr/lib/uucp/uumvlog** every day. This keeps the log files from getting out of hand. The previous section on setting the polling time describes how to do this.

The main task of the UUCP administrator is to monitor the UUCP log files to see that hardware is functioning correctly, and that files are transferred correctly. For example, failure to connect with a remote site after several attempts may mean that the remote site is having problems with its modem, or that it is scheduling outgoing calls for when you were scheduled to call in. Likewise, failure to receive scheduled calls from several sites may indicate equipment failure on your end. You must also monitor the alias file, to see to it that mail is routed to the correct recipient.

Finally, the UUCP administrator must monitor the use of disk space on the system. Old mail and messages, multiple copies of files, and files automatically input by various subscription and network services can eat up disk space rapidly; extraneous material must be pruned ruthlessly.

## **Where to Go From Here**

For further information, check the Lexicon entry for each UUCP command, as well as the UUCP overview article.



---

# The Lexicon

---

The rest of this manual consists of the Lexicon. The Lexicon consists of several hundred articles, each of which describes a function or command, defines a term, or otherwise gives you useful information. The articles are organized in alphabetical order.

Internally, the Lexicon has a *tree structure*. The “root” entry is the one for **Lexicon**. It, in turn, refers to a series of **Overview** entries. Each Overview entry introduces a group of entries. Each entry cross-references other entries. These cross-references point up the documentation tree, to an overview article and, ultimately, to the entry for **Lexicon** itself; down the tree to subordinate entries; and across to entries on related subjects. For example, the entry for **getchar** cross-references **STDIO**, which is its Overview article, plus **putchar** and **getc**, which are related entries of interest to the user. The Lexicon is designed so that you can trace from any one entry to any other, simply by following the chain of cross-references up and down the documentation tree.

For more information on how to use the Lexicon and how it is organized, see the entry in the Lexicon on **Lexicon**.



## Example

### **example** — Example

Give an example of Mark Williams Lexicon format

**#include <example.h>**

**char \*example(foo, bar) int foo; long bar;**

This is an example of the Mark Williams Lexicon format of software documentation. At this point, each entry has a brief narration that discusses the topic in detail.

The lines in **boldface** describe how to use the function being described. The first line, **#include <example.h>**, indicates that this function requires the imaginary header file **example.h**. The second line gives the syntax of the function. **char \*example** means that the imaginary function **example** returns a pointer to a **char**. *foo* and *bar* are **example**'s arguments: *foo* must be declared to be an **int**, and *bar* must be declared to be a **long**.

### **Example**

The following program gives an example of an example.

```
main()
{
    printf("Many entries include examples\n");
}
```

### **See Also**

**Lexicon, all other related topics and functions**

### **Notes**

If a Lexicon entry uses a technical term that you do not understand, look it up in the Lexicon. In this way, you will gain a secure understanding of how to use COHERENT.

## ! to ~

**# — Preprocessing Operator****String-ize operator**

The preprocessing operator **#** can be used within the replacement list of a function-like macro. It and its operand are replaced by a string literal, which names the sequence of preprocessing tokens that replaces the operand throughout the macro.

For example, the consider the macro:

```
#define display(x) show((long)(x), #x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the following line

```
display(abs(-5));
```

it replaces it with the following:

```
show((long)(abs(-5)), "abs(-5)");
```

Here, the preprocessor replaced **#x** with a string literal that gives the sequence of token that replaces **x**.

The following rules apply to interpreting the **#** operator:

1. If a sequence of white-space characters occurs within the preprocessing tokens that replace the argument, it is replaced with one space character.
2. All white-space characters that occur before the first preprocessing token and after the last preprocessing token are deleted.
3. The original spelling of the preprocessing tokens is preserved. This means that you must take care to preserve certain characters: a backslash **\** should be inserted before every quotation mark **"** that marks a string literal, and before every backslash that introduces a character constant.

**Example**

The following uses the operator **#** to display the result of several mathematics routines.

```
#include <errno.h>
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void show(value, name)
double value, char *name;
{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

#define display(x) show((double)(x), #x)
```



```
main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];

    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter a number: ");
        fflush(stdout);
        if(gets(string) == NULL)
            break;

        x = atof(string);
        display(x);
        display(cos(x));
        display(sin(x));
        display(tan(x));
        display(acos(cos(x)));
    }
}
```

**See Also****##, #define, C preprocessor****## — Preprocessing Operator****Token-pasting operator**

The preprocessing operator **##** can be used in both object-like and function-like macros. When used immediately before or immediately after an element in the macro's replacement list, **##** joins the corresponding preprocessor token with its neighbor. This is sometimes called "token pasting".

As an example of token pasting, consider the macro:

```
#define printvar(number) printf("%s\n", variable ## number)
```

When the preprocessor reads the following line

```
printvar(5);
```

it substitutes the following code for it:

```
printf("%s\n", variable5);
```

The preprocessor throws away all white space both before and after the **##** operator. This gives you an easy way to print any one of a set of strings.

**##** must not be used as the first or last entry in a replacement list. All instances of the **##** operator are resolved before further macro replacement is performed.

For more information on object-like and function-like macros, see **#define**.

**See Also****#, #define, C preprocessor****Notes**

Token pasting has been performed by separating the tokens to be pasted with an empty comment, but this is no longer necessary.

The order of evaluation of multiple **##** operators is unspecified.

### **#define** — Preprocessing Directive

Define an identifier as a macro

The preprocessing directive **#define** tells the C preprocessor to regard *identifier* as a macro.

**#define** can define two kinds of macros: *object-like*, and *function-like*.

An object-like macro has the syntax

```
#define identifier replacement-list
```

This type of macro is also called a *manifest constant*. The preprocessor searches for *identifier* throughout the text of the translation unit, and replaces it with the elements of *replacement-list*, which is then rescanned for further macro substitutions.

For example, consider the directive:

```
#define BUFFERSIZE 75
```

When the preprocessor reads the line

```
malloc(BUFFERSIZE);
```

it replaces it with:

```
malloc(75);
```

A given *identifier* is replaced only once by a given *replacement-list*. This is to prevent such code as

```
#define FOO FOO
```

or

```
#define FOO BAR
```

```
#define BAR FOO
```

from generating an infinite loop.

A function-like macro is more complex. It has the syntax:

```
#define identifier lparen identifier-listopt ) replacement-list
```

The preprocessor looks for *identifier*, which is a macro that resembles a function in that it is followed by a pair of parentheses that may enclose an *identifier-list*. It replaces *identifier* with the contents of *replacement-list*, up to the first lparen '(' within *replacement-list*.

The preprocessor then examines *identifier-list* for further macros, which it expands. The modified *identifier-list* is then replaced with the rest of *replacement-list*. Pairs of parentheses that are nested between the lparen that begins *replacement-list* and the ')' that ends it are copied into *identifier-list* as literal characters. The identifiers within *identifier-list* are preserved after it has been modified by *replacement-list*. The only exceptions are identifiers that are prefixed by the preprocessing operators **#** or **##**; these are handled appropriately.

For example, the consider the macro:

```
#define display(x) show((long)(x), #x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the following line

```
display(abs(-5));
```

it replaces it with the following:

```
show((long)(abs(-5)), "abs(-5)");
```

When an argument to a function-like macro contains no preprocessing tokens, or when an argument to a function-like macro contains a preprocessing token that is identical to a preprocessing directive, the behavior is undefined.

### Example

For an example of using a function-like macro in a program, see #.

### See Also

**#, ##, #undef, C preprocessor**

### Notes

A macro expansion always occupies exactly one line, no matter how many lines are spanned by the definition or the actual parameters. If you have defined macros that span more than one line, you must either redefine them to occupy one line, or somehow embed the newline character within the macro itself; otherwise, the macro will not expand correctly.

A macro definition can extend over more than one line, provided that a backslash `\` appears before the newline character that breaks the lines. The size of a **#define** directive is therefore limited by the maximum size of a logical source line, which can be up to at least 509 characters long.

Some implementations allowed a user to re-define a macro with a new **#define** directive. The Standard, however, allows only a “benign” redefinition; that is, the body of the new definition must exactly match the old definition, including parameter names and white space.

## #elif — Preprocessing Directive

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#elif** conditionally includes code within a program. It can be used after any of the instructions **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef**.

If the conditional expression of the preceding **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** directive is false (i.e., evaluates to zero) and if the current condition is true (i.e., evaluates to a value other than zero), then *group* is included within the program, up to the next **#elif**, **#else**, or **#endif** directive. An **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** directive may be followed by any number of **#elif** directives.

The *constant-expression* must be an integral expression, and it cannot include a **sizeof** operator, a cast, or an enumeration constant. All macro substitutions are performed upon the *constant-expression* before it is evaluated. All integer constants are treated as long objects, and are then evaluated. If *constant-expression* includes character constants, all escape sequences are converted into characters before evaluation.

### See Also

**#else, #endif, #if, #ifdef, #ifndef, C preprocessor, defined**

## #else — Preprocessing Directive

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#else** conditionally includes code within a program. It is preceded by one of the directives **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef**, and may also be preceded by any number of **#elif** directives. If the conditional expressions of all preceding directives evaluate to false (i.e., to zero), then the code introduced by **#else** is included within the program, up to the **#endif** directive.

A **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** directive can be followed by only one **#else** directive.

### See Also

**#elif**, **#endif**, **#if**, **#ifdef**, **#ifndef**, C preprocessor

## **#endif — Preprocessing Directive**

End conditional inclusion of code

The preprocessing directive **#endif** must follow any **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** directive. It may also be preceded by any number of **#elif** directives and an **#else** directive. It marks the end of a sequence of source-file statements that are included conditionally by the preprocessor.

### Example

For an example of using this directive in a program, see **assert**.

### See Also

**#elif**, **#else**, **#if**, **#ifdef**, **#ifndef**, C preprocessor

## **#if — Preprocessing Directive**

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#if** tells the preprocessor that if *constant-expression* is true (i.e., that it evaluates to a value other than zero), then include the following lines of code within the program until it reads the next **#elif**, **#else**, or **#endif** directive.

The *constant-expression* must be an integral expression, and it cannot include a **sizeof** operator, a cast, or an enumeration constant. All macro substitutions are performed upon the *constant-expression* before it is evaluated. All integer constants are treated as long objects, and are then evaluated. If *constant-expression* includes character constants, all escape sequences are converted into characters before evaluation.

If *constant-expression* is an undefined symbol, the preprocessor treats it the same as it would a false statement.

### See Also

**#elif**, **#else**, **#endif**, **#ifdef**, **#ifndef**, C preprocessor, **defined**

## **#ifdef — Preprocessing Directive**

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#ifdef** checks whether *identifier* has been defined as a macro name. If *identifier* has been defined as a macro, then the preprocessor includes *group* within the program, up to the next **#elif**, **#else**, or **#endif** directive. If *identifier* has not been defined, however, then *group* is skipped.

An **#ifdef** directive can be followed by any number of **#elif** directives, by one **#else** directive, and must be followed by an **#endif** directive.

### Example

For an example of using this directive in a program, see **assert**.

### See Also

**#elif**, **#else**, **#endif**, **#if**, **#ifndef**, C preprocessor, **defined**

**#ifndef — Preprocessing Directive**

Include code conditionally

The preprocessing directive **#ifndef** checks whether *identifier* has been defined as a macro name. If *identifier* has *not* been defined as a macro, then the preprocessor includes *group* within the program, up to the next **#elif**, **#else**, or **#endif** directive. If *identifier* has been defined, however, then *group* is skipped.

An **#ifndef** directive can be followed by any number of **#elif** directives, by one **#else** directive, and by one **#endif** directive.

**See Also**

**#elif**, **#else**, **#endif**, **#if**, **#ifndef**, C preprocessor, defined

**#include — Preprocessing Directive**

Read another file and include it

**#include** <*file*>

**#include** "*file*"

The preprocessing directive **#include** tells the preprocessor to replace the directive with the contents of *file*.

The directive can take one of two forms: either the name of the file is enclosed within angle brackets (<*header.h*>), or it is enclosed within quotation marks ("*header.h*"). Angle brackets tell **cpp** to look for *file.h* in the directories named with the **-I** options to the **cc** command line, and then in the standard directory. Quotation marks tell **cpp** to look for *file.h* in the source file's directory, then in directories named with the **-I** options, and then in the standard directory.

Most often, the file being included is a *header*, which is a file that contains function prototypes, macro definitions, and other useful material; as its name implies, it most often appears at the head of a program. The header name must be a string of characters, possibly followed by a period '.' and a single letter, usually (but not always) 'h'. A header name may have up to 12 characters to the left of the period, and names may be case sensitive.

**#include** directives may be nested up to at least eight deep. That is to say, a file included by an **#include** directive may use an **#include** directive to include a third file; that third file may also use a **#include** directive to include a fourth file; and so on, up to at least eight files.

Note, too, that a subordinate header file is sought relative to the original source file, rather than relative to the header that calls it directly. For example, suppose that a file **example.c** resides in directory **/v/fred/src**. If **example.c** contains the directive **#include <header1.h>**. The operating system will look for **header1.h** in the standard directory, **/usr/include**. If **header1.h** includes the directive **#include <../header2.h>** then COHERENT looks for **header2.h** not in directory **/usr**, but in directory **/v/fred**.

A **#include** directive may also take the form **#include string**, where *string* is a macro that expands into either of the two forms described above.

**See Also**

header files, C preprocessor

**#line — Preprocessing Directive**

Reset line number

**#line** *number* *newline*

**#line** *number* *filename* *newline*

**#line** *macros* *newline*

**#line** is a preprocessing directive that resets the line number within a file. The ANSI Standard defines the line number as being the number of newline characters read, plus one.

**#line** can take any of three forms. The first, **#line number**, resets the current line number in the source file to *number*. The second, **#line number filename**, resets the line number to *number* and changes the name of the file to *filename*. The third, **#line macros**, contains macros that have been defined by earlier preprocessing directives. When the macros have been expanded by the preprocessor, the **#line** instruction will then resemble one of the first two forms and be interpreted appropriately.

### See Also

C preprocessor

### Notes

Most often, **#line** is used to ensure that error messages point to the correct line in the program's source code. A program generator may use this directive to associate errors in generated C code with the original sources. For example, the program generator **yacc** uses **#line** instructions to link the C code it generates with the **yacc** code written by the programmer.

### **#pragma** — Preprocessing Directive

Perform implementation-specific preprocessing

**#pragma** is the C preprocessing directive that triggers implementation-specific behavior. The ANSI Standard demands that every conforming implementation of C document what **#pragma** does.

Under COHERENT 286, **#pragma** gives the warning message

```
#pragma ignored
```

and the C preprocessor ignores it.

COHERENT 386 recognizes one use of **#pragma**:

```
#pragma align [n]
```

This directive permits COHERENT 386 to conform to the Intel Binary Compatibility Standard (BCS), which specifies alignment requirements for **structs**.

The BCS requires that a **struct** be aligned consistently with the alignment of its most strictly aligned member. For example, the structure

```
struct s {
    short s_1;
    int   s_i;
    short s_2;
};
```

must put member **s\_i** at offset 4, not 2 (because **int** is dword-aligned). If you have an array of **struct s** objects, the second will be at offset 12, not 10 (or 8), because **struct s** itself must also be dword-aligned.

This, unfortunately, creates problems with existing compiled code, and with some standards, e.g., COFF. For example, a **struct filsys** (a COHERENT file system, e.g., on a floppy or hard disk) is defined in **<sys/filsys.h>** as starting out just like the above:

```

struct filsys {
    unsigned short  s_isize;
    daddr_t         s_fsize;
    short           s_nfree;
    ...
};

```

Because **daddr\_t** is **long**, COHERENT 386 would compile this and expect to find **s\_fsize** at offset 2 (not 4) and **s\_nfree** at offset 6 (not 8); but this is not where the bits actually fall on an existing file system. So we circumvent the BCS with **#pragma align**. The directive **#pragma align *n*** means “align objects on *n*-byte boundaries, at most,” and **#pragma align** means “restore default alignment.” Thus, **<sys/filsys.h>** is edited to read:

```

struct filsys {
    unsigned short  s_isize;
    #pragma align 2
    daddr_t         s_fsize;
    #pragma align
    short           s_nfree;
    ...
};

```

and the compiler thinks the struct members fall at offsets 0, 2 and 6, which preserves compatibility with existing binary objects.

### See Also

**cpp**, C preprocessor

## #undef — Preprocessing Directive

Undefine a macro

**#undef** *identifier*

The preprocessing directive **#undef** tells the C preprocessor to disregard *identifier* as a macro. It undoes the effect of the **#define** directive.

### See Also

**#define**, C preprocessor

## \_\_DATE\_\_ — Macro

Date of translation

**\_\_DATE\_\_** is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents the date that the source file was translated. It is a string literal of the form

```
"Mmm dd yyyy"
```

where **Mmm** is the same three-letter abbreviation for the month as is used by **asctime**; **dd** is the day of the month, with the first **d** being a space if translation occurs on the first through the ninth day of the month; and **yyyy** is the current year.

The value of **\_\_DATE\_\_** remains constant throughout the processing of the a module of source code. It may not be the subject of a **#define** or **#undef** preprocessing directive.

### Example

The following prints the preprocessor constants set by COHERENT:

```
main()
{
    printf("Date: %s\n", __DATE__);
    printf("Time: %s\n", __TIME__);
    printf("File: %s\n", __FILE__);
    printf("Line No.: %d\n", __LINE__);
    printf("ANSI C? %s\n", __STDC__ ? "Yes" : "No");
}
```

**See Also****\_\_FILE\_\_, \_\_LINE\_\_, \_\_STDC\_\_, \_\_TIME\_\_, C preprocessor****\_\_FILE\_\_ — Macro**

Source file name

**\_\_FILE\_\_** is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents, as a string constant, the name of the current source file being translated.

**\_\_FILE\_\_** may not be the subject of a **#define** or **#undef** preprocessing directive, but it may be altered with the **#line** preprocessing directive.

**Example**

For an example of how to use **\_\_FILE\_\_** in a program, see **\_\_DATE\_\_**.

**See Also****\_\_DATE\_\_, \_\_LINE\_\_, \_\_STDC\_\_, \_\_TIME\_\_, C preprocessor****\_\_LINE\_\_ — Macro**

Current line within a source file

**\_\_LINE\_\_** is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents the current line within the source file. The ANSI Standard defines the current line as being the number of newline characters read, plus one.

**\_\_LINE\_\_** may not be the subject of a **#define** or **#undef** preprocessing directive.

**Example**

For an example of how to use **\_\_LINE\_\_** in a program, see **\_\_DATE\_\_**.

**See Also****\_\_DATE\_\_, \_\_FILE\_\_, \_\_STDC\_\_, \_\_TIME\_\_, C preprocessor****\_\_STDC\_\_ — Macro**

Mark a conforming translator

**\_\_STDC\_\_** is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. If it is defined to be equal to one, then it indicates that the translator conforms to the ANSI Standard.

The value of **\_\_STDC\_\_** remains constant throughout the entire program, no matter how many source files it comprises. It may not be the subject of a **#define** or **#undef** preprocessing directive.

**Example**

For an example of using **\_\_STDC\_\_** in a program, see **\_\_DATE\_\_**.



**See Also**

**\_\_DATE\_\_**, **\_\_FILE\_\_**, **\_\_LINE\_\_**, **\_\_TIME\_\_**, C preprocessor

**Notes**

**\_\_STDC\_\_** is defined only under COHERENT 286.

**\_\_TIME\_\_ — Macro**

Time source file is translated

**\_\_TIME\_\_** is a preprocessor constant that is defined by the C preprocessor. It represents the time that a source file is translated. It is a string literal of the form:

"hh:mm:ss"

This is the same format used by the function **asctime**.

The value of this preprocessor constant remains constant throughout the processing of the translation unit. It may not be the subject of a **#define** or **#undef** preprocessing directive.

**Example**

For an example of how to use **\_\_TIME\_\_** in a program, see **\_\_DATE\_\_**.

**See Also**

**\_\_DATE\_\_**, **\_\_FILE\_\_**, **\_\_LINE\_\_**, **\_\_STDC\_\_**, C preprocessor

**\_exit() — General Function (libc)**

Terminate a program

**void \_exit(status) int status;**

**\_exit** terminates a program directly. It returns *status* to the calling program, and exits. Unlike the library function **exit**, **\_exit** does not perform extra termination cleanup, such as flushing buffered files and closing open files.

**\_exit** should be used only in situations where you do *not* want buffers flushed or files closed. For example, you may wish to call **\_exit** if your program detects an irreparable error condition and you want to "bail out" to keep your data files from being corrupted.

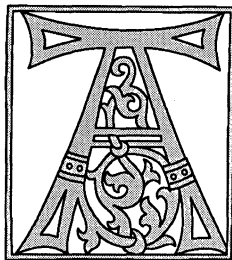
**\_exit** should also be used with programs that do not use **STDIO**. Unlike **exit**, **\_exit** does not use **STDIO**. This will help you create programs that are extremely small when compiled.

**See Also**

**close()**, **exit()**, **general functions**, **wait()**

**Notes**

If a program leaves **main()** by an error condition, contents of register **AX** becomes the exit code. Usually, these register contents are random. If you want to test a program's return code, you must **exit** or **return** from **main()**.



---

**abort() — General Function**

End program immediately

**void abort()**

**abort()** terminates a process with a core dump, creating a file called **core**, and prints a message on the screen. It is normally invoked in situations that “should not happen”. For example, **malloc()** invokes **abort()** if it discovers a corrupt storage arena.

Where possible, **abort()** executes a machine instruction that causes the processor to trap. If the signal associated with the trap is caught or ignored, the dump will not be produced.

**See Also**

**\_exit(), core, exit(), general functions**

---

**abs() — General Function**

Return the absolute value of an integer

**int abs(n) int n;**

**abs()** returns the absolute value of integer *n*. The *absolute value* of a number is its distance from zero. This is *n* if *n* ≥ 0, and *-n* otherwise.

**Example**

This example prompts for a number, and returns its absolute value.

```
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern int atoi();
    char string[64];
    int counter;
    int input;

    printf("Enter an integer: ");
    fflush(stdout);
    gets(string);

    for (counter=0; counter < strlen(string); counter++) {
        input = string[counter];
```

```

    if (!isascii(input)) {
        fprintf(stderr,
            "%s is not ASCII\n", string);
        exit(1);
    }

    if (!isdigit(input))
        if (input != '-' || counter != 0) {
            fprintf(stderr,
                "%s is not a number\n", string);
            exit(1);
        }
}

input = atoi(string);
printf("abs(%d) is %d\n", input, abs(input));
exit(0);
}

```

### See Also

**fabs()**, **floor()**, **general functions**, **int**

### Notes

On two's complement machines, the **abs()** of the most negative integer is itself.

## ac — Command

Summarize login accounting information

**ac** [ **-dp** ] [ **-w** *wfile* ] [ *username* ... ]

One of the accounting mechanisms available on the COHERENT system is login accounting, which keeps track of the time each user spends logged into the system. Login accounting is enabled by creating the file **/usr/adm/wtmp**. Thereafter, the routines **date**, **login**, and **init** write raw accounting data to **/usr/adm/wtmp** to record the time, the name of the terminal, and the name of the user for each date change, login, logout, or system reboot.

The command **ac** summarizes the raw accounting data. By default, **ac** prints the total connect time found in **/usr/adm/wtmp**. Any *username* restricts the summary to each specified user.

The following options are available:

- d**      Itemize the output into daily (midnight to midnight) periods.
- p**      Print individual totals.
- w**      Use *wfile* rather than **/usr/adm/wtmp** as the raw data file.

### Files

**/usr/adm/wtmp**

### See Also

**commands**, **date**, **init**, **login**, **sa**, **utmp.h**

### Notes

The file **/usr/adm/wtmp** can become very large; therefore, it should be truncated periodically. Special care should be taken if login accounting is enabled on a COHERENT system with a small disk.

**access() — System Call**

Check if a file can be accessed in a given mode

```
#include <access.h>
```

```
int access(filename, mode) char *filename; int mode;
```

`access()` checks whether a file or directory can be accessed in the mode you wish. *filename* is the full path name of the file or directory you wish to check. *mode* is the mode in which you wish to access *filename*, as follows:

<b>AREAD</b>	Read a file
<b>AEXISTS</b>	Check if a file exists
<b>ALIST</b>	List the contents of a directory
<b>AWRITE</b>	Write into a file
<b>ADEL</b>	Delete files from a directory
<b>AEXEC</b>	Execute a file
<b>ASRCH</b>	Search a directory
<b>AAPPND</b>	Append to a file
<b>ACREAT</b>	Create a file in a directory

The header file `access.h` defines these values, which may be logically combined to produce the *mode* argument.

If *mode* is **AEXISTS**, `access()` tests only whether *filename* exists, and whether you have permission to search all directories that lead to it.

`access()` returns zero if *filename* can be accessed in the requested mode, and a nonzero value if it cannot. Note that the return value is the opposite of the intuitive value, i.e., zero means success rather than failure.

`access()` uses the *real* user id and *real* group id (rather than the *effective* user id and *effective* group id), so set user id programs can use it.

**Example**

The following example checks if a file can be accessed in a particular manner.

```
#include <access.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    int mode;
    extern int access();

    if (argc != 3) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: access filename mode\n");
        exit(1);
    }
}
```

```

switch (*argv[2]) {
case 'x':
    mode = AEXEC;
    break;

case 'w':
    mode = AWRITE;
    break;

case 'r':
    mode = AREAD;
    break;

default:
    fprintf(stderr,
        "modes: x = execute, w = write, r = read\n");
    exit(1);
    break;
}

if (access(argv[1], mode)) {
    printf("file %s not found in mode %d\n", argv[1], mode);
    exit(0);
} else
    printf("file %s accessible in mode %d\n",
        argv[1], mode);

exit(0);
}

```

**See Also**

**access.h**, **path()**, **system calls**

**Notes**

When the superuser **root** executes **access()**, it always returns readable/writable/executable for any file that exists, regardless of permissions.

**access.h — Header File**

Check accessibility

**#include <access.h>**

The header file **access.h** declares the function **access** and a set of associated manifest constants. You can use these to check the accessibility of a given file.

**See Also**

**access**, **header files**

**acct() — System Call**

Enable/disable process accounting

**acct(file)**

**char \*file;**

*Process accounting* records who initiates each system process and how long each process takes to execute. These data can be analyzed, to administer the system most efficiently.

The system call **acct()** enables or disables process accounting. If *file* is not NULL, then accounting is turned on; if *file* is NULL, however, then process accounting is turned off.

It is usual, but not necessary, that *file* be **/usr/adm/acct**. *file* must exist. When enabled, the system appends a raw accounting data record in the format described by **acct.h** to *file* as each process terminates.

**acct()** is restricted to the superuser.

### **See Also**

**ac**, **acct.h**, **accton**, **exit()**, **sa**, **system calls**, **times()**

### **Diagnostics**

Successful calls return zero. **acct()** returns -1 for errors, such as nonexistent *file* or invocation by a user other than the superuser.

### **Notes**

The system writes accounting records for a process only when the process exits. Processes that never terminate and processes running at the time of a system crash do not produce accounting information.

### **acct.h — Header File**

Format for process-accounting file

**#include <acct.h>**

*Process accounting* is a feature of the COHERENT system that allows it record what processes each user executes and how long each process takes. These data can be used to track how much each user uses the system.

The function **acct** turns process accounting off or on. When process accounting has been turned on, the COHERENT system writes raw process-accounting information into an accounting file as each process terminates. Each entry in the accounting file, normally **/usr/adm/acct**, has the following form, as defined in the header file **acct.h**:

```
struct acct {
    char      ac_comm[10];
    comp_t    ac_utime;
    comp_t    ac_stime;
    comp_t    ac_etime;
    time_t    ac_btime;
    short     ac_uid;
    short     ac_gid;
    short     ac_mem;
    comp_t    ac_io;
    dev_t     ac_tty;
    char      ac_flag;
};

/* Bits from ac_flag */
#define AFORK    01    /* has done fork, but not exec */
#define ASU     02    /* has used superuser privileges */
```

Every time a process performs an **exec** call, the contents of **ac\_comm** are replaced with the first ten characters of the file name. The fields **ac\_utime** and **ac\_stime** represent the CPU time used in the user program and in the system, respectively. **ac\_etime** represents the elapsed time since the process started running, whereas **ac\_btime** is the time the process started. The effective user id

and effective group id are **ac\_uid** and **ac\_gid**. **ac\_mem** gives the average memory usage of the process. **ac\_io** gives the number of blocks of input-output. **ac\_tty** gives the controlling typewriter device major and minor numbers.

For some of the above times, the **acct** structure uses the special representation **comp\_t**, defined in the header file **types.h**. It is a floating point representation with three bits of base-8 exponent and 13 bits of fraction, so it fits in a **short** integer.

### See Also

**acct()**, **accton**, header files, **sa**

### accton — Command

Enable/disable process accounting  
**/etc/accton** [*file*]

One of the accounting mechanisms available on the COHERENT system is *process accounting*, also called *shell accounting*. Process accounting records each process, who initiates it, and how long it takes to execute.

By issuing the command **accton** with a *file* argument, you enable process accounting. The system then writes raw accounting data into *file*, which normally should be **/usr/adm/acct**. The command **sa** summarizes the resulting raw statistics. If issued with no argument, **accton** disables process accounting.

**accton** is normally invoked by the initialization command file **/etc/rc**.

### Files

**/usr/adm/acct** — Raw accounting data

### See Also

**ac**, **acct**, **acct.h**, **commands**, **init**, **sa**

### Notes

As the file **/usr/adm/acct** can become very large, special care should be taken if process accounting is enabled on a COHERENT system with a small disk file system.

### acos() — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate inverse cosine

**#include <math.h>**

**double acos**(*arg*) **double arg**;

**acos()** calculates the inverse cosine. *arg* should be in the range of -1.0, 1.0. It returns the result, which is in the range of from zero to  $\pi$  radians.

### Example

This example demonstrates the mathematics functions **acos()**, **asin()**, **atan()**, **atan2()**, **cabs()**, **cos()**, **hypot()**, **sin()**, and **tan()**.

```
#include <math.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)

dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
```

```
{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];

    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter number: ");
        if(gets(string) == NULL)
            break;

        x = atof(string);
        display(x);
        display(cos(x));
        display(sin(x));
        display(tan(x));
        display(acos(cos(x)));

        display(asin(sin(x)));
        display(atan(tan(x)));
        display(atan2(sin(x),cos(x)));
        display(hypot(sin(x),cos(x)));
        display(cabs(sin(x),cos(x)));
    }
}
```

### **See Also**

**errno**, **errno.h**, **mathematics library**, **perror()**

### **action.h — Header File**

Describe parsing action and goto tables

**#include <action.h>**

**action.h** is a header that defines structures and manifest constants used in parsing and goto tables.

### **See Also**

**header files**

### **address — Definition**

An **address** is the location where an item of data is stored in memory.

On the i8086, a physical address is a 20-bit number. The i8086 builds an address by left-shifting a 16-bit segment address by four bits, and then adding it to a 16-bit offset address. The segment address points to a particular chunk of memory. The i8086 uses four segment registers, each of which governs a different portion of a program, as follows:

## **LEXICON**



CS	Address of code segment
DS	Address of data segment
ES	Address of "extra" segment
SS	Address of stack segment

SMALL-model programs use only the offset address; hence, their pointers are only 16 bits long, equivalent to an **int**. LARGE-model programs use both segment and offset addresses. Their addresses are 20 bits long, which must be stored in a 32-bit pointer, equivalent to a **long**. COHERENT 286 currently supports SMALL model.

On the i80386, addresses start as 32 bits. Segments registers are used to look up a segment descriptor. The descriptor's base then defines the address within a four-gigabyte virtual address space. The page tables are then used to translate this to a physical address. For details we suggest the *Intel 386 Programmers Manual*.

On the M68000, an address is simply a 24-bit integer that is stored as a 32-bit integer. The upper eight bits are ignored; this is not true with the more advanced microprocessors in this family, such as the M68020. The M68000 uses no segmentation; memory is organized as a "flat address space," with no restrictions set on the size of code or data.

On machines with memory-mapped I/O, such as the 68000, some addresses may be used to control or communicate with peripheral devices.

### Example

The following prints the address and contents of a given byte of memory.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    char byte = 'a';
    printf("Address == %x\tContents == \"%c\"\n",
        &byte, byte);
}
```

### See Also

**data formats, definitions, pointer**

## aha154x — Device Driver

Adaptec AHA-154x device driver

The device driver **aha154x** lets you use SCSI interface devices attached to an Adaptec AHA-154x series host adapter. This driver has major number 13. It can be accessed either as a block-special device or as a character-special device. The minor number specifies the device and partition number for disk-type devices, letting you use up to eight SCSI-IDs, with up to four logical unit numbers (LUNs) per SCSI-ID and up to four partitions per LUN.

The first **open** call on a SCSI disk device allocates memory for the partition table and reads it into memory.

### Controller Configuration

Prior to installing the Adaptec host adapter in your system, you must configure the I/O base address, interrupt vector, and DMA channel as follows:

I/O base address:        0x330  
DMA channel:            5  
Interrupt vector:        IRQ11

In addition, if you are using any synchronous SCSI peripherals, disable the synchronous transfer option on the Adaptec host adapter.

After verifying that your controller works with COHERENT, you may select an alternate I/O base address or an alternate interrupt vector. Device-driver variables **SDBASE\_** and **SDIRQ\_** correspond to the I/O base address and interrupt vector, respectively. Variable **SDDMA\_** sets the number of the DMA channel being used. See Lexicon article **hs** for an example of how to configure a device driver.

When processing BIOS I/O requests prior to booting COHERENT, the Adaptec host adapter uses translation mode drive parameters: number of heads, cylinders, and sectors per track. Most current versions of the AHA-154x use values of 64 heads and 32 sectors per track, and calculate the number of cylinders based upon drive capacity. Note that these numbers are called “translation-mode” parameters because they have nothing to do with the geometry of the physical drive. Some early versions of the AHA-154x, and some versions distributed by Tandy, use 16 heads and 32 sectors per track. Device driver variable **SD\_HDS\_** is initialized to 64 as shipped; it should be patched to a value of 16 for adapters whose BIOS code uses 16-head translation mode. The translation-mode parameters used by the BIOS code present on your host adapter can be obtained using the **info** command from the tertiary boot in versions 3.2.1 and later of COHERENT. (See the article on **tboot** for details.) Note that the BIOS code is executed by COHERENT only during initial bootstrap. After that, drive parameters are of no consequence since SCSI I/O requests are based upon logical block number, rather than on cylinder/head/sector addressing.

The installation procedure for COHERENT versions 3.2.0 and later patches all necessary variables for the accompanying version of the **aha154x** driver by executing the command:

```
/etc/mkdev scsi
```

### Minor Device Numbers

The minor device number is decoded as follows:

Bit number:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Meaning:	S	I	I	I	L	L	P	P

where **S** indicates the “special” bit, **III** indicates a three-bit field containing the SCSI-ID in the range of zero through seven, **LL** indicates a two-bit field containing a LUN in the range of zero through three, and **PP** indicates a two-bit field that contains either a partition number for disk-type devices or a set of special modes for devices other than disks.

The “special” bit and the partition number interact as follows:

Description	S Bit	PP	Device	Type
partition a	0	00	/dev/sd?a	disk
partition b	0	01	/dev/sd?b	disk
partition c	0	10	/dev/sd?c	disk
partition d	0	11	/dev/sd?d	disk
partition table	1	00	/dev/sd?x	disk
no rewind	1	01	/dev/sd?n	tape
RESERVED	1	10	---	---
rewind on close	1	11	/dev/sd?	tape

### Loading the Driver

The **aha154x** loadable device driver must be loaded on a system that does not have a SCSI hard disk as the root device. To do so, use the command **/etc/drvld**, as follows:

```
/etc/drvld -r /drv/aha154x
```

### Files

**/dev/sd\*** — block-special devices

**/dev/rsd\*** — character-special devices

### See Also

**device drivers, drvld, scsi, tboot**

### Notes

This release of the **aha154x** device driver only supports disk-type devices. A future version of the driver will add support for tape-type and other devices.

## alarm() — System Call

Set a timer

**alarm(*n*)**

**unsigned *n*;**

**alarm()** sets a timer associated with the requesting process to go off in *n* seconds. After *n* seconds, the system sends the signal **SIGALARM** to the process. An argument of zero turns off the alarm timer.

By default, the receipt of the **SIGALARM** signal terminates the process. However, it may be caught or ignored by using **signal()**. Because of scheduling variation and the one second granularity, the action of **alarm()** is predictable only to within one second.

**alarm()** is useful for such things as timeouts. For example, the login process on a dial-in port might hang up the line after a sufficient time has elapsed with no user response.

**alarm()** returns the previous alarm value, which represents the time remaining from the previous call. Time remaining is superseded by the new alarm value.

### See Also

**alarm2(), signal(), sleep(), system calls**

### Notes

Each process can set only one alarm at a time. **alarm()** and **alarm2()** use the same mechanism for setting alarms.

## alarm2() — System Call

Set an alarm

**long**

**alarm2(*n*)**

**long *n*;**

**alarm2()** sends signal **SIGALARM** to the requesting process after *n* clock ticks. The number of clock ticks per second is set by the manifest constant **HZ**, found in header file **const.h**. At present, this is set to 100 ticks per second.

**alarm2()** returns the number of ticks remaining before the previous request would have triggered an alarm, or zero if no alarm was previously set.

By default, the receipt of the **SIGALARM** terminates the process. However, it may be caught or ignored by using **signal()**.

**See Also****alarm()**, **signal()**, **sleep()**, **system calls****Notes**

Each process can set only one alarm at a time. **alarm2()** and **alarm()** use the same mechanism for setting alarms.

**alias** — **Command**

Set an alias

**alias** [*name*[=*value* ...]]

The command **alias** is used by the Korn shell **ksh** to set or display an alias.

When called without an argument, **alias** lists all aliases that have been set so far. When called with a *name* argument alone, it lists alias of *name*, assuming one has been set.

When called with one or more arguments of the form *name=value*, it established *name* as an alias for the command *value*. For example, the command

```
alias FOO="echo bar"
```

establishes the string **FOO** as an alias for the command **echo bar**. Thereafter, when you type **FOO** on the shell's command line, it will execute the command **echo bar** and so echo the string **bar** on your terminal.

The Korn shell sets a number of aliases by default. See the Lexicon entry for **ksh** for a list of these aliases and their settings.

**See Also****commands**, **ksh**, **unalias****aliases** — **System Maintenance**

File of users' aliases

**/usr/lib/mail/aliases****\$HOME/.aliases****\$HOME/.forward**

**aliases** is a file that holds aliases by which users on your system and other systems are known. An "alias", in effect, gives another name by which you can address a mail message to a user on either your or another system. It can serve as a mnemonic, a "mailing list", or to spare you the trouble of typing a complicated UUCP path name.

The format of each alias is

```
alias_name:      target
```

where *alias\_name* gives the alias to which you mail your message, and *target* is the place where **smail** actually directs the message. *target* can be a login identifier on your local system; a mail address of a user on another system, or a cluster of users on your system, on remote systems, or both.

**smail** ignores differences in case when it compares a name with an alias. Lines that start with a white-space character continue from the previous line. **smail** ignores strings within parentheses, as well as any text that appears after a pound sign '#'.

Prior to delivering local mail, **smail** checks file **\$HOME/.forward** for forwarding instructions. This feature can be used to forward inbound mail for a user to another machine or even a group of machines.

## Examples

The following gives an example form of **aliases**:

```
# this whole line is a comment

# "mail programmers" sends mail to local users joe, jack, and bill
programmers:      joe jack bill

# same as above
programmers:      joe jack
                  bill

# same as above
programmers      joe jack
                  bill

# same as above
programmers      joe    # Joe Smith
                  jack   # Jack Thomas
                  bill   # Bill Williams

# and yet another way; note use of parentheses to comment text
programmers      joe (Joe Smith) jack (Jack Thomas)
                  bill (Bill Williams)

# send a message to someone on another system
joe:             boston!widget!js

# send a message to users on both your and another system
programmers:     boston!widget!js    # Joe Smith
                  chicago!gadget!jt  # Jack Thomas
                  bill                # Bill Williams

# all members of "programmers" group work at site "widget"
programmers:widget      joe jack bill
```

Mailing lists are easily handled by two forms of file inclusion. The first form is the same as is supported by **sendmail**:

```
fredlist          :include:/usr/lib/mail/fredlist
```

**smail** adds each entry in **/usr/lib/mail/fredlist** to the alias for **fredlist**.

The second form allows **/usr/lib/mail/aliases** to include other aliases files:

```
:include:/usr/lib/mail/morealiases
```

This adds the contents of **/usr/lib/mail/morealiases** to those of **/usr/lib/mail/aliases** as a regular alias file.

All aliases are recursive, so you must be careful when defining them. For example, the entries

```
bill:            joe
joe:             bill
```

causes an infinite loop. **smail** attempts to prevent infinite loops, and to guess what you intended to do. The following example illustrates how an alias can be used to deliver mail to a remote user as well as to a local user having the same name as the alias being expanded. **smail** expands the alias

```
mylogin:                mypc!mylogin  mylogin
to
mypc!mylogin mylogin
```

even though the second occurrence of **mylogin** matches the alias name.

Both forms of file inclusion are recursive, too, and may lead to infinite loops if handled carelessly.

### **See Also**

**mail, system maintenance**

### **alignment — Definition**

**Alignment** refers to the fact that some microprocessors require the address of a data entity to be *aligned* to a numeric boundary in memory so that *address modulo number* equals zero. For example, the M68000 and the PDP-11 require that an integer be aligned along an even address, i.e., *address%2==0*.

Generally speaking, alignment is a problem only if you write programs in assembly language. For C programs, COHERENT ensures that data types are aligned properly under foreseeable conditions. You should, however, beware of copying structures and of casting a pointer to **char** to a pointer to a **struct**, for these could trigger alignment problems.

Processors react differently to an alignment problem. On the VAX or the i8086, it causes a program to run more slowly, whereas on the M68000 it causes a bus error.

### **See Also**

**data types, definitions**

### **alloc.h — Header File**

Define the allocator

```
#include <sys/alloc.h>
```

**alloc.h** defines manifest constants and structures that are used internally with memory allocation.

### **See Also**

**header files**

### **alloca() — General Function**

Dynamically allocate space on the stack

```
alloca(memory)
```

```
int memory;
```

The function **alloca()** allocates *memory* number of bytes dynamically on the stack. The allocated memory disappears automatically as soon as the program exits from the function within which the memory was allocated.

For example, consider the function:

```

foo(some_string)
char *some_string;
{
    char *cp;
    . . .
    cp = alloca(strlen(some_string) + 1);
    strcpy(cp, some_string);
    . . .
}

```

Here, the call to **alloca()** allocates enough space upon the stack for **some\_string** plus the terminating NUL character. When function **foo()** returns, the allocated memory vanishes.

This routine is popular in Berkeley and GNU circles because it is much faster than **malloc()**, and the programmer does not need to call **free()** to de-allocate the memory.

### See Also

**calloc()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **realloc()**

### Notes

**alloca()** is available only with COHERENT 386.

## ar — Command

The librarian/archiver

**ar** *option* [*modifier*][*position*] *archive* [*member* ...]

The librarian **ar** edits and examines libraries. It combines several files into a file called an *archive* or *library*. Archives reduce the size of directories and allow many files to be handled as a single unit. The principal use of archives is for libraries of object files. The linker **ld** understands the archive format, and can search libraries of object files to resolve undefined references in a program.

### Options and Modifiers

The mandatory *option* argument consists of one of the following command keys:

- d** Delete each given *member* from *archive*. The **ranlib** header is updated if present.
- m** Move each given *member* within *archive*. If no *modifier* is given, move each *member* to the end. The **ranlib** header is modified if present.
- p** Print each *member*. This is useful only with archives of text files.
- q** Quick append: append each *member* to the end of *archive* unconditionally. The **ranlib** header is not updated.
- r** Replace each *member* of *archive*. If *archive* does not exist, create it. The optional *modifier* specifies how to perform the replacement, as described below. The **ranlib** header is modified if present.
- t** Print a table of contents that lists each *member* specified. If none is given, list all in *archive*. The modifier **v** tells **ar** to give you additional information.
- x** Extract each given *member* and place it into the current directory. If none is specified, extract all members. *archive* is not changed.

The *modifier* may be one of the following. The modifiers **a**, **b**, **i**, and **u** may be used only with the **m** and **r** options.

- a** If *member* does not exist in *archive*, insert it after the member named by the given *position*.
- b** If *member* does not exist in *archive*, insert it before the member named by the given *position*.
- c** Suppress the message normally printed when **ar** creates an archive.
- i** If *member* does not exist in *archive*, insert it before the member named by the given *position*. This is the same as the **b** modifier, described above.
- k** Preserve the modify time of a file. This modifier is useful only with the **r**, **q**, and **x** options.
- s** Modify an archive's ranlib header, or create it if it does not exist. This must be used for archives read by the linker **ld**.
- u** Update *archive* only if *member* is newer than the version in the *archive*.
- v** Generate verbose messages.

**ar** reads the environmental variables **ARHEAD** and **ARTAIL** and appends them to, respectively, the beginning and end of its command line. For example, to ensure that **ar** is always executed with the **c** modifier, insert the following into your **.profile**:

```
export ARHEAD=c
```

### Library Structure

All archives are written into a specialized file format. Each archive starts with a "magic string" called **ARMAG**, which identifies the file as an archive. The members of the archive follow the magic number; each is preceded by an **ar\_hdr** structure. For information on this structure, see **ar.h**. The structure is followed the data of the file, which occupy the number of bytes specified by the variable **ar\_size**.

### See Also

**ar.h**, **commands**, **ld**, **nm**, **ranlib**

### Notes

It is recommended that each object-file library you create with **ar** have a name that begins with the string **lib** and ends with the string **.a**. Using the prefix **lib** will allow you to call that library with the **-l** option to the **cc** command. **ld** will not recognize an archive whose name does not end in **.a**.

### **ar.h** — Header File

Format for archive files

```
#include <ar.h>
```

An *archive* is a file that has been built from a number of files. Archives are maintained by the **ar** command. Usually, an archive is a library of object files used by the linker **ld**.

The header **ar.h** describes the format of an archive. All archives start with a magic number **ARMAG**, which identifies the file as an archive. The members of the archive follow the magic number, each preceded by the structure **ar\_hdr**:

```
#define DIRSIZ 14          /* from <dir.h> */
#define ARMAG 0177535     /* magic number */
```



```

struct ar_hdr {
    char    ar_name[DIRSIZ]; /* member name */
    time_t  ar_date;         /* time inserted */
    short   ar_gid;          /* group owner */
    short   ar_uid;          /* user owner */
    short   ar_mode;         /* file mode */
    size_t  ar_size;         /* file size */
};

```

The structure at the head of each member is immediately followed by **ar\_size** bytes, which are the data of the file.

To enhance the performance of **ld**, the command **ranlib** provides a random library facility. **ranlib** produces archives that contain a special entry named **\_\_SYMDEF** at the beginning.

All integer members of the structure (everything but **ar\_name**) are in canonical form to ease portability. See **canon.h** for more information.

### See Also

**ar**, **canon.h**, header files, **ld**, **ranlib**

## arena — Definition

An **arena** is the area of memory that is available for a program to allocate dynamically at run time. It is divided into *allocated* and *unallocated* blocks. The unallocated blocks together form the “free memory pool”.

Portions of the arena can be allocated using the functions **malloc**, **calloc**, or **realloc**; returned to the free memory pool with **free**; or checked to see if they are allocated or not with **notmem**. To check whether the arena has been corrupted or not, use the function **memok**.

### See Also

**calloc()**, **definitions**, **free()**, **malloc()**, **memok()**, **notmem()**, **realloc()**

## argc — C Language

Argument passed to **main()**

```
int argc;
```

**argc** is an abbreviation for “argument count”. It is the traditional name for the first argument to a C program’s **main** routine. By convention, it holds the number of arguments that are passed to **main** in the argument vector **argv**. Because **argv[0]** is always the name of the command, the value of **argc** is always one greater than the number of command-line arguments that the user enters.

### Example

For an example of how to use **argc**, see the entry for **argv**.

### See Also

**argv**, C language, **envp**, **main()**

## argv — C Language

Argument passed to **main()**

```
char *argv[];
```

**argv** is an abbreviation for “argument vector”. It is the traditional name for a pointer to an array of string pointers passed to a C program’s **main** function; by convention, it is the second argument passed to **main**. By convention, **argv[0]** always points to the name of the command itself.

**Example**

This example demonstrates both **argc** and **argv[]**, to recreate the command **echo**.

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    int i;

    for (i = 1; i < argc; ) {
        printf("%s", argv[i]);
        if (++i < argc)
            putchar(' ');
    }

    putchar('\n');
    exit(0);
}
```

**See Also**

**argc**, C language, **envp**, **main()**

**ARHEAD — Environmental Variable**

Append options to beginning of **ar** command line

**export ARHEAD=options**

The COHERENT archiver **ar** reads the environmental variables **ARHEAD** and **ARTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the archiver always to use. **ar** appends the options in **ARHEAD** to the beginning of its command line.

**See Also**

**ar**, **ARTAIL**, **environmental variables**

**array — Definition**

An **array** is a concatenation of data elements, all of which are of the same type. All the elements of an array are stored consecutively in memory, and each element within the array can be addressed by the array name plus a subscript.

For example, the array **int foo[3]** has three elements, each of which is an **int**. The three **ints** are stored consecutively in memory, and each can be addressed by the array name **foo** plus a subscript that indicates its place within the array, as follows: **foo[0]**, **foo[1]**, and **foo[2]**. Note that the numbering of elements within an array always begins with '0'.

Arrays, like other data elements, may be automatic (**auto**), **static**, or external (**extern**).

Arrays can be multi-dimensional; that is to say, each element in an array can itself be an array. To declare a multi-dimensional array, use more than one set of square brackets. For example, the multi-dimensional array **foo[3][10]** is a two-dimensional array that has three elements, each of which is an array of ten elements. The second sub-script is always necessary in a multi-dimensional array, whereas the first is not. For example, the form **foo[][10]** is acceptable, whereas **foo[10][]** is not. The first form is an indefinite number of ten-element arrays, which is correct C, whereas the second form is ten copies of an indefinite number of elements, which is illegal.

You can initialize automatic arrays and structures, provided that you know the size of the array, or of any array contained within a structure. An automatic array is initialized in the same manner as aggregate, but initialization is performed on entry to the routine at run time, instead of at compile time.

### Flexible Arrays

A **flexible array** is one whose length is not declared explicitly. Each has exactly one empty '[' array-bound declaration. If the array is multidimensional, the flexible dimension of the array must be the *first* array bound in the declaration; for example:

```
int example1[][20]; /* RIGHT */
int example2[20][]; /* WRONG */
```

The C language allows you to declare an indefinite number of array elements of a set length, but not a set number of array elements of an indefinite length.

Flexible arrays occur in only a few contexts; for example, as parameters:

```
char *argv[];
char p[][8];
```

as **extern** declarations:

```
extern int end[];
```

or as a member of a structure — usually, though not necessarily, the last:

```
struct nlist {
    struct nlist *next;
    char name[];
};
```

### Example

The following program initializes an automatic array, and prints its contents.

```
main()
{
    int foo[3] = { 1, 2, 3 };
    printf("Here's foo's contents: %d %d %d\n",
        foo[0], foo[1], foo[2]);
}
```

### See Also

**definitions, initialization, struct**

*The C Programming Language*, pages 25, 83, 210

### ARTAIL — Environmental Variable

Append options to end of ar command line

**export ARTAIL=options**

The COHERENT archiver **ar** reads the environmental variables **ARHEAD** and **ARTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the archiver always to use.

**ar** appends the options in **ARTAIL** to the end of its command line.

### See Also

**ar, ARHEAD, environmental variables**

**as 286 — Command**

i80286 assembler

**as** [-glx] [-ofile] file ...

**as** is the Mark Williams assembler. It is a multipass assembler that turns files of assembly language into relocatable object modules similar to those produced by the compiler. **as** is designed for writing small assembly-language subroutines. Because it is not intended to be used for full-scale assembly-language programming, it lacks many of the more elaborate facilities of full-fledged assemblers. For example, there are no facilities for conditional compilation or user-defined macros. However, it does optimize span-dependent instructions (for example, branches).

Please note that **as** comes in two editions: one that comes with COHERENT 286 and one that comes with COHERENT 386. This article describes the former edition. The COHERENT 386 edition of **as** is considerably expanded in its functionality over the COHERENT 286 edition. Programs written in the COHERENT-286 edition of **as** can be upgraded to the COHERENT-386 edition by using the command **asfix**, which is included with COHERENT 386.

**Features**

**as** includes the following features:

- It automatically compiles jump instructions into either regular (three-byte) jumps or short (two-byte) jumps, whichever is required. There is no explicit short jump instruction.
- The assembler supports temporary labels, which conserves symbol table space and relieves you of having to invent many unique labels.
- Program modules are relocatable. They can be linked with each other and with C program modules produced by the COHERENT compiler. All assembled modules must be linked before they can be executed.
- The assembler does not support file inclusion, but multiple source files can be concatenated and assembled by including their names in the command line to run the assembler.
- The assembler generates SMALL model objects in the COHERENT **l.out** object format.

**Usage**

Normally, the assembler is invoked via the **cc** command, which will automatically assemble and link any file of source code that has the suffix **.s**. If you wish, however, you can invoke the assembler as a separate program, by using the following command line:

```
as [-glx] [-o file] file ...
```

The named *files* are concatenated and the resulting object code is written to the file specified by the **-o** option, or to file **l.out** if no **-o** option is given.

The option **-g** causes all symbols that are undefined at the end of the first pass to be given the type **undefined external**, as though they had been declared with a **.globl** directive.

The option **-l** tells the assembler to generate a listing. It writes the listing to the standard output, normally the terminal; it may be easily redirected to a file or printer using the **>** operator.

The option **-x** strips from the symbol table of the object module all non-global symbols that begin with the character 'L'. This speeds up the loading of files by removing compiler-generated labels from the symbol table.

**Register Names**

The following lists the identifiers that represent the i8086 machine registers, which are predefined:

---

AX	SP	AL	AH	CS
BX	BP	BL	BH	DS
CX	SI	CL	CH	ES
DX	DI	DL	DH	SS

## Lexical Conventions

Assembler tokens consist of identifiers (also known as “symbols” or “names”), constants, and operators.

An identifier is a sequence of alphanumeric characters (including the period ‘.’ and the underscore ‘\_’). The first character must not be numeric. Only the first 16 characters of the name are significant; the assembler throws away the remainder. Upper case and lower case are different. The machine instructions, assembly directives, and built-in symbols that are used frequently are in lower case.

Numeric constants are defined by the assembler by using the same syntax as the C compiler: a sequence of digits that begins with a zero ‘0’ is an octal constant; a sequence of digits with a leading ‘0x’ is a hexadecimal constant (‘A’ through ‘F’ have the decimal values 10 through 15); and any strings of digits that do not begin with ‘0’ are interpreted as decimal constants.

A character constant consists of an apostrophe followed by an ASCII character. The constant’s value is the ASCII code for the character, right-justified in the machine word. For example, an instruction to move the letter ‘A’ to the register **al** could be expressed in either of two equivalent ways:

```
mov  al,$0x41
mov  al,$'A'
```

The dollar sign indicates an immediate operand.

A blank space can be represented either **0x20** (its ASCII value in hexadecimal), or as an apostrophe followed by a space (‘ ’), which on paper looks like just an apostrophe alone.

The following gives the multi-character escape sequences that can be used in a character constant to represent special characters:

<b>\b</b>	Backspace	(0010)
<b>\f</b>	Formfeed	(0014)
<b>\n</b>	Newline	(0012)
<b>\r</b>	Carriage return	(0015)
<b>\t</b>	Tab	(0011)
<b>\v</b>	Vertical tab	(0013)
<b>\nnn</b>	Octal value	(0nnn)

A blank space can be represented either as **0x20** (its ASCII value in hexadecimal), or as an apostrophe followed by a space (‘ ’), which on the page would look like just an apostrophe.

## Blanks and Tabs

Blanks and tab characters may be used freely between tokens, but not within identifiers. A blank or a tabulation character is required to separate adjacent tokens not otherwise separated, e.g., between an instruction opcode and its first operand.

## Comments

Comments are introduced by a slash (‘/’) and continue until the end of the line. All characters in comments are ignored by the assembler.

## Program Sections

The assembler permits you to divide programs into sections, each corresponding (roughly) to a functional area of the address space. Each program section has its own location counter during assembly. There are eight program sections, subdivided into three groups containing code, data and tables:

code:	<b>shri</b>	Shared instruction
	<b>bssI</b>	Uninitialized instruction
	<b>prvi</b>	Private instruction
data:	<b>prvd</b>	Private data
	<b>shrd</b>	Shared data
	<b>bssd</b>	Uninitialized data
	<b>strn</b>	Strings
tables:	<b>symt</b>	Symbol table

All Mark Williams assemblers use the same set of sections. This increases the portability of programs between operating systems. Not all the sections are distinct under COHERENT, however; the meanings of the sections under (including hints as to how the C compiler uses them) are as follows:

**shri** (shared instruction) is the same as **prvi** (private instruction); the adjective *shared* refers to the sharing of physical memory between two or more concurrent processes. **prvi** is used for all code generated by the C compiler.

Similarly, there is no distinction between **shrd** and **prvd**. The compiler uses the latter for all external and static data that are explicitly initialized in a C program.

*Uninitialized* sections are actually initialized to zeros. The reason is that the C compiler uses the **bssd** (uninitialized data) section for external or static data that are not explicitly initialized: the C language guarantees that these data are in fact initialized to zeros. The **bssI** (uninitialized instruction) section is not used by the compiler.

The **strn** (strings) section is actually a special part of the data section, used by the C compiler to store string constants. It is synonymous with **prvd** under COHERENT.

The **symt** (symbol table) section contains the symbol table used by the linker. Both the C compiler and the assembler generate symbol tables that go in this section.

In most cases, you need not worry about what all these program sections are, and can simply write code under the keyword **.prvi** or **.shri**, and write data under the keyword **.prvd** or **.shrd**. You are advised not to place items in the **symt** section, as this section is used for internal communication among the C compiler, the assembler, and the linker.

At the end of assembly, the sections of a program are concatenated so that in the assembly listing the program looks like a monolithic block of code and data. All **code** sections are combined into the i8086 **code** segment, and all **data** sections into the i8086 **data** segment. The symbol table is not linked when the program is executed, and so is not assigned to any i8086 segment.

## The Current Location

The special symbol **'.'** (period) is a counter that represents the current location. The current location can be changed by an assignment; for example:

```
. = .+START
```

The assignment must not cause the value to decrease, and it must not change the program section, i.e., the right-hand operand must be defined in the same section as the current section.

## Expressions

An expression is a sequence of symbols representing a value and a program section. Expressions are made up of identifiers, constants, operators, and brackets. All binary operators have equal precedence and are executed in a strict left-to-right order (unless altered by brackets).

Notice that square brackets, '[' and ']', group expression elements, because parentheses are used for indexed register addressing.

## Types

Every expression has a type determined by its operands. The simplest operands are symbols. The types of symbols are as follows:

Undefined	A symbol is defined if it is a constant or a label, or when assigned a defined value; otherwise, it is undefined. A symbol may become undefined if it is assigned the value of an undefined expression. It is an error to assemble an undefined expression in pass 2. Pass 1 allows assembly of undefined expressions, but phase errors may be produced if undefined expressions are used in certain contexts, such as in a <b>.blkw</b> or <b>.blkb</b> .
Absolute	An absolute symbol is one defined ultimately from a constant or from the difference of two relocatable values.
Register	These are the machine registers.
Relocatable	All other user symbols are relocatable symbols in some program section. Each program section is a different relocatable type.

Each keyword in the assembler has a secret type that identifies it internally; however, all of these secret types are converted to absolute in expressions. Thus, any keyword may be used in an expression to obtain the basic value of the keyword. This is useful when employing the keywords that define machine instructions. The basic value of a machine operation is usually the opcode with any operand-specific bits set to zero.

Notice that the type of an expression does not include such attributes as length (word or byte), so the assembler will not remember whether you defined a particular variable to be a word or a byte. Addresses and constants have different types, but the assembler does not treat a constant as an immediate value unless it is preceded by a dollar sign '\$'. If you use a constant where an address is expected, **as** will treat the constant like an address (and vice versa). It is up to you to distinguish between variables and addresses or immediate values.

## Operators

The following figure shows various characters interpreted as operators in expressions.

+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
-	Unary negation
~	Unary complement
^	Type transfer
	Segment construction

You can group expressions by means of square brackets ('[' and ']'); parentheses are reserved for use in address mode descriptions.

## Type Propagation

When operands are combined in expressions, the resulting type is a function of both the operator and the types of the operands. The operators '\*', '~', and unary '-' can only manipulate absolute operands and always yield an absolute result.

The operator '+' signifies the addition of two absolute operands to yield an absolute result, and the addition of an absolute to a relocatable operand to yield a result with the same type as the relocatable operand.

The binary operator '-' allows two operands of the same type, including relocatable, to be subtracted to yield an absolute result. It also allows an absolute to be subtracted from a relocatable, to yield a result with the same type as the relocatable operand.

The binary operator "" yields a result with the value of its left operand and the type of its right operand. It may be used to create expressions (usually intended to be used in an assignment statement) with any desired type.

### **Statements**

A program consists of a sequence of statements separated by newlines or by semicolons. There are four kinds of statements: null statements, assignment statements, keyword statements, and machine instructions.

### **Labels**

You can precede any statement by any number of labels. There are two kinds of labels: *name labels* and *temporary labels*.

A name label consists of an identifier followed by a colon (:). The program section and value of the label are set to that of the current location counter. It is an error for the value of a label to change during an assembly. This most often happens when an undefined symbol is used to control a location counter adjustment.

A temporary label consists of a digit (0 to 9) followed by a colon (:). Such a label defines temporary symbols of the form **xf** and **xb**, where **x** is the digit of the label. References of the form **xf** refer to the first temporary label **x**: forward from the reference; those of the form **xb** refer to the first temporary label **x**: backward from the reference. Such labels conserve symbol table space in the assembler.

### **Null Statements**

A null statement is an empty line, or a line containing only labels or a comment. Null statements can occur anywhere. They are ignored by the assembler, except that any labels are given the current value of the location counter.

### **Assignment Statements**

An assignment statement consists of an identifier followed by an equal sign '=' and an expression. The value and program section of the identifier are set to that of the expression. Any symbol defined by an assignment statement may be redefined, either by another assignment statement or by a label. An assignment statement is equivalent to the **equ** keyword statement found in many assemblers.

### **Assembler Directives**

Assembler directives give instructions to the assembler. Each directive keyword begins with a period, and in general they are followed by operands.

The following directives change the current program section to the named section:



.bssd  
.bssi  
.prvd  
.prvi  
.shrd  
.shri  
.strn  
.synt

The current location counter is set to the highest previous value of the location counter for the selected section.

The following describes the directives in detail.

**.ascii** *string*

The first non-white space character, typically a quotation mark, after the keyword is taken as a delimiter. **as** assembles successive characters from the string into successive bytes until it encounters the next instance of this delimiter. To include a quotation mark in a string, use some other character for the delimiter.

It is an error for a newline to be encountered before reaching the final delimiter. You can use a multi-character constant in the string to represent newlines and other special characters.

**.blkb** *expression*

Assemble a block of bytes that are filled with zeroes. The block is *expression* bytes long.

**.blkw***expression*

Assemble a block of words that are filled with zeroes. The block is *expression* words long.

**.byte** *expression* [, *expression* ]

The *expressions* in the list are truncated to byte size and assembled into successive bytes. Expressions in the list are separated by commas.

**.even** Force alignment by inserting a null byte of data, if necessary, to set the location counter to the next even location.

**.odd** Force alignment by inserting a null byte of data, if necessary, to set the location counter to the next odd location.

**.globl** *identifler* [, *identifler* ]

The identifiers in the comma-separated list are marked as global. If they are defined in the current assembly, they may be referenced by other object modules; if they are undefined, they must be resolved by the linker before execution.

**.page** Force the printed listing of your assembly-language program to skip to the top of a new page by inserting a form-feed character into the file. The title is printed at the top of the page.

**.title** *string*

Print *string* at the top of every page in the listing. This directive also causes the listing to skip to a new page.

**.word** *expression* [, *expression* ]

Truncate *expressions* to word length and assemble the resulting data into successive words. Expressions in the list are separated by commas.

### Address Descriptors

The following syntax is used for general source and destination address descriptors. The symbol 'r'

refers to a register and the symbol 'e' to an expression. Please refer to the following figure.

<i>Syntax</i>	<i>Addressing Mode</i>	<i>Example</i>
r	Register	mov ax, cx
e	Direct address	mov ax, 0800
(r)	Indexing, no displacement	mov ax, (bx)
e(r)	Indexing with displacement	mov ax, 2(bx)
(r,r)	Double indexing, no displacement	mov ax, (bx, si)
e(r,r)	Double indexing with displacement	mov ax, 2(bx, si)
\$e	Immediate	mov ax, \$0800

Note that the dollar sign is always used to indicate an immediate value, even if the expression is a constant.

A direct address is interpreted as either a direct address or a PC-relative displacement, depending on the requirements of the instruction.

If an address descriptor indicates an indexing mode and the base expression is of type absolute, the assembler uses the shortest displacement length (zero, one, or two bytes) that can hold the expression's value. Relocatable base expressions, whose values cannot be completely determined until the program is loaded, are always assigned two-byte displacements.

Any address descriptor may be modified by a segment escape prefix. A segment escape prefix consists of a segment register name followed by a colon ':'. The escape causes the assembler to produce a segment override prefix that uses the specified segment register as an operand. The assembler does not produce segment override prefixes unless explicitly required by an instruction.

### **8086 Instructions**

The following machine instructions are defined. The examples illustrate the general syntax of the operands. Combinations that are syntactically valid may be forbidden for semantic reasons.

The examples use the following references:

<i>a</i>	General address
<i>al</i>	AL register
<i>ax</i>	AX register
<i>cl</i>	CL register
<i>d</i>	Direct address
<i>dx</i>	DX register
<i>e</i>	Expression
<i>\$e</i>	Immediate expression
<i>m</i>	Memory address (not an immediate)
<i>p</i>	Port address

**as** treats as ordinary one-byte machine operations some operations that the Intel assembler ASM86 handles with special syntax; these include the *lock* and *repeat* prefixes. **as** makes no attempt to prevent the generation of incorrect sequences of these prefix bytes.

Although every machine operation has a type and value associated with it, in most cases the value was chosen to help **as** format the machine instructions.

For more information on these instructions, see the *Intel ASM86 Assembly Language Reference Manual*.

<b>aaa</b>	ASCII adjust AL after addition
<b>aad</b>	ASCII adjust AX before division
<b>aam</b>	ASCII adjust AX after multiply

<b>aas</b>		ASCII adjust AL after subtraction
<b>adcb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Add with carry, byte
<b>adc</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Add with carry, word
<b>adcb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Add with carry, byte
<b>adc</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Add with carry, word
<b>adcb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add with carry, byte
<b>adc</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add with carry, word
<b>addb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Add, byte
<b>add</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Add, word
<b>addb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Add, byte
<b>add</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Add, word
<b>addb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add, byte
<b>add</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Add, word
<b>andb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical and, byte
<b>and</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical and, word
<b>andb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical and, byte
<b>and</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical and, word
<b>andb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical and, byte
<b>and</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical and, word
<b>call</b>	<i>d</i>	Near call, PC-relative
<b>cbw</b>		Convert byte into word
<b>clc</b>		Clear carry flag
<b>cld</b>		Clear direction flag
<b>clic</b>		Clear interrupt flag
<b>cmc</b>		Complement carry flag
<b>cmpb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Compare two operands, byte
<b>cmp</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Compare two operands, word
<b>cmpb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Compare two operands, byte
<b>cmp</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Compare two operands, word
<b>cmpb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Compare two operands, byte
<b>cmp</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Compare two operands, word
<b>cmps</b>		Compare string operands, bytes
<b>cmpsb</b>		Compare string operands, bytes
<b>cmpsw</b>		Compare string operands, words
<b>cwd</b>		Convert word to double
<b>daa</b>		Decimal adjust AL after addition
<b>das</b>		Decimal adjust AL after subtraction
<b>decb</b>	<i>a</i>	Decrement by one, byte
<b>dec</b>	<i>a</i>	Decrement by one, word
<b>divb</b>	<i>m</i>	Unsigned divide, byte
<b>div</b>	<i>m</i>	Unsigned divide, word
<b>esc</b>	<i>a</i>	Escape <b>0xD8</b>
<b>hlt</b>		Halt
<b>icall</b>	<i>a</i>	Near call, absolute offset at EA word
<b>idivb</b>	<i>m</i>	Signed divide, byte
<b>idiv</b>	<i>m</i>	Signed divide, word
<b>ijmp</b>	<i>a</i>	Jump short, absolute offset at EA word
<b>imulb</b>	<i>m</i>	Signed multiply, byte
<b>imul</b>	<i>m</i>	Signed multiply, word
<b>inb</b>	<i>al, p</i>	Input, byte
<b>in</b>	<i>ax, p</i>	Input, word
<b>inb</b>	<i>al, dx</i>	Input, byte
<b>in</b>	<i>ax, dx</i>	Input, word
<b>incb</b>	<i>a</i>	Increment by one, byte

<b>inc</b>	<i>a</i>	Increment by one, word
<b>int</b>	<i>e</i>	Call to interrupt
<b>into</b>		Call to interrupt, overflow
<b>iret</b>		Interrupt return
<b>ja</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater
<b>jae</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater or equal
<b>jb</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less
<b>jbe</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less or equal
<b>jc</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if carry
<b>jcxz</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if CX equals zero
<b>je</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if equal to
<b>jg</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater
<b>jge</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if greater or equal
<b>jl</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less
<b>jle</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if less or equal
<b>jmp</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short, PC-relative word offset
<b>jmpb</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short, PC-relative byte offset
<b>jmp1</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump long
<b>jna</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not above
<b>nae</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not above or equal
<b>jnb</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not below
<b>jnbe</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not below or equal
<b>jnc</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not carry
<b>jne</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not equal
<b>jng</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not greater
<b>jnge</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not greater or equal
<b>jnl</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not less
<b>jnle</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not less or equal
<b>jno</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not overflow
<b>jnp</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not parity
<b>jns</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not sign
<b>jnz</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if not zero
<b>jo</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if overflow
<b>jp</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if parity
<b>jpe</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if parity even
<b>jpo</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if parity odd
<b>js</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if sign
<b>jz</b>	<i>d</i>	Jump short if zero
<b>lahf</b>		Load flags into AH register
<b>lds</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Load double pointer into DS
<b>lea</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Load effective address offset
<b>les</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Load double pointer into ES
<b>lock</b>		Assert BUS LOCK signal
<b>lodsb</b>		Load byte into AL
<b>lods</b>		Load byte into AL
<b>lodsw</b>		Load byte into AL
<b>loop</b>	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CX less than zero
<b>loope</b>	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CZ not zero and equal
<b>loopne</b>	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CX not zero and not equal
<b>loopnz</b>	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CZ not zero and ZF equals zero

---

<b>loopz</b>	<i>d</i>	Loop; decrement CX, jump short if CX not zero and zero
<b>movb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Move, byte
<b>mov</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Move, word
<b>movb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Move, byte
<b>mov</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Move, word
<b>movb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Move, byte
<b>mov</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Move, word
<b>movb</b>	<i>a, s</i>	Move, byte
<b>mov</b>	<i>a, s</i>	Move, word
<b>movb</b>	<i>s, a</i>	Move, byte
<b>mov</b>	<i>s, a</i>	Move, word
<b>movsb</b>		Move string byte-by-byte
<b>movs</b>		Move string word-by-word
<b>movsw</b>		Move string word-by-word
<b>mulb</b>	<i>m</i>	Multiply, byte
<b>mul</b>	<i>m</i>	Multiply, word
<b>negb</b>	<i>a</i>	Two's complement negation, byte
<b>neg</b>	<i>a</i>	Two's complement negation, word
<b>nop</b>		No operation
<b>notb</b>	<i>a</i>	One's complement negation, byte
<b>not</b>	<i>a</i>	One's complement negation, word
<b>orb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical inclusive OR, byte
<b>or</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical inclusive OR, word
<b>orb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical inclusive OR, byte
<b>or</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical inclusive OR, word
<b>orb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical inclusive OR, byte
<b>or</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical inclusive OR, word
<b>outb</b>	<i>p, al</i>	Output to port, byte
<b>out</b>	<i>p, ax</i>	Output to port, word
<b>outb</b>	<i>dx, al</i>	Output to port, byte
<b>out</b>	<i>dx, ax</i>	Output to port, word
<b>pop</b>	<i>m</i>	Pop a word from the stack
<b>pop</b>	<i>s</i>	Pop a word from the stack
<b>popf</b>		Pop from stack into flags register
<b>push</b>	<i>m</i>	Push a word onto the stack
<b>push</b>	<i>s</i>	Push a word onto the stack
<b>pushf</b>		Push flags register onto the stack
<b>rclb</b>	<i>a, \$l</i>	Rotate left \$l times, byte
<b>rclb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left CL times, byte
<b>rcl</b>	<i>a, \$l</i>	Rotate left \$l times, word
<b>rcl</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left CL times, word
<b>rcrb</b>	<i>a, \$l</i>	Rotate right \$l times, byte
<b>rcrb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right CL times, byte
<b>rcr</b>	<i>a, \$l</i>	Rotate right \$l times, word
<b>rcr</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right CL times, word
<b>rep</b>		Repeat following string operation
<b>repe</b>		Find nonmatching bytes
<b>repne</b>		Repeat, not equal
<b>repnz</b>		Repeat, not equal
<b>repz</b>		Repeat, equal
<b>ret</b>		Return from procedure
<b>rolb</b>	<i>a, \$l</i>	Rotate left, byte
<b>rolb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left, byte

<b>rol</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate left, word
<b>rol</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate left, word
<b>rorb</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate right, byte
<b>rorb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right, byte
<b>ror</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Rotate right, word
<b>ror</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Rotate right, word
<b>sahf</b>		Store AH into flags
<b>salb</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, byte
<b>salb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, byte
<b>sal</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, word
<b>sal</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, word
<b>sarb</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, byte
<b>sarb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, byte
<b>sar</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, word
<b>sar</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, word
<b>sbbb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, byte
<b>sbb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, word
<b>sbbb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, byte
<b>sbb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, word
<b>sbbb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, byte
<b>sbb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtract with borrow, word
<b>scasb</b>		Compare string data, byte
<b>scas</b>		Compare string data, word
<b>shlb</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, byte
<b>shlb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, byte
<b>shl</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift left, word
<b>shl</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift left, word
<b>shrb</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, byte
<b>shrb</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, byte
<b>shr</b>	<i>a, \$1</i>	Shift right, word
<b>shr</b>	<i>a, cl</i>	Shift right, word
<b>stc</b>		Set carry flag
<b>std</b>		Set direction flag
<b>sti</b>		Set interrupt enable flag
<b>stosb</b>		Store string data, byte
<b>stos</b>		Store string data, byte or word
<b>stosw</b>		Store string data, word
<b>subb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtraction, byte
<b>sub</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Integer subtraction, word
<b>subb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtraction, byte
<b>sub</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Integer subtraction, word
<b>subb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtraction, byte
<b>sub</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Integer subtraction, word
<b>testb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical compare, byte
<b>test</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical compare, word
<b>testb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical compare, byte
<b>test</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical compare, word
<b>testb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical compare, byte
<b>test</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical compare, word
<b>wait</b>		Wait until BUSY pin is inactive
<b>xcall</b>	<i>d, d</i>	Far call, immediate four-byte address
<b>xchgb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Exchange memory, byte
<b>xchg</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Exchange memory, word
<b>xicall</b>		Far call, address at EA double word

<b>xjmp</b>		Jump far, address at memory double word
<b>xjmp</b>	<i>d, d</i>	Jump far, immediate four-byte address
<b>xlat</b>		Table look-up translation
<b>xorb</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical exclusive OR, byte
<b>xor</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Logical exclusive OR, word
<b>xorb</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical exclusive OR, byte
<b>xor</b>	<i>a, r</i>	Logical exclusive OR, word
<b>xorb</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical exclusive OR, byte
<b>xor</b>	<i>a, \$e</i>	Logical exclusive OR, word
<b>xret</b>		Return, intersegment

### 80286 Instructions

The following instructions implement 80286-specific actions. Programs that use them cannot be run on 8086-based machines.

<b>pusha</b>		Push all general registers
<b>popa</b>		Pop all general registers
<b>insb</b>		Input byte from port DX to ES:(DI)
<b>ins</b>		Input word from port DX to ES:(DI)
<b>outsb</b>		Output byte from port DX from ES:(DI)
<b>outs</b>		Output word from port DX from ES:(DI)
<b>enter</b>	<i>\$e, \$e</i>	Make stack frame for procedure
<b>leave</b>		Tear down stack frame for procedure
<b>bound</b>	<i>r, e</i>	Check array index against bounds
<b>sldt</b>	<i>a</i>	Store Local Descriptor Table Register
<b>str</b>	<i>a</i>	Store Task Register
<b>lldt</b>	<i>a</i>	Load Local Descriptor Table Register
<b>ltr</b>	<i>a</i>	Load Task Register
<b>verr</b>	<i>a</i>	Verify a segment for reading
<b>verw</b>	<i>a</i>	Verify a segment for writing
<b>sgdt</b>	<i>m</i>	Store Global Descriptor Table register
<b>sidt</b>	<i>m</i>	Store Interrupt Descriptor Table register
<b>lgdt</b>	<i>m</i>	Load Global Descriptor Table register
<b>lidt</b>	<i>m</i>	Load Interrupt Descriptor Table register
<b>smsw</b>	<i>a</i>	Store Machine Status Word
<b>lmsw</b>	<i>a</i>	Load Machine Status Word
<b>lar</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Load access rights byte
<b>lsl</b>	<i>r, a</i>	Load segment limit
<b>clts</b>		Clear Task Switched Flag
<b>arpl</b>		Adjust RPL field of Selector
<b>push</b>	<i>\$e</i>	Push sign extended byte

Also the **\$1** forms become **\$e** on **rol**, **rolb**, **ror**, **rorb**, **sal**, **salb**, **shrb**, **shr**, and **shrb**. This is because 8086 task of shifting and rotating by an immediate value could only take an immediate value of 1; however, on the 80286 the immediate value may be up to 31.

### C Compiler Conventions

**as** is often used to write small functions that perform tasks not easily or efficiently done in C. Such functions are intended to be called from a C program. As long as the assembly language source code follows compiler conventions, the assembler routine will be fully compatible with C functions. These conventions are (1) the names of external variables and (2) calling functions.

## Naming Conventions

The C compiler appends an underline character '\_' to the end of every external declared in a C source file. When referring to any external variable or function declared in a C source file, append an underscore to the name. In a similar manner, when defining a function or variable in an assembly language source file that is to be accessed from a C source file, append an underline character.

## Function-Calling Conventions

Function-calling conventions deal with how arguments are passed to functions, how values are returned, and which registers are used for special purposes and must be protected.

### Arguments

Function arguments are passed on the stack. They are pushed by the calling function, which also removes them when the called function returns. Looking at the declaration of the function, the order in which they are pushed onto the stack is from right to left; that is, the C compiler pushes the argument list in reverse order of declaration. The instruction **call** to jump to the function also pushes the return address, so that when the called routine gains control the first argument is found at offset 2 from the stack pointer.

Integer and pointer arguments are word size, and are simply pushed with a **push** instruction. Characters, although byte size, are not passed as bytes. The C language requires that **char** variables be promoted to the type **int** before being passed. The promotion is signed or unsigned, depending on the type of the **char** variable. **longs** are pushed one word at a time; the higher-address word is pushed first. This ensures that the words of the **long** are in the correct order on the stack, because the stack grows toward low-addressed memory.

Passing **floats**, **doubles**, or structure arguments is more involved. C requires **floats** to be promoted to and passed as **doubles**, so this conversion must be performed first. **doubles** and structures are passed so that as they sit on the stack, all bytes are in the correct order; this is analogous to the passing of **longs**. This means, for example, that **doubles** may be pushed with four **push word** instructions, beginning with the highest addressed word in the 64-bit double, and ending with the lowest addressed word.

If in doubt about how to apply any of this, try writing a simple C program that uses what you need, and compile it with the **-VASM** option to the **cc** command. This produces an assembly-language version of the C program, which can be studied to see exactly what the compiler does, and mimicked to good effect.

### Return Values

Functions return values in various registers according to their type. **ints** and pointers are returned in the **ax** register. **chars** are returned by first promoting them to **ints** and returning the result in the **ax** register; effectively, this means that **chars** are returned in the **al** register. **longs** are returned in the **dx:ax** register pair, with the most significant word (also the high-address word) in the **dx** register, and the least significant word in the **ax** register.

**floats**, **doubles**, and structures are returned in a more complex fashion. C requires **floats** be returned as **doubles**, so they are converted. **doubles** are returned in a special eight-byte array named **\_fpac** (of course, in assembly language the name is **\_fpac\_**). This array is defined by the compiler. In the event that a function returns a structure, the contents of the structure are saved in memory, and the function returns a pointer to that structure in the **ax** register. The calling function then moves the bytes into the actual destination.

Again, if in doubt about how to do this in assembly language, try compiling a function with assembly language output to see how the compiler does it.



### Important Registers

Every function must preserve the value of the **bp** register, which is the caller's stack frame pointer. Also, the compiler uses the **si** and **di** registers for register variables, so they must be preserved.

### Example of an Assembly Language Program

The following assembly language file, **strchar.s** defines a function **strchar** that returns the number of occurrences of a character in a string.

**FILE: strchar.s**

```

/
/
/ Count and return the occurrences
/ of a character in a string.
/
/      int
/      strchar(s, c)
/      char *s;
/      int c;
/
/

.global      strchar_ / Make the name known externally.

strchar_:
    push     si        / Standard C function
    push     di        / linkage. Save the
    push     bp        / si, di, and bp registers
    mov      bp, sp    / and set up new frame pointer.

    mov      si, 8(bp) / String ptr -> si.
    mov      bx, 10(bp) / Char -> bx (actually bl).
    sub      ax, ax    / Clear ax (count register).
    sub      cx, cx    / Clear cx.

0:   movb     cl, (si)  / Get character from string.
     jcxz     2f        / End of string?
     cmpb     bl, cl    / No. Do chars match?
     jnz      1f        / No.
     inc      ax        / Yes. Increment count.

1:   inc      si        / Bump string pointer
     jmp      0b        / and loop again.

2:   pop      bp        / Standard C return
     pop      di        / linkage. Restore
     pop      si        / saved registers and
     ret                     / go home.

```

The following C program, **main.c** uses **strchar**. The assembly language listing that follows, **main.s** was produced from **main.c** by the **-VASM** option in **cc**. The listing has been edited, and comments added, to illustrate what is happening.

**FILE: main.c**

```
main()
{
    int n;
    n = strchr("aardvark", 'a');
}
```

**FILE: main.s**

```
        .shri                / ''code'' program section.
        .globl   main_
main_:
        .strn                / ''string'' program section.
L2:     .byte    0x61         / This is the string
        .byte    0x61         / ''aardvark''
        .byte    0x72
        .byte    0x64
        .byte    0x76
        .byte    0x61
        .byte    0x72
        .byte    0x6B
        .byte    0x00
        .shri                / Back to ''code''
        push     si           / Standard C function
        push     di           / linkage. Save registers,
        push     bp           / set up new frame pointer (bp),
        mov      bp, sp       / and make room on stack
        sub      sp, $0x02    / for the auto int, ''n''
        mov      ax, $0x61    / Push the
        push     ax           / character 'a'.
        mov      ax, $L2      / Push the address
        push     ax           / of the string ''aardvark''
        call     strchr_      / Function call.
        add      sp, $0x04    / Remove args from stack.
        mov      -0x02(bp), ax / Assign result to auto 'n'.
        mov      sp, bp       / Standard C return
        pop      bp           / linkage. Adjust stack
        pop      di           / pointer, then restore
        pop      si           / registers and
        ret                / go home.
```

**Diagnostics**

All errors detected by the assembler are reported on the screen as an error message that is tagged with a line number. If a symbol is associated with the error message (for example, if a symbol is undefined), then the symbol's name is also given. If more than one input file appears on the command line, error messages are tagged with the name of the source file.

**LEXICON**

If a listing is generated, errors are reported on the listing in the same format, with the error flags at the left margin. The total number of errors is displayed on the screen at the end of the assembly.

For a full listing of **as** error messages, see the tutorial for the C compiler, which appears earlier in this manual.

## See Also

calling conventions, cc, commands

## as 386 — Command

i80386 assembler

**as** [-o *outfile*] [-bfglnpwxX] *infile*

The 80386 version of **as**, the COHERENT assembler, assembles programs written in any of several different dialects of assembly language into object modules in COFF format, which can be linked with objects written by the COHERENT C compiler. This version of **as** contains numerous features not available with the 80286 version:

- It serves as a flexible base for writing programs in native 80386 assembly language.
- It assembles programs written in older flavors of COHERENT assembly language.
- It assembles programs written in UNIX assembly language.
- Unlike the old COHERENT assembler and the UNIX assembler, 80386 **as** comes with full macro facilities.
- It is also designed to detect many of the commoner errors made by assembly-language programmers.

The COHERENT system also includes the command **asfix**, which updates files written in the 80286 version of COHERENT assembly language. **asfix** changes local and character symbols to the new format.

## Invoking the Assembler

**as** permits file names and options to be interspersed upon the command line. It recognizes the following command-line options:

**-b** Reverse bracket sense; that is, use () for expressions and [] for code. For example:

```
movl    $[2 * 5], (%eax)    / without -b
movl    $(2 * 5), [%eax]    / with -b
```

**-f** Reverse the order of the operands, from UNIX-assembler form to that of the Intel documentation or the 80286 version of **as**.

**-g** Make undefined symbols **.globl**.

**-l** Generate an output listing.

**-n** This option turns off the **as** mechanism for handling bugs in the 80386 chip. **as** tries to cope with known 80386 bugs by changing code at appropriate points in its output. If these changes create problems with your code, you can turn off the **as** bug-handler mechanism by using the **-n** option to **as**.

**-o outfile.o**

Write the output into *outfile.o*. Note that the suffix **.o** must appear in the output file's name, or the assembler will exit with an error message. The default output file is *infile.o*.

- p** Don't use '%' on register names; e.g., use **ax**, not **%ax**.
- w** Disable warning messages.
- x** Remove all non-global symbols from the common symbol output.
- X** Remove all non-global symbols starting with **.L** from the common symbol output.

**as** reads the environmental variables **ASHEAD** and **ASTAIL** and appends them to, respectively, the beginning and the end of its command line. By setting these variables, you can ensure that **as** always executes with the switches that you want. For example, to ensure that **as** always executes with the **-g** switch set, insert the following into your **.profile**:

```
export ASHEAD=-g
```

### **Lexicography**

A symbol consists of from one to 256 characters. The assembler defines a *character* as being an alphabetic character, question mark, period, percent sign, or underscore. **XYZ**, **.20**, and **hi\_there** are legal symbols; whereas **85i** is not.

Like C, the **as** assembly language is case sensitive.

Local symbols begin with a question mark. These are recognizable (or *visible*) only between nonlocal symbols. For example:

```
/      ?loop invisible here
abc    mov    $10, %cx
?loop  add    $1, %bx           / ?loop visible here
      jcxz   xyz
      jmp    ?loop
xyz:
/      ?loop invisible here
```

An octal number is defined just as in the C language: it consists of an initial **0** plus two other numerals between 0 and 7. For example, **077** is a legal octal number.

A hexadecimal number consists of an initial **0x** or **0X** plus two other numerals, which may come between 0 and 9, a and f, or A and F. For example, **0x0F** and **0Xa3** are legal hexadecimal numbers.

A binary number consists of an initial **0b** or **0B** followed by an indefinite number 0's and 1's. For example, **0b01001010** is a legal binary number.

A decimal number begins with a numeral other than 0, followed by an indefinite number of numerals between 0 and 9. For example, **109** is a legal decimal number.

A floating-point number begins is a string of numerals, 0 through 9, with a period or **e** within or at the end of it. It is like a C floating-point number, except that it cannot begin with a period because a symbol may begin with a period. For example, **123.456**, **123456.**, and **17e26** are legal floating-point numbers, but **.123456** is not.

A character constant is enclosed between apostrophes, as in C. **as** recognizes the same escape sequences as C. See the Lexicon article **C language** for a table of these constants.

String constants are enclosed between quotation marks, as in the C language, and use the same escape sequences as C. See the Lexicon article **C language** for a table of these sequences.

### **Pseudo-Opcodes**

**as** recognizes a rich set of pseudo-opcodes. These are not true assembly-language opcodes, but are interpreted by the assembler; they are designed to help make your life easier. The following briefly summarizes the pseudo-opcodes.

## **LEXICON**

---

<b>.16</b>	16-bit mode
<b>.32</b>	32-bit mode
<b>.align</b>	increment location counter to 2, or 4 byte aligned spot
<b>.blkb</b>	Set up tag in .data
<b>.bss</b>	Set up tag in .bss
<b>.bssd</b>	Set up tag in .bss
<b>.byte</b>	Make byte variables
<b>.comm</b>	Set label as common
<b>.data</b>	Change segment to .data
<b>.def</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.define</b>	Define string constant
<b>.dim</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.double</b>	Make double variables
<b>.eject</b>	Force a page break
<b>.else</b>	Connected to .if
<b>.endif</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.endi</b>	End .if
<b>.endm</b>	End .macro definition
<b>.endw</b>	End .while
<b>.equ</b>	Define numeric constant
<b>.even</b>	Increment location counter to byte-aligned spot
<b>.fail</b>	Print error message
<b>.file</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.float</b>	Make float variables
<b>.globl</b>	Declare names as visible to linker
<b>.ident</b>	.ident string
<b>.if</b>	Compile-time conditional
<b>.include</b>	Include a file
<b>.lcomm</b>	Set name up as common
<b>.line</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.list</b>	Turn on listing (assumes -l option)
<b>.llen</b>	Set print line length
<b>.ln</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.long</b>	Make long variables
<b>.macro</b>	Define macro name
<b>.mexit</b>	Exit current macro expansion
<b>.mlist</b>	Turn macro expansion listing on off
<b>.nolist</b>	Turn off linstin (assumes -l option)
<b>.nopcode</b>	Turn off page breaks and titles
<b>.number</b>	Convert a string to a number.
<b>.org</b>	Change location counter
<b>.page</b>	Turn on page breaks and titles
<b>.plen</b>	Set page length
<b>.prvd</b>	Change segment to .data
<b>.prvi</b>	Change segment to .text
<b>.scl</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.set</b>	Makes name equal to expr
<b>.shift</b>	Shift macro parms
<b>.shrd</b>	Shange segment to .data
<b>.shri</b>	Change segment to .text
<b>.size</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.string</b>	Convert a floating-point expression to a string
<b>.strn</b>	Change segment to .data
<b>.tag</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release

<b>.text</b>	Change segment to .text
<b>.ttl</b>	Set page titles
<b>.type</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.undef</b>	Free string or numeric constant
<b>.val</b>	Reserved to set auxiliary symbol entries in a later release
<b>.value</b>	Make short variables
<b>.version</b>	Comment string
<b>.warn</b>	Print a warning message
<b>.while</b>	Compile-time loop control
<b>.word</b>	Make short variables

Each pseudo-opcode is described in the following sections.

### ***Input Format***

An assembly-language program consists of a series of lines with the following format:

```
[#][label] [opcode]    [operands] [/ comment]
```

The optional '#' at the beginning of the line tells **as** not to replace any **.define** symbols within the line. (These are described below.) Normally, the assembler replaces all **.define** symbols in a line before it parses that line. Without this option, a series of **.defines** could lead to awkward results.

For example, the code

```
#%ecx .define    xx
#xx    .define    (%ecx)
      mov    $3, %ecx
```

results in:

```
      mov    $3, (%ecx)
```

Like the C compiler, **as** will not go into an infinite loop if two **.define** statements mirror each other.

A comment begins with a slash '/' and may include the entire line. Blank lines are also legal.

Extra operands are not assumed to be comments. This is to tighten up error checking for the convenience of new and part-time assembly-language programmers.

### ***Expression Format***

The 80386 macro assembler has mostly the same operators and precedence as the C preprocessor. The exceptions are **?:**, **&&**, **|**, and **'** (which are missing), **/'** (which is spelled **.div**), and **%** (which is spelled **.rem**).

In addition, the macro assembler includes the following directives: **.defined**, **.sizeof**, **.segment**, **.parmct**, **.location**, **.string**, **.number**, and **.float**.

Expression bracketing is normally done by **[]**, because **()** is used by the operand format. This may be reversed by the **-b** option, described above.

The unary operators have the following priority:

<b>.float .number .string</b>	Conversion
<b>.defined .sizeof</b>	
<b>.location .segment</b>	Inquiry
<b>-</b>	Negation
<b>!</b>	Logical negation

The binary operators have the following priority:

<b>[]</b>	
<b>* .div .rem</b>	Multiply, divide, remainder
<b>+ -</b>	Add, subtract.
<b>&gt;&gt; &lt;&lt;</b>	Left shift , right shift
<b>&lt; &gt; &lt;= &gt;= == !=</b>	Comparison
<b>&amp;</b>	And
<b>^</b>	Exclusive or
<b> </b>	Or

You can use an expression wherever you can use a number. This includes address displacements, constants, and **.if** and **.while** statements. Integers are internally 32 bits, floats are internally C doubles.

Like C, comparison operators return one for true and zero for false.

In addition, the 80386 edition of **as** provides string operators. Like C, the first element of a string is indexed as zero. Unlike C, however, attempts to access past the end of a string gives all zeroes. The following summarizes the **as** suite of string operators:

**string + string**

Concatenate two strings. For example, "12" + "34" yields "1234".

**string [ expr1, expr2 ]**

Address a substring from *expr1* to *expr2*. For example, "1234567"[1,3] yields "234"; and "123"[1,10] yields "23".

**string [ expr ]**

Address a substring from *expr* to the end of the string. For example "1234567"[5] yields "67".

**.string expr**

Convert a numeric expression to a string. For example, **.string 123** gives "123".

**.string float**

Convert a floating-point expression to a string. For example, **.string 0.5 \* 3** gives "1.5"

**.float string**

Convert a string to a floating-point number.

**.float expr**

Convert a numeric expression to a floating-point number.

**.number string**

Convert a string to a number.

**.number float**

Convert a floating-point number to a number.

**.string ( expr )**

Return character at position *expr* as a number. For example, "123"(1) gives two.

**string1 @ string2**

Return the position at which *string2* begins within *string1*. For example, "12345" @ "23" returns one; and "123" @ "jj" gives -1 (because "jj" does not appear within "123").

### Macros and Conditional Compilation

The **as** directive **.macro** lets you declare a macro that you can use through a program. The directive **.endm** marks the end of a macro declaration.

A macro has the following form:

```
name .macro      params
      body of macro
      .endm
```

The following example creates and uses the macro **store**:

```
store .macro xy,xz          / declare "store" with two parms: xy and xz
      movl  xy,%ecx
      movl  %ecx, (%eax)
      movl  xz,%ecx
      movl  %ecx, 4(%eax)
      .endm                / end of macro

      store 5,10            / moves 5 and 10 to where %eax points.
```

Macros can contain **.if** statements, and can even define other macros. For example:

```
def   .macro .name, to      / macro for defining other macros
name  .macro
      movl  from, to
      .endm
      .endm

      def   frog, %eax, %ebx / define the macro frog
      frog  / movl%eax, %ebx
```

**as** increments a count every time you expand any macro, and associates that number with the macro. When the keyword **.macno** is used within a macro, **as** translates it into that number. Thus, **.macno** is a unique number within each macro expansion. This allows the generation of unique labels internal to macros. For example:

```
stradd .macro str
      .data
L\.macno .byte str, 0      / create a data item
      .text
      movl  L\.macno, %eax  / put its address into %eax
      .endm
```

**L\.macno** becomes something like **L51**. Note that a **`** before any defined symbol or macro name vanishes in the expansion pass.

To permit macros with indefinite parameter counts, the assembler offers the reserved word **.parmct** and the command **.shift**. The former holds the number of parameters passed to a macro, and the latter shifts the parameters one position to the left. For example:



```

kall    .macro fun, parm
        .while .parmct > 1          / while more than one parm remains
        push parm
        .shift                      / parm 3 becomes parm 2, parm 4 parm 3 etc
        call fun
        .endm

```

The operators **.if**, **.else**, and **.endi** allow a program to implement compile-time decisions. These may be inside or outside of macros. When a macro exits, the assembler automatically closes all **.if** statements that had been started within it. For example:

```

defy    .macro
        .if .defined y              / if y has been defined true
        .mexit                     / exits closing any if statements
        .else
y        .equ 1 / define y as 1
/ For UNIX compatibility
/      .set  y, 1
/ produces the same result
        .endm

```

When used with a label, the operator **.defined** is true if that label had been defined in this pass. If the label is defined later, **.defined** can still be used with it, but causes a phase error, as occurs in some assemblers.

The operator **.fail** permits the flagging of errors. For example:

```

        .if ! .defined y
        .faily is not defined
        .endi

```

The operator **.include** permits the inclusion of files. For example:

```

        .include "somefile.h"

```

## Addressing Modes

**as** recognizes two modes of addressing: *16-bit mode* and *32-bit mode*. In 16-bit mode, the address type and operand mode default to 16 bits; in 32-bit mode they default to 32 bits. For example:

```

        .16
        movw  %ax, (%si)    # Is generated without escapes.
        movl  %eax, (%esi)  # Has two escapes, address and operand
        .32
        movw  %ax, (%si)    # Has two escapes, address and operand
        movl  %eax, (%esi)  # Is generated without escapes.

```

In 16-bit mode, the 16-bit addressing forms in table 17-2 of the *Intel 386 Programmer's Manual* are generated where they fit; otherwise, an address escape is built and the 32-bit forms in tables 17-3 and 17-4 are used. In 32 bit mode, this is reversed.

## Data-Definition Operators

The following describes the data-definition operators that **as** supports.

### **.byte** *expr*

Define *expr* as an array of single bytes. *expr* can take any number of forms, as shown by the following examples:

```
.byte 5, 2           / defines 2 bytes 0x05 and 0x02
.byte "Hello World", 0 / a zero-terminated Hello World
.byte 10 # 1         / 10 repetitions of 0x01
```

**.word *expr***

Define *expr* as a word, that is, as a two-byte integer. For example:

```
.word .sizeof xx      / a short the size of xx
.word 50 * 50         / a short of 100
/ For UNIX compatability
/ .value 50 * 10
/ produces the same result.
```

**.long *expr***

Define *expr* as a long (four-byte) integer. For example:

```
.long 10              / a long of 10
```

**.comm *name*, *length***

Define a common variable named *name*, that is *length* bytes long. (See the entry for **.lcomm**, below, for a discussion of what segment the variable is stored.) If *name* is linked with another module that also declares *name* but sets it to another length, the linker creates one such variable and gives it the greater length of the two.

The linker deduces the alignment of a common variable from its length: if the length of a common is divisible by four, it is aligned on a four-byte boundary; if it is divisible by two, it is aligned on a two-byte boundary. Otherwise, it is assumed to be unaligned. The linker supports only three classes of alignment: four-byte, two-byte, and unaligned.

A common variable is aligned according to its most strongly aligned contributor. For example, if one module contributes a common variable named **xyz** whose length is four bytes, and another contributes an **xyz** whose length is five bytes, the resulting **xyz** is given a length of eight bytes to satisfy the length requirement (at least five) and the alignment requirement (four-byte boundary).

After the first linker pass, all common variables are placed at the end of the **.bss** segment: first the four-byte-aligned variables, then the 2-byte-aligned, then the unaligned.

**.lcomm *label*, *length***

Same as **comm**, described above.

Please note that on a COFF-based system, it is not possible to put common data into the **.data** section, even though the UNIX assembler documentation claims that **.comm** does this. Both **.comm** and **.lcomm** place data into the **.bss**.

The problem is that COFF format for common variables leaves no place for information about alignment or segment. This creates two problems. First, the lack of information about alignment forces COFF to adopt the complex strategy of deducing alignment from length. Second, the lack of information about segment compels COFF to store all common variables in one segment, **.bss** being chosen.

**.float *expr***

Define *expr* as a single-precision floating-point number. For example:

```
.float 1.5            / a float of 1.5
```

**.double *expr***

Define *expr* as a double-precision floating-point number. For example:

```
.double 3.0 * 0.5           / a double of 1.5
```

**Resetting the Location Counter**

The instructions **.org** and **.align** reset the location counter. For example:

```
.org    .+5                / Location counter to here plus 5
.org    / Location counter to top of current section
.align  2                  / Up to nearest two-byte boundary
```

The instructions **.text**, **.data**, and **.bss** reset the location counter to the corresponding sections. Instructions are placed in the **.text** section, initialized data in the **.data** section, and the **.bss** is reserved for uninitialized data. Placing information into the **.bss** results in an error.

**Dynamic Linking**

The Intel Binary Compatibility Standard dictates the way that the 80386 edition of **as** computes addresses, to permit dynamic linking of objects.

In object files, all **.data** addresses must follow all **.text** addresses, and all **.bss** address must follow all **.data** addresses. This allows dynamic linking of object files, in which the object file is mapped, not read in in pieces.

In the **as 386** assembly language, **.data** and **.text** addresses are started from 0 for each module. At the end of assembly, during the output phase, **as** fixes these addresses to make **.data** follow **.text**, and so on.

For example, if you have a conditional like

```
.if    some_data_address > 0x300
```

**as** calculates the address for the **.if** statement from the beginning of its segment; and the address is only corrected in the final output. Such statements may appear to be working incorrectly.

**Listing Commands**

The 80386 assembler prints a listing if you use its **-l** option. The following commands modify the form of this listing.

**.ttl *string***

Print *string* as the title to the command page. For example:

```
.ttl This is a page title
```

If you do not use this command, the assembler uses the file name for the title. The first **.ttl** encountered in the assembly pass 0 is used to set the first title. Subsequent **.ttl** commands reset the title before printing.

**.nopcode**

Turn off page breaks and titles.

**.page** Turn on page breaks and titles.

**.eject** Force a page break.

**.nolist** Turn off the listing.

**.list** Turn the listing back on.

**.mlist off**

Turn off the listing of macro expansions.

**.mlist on**

Turn on the listing of macro expansions.

**Addressing Modes**

The 80386 version of **as** supports the full addressing modes of 16- and 32-bit arithmetic. These are shown in tables 17-2, 17-3, and 17-4 of *Intel 386 Programmers Manual*. We show these in the following grammar:

**Eight-bit registers:**

r8 : %al | %cl | %dl | %bl | %ah | %ch | %dh | %bh;

**16-bit registers:**

r16 : %ax | %cx | %dx | %bx | %sp | %bp | %si | %di;

**32-bit registers:**

r32 : %eax | %ecx | %edx | %ebx | %esp | %ebp | %esi | %edi;

**Segment registers:**

sreg : %es | %cs | %ss | %ds | %fs | %gs;

**Control registers:**

ctlreg : %cr0 | %cr2 | %cr3;

**Debug registers:**

dbreg : %dr0 | %dr1 | %dr2 | %dr3 | %dr6 | %dr7;

**Test registers:**

testreg : %tr6 | %tr7;

**m16**-type addresses may have a segment prefix:

m16 : m16b | sreg ':' m16b;

**m32**-type addresses may have a segment prefix:

m32 : m32b | sreg ':' m32b;

**rm16**-type addresses may have a segment prefix or may be **r16**:

rm16 : rm16b | sreg ':' rm16b;

**rm32**-type addresses may have a segment prefix or may be **r32**:

rm32 : r32 | rm32b | sreg ':' rm32b;

**rm8** addresses may be **rm32** or **rm16** addresses or **r8**:

rm8 : r8 | rm16b | sreg ':' rm16b | rm32b | sreg ':' rm32b;

**rm16b:**

displacement | (vx, vy) | displacement(vx, vy) | displacement(vw) | (vz);

vx : %bx | %si;

vy : %si | %di;

vz : %si | %di | %bx;

**rm32b:**

```

(va) | displacement(vb) | (, vb, scale) | (vb, scale)
      | displacement(vb, scale) | (vb, vb, scale) | displacement(vb, vb, scale);
va : %eax | %ecx | %edx | %ebx | %esi | %edi;
vb : %eax | %ecx | %edx | %ebx | %ebp | %esi | %edi;
vb : %eax | %ecx | %edx | %ebx | %ebp | %esp | %esi | %edi;
scale : 0 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8;

mem32 : /* a 32 bit memory address */
mem16 : /* a 16 bit memory address */

reli : /* expand to 8, 16 or 32 bit relative addresses */
rel8 : /* 8 bit relative addresses */
rel16 : /* 16 or 32 bit relative addresses */

```

**Instructions**

In matching instructions, **as** first looks up the name of the instruction. A number of actual instructions will match that name. For example, **bts** matches 0xab and 0xfab /5, and **bts** matches anything that matches **bts** and **btsl**.

**as** attempts to match operands to the instruction until a form is found that will accept all the operands. If no form matches all the operands, **as** prints the error message **Opcode matches no form**. The assembler at that point cannot say which operand is wrong because of the nature of the 80386 instruction set.

**as** first attempts to match opcodes that do not require an operand-mode escape: that is, in 80386 mode it attempts to match long-mode instructions first, then short-mode instructions.

**Register Usage**

The 386 version of the COHERENT C compiler uses the following save/restore sequence for a function, to set the frame pointer when the function contains no automatic variables:

```

push %ebp
movl %ebp, %esp

```

If *n* bytes of autos are required, then it uses the following sequence:

```

enter $n, $0

```

It then executes the code

```

push %esi
push %edi
push %ebx

```

to preserve register variables *as required*: they are not saved/restored if the function does not touch them. (This is why they are saved after the frame adjust, not before). To restore register variables, it executes

```

pop %ebx
pop %edi
pop %esi

```

as required, followed by

```
leave
ret
```

Routines written in assembly language must preserve registers **ebp**, **esi**, **edi**, and **ebx**; they may overwrite **eax**, **ecx**, and **edx**.

### **Absolute Symbols**

The 80386 edition of **as** can create what COFF calls "absolute symbols." For example

```
.globl    x
x .equ 10
x .equ x * x / The last value of x in the module
```

leaves on the symbol table an absolute symbol for **x** of 100. For internal reason, the **.globl** must precede any **.equ**.

### **Opcodes**

The following gives a table of the opcodes recognized by **as**. Note that the opcode is sometimes followed by a slash and a number, or a letter. For example,

```
D0 /4 salb con1, rm8
```

means opcode is 0xD0 place 4 in the register/opcode field of the **modr/m** byte.

```
58 +r popl r32
```

means add the register number to 0x58.

<i>Opcode</i>	<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Operands</i>	<i>Description</i>
37	<b>aaa</b>		Adjust after addition
D5 0A	<b>aad</b>		Adjust AX before division
D4 0A	<b>aam</b>		Adjust AX after multiply
3F	<b>aas</b>		Adjust AL after subtraction
	<b>adc</b>		Add with carry
14	<b>adcb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
15	<b>adcw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
15	<b>adcl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 /2	<b>adcb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 /2	<b>adcw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 /2	<b>adcl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
81 /2	<b>adcw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
81 /2	<b>adcl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
10 /r	<b>adcb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
11 /r	<b>adcw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
11 /r	<b>adcl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
12 /r	<b>adcb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
13 /r	<b>adcw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
13 /r	<b>adcl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
	<b>add</b>		Add
04	<b>addb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
05	<b>addw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
05	<b>addl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 /0	<b>addb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 /0	<b>addw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 /0	<b>addl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	

81 /0	<b>addw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
81 /0	<b>addl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
00 /r	<b>addb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
01 /r	<b>addw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
01 /r	<b>addl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
02 /r	<b>addb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
03 /r	<b>addw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
03 /r	<b>addl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
	<b>and</b>		<i>Logical AND</i>
24	<b>andb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
25	<b>andw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
25	<b>andl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 /4	<b>andb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 /4	<b>andw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 /4	<b>andl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
81 /4	<b>andw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
81 /4	<b>andl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
20 /r	<b>andb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
21 /r	<b>andw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
21 /r	<b>andl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
22 /r	<b>andb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
23 /r	<b>andw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
23 /r	<b>andl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
63 /r	<b>arpl</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	<i>Adjust RPL field of selector</i>
	<b>bound</b>		<i>Check if register is within bounds</i>
62 /r	<b>boundw</b>	<i>m16,r16</i>	
62 /r	<b>boundl</b>	<i>m32,r32</i>	
	<b>bsf</b>		<i>Bit scan forward</i>
0F BC	<b>bsfw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
0F BC	<b>bsfl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
	<b>bsr</b>		<i>Bit scan reverse</i>
0F BD	<b>bsrw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
0F BD	<b>bsrl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
	<b>bt</b>		<i>Save bit in carry flag</i>
0F A3	<b>btw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
0F A3	<b>btl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
0F BA /4	<b>btw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
0F BA /4	<b>btl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>btc</b>		<i>Bit test and complement</i>
0F BB	<b>btcw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
0F BB	<b>btcl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
0F BA /7	<b>btcw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
0F BA /7	<b>btcl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>btr</b>		<i>Bit test and reset</i>
0F B3	<b>btrw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
0F B3	<b>btrl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
0F BA /6	<b>btrw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
0F BA /6	<b>btrl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>bts</b>		<i>Bit test and set</i>

0F AB	<b>btsw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
0F AB	<b>btsl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
0F BA /5	<b>btsw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
0F BA /5	<b>btsl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
98	<b>cbtw</b>		Sign extend AL
98	<b>cbw</b>		Sign extend AL
99	<b>cdq</b>		Double word to quad word
F8	<b>clc</b>		Clear carry
FC	<b>cld</b>		Clear direction Flag
FA	<b>clic</b>		Clear interrupt Flag
99	<b>cldt</b>		Double word to quad word
0F 06	<b>clts</b>		Clear task-switched flag in CRO
F5	<b>cmc</b>		Complement carry flag
	<b>cmp</b>		Compare
3C	<b>cmpb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
3D	<b>cmpw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
3D	<b>cmpl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 /7	<b>cmpb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 /7	<b>cmpw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 /7	<b>cmpl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
81 /7	<b>cmpw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
81 /7	<b>cmpl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
38 /r	<b>cmpb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
39 /r	<b>cmpw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
39 /r	<b>cmpl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
3A /r	<b>cmpb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
3B /r	<b>cmpw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
3B /r	<b>cmpl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
A6	<b>cmpsb</b>		Compare bytes
A7	<b>cmpsl</b>		Compare long
A7	<b>cmpsw</b>		Compare words
99	<b>cwd</b>		Word to double word
98	<b>cwde</b>		Sign extend AX
99	<b>cwtd</b>		Word to double word
98	<b>cwtl</b>		Sign extend AX
27	<b>daa</b>		Decimal adjust after addition
2F	<b>das</b>		Decimal adjust after subtraction
	<b>dec</b>		Decrement by 1
48 +r	<b>decw</b>	<i>r16</i>	
48 +r	<b>decl</b>	<i>r32</i>	
FE /1	<b>decb</b>	<i>rm8</i>	
FF /1	<b>decw</b>	<i>rm16</i>	
FF /1	<b>decl</b>	<i>rm32</i>	
	<b>div</b>		Unsigned divide
F6 /6	<b>divb</b>	<i>rm8,al</i>	
F7 /6	<b>divw</b>	<i>rm16,ax</i>	
F7 /6	<b>divl</b>	<i>rm32,eax</i>	
C8	<b>enter</b>	<i>imm16,imm8</i>	Make stack frame for procedure
9B	<b>fwait</b>		Wait
F4	<b>hlt</b>		Halt
FF /2	<b>icall</b>	<i>m32</i>	Call indirect



	<b>idiv</b>		<i>Signed divide</i>
F6 /7	<b>idivb</b>	<i>rm8,al</i>	
F7 /7	<b>idivw</b>	<i>rm16,ax</i>	
F7 /7	<b>idivl</b>	<i>rm32,eax</i>	
FF /4	<b>ijmp</b>	<i>m32</i>	Jump indirect
FF /3	<b>icall</b>	<i>m32</i>	Long call indirect
FF /5	<b>iljmp</b>	<i>m32</i>	Long jump indirect
	<b>imul</b>		<i>Signed multiply</i>
F6 /5	<b>imulb</b>	<i>rm8,al</i>	
F7 /5	<b>imulw</b>	<i>rm16,ax</i>	
F7 /5	<b>imull</b>	<i>rm32,eax</i>	
0F AF /r	<b>imulw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
0F AF /r	<b>imull</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
6B	<b>imulw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16,r16</i>	
6B	<b>imull</b>	<i>imm8,rm32,r32</i>	
6B /r	<b>imulw</b>	<i>imm8,r16</i>	
6B /r	<b>imull</b>	<i>imm8,r32</i>	
69	<b>imulw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16,r16</i>	
69	<b>imull</b>	<i>imm32,rm32,r32</i>	
69 /r	<b>imulw</b>	<i>imm16,r16</i>	
69 /r	<b>imull</b>	<i>imm32,r32</i>	
	<b>in</b>		<i>Input from port</i>
E4	<b>inb</b>	<i>imm8</i>	
E5	<b>inw</b>	<i>imm8</i>	
E5	<b>inl</b>	<i>imm8</i>	
EC	<b>inb</b>	<i>atdx</i>	
ED	<b>inw</b>	<i>atdx</i>	
ED	<b>inl</b>	<i>atdx</i>	
	<b>inc</b>		<i>Increment by one</i>
40 +r	<b>incw</b>	<i>r16</i>	
40 +r	<b>incl</b>	<i>r32</i>	
FE /0	<b>incb</b>	<i>rm8</i>	
FF /0	<b>incw</b>	<i>rm16</i>	
FF /0	<b>incl</b>	<i>rm32</i>	
6C	<b>insb</b>		Input byte from port into ES:(E)DI
6D	<b>insl</b>		Input long from port into ES:(E)DI
6D	<b>insw</b>		Input word from port into ES:(E)DI
CC	<b>int</b>	<i>con3</i>	Interrupt 3
CD	<b>int</b>	<i>imm8</i>	Interrupt
CE	<b>into</b>		Int 4 if overflow is 1
CF	<b>iret</b>		Interrupt return
CF	<b>iretd</b>		Different mode different opcode ?
07	<b>ja</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if above
03	<b>jae</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if above or equal
02	<b>jb</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if below
06	<b>jbe</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if below or equal
02	<b>jc</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if carry
04	<b>je</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if equal
04	<b>jz</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if zero
0F	<b>jg</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if greater
0D	<b>jge</b>	<i>rell</i>	Jump if greater or equal

0C	<b>jl</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if less
0E	<b>jle</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if less or equal
06	<b>jna</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not above
02	<b>jnae</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not above or equal
03	<b>jnb</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not below
07	<b>jnbе</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not below or equal
03	<b>jnc</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if no carry
05	<b>jne</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not equal
0E	<b>jng</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not greater
0C	<b>jnge</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not greater or equal
0D	<b>jnl</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not less
0F	<b>jnle</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not less or equal
01	<b>jno</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not overflow
0B	<b>jnp</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not parity
09	<b>jns</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not sign
05	<b>jnz</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if not zero
00	<b>jo</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if overflow
0A	<b>jp</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if parity
0A	<b>jpe</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if parity even
0B	<b>jpo</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if parity odd
08	<b>js</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if sign
04	<b>jz</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump if zero
E9	<b>jmp</b>	<i>rel</i>	Jump absolute
E8	<b>call</b>	<i>rel</i>	Call procedure
E3	<b>jcxz</b>	<i>rel8</i>	Jump if CX is zero
E3	<b>jecxz</b>	<i>rel8</i>	Jump if CX is zero
9F	<b>lahf</b>		Load flags into AH register
	<b>lar</b>		Load access rights byte
0F 02 /r	<b>larw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
0F 02 /r	<b>larl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
9A	<b>lcall</b>	<i>imm16,imm32x</i>	Long call
	<b>lds</b>		load full pointer DS:r16
C5 /r	<b>ldsw</b>	<i>m16,r16</i>	
C5 /r	<b>ldsl</b>	<i>m32,r32</i>	
	<b>lea</b>		Load effective address
8D /r	<b>leaw</b>	<i>m16,r16</i>	
8D /r	<b>leal</b>	<i>m32,r32</i>	
C9	<b>leave</b>		High level procedure exit
	<b>les</b>		Load full pointer ES:r16
C4 /r	<b>lesw</b>	<i>m16,r16</i>	
C4 /r	<b>lesl</b>	<i>m32,r32</i>	
	<b>lfs</b>		Load full pointer FS:r16
0F B4 /r	<b>lfsw</b>	<i>m16,r16</i>	
0F B4 /r	<b>lfsl</b>	<i>m32,r32</i>	
	<b>lgdt</b>		Load m into DGTR
0F 01 /2	<b>lgdtw</b>	<i>m16</i>	
0F 01 /2	<b>lgdtl</b>	<i>m32</i>	
	<b>lgs</b>		Load full pointer GS:r16

OF B5 /r	<b>lgsw</b>	<i>m16,r16</i>	
OF B5 /r	<b>lgsl</b>	<i>m32,r32</i>	
	<b>lidt</b>		<i>Load m into IDTR</i>
OF 01 /3	<b>lgdtw</b>	<i>m16</i>	
OF 01 /3	<b>lgdtl</b>	<i>m32</i>	
EA	<b>ljmp</b>	<i>imm16,imm32x</i>	Long jump
OF 00 /2	<b>lldt</b>	<i>rm16</i>	Load local descriptor table register
OF 01 /6	<b>lmsw</b>	<i>rm16</i>	Load machine status word
F0	<b>lock</b>		Assert lock signal for next instruction
AC	<b>lods b</b>		Load string operand byte
AD	<b>lodsl</b>		Load string operand long
AD	<b>lodsw</b>		Load string operand word
E2	<b>loop</b>	<i>rel8</i>	Dec count jmp if count <> 0
E1	<b>loope</b>	<i>rel8</i>	Dec count jmp if count <> 0 and ZF = 1
E0	<b>loopne</b>	<i>rel8</i>	Dec count jmp if count <> 0 and ZF = 0
E0	<b>loopnz</b>	<i>rel8</i>	Dec count jmp if count <> 0 and ZF = 0
E1	<b>loopz</b>	<i>rel8</i>	Dec count jmp if count <> 0 and ZF = 1
CB	<b>iret</b>		Far return
CA	<b>iret</b>	<i>imm16</i>	Far return pop imm16 bytes of parms
	<b>lsl</b>		<i>Load segment limit</i>
OF 03 /r	<b>lslw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
OF 03 /r	<b>lsll</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
	<b>lss</b>		<i>Load full pointer SS:r16</i>
OF B2 /r	<b>lssw</b>	<i>m16,r16</i>	
OF B2 /r	<b>lssl</b>	<i>m32,r32</i>	
OF 00 /3	<b>ltr</b>	<i>rm16</i>	Load task register
	<b>mov</b>		<i>Move data</i>
A0	<b>movb</b>	<i>mooffs,al</i>	
A1	<b>movw</b>	<i>mooffs,ax</i>	
A1	<b>movl</b>	<i>mooffs,eax</i>	
A2	<b>movb</b>	<i>al,mooffs</i>	
A3	<b>movw</b>	<i>ax,mooffs</i>	
A3	<b>movl</b>	<i>eax,mooffs</i>	
88 /r	<b>movb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
89 /r	<b>movw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
89 /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
8A /r	<b>movb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
8B /r	<b>movw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
8B /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
8C /r	<b>movw</b>	<i>sreg,rm16</i>	
8E /r	<b>movw</b>	<i>rm16,sreg</i>	
B0 +r	<b>movb</b>	<i>imm8,r8</i>	
B8 +r	<b>movw</b>	<i>imm16,r16</i>	
B8 +r	<b>movl</b>	<i>imm32,r32</i>	
C6	<b>movb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
C7	<b>movw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
C7	<b>movl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
OF 20 /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>ctlreg,r32</i>	
OF 22 /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>r32,ctlreg</i>	
OF 21 /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>dbreg,r32</i>	
OF 23 /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>r32,dbreg</i>	

0F 24 /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>treg,r32</i>	
0F 26 /r	<b>movl</b>	<i>r32,treg</i>	
A4	<b>movsb</b>		Move bytes
A5	<b>movsl</b>		Move longs
A5	<b>movsw</b>		Move words
	<b>movsx</b>		Move with sign extend
0F BE /r	<b>movsx</b>	<i>rm8,r16</i>	
0F BE /r	<b>movsx</b>	<i>rm8,r32</i>	
0F BF /r	<b>movsx</b>	<i>rm16,r32</i>	
	<b>movzx</b>		Move with zero extend
0F B6 /r	<b>movzx</b>	<i>rm8,r16</i>	
0F B6 /r	<b>movzx</b>	<i>rm8,r32</i>	
0F B7 /r	<b>movzx</b>	<i>rm16,r32</i>	
	<b>mul</b>		Unsigned multiply
F6 /4	<b>mulb</b>	<i>rm8,al</i>	
F7 /4	<b>mulw</b>	<i>rm16,ax</i>	
F7 /4	<b>mull</b>	<i>rm32,eax</i>	
	<b>neg</b>		Negate
F6 /3	<b>negb</b>	<i>rm8</i>	
F7 /3	<b>negw</b>	<i>rm16</i>	
F7 /3	<b>negl</b>	<i>rm32</i>	
90	<b>nop</b>		No operation
	<b>not</b>		Invert bits
F6 /2	<b>notb</b>	<i>rm8</i>	
F7 /2	<b>notw</b>	<i>rm16</i>	
F7 /2	<b>notl</b>	<i>rm32</i>	
	<b>or</b>		Logical inclusive OR
0C	<b>orb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
0D	<b>orw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
0D	<b>orl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 /1	<b>orb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 /1	<b>orw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 /1	<b>orl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
81 /1	<b>orw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
81 /1	<b>orl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
08 /r	<b>orb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
09 /r	<b>orw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
09 /r	<b>orl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
0A /r	<b>orb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
0B /r	<b>orw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
0B /r	<b>orl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
	<b>out</b>		Output from port
E6	<b>outb</b>	<i>imm8</i>	
E7	<b>outw</b>	<i>imm8</i>	
E7	<b>outl</b>	<i>imm8</i>	
EE	<b>outb</b>	<i>atdx</i>	
EF	<b>outw</b>	<i>atdx</i>	
EF	<b>outl</b>	<i>atdx</i>	

6E	<b>outsb</b>		Output byte to port into ES:(E)DI
6F	<b>outsl</b>		Output long to port into ES:(E)DI
6F	<b>outsw</b>		Output word to port into ES:(E)DI
	<b>pop</b>		<i>Pop a word from the stack</i>
58 +r	<b>popw</b>	<i>r16</i>	
58 +r	<b>popl</b>	<i>r32</i>	
1F	<b>popw</b>	<i>ds</i>	
07	<b>popw</b>	<i>es</i>	
17	<b>popw</b>	<i>ss</i>	
0F A1	<b>popw</b>	<i>fs</i>	
0F A9	<b>popw</b>	<i>gs</i>	
8F /0	<b>popw</b>	<i>m16</i>	
8F /0	<b>popl</b>	<i>m32</i>	
	<b>popa</b>		<i>Pop all</i>
61	<b>popaw</b>		
61	<b>popal</b>		
	<b>popf</b>		<i>Pop stack into flags</i>
9D	<b>popfw</b>		
9D	<b>popfl</b>		
	<b>push</b>		<i>Push a word on the stack</i>
50 +r	<b>pushw</b>	<i>r16</i>	
50 +r	<b>pushl</b>	<i>r32</i>	
6A	<b>pushb</b>	<i>imm8</i>	
68	<b>pushw</b>	<i>imm16</i>	
68	<b>pushl</b>	<i>imm32</i>	
0E	<b>pushw</b>	<i>cs</i>	
1E	<b>pushw</b>	<i>ds</i>	
06	<b>pushw</b>	<i>es</i>	
16	<b>pushw</b>	<i>ss</i>	
0F A0	<b>pushw</b>	<i>fs</i>	
0F A8	<b>pushw</b>	<i>gs</i>	
FF /6	<b>pushw</b>	<i>m16</i>	
FF /6	<b>pushl</b>	<i>m32</i>	
	<b>pusha</b>		<i>Push all</i>
60	<b>pushaw</b>		
60	<b>pushal</b>		
	<b>pushf</b>		<i>Push flags</i>
9C	<b>pushfw</b>		
9C	<b>pushfl</b>		
	<b>rcl</b>		<i>Rotate carry left</i>
D0 /2	<b>rclb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 /2	<b>rclb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 /2	<b>rclb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 /2	<b>rclw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 /2	<b>rclw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 /2	<b>rclw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
D1 /2	<b>rcll</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 /2	<b>rcll</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 /2	<b>rcll</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>rcr</b>		<i>Rotate carry right</i>

D0 /3	<b>rcrb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 /3	<b>rcrb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 /3	<b>rcrb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 /3	<b>rcrw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 /3	<b>rcrw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 /3	<b>rcrw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
D1 /3	<b>rcrl</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 /3	<b>rcrl</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 /3	<b>rcrl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
F3	<b>rep</b>		rep following instruction CX times
F3	<b>repe</b>		repe following instruction CX times or eq
F2	<b>repne</b>		repne following instruction CX times or ne
C3	<b>ret</b>		Return
C2	<b>ret</b>	<i>imm16</i>	Return pop imm16 bytes of parms
	<b>rol</b>		<i>Rotate left</i>
D0 /0	<b>rolb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 /0	<b>rolb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 /0	<b>rolb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 /0	<b>rolw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 /0	<b>rolw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 /0	<b>rolw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
D1 /0	<b>roll</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 /0	<b>roll</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 /0	<b>roll</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>ror</b>		<i>Rotate right</i>
D0 /1	<b>rorb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 /1	<b>rorb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 /1	<b>rorb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 /1	<b>rorw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 /1	<b>rorw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 /1	<b>rorw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
D1 /1	<b>rorl</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 /1	<b>rorl</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 /1	<b>rorl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>sal</b>		<i>Shift arithmetic left</i>
D0 /4	<b>salb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 /4	<b>salb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 /4	<b>salb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 /4	<b>salw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 /4	<b>salw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 /4	<b>salw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
D1 /4	<b>sall</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 /4	<b>sall</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 /4	<b>sall</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>sar</b>		<i>Shift arithmetic right</i>
D0 /7	<b>sarb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 /7	<b>sarb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 /7	<b>sarb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 /7	<b>sarw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 /7	<b>sarw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 /7	<b>sarw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	

D1 /7	<b>sarl</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 /7	<b>sarl</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 /7	<b>sarl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>sbb</b>		<i>Subtract with borrow</i>
1C	<b>sbbb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
1D	<b>sbbw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
1D	<b>sbbi</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 /3	<b>sbbb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 /3	<b>sbbw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 /3	<b>sbbi</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
81 /3	<b>sbbw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
81 /3	<b>sbbi</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
18 /r	<b>sbbb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
19 /r	<b>sbbw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
19 /r	<b>sbbi</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
1A /r	<b>sbbb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
1B /r	<b>sbbw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
1B /r	<b>sbbi</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
AE	<b>scasb</b>		Compare string bytes
AF	<b>scasl</b>		Compare string longs
AF	<b>scasw</b>		Compare string words
0F 97	<b>seta</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if above
0F 93	<b>setae</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if above or equal
0F 92	<b>setb</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if below
0F 96	<b>setbe</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if below or equal
0F 92	<b>setc</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if carry
0F 94	<b>sete</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if equal
0F 9F	<b>setg</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if greater
0F 9D	<b>setge</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if greater or equal
0F 9C	<b>setl</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if less
0F 9E	<b>setle</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if less or equal
0F 96	<b>setna</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not above
0F 92	<b>setnae</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not above or equal
0F 93	<b>setnb</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not below
0F 97	<b>setnbe</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not below or equal
0F 93	<b>setnc</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if no carry
0F 95	<b>setne</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not equal
0F 9E	<b>setng</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not greater
0F 9C	<b>setnge</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not greater or equal
0F 9D	<b>setnl</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not less
0F 9F	<b>setnle</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not less or equal
0F 91	<b>setno</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not overflow
0F 9B	<b>setnp</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not parity
0F 99	<b>setns</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not sign
0F 95	<b>setnz</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if not zero
0F 90	<b>seto</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if overflow
0F 9A	<b>setp</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if parity
0F 9A	<b>setpe</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if parity even
0F 9B	<b>setpo</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if parity odd
0F 98	<b>sets</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if sign
0F 94	<b>setz</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if zero
0F 94	<b>setz</b>	<i>rm8</i>	Set byte if zero

0F 01 / 0	<b>sgdt</b>	<i>mem32</i>	Store gdtr
	<b>shl</b>		Shift arithmetic left
D0 / 4	<b>shlb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 / 4	<b>shlb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 / 4	<b>shlb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 / 4	<b>shlw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 / 4	<b>shlw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 / 4	<b>shlw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
D1 / 4	<b>shll</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 / 4	<b>shll</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 / 4	<b>shll</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>shld</b>		Shift double precision left
0F A4	<b>shldw</b>	<i>imm8,r16,rm16</i>	
0F A4	<b>shldl</b>	<i>imm8,r32,rm32</i>	
0F A5	<b>shldw</b>	<i>cl,r16,rm16</i>	
0F A5	<b>shldl</b>	<i>cl,r32,rm32</i>	
	<b>shr</b>		Shift right
D0 / 5	<b>shrb</b>	<i>con1,rm8</i>	
D2 / 5	<b>shrb</b>	<i>cl,rm8</i>	
C0 / 5	<b>shrb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
D1 / 5	<b>shrw</b>	<i>con1,rm16</i>	
D3 / 5	<b>shrw</b>	<i>cl,rm16</i>	
C1 / 5	<b>shrw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
D1 / 5	<b>shrl</b>	<i>con1,rm32</i>	
D3 / 5	<b>shrl</b>	<i>cl,rm32</i>	
C1 / 5	<b>shrl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
	<b>shrd</b>		Shift double precision right
0F AC	<b>shrdw</b>	<i>imm8,r16,rm16</i>	
0F AC	<b>shrdl</b>	<i>imm8,r32,rm32</i>	
0F AD	<b>shrdw</b>	<i>cl,r16,rm16</i>	
0F AD	<b>shrdl</b>	<i>cl,r16,rm32</i>	
0F AD	<b>shrdw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
0F AD	<b>shrdl</b>	<i>r16,rm32</i>	
0F 01 / 1	<b>sidt</b>	<i>mem32</i>	Store idtr
0F 00 / 0	<b>slidt</b>	<i>rm16</i>	Store ldtr to EA word
0F 01 / 4	<b>smsw</b>	<i>rm16</i>	Store machine status to EA word
F9	<b>stc</b>		Set carry flag
FD	<b>std</b>		Clear direction flag
FB	<b>sti</b>		Set interrupt flag
AA	<b>stosb</b>		Store string byte
AB	<b>stosl</b>		Store string long
AB	<b>stosw</b>		Store string word
0F 00 / 1	<b>str</b>		Store task register
	<b>sub</b>		Subtract
2C	<b>subb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
2D	<b>subw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
2D	<b>subl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 / 5	<b>subb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 / 5	<b>subw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 / 5	<b>subl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
81 / 5	<b>subw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	



81 /5	<b>subl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
28 /r	<b>subb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
29 /r	<b>subw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
29 /r	<b>subl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
2A /r	<b>subb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
2B /r	<b>subw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
2B /r	<b>subl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
	<b>test</b>		<i>Logical compare</i>
A8	<b>testb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
A9	<b>testw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
A9	<b>testl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
F6 /0	<b>testb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
F7 /0	<b>testw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
F7 /0	<b>testl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
84 /r	<b>testb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
85 /r	<b>testw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
85 /r	<b>testl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
0F 00 /4	<b>verr</b>	<i>rm16</i>	Verify segment for read
0F 00 /5	<b>verw</b>	<i>rm16</i>	Verify segment for write
9B	<b>wait</b>		Wait
	<b>xchg</b>		<i>Exchange register</i>
90 +r	<b>xchgw</b>	<i>r16,ax</i>	
90 +r	<b>xchgw</b>	<i>ax,r16</i>	
90 +r	<b>xchgl</b>	<i>r32,eax</i>	
90 +r	<b>xchgl</b>	<i>eax,r32</i>	
86 /r	<b>xchgb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
87 /r	<b>xchgw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
87 /r	<b>xchgl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
86 /r	<b>xchgb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
87 /r	<b>xchgw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
87 /r	<b>xchgl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	
D7	<b>xlat</b>		Table lookup translation
D7	<b>xlatb</b>		Table lookup translation
	<b>xor</b>		<i>Logical exclusive OR</i>
34	<b>xorb</b>	<i>imm8,al</i>	
35	<b>xorw</b>	<i>imm16,ax</i>	
35	<b>xorl</b>	<i>imm32,eax</i>	
80 /6	<b>xorb</b>	<i>imm8,rm8</i>	
83 /6	<b>xorw</b>	<i>imm8,rm16</i>	
83 /6	<b>xorl</b>	<i>imm8,rm32</i>	
81 /6	<b>xorw</b>	<i>imm16,rm16</i>	
81 /6	<b>xorl</b>	<i>imm32,rm32</i>	
30 /r	<b>xorb</b>	<i>r8,rm8</i>	
31 /r	<b>xorw</b>	<i>r16,rm16</i>	
31 /r	<b>xorl</b>	<i>r32,rm32</i>	
32 /r	<b>xorb</b>	<i>rm8,r8</i>	
33 /r	<b>xorw</b>	<i>rm16,r16</i>	
33 /r	<b>xorl</b>	<i>rm32,r32</i>	

**See Also****asfix, calling conventions, cc, commands**Intel Corporation: *386 DX Programmer's Reference Manual*. Santa Clara, CA: Intel Corporation,

1990. *Highly recommended.*

### Notes

We have designed **as** to ease porting of programs written in other dialects of UNIX 386 assembly language, as well as to be a powerful tool for development of new programs. We think you will find the features and documentation of our assembler considerably more complete than are available anywhere else. However, we have chosen *not* to duplicate behavior of other assemblers that leads to inefficient or incorrect output, or that generates code without warning when given questionable input. We have also chosen to support operator precedence rather than perpetuating antiquated left-to-right evaluation schemes seen elsewhere. *Caveat utilitor.*

### ASCII — Technical Information

**ASCII** is an acronym for the American Standard Code for Information Interchange. It is a table of seven-bit binary numbers that encode the letters of the alphabet, numerals, punctuation, and the most commonly used control sequences for printers and terminals. ASCII codes are used on all microcomputers sold in the United States.

The following table gives the ASCII characters in octal, decimal, and hexadecimal numbers, their definitions, and expands abbreviations where necessary.

000	0	0x00	NUL	<ctrl-@>	Null character
001	1	0x01	SOH	<ctrl-A>	Start of header
002	2	0x02	STX	<ctrl-B>	Start of text
003	3	0x03	ETX	<ctrl-C>	End of text
004	4	0x04	EOT	<ctrl-D>	End of transmission
005	5	0x05	ENQ	<ctrl-E>	Enquiry
006	6	0x06	ACK	<ctrl-F>	Positive acknowledgement
007	7	0x07	BEL	<ctrl-G>	Bell
010	8	0x08	BS	<ctrl-H>	Backspace
011	9	0x09	HT	<ctrl-I>	Horizontal tab
012	10	0x0A	LF	<ctrl-J>	Line feed
013	11	0x0B	VT	<ctrl-K>	Vertical tab
014	12	0x0C	FF	<ctrl-L>	Form feed
015	13	0x0D	CR	<ctrl-M>	Carriage return
016	14	0x0E	SO	<ctrl-N>	Shift out
017	15	0x0F	SI	<ctrl-O>	Shift in
020	16	0x10	DLE	<ctrl-P>	Data link escape
021	17	0x11	DC1	<ctrl-Q>	Device control 1 (XON)
022	18	0x12	DC2	<ctrl-R>	Device control 2 (tape on)
023	19	0x13	DC3	<ctrl-S>	Device control 3 (XOFF)
024	20	0x14	DC4	<ctrl-T>	Device control 4 (tape off)
025	21	0x15	NAK	<ctrl-U>	Negative acknowledgement
026	22	0x16	SYN	<ctrl-V>	Synchronize
027	23	0x17	ETB	<ctrl-W>	End of transmission block
030	24	0x18	CAN	<ctrl-X>	Cancel
031	25	0x19	EM	<ctrl-Y>	End of medium
032	26	0x1A	SUB	<ctrl-Z>	Substitute
033	27	0x1B	ESC	<ctrl-[>	Escape
034	28	0x1C	FS	<ctrl-\>	Form separator
035	29	0x1D	GS	<ctrl-]>	Group separator
036	30	0x1E	RS	<ctrl-^>	Record separator
037	31	0x1F	US	<ctrl-_>	Unit separator
040	32	0x20	SP		Space
041	33	0x21	!		Exclamation point
042	34	0x22	"		Quotation mark

---

043	35	0x23	#	Pound sign (sharp)
044	36	0x24	\$	Dollar sign
045	37	0x25	%	Percent sign
046	38	0x26	&	Ampersand
047	39	0x27	'	Apostrophe
050	40	0x28	(	Left parenthesis
051	41	0x29	)	Right parenthesis
052	42	0x2A	*	Asterisk
053	43	0x2B	+	Plus sign
054	44	0x2C	,	Comma
055	45	0x2D	-	Hyphen (minus sign)
056	46	0x2E	.	Period
057	47	0x2F	/	Virgule (slash)
060	48	0x30	0	
061	49	0x31	1	
062	50	0x32	2	
063	51	0x33	3	
064	52	0x34	4	
065	53	0x35	5	
066	54	0x36	6	
067	55	0x37	7	
070	56	0x38	8	
071	57	0x39	9	
072	58	0x3A	:	Colon
073	59	0x3B	;	Semicolon
074	60	0x3C	<	Less-than symbol (left angle bracket)
075	61	0x3D	=	Equal sign
076	62	0x3E	>	Greater-than symbol (right angle bracket)
077	63	0x3F	?	Question mark
0100	64	0x40	@	At sign
0101	65	0x41	A	
0102	66	0x42	B	
0103	67	0x43	C	
0104	68	0x44	D	
0105	69	0x45	E	
0106	70	0x46	F	
0107	71	0x47	G	
0110	72	0x48	H	
0111	73	0x49	I	
0112	74	0x4A	J	
0113	75	0x4B	K	
0114	76	0x4C	L	
0115	77	0x4D	M	
0116	78	0x4E	N	
0117	79	0x4F	O	
0120	80	0x50	P	
0121	81	0x51	Q	
0122	82	0x52	R	
0123	83	0x53	S	
0124	84	0x54	T	
0125	85	0x55	U	
0126	86	0x56	V	
0127	87	0x57	W	
0130	88	0x58	X	

0131	89	0x59	Y	
0132	90	0x5A	Z	
0133	91	0x5B	[	Left bracket (left square bracket)
0134	92	0x5C	\	Backslash
0135	93	0x5D	]	Right bracket (right square bracket)
0136	94	0x5E	^	Circumflex
0137	95	0x5F	_	Underscore
0140	96	0x60	`	Grave
0141	97	0x61	a	
0142	98	0x62	b	
0143	99	0x63	c	
0144	100	0x64	d	
0145	101	0x65	e	
0146	102	0x66	f	
0147	103	0x67	g	
0150	104	0x68	h	
0151	105	0x69	i	
0152	106	0x6A	j	
0153	107	0x6B	k	
0154	108	0x6C	l	
0155	109	0x6D	m	
0156	110	0x6E	n	
0157	111	0x6F	o	
0160	112	0x70	p	
0161	113	0x71	q	
0162	114	0x72	r	
0163	115	0x73	s	
0164	116	0x74	t	
0165	117	0x75	u	
0166	118	0x76	v	
0167	119	0x77	w	
0170	120	0x78	x	
0171	121	0x79	y	
0172	122	0x7A	z	
0173	123	0x7B	{	Left brace (left curly bracket)
0174	124	0x7C		Vertical bar
0175	125	0x7D	}	Right brace (right curly bracket)
0176	126	0x7E	~	Tilde
0177	127	0x7F	DEL	Delete

### Files

`/usr/pub/ascii`

### See Also

string, technical information

### **ascii.h** — Header File

Define non-printable ASCII characters

**#include <ascii.h>**

**ascii.h** defines a set of manifest constants that describe the non-printable ASCII characters.

### See Also

ASCII, header files

**asctime() — Time Function (libc)**

Convert time structure to ASCII string

```
#include <time.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
char *asctime(tm *tmp);
```

**asctime** takes the data found in *tmp*, and turns it into an ASCII string. *tmp* is of the type **tm**, which is a structure defined in the header file **time.h**. This structure must first be initialized by either **gmtime** or **localtime** before it can be used by **asctime**. For a further discussion of **tm**, see the entry for **time**.

**asctime** returns a pointer to where it writes the text string it creates.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the functions **asctime**, **ctime**, **gmtime**, **localtime**, and **time**, and shows the effect of the environmental variable **TIMEZONE**. For a discussion of the variable **time\_t**, see the entry for **time**.

```
#include <time.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
main()
{
    time_t timenumber;
    struct tm *timestruct;

    /* read system time, print using ctime */
    time(&timenumber);
    printf("%s", ctime(&timenumber));

    /* use gmtime to fill tm, print with asctime */
    timestruct = gmtime(&timenumber);
    printf("%s", asctime(timestruct));

    /* use localtime to fill tm, print with asctime */
    timestruct = localtime(&timenumber);
    printf("%s", asctime(timestruct));
}
```

**See Also**

**time**

**Notes**

**asctime** returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

**asfix — Command**

Convert assembly-language programs into as 80386 format

```
asfix < oldfile > newfile
```

**asfix** converts programs written in the 80286 flavor of the COHERENT assembly language into a form that can be assembled by the 80386 edition of **as**, the COHERENT assembler.

**asfix** reads the standard input and writes to the standard output. It changes DEC-form local symbols to the form of 80386 **as**, changes character constants from the form '**x**' to the form '**x**', and changes local symbols from the COHERENT-286 form to the COHERENT-386 form.

**See Also**

**as**, **commands**

**ASHEAD — Environmental Variable**

Append options to beginning of **as** command line

**export ASHEAD=options**

The COHERENT assembler **as** reads the environmental variables **ASHEAD** and **ASTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the assembler always to use.

**as** appends the options in **ASHEAD** to the beginning of its command line.

**See Also**

**as**, **ASTAIL**, **environmental variables**

**asin() — Mathematics Function (libm)**

Calculate inverse sine

**#include <math.h>**

**double asin(arg) double arg;**

**asin()** calculates the inverse sin of *arg*, which must be in the range [-1., 1.]. The result will be in the range [- $\pi/2$ ,  $\pi/2$ ].

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

**See Also**

**mathematics library**

**Diagnostics**

Out-of-range arguments set **errno** to **EDOM** and return zero.

**ASKCC — Environmental Variable**

Force prompting for CC names

**ASKCC=YES/NO**

The environmental variable **ASKCC** directs the program **mail** to prompt for carbon-copy names. A carbon-copy (or CC) name gives another person to whom a mail message should be sent. To turn on prompting, use the command:

```
export ASKCC=YES
```

**See Also**

**environmental variables**, **mail**

**assert() — Macro Diagnostics (assert.h)**

Check assertion at run time

**#include <assert.h>**

**void assert(expression) int expression;**

**assert()** checks the value of *expression*. If *expression* is false (zero), **assert()** sends a message into the standard-error stream and calls **exit()**. It is useful for verifying that a necessary condition is true.

The error message includes the text of the assertion that failed, the name of the source file, and the line within the source file that holds the expression in question. These last two elements consist, respectively, of the values of the preprocessor macros **\_\_FILE\_\_** and **\_\_LINE\_\_**.

**assert()** calls **exit()**, which never returns.

To turn off **assert()**, define the macro **NDEBUG** prior to including the header **assert.h**. This forces **assert()** to be redefined as

```
#define assert(ignore)
```

### See Also

**exit()**, **assert.h**, C preprocessor

### Notes

The ANSI Standard requires that **assert()** be implemented as a macro, not a library function. If a program suppresses the macro definition in favor of a function call, its behavior is undefined.

Turning off **assert()** with the macro **NDEBUG** will affect the behavior of a program if the expression being evaluated normally generates side effects.

**assert()** is useful for debugging, and for testing boundary conditions for which more graceful error recovery has not yet been implemented.

### assert.h — Header File

Define **assert()**

```
#include <assert.h>
```

**assert.h** is the header file that defines the macro **assert**.

### See Also

**assert()**, header files

### ASTAIL — Environmental Variable

Append options to end of **as** command line

```
export ASTAIL=options
```

The COHERENT assembler **as** reads the environmental variables **ASHEAD** and **ASTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the assembler always to use.

**as** appends the options in **ASTAIL** to the end of its command line.

### See Also

**as**, **ASHEAD**, environmental variables

### asy — Device Driver

Device driver for asynchronous serial lines

The device driver **asy** supports from 1 to 32 serial ports. It allows any mixture of 8250, 8250B, 16450, 16550, 16550A, and equivalent devices, including nearly all conventional **com1** through **com4** serial cards, and most non-intelligent multiport add-in cards. It automatically recognizes, and uses, on-chip FIFO, and it can specify groups of ports that share a single interrupt status.

### Types of Port Configuration

Each port that **asy** serves has a base name, e.g., **com1**. Different configurations of the port are selected by using different suffixes, as follows:

- 1 (Local) "Local mode" means that the line will have a terminal plugged into it, or is connected to a modem running in command mode. Local mode uses the minor device with the modem-control bit (bit 7) set.

- r** (Remote) "Modem control" means that the line will have a modem plugged into it. Modem control is enabled on a serial line by resetting the modem control bit (bit 7) in the minor number for the device. This allows the system to generate a hangup signal when the modem indicates loss of carrier by dropping DCD (Data Carrier Detect). A modem line should always have its DSR, DCD and CTS pins connected. If left hanging, spurious transitions can cause severe system thrashing. An **open** to a modem-control line will block until a carrier is detected (DCD goes true).
- p** (Polled mode) "Polled mode" means that the port cannot generate an interrupt, but must be checked (or polled) constantly by the COHERENT system to see if activity has occurred on it. Such polling takes a significant toll on system performance. The main reason for supporting polled devices is that older style **com** equipment will not allow both **com1** and **com3** to use interrupts at the same time, nor will it allow both **com2** and **com4** to use interrupts at the same time. If you use a port in polled mode, you will get better performance using one of the newer FIFO parts, such as the 16550A.
- f** (Flow control) A device with hardware flow control. Here, signal CTS must be active for the driver to send data out the port, and signal RTS will be set active by the driver whenever it is ready for input. Some high-speed modems, and some serial printers, are capable of using these conventions. If your equipment does not support RTS/CTS handshaking, there is absolutely no benefit to using this option.

Due to limitations in the design of the ports, you can enable interrupts on either COM1 or COM3 (or on COM2 or COM4), but not both. If you wish to use both ports simultaneously, one must be run in polled mode. For example, if you wish to open all four serial lines, you can open two of the lines in interrupt mode: you can open either COM1 or COM3 in interrupt mode, and you can open either COM2 or COM4 in interrupt mode. The other two lines must be opened in polled mode.

Opening a device in polled mode consumes many CPU cycles, based upon the speed of the highest baud rate requested. For example, on a 20 MHz 80386-based machine, polling at 9600-baud was found to consume about 15% of the CPU time. As only one device can use the interrupt line at any given time, the best approach is to make the high-speed line of the pair interrupt driven and open the low-speed or less-frequently used line in polled mode. However, if you enable a polled line for logins, the port is open and will be polled as long as the port remains open (enabled). Thus, even if a port is not in use, the fact that it has a **getty** on it consumes CPU cycles. As a rule of thumb, try to open a port in interrupt mode. If you cannot, use the polled version.

If you intend to use a modem on your serial port, you must insure that the DCD signal from the modem actually *follows* the state of carrier detect. Some modems allow the user to "strap" or set the DCD signal so that it is always asserted (true). This incorrect setup will cause COHERENT to think that the modem is "connected" to a remote modem, even when there is no such connection.

There are eight possible configurations, and eight valid suffixes. In the example of the port whose base name is **com1**, the configurations would be found in the directory **/dev** as **/dev/com1l**, **/dev/com1lr**, **/dev/com1pl**, **/dev/com1pr**, **/dev/com1fl**, **/dev/com1fr**, **/dev/com1fpl**, and **/dev/com1fpr**.

### **Driver Configuration**

**asy** is usually configured — and proper names are created in directory **/dev** — when you install COHERENT. The following explains how to configure **asy**, in case you must modify the original installation.

There are several steps to configuring **asy**:

1. Edit **/etc/default/async** to match your system.



2. Run **/conf/asypatch** to modify file **/coherent** according to step 1.
3. Run **/conf/asymkdev** to make device names in **/dev** according to step 1.
4. Reboot, using the new version of **/coherent**.

### ***Editing /etc/default/async***

The first step in reconfiguring **asy** is to edit **/etc/default/async**. This file holds the description of how the **asy** driver is to be configured.

Blank lines, and lines beginning with a pound sign '#', are allowed as comments and will be ignored. Each port that is not in a group must have a line beginning with the letter 'P', followed by six numbers, specified in decimal notation, except as noted:

- The hexadecimal base address for the port.
- The irq number used by the port (use zero if no interrupt line is needed).
- The hexadecimal value used for control lines OUT1 and OUT2 when the port is open. Permissible values are 0, 4, 8, and C. Use 4 if OUT1 must be asserted, 8 if OUT2 must be asserted, and C if both signals are needed. The most common value needed in this field is 8.
- One if the port needs exclusive use of its interrupt line (true for conventional com1/com4 equipment), zero otherwise.
- Default baud rate for the port.
- Channel number for the port (0-31).

Many multiport boards support a separate I/O address that can be read to determine which port requires service. Each group of up to eight ports must have a line beginning with the letter 'G', followed by a separate line describing each port in the group. There are three different group types:

1. Bits in the status port are one when the corresponding port needs service, zero otherwise.
2. Bits in the status port are zero when the corresponding port needs service, one otherwise.
3. The low three bits in the status port give the slot number on the card for the port needing service.

The 'G' line requires the following fields. All are in decimal, except as noted:

- The hexadecimal address for the group-status port.
- The irq number used by the group. Use zero if no interrupt line is needed.
- The hexadecimal value used for control lines OUT1 and OUT2 when the port is open (usually eight).
- The type number of the group — one, two, or three, as described above.
- The number of ports in the group, 1 through 8.

Each group line is followed by a separate 'M' line for each member of the group. Fields required on the 'M' line (in decimal, except as noted) are:

- The hexadecimal base address for the port.
- Default baud rate for the port.
- The slot number of the port within the group 0 through 7. For group types 1 and 2, slot 0 corresponds to the least-order bit in the status port, slot 7 to the highest order bit.

- Channel number for the port (0-31).

The following gives the **async** file for a system with standard **COM1** through **COM4** ports as channels 0 through 3, a Control Hostess 550/16 as channels 4 through 19, and finally an Arnet Multiport as channels 20 through 27.

```
# /etc/default/async spec for standard com1-com4
#Record formats:
#P      Port      Irq      OUT[12]  Excl      Speed      Channel
#G      Port      Irq      OUT[12]  Type      Number-of-Slots
#M      Port      Speed     Slot      Channel

# com1/2/3/4
P      3f8        4         8         1         9600        0
P      2f8        3         8         1         9600        1
P      3e8        4         8         1         9600        2
P      2e8        3         8         1         9600        3

# Hostess 550 16 - two groups of 8 ports, using irq 12
G      507        12         8         1          8
M      500        9600        0         4
M      508        9600        1         5
M      510        9600        2         6
M      518        9600        3         7
M      520        9600        4         8
M      528        9600        5         9
M      530        9600        6        10
M      538        9600        7        11

G      547        12         8         1          8
M      540        9600        0        12
M      548        9600        1        13
M      550        9600        2        14
M      558        9600        3        15
M      560        9600        4        16
M      568        9600        5        17
M      570        9600        6        18
M      578        9600        7        19

# Arnet Multiport - one group of 8 ports, using irq 7
G      272         7          0          2          8
M      280        9600        0         20
M      288        9600        1         21
M      290        9600        2         22
M      298        9600        3         23
M      2A0        9600        4         24
M      2A8        9600        5         25
M      2B0        9600        6         26
M      2B8        9600        7         27
```

### ***Patching the Kernel***

Now that you have described how you want **asy** to be configured, the next step is to patch the kernel. Use the program **/conf/asypatch**. The invocation is:

## **LEXICON**

```
/conf/asypatch [-v] /coherent < /etc/default/async
```

The **-v** option gives verbose diagnostic output.

## Make Device Names

The next step is to create the device names. Use the program **/conf/asymkdev**. The invocation is:

```
/conf/asymkdev /etc/default/async > /tmp/make_nodes
```

Inspect the script produced in **/tmp** if you like, then run it with the command:

```
sh /tmp/make_nodes
```

## Running the New Kernel

To run the modified kernel, do the usual sequence of shutdown, sync, and reboot, then reboot your system with the new version of **/coherent**. For more information on this, see the Lexicon entry for the command **shutdown**, or see the section on shutting down the system in the tutorial *Using the COHERENT System*, at the front of this manual.

## See Also

**device drivers**

## Notes

**asy** is available only under COHERENT 386.

**asy** uses major number 5. This number was selected as **asy** replaces **com1/com3** (major number 5), **com2/4** (major number 6), and **hs** (major number 7).

## at — Device Driver

Drivers for hard-disk partitions

**/dev/at\*** are the COHERENT system's AT devices for the hard-disk's partitions. Each device is assigned major-device number 11, and may be accessed as a block- or character-special device.

The **at** hard-disk driver handles two drives with up to four partitions each. Minor devices 0 through 3 identify the partitions on drive 0. Minor devices 4 through 7 identify the partitions on drive 1. Minor device 128 allows access to all of drive 0. Minor device 129 allows access to all of drive 1. To modify the offsets and sizes of the partitions, use the command **fdisk** on the special device for each drive (minor devices 128 and 129).

To access a disk partition through COHERENT, directory **/dev** must contain a device file that has the appropriate type, major and minor device numbers, and permissions. To create a special file for this device, invoke the command **mknod** as follows:

```
/etc/mknod /dev/at0a b 11 0 ; : drive 0, partition 0
/etc/mknod /dev/at0b b 11 1 ; : drive 0, partition 1
/etc/mknod /dev/at0c b 11 2 ; : drive 0, partition 2
/etc/mknod /dev/at0d b 11 3 ; : drive 0, partition 3
/etc/mknod /dev/at0x b 11 128 ; : drive 0, partition table
```

## Kernel Variables

Please note that the COHERENT 286 kernel references variables with a trailing underscore character; for example, **atparm\_**. The COHERENT 386 kernel, however, does *not* use a trailing underscore; for example, **atparm**.

The following descriptions apply to both COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386, but the notation will be in the COHERENT-386 form.

### Drive Characteristics

When processing BIOS I/O requests prior to booting COHERENT, many IDE drives use “translation-mode” drive parameters: number of heads, cylinders, and sectors per track. These numbers are called translation-mode parameters because they do not reflect true physical drive geometry. The translation-mode parameters used by the BIOS code present on your host adapter can be obtained using the **info** command from **tboot**. It is often necessary to patch the **at** driver with BIOS values of translation-mode parameters in order to boot COHERENT on IDE hard drives. In COHERENT versions 3.1.0 and later, drive parameters are stored in table **atparm** in the driver. For the first hard drive, number of cylinders is a short (two-byte) value at **atparm+0**, number of heads is a single byte at **atparm+2**, and number of sectors per track is a single byte at **atparm+14**. For the second hard drive, number of cylinders is a short value at **atparm+16**, number of heads is a single byte at **atparm+18**, and number of sectors per track is a single byte at **atparm+30**. For example, if **testcoh** is a kernel linked with the **at** driver and you want to patch it for a second hard drive with 829 cylinders, 10 heads, and 26 sectors per track, you can do:

```
/conf/patch testcoh atparm+16=829:s atparm+18=10:c atparm+30=26:c
```

To read the characteristics of a hard disk once the **at** driver is running, use the call to **ioctl** of the following form:

```
#include <sys/hdioctl.h>
hdparm_t hdparms;
. . .
ioctl(fd, HDGETA, (char *)&hdparms);
```

where *fd* is a file descriptor for the hard disk device and *hdparms* receives the disk characteristics.

### Non-Standard and Unsupported Types of Drives

Prior releases of the the COHERENT **at** hard-disk driver would not support disk drives whose geometry was not supported by the BIOS disk parameter tables. COHERENT adds support for these drives during installation by “patching” the disk parameters into the bootstrap and the **/coherent** image on the hard disk.

### Files

**/dev/at\*** — Block-special files  
**/dev/rat\*** — Character-special files

### See Also

device drivers, **fdisk**

### Notes

You can patch integer variable **ATSREG** to specify normal or alternate polling. Use 0x3F6 for normal polling, which works with most newer drives. Use 0x1F7 for alternate polling, which is necessary for Perstor controllers and some other older equipment. The driver is shipped with a default value of 0x3F6; patching is usually done during installation as needed. Setting this variable improperly causes frequent controller timeouts and bad-track messages.

Integer variable **ATSECS** specifies the number of seconds to wait for a response from the drive after an I/O request. The default value is six. Some IDE drives occasionally become unresponsive for long intervals (several seconds) while control firmware makes adjustments to drive operation.

**at — Command**

Execute commands at given time

**at** [ **-v** ] [ **-c** *command* ] *time* [ [ *day* ] *week* ] [ *file* ]

**at** [ **-v** ] [ **-c** *command* ] *time* *month* *day* [ *file* ]

**at** executes commands at a given time in the future.

If the **-c** option is used, **at** executes the following *command*. If *file* is named, **at** reads the commands from it. If neither is given, **at** reads the standard input for commands.

If *time* is a one-digit or two-digit number, **at** interprets it as specifying an hour. If *time* is a three-digit or four-digit number, **at** interprets it as specifying an hour and minutes. If *time* is followed by **a**, **p**, **n**, or **m**, **at** assumes **AM**, **PM**, **noon**, or **midnight**, respectively; otherwise, it assumes that *time* indicates a 24-hour clock.

For example, the command

```
at -c "time | msg henry" 1450
```

set the **time** command to be executed at 2:50 PM, and pipe **time**'s output to the **msg** command, which will pass it to the terminal of user **henry**. Note that argument to the **-c** option had to be enclosed in quotation marks because it contains spaces and special characters; if this were not done, **at** would not be able to tell when the argument ended, and so would generate an error message. Also note that if you wish pass information to a user's terminal with the **at** command, you must tell **at** to whom to send the information. The command

```
at 250p commandfile
```

will set the file **commandfile** to be read and executed at 2:50 PM. Note that it is *not* necessary to use the file's full path name. Also, if the suffix **p** were not appended to the time, the file would be set to be read at 2:50 AM.

The time set in **at**'s command line is *not* the exact time that the command is executed. Rather, the daemon **cron** wakes up the file **/usr/lib/atrun** periodically to see if any commands have been scheduled commands to be executed at or before that time. The frequency with which **cron** executes **atrun** determines the "granularity" of **at** execution times; it may be changed by editing the file **/usr/lib/crontab**. For example, the entry

```
0,5,10,15,20,25,30,35,40,45,50,55 * * * * /usr/lib/atrun
```

sets **/usr/lib/atrun** to be executed every five minutes. Thus, the **at** command that is set, for example, to 2:53 PM will actually be executed at 2:55 PM. **atrun** executes specified commands when it discovers that the given time is past; therefore, **at** commands are executed even if the system is down at the specified time or if the system's time is changed.

The **at** command has two forms, as shown above. In the first form, the option *day* names a day of the week (lower case, spelled out). If **week** is specified, **at** interprets the given *time* and *day* as meaning that time and day the following week. For example, the command

```
at -c "time | msg henry" 1450 friday week
```

executes **time** and sends its output to **henry**'s terminal one week from Friday at 2:50 PM.

In the second form given above, *month* specifies a month name (lower case, spelled out) and the number *day* specifies a day of the month. For example, the command

```
at 1450 july 4 commandfile
```

set the file **commandfile** to be read at 2:50 PM on July 4.

If the **-v** flag is given, **at** prints the time when the commands will be executed, giving you enough information to plan for the execution of the command. For example, if it is now August 13, 1990, at 2:30 PM, and you type the command

```
at -v -c "/usr/games/fortune | msg henry" 1435
```

**at** will reply:

```
Tue Aug 13 14:35:00
```

indicating that the command will be executed five minutes from now. However, if you type

```
at -v -c "/usr/games/fortune | msg henry" 1435 august 10
```

**at** will reply

```
Sun Aug 10 14:35:00 1991
```

which indicates that on Sunday, August 10 of next year, at 2:35 PM, the COHERENT system will print a **fortune** onto your terminal.

Should you create such a long-distance **at** file by accident, you can correct the error by simply deleting the file that encodes it from the directory **/usr/spool/at**. The file will be named after the time that it is set to execute, plus a unique two-character suffix, should more than one command be scheduled to run at the same time. For example, the file for the above command would be named **9108101435.aa**.

Finally, note that the current working directory, exported shell variables, file creation mask, user id, and group id are restored when the given command is executed.

### Files

**/bin/pwd** — To find current directory  
**/usr/lib/atrun** — Execute scheduled commands  
**/usr/spool/at** — Scheduled activity directory  
**/usr/spool/at/ymmddhhmm.xx** — Commands scheduled at given time

### See Also

**at**, **commands**, **cron**

### **atan()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate inverse tangent

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double atan(arg) double arg;
```

**atan()** calculates the inverse tangent of *arg*, which may be any real number. The result will be in the range  $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ .

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

### See Also

**errno**, **mathematics library**

**atan2()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate inverse tangent

**double atan2(num, den) double num, den;**

**atan2()** calculates the inverse tangent of the quotient of its arguments *num/den*. *num* and *den* may be any real numbers. The result will be in the range  $[-\pi, \pi]$ . The sign of the result will have the same sign as *num*, and the cosine will have the same sign as *den*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

**See Also**

**errno**, **mathematics library**

**ATclock** — Command

Read or set the AT realtime clock

**/etc/ATclock** [*yy*][*mm*][*dd*][*hh*][*mm*][*ss*]]]]

**ATclock** reads or sets the system realtime clock in an IBM PC-AT system. With no argument, it reads the realtime clock and returns a string in the format expected by the command **date**. With an argument, it sets the realtime clock to the given date.

The system startup files **/etc/brc** and **/etc/rc** typically contain a command of the form

```
date -s `/etc/ATclock`
```

to reset the time properly when the COHERENT system starts up. The AT realtime clock typically contains the current local standard time (not adjusted for daylight savings time).

**See Also**

**commands**, **date**, **rc**

**atof()** — General Function (libc)

Convert ASCII strings to floating point

**double atof(string) char \* string;**

**atof** converts *string* into the binary representation of a double-precision floating point number. *string* must be the ASCII representation of a floating-point number. It can contain a leading sign, any number of decimal digits, and a decimal point. It can be terminated with an exponent, which consists of the letter 'e' or 'E' followed by an optional leading sign and any number of decimal digits. For example,

```
123e-2
```

is a string that can be converted by **atof**.

**atof** ignores leading blanks and tabs; it stops scanning when it encounters any unrecognized character.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos**.

**See Also**

**atoi()**, **atol()**, **float**, **general functions**, **long**, **printf()**, **scanf()**

**Notes**

**atof** does not check to see if the value represented by *string* fits into a **double**. It returns zero if you hand it a string that it cannot interpret.

**atoi() — General Function (libc)**

Convert ASCII strings to integers

**int atoi(string) char \*string;**

**atoi** converts *string* into the binary representation of an integer. *string* may contain a leading sign and any number of decimal digits. **atoi** ignores leading blanks and tabs; it stops scanning when it encounters any non-numeral other than the leading sign, and returns the resulting **int**.

**Example**

The following demonstrates **atoi**. It takes a string typed at the terminal, turns it into an integer, then prints that integer on the screen. To exit, type <ctrl-C>.

```
main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern int atoi();
    char string[64];

    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter numeric string: ");
        if(gets(string))
            printf("%d\n", atoi(string));
        else
            break;
    }
}
```

**See Also****atof(), atol(), general functions, int, printf(), scanf()****Notes**

**atoi** does not check to see if the number represented by *string* fits into an **int**. It returns zero if you hand it a string that it cannot interpret.

**atol() — General Function**

Convert ASCII strings to long integers

**long atol(string) char \*string;**

**atol()** converts the argument *string* to a binary representation of a **long**. *string* may contain a leading sign (but no trailing sign) and any number of decimal digits. **atol()** ignores leading blanks and tabs; it stops scanning when it encounters any non-numeral other than the leading sign, and returns the resulting **long**.

**Example**

```
main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern long atol();
    char string[64];
```



```

for(;;) {
    printf("Enter numeric string: ");
    if(gets(string))
        printf("%ld\n", atol(string));
    else
        break;
}
}

```

### See Also

**atof()**, **atoi()**, **float**, **long**, **printf()**, **scanf()**

### Notes

No overflow checks are performed. **atol()** returns zero if it receives a string it cannot interpret.

## atrun — System Maintenance

Execute commands at a preset time

**atrun** is a program that executes programs at a time set by the command **at**.

When user **steve** types

```
at 1230 /v/steve/lunchtime
```

the command **at** creates a shell script in directory **/usr/spool/at** that contains the information needed to execute command **/v/steve/lunchtime** at a later time — in this instance, 12:30. The spooled file sits in **/usr/spool/at** until **/usr/lib/atrun** sees that the specified time has been reached, then it executes the spooled command and removes the entry from **/usr/spool/at**.

**atrun** is not a daemon; that is, it is invoked by another program, does its work and exits. Thus, it is typically run periodically from an entry in the file **/usr/lib/crontab**. See the article on **at** for more details.

### See Also

**at**, **system maintenance**

### Notes

Although **atrun** technically is a command, is never invoked directly by a user.

## auto — C Keyword

Note an automatic variable

**auto** is an abbreviation for an *automatic variable*. This is a variable that applies only to the function that invokes it, and vanishes when the function exits. The word **auto** is a C keyword, and must not be used to name any function, macro, or variable.

### See Also

**C keywords**, **extern**, **static**, **storage class**

## awk — Command

Pattern-scanning language

```
awk [-y][-Fc][-f progfile][prog][file ...]
```

**awk** is a general-purpose language designed for processing input data. Its features allow you to write programs that scan for patterns, produce reports, and filter relevant information from a mass of input data. It acts on each input *file* following the commands you write into an **awk** program.

**awk** reads the standard input if no *file* is specified, which allows it to act as a filter in a pipeline; the *file* name '-' means the standard input.

You can specify the program either as an argument *prog* (usually enclosed in quotation marks to prevent interpretation by the shell **sh**) or in the form **-f progfile**, where *progfile* contains the **awk** program. If no **-f** option appears, the first non-option argument is the **awk** program *prog*.

The option flag **-y** specifies that any lower-case alphabetic character in a regular expression pattern should match both itself and the corresponding upper-case letter. This is identical to the matching found in the pattern-matching program **grep** with the **-y** option.

**awk** views its input as a sequence of records, each consisting of zero or more fields. By default, newlines separate records and white space (spaces or tabs) separates fields. The option **-Fc** changes the input field separator characters to the characters in the string *c*. An **awk** program can also change the field and record separators. The program can access the values of each field and the entire record through built-in variables.

For details on the construction of **awk** programs, consult the tutorial to **awk** that appears in this manual. Briefly, an **awk** program consists of one or more lines, each containing a *pattern* or an *action*, or both. A *pattern* determines whether **awk** performs the associated *action*. It may consist of regular expressions, line ranges, boolean combinations of variables, and beginning and end of input-text predicates. If no *pattern* is specified, **awk** executes the *action* (the pattern matches by default).

An *action* is enclosed in braces. The syntax of actions is C-like, and consists of simple and compound statements constructed from constants (numbers, strings), input fields, built-in and user-defined variables, and built-in functions. If an *action* is missing, **awk** prints the entire input record (line).

Unlike **lex** or **yacc**, **awk** does not compile programs into an executable image, but interprets them directly. Thus, **awk** is ideal for quickly-implemented, one-shot efforts.

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the economy of expression of **awk** programs.

The first example prints all lines containing the string "COHERENT" (identical to **grep COHERENT**):

```
/COHERENT/
```

The built-in variable **NR** is the number of the current input record, so the following program prints the number of records (lines) in the input stream.

```
END { print NR }
```

The built-in variable **\$3** gives the value of the third field of the current record, so the following program sums the elements in column three of an input table and prints the total:

```
{ sum += $3 }  
END { print sum }
```

## See Also

**commands, grep, lex, sed, yacc**  
*Introduction to the awk Language*

## Notes

There is no way to have a null field, such as is necessary to describe the colon-separated fields in **/etc/passwd**.

**awk** converts between strings and numbers automatically. Adding zero to a string forces **awk** to treat it as a number; concatenating "" to a number forces **awk** to treat it as a string.



### **bad** — Command

Maintain list of bad blocks

**bad** *option filesystem* [ *block ...* ]

A hard disk or floppy disk may have bad blocks on it: a “bad block” is a portion of disk that is flawed, and so cannot be used reliably because read or write errors occur on them. Bad blocks can result from microscopic flaws in the disk surface, and it is the unusual disk that is free of them. The COHERENT system keeps a list of bad blocks so it can avoid using them.

The command **bad** maintains the bad-block list for the given *filesystem*, which must be a block-special file. *option* must be exactly one of the characters **a****c****d****l**, which tell **bad** to do one of the following:

- a**     Add each given *block* to the bad-block list
- c**     Clear the bad-block list
- d**     Delete each given *block* from the bad-block list
- l**     List all blocks on the bad-block list

**bad** does not deallocate any i-node associated with a block when adding it to the bad-block list. You should run the command **icheck** with the **-s** option immediately after **bad** to correct the problem, or run the command **fsck**.

*filesystem* should be unmounted if possible. The user who invokes **bad** must have appropriate permissions for the given *filesystem*. For many file systems, only the superuser may use **bad** to change the bad-block list. Use the command **badscan** to create a prototype file.

When the **mkfs** command creates a file system, the prototype specification may include a bad block list for the new file system.

### **See Also**

**badscan**, **commands**, **icheck**, **mkfs**, **umount**

### **badscan** — Command

Build bad block list

**/etc/badscan** [ **-v** ] [ **-o proto** ] [ **-b boot** ] *device size*  
**/etc/badscan** [ **-v** ] [ **-o proto** ] [ **-b boot** ] *device xdevice*

**badscan** scans a floppy disk or a partition of the hard disk for bad blocks. It writes onto the standard output a prototype file that lists all bad blocks on the disk.

**badscan** recognizes the following options:

- v**             Print an estimate of time needed to finish examining the device.

**-o proto**      Redirect output into file *proto*.

**-b boot**      Insert a given *boot* into the proto file as the bootstrap. The default is **/conf/boot**.

*device* names the special device to scan.

The command line for **badscan** comes in two forms, as shown at the top of this article. The first version is for a floppy disk; *size* gives the size of the device, in blocks. The second version is for a hard-disk partition; *xdevice* specifies devices **/dev/at0x** or **/dev/at1x**, which uses the partitionable information in the master boot block of the drive to find the size of the **device**. Use **/dev/at0x** when examining a partition on hard-disk drive 0, and **/dev/at1x** when examining a partition on hard-disk drive 1.

### Examples

The first example uses **badscan** to find all bad blocks on a high-density, 3.5-inch floppy disk in drive 1 (i.e., drive B), and writes its output into file **proto**:

```
/etc/badscan -v -o proto /dev/rfval 2880
```

See the article **floppy disks** for a table that gives the device name and number of sectors to be found on the various types of floppy disk that COHERENT recognizes.

The second example uses **badscan** to prepare a list of bad blocks for partition 2 on hard-drive 0, which is an IDE drive accessed via COHERENT's **at** driver. Again, the output is written into file **proto**:

```
/etc/badscan -v -o /conf/proto.at0c /dev/rat0c /dev/at0x
```

### See Also

**at**, **bad**, **commands**, **floppy disks**, **mkfs**

### Notes

Because SCSI hard-disk drives maintain their own map of bad blocks, **badscan** is not required for SCSI drives, and should not be used with them.

## **banner — Command**

Print large letters

**banner** [*argument* ... ]

**banner** prints large (seven-character by five-character) letters on the standard output. Each *argument* produces one large text output line. If there is no *argument*, each line from the standard input produces one line of large-text output.

### See Also

**commands**, **libmisc**, **lpr**, **pr**

## **basename — Command**

Strip path information from a file name

**basename** *file* [ *suffix* ]

**basename** strips its argument *file* of any leading directory prefixes. If the result contains the optional *suffix*, **basename** also strips it. **basename** prints the result on the standard output.

For example, the command

```
basename /usr/fred/source.c
```

returns

```
source.c
```

**basename** is most useful when it is used with other shell commands. For example, the command

```
for i in *.c
do
    cp $i `basename $i .c`.backup
done
```

copies every file that has the suffix **.c** into an identically named file that has the suffix **.backup**.

### See Also

**commands, ksh, sh**

## bc — Command

Interactive calculator with arbitrary precision

**bc** [ **-l** ] [ *file* ... ]

**bc** is a language that performs calculations on numbers with an arbitrary number of digits. **bc** is most commonly used as an interactive calculator, where the user types arithmetic expressions in a syntax reminiscent of C. If **bc** is invoked with no *file* arguments on its command line, it reads the standard input. For example:

Input	Output
bc	
(1000+23)*42	42966
k = 2^10	
16 * k	16384
2 ^ 100	1267650600228229401496703205376

**bc** may also be invoked with one or more *file* arguments. After **bc** reads each *file*, it reads the standard input. This provides a convenient way to access programs in files. A library of mathematical functions is available, obtained by using the **-l** option.

The following summarizes briefly the facilities provided by **bc**. More information is available in the tutorial to **bc** that is included with this manual.

Comments are enclosed between the delimiters **'/\*** and **\*/**. Names of variables or functions must begin with a lower-case letter, and may have any number of subsequent letters or digits. Names may not begin with an upper-case letter because numbers with a base greater than ten may need upper-case letters for their notation. The three built-in variables **obase**, **ibase**, and **scale** represent the number base for printing numbers (default, ten), the number base for reading numbers (default, ten), and the number of digits after the decimal (radix) point (default, zero), respectively. Variables may be simple variables or arrays, and need not be pre-declared, with the exception of variables internal to functions. Some examples of variables and array elements are **x25**, **array[10]**, and **number**.

Numbers are any string of digits, and may have one decimal point. Digits are taken from the ordinary digits (0-9) and then the upper-case letters (A-F), in that order.

Certain names are reserved for use as key words. The key words recognized by **bc** include the following:

### if, for, do, while

Test conditions and define loops, with syntax identical to C

**break, continue**

Alter control flow within **for** and **while** loops.

**quit** Tell **bc** to exit immediately

**define function** (*arg*, ..., *arg*)

Define a **bc** function by a compound statement, as in C.

**auto var**, ..., *var*

Define variables that are local to a function, rather than having global scope.

**return** (*value*)

Return a value from a function.

**scale** (*value*)

Return the number of digits to the right of the decimal point in *value*.

**sqrt** (*value*)

Return the square root of *value*

**length** (*value*)

Return the number of decimal digits in *value*.

The following operators are recognized:

+	-	*	/	%	^	++
--	=	+=	--	*=	/=	%=
^=	==	!=	<	<=	>	>=

These operators are similar to those in C, with the exception of **^** and **^=**, which are exponentiation operators. Expressions can be grouped with parentheses. Statements are separated with semicolons or newlines, and may be made into compound statements with braces. **bc** prints the value of any statement that is an expression but is not an assignment.

As in the editor **ed**, an **!** at the beginning of a line causes that line to be sent as a command to the COHERENT shell **sh**.

The built-in mathematics library contains the following functions and variables:

<b>atan</b> ( <i>z</i> )	Arctangent of <i>z</i>
<b>cos</b> ( <i>z</i> )	Cosine of <i>z</i>
<b>exp</b> ( <i>z</i> )	Exponential function of <i>z</i>
<b>j</b> ( <i>n</i> , <i>z</i> )	<i>n</i> th order Bessel function of <i>z</i>
<b>ln</b> ( <i>z</i> )	Natural logarithm of <i>z</i>
<b>pi</b>	Value of pi to 100 digits
<b>sin</b> ( <i>z</i> )	Sine of <i>z</i>

### Examples

The first example calculates the factorial of its positive integer argument by recursion.

```
/*
 * Factorial function implemented by recursion.
 */
define fact(n) {
    if (n <= 1) return (n);
    return (n * fact(n-1));
}
```

The second example also calculates the factorial of its positive integer argument, this time by iteration.

```
/*
 * Factorial function implemented by iteration.
 */
define fact(n) {
    auto result;

    result = 1;
    for (i=1; i<=n; i++) result *= i;
    return (result);
}
```

## Files

**/usr/lib/lib.b** — Source code for the library

## See Also

**commands**, **conv**, **dc**, **multi-precision arithmetic**  
*bc Desk Calculator Language*, tutorial

## Notes

Line numbers do not accompany error messages in source files.

## bind — Command

Bind key sequence to editing command

**bind [-m] [string [= command]]**

The command **bind** is used by the Korn shell **ksh** to bind one of its command-line editing commands to a given key sequence. The editing commands are used by **ksh** to perform its MicroEMACS-style command-line editing.

When **bind** is invoked without arguments, it lists on the standard output all current bindings.

When invoked with the syntax *string=command*, it binds the key-sequence *string* to the command. For example, the command

```
bind ^[X=end-of-line
```

binds the editing command **end-of-line** (which moves the cursor to the end of the command line) with the key sequence **<esc>X**. Note that **<esc>** is written **^[** — that is, a literal carat **^** followed by **[**.

When invoked with the syntax **-m string=commands**, *string* is bound to *commands*, which contains one or more editing commands. This form of the **bind** command lets you build keyboard macros that combine several editing commands into one keystroke sequence.

For the list of editing commands, their default bindings, and other details of using MicroEMACS-style command-line editing, see the Lexicon entry for **ksh**.

## See Also

**commands**, **ksh**

**bit — Definition**

**bit** is an abbreviation for “binary digit”. It is the basic unit of data processing. A bit can have a value of either zero or one. Bits can be concatenated to form bytes.

A bit can be used either as a placeholder to construct a number with an absolute value, or as a flag whose value has a particular meaning under specially defined circumstances. In the former use, a string of bits builds an integer. In the latter use, a string of bits forms a **map**, in which each bit has a meaning other than its numeric value.

**See Also**

**bit map, byte, definitions, nybble**

**bit-fields — Definition**

A *bit-field* is a member of a structure or **union** that is defined to be a cluster of bits. It provides a way to represent data compactly. For example, in the following structure

```
struct example {
    int member1;
    long member2;
    unsigned int member3 :5;
}
```

**member3** is declared to be a bit-field that consists of five bits. A colon ‘:’ precedes the integral constant that indicates the *width*, or the number of bits in the bit-field. Also, the bit-field declarator must include a type, which must be one of **int**, **signed int**, or **unsigned int**.

A bit-field that is not given a name may not be accessed. Such an object is useful as “padding” within an object so that it conforms to a template designed elsewhere.

A bit-field that is unnamed and has a length of zero can be used to force adjacent bit-fields into separate objects. For example, in the following structure

```
struct example {
    int member1;
    int member2 :5;
    int :0;
    int member3 :5;
};
```

the zero-length bit-field forces **member2** and **member3** to be written into separate objects.

Finally, it is illegal to take the address of a bit-field.

**See Also**

**bit, bit map, byte, definitions**

**Notes**

Because bit-fields have many implementation-specific properties, they are not considered to be highly portable. Bit-fields use minimal amounts of storage, but the amount of computation needed to manipulate and access them may negate this benefit. Bit-fields must be kept in integral-sized objects because many machines cannot directly access a quantity of storage smaller than a “word” (a word is generally used to store an **int**).



**bit map — Definition**

A **bit map** is a string of bits in which each bit has a symbolic, rather than numeric, value.

**See Also**

**bit, byte, definitions**

*The C Programming Language*, page 136

**Notes**

C permits the manipulation of bits within a byte through the use of bit-field routines. These generate code rather than calls to routines. Bit fields are generally less efficient than masking because they always generate masking and shifting.

**block — Technical Information**

A **block** is a mass of data that is read at one time. Blocks are different lengths under different operating systems; COHERENT defines a block as being **BSIZE** bytes long.

Information is read in blocks from block-special devices, such as the hard disk or floppy disks. This is done to increase the speed with which data are read from these devices; reading characters one at a time, such as is done with character-special devices such as terminals or modems, would be too slow.

**See Also**

**technical information**

**boot — Driver**

Boot block for hard-disk partition/nine-sector diskette

Several different programs are used to load COHERENT from a floppy or hard disk into memory. This process is called *bootstrapping* (from the old expression about pulling one's self up by one's bootstraps) or *booting* for short. The program used depends upon whether one is loading COHERENT from a hard-disk partition, from a 5.25-inch floppy disk, or from a 3.5-inch floppy disk. All of these programs are installed onto your computer during normal installation.

**mboot** is the master boot program. This is code that resides in the first 446 bytes of the first sector on the hard disk. Because this sector also contains the partition table for the hard disk, **mboot** is normally written to the hard drive only during installation and only by the **fdisk** utility.

**boot**, **boot.fha**, and **boot.fva** are variations of the same program. **boot** occupies the first sector of any bootable hard-drive partition. **boot.fha** occupies the first sector of a 5.25-inch, high-density floppy disk. **boot.fva** occupies the first sector of a 3.5-inch, high-density floppy disk.

**boot** is normally copied to the root partition automatically during installation by a command such as:

```
/bin/dd if=/conf/boot of=/dev/at0a count=1
```

In another example, the following commands format and create a file system on a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk:

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 2400
/bin/cp /conf/boot.fha /dev/fha0
```

When invoked, **boot** loads for the tertiary boot program **tboot**. This, in turn, searches the root directory '/' for file **autoboot**, which is the COHERENT kernel. If it finds this kernel, **boot** loads and invokes it. Otherwise, it gives the prompt **?**, and you must type the name of the operating-system kernel to load (typically, "coherent"). If **boot** cannot find the requested kernel or if an error occurs,

**boot** does not print an error message, but re-prompts with '?'.

### Files

**/conf/boot** — Boot for AT partitions  
**/conf/boot.at** — Boot for AT partitions (linked to **/conf/boot**)  
**/conf/boot.atx** — AT master boot (linked to **/conf/mboot**)  
**/conf/boot.f9a** — Boot for single-density, nine-sector, 5.25-inch floppy disk  
**/conf/boot.fha** — Boot for 15-sector, 5.25-inch floppy disk  
**/conf/boot.fqa** — Boot for quad-density, nine-sector, 3.5-inch floppy disk  
**/conf/boot.fva** — Boot for 18-sector, 3.5-inch floppy disk  
**/conf/mboot** — AT master boot

### See Also

**device drivers**, **fdisk**, **mboot**, **mkfs**, **tboot**

### **boot.fha** — Device Driver

Boot block for floppy disk

To be bootable, a COHERENT file system must contain a boot block (either **boot** or **boot.fha**). In addition, all hard disks must contain the master boot block **mboot** or an equivalent.

**boot.fha** is a boot block for a hard disk partition or a 15-sector floppy. It must be installed as the first sector of the partition or diskette, as follows:

```
/etc/fdformat -a /dev/fha0
/etc/badscan -v -o proto1 /dev/fha0 2400
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 proto1
rm proto1
cp /conf/boot.fha /dev/fha0
```

**boot.fha** searches its root directory '/' for file **autoboot**. If it finds this kernel, **boot.fha** loads and runs it. Otherwise, it gives the prompt '?', to which the user must type the name of the operating-system kernel to load (typically, **coherent**). If **boot.fha** cannot find the requested kernel or if an error occurs, **boot.fha** repeats the prompt and the user must type another name.

### Files

**/conf/boot.fha** — Partition or 15-sector 96tpi floppy boot block

### See Also

**badscan**, **boot**, **device drivers**, **fdisk**, **mboot**, **mkfs**

### **booting** — Technical Information

How booting works

*Booting* is the method by which COHERENT is loaded from a hard disk or floppy disk and set into action. The term comes from the old expression about pulling one's self up by one's bootstraps.

This article discusses the events that take place while booting the COHERENT system. You do not need to read this article to know how to boot COHERENT, as all booting details are handled by COHERENT automatically. However, if you are interested in the details, or want to tailor the system to your needs, it will help.

Two I/O devices are involved in booting. The first device is called the *boot* device; it contains the program necessary to invoke the COHERENT system and start it running. The second device is called the *root* device; it contains the root file system after the system is running. In most cases, these two devices are the same physical device.

## Kernel Variables

Please note that the COHERENT 286 kernel references variables with a trailing underscore character; for example, **atparm\_**. The COHERENT 386 kernel, however, does *not* use a trailing underscore; for example, **atparm**.

The following descriptions apply to both COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386, but the notation will be in the COHERENT-386 form.

## Initial Startup

When you boot from a hard disk, your computer's BIOS loads the master boot from the first sector of your hard disk into memory. The master boot then loads the secondary boot from the first sector of your boot partition. When you boot from a floppy disk, however, the BIOS loads the secondary boot directly.

This program, called the *bootstrap* or *secondary boot*, is very small (only 512 bytes), so it cannot do very much. Therefore, its main purpose is to read in a larger, more complex program called the *tertiary boot*, or **/tboot**. It is **/tboot** that actually performs the work of loading the COHERENT system into memory.

If the secondary boot does not find a file called **/tboot**, it print a '?' to prompt for the boot image you want it to load. This indicates a severe error because it means that the tertiary boot can not be found.

If the secondary boot finds **/tboot**, it loads it into memory and lets it take over booting. The first thing **/tboot** does is search for a file called **/autoboot** in the root directory of the device being booted. If **/tboot** finds **/autoboot**, it first pauses for five seconds, so you can abort the process and boot another kernel if you wish. If you do not abort booting within five seconds, **/tboot** then loads **/autoboot** into memory and runs it. If, however, **/tboot** cannot find **/autoboot**, it prompts you to type the name of the COHERENT image to boot, usually **/coherent**. You can type the commands **dir** or **ls** if you do not remember the name of the image you wish to boot. Note that **/autoboot** is usually a link to **/coherent**.

If you need to find the file name of the kernel you are now running (usually **/coherent**), use the program **fifo()**, which is kept in library **libmisc**. See the Lexicon entry **libmisc** for details.

After it loads the system image **coherent** from the root device, the system initializes all devices, as well as starting the *idle* process and program **/etc/init**. The idle process uses any leftover computer time.

**init** controls the operation of the system from this point on. It first executes the command **/etc/brc** (i.e., "boot run commands"), which can run commands like **fsck**. **brc** can request a reboot, remain in single-user mode, or enter multi-user mode automatically. **init** then calls the *shell* to handle commands from the system console. The shell responds by prompting with **#**, and expects regular commands. At this point, the system is in *single-user mode*, which means that no other users can log in to the system. The shell is running in superuser mode and only the console's user is logged in.

At this point, you can enter commands to the system in a normal fashion. One difference from normal, multi-user operation is that the system is in single-user mode, to allow special processing to take place before other users log in. Being in single-user mode gives you the opportunity to run **fsck** to check the file system and perform other administrative tasks before other users log into the system.

When administrative activities are finished, you should type **<ctrl-D>**. This terminates single-user operation; **init** then opens the system to other users.

The file **/etc/rc** contains shell commands that the system executes just before making the system available to other users. This file typically includes commands to delete temporary files and mount

standard devices. It also performs any installation-specific commands you require. As system administrator, you maintain this file. You must be sure that it is properly updated and never removed.

One command that must be included in **/etc/rc** is **/etc/update**, which periodically calls **sync()** to update buffered data to the disk.

**init** also maintains the file **/etc/utmp**, which notes users' login and logout.

### **Features of the Master Bootstrap**

The COHERENT master bootstrap allows you to boot different operating systems from different partitions of any hard drive. It is more powerful than similar programs of other operating systems, and we strongly recommend that you use it. If you do not use the MWC bootstrap, you may have to use floppy disks to boot up MS-DOS and COHERENT. If you have two hard drives and you are placing COHERENT on the second drive, you must use the MWC bootstrap.

The bootstrap can be configured in three ways:

1. No active partition. With this configuration, you have the greatest degree of flexibility. When you boot your system, the following prompt appears on the screen:

Select Partition 0-7

This means that you must press the number key that corresponds to the partition that holds the root partition of the operating system you wish to boot. (For example, if you wish to boot COHERENT and its root partition is on partition 2, then press the '2' key in response to this prompt.) If you have one hard drive, only partitions 0 through 3 are relevant to you. The bootstrap waits indefinitely until you tell it what to boot.

2. COHERENT is active partition. Under this configuration, the system will automatically boot COHERENT unless you press the number key that represents the root partition of another operating system (e.g., MS-DOS) while the A-drive light is on.
3. MS-DOS (or another operating system) is active partition. Under this configuration, the system automatically boots MS-DOS unless you hit the number key that represents the root partition of another operating system (e.g., COHERENT) while the A-drive light is on.

Under some hardware configurations, particularly faster 80386 machines, having an active partition can cause difficulties when you try to boot a non-active partition. It often is difficult to press the appropriate number key at the right time, and the right time itself can vary. For this reason, the default setting of the master bootstrap is to have no active partition. If at any time you wish to reconfigure the bootstrap, you need only to run the **fdisk** utility under COHERENT and access option 1 (Change active partition) of the option menu. Make the desired change and then save the updated partition table.

### **Files Used During Startup**

The following files are used when the system is in single-user mode:

<b>/etc/drvld</b>	Load device drivers.
<b>/etc/init</b>	Initiate a process on each terminal line, call login when appropriate.
<b>/etc/brc</b>	Shell commands for booting.
<b>/etc/checklist</b>	List of partitions for <b>fsck</b> to check.
<b>/bin/sh</b>	Bourne shell.
<b>/bin/ksh</b>	Korn shell.

The following files are needed after the system has entered multi-user mode:

<b>/bin/login</b>	This file holds the program that controls logging in.
<b>/etc/getty</b>	This file holds the executable program that permits a user to log in on a port.
<b>/etc/logmsg</b>	This file holds the text of the login prompt.
<b>/etc/motd</b>	This file holds the message of the day.
<b>/etc/mount.all</b>	Shell script to mount partitions.
<b>/etc/rc</b>	This file holds a series of shell commands that <b>coherent</b> executes when it enters multi-user startup.
<b>/etc/ttys</b>	This file holds information about terminals. Its contents are read by <b>getty</b> to ensure that it sets the port to the correct baud rate and terminal type.
<b>/etc/utmp</b>	This file holds information about who is logged in right now. It is read by the command <b>who</b> .

### ***Building a Bootable Floppy Disk***

Building a bootable floppy disk for COHERENT requires a few more steps than are required to build a bootable floppy for MS-DOS. The task is not particularly painful, it simply requires a little more attention to detail.

The following details the steps required to build a version of COHERENT that can be booted off a floppy disk.

#### **1. Format the Floppy Disk**

To begin, format the floppy disk with the command **/etc/fdformat**. After you format the floppy disk, use the command **/etc/mkfs** command to write a blank file system onto it.

#### **2. Write a Bootstrap to the Floppy Disk**

To make the floppy disk bootable, you must copy a special program, or *bootstrap*, to the first sector (or *boot block*) of the floppy disk. (This is the same program that is called the *secondary boot* in the above sections.) The boot block is the first sector of the floppy disk read when a computer boots. If a floppy disk is to be bootable, a set of instructions must be present in the boot block that tell the system the name of the kernel — that is, the file on the floppy disk to be loaded and executed.

To write the bootstrap to the floppy disk, you must copy it to the *device* that the floppy disk is in. This ensures that the bootstrap is copied to the first sector, or boot block, of the floppy disk. For example, to copy the bootstrap for a 1.2-megabyte floppy disk in floppy drive 0 (or A), type the command:

```
cp /conf/boot.fha /dev/fha0
```

To copy the bootstrap for a 1.44-megabyte floppy disk to floppy drive 0, type the command:

```
cp /conf/boot.fva /dev/fva0
```

After you have copied the boot sector, you must mount the floppy device and copy **/tboot** to it. To mount a 1.44-megabyte floppy disk to floppy drive 0, type the command:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fva0 /f0
```

Copy **/tboot** with the following command:

```
cp /tboot /f0
```

Warning: *Never* mount the floppy disk before you copy the bootstrap to it!

See the Lexicon article on **floppy disks** for the table of floppy disk devices to use with the

above commands.

For COHERENT, the bootstrap to be written to the floppy disk tell your computer to look for **/tboot**. If this file does not exist, the prompt

AT boot ?

appears; in response, you must type the name of the kernel for booting to continue. Note that you may not be able to load a kernel bigger than 128 kilobytes in this case.

Note that unlike the routine of booting from the hard-disk drive, booting from the floppy-disk drive involves only three steps, not four: the master bootstrap program is skipped, but everything else is the same.

The directory **/conf** contains the bootstraps necessary for all sizes of floppy disks, for hard-drive partitions, and for the master-boot block of a hard drive. Choose the proper bootstrap for your disk and copy it to the floppy disk.

### 3. Copy the Necessary Files

Once the bootstrap is properly written to the floppy disk, it is now time to mount the floppy disk and copy the essential files to it.

The following files must be present on the bootable floppy disk, in the directories indicated:

/tboot	/etc/init	/etc/drvid
/coherent	/etc/brc	/drv/*
/bin/sh	/etc/drvid.all	
/bin/sync	/conf/kbd/*	

You must copy directory **/drv** to the boot floppy only if you wish to use loadable drivers from the boot floppy. The command **/etc/drvid** must be present only if you will use loadable drivers from the boot floppy. Directory **/dev** must also be present on the boot floppy. Use the command **cpdir** to copy it from the hard drive — *not* the command **cp**.

Note that the files **/etc/brc** and **/etc/drvid.all** are scripts that you must modify to suit your needs. The file **/etc/brc** is a key file in the booting process, so be prepared to modify its contents. The significance of this will be reviewed in depth in the next section.

**Warning:** Be sure to execute the command **umount** to unmount the floppy-disk device after you have copied all files to it!

### 4. The Boot Sequence, Modifications To Make the Disk Work

When the computer system powers up and accesses the floppy disk, it reads the boot sector of the disk, which in turn looks for the file **/tboot** and executes it. **/tboot** looks for the kernel named **/autoboot**, reads it, and executes it. If **/tboot** cannot find **/autoboot**, it prompts you to type the name of the kernel to boot.

The kernel loads and invokes **/etc/init** which, in part, looks for and executes the statements in **/etc/brc**, which, in turn, typically loads loadable drivers and runs **/etc/fsck** to check the file systems. If you wish to run **fsck** on the floppy disk, you must copy it from the hard drive.

What is truly important is the *exit status* of **/etc/brc**. If its exit status is not zero, the system remains in single-user mode. If its exit status is zero, the system attempts to enter multiuser mode.

The above-listed files are the bare minimum for a single-user floppy disk. To build a floppy disk with the minimum files needed, your **/etc/brc** file should look like this:

```
/etc/drvld.all
exit 1
```

This forces an exit status of one and causes COHERENT to spawn a single-user shell, **/bin/sh**.

From the shell prompt, you can do whatever you wish, but you are limited to the commands and functions copied to the floppy disk.

**/etc/brc** is not the only file that may need modification. The kernel (**/coherent** or **/autoboot**) must have the values **rootdev** and **pipedev** patched for the floppy disk's major and minor device numbers. This patching can be done with the commands **/bin/db** or **/conf/patch**.

To patch the kernel on the floppy disk mounted on **/f0** for a 5.25-inch, high-density disk as the root and pipe device, type:

```
/conf/patch /f0/coherent rootdev=makedev\4,14\
/conf/patch /f0/coherent pipedev=makedev\4,14\
```

For a 3.5-inch, high-density disk, type:

```
/conf/patch /f0/coherent rootdev=makedev\4,15\
/conf/patch /f0/coherent pipedev=makedev\4,15\
```

### Uses of a Bootable Floppy Disk

A bootable floppy disk can be a lifesaver should something occur to corrupt the COHERENT file system on the hard drive. A properly prepared floppy can be used to recover a damaged file system by running **/etc/fsck**. You can also use it to copy files from the hard drive should you decide to re-install COHERENT on the hard drive.

Multiuser-mode floppy disks can also be built for the fun of seeing such a system run from a floppy disk. The capacity of such a system is limited, of course, but it can be done.

### See Also

**boot**, **libmisc**, **technical information**, **tboot**

## boottime — System Maintenance

File that holds time system was last booted

**/etc/boottime** is an empty file maintained by the **init** process and the **date** command. The modification time of **boottime**, as displayed by the command **ls -l**, is the time that the system was last booted. You can read the time shown by **boottime** with **ls -l**, or with the system calls **stat** or **fstat**.

### Files

**/etc/boottime**

### See Also

**date**, **init**, **mount**, **system maintenance**

### Notes

Commands that depend upon **/etc/boottime** may malfunction if the system's date is not set correctly. For instance, the **mount** command depends on the relative modification times of **/etc/boottime** and **/etc/mstab** to detect whether the mount table has been invalidated by a system boot. If the date is set sufficiently far into the past, the mount table may appear to be valid when in fact it is not.

**brc — System Maintenance**

Perform maintenance chores, single-user mode  
**/etc/brc**

The shell script **/etc/brc** is executed by the **init** process when the COHERENT system enters single-user mode. The commands in **brc** do such things as set system clock, set the local time zone, and call **fsck** to scan and (if necessary) fix all file systems on your machine.

**See Also**

**init, rc, system maintenance**

**break — Command**

Exit from shell construct

**break** [ *n* ]

The command **break** is used with the shell to control how it performs loops. It is analogous to the **break** keyword in C.

When it is used without an argument, **break** forces the shell to exit from the innermost current **for**, **until**, or **while** loop. If used with an argument, **break** exits from *n* levels of **for**, **until**, or **while** loops.

The shell executes **break** directly.

**See Also**

**commands, continue, for, ksh, sh, until, while**

**break — C Keyword**

Exit from loop or switch statement

**break** is a C statement that causes an immediate exit from a **switch** sequence, or from a **while**, **for**, or **do** loop.

**See Also**

**C keywords**

**brk() — System Call**

Change size of data area

**brk(addr)**

**char \*addr;**

The **break** is the lowest address above the data area of a process. **brk()** sets the break to the given **addr**, possibly rounding up by some machine-dependent factor. It returns zero on success, -1 on failure.

**See Also**

**end, exec, malloc(), sbrk(), system calls**

**Diagnostics**

**brk()** sets **errno** to **ENOMEM** if the request fails.



**bsearch()** — General Function (libc)

Search an array

```
#include <stdlib.h>
```

```
char *bsearch(key, array, number, size, comparison)
```

```
char *key, *array;
```

```
size_t number, size;
```

```
int (*comparison)();
```

**bsearch()** searches a sorted array for a given item. *item* points to the object sought. *array* points to the base of the array; it has *number* elements, each of which is *size* bytes long. Its elements must be sorted into ascending order before it is searched by **bsearch()**.

*comparison* points to the function that compares array elements. *comparison* must return zero if its arguments match, a number greater than zero if the element pointed to by *arg1* is greater than the element pointed to by *arg2*, and a number less than zero if the element pointed to by *arg1* is less than the element pointed to by *arg2*.

**bsearch()** returns a pointer to the array element that matches *item*. If no element matches *item*, then **bsearch()** returns NULL. If more than one element within *array* matches *item*, which element is matched is unspecified.

**Example**

This example uses **bsearch** to translate English into "bureaucrat-ese".

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
#include <stdlib.h>
```

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
struct syntab {
```

```
    char *english, *bureaucratic;
```

```
} cdtab[] = {
```

```
/* The left column is in alphabetical order */
```

```
    "affect",      "impact",
    "after",       "subsequent to",
    "broke",       "revenue shortfall",
    "building",    "physical facility",
    "call",        "refer to as",
    "do",          "implement",
    "false",       "inoperative",
    "finish",      "finalize",
    "first",       "initial",
    "full",        "in-depth",
    "help",        "facilitate",
```

```
"idiot",      "elected representative",
"kill",      "terminate with extreme prejudice",
"lie",       "inoperative statement",
"order",     "prioritize",
"talk",      "interpersonal communication",
"then",      "at that point in time",
"use",       "utilize"
};

int
comparator(key, item)
char *key;
struct syntab *item;
{
    return(strcmp(key, item->english));
}

main()
{
    struct syntab *ans;
    char buf[80];

    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter an English word: ");
        fflush(stdout);

        if(gets(buf) || !strcmp(buf, "quit") == NULL)
            break;

        if((ans = bsearch(buf, (char *)cdtab,
                          sizeof(cdtab)/ sizeof(struct syntab),
                          sizeof(struct syntab),
                          comparator)) == NULL)
            printf("%s not found\n");
        else
            printf("Don't say \"%s\"; say \"%s\"!\n",
                  ans->english, ans->bureaucratic);
    }
}
```

### See Also

**general functions, qsort(), stdlib.h**

### Notes

The name **bsearch** implies that this function performs a binary search. A binary search looks at the midpoint of the array, and compares it with the element being sought. If that element matches, then the work is done. If it does not, then **bsearch** checks the midpoint of either the upper half of the array or of the lower half, depending upon whether the midpoint of the array is larger or smaller than the item being sought. **bsearch** bisects smaller and smaller regions of the array until it either finds a match or can bisect no further.

It is important that the input *array* be sorted, or **bsearch** will not function correctly.

## LEXICON

**buf.h — Header File**

Buffer header

#include &lt;sys/buf.h&gt;

**buf.h** defines the structure used to hold buffers.**See Also**

header files

**buffer — Definition**

A **buffer** is a portion of memory set aside to hold data read from or to be written to another process or device. Often, although not always, this involves setting aside a portion of the arena with **malloc** or its related functions.

Buffering, and problems therewith, are encountered most often when using the standard input and output (STDIO) routines. Many operating systems (including COHERENT) automatically place data from a peripheral device into a buffer. Buffers normally can be cleared with **fflush**, by pressing the carriage return key on routines that perform input, or by sending a newline character on routines that perform output. The function **fclose**, which closes a file stream, flushes all buffers associated with that stream. **exit** calls **fclose**.

Combining unbuffered and buffered I/O functions on the same file or device within one program will produce results that are at best unpredictable.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates what does and does not happen when you use **fflush** with the output buffer.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    extern char *malloc();
    char *buffer;

    /* use malloc() to create a 120-char buffer */
    if ((buffer = malloc(120)) == NULL) {
        /* if malloc() fails, bail out */
        fprintf(stderr, "malloc failed\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    printf("Type your name: ");
    fflush(stdout);
    gets(buffer);
    printf("Your name is %s\n", buffer);
}
```

**See Also**

arena, array, close, definitions, exit, fflush, malloc, STDIO

**build — Command**

Install COHERENT onto a hard disk  
**/etc/build**

**build** installs COHERENT onto your hard disk. COHERENT runs **/etc/build** to install itself onto your hard disk. After installation, you should never have an occasion to run **build**.

**See Also**

**commands**

**builtin — Command**

Execute a command as a built-in command  
**builtin** *command* [*arg* ...]

The command **ksh** is used by the Korn shell **ksh** to establish *command* as a built-in command.

**See Also**

**commands, ksh**

**byte — Definition**

A **byte** is a group of bits that encodes a character or a small-integer quantity. A byte, like a dollar, consists of eight bits.

The ANSI Standard defines the data type **char** as being equal to one byte. It defines all other data types as multiples of **char**.

**See Also**

**bit, char, data formats, definitions, nybble**

**byte ordering — Technical information**

Machine-dependent ordering of bytes

**Byte ordering** is the order in which a given machine stores successive bytes of a multibyte data item. Different machines order bytes differently.

The following example displays a few simple examples of byte ordering:

```
main()
{
    union
    {
        char b[4];
        int i[2];
        long l;
    } u;
    u.l = 0x12345678L;

    printf(" %x %x %x %x\n",
        u.b[0], u.b[1], u.b[2], u.b[3]);
    printf(" %x %x\n", u.i[0], u.i[1]);
    printf(" %lx\n", u.l);
}
```

When run on “big-endian” machines, such as the M68000 or the Z8000, the program gives the following results:

```
12 34 56 78
1234 5678
12345678
```

As you can see, the order of bytes and words from low to high memory is the same as is represented on the screen.

However, when this program is run on “little-endian” machines, such as the PDP-11, you see these results:

```
34 12 78 56
1234 5678
12345678
```

As you can see, the PDP-11 inverts the order of bytes within words in memory.

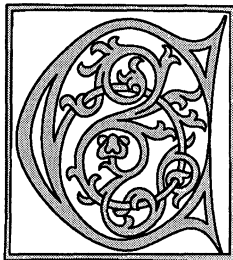
Finally, when the program is run on the i8086 you see these results:

```
78 56 34 12
5678 1234
12345678
```

The i8086 inverts both words and long words.

### ***See Also***

**C language, canon.h, data formats, technical information**

**c — Command**

Print multi-column output

**c** [ **-lN** ] [ **-wN** ] [ **-012** ]

**c** reads lines from the standard input and writes them in columns on the standard output. The longest input line and the width of the page determine how many columns will fit across the page.

**c** recognizes the following options:

- lN** Set the length of the page to *N* lines. **c** columnizes its output by pages when this option is used with mode 1 or mode 2.
- wN** Set the width of the page to *N* characters. The default is 80.
- 0** Multi-column mode 0. Order the fields horizontally across the page.
- 1** Multi-column mode 1 (default mode). Order the fields vertically down each column; the last column may be short.
- 2** Multi-column mode 2. Order the fields similarly to mode 1, but place blank fields in the last output line rather than the last column.

Options may also be given in the environmental variable **C**, separated by white space. Command line options override options in the environment. For example,

```
export C="-l56 -w72 -2"
c -w80 <file1
```

has the same effect as

```
c -l56 -w72 -2 -w80 <file1
```

This command sets the page width to 80 rather than to 72.

**See Also**

**commands**, **export**, **pr**

**Diagnostics**

**c** prints "out of memory" and returns an exit status of one if it cannot allocate enough memory to process its input.

**cabs()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Complex absolute value function

**#include <math.h>**

**double cabs(z) struct { double r, i; } z;**

**cabs()** computes the absolute value, or modulus, of its complex argument *z*. The absolute value of a complex number is the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle whose sides are given by the real part *r* and the imaginary part *i*. The result is the square root of the sum of the squares of the parts.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

### See Also

**hypot()**, **mathematics library**

## cal — Command

Print a calendar

**cal** [ *month* ] [ *year* ]

**cal** prints a calendar for the specified *year* (by default, the current year), or for the given *month* if one is specified. If neither is specified, a calendar of the current month is printed. *year* must be between 1 and 9999. *month* may be either the month name (lower case, spelled out or first three letters) or a number between 1 and 12.

For example, try:

```
cal september 1752
```

### See Also

**commands**

### Notes

**cal** assumes that the Gregorian calendar was adopted on September 3, 1752, which is the date of its adoption throughout the British empire.

## calendar — Command

Reminder service

**calendar** [ **-a** ] [ **-f***file* ]... [ **-d**[*date*] ] [ **-w**[*date*] ] [ **-m**[*month*] ]

**calendar** is the COHERENT system's "reminder service". It reads a calendar file, which should contain information organized by date; if an event is scheduled to happen today or tomorrow, **calendar** prints the entry on the standard output. Thus, you can use **calendar** to remind you of both one-time events (such as appointments) and yearly events (such as anniversaries).

**calendar** recognizes the following command-line options:

- a** Search the calendars of all users and send mail. Default is to search only your calendar.
- f***file* Search each "file" in order given. Default is **\$HOME/.calendar**.
- d**[*date*] Print all entries for "date". Default date is today.
- w**[*date*] Print all entries for the week beginning with "date". Default is to print entries for today and tomorrow, with "tomorrow" encompassing the following Monday should "today" be a Friday.
- m**[*month*] Print entries for the given "month".

The following gives an example of a calendar file. Note that **calendar** understands different formats of dates:

```
Apr 16    Dave's birthday
7/6       Dad's birthday
Sep 26    Mom's birthday
Jun 30    Barry's birthday
10/4      Marianne's birthday
Jul 31    Anniversary!
Mar 16    Pot luck luncheon
```

Each user can run **calendar** by embedding the command

```
calendar
```

in his **.profile**.

If you wish, you can run **calendar** automatically for all users on your system, by inserting it into file **/usr/lib/crontab**. In this case, **calendar** should be used with its **-a** option, to force **calendar** to search every user's **\$HOME** directory for a **.calendar** file and mail the appointments it finds to that user.

### **See Also**

**commands**

### **Notes**

**calendar**'s notion of tomorrow understands weekends but not holidays. Thus, if you invoke **calendar** on a Friday, it returns the events for that day and the following Saturday, Sunday, and Monday. If Monday is a holiday, however, you will not receive appointments for Tuesday.

## **calling conventions — Technical Information**

The following presents the calling conventions for COHERENT. Note that COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386 use different calling conventions, because of differences in the microprocessors for which they were implemented.

### **COHERENT 386 Calling Conventions**

The calling conventions of C take into account machine architecture and the fact that the number of arguments passed to a function may vary, as in the functions **printf()** and **scanf()**.

For example, consider the following C program, called **foo.c**:

```
short a;
long b;
char c;

foo()
{
    example(a, b, c);
}
```

Compiling this program with the command

```
cc -S foo.c
```

generates the assembly-language code (with added comments):

```
.comm    a,          2      / a, b, and c are commons in the .bss
.comm    b,          4
.comm    c,          1
```



```

foo:
    push    %ebp                / prologue code for foo
    movl    %ebp, %esp

    movsxb  %eax, c             / move c to %eax with sign extend
    push    %eax                / pass c
    push    b                   / pass b
    movsx   %eax, a             / move a to %eax with sign extend
    push    %eax                / pass a
    call    example
    addl    %esp, $12           / reset the stack

    leave
    ret

```

Note the following points:

- Parameters are pushed in reverse order. You should not depend on this feature, as the ANSI standard says that parameters may be calculated and pushed in any order.
- The stack is reset by the caller, not the callee. Only the caller knows the number of parameters pushed.
- All parameters become **int** or **double** when passed under Kernighan & Ritchie C. This changes under ANSI C.

Now consider the module **example.c**, which gives the receiving end:

```

double
example(x, y, z)
short x;
long y;
char z;
{
    int tmp;

    tmp = x * y;
    return (tmp + z);
}

```

When compiled with the command

```
cc -S example.c
```

Generates the code:

```

example:
    enter    $4, $0              / 4 bytes of local variables

    movl     %eax, 12(%ebp)       / x * y
    imull    8(%ebp)              / 8 == 4 + sizeof(int)
    movl     -4(%ebp), %eax       / save into tmp
    addl     %eax, 16(%ebp)       / tmp + z
    call     _dicvt               / %eax into double

```

```

leave          / leave with result in %eax:%edx
ret

```

After the prologue code, the stack always looks like

```

===== ← High addresses
| passed parameters |
===== 4(%ebp)
| return address   |
===== ← %ebp
| saved %ebp       |
===== -4(%ebp)
| local variables  |
=====
| other saved registers |
| may include %esi,   |
| %edi and %ebx      |
===== ← %esp

```

Notice that parameters start at

```
[ 4 + first parm size ] (%ebp)
```

and go to higher addresses, whereas local variables start at

```
-4(%ebp)
```

and go to lower addresses. Therefore, if you have a local array and overwrite it in the forward direction, you clobber your caller's **%ebp**; if you overwrite it in the backward direction, you clobber your caller's register variables (although if the caller has no register variable, it's harmless).

On the 80386, the stack starts at 0x80000000 and grows down being expanded by the system as it is needed. Reasonable programs should never have stack-overflow problems as they did under COHERENT 286.

### **COHERENT 286 Calling Conventions**

The design of the calling conventions had to take into account the fact that C does not require that the number of arguments passed to a function be the same as the number of arguments specified in the function's declaration. Routines with a variable number of arguments are not uncommon; for example, **printf** and **scanf** can take a variable number of arguments. Another consideration was the availability of **register** variables.

Therefore, COHERENT uses the following calling sequence. The function arguments are pushed onto the stack from the first, or rightmost, through the last, or leftmost. **longs** are pushed high-half first; this makes the word order compatible with the **dd** instruction. The function is then called with a near call. An **add** instruction after the call removes the arguments from the stack.

For example, the function call

```

int a;
long b;
char c;

```

```

foo()
{
    example(a, b, c);
}

```

generates the code

```

movb    al,c
cbw
push    ax
push    b+2
push    b
push    a
call    example_
add     sp,8

```

Note that an underbar character '\_' has been appended to the function name. This serves two purposes. First, it makes it harder to accidentally call routines written in other languages. Second, it means that two routines with the same name can be called from C and another language in identical fashions.

The parameters and local variables in the called function are referenced as offsets from the **bp** register. The arguments begin at offset 8 and continue toward higher addresses, whereas the local variables begin at offset -2 and continue toward lower addresses.

The **sp** register points the local variable with the lowest address. Thus, when **example\_** is reached in the above model, the stack frame resembles the following:

=====	← High
c (widened to a word)	
=====	
high half of b	
=====	
low half of b	
=====	
a	
=====	← Low

Functions return **ints** in the **ax** register, **longs** in the **dx:ax** register pair, pointers in the **ax** register and **doubles** in **fpac\_**.

The following program

```

example(a, b, c)
int a, b, c;
{
    return (a * b - c);
}

```

when compiled with the **-VASM** option, produces the following assembly-language code:

```

.shri
.globl example_

```

```
example_:
    push    si
    push    di
    push    bp
    mov     bp, sp
    mov     ax, 10(bp)
    imul    8(bp)
    sub     ax, 12(bp)
    pop     bp
    pop     di
    pop     si
    ret
```

The runtime startup initializes the registers **cs**, **ds**, **es**, and **ss**, and the segment registers remain unchanged. Other registers may be overwritten.

COHERENT pushes function arguments as follows.

<b>char</b>	Widened to <b>int</b> , then pushed
<b>int</b>	Pushed in machine word order
<b>long</b>	Pushed high order word, then low-order word
<b>float</b>	Widened to <b>double</b> , then pushed
<b>double</b>	Pushed high order, then low order
<b>struct</b>	Pushed in memory order
<b>union</b>	Pushed in memory order

Functions return values as follows:

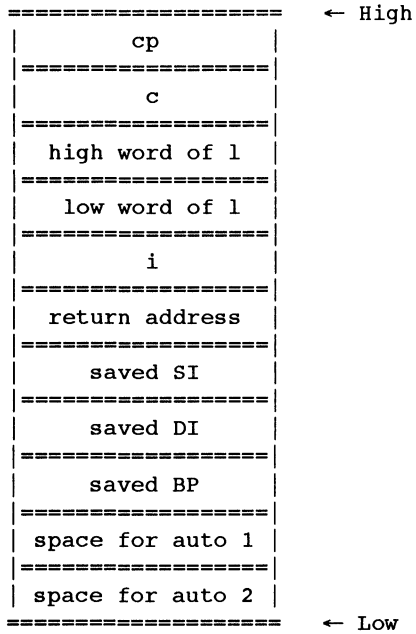
<b>char</b>	In <b>al</b>
<b>int</b>	In <b>ax</b>
<b>long</b>	In <b>dx:ax</b>
<b>float</b>	Same as <b>double</b>
<b>double</b>	In <b>fpac_</b>
<b>struct</b>	Pointer in <b>ax</b>
<b>union</b>	Pointer in <b>ax</b>
<b>pointer</b>	In <b>ax</b>

A function that returns a **struct** or **union** actually returns a pointer; the code generated for the function call block-moves the result to its destination. Functions that return a **float** or **double** return it in the global double **fpac\_**.

For example, consider the call

```
example(i, l, c, cp);
```

where **i** is an **int**, **l** is a **long**, **c** is a **char**, **cp** is a pointer to a **char**, and **example** declares two automatic **ints**. After execution of the call and the prologue of **example**, the stack contains the following 11 words:



The following example performs a simple function call:

```
main()
{
    example(1, 2); /* call sample routine */
}

example(p1, p2)
{
    int a, b;
    a = 3;
    b = 4;
}
```

When the function **example** is about to return, the stack appears as follows:

=====		
2	← High	
=====	← parm 2	10 (bp)
1		
=====	← parm 1	8 (bp)
Return Address		
=====		6 (bp)
main's SI		
=====		4 (bp)
main's DI		
=====		2 (bp)
main's BP		
=====		(bp)
3	← a	-2 (bp)
=====		
4	← SP b	-4 (bp)
=====	← Low	

**See Also****C language, technical information****calloc() — General Function**

Allocate dynamic memory

**char \*calloc(count, size) unsigned count, size;**

**calloc()** is one of a set of routines that helps manage a program's arena. **calloc()** calls **malloc()** to obtain a block large enough to contain *count* items of *size* bytes each; it then initializes the block to zeroes. When this memory is no longer needed, you can return it to the free pool by using the function **free()**.

**calloc()** returns the address of the chunk of memory it has allocated, or NULL if it could not allocate memory.

**Example**

This example attempts to **calloc()** a small portion of memory; it then reallocates it to demonstrate **realloc()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
    register char *ptr, *ptr2;
    extern char *calloc(), *realloc();
    unsigned count, size;

    count = 4;
    size = sizeof(char *);
```

```

if ((ptr = calloc(count, size)) != NULL)
    printf("%u blocks of size %u calloced\n",
           count, size);
else
    printf("Insuff. memory for %u blocks of size %u\n",
           count, size);

if ((ptr2 = realloc(ptr, (count*size) + 1)) != NULL)
    printf("1 block of size %u reallocated\n",
           (count*size)+1);
}

```

**See Also**

**alloca()**, **arena**, **free()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **memok()**, **realloc()**, **setbuf()**

**Notes**

The function **alloca()** (which is available with COHERENT 386) allocates space on the stack. The space so allocated does not need to be freed when the function that allocated the space exits.

**candaddr() — General Function**

Convert a **daddr\_t** to canonical format

**#include <canon.h>**

**#include <sys/types.h>**

**void candaddr(s)**

**daddr\_t s;**

**candaddr()** performs canonical conversion upon a **daddr\_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For details on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see **canon.h**.

**See Also**

**canon.h**, **general functions**

**candev() — General Function**

Convert a **dev\_t** to canonical format

**#include <canon.h>**

**#include <sys/types.h>**

**void candev(s)**

**dev\_t s;**

**candev()** performs canonical conversion upon a **dev\_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

**See Also**

**canon.h**, **general functions**

**canino() — General Function**

Convert an **ino\_t** to canonical format

**#include <canon.h>**

**#include <sys/types.h>**

**void canino(s)**

**ino\_t s;**

**canino()** performs canonical conversion upon a **ino\_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

**See Also**

**canon.h**, general functions

---

**canint()** — General Function

Convert an int to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void canint(s)
int s;
```

**canint()** performs canonical conversion upon a **int**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

**See Also**

**canon.h**, general functions

---

**canlong()** — General Function

Convert a long to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void canlong(s)
long s;
```

**canlong()** performs canonical conversion upon a **long**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

**See Also**

**canon.h**, general functions

---

**canon.h** — Header file

Portable layout of binary data

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
```

The layout of binary data varies among machines. For example, the byte order of a 16-bit word on the PDP-11 is low-byte.high-byte, whereas on the Z8000 it is high-byte.low-byte.

To ensure that file systems can be ported among machines with differing byte orders, COHERENT uses a canonical layout of binary data. (The word “canonical” in this context means, “of or conforming to a general rule”.) Data not in primary memory (e.g., on disk or communications line) must conform to COHERENT’s canonical layout.

To insulate programs from the details of the difference between the ‘natural’ and canonical layouts, the COHERENT system provides a set of procedures to convert from one layout to another. They are as follows:



**canshort()** . . . . . Convert a **short**  
**canint()**. . . . . Convert an **int**  
**canlong()**. . . . . Convert a **long**  
**canvaddr()**. . . . . Convert **vaddr\_t**  
**cansize()**. . . . . Convert **fsize\_t**  
**candaddr()**. . . . . Convert **daddr\_t**  
**cantime()**. . . . . Convert **time\_t**  
**candev()**. . . . . Convert **dev\_t**  
**canino()**. . . . . Convert **ino\_t**

Each procedure takes an lvalue of the indicated type, converts it in place, and returns nothing. The argument should not have side-effects. Each procedure is its own inverse. Several procedures are designed for elements of file systems.

The file formats that contain canonical binary data and the commands that deal with them are as follows:

<i>Format</i>	<i>Commands</i>
<b>ar.h</b>	<b>ar, ld, ranlib</b>
<b>dir.h</b>	<b>ls, tar</b>
<b>l.out.h</b>	<b>as, cc, db, ld, nm, size, strip</b>

Any program that manipulates binary data within files must perform canonical conversion immediately upon input and immediately before output. The following fragment of the source code to the command **df** should be instructive:

```

#include <stdio.h>
#include <canon.h>
#include <filsys.h>
char    superb[BSIZE];

.
.
.

df(fs)
char *fs;
{
    register struct filsys *sbp = &superb;
    FILE *fp;
    daddr_t nfree;

    if ((fp = fopen(fs, "r")) == NULL) {
        perror(fs);
        return (1);
    }

    fseek(fp, (long)BSIZE, 0);
    if (fread(superb, sizeof superb, 1, fp) != 1) {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s: read error\n", fs);
        return (1);
    }
}

```

```
candaddr(sbp->s_tfree);
candaddr(sbp->s_fsize);
canshort(sbp->s_ysize);
nfree = sbp->s_tfree;

if (nfree > sbp->s_fsize-sbp->s_ysize || nfree < 0) {
    fprintf(stderr, "%s: bad free count\n", fs);
    return (1);
}

printf("%s: %ld\n", fs, nfree);
fclose(fp);
return (0);
}
```

### **Files**

**<canon.h>**

### **See Also**

**ar.h**, **byte ordering**, **candaddr()**, **candev()**, **canino()**, **canint()**, **canlong()**, **canshort()**, **cansize()**, **cantime()**, **canvaddr()**, **dir.h**, **l.out.h**, **header files**

### **canshort()** — General Function

Convert a short to canonical format

**#include <canon.h>**

**#include <sys/types.h>**

**void canshort(s)**

**short s;**

**canshort()** performs canonical conversion upon a **short**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

### **Example**

For an example of this function, see **canon.h**.

### **See Also**

**canon.h**, **general functions**

### **cansize()** — General Function

Convert an fsize\_t to canonical format

**#include <canon.h>**

**#include <sys/types.h>**

**void cansize(s)**

**size\_t s;**

**cansize()** performs canonical conversion upon a **size\_t**. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

### **See Also**

**canon.h**, **general functions**

**cantime()** — General Function

Convert a `time_t` to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void cantime(s)
time_t s;
```

**cantime()** performs canonical conversion upon a `time_t`. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

**See Also**

**canon.h**, **general functions**

**canvaddr()** — General Function

Convert a `vaddr_t` to canonical format

```
#include <canon.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
void canvaddr(s)
vaddr_t s;
```

**canvaddr()** performs canonical conversion upon a `vaddr_t`. It returns nothing, and it is its own inverse. For more information on canonical conversion, see **canon.h**.

**See Also**

**canon.h**, **general functions**

**captoinfo** — Command

Convert termcap data to terminfo form

```
captoinfo [filename]
```

The command **captoinfo** converts a file of terminal information that is in the **termcap** format into **terminfo** source format.

**captoinfo** reads *filename*; if no file is named on the command line, it reads the standard input. It writes its product to the standard output.

The input to **captoinfo** must be in correct **termcap** format. **captoinfo** complains about all constructs that it cannot interpret.

**See Also**

**commands**, **termcap**, **terminfo**, **tic**

**Notes**

The original code for **captoinfo** was written by Robert Viduya of the Georgia Institute of Technology, and was adapted for COHERENT by Mark Williams Company.

**terminfo** and its related programs are used only under COHERENT 386.

**case** — Command

Execute commands conditionally according to pattern

```
case token in [pattern] [|pattern] ...) sequence ;;) ... esac
```

**case** is a construct that used by the shell. It tells the shell to execute commands conditionally, according to a pattern. It tests the given *token* successively against each *pattern*, in the order given. It then executes the commands in the *sequence* corresponding to the first matching pattern. Optional `'|'` clauses specify additional patterns corresponding to a single *sequence*. If no *pattern*

matches the *token*, the **case** construct executes no commands.

Each *pattern* can include text characters (which match themselves), special characters '?' (which matches any character except newline) and '\*' (which matches any sequence of non-newline characters), and character classes enclosed in brackets '[' ]; ranges of characters within a class may be separated by '-'. In particular, the last *pattern* in a **case** construct is often '\*', which will match any *token*.

The shell executes **case** directly.

### Example

The following example prints a string in response to a command-line option:

```
case $1 in
  FOO) echo "This is option FOO";;
  BAR) echo "This is option BAR";;
  BAZ) echo "This is option BAZ";;
  *)   echo "An asterisk marks the default option";;
esac
```

### See Also

commands, ksh, sh

## case — C Keyword

Introduce entry in switch statement

The C keyword **case** is a label within a **switch** statement. For example:

```
while ((int = getchar()) != EOF)
  switch (foo) {
    case 'q':
    case 'Q':
      exit(0);
    case ' ':
      n++;
    default:
      break;
  }
```

**case** labels each of the three possibilities recognized by the **switch** statement: a space, 'q', and 'Q'. The statements that follow a **case** statement behave as if they were enclosed within braces.

Note that a **case** statement is simply a label: it sets a point to which the **switch** statement jumps, and execution continues from that point. Once a **switch** statement jumps to the point marked by a given **case** label, execution continues until an **exit**, **break**, or **return** is read, or the closing brace of the **switch** statement is encountered.

### See Also

break, C keywords, switch

## cast — Definition

The **cast** operation "coerces" a variable from one data type to another.

There are two reasons to cast a variable. The first is to convert a variable's data into a form acceptable to a given function. For example, the function **hypot** takes two **doubles**. If the variables **leg\_x** and **leg\_y** are **floats**, the rules of C require that they be cast automatically to **double**. If the

compiler did not do not do this, **hypot** would grab a **double**'s worth of memory: the four bytes of your **float**, plus four bytes of whatever happens to be sitting on the stack. The leads to results that are less than totally accurate.

The other reason to cast a variable is when you cast one type of pointer to another. For example,

```
char *foo;
int *bar;
bar = (int *)foo;
```

Although **foo** and **bar** are of the same length, you would cast **foo** in this instance to stop the C compiler from complaining about a type mismatch.

### See Also

**data formats, data types, definitions**

## cat — Command

Concatenate/print files

**cat** [ **-u** ][*file* ... ]

**cat** copies each *file* arguments to the standard output. A **-** tells **cat** to read the standard input. If no *file* is specified, **cat** reads the standard input.

The **-u** option makes the output unbuffered. Otherwise, **cat** buffers the output in units of the machine's disk block size (e.g., 512 bytes).

### See Also

**commands**

### Notes

If you redirect **cat**'s the output to one of its input files, it will loop forever, reading from the file the text that it has just written into it: in effect, **cat** will chase its own tail endlessly.

## caveat utilitor — Definition

Latin (sort of): "Let the user beware."

### See Also

**definitions**

## cc — Command

C compiler

**cc** [*compiler options*]*file* ... [*linker options*]

**cc** is the program that compiles C programs. It guides files of source and object code through each phase of compilation and linking. **cc** has many options to assist in the compilation of C programs; in essence, however, all you need to do to produce an executable file from your C program is type **cc** followed by the name of the file or files that hold your program. **cc** checks whether the file names you give it are reasonable, selects the right phase for each file, and performs other tasks that ease the compilation of your programs.

### How cc Works

**cc** normally works as follows:

- If a file ends in **.c**, **cc** assumes that it contains C code, and tries to compile it. Under COHERENT 286, this involves invoking the phases of the compiler, each in turn: **cpp**, **cc0**, **cc1**, and **cc2**. Each compiler phase writes its output to a temporary, which **cc** then passes to the subsequent phase. **cc** ensures that all temporary files are deleted properly after they are used. Note that with COHERENT 286, you can speed compilation by making sure that your **/tmp**

directory is mounted on a RAM disk. See the Lexicon entry **ram** for details.

Under COHERENT 386, the compiler is one large executable program. **cc** invokes it with the name of your source file.

In either case, the result is a relocatable object module with the suffix **.o**.

- If the file has the suffix **.s**, **cc** assumes that it is a file of assembly language, and invokes the assembler **as** to assemble it. The assembler produces a relocatable object module with the suffix **.o**.
- **cc** assumes that all files with the suffix **.o** are relocatable object modules. It also assumes that all files with the suffix **.a** are libraries of object modules. It passes both directly to the linker **ld**. Additional libraries can also be invoked by using the **-l** option **cc**, described below.
- Once all files of C code and assembly language have been compiled or assembled, **cc** then invokes the linker **ld** to link the newly created object files with any objects and libraries you named on **cc** command line. It also automatically includes the C runtime startup routine and the standard C library, so you do not have to name these on your **cc** command line.
- **cc** also cleans up after itself. It removes all of its temporary files automatically. If only one object file is created during compilation, **cc** deletes it after linking; however, if more than one object file is created, or if an object file of the same name existed before you began to compile, then the object file or files are not deleted.

Assuming that no error occurs along the way, **cc** leaves the linked result in file *file*. It is now ready to be executed.

## Options

The following lists all of **cc**'s command-line options. **cc** passes some options through to the linker **ld** unchanged, and correctly interprets for it the options **-o** and **-u**.

A number of the options are esoteric and normally are not used when compiling a C program. The following are the most commonly used options:

<b>-c</b>	Compile only; do not link
<b>-f</b>	Include floating-point <b>printf</b>
<b>-lname</b>	Pass library <b>libname.a</b> to linker
<b>-o name</b>	Call output file <i>name</i>
<b>-v</b>	Print verbose listing of <b>cc</b> 's action

- A** MicroEMACS option. If an error occurs during compilation, **cc** automatically invokes the MicroEMACS screen editor. The error or errors are displayed in one window and the source code file in the other, with the cursor set to the line number indicated by the first error message. Typing **<ctrl-X>** moves to the next error, **<ctrl-X><** moves to the previous error. To recompile, close the edited file with **<ctrl-Z>**. Compilation will continue either until the program compiles without error, or until you exit from the editor by typing **<ctrl-U>** followed by **<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**.

### **-B**[string]

Backup option. Use alternate versions of the compiler for **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, and **cc3**. If *string* is supplied, **cc** appends it to the beginning of the name of each phase of the compiler to form the path names where these are found. Otherwise, **cc** appends the name of the current directory. If a **-t** option was previously given, only the parts of the compiler specified by it are affected. Any number of **-B** and **-t** options may be used, with each **-t** option specifying the passes affected by the subsequent **-B** option. For example, the command

```
cc -tp2 -Bnew hello.c
```

compiles **hello.c** using **newcc2** in place of the ordinarily used **/lib/cc2**, and using **newcpp** in place of the ordinarily used **/lib/cpp**.

**-c** Compile option. Suppress linking and the removal of the object files.

**-Dname[=value]**

Define *name* to the preprocessor, as if set by a **#define** directive. If *value* is present, it is used to initialize the definition.

**-E** Expand option. Run the C preprocessor **cpp** and write its output onto the standard output.

**-f** Floating point option. Include library routines that perform floating-point arithmetic. Because the floating-point routines require approximately five kilobytes of memory, the standard C library does not include them; the **-f** option tells the compiler to include them. If a program is compiled without the **-f** option but attempts to print a floating point number during execution by using the **e**, **f**, or **g** format specifications to **printf**, the message

You must compile with -f option for floating point

will be printed and the program will exit.

**-I name**

Include option. Specify a directory the preprocessor should search for files given in **#include** directives, using the following criteria: If the **#include** statement reads

**#include "file.h"**

**cc** searches for **file.h** first in the source directory, then in the directory named in the **-Iname** option, and finally in the system's default directories. If the **#include** statement reads

**#include <file.h>**

**cc** searches for **file.h** first in the directories named in the **-Iname** option, and then in the system's default directories. Multiple **-Iname** options are executed in the order of their of appearance.

**-K** Keep option. Do not erase the intermediate files generated during compilation. Temporary files will be written into the current directory.

**-Ldirectory**

Tell the linker **ld** to search **directory** for its libraries before it searches the directories named in the environmental variable **LIBPATH**.

**-l name**

library option. Pass the name of a library to the linker. **cc** expands **-Iname** into **/lib/libname.a**. If an alternative library prefix has been specified by the **-tl** and **-Bstring** options, then **-Iname** expands to **stringlibname.a**. Note that this is a *linker option*, and so must appear at the end of the **cc** command line, or it will not be processed correctly.

**-M string**

Machine option. Use an alternate version of **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc1a**, **cc1b**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **as**, **lib\*.a**, and **crts0.o**, named by fixing *string* between the directory name and the pass and file names.

**-n**

Instruct the linker **ld** to bind the output with separate shared and private segments, and which each starting on a separate hardware-segment boundary. This allows several processes to simultaneously use one copy of the shared segment. Note that programs linked with this option will run a little more slowly than if they were not so linked; however, if a program forks (e.g., **kerm**) or will be used by more than one user at a time (e.g., MicroEMACS), this slightly slower time will be more than offset by the program's being spared having to read an entire copy of itself from the disk.

**-N[p0123sdlrt]string**

Name option. Rename a specified pass to *string*. The letters **p0123sdlrt** refer, respectively, to **cpp**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, the assembler, the linker, the libraries, the run-time start-up, and the temporary files.

**-o name**

Output option. Rename the executable file from the default to *name*. If this option is not used, the executable will be named after the first **.c** or **.o** file on the command line. If you want **cc** to conform to the UNIX standard of writing executables into **a.out** by default, set the option **-o a.out** into the environmental variable **CCHEAD**. This is described below.

**-O** Optimize option. Run the code generated by the C compiler through the peephole optimizer. The optimizer pass is mandatory for the i8086, Z8000, and M68000 compilers, and need not be requested. It is optional for the PDP11 compiler, but is recommended for all files except those that consist entirely of initialized tables of data.

**-q[p0123s]**

Quit option. Terminate compilation after running the specified pass. The letters **p0123s** refer, respectively, to **cpp**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, and the assembler. For example, to terminate compilation after running the parser **cc0**, type **-q0**.

**-Q** Quiet option. Suppress all messages.

**-S** Suppress the object-writing and link phases, and invoke the disassembler **cc3**. This option produces an assembly-language version of a C program for examination, for example if a compiler problem is suspected. The assembly-language output file name replaces the **.c** suffix with **.s**. This is equivalent to the **-VASM** option.

**-Tsize**

Under COHERENT 386, **cc** writes its temporary data into two 64-kilobytes buffers that grow as needed. The **-T** option tells **cc** to use buffers of *size* bytes each. Setting these to a larger size may help large files compile faster. Setting *size* to zero forces **cc** to use temporary files written onto the disk. This option applies only to COHERENT 386.

**-t[p01ab23sdlrt]**

Take option. Use alternate versions of the compiler phases and other files specified in the following string. If no following string is given, the **cc** uses alternate version of every phase of the compiler, except the preprocessor. If the **-t** option is followed by a **-B** option, **cc** prepends the prefix string named in the **-B** option to the phases and files named in the **-t** option; otherwise, it looks for the alternate forms in the current directory.

**-U name**

Undefine symbol *name*. Use this option to undefine symbols that the preprocessor defines implicitly, such as the name of the native system or machine.

**-V** Verbose option. **cc** prints onto the standard output a step-by-step description of each action it takes.

**-Vstring**

Variant option. Toggle (i.e., turn on or off) the variant *string* during the compilation. Variants that are marked **on** are turned on by default. Options marked **Strict**: generate messages that warn of the conditions in question. **cc** recognizes the following variants:

**-VASM**

Output assembly-language code. Identical to **-S** option, above. Default is **off**.

**-VCOMM**

Permit **.com**-style data items. Default is **on**.



**-VFLOAT**

Include floating point **printf** routines. Same as **-f** option, above.

**-VPROF**

Generate code to profile functions calls. Programs compiled with this option can be run with the **prof** command to print a summary of how much time the program spends in each subroutine, to help you optimize your programs. You must use this option to profile compile each module whose functions you wish to examine; and you must also use this option on the **cc** command line with which you link the program, to ensure that the appropriate library routines are linked into your executable.

**-VPSTR**

"Pure" strings: Place all string literals in the **.text** segment rather than in **.data**.

**-VQUIET**

Suppress all messages. Identical to **-g** option. Default is **off**.

**-VSBOOK**

Strict: note deviations from *The C Programming Language*, ed. 1. Default is **off**.

**-VSCCON**

Strict: note constant conditional. Default is **off**.

**-VSINU**

Implement struct-in-union rules instead of Berkeley-member resolution rules. Default is **off**, i.e., Berkeley rules are the default.

**-VSLCON**

Strict: **int** constant promoted to **long** because value is too big. Default is **on**.

**-VSMEMB**

Strict: check use of structure/union members for adherence to standard rules of C. Default is **on**.

**-VSNREG**

Strict: register declaration reduced to auto. Default is **on**.

**-VSPVAL**

Strict: pointer value truncated. Default is **off**.

**-VSRTVC**

Strict: risky types in truth contexts. Default is **off**.

**-VSTAT**

Give statistics on optimization.

**-VS** Turn on all strict checking. Default is **on**.

**-VSUREG**

Strict: note unused registers. Default is **off**.

**-VSUVAR**

Strict: note unused variables. Default is **on**.

**-V3GRAPH**

Translate ANSI trigraphs. Default is **off**.

**cc** reads the environmental variables **CCHEAD** and **CCTAIL** and appends their contents to, respectively, the beginning and the end of the **cc** command. For example, if you insert the following entries into your **.profile**

```
export CCHEAD='-f -o a.out'
export CCTAIL=-lm
```

then **cc** will always use the floating-point version of **printf()**, always write its executable into file **a.out**, and always link in the mathematics library **libm**. In effect, it turns the command

```
cc hello.c
```

into:

```
cc -f -o a.out hello.c -lm
```

If you set a command option in **CCHEAD** or **CCTAIL**, you can always override it for specific **cc** commands. For example, if you have set **-o a.out** in **CCHEAD**, typing the command

```
cc -o hello hello.c
```

generates the command:

```
cc -o a.out -o hello hello.c
```

The latter **-o** option is the one used, and in effect cancels the effect of the **CCHEAD** entry. Thus, setting **CCHEAD** and **CCTAIL** give you a flexible way to set **cc**'s default behavior.

### **Linking Objects**

The linker **ld** does not know about paths: it links exactly what you tell it to link via the **cc** command line. **cc** looks for compiler phases and for runtime startoff and library by searching the directories named in the environmental variable **LIBPATH**. If you do not define **LIBPATH** in your environment, it searches the default **LIBPATH** as defined in **/usr/include/path.h**. If you define **LIBPATH**, **cc** searches the directories in the order you specify. For example, a typical definition is:

```
export LIBPATH=:/lib:/usr/lib
```

This searches the current directory '.', then **/lib**, then **/usr/lib**.

### **See Also**

**as**, **C language**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **commands**, **cpp**, **ld**, **libpath**  
*The C Language*, tutorial

### **Notes**

If you see the message

```
Out of memory
```

when compiling, this probably means that your program has exhausted the buffer space available to it. Use the option **-T0** to force **cc** to write its temporary files on the disk.

### **cc0 — Definition**

**cc0** is the COHERENT *parser*. It parses C programs using the method of recursive descent and translates the program into a logical tree format.

### **See Also**

**cc**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **cpp**, **definitions**

### **Notes**

Under COHERENT 286, **cc0** exists as a separate executable program. Under COHERENT 386, **cc0** exists as an aspect of a single, large executable program.

**cc1 — Definition**

**cc1** is the COHERENT code generator. This phase generates code from the trees created by the parser, **cc0**. The code generation is table driven, with entries for each operator and addressing mode.

**See Also**

**cc**, **cc0**, **cc2**, **cc3**, **cpp**, **definitions**

**Notes**

Under COHERENT 286, **cc1** exists as a separate executable program. Under COHERENT 386, **cc1** exists as an aspect of a single, large executable program.

**cc2 — Definition**

**cc2** is the optimizer/object generator phase of COHERENT. It optimizes the code generated by **cc1**, and writes the object code. COHERENT uses multiple optimization algorithms. One optimizes jump sequences: it eliminates common code, optimizes span-dependent jumps, and removes jumps to jumps. The other function scans the generated code repeatedly to eliminate unnecessary instructions.

**See Also**

**cc**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc3**, **cpp**, **definitions**

**Notes**

Under COHERENT 286, **cc2** exists as a separate executable program. Under COHERENT 386, **cc2** exists as an aspect of a single, large executable program.

**cc3 — Definition**

**cc3** is the output phase of COHERENT. It writes a file of assembly language rather than a relocatable object module. This phase is optional; it allows you to examine the code generated by the compiler. To produce an assembly-language output of a C program, use the **-S** option on the **cc** command line. For example,

```
cc -S foo.c
```

tells **cc** to produce a file of assembly language called **foo.s**, instead of an object module.

**See Also**

**cc**, **cc0**, **cc1**, **cc2**, **cpp**, **definitions**

**Notes**

Under COHERENT 286, **cc3** exists as a separate executable program. Under COHERENT 386, **cc3** exists as an aspect of a single, large executable program.

**CCHEAD — Environmental Variable**

Append options to beginning of **cc** command line

**export CCHEAD=options**

The COHERENT compiler **cc** reads the environmental variables **CCHEAD** and **CCTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the compiler always to use.

**cc** appends the options in **CCHEAD** to the beginning of its command line.

**See Also**

**cc**, **CCTAIL**, **environmental variables**

**CCTAIL — Environmental Variable**

Append options to end of cc command line  
**export CCTAIL=options**

The COHERENT compiler **cc** reads the environmental variables **CCHEAD** and **CCTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the compiler always to use.

**cc** appends the options in **CCTAIL** to the end of its command line.

**See Also**

**cc**, **CCHEAD**, **environmental variables**

**cd — Command**

Change directory  
**cd** *directory*

The shell keeps track of the directory in which the user is currently working. If a command is not specified by a complete path name beginning with '/', the shell prefixes it with the name of the current working directory. **cd** changes the current working directory to *directory*. If no *directory* is specified, the directory named in the **\$HOME** environmental variable becomes the current working directory.

**See Also**

**commands**, **ksh**, **pwd**, **sh**

**cdmp — Command**

Dump COFF files into a readable form  
**cdmp** [-adlr] *filename*

**cdmp** dumps a file in COFF format into its most readable format. Its default is to dump all information; but as this can produce a very large output file, **cdmp** lets you use the following switches to mix-and-match its output:

- a**      Suppress auxiliary symbol entries.
- d**      Suppress data dumps
- l**      Suppress line numbers.
- r**      Suppress relocation entries.
- s**      Suppress symbol entries.

Note that under COHERENT 386, **cc** and **as** do not produce line numbers and auxiliary-symbol entries, and **ld** does not preserve them.

**cdmp** writes its dump into the "vertical hexadecimal format," like that produced by the function **xdump()**. For example, the vertical hexadecimal dump of the string "hello world.\n" is:

```
0 hell o wo rld. .  
6666.6276.7662.0  
85CC.F07F.2C4E.A
```

The hexadecimal value of 'h' is 0x68, which appears vertically under the 'h'. The dump is broken into groups of four bytes; every unprintable character appears as '..'.

For details on **xdump()**, see the Lexicon entry for **libmisc**.

**See Also**

**as 368, asfix, commands, ld, libmisc**

**Notes**

Because COHERENT 286 does not use the COFF file format, **cdmp** is included only with COHERENT 386.

**ceil() — Mathematics Function (libm)**

Set numeric ceiling

**#include <math.h>**

**double ceil(z) double z;**

**ceil()** returns a double-precision floating-point number whose value is the smallest integer greater than or equal to *z*.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates how to use **ceil()**:

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)

dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];

    for (;;) {
        printf("Enter number: ");
        if (gets(string) == NULL)
            break;
        x = atof(string);

        display(x);
        display(ceil(x));
        display(floor(x));
        display(fabs(x));
        display(sqrt(x));
    }
    putchar('\n');
}
```

**See Also**

**abs()**, **fabs()**, **floor()**, **frexp()**, **mathematics library**

**cgrep — Command**

Pattern search for C source programs

**cgrep** [-clnsA] [-r *new*] *expression file* ...

**cgrep** is a string-search utility. It resembles its cousins **grep** and **egrep**, except that it is specially designed to be used with C source files. It checks all C identifiers against *expression* and prints all lines in which it finds a match. **cgrep** allows you to search for a variable named 'i' without finding every 'if' and 'int' in your program. **cgrep** defines an "identifier" to be any variable name or C keyword. *expression* can be a regular expression; if it includes wildcard characters or '|'s, you must "quote it" to protect it against being modified by the shell. For details on the expressions that **cgrep** can recognize, see the Lexicon entry for **egrep**.

**cgrep** tests names that include the '.' and '->' operators against *expression*. Thus, to look for **ptr->val**, type:

```
cgrep "ptr->val" x.c
```

This finds **ptr->val** even if it contains spaces, comments, or is spread across lines. If it is spread across lines, it will be reported on the line that contains the last token. The only exception is if you include the **-A** option, in which case it will be reported on the line which contains the first token. This is to simplify MicroEMACS macros, as will be described below.

To find **structure.member**, type:

```
cgrep "structure\.member"
```

because '.' in a regular expression matches any character.

Do not include spaces in any pattern. Only identifiers and '.' or '->' between identifiers are included in the tokens checked for pattern-matching.

**Command-line Options**

**cgrep** recognizes the following command-line options:

- A** Write all lines in which *expression* is found into a temporary file. Then, call MicroEMACS with its error option to process the source file, with the contents of the temporary file serving as an "error" list. This option resembles the **-A** option to the **cc** command, and lets you build a MicroEMACS script to make systematic changes to the source file. To exit MicroEMACS and prevent **cgrep** from searching further, <ctrl-U> <ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>.
- c** Print all comments in each *file*. This form takes no expression.
- l** List only the names of the files in which *expression* is found.
- n** Prefix each line in which *expression* is found with its line number in the file.
- r** Replace all expression matches with *new*. This option may not be used with any others, and it can only match simple tokens, not items like **ptr->val**. When **-r** is used and the input is **stdin**, a new file will always be created as **stdout**.
- s** Print all strings in each *file*. This form takes no expression.

**Examples**

The command

```
cgrep tmp *.c
```

will find the variable name **tmp**, but not **tmpname**, or any occurrence of **tmp** in a string or comment.

The script

```
cgrep -c < myfile.c | wc -l
```

count the lines of comments in **myfile.c**.

The command

```
cgrep "x|abc|d" *.c
```

will find **x**, **ab**, or **d**. Note this is a regular expressions with a surrounding `^( )$` which is applied to every identifier. Thus, **reg\*** will not match **register**, but **reg.\*** will.

### See Also

**commands**, **egrep**, **grep**, **me**

## char — C Keyword

Data type

**char** is a C data type. It is the smallest addressable unit of data. According to the ANSI Standard, a **char** consists of exactly one byte of storage; a byte, in turn, must be composed of at least eight bits. **sizeof(char)** returns one by definition, with all other data types defined as multiples thereof. All Mark Williams compilers sign-extend **char** when it is cast to a larger data type.

Under COHERENT, a **char** by default is signed.

### See Also

**byte**, **C keywords**, **data formats**, **unsigned**

## chars.h — Header File

Character definitions

```
#include <sys/chars.h>
```

**chars.h** defines manifest constants for some commonly used characters.

### See Also

**header files**

## chase — Command

Highly amusing video game

```
/usr/games/chase [ -c ] [ speed ]
```

**chase** is a COHERENT version of a popular video game. It runs on the console of an IBM AT COHERENT system with input from the console keyboard. **chase** assumes that the system console is a monochrome display adapter unless you select the **-c** color-display option.

To accomodate different computer system speeds and different levels of skill, **chase** prompts the user to type a speed when the game begins. Press **<return>** to try out the game with the default speed of ten; typing a higher number makes the game slower, a lower number makes it faster. If you can play at speed zero on a fast computer system, you play too many video games. If you know the speed you want, you can enter it as a command-line argument. If you see the boss coming, quit by pressing **<ctrl-C>**.

### The Rules

The player (represented by a blinking shaded rectangle) attempts to evade four “ghosts” (represented by shaded rectangles with arrows) while erasing dots from the playing-board maze.

At the beginning of a game, the four ghosts are in the *ghost box* above the center of the maze and the player is below it. The maze is filled with dots, including four blinking diamonds called *power pellets*. The ghosts emerge from the ghost box and chase the player. The console arrow keys move the player left, right, up, or down through the maze. Typing 'O' stops the player. The player continues to move in the same direction until a wall of the maze stops him, you type a 'O', or you type another arrow key.

When the player eats a power pellet, he acquires super power and can chase the ghosts briefly; the ghosts change color while the player has super power. If the player catches a ghost, he scores a bonus and the ghost returns to the ghost box temporarily. Once a player eats all the dots on the board, the game continues at the next level.

The upper left corner of the screen displays a score and the current board level. Each dot the player eats scores ten points. The first ghost a player eats while he has super power scores 200 points, the second 400, the third 800, and the fourth 1,600. At certain times during the game, a bonus letter appears below the ghost box; the player scores 100 points for eating the bonus letter on level 'A', 300 on level 'B', 500 on level 'C', and so on.

The lower left corner of the screen displays the number of extra players remaining in the current game (initially two). Another bonus player appears every 10,000 points, to a maximum of three extra players. The game ends when the ghosts eat the last player.

### See Also

**commands**

### **chdir()** — System Call

Change working directory

**chdir**(*directory*) **char** \**directory*;

The *working directory* (or *current directory*) is the directory from which the search for a file name begins if a path name does not begin with '/'. By convention, the working directory has the name '.'. **chdir()** changes the working directory to the directory pointed to by *directory*. This change is in effect until the program exits or calls **chdir()** again.

### See Also

**cd**, **chmod()**, **chroot()**, **directory**, **system calls**

### Diagnostics

**chdir()** returns zero if successful. It returns -1 if an error occurred, e.g., that *directory* does not exist, is not a directory, or is not searchable.

### **check** — Command

Check file system

**check** [-s] *filesystem* ...

**check** uses the commands **lcheck** and **dcheck** to check the consistency of a file system. It acts on each argument *filesystem* in turn; it calls first **lcheck** and then **dcheck** on each to detect problems.

If -s is specified, **check** attempts to repair any errors automatically. You should first unmount the file system, if possible. If the root device is involved, you should be in single-user mode and then reboot the system immediately (without typing **sync**).



**See Also**

**clri**, **commands**, **icheck**, **ncheck**, **sync**, **umount**

**Notes**

Certain errors, such as duplicated blocks, cannot be fixed automatically. Decisions must be made by a human.

In earlier releases of COHERENT, **check** acted upon a default file system if none was specified.

This command has largely been superceded by **fsck**.

**checklist** — System Maintenance

---

File systems to check when booting COHERENT

**/etc/checklist**

The file **/etc/checklist** names all COHERENT partitions on your hard disk. COHERENT executes **fsck** for each file named in this file. This ensures that the file-system of each partition is checked and cleaned before it is mounted.

When you add a new COHERENT partition to your system, you should insert its name (that is, the name of its raw device) into **/etc/checklist** to ensure that its file system is checked at boot time.

**See Also**

**mount.all**, **system maintenance**

**chgrp** — Command

---

Change the group owner of a file

**chgrp** *group file* ...

**chgrp** changes the group owner of each *file* to *group*. The *group* may be specified by a valid group name or a valid numerical group identifier.

Only the superuser may use **chgrp**.

**Files**

**/etc/group** — Convert group name to group identifier

**See Also**

**chmod**, **chmog**, **chown**, **commands**

**chmod** — Command

---

Change the modes of a file

**chmod** *+modes file*

**chmod** *-modes file*

The COHERENT system assigns a *mode* to every file, to govern how users access the file. The mode grants or denies permission to read, write, or execute a file.

The mode grants permission separately to the owner of a file, to users from the owner's group, and to all other users. For a directory, execute permission grants or denies the right to search the directory, whereas write permission grants or denies the right to create and remove files.

In addition, the mode contains three bits that perform special tasks: the set-user-id bit, the set-group-id bit, and the save-text or "sticky" bit. See the Lexicon entry for the COHERENT system call **chmod** for more information on how to use these bits.

The command **chmod** changes the permissions of each specified *file* according to the given *mode* argument. *mode* may be either an octal number or a symbolic mode. Only the owner of a *file* or the superuser may change a file's mode. Only the superuser may set the sticky bit.

A symbolic mode may have the following form. No spaces should separate the fields in the actual *mode* specification.

*[which] how perm ... [, ...]*

*which* specifies the permissions that are affected by the command. It may consist of one or more of the following:

<b>a</b>	All permissions, equivalent to <b>gou</b>
<b>g</b>	Group permissions
<b>o</b>	Other permissions
<b>u</b>	User permissions

If no *which* is given, **a** is assumed and **chmod** uses the file creation mask, as described in **umask**.

*how* specifies how the permissions will be changed. It can be

<b>=</b>	Set permissions
<b>+</b>	Add permissions
<b>-</b>	Take away permissions

*perm* specifies which permissions are changed. It may consist of one or more of the following:

<b>g</b>	Current group permissions
<b>o</b>	Current other permissions
<b>r</b>	Read permission
<b>s</b>	Setuid upon execution
<b>t</b>	Save text (sticky bit)
<b>u</b>	Current user permissions
<b>w</b>	Write permission
<b>x</b>	Execute permission

Multiple *how/perm* pairs have the same *which* applied to them. One or more specifications separated by commas tell **chmod** to apply each specification to the file successively.

The octal modes (see **stat**) are as follows:

<b>04000</b>	Set user id upon execution
<b>02000</b>	Set group id upon execution
<b>01000</b>	Sticky bit (save text)
<b>00400</b>	Owner read permission
<b>00200</b>	Owner write permission
<b>00100</b>	Owner execute permission
<b>00040</b>	Group read permission
<b>00020</b>	Group write permission
<b>00010</b>	Group execute permission
<b>00004</b>	Others read permission
<b>00002</b>	Others write permission
<b>00001</b>	Others execute permission

An octal *mode* argument to **chmod** is obtained by *oring* the desired mode bits together.

### Examples

The first example below sets the owner's permissions to read + write + execute, and the group and other permissions to read + execute. The second example adds execute permission for everyone.

```
chmod u=rwx,go=rx file
chmod +x file
```

### See Also

**chgrp**, **chmog**, **chown**, **commands**, **ls**, **stat**, **umask**

### chmod() — System Call

Change file-protection modes

```
#include <sys/stat.h>
```

```
chmod(file, mode)
```

```
char *file; int mode;
```

**chmod()** sets the mode bits for *file*. The mode bits include protection bits, the set-user-id bit, and the sticky bit.

*mode* is constructed from the logical OR of the following, which are defined symbolically in the header file **stat.h**:

<b>04000</b>	Set user identifier
<b>02000</b>	Set group identifier
<b>01000</b>	Save file on swap device ("sticky bit")
<b>00400</b>	Read permission for owner
<b>00200</b>	Write permission for owner
<b>00100</b>	Execute permission for owner
<b>00040</b>	Read permission for members of owner's group
<b>00020</b>	Write permission for members of owner's group
<b>00010</b>	Execute permission for members of owner's group
<b>00004</b>	Read permission for other users
<b>00002</b>	Write permission for other users
<b>00001</b>	Execute permission for other users

For directories, some protection bits have a different meaning: write permission means files may be created and removed, whereas execute permission means that the directory may be searched.

The save-text bit (or "sticky bit") is a flag to the system when it executes a shared for of a load module. After the system runs the program, it leaves shared segments on the swap device to speed subsequent reinvocation of the program. Setting this bit is restricted to the superuser (to control depletion of swap space which might result from overuse).

Only the owner of a file or the superuser may change its mode.

### See Also

**creat()**, **system calls**

### Diagnostics

**chmod()** returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent or the invoker being neither the owner nor the superuser.

### chmog — Command

Change mode, owner, and group simultaneously

```
chmog mod own grp file ...
```

**chmog** combines the functionality of the commands **chmod**, **chown**, and **chgrp** into one command. This lets you fine-tune the permissions on *files* without having to type three separate commands.

The arguments *mode*, *own*, and *grp* give, respectively, the mode, owner, and group to which **chmog** sets *file*. Setting any of these three arguments '-' means that that feature of *file* is not changed. For example, the command

```
chmog - bin bin file_name
```

changes the owner and group of file **file\_name** to **bin** and does not alter **file\_name**'s permissions.

For details on how to set *mode*, *own*, and *grp*, see the Lexicon entries for, respectively, **chmod**, **chown**, and **chgrp**.

### See Also

**chgrp**, **chmod**, **chown**, **commands**,

### **chown** — Command

Change the owner of files  
**chown** *owner file ...*

**chown** changes the owner of each *file* to *owner*. The *owner* may be specified by valid user name or a valid numerical user id.

Only the superuser may use **chown**.

### Files

**/etc/passwd** — To convert user name to user id

### See Also

**chgrp**, **chmod**, **chmog**, **commands**

### **chown()** — System Call

Change ownership of a file  
**chown**(*file*, *uid*, *gid*)  
**char** \**file*;  
**short** *uid*, *gid*;

**chown()** changes the owner of *file* to user id *uid* and group id *gid*.

To change only the user id without changing the group id, use **stat()** to determine the value of *gid* to pass to **chown()**.

**chown()** is restricted to the superuser, because granting the ordinary user the ability to change the ownership of files might circumvent file space quotas or accounting based upon file ownership.

**chown()** returns -1 for errors, such as nonexistent *file* or the caller not being the superuser.

### See Also

**chmod()**, **passwd**, **stat()**, **system calls**

### **chroot** — Command

Change root directory  
**chroot** *directory program ...*

The command **chroot** runs program *program* with root directory *directory*.

### See Also

**commands**

## Notes

Only the superuser **root** can use **chroot**.

## chroot() — System Call

Change the root directory

```
int chroot(path)
```

```
char *path;
```

The COHERENT system call **chroot()** changes the current process's root directory to that specified by *path*. Once the **chroot()** system call completes, all references to absolute directories (i.e., ones starting with '/') will actually refer to directory pointed to by *path*. It does not change the current directory.

**chroot()** is often used to add extra security to special or public login accounts.

## See Also

**chroot**, **system calls**

## Notes

The process that invokes **chroot()** must be running as the superuser **root**, and *path* must name a valid directory.

## ckermi — Command

Interactive inter-system communication and file transfer

```
ckermi [-abcdefghijklmnopqrstwx] [file ... ]
```

**ckermi** implements the **kermit** communications protocol. It lets you communicate with other systems via modem or network, and to exchange files with other systems that have also implemented the **kermit** protocol. Unlike the **kermit** command also included with the COHERENT system, **ckermi** uses an interactive shell to remove some of the pain from the process of exchanging files. The name **ckermi** reflects the fact that this command is written in the C language, and so has been ported to many different machines and operating systems.

You can run **ckermi** in either *interactive mode* or *command mode*. Simply typing the command

```
ckermi
```

invokes **ckermi** in interactive mode: **ckermi** displays a prompt, waits for your command, executes, then prompts you for its next command. Typing the command line plus one or more arguments invokes **ckermi** in command mode: **ckermi** then reads the arguments from the command line and executes them. After execution of the commands, **ckermi** returns to interactive mode.

**ckermi**'s command-line options name either actions or settings. An action option tells **ckermi** to send a file, receive a file, or connect to a remote system. The command line may contain no more than one action option. A settings option changes one or more of the internal values that control how **ckermi** operates; for example, one setting option lets you set the baud rate of the serial port that **ckermi** will be using. A command line can contain any number of settings options.

## Command-Line Options

**ckermi** recognizes the following command-line options:

**-a filename** Give an alternate name to a file being transferred. For example, the command

```
ckermi -s foo -a bar
```

transmits the file **foo** to a remote system, but tells the remote system that the file is named **bar**. Likewise, the command

```
ckermi -ra baz
```

stores the first incoming file under the name **baz**.

If more than one file arrives or is sent, only the first file is affected by the **-a** option.

**-b baudrate** Set the baud rate of the device to *baudrate*.

**-c** Connect to serial port, and pass all subsequent typing to that port. To resume talking to your local system, type the escape character followed by the letter 'c'. The escape character is set by default to **<ctrl-\\>**, although you can change it if you wish.

**-d** Debug mode — record debugging information in the file **debug.log** in the current directory.

**-e n** Set the length of the packet to *n* where *n* is a number between ten and about 1,000. Lengths of 95 or greater require that the implementation of **kermi** on the remote system support the long-packet extension to the **kermi** protocol.

**-f** Send a "finish" command to a remote server.

**-g file** Ask a remote system to send *file* or *files*. The file name must use the remote system's own syntax; you must quote all characters normally expanded by the COHERENT shell, e.g.:

```
ckermi -g x\*.*\?
```

**-h** Help — display a brief synopsis of the command-line options.

**-i** The "image" option: specify that the file being transmitted or received is an eight-bit binary file, and therefore no conversion should be performed upon the data being received.

**-k** Passively receive file or files, copying them to standard output.

**-l device** Name the serial device to be used. For example

```
ckermi -l /dev/com2
```

tells **ckermi** to use device **/dev/com2**.

**-n** Like **-c**, but used after a protocol transaction has occurred. You can use both **-c** and **-n** in the same command.

**-p x** Set parity, where *x* is one of **e**, **o**, **m**, **s**, or **n** (respectively, even, odd, mark, space, or none). If parity is other than none, then **ckermi** uses the eighth-bit prefixing mechanism to transfer binary data, provided the implementation of **kermi** on the remote system agrees. The default parity is none.

**-q** Quiet — suppress screen update during file transfer; for example, this lets you transfer a file in the background.

**-r** Receive a file or files. Wait passively for files to arrive.

**-s file** Send the specified *file* or *files*. If *fn* is '-' then **ckermi** sends from standard input, which may come from a file:

```
ckermi -s - < foo.bar
```

or come from a parallel process:

```
ls -l | ckermi -s -
```

You cannot use this mechanism to send text typed from the keyboard. To send a file named '-', precede it with a path name, e.g.:

```
ckernit -s ./-
```

- t** Specify half duplex, line turnaround with XON as the handshake character.
- w** Write-Protect — avoid file-name collisions for incoming files.
- x** Begin server operation. This option can be used in either local or remote mode.

If **ckernit** is in local mode, shows the progress of the file transfer. A dot is printed for every four data packets; other packets are shown by type (e.g., 'S' for Send-Init); 'T' is printed when there's a timeout; and '%' is printed for each retransmission.

During file transfer, you can type the following "interrupt" commands:

- <ctrl-F>** Interrupt the current file and go on to the next, if any.
- <ctrl-B>** Interrupt the entire batch of files and terminate the transaction.
- <ctrl-R>** Resend the current packet.
- <ctrl-A>** Display a status report for the current transaction.

These interrupt characters differ from the ones used in other implementations of **ckernit** to avoid conflict with the COHERENT shell's interrupt characters.

### Interactive Operation

When you invoke **ckernit** in interactive mode, it displays the following prompt.

```
C-Kernit>
```

Type any valid **ckernit** command; the set of valid commands is described below. **ckernit** executes the command and then prompts you for another. The process continues until you tell it to quit.

Commands begin with a keyword, normally an English verb, such as **send**. You can abbreviate any keyword, as long as you type enough characters to distinguish it from all other keywords. Certain commonly used keywords (e.g., **send**, **receive**, **connect**) have special non-unique abbreviations (respectively, 's', 'r', and 'c').

Certain characters have special functions in interactive commands:

- ?** Print a message that explains what is possible or expected at the current point within a command. Depending upon the context, the message may be a brief phrase, a menu of keywords, or a list of files.
- <esc>** Request completion of the current keyword or file name, or insertion of a default value. **ckernit** will beep if the requested operation fails. **<tab>** does the same thing.
- <del>** Delete the previous character from the command. **<backspace>** does the same thing.
- <ctrl-W>** Erase the rightmost word from the command line.
- <ctrl-U>** Erase the entire command.
- <ctrl-R>** Redisplay the current command.
- <space>** Delimit fields (keywords, filenames, numbers) within a command.
- <return>** Execute the command.

**\** Insert any of the above characters into the command, literally. To enter a literal backslash, type two backslashes in a row (**\\**). Typing one backslash immediately **<return>** lets you continue the command on the next line.

**ckermi** recognizes the following interactive commands:

**! command**

Execute a shell command. A space must follow the **!**.

**%** A comment. **ckermi** ignores everything that follows the **%**.

**bye** Terminate and log out a remote **kermit** server.

**close** Close a log file.

**connect**

Connect to the remote system.

**cwd directory**

Change the working directory to *directory*.

**dial** Dial a telephone number.

**directory**

Display a directory listing.

**echo** Display arguments literally. Useful in take-command files.

**exit** Exit from the program, closing any open logs.

**finish** Instruct a remote **kermit** server to exit, but not log out.

**get** Get files from a remote **kermit** server.

**hangup**

Hang up the telephone.

**help** Display a help message for a given command.

**log** Open a log file — debugging, packet, session, transaction.

**quit** Same as **exit**.

**receive** Passively wait for files to arrive.

**remote** Issue file-management commands to a remote **kermit** server.

**script** Execute a login script with a remote system.

**send file**

Send *file* to the remote **kermit** server.

**server** Begin server operation.

**set** Set various internal parameters.

**show** Display values of parameters, program version, etc.

**space** Display current disk space usage.

**statistics**

Display statistics about most recent transaction.



**take** Execute commands from a file.

Interactive **ckernit** accepts commands from files as well as from the keyboard. Upon startup, **ckernit** looks for the file **.kernrc** first in directory **\$HOME** and then in the current directory; if it finds the file, it executes all commands it finds therein. These commands must be in interactive format. Command files may be nested to any reasonable depth.

### **The set Command**

As noted above, the **set** command lets you set the internal parameters by which **ckernit** operates. The **set** command recognizes the following arguments:

#### **block-check**

Level of packet error detection.

**delay** Time to wait before sending first packet.

**duplex** Specify which side echoes during connect mode.

#### **escape-character**

Character to prefix *escape commands* during connect mode.

**file** Set various file parameters.

#### **flow-control**

Communication line full-duplex flow control.

**handshake** Communication line half-duplex turnaround character.

**line** Communication-line device name.

#### **modem-dialer**

Type of modem-dialer on communication line.

**parity** Communication line character parity.

**prompt** Change the **ckernit** program's prompt.

**receive** Set various parameters for inbound packets.

**retry** Set the packet retransmission limit.

**send** Set various parameters for outbound packets.

**speed** Communication line speed.

### **Remote Commands**

**ckernit** also has a suite of commands that are sent to the remote system for execution. They are as follows:

**cwd** Change remote working directory (also, **remote cd**).

**delete** Delete remote files.

**directory** Display a listing of remote file names.

**help** Request help from a remote server.

**host** Issue a command to the remote host in its own command language.

**space** Display current disk space usage on remote system.

**type** Display a remote file on your screen.

**who** Display the users logged in to the remote system, or get information about a user.

### Files

**.kermrc** — **ckerm**it initialization commands

### See Also

**commands**, **kerm**it, **uucp**

### Notes

The **kerm**it protocol was developed at the Columbia University Center for Computing Activities. **ckerm**it is copyright © by the Trustees of Columbia University.

Please note that **ckerm**it is provided in binary form per the licensing terms set forth by its copyright holders. It is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

## C keywords — Overview

A **keyword** is a word that is reserved within C, and must not be used to name variables, functions, or macros. COHERENT recognizes the following C keywords:

<b>alien</b>	<b>extern</b>	<b>signed</b>
<b>auto</b>	<b>float</b>	<b>sizeof</b>
<b>break</b>	<b>for</b>	<b>static</b>
<b>case</b>	<b>goto</b>	<b>struct</b>
<b>char</b>	<b>if</b>	<b>switch</b>
<b>const</b>	<b>int</b>	<b>typedef</b>
<b>continue</b>	<b>long</b>	<b>union</b>
<b>default</b>	<b>readonly</b>	<b>unsigned</b>
<b>do</b>	<b>register</b>	<b>void</b>
<b>double</b>	<b>return</b>	<b>volatile</b>
<b>else</b>	<b>short</b>	<b>while</b>
<b>enum</b>		

In conformity with the ANSI standard, the keyword **entry** is no longer recognized. The keywords **const** and **volatile** are now recognized, but not implemented.

### See Also

**C language**

## C language — Overview

COHERENT includes a C compiler that fully implements the Kernighan and Ritchie standard of C, with extensions taken from the ANSI Standard. The implementation of C under COHERENT 286 differs from that under COHERENT 386, due to differences between the architectures of the Intel 80286 and 80386 chips. The following sections summarize the implementation of C for each implementation of COHERENT.

Please note that in the following discussion, *word* indicates an object 16 bits long; *dword*, an object 32 bits long; and *qword*, an object 64 bits long.

### COHERENT 286 Implementation of C

*Identifiers*

Characters allowed: **A-Z, a-z, \_, 0-9**

Case sensitive.

Number of significant characters in a variable name:

at compile time: **127**

at link time: **16**

C appends '\_' to end of external identifiers

*Escape Sequences*

The COHERENT C compiler recognizes the following escape sequences:

	<i>ASCII</i>	<i>Ctrl</i>	<i>Hex</i>	<i>Description</i>
<b>\a</b>	BEL	<ctrl-G>	0x07	audible tone (bell)
<b>\b</b>	BS	<ctrl-H>	0x08	backspace
<b>\f</b>	FF	<ctrl-L>	0x12	formfeed
<b>\n</b>	LF	<ctrl-J>	0x0A	linefeed (newline)
<b>\r</b>	CR	<ctrl-M>	0x0D	carriage return
<b>\t</b>	HT	<ctrl-I>	0x09	horizontal tab
<b>\v</b>	VT	<ctrl-K>	0x0B	vertical tab
<b>\xhhhh</b>			0xhhhh	hex (one to four hex digits [0-9a-fA-F])
<b>\Ooooo</b>				octal (one to four octal digits [0-7])

*Reserved Identifiers (Keywords)*

See **C keywords**, above.

*Data Formats (in bits)*

<b>char</b>	8
<b>unsigned char</b>	8
<b>double</b>	64
<b>enum</b>	16
<b>float</b>	32
<b>int</b>	16
<b>unsigned int</b>	16
<b>long</b>	32
<b>unsigned long</b>	32
<b>pointer</b>	16
<b>short</b>	16
<b>unsigned short</b>	16

*Floating-Point Formats*

DECVAX floating point format:

- 1 sign bit
- 8-bit exponent
- 24-bit normalized fraction with hidden bit
- Bias of 129

DECVAX double format:

Same as **float**, but with 56 bits of fraction

Reserved values:

+ - infinity, -0

All floating-point operations are done as **doubles**

### *Limits*

Maximum bitfield size: 16 bits  
Maximum number of **cases** in a **switch**: no formal limit  
Maximum block nesting depth: no formal limit  
Maximum parentheses nesting depth: no formal limit  
Maximum structure size: 64 kilobytes  
Maximum array size: 64 kilobytes

### *Preprocessor Instructions*

<b>#define</b>	<b>#ifdef</b>
<b>#else</b>	<b>#ifndef</b>
<b>#elif</b>	<b>#include</b>
<b>#endif</b>	<b>#line</b>
<b>#if</b>	<b>#undef</b>

### *Structure Name-Spaces*

Supports both Berkeley and Kernighan-Ritchie conventions for structure in union.

### *Register Variables*

Two available for **ints**  
Two available for **ints** or pointers

### *Function Linkage*

Return values for **ints**: AX  
Return values for **longs**: DX:AX  
Return values for pointers: AX  
Return values for **doubles** in DX:AX  
Parameters pushed on stack in reverse order:  
    **chars**, **shorts**, and pointers pushed as words  
    structures copied onto the stack  
Caller must clear parameters off stack  
Stack frame linkage is done through SP register

## **COHERENT 386 Implementation of C**

### *Identifiers*

Characters allowed: **A-Z**, **a-z**, **\_**, **0-9**  
Case sensitive  
Number of significant characters in a variable name: **255**

### Escape Sequences

The COHERENT C compiler recognizes the following escape sequences:

	ASCII	Ctrl	Hex	Description
<b>\a</b>	BEL	<ctrl-G>	0x07	audible tone (bell)
<b>\b</b>	BS	<ctrl-H>	0x08	backspace
<b>\f</b>	FF	<ctrl-L>	0x12	formfeed
<b>\n</b>	LF	<ctrl-J>	0x0A	linefeed (newline)
<b>\r</b>	CR	<ctrl-M>	0x0D	carriage return
<b>\t</b>	HT	<ctrl-I>	0x09	horizontal tab
<b>\v</b>	VT	<ctrl-K>	0x0B	vertical tab
<b>\xhhh</b>			0xhhh	hex (one to four hex digits [0-9a-fA-F])
<b>\Oooo</b>				octal (one to four octal digits [0-7])

### Reserved Identifiers (Keywords)

See **C keywords**, above.

### Data Formats (in bits)

<b>char</b>	8
<b>unsigned char</b>	8
<b>double</b>	64
<b>enum</b>	8   16   32
<b>float</b>	32
<b>int</b>	32
<b>unsigned int</b>	32
<b>long</b>	32
<b>unsigned long</b>	32
<b>pointer</b>	32
<b>short</b>	16
<b>unsigned short</b>	16

### Floating-Point Formats

IEEE floating point format:

- 1 sign bit
- 8-bit exponent
- 24-bit normalized fraction with hidden bit
- Bias of 127

IEEE double format:

- 1 sign bit
- 11-bit exponent
- 53-bit fraction
- Bias of 1,023

Reserved values:

- +/- infinity, -0

All floating-point operations are done as **doubles**

*Limits*

Maximum bitfield size: 32 bits  
Maximum number of **cases** in a **switch**: no formal limit  
Maximum block nesting depth: no formal limit  
Maximum parentheses nesting depth: no formal limit  
Maximum structure size: no formal limit  
Maximum array size: no formal limit

*Preprocessor Instructions*

<b>#define</b>	<b>#ifdef</b>
<b>#else</b>	<b>#ifndef</b>
<b>#elif</b>	<b>#include</b>
<b>#endif</b>	<b>#line</b>
<b>#if</b>	<b>#undef</b>
<b>#pragma</b>	

*Structure Name-Spaces*

Supports both Berkeley and Kernighan-Ritchie conventions for structure in union.

*Function Linkage*

Return values in EAX  
Return values for **doubles**: global variable **fpac\_**  
Parameters pushed on stack in reverse order:  
    **chars**, **shorts**, and pointers pushed as dwords  
    structures copied onto the stack  
Caller must clear parameters off stack  
Stack frame linkage is done through SP register

*Structures and Alignment*

Structure members are aligned according to the most strictly aligned type within the structure.  
For example, a structure is word-aligned if it contains only **shorts**, but on dword if it contains an **int** or **long**.  
**#pragma align** *n* can override this feature.

*Registers*

Registers EBX, EDI, and ESI are available for register variables  
Only 32-bit objects go into registers

*Special Features and Optimizations*

Both implementations of C perform the following optimizations:

- Branch optimization is performed: this uses the smallest branch instruction for the required range.
- Unreached code is eliminated.
- Duplicate instruction sequences are removed.
- Jumps to jumps are eliminated.
- Multiplication and division by constant powers of two are changed to shifts when the results are the same.

- Sequences that can be resolved at compile time are identified and resolved.

### See Also

**argc**, **argv**, C keywords, C preprocessor, header files, initialization, Lexicon, libraries, linker-defined symbols, **main()**

### clear — Command

Clear the screen

**clear**

The command **clear** reads the **termcap** description of your terminal and uses the information therein to clear your terminal's screen. The environmental variable **TERM** must define your terminal's type.

### See Also

**commands**, **TERM**, **termcap**

### clearerr() — STDIO Macro (stdio.h)

Present stream status

**#include <stdio.h>**

**clearerr(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**clearerr()** resets the error flag of the argument *fp*. If an error condition is detected by the related macro **ferror**, **clearerr()** can be called to clear it.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ferror()**.

### See Also

**ferror()**, **STDIO**

### close() — System Call

Close a file

**int close(fd) int fd;**

**close()** closes the file identified by the file descriptor *fd*, which was returned by **creat()**, **dup()**, **open()**, or **pipe()**. **close()** also frees the associated file descriptor.

Because each program can have only a limited number of files open at any given time, programs that process many files should **close()** files whenever possible. The function **exit()** automatically calls **fclose()** for all open files; however, the system call **\_exit()** does not.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **open()**.

### See Also

**creat()**, **open()**, system calls

### Diagnostics

**close()** returns -1 if an error occurs, such as its being handed a bad file descriptor; otherwise, it returns zero.

**closedir()** — General Function

Close a directory stream

**int** **closedir**(*dirp*)

**DIR** \**dirp*;

The COHERENT function **closedir()** is one of a set of COHERENT routines that manipulate directories in a device-independent manner. It closes the directory stream pointed to by *dirp*.

**closedir()** returns zero if no error occurs. If something goes wrong, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**Example**

For an example of this system call, see the Lexicon entry for **opendir()**.

**See Also**

**dirent.h**, **general functions**, **getdents()**, **opendir()**, **readdir()**, **rewinddir()**, **seekdir()**, **telldir()**

**Notes**

This function is available only under COHERENT 386.

The COHERENT implementation of the **dirent** routines was written by D. Gwynn.

**clri** — Command

Clear i-node

**/etc/clri** *filesystem* *inumber* ...

**clri** zeroes out each i-node with a given *inumber* on *filesystem*. *filesystem* is almost always a device-special file that corresponds to a disk device. The raw device should be used.

The user must have read and write permission on the *filesystem*. If the *inumber* corresponds to an open file, the **clri** has a very high probability of being ineffective: the system maintains in core memory a copy of all active i-nodes, and this copy will eventually be written out to disk, undoing the effects of **clri**. To counter this problem, unmount the file system before running **clri**. If the i-node is for the root file system, you must reboot the system immediately after running **clri**.

**See Also**

**commands**, **dcheck**, **fsck**, **icheck**, **i-node**, **umount**

**cmp** — Command

Compare bytes of two files

**cmp** [-ls] *file1* *file2* [*skip1* *skip2*]

**cmp** is a command that is included with COHERENT. It compares *file1* and *file2* character by character for equality. If *file1* is '-', **cmp** reads the standard input.

Normally, **cmp** notes the first difference and prints the line and character position, relative to any skips. If it encounters EOF on one file but not on the other, it prints the message "EOF on filen". The following are the options that can be used with **cmp**:

- l Note each differing byte by printing the positions and octal values of the bytes of each file.
- s Print nothing, but return the exit status.

If the skip counts are present, **cmp** reads *skip1* bytes on *file1* and *skip2* bytes on *file2* before it begins to compare the two files.



## See Also

**commands, diff, sh**

## Diagnostics

The exit status is zero for identical files, one for non-identical files, and two for errors, e.g., bad command usage or inaccessible file.

## **coff.h** — Header File

Format for COHERENT 386 objects

**#include <coff.h>**

**coff.h** describes the Common Object File Format (COFF), which is the object format used by COHERENT 386.

## What Is COFF?

In brief, COFF is the UNIX System V standard for file formats. It defines the formats for relocatable object modules, for executable files, and for archives.

A COFF file is built around three sections, or *segments*:

- text** This holds executable machine code. It is write protected — the operating system is forbidden to overwrite it. (This is why operating systems that use COFF or similar formats are said to run in “protected mode.”)
- data** This holds initialized data, that is, the data that the program finds when it begins execution. The program can read and write into this segment.
- bss** This segment holds uninitialized data. It is simply a mass of space that is initialized to zeroes. It is contiguous with the **data** segment. The term **bss** from the old IBM mainframe days, and stands for “block started by symbol”.

Not all segments have to be included in every COFF file. Further, some implementations of COFF define their own segments that manipulate special features of the operating system or hardware.

The following describes the structure of a COFF file. The areas within the file are described in the order in which they appear.

### 1. file header

This holds information set when the file was created, such as the date and time it was created, the number of segments in the file, a pointer to the symbol table, and status flags.

### 2. optional header

This gives information set at run-time, such as the address of the program entry point, and the size of the code and data segments.

### 3. segment headers

The next area holds a header for each segment in the file. Each header describes its segment's characteristics and contains pointers to the segment's contents, relocation information, line-number information, and other useful addresses.

### 4. segment contents

The next area holds the contents of the segments used in this file.

### 5. relocation information

The fifth area gives relocation information, one set of information for each segment in the file. The linker **ld** uses this information to generate the executable file at link time.

### 6. line-number information

This area holds debug information, one set of information for each segment. This area is optional.

**7. symbol table**

This area holds information used by both the linker and the debugger.

**8. string table**

This table holds very long names of variables.

Most of this information is irrelevant to the average user, or even the average developer of software. To the average user, COFF is "a machine that would go of itself"; you can run or compile programs without worrying what the linker puts where, or why. These details, however, can be very important if you are writing tools that manipulate the internals of files, such as archivers or debuggers. If you need detailed information on COFF and how to manipulate it, see *Understanding and Using COFF*, by Gintaras R. Gircys (Sebastopol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., 1988).

For more information on how the COFF format affects COHERENT's language tools, see the Lexicon articles for **ar**, **as** **386**, **cc**, **db**, and **ld**.

**See Also**

**ar**, **as** **386**, **cc**, **file formats**, **header files**, **ld**

Gircys, G.R.: *Understanding and Using COFF*. Sebastopol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., 1988.

**Notes**

For details on the object format for COHERENT 286, see **l.out.h**.

**COHERENT — Technical Information****Principles of the COHERENT System**

COHERENT is a multiuser, multitasking operating system. *Multiuser* means that with COHERENT, more than one person can use your computer at any given time. *Multitasking* means that with COHERENT, any user can run more than one program at any given time. The design of COHERENT employs a few elegant concepts to give you a powerful and flexible system that is easy to use.

**What is an Operating System?**

An *operating system* is the master program that controls the operation of all other programs. It loads programs into memory, controls their execution, and controls a program's access to peripheral devices, such as printers, modems, and terminals.

Some operating systems permit only one user to use the computer at a time; and that user can run only one program at a time. For example, MS-DOS, the operating system most commonly used on the IBM PC and its clones, can run only one program at a time. However, you may well want your computer to support more than one user at a time, and run more than one program at a time. Sharing not only yields many economies (such as allowing a group of users to share one printer), but also allows the users to communicate with each other and so work together more efficiently.

Any multitasking operating system must be able to do the following tasks efficiently:

- Schedule computer time
- Control mass-storage devices (disks and tape drives)
- Organize disk-storage space
- Protect programs from conflict
- Protect stored information from destruction
- Ease cooperation among users

Today's operating systems also provide *tools*. These are programs that are bundled with the operating system, and that are designed to help you do your work more efficiently. For example, you need editors, compilers, debuggers, and assemblers to develop and test programs. Text

formatters and spelling checkers help you write memoranda, manuals, or books. Command processors (also called *shells*) help you run the computer easily. Status checkers tell you what programs are being run, who is using the system, and how much space is left on your disk.

The combination of operating system and its tools transforms a boxful of wires and circuits into a useful machine.

### **COHERENT's Design Philosophy**

The COHERENT system combines a multitasking operating system with a full set of tools. But the quality and quantity of the features provided by the COHERENT operating system distinguishes it from other, similar operating systems.

All but a very small part of the operating system software is written in C, a high-level language, rather than assembly language. The result is a reliable operating system, with no observable loss in execution speed. The choice of a high-level language also provides portability. The C language has been implemented on practically every computer, from mainframe to micro.

An important guiding principle in the design and implementation of the COHERENT operating system is that good performance is the direct result of dedication to careful design and implementation of algorithms and systems, rather than coding tricks.

A computer system is not an end in itself; rather, it is a "bench" for constructing tools to solve specific problems. If the operating system is too specialized or limited, the range of problems it can help you solve will be narrow. On the other hand, if the operating system is too detailed, then it becomes complex, idiosyncratic, and potentially unreliable.

The following quotation from John Conway summarizes well the philosophy that underlies the design of the COHERENT system:

*The engineer who wants a machine for some specific purpose will normally approve the simplest machine that does the job. He will not usually prefer a multiplicity of parts with the same effect, nor will he countenance the insertion of components with no function.*

The COHERENT system follows this approach throughout. For example, consider device-independent I/O. COHERENT does not distinguish between a program, a device (such as a terminal or floppy disk), or a file. Programs can move data among devices and files without knowing any of the physical characteristics of the device. This device independence comes from designing the I/O system using a consistent view of files, devices, and programs. Each appears like a stream of bytes, so each can communicate directly with all others. If an application requires a more complex file structure, it can be added at a higher level. This approach makes COHERENT simple and easy to maintain, yet powerful.

You may wonder whether this design compromises the performance of the system. On the contrary, the speed at which the COHERENT system transfers data between files on a disk is very nearly the hardware speed of disk-to-disk transfers. This is achieved through the use of simple but ingenious algorithms.

Throughout, the COHERENT system uses this principle of using a few primitive operators to provide easy communication among programs, files, and devices. With these, any user of the COHERENT system can construct the tools to solve nearly all of his computing problems.

### **COHERENT Properties**

The COHERENT file system uses a tree-structured directory. This means that directories hold files, which in turn may be data files or other directories. The fact that a directory can contain more directories is a significant help in managing large numbers of files.

The COHERENT operating system is modularly designed, using certain mathematical concepts. This results in an efficient design for the system. Using this simple but elegant approach, features are designed to fit well together. This means that COHERENT does not repeatedly reinvent the

wheel — each feature is carefully designed to function well by itself and work readily with other features. COHERENT avoids the “creeping feature” syndrome common to usual operating systems.

In brief, COHERENT is what UNIX used to be: an efficient system of selected tools and well-designed utilities, that brings out the best in modest computer systems.

### See Also

**MS-DOS, technical information**

### Notes

For information on how COHERENT compares with MS-DOS, see the Lexicon article on **MS-DOS**.

## **col** — Command

Remove reverse and half-line motions

**col** [ **-bdfx** ] [ **-p***n* ]

The command **col** reads the standard input and writes to the standard output. It removes reverse and half-line motions from the output of **nroff** for the benefit of output devices that cannot perform them. It maintains an image of the page in memory and performs these motions virtually so they do not appear on the output.

**col** understands four escape sequences: **<esc> 7** for reverse line feed, **<esc> 8** for half reverse line feed, **<esc> 9** for half forward line feed, and **<esc> B** for a forward line feed. It removes **<esc>** (ASCII 033) from the input stream if it is followed by any other character.

Eight control characters besides **<esc>** are interpreted by **col**. Newline, return, space, backspace, and tab carry their usual meaning. **VT** (013) is an alternate form of reverse line feed. The characters **SO** (017) and **SI** (016) signal the start and end of text in an alternate character set. **col** remembers the character set for each character and uses **SO** and **SI** to distinguish them on the output. **col** removes all other control characters from the input stream.

**col** recognizes the following options:

- b** The output device cannot backspace. Only the last of a set of characters destined for a given position will appear.
- d** Double-space the output. This doubles the length of a document but preserves relative vertical spacing. The **-f** option has precedence.
- f** The output device can perform half-forward line feeds. Full lines appear single spaced with half lines between them. This is the only situation in which half forward line feeds appear in the output of **col** — reverse line motions never appear.
- x** Suppress the default conversion of white space to tabs on output.
- p** *n* Set the internal page buffer size to *n* full lines (default, 128).

If neither **-f** nor **-d** is chosen, **col** moves non-empty half lines to the next lower full line and pushes all later lines down one line. This can distort the appearance of the document.

### See Also

**ASCII, commands, nroff**

### Notes

Backing up past the start of a document or of the page buffer loses characters.

**com — Device Driver**

Device drivers for asynchronous serial lines

The COHERENT system has drivers for four asynchronous serial lines, **com1** through **com4**.

A serial line can be opened into any of four different “flavors”, as follows:

<b>com?l</b>	Interrupt driven, local mode (no modem control)
<b>com?r</b>	Interrupt driven, remote mode (modem control)
<b>com?pl</b>	Polled, local mode (no modem control)
<b>com?pr</b>	Polled, remote mode (modem control)

“Local mode” means that the line will have a terminal plugged into it, to directly access the computer. “Modem control” means that the line will have a modem plugged into it. Modem control is enabled on a serial line by resetting the modem control bit (bit 7) in the minor number for the device. This allows the system to generate a hangup signal when the modem indicates loss of carrier by dropping DCD (Data Carrier Detect). A modem line should always have its DSR, DCD and CTS pins connected. If left hanging, spurious transitions can cause severe system thrashing. To disable modem control on a given serial line, use the minor device which has the modem control bit set (bit 7). An **open** to a modem-control line will block until a carrier is detected (DCD goes true).

“Interrupt mode” means that the port can generate an interrupt to attract the attention of the COHERENT system; “polled mode” means that the port cannot generate an interrupt, but must be checked (or “polled”) constantly by the COHERENT system to see if activity has occurred on it.

The COHERENT system uses two device drivers to manage serial lines: **al0** manages COM1 and COM3, and **al1** manages COM2 and COM4. Due to limitations in the design of the ports, you can enable interrupts on either COM1 or COM3 (or on COM2 or COM4), but not both. If you wish to use both ports simultaneously, one must be run in polled mode. For example, if you wish to open all four serial lines, you can open two of the lines in interrupt mode: you can open either COM1 or COM3 in interrupt mode, and you can open either COM2 or COM4 in interrupt mode. The other two lines must be opened in polled mode.

Opening a device in polled mode consumes many CPU cycles, based upon the speed of the highest baud rate requested. For example, on a 20 MHz 80386-based machine, polling at 9600-baud was found to consume about 15% of the CPU time. As only one device can use the interrupt line at any given time, the best approach is to make the high-speed line of the pair interrupt driven and open the low-speed or less-frequently used line in polled mode. However, if you enable a polled line for logins, the port is open and will be polled as long as the port remains open (enabled). Thus, even if a port is not in use, the fact that it has a **getty** on it consumes CPU cycles. As a rule of thumb, try and open a port in interrupt mode. If you cannot, use the polled version. Also note that use of any of the four serial ports in polled mode prevents other polled serial device drivers, such as the **hs** generic multi-port polled serial driver, from being used at the same time.

If you intend to use a modem on your serial port, you must insure that the DCD signal from the modem actually *follows* the state of carrier detect. Some modems allow the user to “strap” or set the DCD signal so that it is always asserted (true). This incorrect setup will cause COHERENT to think that the modem is “connected” to a remote modem, even when there is no such connection.

In addition, if you wish to allow remote logins to your COHERENT system via your modem, you must insure that the modem does *not* echo any commands or status information. Failure to do so will result in severe system thrashing due to the **getty** or **login** processes endlessly “talking” to your modem.

### **Changing Default Port Speeds**

Serial lines **com1** through **com4** default to 9600 baud when opened. This default speed can be permanently changed on a “per port” basis by changing the value of driver variables **C1BAUD**,

**C2BAUD**, **C3BAUD** or **C4BAUD**. The list of acceptable values can be found in header file **<sgtty.h>** and range from 1, corresponding to 50 baud, up to 17, which corresponds to 19,200 baud. For a table of legal baud rates, see the Lexicon entry for **sgtty.h**.

To change the default value for a port, you must use the **/conf/patch** command. For example, to change the default speed for port **com2** to 2400 baud, enter the following command while running as the superuser:

```
/conf/patch /drv/all C2BAUD_=12
```

The change will not take effect until the next time that you boot your system.

### **Loading a Driver**

COHERENT version 3.2 and later implements all COM drivers as loadable drivers. This was done to save space within the kernel, and to let you configure your system as you prefer. The rest of this section does *not* apply to any release of COHERENT prior to version 3.2.

To load a COM driver, you must use the command **drvld** to load the appropriate **al** device. As noted above, drivers **com1** and **com3** are controlled by device **al0**, and drivers **com2** and **com4** by **al1**. For example, to load **al0** use the command:

```
/etc/drvld /drv/al0
```

To remove a COM driver, first type the command

```
ps -d
```

and note the process identifier of the COM driver you want to remove. Then, become the superuser **root** and type the command

```
kill -9 xxxx
```

where **xxxx** is the process identifier for the COM driver.

Note that **al0** is in directory **/drv**, not **/dev**.

If you are going to load certain drivers regularly, be sure to write the appropriate **drvld** command into system file **/etc/drvld.all**.

### **See Also**

**com1**, **com2**, **com3**, **com4**, **device drivers**, **drvld**

### **Diagnostics**

An attempt to open a non-existent device will generate error messages. This can occur if hardware is absent or not turned on.

### **Notes**

The **com** family of devices apply only to COHERENT 286. To access a serial port under COHERENT 386, use the driver **asy**, which is described in its own Lexicon entry.

The **com\*** series of devices are not compatible with the **ioctl()** parameters defined in header file **<termio.h>**. Be sure to include header file **<sgtty.h>** if you wish to perform terminal specific **ioctl()** calls.

In the current version of these drivers, the following sequence of steps results in a panic:

```
enable com4pl
enable com3pl
disable com4pl
kill kill <all driver process id>
```

The key is that the driver containing the polling routine cannot be unloaded if the other driver is still polling.

Note, too, that if any **com** device driver is used in polling mode, the **hs** driver cannot be used, and vice versa.

### com1 — Device Driver

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM1

**/dev/com1** is the COHERENT system's standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM1. The interface is assigned major device 5, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x3F8 (COM1). **com1** generates interrupt IRQ4.

Four versions of device **com1** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

<i>Device Name</i>	<i>Major</i>	<i>Minor</i>	<i>I/O Type</i>	<i>Modem Control?</i>
<b>/dev/com1l</b>	5	128	Interrupts	No
<b>/dev/com1r</b>	5	0	Interrupts	Yes
<b>/dev/com1pl</b>	5	192	Polled	No
<b>/dev/com1pr</b>	5	64	Polled	Yes

For details on how these versions differ, see the entry for **com**.

#### Files

**/dev/com1l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com1r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line  
**/dev/com1pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com1pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

#### See Also

**com**, **com3**, **stty**

#### Notes

The **com** family of devices apply only to COHERENT 286. To access a serial port under COHERENT 386, use the driver **asy**, which is described in its own Lexicon entry.

### com2 — Device Driver

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM2

**/dev/com2** is the COHERENT system's standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM2. The interface is assigned major device 6, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x2F8 (COM2). **com2** generates interrupt IRQ3.

Four versions of device **com2** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

<i>Device Name</i>	<i>Major</i>	<i>Minor</i>	<i>I/O Type</i>	<i>Modem Control?</i>
<b>/dev/com2l</b>	6	128	Interrupts	No
<b>/dev/com2r</b>	6	0	Interrupts	Yes
<b>/dev/com2pl</b>	6	192	Polled	No
<b>/dev/com2pr</b>	6	64	Polled	Yes

For details on how these differ, see the entry for **com**.

### Files

**/dev/com2l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com2r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line  
**/dev/com2pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com2pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

### See Also

**com**, **com4**, **stty**

### Notes

The **com** family of devices apply only to COHERENT 286. To access a serial port under COHERENT 386, use the driver **asy**, which is described in its own Lexicon entry.

## **com3 — Device Driver**

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM3

**/dev/com3** is the COHERENT system's standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM3. The interface is assigned major device 5, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x3E8 (COM3). **com3** generates interrupt IRQ4.

Four versions of device **com3** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

<i>Device Name</i>	<i>Major</i>	<i>Minor</i>	<i>I/O Type</i>	<i>Modem Control?</i>
<b>/dev/com3l</b>	5	129	Interrupts	No
<b>/dev/com3r</b>	5	1	Interrupts	Yes
<b>/dev/com3pl</b>	5	193	Polled	No
<b>/dev/com3pr</b>	5	65	Polled	Yes

For details on how these differ, see the entry for **com**.

### Files

**/dev/com3l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com3r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line  
**/dev/com3pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line  
**/dev/com3pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

### See Also

**com**, **com1**, **stty**

### Notes

The **com** family of devices apply only to COHERENT 286. To access a serial port under COHERENT 386, use the driver **asy**, which is described in its own Lexicon entry.



**com4 — Device Driver**

Device driver for asynchronous serial line COM4

**/dev/com4** is the COHERENT system's standard interface to asynchronous serial line COM4. The interface is assigned major device 6, and is accessed as a character-special device. The I/O address for the corresponding 8250 SIO is 0x2E8 (COM4). **com4** generates interrupt IRQ3.

Four versions of device **com4** are in directory **/dev**, as follows:

Device Name	Major	Minor	I/O Type	Modem Control?
<b>/dev/com4l</b>	6	129	Interrupts	No
<b>/dev/com4r</b>	6	1	Interrupts	Yes
<b>/dev/com4pl</b>	6	193	Polled	No
<b>/dev/com4pr</b>	6	65	Polled	Yes

For details on how these differ, see the entry for **com**.

**Files**

**/dev/com4l** — Interrupt-driven, non-modem (local) line

**/dev/com4r** — Interrupt-driven, modem (non-local) line

**/dev/com4pl** — Polled, non-modem (local) line

**/dev/com4pr** — Polled, modem (non-local) line

**See Also**

**com**, **com2**, **stty**

**Notes**

The **com** family of devices apply only to COHERENT 286. To access a serial port under COHERENT 386, use the driver **asy**, which is described in its own Lexicon entry.

**comm — Command**

Print common lines

**comm** [ -123 ] *file1 file2*

The command **comm** prints the lines unique to *file1* in the first column, the lines unique to *file2* in the second column, and the lines common to both in the third. Both *file1* and *file2* should be sorted in ASCII order. Any or all columns may be suppressed by indicating the column or columns to suppress in the optional flag. The file '-' means standard input.

**See Also**

**cmp**, **commands**, **diff**, **sort**, **uniq**

**commands — Overview**

The following lists the commands included with COHERENT. The command name is given on the left and a description on the right.

**Communications**

The following commands let you exchange information with other users and other systems.

**ckernit** . . . . . Interactive inter-system communication and file transfer  
**kernit** . . . . . Communication and file transfer (COHERENT 286 only)  
**mail** . . . . . Send/read electronic mail  
**mesg** . . . . . Permit/deny messages from other users  
**msg** . . . . . Send a brief message to other users  
**msgs** . . . . . Read messages intended for all COHERENT users

**uucico** . . . . . Connect to a remote system  
**uucp** . . . . . Copy a file to or from a remote system  
**wall** . . . . . Send a message to all logged in users  
**write** . . . . . Converse with another user

### **Device Handling**

The following commands help you run peripheral devices, especially printers. For commands that drive communications devices, e.g., modems, see the section on *Communications*, above.

**epson** . . . . . Print a file on an Epson printer  
**fnkey** . . . . . Set/print function keys for the console  
**hp** . . . . . Prepare files for HP LaserJet-compatible printer  
**hpr** . . . . . Send to LaserJet printer spooler  
**hpskip** . . . . . Abort/restart current listing on LaserJet  
**lpr** . . . . . Send to line printer spooler  
**lpskip** . . . . . Terminate/restart current line printer listing  
**stty** . . . . . Set/print terminal modes  
**tty** . . . . . Print the user's terminal name  
**ttystat** . . . . . Get terminal status

### **Directory and File Handling**

The following commands let you create, remove, and otherwise manipulate files and directories.

**cat** . . . . . Concatenate/print files  
**cd** . . . . . Change directory  
**chgrp** . . . . . Change the group owner of a file  
**chmod** . . . . . Change the modes of a file  
**chmog** . . . . . Change mode, ownership, and group of a file  
**chown** . . . . . Change ownership of a file  
**cmp** . . . . . Compare bytes of two files  
**compress** . . . . . Compress a file  
**cp** . . . . . Copy a file  
**cpdir** . . . . . Copy directory hierarchy  
**dd** . . . . . File conversion  
**dos** . . . . . Manipulate files on MS-DOS file systems  
**doscatt** . . . . . Concatenate a file on an MS-DOS file system  
**doscp** . . . . . Copy files to/from an MS-DOS file system  
**doscpdir** . . . . . Copy directories to/from an MS-DOS file system  
**dosdir** . . . . . List the contents of an MS-DOS directory  
**dosdel** . . . . . Delete a file from an MS-DOS file system  
**dosformat** . . . . . Build MS-DOS file system on a floppy disk  
**doslabel** . . . . . Label an MS-DOS floppy disk  
**dosls** . . . . . List files on an MS-DOS file system  
**dosmkdir** . . . . . Create a directory in an MS-DOS file system  
**dosrm** . . . . . Remove a file from an MS-DOS file system  
**dosrmdir** . . . . . Remove a directory from an MS-DOS file system  
**fdisk** . . . . . View/change hard-disk partitioning  
**file** . . . . . Name a file's type  
**find** . . . . . Search for files satisfying a pattern  
**l** . . . . . List directory's contents in long format  
**lc** . . . . . List directory's contents in columnar format  
**lf** . . . . . List directory's contents in columnar format  
**ln** . . . . . Create a link to a file  
**lr** . . . . . List subdirectories' contents in columnar format  
**ls** . . . . . List directory's contents  
**lx** . . . . . List directory's contents in columnar format

<b>mkdir</b>	Create a directory
<b>mv</b>	Rename files or directories
<b>mvdir</b>	Rename a directory (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>pwd</b>	Print the name of the current directory
<b>qfind</b>	Quickly find all files with a given name
<b>rm</b>	Remove files
<b>rmdir</b>	Remove directories
<b>touch</b>	Update modification time of a file
<b>uncompress</b>	Uncompress a file
<b>whereis</b>	Locate source, binary, and manual files
<b>which</b>	Locate executable files
<b>zcat</b>	Concatenate a compressed file

## Editors

COHERENT includes a number of text editors, to suit a variety of tastes.

<b>ed</b>	Interactive line editor
<b>elvis</b>	Berkeley-style screen editor
<b>ex</b>	Berkeley-style line editor
<b>me</b>	MicroEMACS screen editor
<b>sed</b>	Stream editor
<b>vi</b>	Berkeley-style screen editor

## Games

The following commands are just for fun.

<b>banner</b>	Print large sized letters
<b>cal</b>	Print a calendar
<b>chase</b>	Highly amusing video game
<b>fortune</b>	Print randomly selected, hopefully humorous, text
<b>guess</b>	Extraordinarily amusing guessing game
<b>lines</b>	Highly amusing board game
<b>moo</b>	Greatly amusing numeric guessing game
<b>rubik</b>	Play Rubik's cube
<b>ttt</b>	Three-dimensional tic-tac-toe

## Languages and Programming Tools

The COHERENT system comes with a number of languages, and tools for debugging and maintaining your programs.

<b>as</b>	Mark Williams assembler
<b>asfix</b>	Convert file to 80386 <b>as</b> form (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>awk</b>	Report generation, pattern scanning, and processing language
<b>cc</b>	C-language compiler
<b>cdmp</b>	Dump COFF files into a readable form (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>conv</b>	Numeric base converter
<b>cpp</b>	C preprocessor
<b>db</b>	Assembler-level symbolic debugger
<b>fixstack</b>	Alter size of a program's stack (COHERENT 286 only)
<b>ld</b>	Link relocatable object files
<b>lex</b>	Lexical analyzer generator
<b>m4</b>	Macro processor
<b>make</b>	Program building discipline
<b>nm</b>	Print a program's symbol table
<b>od</b>	Print an octal dump of a file
<b>prof</b>	Print execution profile of a C program

**ref.** . . . . . Display a C function header  
**srcpath.** . . . . . Find source files  
**size** . . . . . Print size of an object file  
**strip** . . . . . Strip symbol tables from executable file  
**yacc.** . . . . . Parser generator

### ***Libraries and Archives***

The following commands help you create and read libraries and archives. These can be used as libraries (such as the libraries used when linking a C program), or to back up files.

**ar** . . . . . The object librarian/archiver  
**cpio.** . . . . . Archiving/backup utility  
**dump** . . . . . File-system backup utility  
**dumpdate** . . . . . Print dump dates  
**dumpdir** . . . . . Print the directory of a dump  
**pax** . . . . . Portable archive interchange  
**ranlib** . . . . . Create index for object library  
**restor.** . . . . . Restore file system  
**tar.** . . . . . V7 tape archive manager  
**ustar** . . . . . Tape archive utility

### ***Mail***

COHERENT comes with with a full-featured, UNIX-style mail facility. This is described in the overview article **mail**. The following commands perform mail-related work. Note that some are also listed in other sections of this article. Note, too, that the descriptions for **smail** and **rmail** are only for those users who wish to manipulate UUCP mailing on a low level; for most users, the descriptions under the command **mail** are more than sufficient.

**lmail** . . . . . Deliver local mail  
**mail.** . . . . . Send/read electronic mail  
**mkfnames** . . . . . Generate data base of user names  
**nptx.** . . . . . Generate permutations of users' full names  
**rmail** . . . . . Receive UUCP mail  
**smail** . . . . . Send UUCP mail

### ***Shell Commands***

COHERENT comes with two command interpreters, or *shells*: **ksh**, the Korn shell, and **sh**, the Bourne shell. The following commands are used either by the Korn shell, by the Bourne shell, or by both. Please note that commands used only by the Korn shell are marked by a dagger '†', whereas commands used only by the Bourne shell are marked by an asterisk '\*'.

**alias†** . . . . . Set an alias  
**basename** . . . . . Strip path information from a file name  
**bind†** . . . . . Bind key sequence to editing command  
**break** . . . . . Exit from shell construct  
**builtin†.** . . . . . Execute a command as a built-in command  
**case.** . . . . . Execute commands conditionally according to pattern  
**cd** . . . . . Change directory  
**continue.** . . . . . Terminate current iteration of shell construct  
**dirs\*** . . . . . Print contents of directory stack  
**echo** . . . . . Repeat an argument  
**eval** . . . . . Evaluate arguments  
**exec.** . . . . . Execute command directly  
**exit** . . . . . Exit from a shell  
**export** . . . . . Add a shell variable to the environment  
**expr.** . . . . . Compute a command line expression

<b>false.</b>	Unconditional failure
<b>fc†.</b>	Edit and re-execute one or more previous commands
<b>for.</b>	Execute commands for tokens in list
<b>from</b>	Generate list of numbers, for use in loop
<b>getopts†</b>	Parse command-line options
<b>hash†.</b>	Add a command to the shell's hash table
<b>if.</b>	Execute a command conditionally
<b>jobs†</b>	Print information about jobs
<b>let.</b>	Evaluate an expression
<b>nohup</b>	Run a command while ignoring hangup signals
<b>popd*</b>	Pop an item from the directory stack
<b>prep.</b>	Produce a word list
<b>print†.</b>	Echo text onto the standard output
<b>pushd*</b>	Push an item onto the directory stack
<b>read.</b>	Assign values to shell variables
<b>readonly</b>	Mark a shell variable as read only
<b>set.</b>	Set shell option flags and positional parameters
<b>shift.</b>	Shift positional parameters
<b>sleep</b>	Stop executing for a specified time
<b>tee.</b>	Branch pipe output
<b>test</b>	Evaluate conditional expression
<b>times</b>	Print total user and system times
<b>trap</b>	Execute command on receipt of signal
<b>true.</b>	Unconditional success
<b>typeset†</b>	Set/list variables and their attributes
<b>umask</b>	Set the file-creation mask
<b>unalias†</b>	Remove an alias
<b>until</b>	Execute commands repeatedly
<b>wait.</b>	Await completion of background process
<b>whence†</b>	List a command's type
<b>while</b>	Execute commands repeatedly

### ***String Processing***

Some of the most useful commands are those that process strings. COHERENT has many commands that search for strings, manipulate strings, sort strings, and otherwise perform useful manipulations on strings.

<b>c.</b>	Print multi-column output
<b>cgrep</b>	Pattern search for C programs
<b>comm.</b>	Print common lines
<b>cut</b>	Select portions of each line of a file
<b>detab</b>	Replace tab characters with spaces
<b>diff</b>	Summarize differences between two files
<b>diff3.</b>	Summarize differences among three files
<b>egrep</b>	Extended pattern search
<b>grep.</b>	Pattern search
<b>head</b>	Print the beginning of a file
<b>join</b>	Join two data bases
<b>look.</b>	Find matching lines in a sorted file
<b>more</b>	Display text one screenful at a time
<b>paste</b>	Merge lines of files
<b>rev</b>	Print text backwards
<b>scat.</b>	Print text files one screenful at a time
<b>sort</b>	Sort lines of text
<b>split.</b>	Split a text file into smaller files

**strings** . . . . . Print all character strings from a file  
**tail** . . . . . Print the end of a file  
**tr** . . . . . Translate characters  
**tsort** . . . . . Topological sort  
**uniq** . . . . . Remove/count repeated lines in a sorted file  
**view** . . . . . Berkeley-style text viewer  
**wc** . . . . . Count words, lines, and characters in text files

### **System Accounting**

The following commands help you to keep track of how your COHERENT system is working.

**ac** . . . . . Summarize login accounting information  
**accton** . . . . . Enable/disable process accounting  
**df** . . . . . Measure free space on disk  
**du** . . . . . Summarize disk usage  
**ps** . . . . . Print process status  
**sa** . . . . . Print a summary of process accounting  
**quot** . . . . . Summarize file-system usage  
**time** . . . . . Time the execution of a command  
**times** . . . . . Print total user and system times  
**uulog** . . . . . Examine UUCP operations

### **System Maintenance**

These commands help you to maintain your COHERENT system.

**at** . . . . . Execute commands at given time  
**bad** . . . . . Maintain list of bad blocks  
**badscan** . . . . . Examine a device for bad blocks  
**build** . . . . . Install COHERENT onto a hard disk  
**check** . . . . . Check file system  
**clri** . . . . . Clear i-node  
**crontab** . . . . . Copy a command file into the crontab directory  
**date** . . . . . Print/set the date and time  
**dcheck** . . . . . Check directory consistency  
**drvld** . . . . . Load loadable drivers into memory  
**fdformat** . . . . . Low-level format a floppy disk  
**fsck** . . . . . Check and repair file systems interactively  
**ichck** . . . . . i-node consistency check  
**man** . . . . . Print Lexicon entries  
**mkfs** . . . . . Make a new file system  
**mknod** . . . . . Make a special file or named pipe  
**mount** . . . . . Mount a file system  
**ncheck** . . . . . Print file names corresponding to i-node  
**newgrp** . . . . . Change to a new group  
**newusr** . . . . . Add new user to COHERENT system  
**reboot** . . . . . Reboot the COHERENT system  
**shutdown** . . . . . Shut down the COHERENT system  
**sync** . . . . . Flush system buffers  
**umount** . . . . . Unmount a file system  
**unmkfs** . . . . . Create a prototype file system  
**uucheck** . . . . . Sanity-check the UUCP system

### **terminfo**

COHERENT 386 supports an implementation of **terminfo**, the terminal-description utility used under UNIX System V. (It also supports **termcap**, should you prefer to use that venerable, but still useful, system.) The following commands help support **terminfo**:

## **LEXICON**

**captoinfo** . . . . . Convert termcap data to **terminfo** form (COHERENT 386 only)  
**infocmp** . . . . . De-compile a **terminfo** binary file (COHERENT 386 only)  
**tic** . . . . . Compile a **terminfo** description (COHERENT 386 only)

### Text Processors

These commands help you to create orderly, attractive printed text. For information on how to print the output of these commands, see the commands listed under *Device Handling*, above.

**col** . . . . . Remove reverse and half line motions  
**deroff** . . . . . Remove text formatting control information  
**nroff** . . . . . Text-formatting language  
**ftable** . . . . . Build a font-width table from PCL or PostScript font  
**pr** . . . . . Paginate and print files  
**prps** . . . . . Paginate and print files on PostScript printers  
**spell** . . . . . Find spelling errors  
**troff** . . . . . Extended text-formatting language  
**typo** . . . . . Detect possible typographical and spelling errors

### UUCP

The UUCP commands lets you form a network with other COHERENT or UNIX systems. Members of the network can grant each other permission to exchange mail and execute commands on each others' systems remotely and automatically, without having to be directed by a human being. The overview article **UUCP** describes the COHERENT UUCP facility in some detail. The following commands perform UUCP-related work; note that some of the commands listed here also are also listed in other sections of this article.

**uucheck** . . . . . Sanity-check the UUCP system  
**uucico** . . . . . Connect to a remote system  
**uucp** . . . . . Copy a file to or from a remote system  
**uudecode** . . . . . Decode a transmitted UUCP file  
**uuencode** . . . . . Encode a UUCP file for transmission  
**uustall** . . . . . Configure UUCP control files  
**uulog** . . . . . Examine UUCP operations  
**uumvlog** . . . . . Archive UUCP log files  
**uuname** . . . . . Print names of recognized systems  
**uurmlock** . . . . . Remove UUCP lock files  
**uutouch** . . . . . Force polling of a remote site  
**uux** . . . . . Execute a command on a remote system  
**uuxqt** . . . . . Execute file as requested by remote system

### Miscellaneous

The following commands do not fit neatly into any of the above categories. These include some of the more interesting and useful COHERENT commands, and are worth your attention.

**ATclock** . . . . . Read/set the AT realtime clock  
**bc** . . . . . Interactive calculator with arbitrary precision  
**calendar** . . . . . Electronic reminder service  
**chroot** . . . . . Change root directory  
**clear** . . . . . Clear your terminal's screen  
**crypt** . . . . . Encrypt/decrypt text  
**dc** . . . . . Desk calculator  
**disable** . . . . . Disable a port  
**enable** . . . . . Enable a port  
**env** . . . . . Execute a command in an environment  
**factor** . . . . . Factor a number  
**help** . . . . . Print concise description of command

**install** . . . . . Install a software update onto COHERENT  
**kill** . . . . . Signal a process  
**ksh** . . . . . Invoke the Korn shell  
**login** . . . . . Log in or change user name  
**passwd** . . . . . Set/change login password  
**phone.** . . . . . Print numbers and addresses from phone directory  
**sh** . . . . . Invoke the Bourne shell  
**su** . . . . . Substitute user id, become superuser  
**sum** . . . . . Print checksum of a file  
**uname** . . . . . Print information about the system  
**units** . . . . . Convert measurements  
**who** . . . . . Print who is logged in  
**yes** . . . . . Print infinitely many responses

For more information on any of these commands, see its entry within the Lexicon.

### **See Also**

Lexicon

## **compress — Command**

Compress a file

**compress** [ **-dfvc** ] [ **-bnum** ] [ **-w tmpfile** ] [ *file* ... ] (COHERENT 286)

**compress** [ **-dfvc** ] [ **-bnum** ] [ *file* ... ] (COHERENT 386)

**compress** compresses a file using the Lempel-Ziv algorithm. With text files and archives, it often can achieve 50% rate of compression.

If one or more *files* are specified on the command, **compress** compresses them and appends the suffix **.Z** onto the end of each compressed file's name. If no *file* is specified on the command line, **compress** compresses text from the standard input and writes the compressed text to the standard output.

**compress** recognizes the following options:

- b**     The "bits" option. **compress** uses the compression level set via the *num* argument. Previous releases of **compress** would only allow values of *num* up to 12, with 12 being the default value if the **-b** option was not specified. The version of **compress** introduced with COHERENT version 3.1 handles values up to 16, with 12 being the default.
- c**     Send output to stdout.
- d**     Decompress rather than compress.
- f**     Force an output file to be generated even if no space is saved by compression.
- v**     Verbose mode: force **compress** to write statistics about its performance.
- w**     The "workfile" option. **compress** uses *tmpfile* to write its temporary file. By default **compress** uses RAM device **/dev/ram1** for temporary storage. For this reason, it is strongly advised that you not use **/dev/ram1** as a RAM disk. This option is available only under COHERENT 286.

If you wish to ensure backwards compatibility with previous releases of COHERENT, do not use **compress** with a *num* value greater than 12.

### **See Also**

**commands**, **ram**, **uncompress**, **zcat**



**con.h — Header File**

Configure device drivers

```
#include <sys/con.h>
```

The header file **con.h** gives the configuration for each device driver included with the COHERENT system. Each driver is defined using the structure **CON**, which is declared in **<sys/con.h>**.

**See Also**

header files, sload()

**console — Device Driver**

Console device driver

**/dev/console** is the device driver for the console of a COHERENT system on the IBM AT. It is assigned major device number 2 and minor device number 0.

**/dev/console** interprets escape sequences in console output to control output on the console monitor. These escape sequences are compatible with ANSI X3.25. Thus, they are similar to those used by the DEC VT-100 and VT-220 terminals.

The special sequences include the following:

<b>&lt;esc&gt;&gt;=</b>	Enter alternate keypad mode.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;&gt;</b>	Exit alternate keypad mode.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;n</b>	Print the corresponding special graphics character.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;7</b>	Save the current cursor position.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;8</b>	Restore the previously saved cursor position.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;c</b>	Reset to power-up configuration
<b>&lt;esc&gt;D</b>	Move the cursor down one line without changing the column position. This command moves the scrolling region text up and inserts blank lines if required.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;E</b>	Move the cursor to the first column of the next line. This command move the scrolling region down and inserts blank line if required.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;M</b>	Move the cursor up one line without changing column position
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ A</b>	Cursor up; stop at top of page.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ B</b>	Cursor down; stop at bottom edge of scrolling region.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ C</b>	Cursor right. Stop at right bottom corner of scrolling region.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ D</b>	Cursor left.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ E</b>	Cursor next line. Move scrolling region up and insert a blank line if required.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ F</b>	Move scrolling region text down and insert a blank line if required.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n G</b>	Move the cursor to the <i>n</i> th column of the current line.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n;m H</b>	Move the cursor to position <i>m</i> <i>n</i> . Position is relative to the scrolling region.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ I</b>	Move the cursor position to the next horizontal tabulation stop.

<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n J</b>	Erase display: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>0</b> Erase from cursor to end of screen.</li><li><b>1</b> Erase from beginning of screen to cursor.</li><li><b>2</b> Erase the entire screen.</li></ul>
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n K</b>	Erase line: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>0</b> Erase from cursor to end of line.</li><li><b>1</b> Erase from beginning of line to cursor.</li><li><b>2</b> Erase entire line.</li></ul>
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ L</b>	Insert a line.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ M</b>	Delete a line.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n O</b>	Erase scrolling region: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>0</b> Erase from cursor to end of scrolling region.</li><li><b>1</b> Erase from beginning of scrolling region to cursor.</li><li><b>2</b> Erase entire scrolling region. Reposition cursor at top left corner of scrolling region.</li></ul>
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ S</b>	Scroll the characters in the scrolling region up one line. The bottom of the scrolling region is cleared to blanks.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ T</b>	Scroll the characters in the scrolling region down one line. The top line of the scrolling region is cleared to blanks.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ Z</b>	Move the cursor backwards to the last tabulation stop.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n '</b>	Move the cursor to column <i>n</i> of the current line.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n a</b>	Move the cursor forward <i>n</i> columns in the current line.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n d</b>	Move the cursor to row <i>n</i> of the display.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n e</b>	Move the cursor down <i>n</i> rows.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n;m f</b>	Move the cursor to column <i>m</i> of row <i>n</i> in the display.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n;m g</b>	Position cursor to column <i>m</i> of line <i>n</i> . Positioning is relative to the scrolling region.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;[ n m</b>	Select graphics rendition: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>0</b> All attributes off.</li><li><b>1</b> Bold intensity.</li><li><b>4</b> Underscore on.</li><li><b>5</b> Blink on.</li><li><b>7</b> Reverse video.</li><li><b>30</b> Black foreground.</li><li><b>31</b> Red foreground.</li><li><b>32</b> Green foreground.</li><li><b>33</b> Brown foreground.</li><li><b>34</b> Blue foreground.</li><li><b>35</b> Magenta foreground.</li><li><b>36</b> Cyan foreground.</li><li><b>37</b> White foreground.</li><li><b>40</b> Black background.</li><li><b>41</b> Red background.</li></ul>

- 42 Green background.
- 43 Brown background.
- 44 Blue background.
- 45 Magenta background.
- 46 Cyan background.
- 47 White background.
- 50 Black border.
- 51 Red border.
- 52 Green border.
- 53 Brown border.
- 54 Blue border.
- 55 Magenta border.
- 56 Cyan border.
- 57 White border.

**<esc>[ n;m r** Display lines *n* through *m* become the scrolling region.

**<esc>[ n v** Select cursor rendition:

- 0 Cursor visible.
- 1 Cursor invisible.

**<esc>[?4h** Enable smooth scrolling. This eliminates snow at the expense of speed.

**<esc>[?4l** Disable smooth scrolling (default).

**<esc>[?7h** Enable wraparound. Typing past column 80 moves the cursor to the first column of the next line, scrolling if necessary.

**<esc>[?7l** Disable wraparound. The cursor will not move past column 80. This is useful if the screen is being used as a block mode interface.

**<esc>'** Disable manual input. Terminal “beeps” (outputs **<ctrl-G>**) when a key is typed on the keyboard. Interrupt and quit signals are still passed to the terminal process. Input may be reenabled via **<esc>c** (power up reset) or **<esc>b** (enable manual input).

**<esc>b** Enable keyboard input that has been disabled by **<esc>'** (disable manual input).

**<esc>t** Enter keypad-shifted mode.

**<esc>u** Exit keypad-shifted mode.

The console keyboard sends the expected ASCII characters for the usual alphabetic, numeric, and punctuation keys. The numeric keypad normally sends editing escape sequences, as described below. When shifted or in num-lock mode, it sends '0' to '9' and '.' instead. In num-lock mode (i.e., when the **<num-lock>** key is depressed, **<shift>** restores the normal escape sequences. In alternate-keypad mode, the numeric keypad sends “**<esc>? p**” to “**<esc>? y**” for '0' to '9' and “**<esc>? n**” for '.'.

**<home>** Send “cursor home” (**<esc>[ H**).

**<up>** Send “cursor up” (**<esc>[ A**).

**<pg up>** Send (**<esc>[ V**).

**<left>** Send “cursor left” (**<esc>[ D**).

**<right>** Send “cursor right” (**<esc>[ C**).

<b>&lt;end&gt;</b>	Send cursor to bottom left of screen ( <b>&lt;esc&gt;[ 24 H</b> ).
<b>&lt;down&gt;</b>	Send "cursor down" ( <b>&lt;esc&gt;[ B</b> ).
<b>&lt;pg dn&gt;</b>	Move cursor to previous page ( <b>&lt;esc&gt;[ U</b> ).
<b>&lt;ins&gt;</b>	Toggle insert mode ( <b>&lt;esc&gt;[ @</b> ).
<b>&lt;del&gt;</b>	Delete the character at the cursor ( <b>&lt;esc&gt;[ P</b> ).

The effects of the remaining keys are described below:

<b>F1-F10</b>	Send <b>&lt;esc&gt;[ 1 x ... &lt;esc&gt;[ 9 x, &lt;esc&gt;[ 0 x</b> .
<b>&lt;alt&gt;F1-F10</b>	Send <b>&lt;esc&gt;[ 1 y ... &lt;esc&gt;[ 9 y, &lt;esc&gt;[ 0 y</b> .
<b>&lt;esc&gt;</b>	Mark the beginning of an escape sequence; <b>&lt;esc&gt;&lt;esc&gt;</b> sends ASCII <b>ESC</b> .
<b>&lt;tab&gt;</b>	Send ASCII <b>HT</b> .
<b>&lt;ctrl&gt;</b>	When combined with 'A' through '_', send the corresponding ASCII control character; when combined with <b>&lt;return&gt;</b> , send ASCII <b>LF</b> ; when combined with <b>&lt;backspace&gt;</b> send ASCII <b>DEL</b> ; when combined with <b>&lt;alt&gt;</b> and <b>&lt;del&gt;</b> , issue system reset. <b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;</b> cancels an escape sequence.
<b>&lt;shift&gt;</b>	Change alphabetic keys from lower case to upper case, or from upper case to lower case in "caps lock" mode.
<b>&lt;alt&gt;</b>	When combined with <b>&lt;ctrl-alt-del&gt;</b> , issue a system reset.
<b>&lt;backspace&gt;</b>	Send ASCII <b>BS</b> ; when combined with <b>&lt;ctrl&gt;</b> , send ASCII <b>DEL</b> .
<b>&lt;return&gt;</b>	Send ASCII <b>CR</b> ; when combined with <b>&lt;ctrl&gt;</b> , send ASCII <b>LF</b> .
<b>*</b>	Send ASCII <b>*</b> .
<b>&lt;caps lock&gt;</b>	Toggle "caps lock" mode.
<b>&lt;num lock&gt;</b>	Toggle the interpretation of the numeric keypad, as described above.
<b>&lt;scroll lock&gt;</b>	Toggle console output, like <b>&lt;ctrl-S&gt;</b> and <b>&lt;ctrl-Q&gt;</b> .
<b>-</b>	Send <b>'-'</b> .
<b>+</b>	Send <b>'+'</b> .

## Files

/dev/console

## See Also

ASCII, device drivers, signal()

## **const** — C Keyword

Qualify an identifier as not modifiable

The type qualifier **const** marks an object as being unmodifiable. An object declared as being **const** cannot be used on the left side of an assignment (an *lvalue*), or have its value modified in any way. Because of these restrictions, an implementation may place objects declared to be **const** into a read-only region of storage.

## See Also

C keywords, volatile

## Notes

Mark Williams C recognizes this keyword, but its semantics are not yet implemented. Thus, storage declared with the **const** qualifier will *not* be treated as unmodifiable by the compiler, and no warnings will be generated.

## const.h — Header File

Declare machine-dependent constants

**#include** <sys/const.h>

The header file **const.h** declares most machine-dependent constants. These are constants that change among the various machines for which the COHERENT system is available; an example is the clock speed of the processor.

## See Also

header files, times()

## continue — Command

Terminate current iteration of shell construct

**continue** [ *n* ]

The command **continue** helps to control the flow of commands given to the shell. When it is used without an argument, **continue** terminates the execution of the current iteration of the innermost **for**, **until**, or **while** shell construct; that is, it acts like a branch to the enclosing **done**, after which loop execution may continue or terminate. If an argument is given, **continue** terminates the current iteration of the *n*th enclosing **for**, **until**, or **while** loop.

The shell executes **continue** directly.

## See Also

break, commands, for, ksh, sh, until, while

## continue — C Keyword

Force next iteration of a loop

**continue** forces the next iteration of a **for**, **while**, or **do** loop. For example,

```
while ((foo = getchar()) != EOF) {
    if ((foo < 'a') || (foo > 'z'))
        continue;
    ...      /* do something */
}
```

forces the **while** loop to throw away everything except lower-case alphabetic characters.

## See Also

C keywords, for, while

## conv — Command

Numeric base converter

**conv** [*number*]

**conv** converts *number* to hexadecimal, decimal, octal, binary, and ASCII characters, and prints the results on the standard output. If no *number* is given, **conv** reads one number per line from the standard input until you type the end-of-file character <ctrl-D>.

*number* may be in hexadecimal, decimal, octal, binary, or character format, as shown below. Each example represents the decimal number 97.

<i>Base</i>	<i>Representation</i>
hexadecimal	<b>0x61</b>
hexadecimal	<b>#61</b>
decimal	<b>97</b>
octal	<b>0141</b>
binary	<b>\$1100001</b>
character	<b>'a'</b>

**conv** represents an ASCII control character in its output by preceding the character by a carat '^'. For example, it prints **<ctrl-X>** as '^X'. **conv** prints "bad digit" if anything is wrong with the input.

### **See Also**

**bc, commands, conv, dd, od, units**

### **Notes**

**conv** represents the input *number* internally as a **long** integer. If *number* does not fit in a **long**, **conv** silently truncates it.

## **core — File Format**

Core dump file format

**#include <sys/uproc.h>**

When a process terminates abnormally because of a process fault or because it receives an asynchronous signal from another process, COHERENT tries to write a memory dump of the process into a file called **core**. This file contains an image of the process code, data segments, the system description segment for the aborted process. The following lists the segment types and the symbolic names of their locations in the file:

<b>SIUSERP</b>	User process description segment
<b>SISTACK</b>	User stack segment
<b>SISTEXT</b>	Shared text segment
<b>SIPTEXT</b>	Private text segment
<b>SISDATA</b>	Shared data segment
<b>SIPDATA</b>	Private data segment

Not every dump necessarily contains all of the above segments. Neither shared text nor shared data segments are dumped. They are write-protected in memory, and the load module that was running when the dump occurred contains shared segment data.

The best way for a program (such as a debugger) to read the **core** file is to first read the user process description segment, which is always at the front and has a fixed size. It should be read into an area **UPASIZE** bytes long, but referenced with structured type **UPROC** (somewhat smaller than **UPASIZE** because of the system stack, which contains the user registers and other information in fixed places).

The **u\_segl** member of the **UPROC** structure is a list of segment reference descriptors that contain the virtual address and length of each segment, which correspond exactly to its size in the dump. **NUSEG** segments are possible; the flag **SRFDUMP** in the field **sr\_flag** indicates that a segment was dumped. By using the above method, you can use the entire file to reference program data and code at the time of the dump.

Other information found in the user process structure may be pertinent; the header file **sys/uproc.h** contains more information.

**See Also**

**db**, **file formats**, **kill**, **l.out.h**, **signal()**, **wait()**

**Diagnostics**

COHERENT will not write **core** if it already exists as a non-ordinary file or if there is more than one link to it. The 0200 bit in the status returned to the parent process by **wait** indicates a successful dump.

**cos()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate cosine

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double cos(radian) double radian;
```

**cos()** calculates the cosine of its argument *radian*, which must be in radian measure.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

**See Also**

**mathematics library**

**cosh()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate hyperbolic cosine

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double cosh(radian) double radian;
```

**cosh()** calculates the hyperbolic cosine of *radian*, which is in radian measure.

**Example**

The following program prompts you for a number; it then uses **cosh()**, **sinh()**, and **tanh()** to generate, respectively, the hyperbolic cosine, sine, and tangent of a number.

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)

dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];
```

```
for(;;) {
    printf("Enter number: ");
    if(gets(string) == NULL)
        break;
    x = atof(string);

    display(x);
    display(cosh(x));
    display(sinh(x));
    display(tanh(x));
}
```

### See Also

**mathematics library**

### Diagnostics

When overflow occurs, **cosh()** returns a huge value that has the same sign as the actual result.

### **cp** — Command

Copy a file

**cp** [ **-d** ] *oldname newname*

**cp** [ **-d** ] *file1 ... fileN directory*

**cp** copies files. In its first form, **cp** copies the contents of *oldname* to *newname*, which it creates if necessary. If *newname* is a directory, **cp** copies *oldname* to a file of the same name in directory *newfile*.

In its second form, **cp** copies each *file*, from *file1* through *fileN*, into *directory*.

With the **-d** option, **cp** preserves the date (modification time) of the source file or files on the target file or files. By default, target files get the current time.

A file cannot be copied to itself.

### See Also

**commands, ksh, mv, sh, wildcards**

### Notes

If you use **cp** to copy a file into another, existing file, the newly copied file takes on the permissions of the file into which the text was copied. For example, consider the files **foo** and **bar**, whose permissions are as follows:

-rw-r--r--	1 fred	user	40 Tue Apr 14 18:19	bar
-rw-r-----	1 fred	user	1816 Tue Apr 14 20:53	foo

If you use **cp** to copy **foo** into **bar**, then typing **ls -l** shows the following:

-rw-r--r--	1 fred	user	1816 Tue Apr 14 21:37	bar
-rw-r-----	1 fred	user	1816 Tue Apr 14 20:53	foo

**bar** now has exactly the same contents as **foo** but retains its old set of permissions.



**cpdir — Command.**

Copy directory hierarchy

**cpdir** [*option ...*] *dir1 dir2*

**cpdir** copies source directory hierarchy *dir1* to target hierarchy *dir2*, which is created if necessary. Either hierarchy may straddle device boundaries.

**cpdir** preserves as much as possible of the source structure. Files under *dir1* go to identically named files under *dir2*. Links between source files are preserved as links between corresponding target files. Preserved source file attributes include mode, subject to the user's file creation mask. If the user is not the superuser, **cpdir** cannot preserve the owner, group, and sticky bits in the mode, and the invoking user owns all new files; under the superuser it preserves these as well. In addition, the superuser may "copy" special nodes and pipe nodes; **cpdir** copies only the facility, not the contents. It also preserves real major and minor device numbers of special nodes.

If the target file corresponding to a source file exists and is not a directory, **cpdir** unlinks it before copying. This differs from the action of **cp**.

**cpdir** recognizes the following options:

- a** Give a verbose account on one line of the files copied.
- d** Preserve the last-modified date instead of using the present date.
- e** Print error message and continue execution after an error. The default action is to exit on any error.
- r [n]** Descend no more than *n* levels in the source hierarchy. Contents of *dir1* are at level 1. If missing, *n* defaults to 1.
- s name** Suppress the copy of file *name*, which should be the pathname of the file relative to *dir1*.
- t** Test only, make no changes. With this option, **cpdir** prints a report of all errors (**-e** is implied), all unlinked target files, and other useful information, including a summary of all external links into the target hierarchy that would have been broken had the unlinking actions been executed.
- u** Update regular files. Copy the source only if it was created or altered more recently than the target file, or if the target does not exist.
- v** Print a verbose account of its activities. **cp** prints a file-by-file account of its actions, in addition to the information listed under **-t**.

**See Also**

**cp**, **commands**, **link()**, **umask()**, **unlink()**

**cpio — Command**

Archiving/backup utility

**cpio -o[Bacv]****cpio -i[Bcdfmrtuv]** [*pattern...*]**cpio -p[adlmruv]** *directory*

**cpio** is an archiving utility that reads and writes files in the format specified by the **cpio Archive/Interchange File Format** specified in IEEE standard 1003.1-1988.

**Options**

**cpio** recognizes the following command-line options:

- a** Reset the access times of input files after they have been copied. When the **-l** option is also specified, the linked files do not have their access times reset. Can be used only with the **-o** or **-i** options.
- B** Change the size of a block. Input/output is to be blocked 5,120 bytes to the record. This option can be used only with the **-o** or **-i** options, for data directed to or from character-special files.
- c** Write header information in ASCII characters for portability. Can be used only with the **-i** or **-o** options.
- d** Creates directories as needed. Can be used only with the **-i** or **-p** options.
- f** Copy all files except those in whose names match a *pattern*. Can be used only with the **-i** option.
- i** In. Read the standard input, which it assumes to be an archive that had been created with the **-o** option to **cpio**. Copy all files within the archive whose names match a *pattern* into the current directory (default, all files).
- l** Whenever possible, link files rather than copying them. Can be used only with the **-p** option.
- m** Retain previous modification times. This option is ineffective on directories that are being copied. Use with the **-i**, **-o**, or **-p** options. If the archive was built without the **-m**, using it with the **-o** option does nothing.
- o** Out. Copy all files whose names match a *pattern* (default, all files) into an archive written to standard output.
- p** Pass mode. This option causes **cpio** to read standard input for a list of file names to copy to destination *directory*. This mode of operation is similar in functionality to command **cpdir**, with the added ability to specify individual file names via standard input.
- r** Interactively rename files. Before it copies a file, **cpio** asks you to rename the file. If you type just **<return>**, **cpio** skips the file. Should be used only with the **-i** or **-o** options.
- t** Print a table of contents of an existing archive; do not copy files from the archive. Can be used only with the **-i** option.
- u** Copy files unconditionally. Usually an older file will not replace a new file with the same name. Can be used only with the **-i** or **-p** options.
- v** Verbose option: print the names of all affected files. Can be used only with the **-i** option. Provides a detailed listing when used with the **-t** option.

### Operands

The following operands are available:

*pattern* This names the files to be manipulated by **cpio**. This can be a simple regular expression.

*directory*

The destination directory.

### cpio and Floppy Disks

**cpio** can write its output to a variety of devices, including tape drives and floppy-disk drives. Most users, however, will write their backups to floppy disks. This section describes how to use **cpio** with floppy disks.

To begin, you must redirect **cpio**'s output to the the "raw" (or character-special) floppy device in which you have placed the floppy disk. The Lexicon entry for **floppy disks** includes a table that

shows the floppy-disk device associated with each type and size of floppy-disk drive.

All floppy disks must be preformatted. See the Lexicon entry for **fdformat** for information on how to format a floppy disk. **cpio** does *not* work through COHERENT file systems: if a floppy disk has COHERENT file systems on it, **cpio** simply overwrites it. Obviously, since **cpio** does not work through the COHERENT file system, there is no need to mount a floppy disk before you use it with **cpio**: just pop it into the drive, close the gate, and type the **cpio** command.

**cpio** lets you back up more than one floppy disk's worth of data at one time. If a **cpio** archive exceeds the size of one floppy disk, **cpio** issues a prompt of the form:

```
Ready for volume 2
Type "device/name" when ready to proceed ...
```

Just remove the first disk and insert the next; then type the name of the floppy device you are using, e.g. **/dev/rfha0** or **/dev/rfva1**, and press **<Enter>**. As mentioned above, you must use the raw floppy-disk device and pre-formatted floppy disks.

### Examples

The following command copies all files and directories listed by the command **find** and copies them into the archive **newfile.cpio**:

```
find . -print | cpio -oc > ../newfile.cpio
```

The following command reads the **cpio** archive **newfile.cpio** and extracts all files whose names match the patterns **memo/al** or **memo/b\***:

```
cpio -icdv "memo/al" "memo/b*" <../newfile.cpio
```

Note that the **-d** option forces **cpio** to create the sub-directory **memo** and write the files into it. Otherwise, the files would have been written into the current directory. Option **-v** causes **cpio** to display each file name as it is extracted from the archive.

The following commands perform a multi-volume backup of all files on mounted filesystem **/v** to the character-special (i.e., "raw") floppy device **/dev/rfha0**:

```
su root
cd /v
find . -print | cpio -ocv >/dev/rfha0
```

If the **cpio** archive exceeds one diskette, you will be prompted to insert another formatted diskette.

### See Also

**commands, dump, pax, tar, ustar**

### Notes

**cpio** has the following restrictions:

- Path names are restricted to 256 characters.
- You must have appropriate privileges to copy special files.
- Blocks are reported in 512-byte quantities.

**cpio** was developed by Mark H. Colburn and sponsored by The USENIX Association. Copyright © 1989 by Mark H. Colburn (mark@jherreg.MN.ORG). All rights reserved. See the compressed **tar** archive **/usr/src/alien/pax.tar.Z** for full descriptions of copyright, restrictions, and licensing terms.

**cpio** is provided in binary form per the licensing terms set forth by the author. It is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

**cpp** — Command

C preprocessor

**/lib/cpp** [option...] [file...]

The command **cpp** calls the C preprocessor to perform C preprocessing. It performs the operations described in section 3.8 of the ANSI Standard; these include file inclusion, conditional code selection, constant definition, and macro definition. See the entry on **preprocessing** for a full description of C's preprocessing language.

Normally, **cpp** is used to preprocess C programs, but it can be used as a simple macro processor for other types of files as well. **cpp** reads each input *file*, processes directives, and writes its product on **stdout**. If the option **-E** is not used, **cpp** also writes into its output statements of the form **#line** *filename*, so the parser can connect its error messages and debugger output with the original line numbers in your source files.

**Options**

**cpp** recognizes the following options:

**-D***VARIABLE*

Define *VARIABLE* for the preprocessor at compilation time. For example, the command

```
cc -DLIMIT=20 foo.c
```

tells the preprocessor to define the variable **LIMIT** to be 20. The compiled program acts as though the directive **#define LIMIT 20** were included before its first line.

**-E** Strip all comments and line numbers from the source code. This option is used to preprocess assembly-language files or other sources, and should not be used with the other compiler phases.

**-I** *directory*

C allows two types of **#include** directives in a C program, i.e., **#include "file.h"** and **#include <file.h>**. The **-I** option tells **cpp** to search a specific directory for the files you have named in your **#include** directives, in addition to the directories that it searches by default. You can have more than one **-I** option on your **cc** command line.

**-o** *file* Write output into *file*. If this option is missing, **cpp** writes its output onto **stdout**, which may be redirected.

**-U***VARIABLE*

Undefine *VARIABLE*, as if an **#undef** directive were included in the source program. This is used to undefine the variables that **cpp** defines by default.

**See Also**

C preprocessor, **cc**, commands

**Notes**

Under COHERENT 286, **cpp** exists as a separate executable program. Under COHERENT 386, **cpp** exists as an aspect of a single, large executable program. Under either edition of COHERENT, you can still invoke **cpp** under the compiler command **cc** by using **cc**'s option **-E**.

**C preprocessor** — Overview

*Preprocessing* encompasses all tasks that logically precede the translation of a program. The preprocessor processes headers, expands macros, and conditionally includes or excludes source code.

## Directives

The C preprocessor recognizes the following directives:

**#if** . . . . . Include code if a condition is true  
**#elif** . . . . . Include code if directive is true  
**#else** . . . . . Include code if preceding directives fail  
**#endif** . . . . . End of code to be included conditionally  
  
**#ifdef** . . . . . Include code if a given macro is defined  
**#ifndef** . . . . . Include code if a given macro is not defined  
  
**#define** . . . . . Define a macro  
**#undef** . . . . . Undefine a macro  
**#include** . . . . . Read another file and include it  
**#line** . . . . . Reset current line number

The COHERENT 386 preprocessor also recognizes the directive **#pragma**, which performs implementation-specific tasks. See the Lexicon entry on **#pragma** for details.

A preprocessing directive is always introduced by the '#' character. The '#' must be the first non-white space character on a line, but it may be preceded by white space and it may be separated from the directive name that follows it by one or more white space characters.

## Preprocessing Operators

The Standard defines two operators that are recognized by the preprocessor: the "stringize" operator #, and the "token-paste" operator ##. It also defines a new keyword associated with preprocessor statements: **defined**.

The operator # indicates that the following argument is to be replaced by a string literal; this literal names the preprocessing token that replaces the argument. For example, consider the macro:

```
#define display(x) show((long)(x), #x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the line

```
display(abs(-5));
```

it replaces it with the following:

```
show((long)(abs(-5)), "abs(-5)");
```

The ## operator performs "token pasting" — that is, it joins two tokens together, to create a single token. For example, consider the macro:

```
#define printvar(x) printf("%d\n", variable ## x)
```

When the preprocessor reads the line

```
printvar(3);
```

it translates it into:

```
printf("%d\n", variable3);
```

In the past, token pasting had been performed by inserting a comment between the tokens to be pasted. This no longer works.

## Predefined Macros

The ANSI Standard describes the following macros that must be recognized by the preprocessor:

<b>_DATE_</b>	Date of translation
<b>_FILE_</b>	Source-file name
<b>_LINE_</b>	Current line within source file
<b>_STDC_</b>	Conforming translator and level
<b>_TIME_</b>	Time of translation

For more information on any one of these macros, see its entry.

### **Conditional Inclusion**

The preprocessor will conditionally include lines of code within a program. The directives that include code conditionally are defined in such a way that you can construct a chain of inclusion directives to include exactly the material you want.

The preprocessor keyword **defined** determines whether a symbol is defined to the **#if** preprocessor directive. For example,

```
#if defined(SYMBOL)
```

or

```
#if defined SYMBOL
```

is equivalent to

```
#ifdef SYMBOL
```

except that it can be used in more complex expressions, such as

```
#if defined FOO && defined BAR && FOO==10
```

**defined** is recognized only in lines beginning with **#if** or **#elif**.

Note that **defined** is a preprocessor keyword, not a preprocessor directive or a C keyword. You could, for example, write a function called **defined()** without any complaint from the C compiler.

The COHERENT 286 preprocessor implicitly defines the macros **\_DECVAX**, **IAPX286**, **MWC**, and **COHERENT**. The COHERENT 386 preprocessor implicitly defines the macros **\_IEEE**, **\_I386**, **MWC**, and **COHERENT**.

These can be used to include conditionally code that applies to a specific edition of COHERENT. For example, COHERENT 286 uses the DECVAX form of floating-point number, whereas COHERENT 386 uses IEEE; if you were writing code that intensively used floating-point numbers and you wanted to compile the code under both editions of COHERENT, you could write code of the form:

```
#ifdef _DECVAX
...
#elif _IEEE
...
#endif
```

The C preprocessor under each edition of COHERENT would ensure that the correct code was included for compilation.

### **Macro Definition and Replacement**

The preprocessor performs simple types of macro replacement. To define a macro, use the preprocessor directive **#define identifier value**. The preprocessor scans the translation unit for preprocessor tokens that match *identifier*; when one is found, the preprocessor substitutes *value* for it.

**cpp**

Under COHERENT, C preprocessing is done by the program **cpp**. The **cc** command runs **cpp** as the first step in compiling a C program. **cpp** can also be run by itself.

**cpp** reads each input *file*; it processes directives, and writes its product on **stdout**.

If its **-E** option is not used, **cpp** also writes into its output statements of the form **#line *n* filename**, so that the parser **cc0** can connect its error messages and debugger output with the original line numbers in your source files.

See the Lexicon entry on **cpp** for more information.

**See Also**

C language, cc, cpp, defined

**creat() — System Call**

Create/truncate a file

**int creat(file, mode) char \*file; int mode;**

**creat()** creates a new *file* or truncates an existing *file*. It returns a file descriptor that identifies *file* for subsequent system calls. If *file* already exists, its contents are erased. In this case, **creat()** ignores the specified *mode*; the mode of the *file* remains unchanged. If *file* did not exist previously, **creat()** uses the *mode* argument to determine the mode of the new *file*. For a full definition of file modes, see **chmod()** or the header file **stat.h**. **creat()** masks the *mode* argument with the current **umask**, so it is common practice to create files with the maximal mode desirable.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this routine, see the entry for **open()**.

**See Also**

**chmod()**, **fopen()**, **open()**, **stat.h**, **STDIO**, system calls

**Diagnostics**

If the call is successful, **creat()** returns a file descriptor. It returns -1 if it could not create the file, typically because of insufficient system resources or protection violations.

**cron — System Maintenance**

Execute commands periodically

**/etc/cron&**

**cron** is a daemon that executes commands at preset times.

Once each minute **cron** searches for commands to execute. **cron** first looks for file **/usr/lib/crontab**. If it exists, then **cron** reads it for commands to execute. If **/usr/lib/crontab** does not exist, however, **cron** searches **/usr/spool/cron/crontabs** for command files. Each user can have her own command file in that directory. See the Lexicon entry for **crontab** for information how to write and load a command file.

For each entry in each command file, **cron** compares the current time with the scheduled execution time and executes the command if the times match. When it finishes the search, **cron** sleeps until the next minute. Because it never exits, **cron** should be executed only once (customarily by **/etc/rc**).

**cron** is designed for commands that must be executed regularly. Temporal commands that need to be executed only once should be handled with the command **at**.

## Permissions

**cron** performs some interesting manipulations with permissions. This is necessary to allow **cron** to run a wide variety of programs untended without creating loopholes in the system's security. Occasionally, this can create difficulties for users who do not grasp what **cron** does or why. The following describes how **cron** manipulates permissions on the programs you ask it to run.

To begin, when **cron** executes a user's **crontab** file, it changes the effective user ID to the ID of that user whose **crontab** file is being executed, **cd**'s to the user's **HOME** directory. When, however, **cron** runs an entry from a **/usr/lib/crontab**, it uses the user ID and group ID of user **daemon**. This prevents security holes involving entries in a **crontab** file.

For example, the following **crontab** entry contains redirection:

```
* * * * * echo hello world >/dev/console 2>&1
```

If **cron** finds this entry in **/usr/lib/crontab**, it tries to execute the command as user **daemon**. The command will not execute it if user **daemon** lacks permission to write to **/dev/console**. Note that using **/usr/lib/crontab** is *not* recommended.

If however, it finds the entry in user **henry**'s **crontab** file, it tries to execute the command under the effective user ID of **henry**. The command will fail if **henry** lacks permission to write to **/dev/console**, and will succeed if he does.

When the shell executes a command in the background, it reads its standard input from **/dev/null** (unless redirected) and writes its standard output to the controlling tty. If **cron** is invoked with **/etc/cron&** from **/etc/rc**, there is no controlling tty, so the standard output goes to **/dev/null**. Thus,

```
* * * * * echo hello world
```

typically writes **hello world** to **/dev/null**.

When a user logs in, **/bin/login** grabs the tty and runs **chown** and **chmod** on it. It is owned by the user with default permissions 700. If the user who has logged in on the console types the command

```
chmod /dev/console a+w
```

to allow all users to write to it, then the **crontab** entry

```
* * * * * echo hello world >/dev/console 2>/tmp/cron.err
```

will indeed echo to the console every minute.

**cron** should be executed only once, at boot time. It uses **/usr/lib/cron/FIFO** as a lock file to prevent the execution more than one **cron** daemon.

If mail options are enabled, which is the default, **cron** sends mail to the owner of a **crontab** about all commands in that file that failed.

To allow **cron** to remove lock file **/usr/lib/cron**, do *not* send signal **KILL** to **cron**. Instead, use signal **TERM**. **cron** ignores signals **INT**, **HUP**, and **PIPE**. **cron** uses the signal **ALRM** internally.

## Files and Directories

**/usr/spool/cron/crontabs**

Main **cron** directory. It holds each user's command file. Permissions: **700 root root**.

**/usr/lib/cron/FIFO**

Lock file (named pipe). Created by **cron**; removed by **cron/rc**.



**/usr/lib/cron/cron.allow**

List of allowed users. Permissions: 600 root root.

**/usr/lib/cron/cron.deny**

List of denied users. Permissions: 600 root root.

**/usr/lib/crontab**

Global **crontab** file, used by previous COHERENT **cron** mechanism. **/usr/spool/cron**  
Spool directory parent. Permissions: 700 root root.

**/usr/spool/cron/crontabs**

Spool directory. Permissions: 700 root root.

## See Also

**commands, crontab**

## Notes

**cron** does not presently write into log file. The size of the *hostname + domain* must not exceed 1,000 characters.

**cron** looks for **/usr/lib/crontab** to remain compatible with the COHERENT 286 version of **cron**. If, however, you continue to keep all **cron** commands in file **/usr/lib/crontab**, it will not be possible to run **setuid cron** tasks for logins that have a password. It is strongly recommended that you do not use **/usr/lib/crontab**, and instead create individual **crontab** files.

## crontab — Command

Copy a command file into the crontab directory

**/usr/bin/crontab [-l] [-r] [-f filename] [-m[ed]] [-u user]**

The command **crontab** copies a command file into directory **/usr/spool/cron/crontabs**. This directory holds the command files for all users. This mechanism permits each user to have her own file of commands to be executed periodically. If the file name is '-', then **crontab** reads the standard input.

**crontab** recognizes the following options.

**-f filename**

Replace your crontab file with *filename*.

**-l**

List your crontab file.

**-m[ed]**

Enable/disable the sending of mail to a user about any command in her crontab file that fails.

**-r**

Remove your crontab file.

**-u user**

Specify *user*. Only the superuser **root** can specify any user other than herself.

## Format of a crontab File

A **crontab** command file consists of lines separated by newlines. Each line consists of six fields separated by white space (tabs or blanks). The first five fields describe the scheduled execution time of the command. Respectively, they represent the minute (0-59), hour (0-23), day of the month (1-31), month of the year (1-12), and day of the week (0-6, 0 indicates Sunday). Each field can contain a single integer in the appropriate range, a pair of integers separated by a hyphen '-' (meaning all integers between the two, inclusive), an asterisk '\*' (meaning all legal values), or a comma-separated list of the above forms. The remainder of the line gives the command to be executed at the given time.

For example, the **crontab** entry

```
29 * * 7 0 msg henry Succotash!
```

means that every hour on the half-hour during each Sunday in July, **cron** will invoke the command **msg**, and the user named **henry** will have the message

```
daemon: Succotash!
```

written on his terminal's screen (if he is logged in).

**crond** recognizes three special characters and escape sequences in a **crontab** file. If a command contains the percent character '%', **crond** executes only the portion up to the first '%' as a command, then passes the remainder to the command as its standard input. **crond** translates any percent characters '%' in the remainder to newlines. To prevent the special interpretation of a '%', precede it with a backslash, '\%'. Finally, **crond** removes the sequence **<newline>** from the text before it passes the text to the shell **sh**; this can be used to make an entry in the **crontab** more legible.

You must pay special attention to permissions when you write a **crontab** command file. For information on how the **crontab** daemon **crond** manipulates permissions, see the entry for **crond** in the Lexicon.

### **Directories and Files**

#### **/usr/spool/cron/crontabs**

Main **cron** directory. It holds each user's command file. Permissions: **700 root root**.

#### **/usr/lib/cron/FIFO**

Lock file (named pipe). Created by **cron**; removed by **crond/rc**.

#### **/usr/lib/cron/cron.allow**

List of allowed users. Permissions: **600 root root**.

#### **/usr/lib/cron/cron.deny**

List of denied users. Permissions: **600 root root**.

#### **/usr/lib/crontab**

Global **crontab** file, used by previous COHERENT **cron** mechanism. **/usr/spool/cron** Spool directory parent. Permissions: **700 root root**.

#### **/usr/spool/cron/crontabs**

Spool directory. Permissions: **700 root root**.

### **See Also**

**commands, crond**

### **Notes**

COHERENT **crontab** is superset of the command of the same name included with UNIX System V, release 3 (SVR3). The main differences are as follows:

- COHERENT **crontab** prints the usage when no options have been chosen, whereas SVR3 **crontab** reads stdin and can just remove the user's crontab file.
- SVR3 **crontab** does not include option **-f file\_name**.
- SVR3 **crontab** does not include option **-u user**. Under SVR3 **crontab**, you must **su** to another user (e.g., **uucp**) before you can maintain her **crontab** file.

**crypt — Command**

Encrypt/decrypt text  
**crypt** [*password*]

The command **crypt** encrypts data. It emulates a rotor-encryption machine, such as the Enigma or Hagelin C-48 cipher machines. Unlike these machines, **crypt** uses only one rotor, with a 256-character alphabet and a keying sequence of period  $2^{32}$ .

**crypt** reads text from standard input and writes the encrypted text to standard output. *password* is used to construct the model of the machine and to start the keying sequence. If no *password* is given, **crypt** prompts for a password on the terminal and disables echo while it is being typed in. The *password* may be up to ten characters long, but must not be empty; all characters past the first ten are ignored. All characters are legal, although it may not be possible to input certain characters from the terminal.

**crypt** uses the same *password* for both encryption and decryption. For example, the commands

```
crypt COHERENT <file1 >file2
crypt COHERENT <file2 >file3
```

leave *file3* identical to *file1*.

Encrypted files produced by **ed** with its **-x** option may be read by **crypt**, and vice versa, as **ed** uses **crypt** to perform its encryption.

Security of a cryptosystem depends on several factors:

1. Brute-force attempts to break the system should be infeasible. Passwords should be at least five characters long; although the construction of the machine model from the password takes a substantial fraction of a second, it is still plausible that encrypted files could be read by a brute-force search of a portion of the password space (say, all passwords less than four characters long).
2. Cryptanalysis of the basic encryption scheme should be very hard. Analysis of rotor machines is understood, but it is difficult and in most cases probably not worth the trouble.
3. Passwords must be kept secret. **crypt** erases *password* as soon as it can, to avoid the possibility that it could appear in the output of **ps**.
4. Privileged access to the system must be guarded. Under COHERENT, the security of **crypt** can be no better than the security governing access to superuser status, because the superuser can do practically anything. This is probably **crypt**'s most vulnerable point.

**Files**

**/dev/tty** — Typed passwords

**See Also****commands**

Kahn D: *The Code Breakers*. New York, Macmillan, 1967.

Morris R: The Hagelin cipher machine (M-209). *Cryptologia*, July 1978.

**crypt() — General Function**

Encryption using rotor algorithm

```
char *crypt(key, extra); char *key, *extra;
```

**crypt()** implements a version of rotor encryption. It produces encrypted passwords that are verified by comparing the encrypted clear text against an original encryption.

*key* is an ASCII string that contains the user's password. *extra* is a string of two additional characters, stored in the password file with the encrypted password. Each character must come from an alphabet of 64 symbols, which consists of the upper-case and lower-case letters, digits, the period '.', and the slash '/'.

**crypt()** returns a string built from the 64-character alphabet described above; the first two characters returned are the *extra* argument, and the rest contain the encrypted password.

### See Also

ASCII, general functions

## **ct — Device Driver**

Controlling terminal driver

For each process, the controlling terminal driver **/dev/tty** is an interface to the appropriate terminal driver. COHERENT passes any input-output call (e.g. **close**, **ioctl**, **open**, **read**, or **write**) on this special file directly to the controlling terminal device for the requesting process.

Normally, the controlling terminal is the default standard input, output, and error device. This is not the case for daemon processes started by the initial process.

### Files

**/dev/tty**

### See Also

device drivers, **init**

### Diagnostics

When a call finds no valid controlling terminal for a process, it returns a value of -1 and sets **errno** to **ENXIO**.

## **ctags — Command**

Generate tags and refs files for vi editor

**ctags** [-r] files...

**ctags** generates the files **tags** and **refs** from a group of C-source files. **tags** is used by the **elvis** editor's **:tag** command, **<ctrl-]** command, and **-t** option. **refs** is used by the command **ref**.

Each C-source file is scanned for **#define** statements and global function definitions. The name of the macro or function becomes the name of a tag. For each tag, a line is added to **tags**, which contains the following:

- the name of the tag
- a tab character
- the name of the file containing the tag
- a tab character
- a way to find the particular line within the file

**refs** is used by the command **ref**, which can be invoked via **elvis**'s **K** command. When **ctags** finds a global function definition, it copies the function header into **refs**. The first line is flush against the right margin, but the argument definitions are indented. The command **ref** can search **refs** much faster than it could search all C-source files. The file-names list will typically include the names of all C-source files in the current directory, in the following format:

```
ctags -r *.*[ch]
```

The **-r** to **ctags** tells it to generate both **tags** and **refs**. Without **-r**, it generates only **tags**.

### See Also

**commands**, **elvis**, **ref**

### Notes

This version of **ctags** does not parse ANSI source code very well. It has trouble recognizing the ANSI function definitions.

**ctags** is copyright © 1990 by Steve Kirkendall, and was written by Steve Kirkendall (kirkenda@cs.pdx.edu or ...uunet!tektronix!psueea!eecs!kirkenda), assisted by numerous volunteers. It is freely redistributable, subject to the restrictions noted in included documentation. Source code for **ctags** is available through the Mark Williams bulletin board, USENET, and numerous other outlets.

Please note that this program is offered as a service to COHERENT users, but is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

## ctime() — Time Function

Convert system time to an ASCII string

```
#include <time.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
char *ctime(timep) time_t *timep;
```

**ctime()** converts the system's internal time into a string that can be read by humans. It takes a pointer to the internal time type **time\_t**, which is defined in the header file **time.h**, and returns a fixed-length string of the form:

```
Thu Mar 7 11:12:14 1989\n
```

**time\_t** is defined in the header **types.h**.

**ctime()** is implemented as a call to **localtime()** followed by a call to **asctime()**.

### Example

For another example of this function, see the entry for **asctime()**.

```
#include <time.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
main()
{
    time_t t;

    time(&t);
    printf(ctime(&t));
}
```

### See Also

**time**, **time.h**

### Notes

**ctime()** returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

**ctype** — Overview**#include <ctype.h>**

The **ctype** macros and functions test a character's *type*, and can transform some characters into others. They are as follows:

<b>isalnum()</b>	Test if alphanumeric character
<b>isalpha()</b>	Test if alphabetic character
<b>isascii()</b>	Test if ASCII character
<b>iscntrl()</b>	Test if a control character
<b>isdigit()</b>	Test if a numeric digit
<b>islower()</b>	Test if lower-case character
<b>isprint()</b>	Test if printable character
<b>ispunct()</b>	Test if punctuation mark
<b>isspace()</b>	Test if a tab, space, or return
<b>isupper()</b>	Test if upper-case character
<b>_tolower()</b>	Change to lower-case character
<b>_toupper()</b>	Change to upper-case character

These are defined in the header file **ctype.h**, and each is described further in its own Lexicon entry.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the macros **isalnum**, **isalpha**, **isascii**, **iscntrl**, **isdigit**, **islower**, **isprint**, **ispunct**, and **isspace**. It prints information about the type of characters it contains.

```
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    FILE *fp;
    char fname[20];
    int ch;
    int alnum = 0;
    int alpha = 0;
    int allow = 0;
    int control = 0;
    int printable = 0;
    int punctuation = 0;
    int space = 0;

    printf("Enter name of text file to examine: ");
    fflush(stdout);
    gets(fname);

    if ((fp = fopen(fname, "r")) != NULL) {
        while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF) {
```

```

        if (isascii(ch)) {
            if (isalnum(ch))
                alnum++;
            if (isalpha(ch))
                alpha++;
            if (islower(ch))
                allow++;
            if (iscntrl(ch))
                control++;
            if (isprint(ch))
                printable++;
            if (ispunct(ch))
                punctuation++;
            if (isspace(ch))
                space++;
        } else {
            printf("%s is not ASCII.\n",
                fname);
            exit(1);
        }
    }

    printf("%s has the following:\n", fname);
    printf("%d alphanumeric characters\n", alnum);
    printf("%d alphabetic characters\n", alpha);
    printf("%d alphabetic lower-case characters\n",
        allow);
    printf("%d control characters\n", control);
    printf("%d printable characters\n", printable);
    printf("%d punctuation marks\n", punctuation);
    printf("%d white space characters\n", space);
    exit(0);
} else {
    printf("Cannot open \"%s\".\n", fname);
    exit(2);
}
}

```

**See Also**

ctype.h, libraries

**ctype.h — Header File**

Header file for data tests

#include &lt;ctype.h&gt;

ctype.h is a header file that holds the texts of the macros described in the overview entry ctype.

**See Also**

ctype, header files

**curses — Library**

Library of screen-handling functions

**curses** is a library of routines that allow you to manipulate the screen in a device-independent manner. With **curses**, you can perform rudimentary graphics, even on dumb terminals; the range of routines includes mapping portions of the screen, drawing pop-up windows, creating forms with fields for data entry, and highlighting portions of text.

**Implementations of curses**

COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386 each has its own implementation of **curses**.

The COHERENT 286 version of **curses** reads the **termcap** data base. It uses seven-bit **chars**, which limits the character set available for display to those in the lower 127 characters of the ASCII table. Its routines are kept in the library **libcurses**, whereas the routines for reading the **termcap** data base are kept in library **libterm**. Thus, to compile and link program **curses\_ex.c** under COHERENT 286, you must use the following command line:

```
cc curses_ex.c -lcurses -lterm
```

COHERENT 386 uses the Cornell edition of **curses**. This implementation of **curses** reads the **terminfo** data base. It uses eight-bit characters; thus, the COHERENT 386 edition of **curses** can display characters with accents and diacritical marks. The COHERENT 386 edition of the library **libcurses** contains the functions needed to read **terminfo** capability codes; thus, to compile the program **curses\_ex.c**, use the following command line:

```
cc curses_ex.c -lcurses
```

If you have special terminal descriptions under **termcap**, the command **captoinfo** converts a **termcap** description into its **terminfo** analogue. See the articles on **termcap** and **terminfo** for more information on how these forms of terminal description differ.

Most of the material in this article applies to both implementations of **curses**. However, the implementations do differ somewhat in the suite of macros and functions that they support. Material that applies just to COHERENT 286 or COHERENT 386 will be marked as such.

**How curses Works**

**curses** organizes the screen into a two-dimensional array of cells, one cell for every character that the device can display. It maintains in memory an image of the screen, called the *curscr*. A second image, called the *stdscr*, is manipulated by the user; when the user has finished a given manipulation, **curses** copies the changes from the *stdscr* to the *curscr*, which results in their being displayed on the physical screen. This act of copying from the *stdscr* to the *curscr* is called *refreshing* the screen. **curses** keeps track of where all changes have begun and ended between one refresh and the next; this lets it rewrite only the portions of the *curscr* that the user has changed, and so speed up rewriting of the screen.

**curses** records the position of a "logical cursor", which points to the position in the *stdscr* that is being manipulated by the user, and also records the position of the physical cursor. Note that the two are not necessarily identical: it is possible to manipulate the logical cursor without repositioning the physical cursor, and vice versa, depending on the task you wish to perform.

Most **curses** routines work by manipulating **WINDOW** object. **WINDOW** is defined in the header **curses.h**. The COHERENT 286 implementation of **curses** defines **WINDOW** as follows:



```
#define WINDOW _win_st
struct _win_st {
    short        _cury, _curx;
    short        _maxy, _maxx;
    short        _begy, _begx;
    short        _flags;
    short        _attrs;
    short        _ch_off;
    bool         _clear;
    bool         _leave;
    bool         _scroll;
    bool         _use_keypad;
    bool         _nodelay;
    char         *_y;
    short        *_firstch;
    short        *_lastch;
    struct _win_st *_nextp, *_orig;
};
```

The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** defines **WINDOW** as follows:

```
#define WINDOW _win_st
struct _win_st {
    short        _cury, _curx;
    short        _maxy, _maxx;
    short        _begy, _begx;
    short        _flags;
    chtype       _attrs;
    bool         _clear;
    bool         _leave;
    bool         _scroll;
    bool         _idlok;
    bool         _use_keypad; /* 0=no, 1=yes, 2=yes/timeout */
    bool         _use_meta; /* T=use the meta key */
    bool         _nodelay; /* T=don't wait for tty input */
    chtype       *_line;
    short        _firstchar; /* First changed character in the line */
    short        *_lastchar; /* Last changed character in the line */
    short        *_numchnegd; /* Number of changes made in the line */
    short        _regtop; /* Top and bottom of scrolling region */
    short        _regbottom;
};
```

Type **bool** is defined in **curses.h**; an object of this type can hold the value of true (nonzero) or false (zero).

The following describes selected **WINDOW** fields in detail.

**\_cury, \_curx** Give the Y and X positions of the logical cursor. The upper left corner of the window is, by definition, position 0,0. Note that **curses** by convention gives positions as Y/X (column/row) rather than X/Y, as is usual elsewhere.

<b>_maxy, _maxx</b>	Width and height of the window.
<b>_begy, _begx</b>	Position of the upper left corner of the window relative to the upper left corner of the physical screen. For example, if the window's upper left corner is five rows from the top of the screen and ten columns from the left, then <b>_begy</b> and <b>_begx</b> will be set to ten and five, respectively.
<b>_flags</b>	One or more of the following flags, logically OR'd together: <b>_SUBWIN</b> — Window is a sub-window <b>_ENDLINE</b> — Right edge of window touches edge of the screen <b>_FULLWIN</b> — Window fills the physical screen <b>_SCROLLWIN</b> — Window touches lower right corner of physical screen <b>_FULLLINE</b> — Window extends across entire physical screen <b>_STANDOUT</b> — Write text in reverse video <b>_INSL</b> — Line has been inserted into window <b>_DELL</b> — Line has been deleted from window
<b>_ch_off</b>	Character offset.
<b>_clear</b>	Clear the physical screen before next refresh of the screen.
<b>_leave</b>	Do not move the physical cursor after refreshing the screen.
<b>_scroll</b>	Enable scrolling for this window.
<b>_y</b>	Pointer to an array of pointers to the character arrays that hold the window's text.
<b>_firstch</b>	Pointer to an array of integers, one for each line in the window, whose value is the first character in the line to have been altered by the user. If a line has not been changed, then its corresponding entry in the array is set to <b>_NOCHANGE</b> .
<b>_lastch</b>	Same as <b>_firstch</b> , except that it indicates the last character to have been changed on the line.
<b>_nextp</b>	Point to next window.
<b>_orig</b>	Point to parent window.

When **curses** is first invoked, it defines the entire screen as being one large window. The programmer has the choice of subdividing an existing window or creating new windows; when a window is subdivided, it shares the same *curscr* as its parent window, whereas a new window has its own *stdscr*.

### Multiple Terminals

Some applications need to display text on more than one terminal, controlled by the same process. The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** can handle this, even if the terminals are of different types. The rest of this section applies *only* to the COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses**.

All information about the current terminal is kept in a global variable **struct screen \*SP**. Although the screen structure is hidden from the user, the C compiler will accept declarations of variables which are pointers. The user program should declare one screen pointer variable for each terminal it wishes to handle.

The function **newterm()** sets up a new terminal of the given terminal type that is accessed via file-descriptor *fp*. To use more than one terminal, call **newterm()** for each terminal and save the value returned as a reference to that terminal.

To switch to a different terminal, call **set\_term()**. It returns the current contents of **SP**. Do not assign directly to **SP** because certain other global variables must also be changed.

All **curses** routines always affect the current terminal. To handle several terminals, switch to each one in turn with **set\_term()**, and then access it. Each terminal must first be set up with **newterm()**, and closed down with **endwin()**.

### Video Attributes

The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** lets you display any combination of video attributes on any terminal. The rest of this section applies *only* to the COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses**.

Each character position on the screen has 16 bits of information associated with it. Seven bits are the character to be displayed, leaving bits for nine video attributes. These bits are used for the following modes respectively: standout, underline, reverse video, blink, dim, bold, blank, protect, and alternate-character set. Standout is whatever highlighting works best on the terminal, and should be used by any program that does not need specific or combined attributes. Underlining, reverse video, blink, dim, and bold are the usual video attributes. Blank means that the character is displayed as a space, for security reasons. Protected and alternate character set depend on the terminal. The use of these last three bits is subject to change and not recommended.

The routines to use these attributes include **attron()**, **attroff()**, **attrset()**, **standend()**, **standout()**, **wattroff()**, **wattron()**, **wattrset()**, **wstandend()**, and **wstandout()**. All are described below.

Attributes, if given, can be any combination of **A\_STANDOUT**, **A\_UNDERLINE**, **A\_REVERSE**, **A\_BLINK**, **A\_DIM**, **A\_BOLD**, **A\_INVIS**, **A\_PROTECT**, and **A\_ALTCHARSET**, OR'd together. These constants are defined in **curses.h**. If the particular terminal does not have the particular attribute or combination requested, **curses** will attempt to use some other attribute in its place. If the terminal has no highlighting, all attributes are ignored.

### Function Keys

Many terminals have special keys, such as arrow keys, keys to erase the screen, insert or delete text, and keys intended for user functions. The particular sequences these terminals send differs from terminal to terminal. The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** lets you handle these keys. The rest of this section applies *only* to the COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses**.

A program using function keys should turn on the keypad by calling **keypad()** at initialization. This causes special characters to be passed through to the program by the function **getch()**. These keys have constants that are defined in **curses.h**. They have values starting at 0401, so they should not be stored in a **char** variable, as significant bits will be lost.

A program that uses function keys should avoid using the **<esc>** key: most sequences start with **<esc>**, so an ambiguity will occur. **curses** sets a one-second alarm to deal with this ambiguity, which will cause delayed response to the **<esc>** key. It is a good idea to avoid **<esc>** in any case, because there is eventually pressure for nearly *any* screen-oriented program to accept arrow-key input.

### Scrolling Region

Most terminals have a user-accessible scrolling region. Normally, this is set to the entire window, but the calls **setscrreg()** and **wsetscrreg()** set the scrolling region for *stdscr* or the given window to any combination of top and bottom margins. If scrolling has been enabled with **scrollok()**, scrolling takes place only within that window.

### TTY Mode Functions

In addition to the save/restore routines **savetty()** and **resetty()**, the COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** contains routines for going into and out of normal tty mode. The rest of this section applies *only* to the COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses**.

The normal routines are **resetterm()**, which puts the terminal back in the mode it was in when

curses was started, and **fixterm()**, which undoes the effects of **resetterm()**, that is, restores the "current curses mode". **endwin()** automatically calls **resetterm()**. These routines are also available at the *terminfo* level.

### **No-Delay Mode**

The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** offers the call **nodelay()**, which puts the terminal into "no-delay mode". The rest of this section applies *only* to the COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses**.

While in no-delay mode, any call to *getch()* returns -1 if nothing is waiting to be read. This is useful for programs that require real-time behavior, where the user watches action on the screen and presses a key when he wants something to happen. For example, the cursor can be moving across the screen, and the user can press an arrow key to change direction. This mode is especially useful for games.

### **Portability**

The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** contains several routines that portability. Although they do not directly relate to terminal handling, their implementation is different from system to system, and the differences can be isolated from the user program by including them in **curses**. The rest of this section applies *only* to the COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses**.

Functions **erasechar()** and **killchar()** return the characters that, respectively, erase one character and kill the entire input line. The function **baudrate()** returns the current baud rate, as an integer. (For example, at 9600 baud, **baudrate()** returns the integer 9600, not the value B9600 from *<sgtty.h>*.) The routine **flushinp()** throws away all typeahead. call **resetterm()** to restore the tty modes. After the shell escape, **fixterm()** can be called to set the tty modes back to their internal settings. These calls are now required, because they perform system-dependent processing.

### **Library-level Differences**

The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** reads **terminfo** descriptions. Under this implementation, the library **/usr/lib/libcurses.a** contains all routines for reading a **terminfo** description. Programs that wish to read such a description but not use the below-described **curses** routines (e.g., MicroEMACS or **vi**) must link in library **libcurses.a**.

The COHERENT 286 implementation of **curses**, on the other hand, reads **termcap** descriptions. The library **/usr/lib/libcurses.a** does *not* contain routines for reading a **termcap** description; instead, these are kept in the library **/usr/lib/libterm.a**. Programs that wish to read **termcap** descriptions must link in this library.

Under COHERENT 286, programs that wish to use **curses** *must* link in both **libcurses** and **libterm** (in that order). Under COHERENT 386, programs that wish to use **curses** *must not* link in both **libcurses** and **libterm**; doing so will cause collisions among library routines. Rather, these programs must link in *only* **libcurses**.

See the Lexicon entries for **termcap** and **terminfo** for more information on this rather confusing topic.

### **curses Routines**

The following table summarizes the functions and macros that comprise the **curses** library. These routines are declared and defined in the header file **curses.h**.

**addch(ch) char ch;**

Insert a character into *stdscr*.

**addstr(str) char \*str;**

Insert a string into *stdscr*.

**attroff**(*at*) **int** *at*;

Turn off video attributes on *stdscr*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**attron**(*at*) **int** *at*;

Turn on video attributes on *stdscr*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**attrset**(*at*) **int** *at*;

Set video attributes on *stdscr*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**baudrate**()

Return the baud rate of the current terminal. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**beep**() Sound the audible bell. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**box**(*win*, *vert*, *hor*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **char** *vert*, *hor*;

Draw a box. *vert* is the character used to draw the vertical lines, and *hor* is used to draw the horizontal lines. For example

```
box(win, '|', '-');
```

draws a box around window **win**, using '|' to draw the vertical lines and '-' to draw the horizontal lines. Do not use non-ASCII characters unless you are very sure of the output terminal's identity.

**cbreak**()

Turn on cbreak mode. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**clear**() Clear the *stdscr*.

**clearok**(*win*, *bf*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **bool** *bf*;

Set the clear flag for window *win*. This will clear the screen at the next refresh, but not reset the window.

**clrtobot**()

Clear from the position of the logical cursor to the bottom of the window.

**clrtoeol**()

Clear from the logical cursor to the end of the line.

**crmode**()

Turn on control-character mode; i.e., force terminal to receive cooked input.

**delch**() Delete a character from *stdscr*; shift the rest of the characters on the line one position to the left.

**deleteln**()

Delete all of the current line; shift up the rest of the lines in the window.

**delwin**(*win*) **WINDOW** \**win*;

Delete window *win*.

**doupdate**()

Update the physical screen. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**echo**() Turn on both physical and logical echoing; i.e., character are automatically inserted into the current window and onto the physical screen.

**endwin**()

Terminate text processing with **curses**.

**erase()** Erase a window; do not clear the screen.

**char \*erasechar()**

Return the erase character of the current terminal. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**flash()** Execute the visual bell. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**flushinp()**

Flush input from the current terminal. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**getch()** Read a character from the terminal.

**getstr(str) char \*str;**

Read a string from the terminal.

**getyx(win,y,x) WINDOW \*win; short y,x;**

Read the position of the logical cursor in *win* and store it in *y,x*. Note that this is a macro, and due to its construction the variables *y* and *x* must be integers, not pointers to integers.

**idlok(win,flag) WINDOW \*win; int flag;**

Enable insert/delete line operations for window *win*. *flag* must contain the OR'd operations you desire. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**inch()** Read the character pointed to by the *stdscr*'s logical cursor.

**WINDOW \*initscr()**

Initialize **curses**.

**insch(ch) char ch;**

Insert character *ch* into the *stdscr*.

**insertln()**

Insert a blank line into *stdscr*, above the current line.

**keypad(win,flag) WINDOW \*win; int flag;**

Enable keypad-sequence mapping. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**char \*killchar()**

Return the kill character for the current terminal. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**leaveok(win,bf) WINDOW \*win; bool bf;**

Set *win->\_leave* to *bf*. If set to **TRUE**, refresh will leave the cursor after the last character changed by refresh. This makes sense if you want to minimize the commands sent to the screen and it does not matter where the cursor is.

**char \*longname(termbuf,name) char \*termbuf, \*name;**

Copy the long name for the terminal from *termbuf* into *name*.

**meta(win,flag) WINDOW \*win; int flag;**

Enable use of the **meta** key. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**move(y,x) short y,x;**

Move logical cursor to position *y,x* in *stdscr*.

**mvaddbytes(y,x,da,count) int y,x; char \*da; int count;**

Move to position *y,x* and print *count* bytes from the string pointed to by *da*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvaddch(y,x,ch) short y,x; char ch;**

Move the logical cursor to position *y,x* and insert character *ch*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvaddstr**(*y,x,str*) **short** *y,x*; **char** \**str*;  
Move the logical cursor to position *y,x* and insert string *str*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvcur**(*y\_cur,x\_cur,y\_new,x\_new*) **int** *y\_cur, x\_cur, y\_new, x\_new*;  
Move cursor from position *y\_cur,x\_cur* to position *y\_new,x\_new*.

**mvdelch**(*y,x*) **short** *y,x*;  
Move to position *y,x* and delete the character found there. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvgetch**(*y,x*) **short** *y,x*;  
Move to position *y,x* and get a character through *stdscr*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvgetstr**(*y,x,str*) **short** *y,x*; **char** \**str*;  
Move to position *y,x*, get a string through *stdscr*, and copy it into *string*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvinch**(*y,x*) **short** *y,x*;  
Move to position *y,x* and get the character found there. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvinsch**(*y,x,ch*) **short** *y,x*; **char** *ch*;  
Move to position *y,x* and insert a character into *stdscr*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwaddbytes**(*win,y,x,da,count*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **int** *y,x*; **char** \**da*; **int** *count*;  
Move to position *y,x* and print *count* bytes from the string pointed to by *da* into window *win*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwaddch**(*win,y,x,ch*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **int** *y,x*; **char** *ch*;  
Move to position *y,x* and insert character *ch* into window *win*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwaddstr**(*win,y,x,str*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **short** *y,x*; **char** \**str*;  
Move to position *y,x* and insert character *ch*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwdelch**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **int** *y,x*;  
Move to position *y,x* and delete character *ch* from window *win*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwgetch**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **short** *y,x*;  
Move to position *y,x* and get a character. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwgetstr**(*win,y,x,str*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **short** *y,x*; **char** \**str*;  
Move to position *y,x*, get a string, and write it into *str*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwin**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **int** *y,x*;  
Move window *win* to position *y,x*. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwinch**(*win,y,x*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **short** *y,x*;  
Move to position *y,x* and get character found there. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**mvwinsch**(*win,y,x,ch*) **WINDOW** \**win*; **short** *y,x*; **char** *ch*;  
Move to position *y,x* and insert character *ch* there. (COHERENT 286 only.)

**struct** Initialize the new terminal *type*, which is accessed via file-descriptor *fd*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**WINDOW** \***newwin**(*lines, cols, y1, x1*) **int** *lines, cols, y1, x1*;  
Create a new window. The new window is *lines* lines high, *cols* columns wide, with the upper-left corner at position *y1,x1*.

**nl()** Turn on newline mode; i.e., force terminal to output <newline> after <linefeed>.

**nocbreak()**  
Turn off cbreak mode. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**nocrmode()**

Turn off control-character mode; i.e., force terminal to accept raw input.

**nodelay(*win*, *flag*) WINDOW \**win*; int *flag*;**

Make **getch()** non-blocking. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**noecho()**

Turn off echo mode.

**nonl()** Turn off newline mode.**noraw()**

Turn off raw mode.

**overlay(*win1*, *win2*) WINDOW \**win1*, *win2*;**

Copy all characters, except spaces, from their current positions in *win1* to identical positions in *win2*.

**overwrite(*win1*, *win2*) WINDOW \**win1*, *win2*;**

Copy all characters, including spaces, from *win1* to their identical positions in *win2*.

**printw(*format*, *arg1*, ..., *argN*) char \**format*; [*data type*] *arg1*, ..., *argN*;**

Print formatted text on the standard screen.

**raw()**

Turn on raw mode; i.e., kernel does not process what is typed at the keyboard, but passes it directly to **curses**. In normal (or *cooked*) mode, the kernel intercepts and processes the control characters <ctrl-C>, <ctrl-S>, <ctrl-Q>, and <ctrl-Y>. See the entry for **stty** for more information.

**refresh()**

Copy the contents of *stdscr* to the physical screen.

**resetty()**

Reset the terminal flags to values stored by earlier call to **savetty**.

**saveterm()**

Save the current state of the terminal. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**savetty()**

Save the current terminal settings.

**scanw(*format*, *arg1*, ..., *argN*) char \**format*; [*data type*] *arg1*, ..., *argN*;**

Read the standard input; translate what is read into the appropriate data type.

**scroll(*win*) WINDOW \**win*;**

Scroll *win* up by one line.

**scrollok(*win*, *bf*) WINDOW \**win*; bool *bf*;**

Permit or forbid scrolling of window *win*, depending upon whether *bf* is set to true or false.

**setscreg(*top*, *bottom*) int *top*, *bottom*;**

Set the scrolling region on *stdscr*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**setterm(*name*) char \**name*;**

Set term variables for *name*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**struct screen \*set\_term(*new*) struct screen \**new*;**

Switch output to terminal *new*. It returns a pointer to the previously used terminal. (COHERENT 386 only.)



**standend()**

Turn off standout mode.

**standout()**

Turn on standout mode for text. Usually, this means that text will be displayed in reverse video.

**WINDOW \*subwin(win,lines,cols,y1,x1) int win,lines,cols,y1,x1;**

Create a sub-window in window *win*. New sub-window is *lines* lines high, *cols* columns wide, and is fixed at position *y1,x1*. Note that the position is relative to the upper-left corner of the physical screen.

**touchwin(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Copy all characters in window *win* to the screen.

**traceoff()**

Turn off debugging output. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**traceon()**

Turn on debugging output (COHERENT 386 only.)

**unctrl(ch) char ch;**

Output a printable version of the control-character *ch*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**waddch(win,ch) WINDOW \*win; char ch;**

Add character *ch* to window *win*.

**waddstr(win,str) WINDOW \*win; char \*str;**

Add the string pointed to by *str* to window *win*.

**wattroff(win,att)**

Turn off video attributes *att* for the window pointed to by *win*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**wattron(win,att)**

Turn on video attributes *att* for the window pointed to by *win*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**wattrset(win,att) WINDOW \*win; int att;**

Set the video attributes *att* for the window pointed to by *win*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**wclear(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Clear window *win*. Move cursor to position 0,0 and set the screen's clear flag.

**wclrtoebot(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Clear window *win* from current position to the bottom.

**wclrtoeol(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Clear window *win* from the current position to the end of the line.

**wdelch(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Delete the character at the current position in window *win*; shift all remaining characters to the right of the current position one position left.

**wdeleteln(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Delete the current line and shift all lines below it one line up.

**werase(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Clear window *win*. Move the cursor to position 0,0 but do not set the screen's clear flag.

**wgetch(win) WINDOW \*win;**

Read one character from the standard input.

**wgetstr**(*win*,*str*) **WINDOW \*win; char \*str;**

Read a string from the standard input; write it in the area pointed to by *str*.

**winch**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win;**

Force the next call to **refresh()** to rewrite the entire screen.

**winsch**(*win*,*ch*) **WINDOW \*win; char ch;**

Insert character *ch* into window *win* at the current position. Shift all existing characters one position to the right.

**winsetlin**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win;**

Insert a blank line into window *win* at the current position. Move all lines down by one position.

**wmove**(*win*,*y*,*x*) **WINDOW \*win; int y, x;**

Move current position in the window *win* to position *y*,*x*.

**wnoutrefresh**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win;**

Copy the window pointed to by *win* to the virtual screen; do not refresh the real screen. (COHERENT 386 only.)

**wprintw**(*win*,*format*[,*arg1*,...*argN*]) **WINDOW \*win; char \*format; [data type] arg1...argN;**

Format text and print it to the current position in window *win*.

**wrefresh**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win;**

Refresh a window.

**wscanw**(*win*,*format*[,*arg1*,...*argN*]) **WINDOW \*win; char \*format; [data type] arg1...argN;**

Read standard input from the current position in window *win*, format it, and store it in the indicated places.

**wstandend**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win;**

Turn off standout (reverse video) mode for window *win*.

**wstandout**(*win*) **WINDOW \*win;**

Turn on standout (reverse video) mode for window *win*.

**wsetscrreg**(*win*,*top*,*bottom*) **WINDOW \*win; int top, bottom;**

Set the scrolling region on the window pointed to by *win*. (COHERENT 386 only.)

### **Structure of a curses Program**

To use the **curses** routines, a program must include the header file **curses.h**, which declares and defines the functions and macros that comprise the **curses** library.

Before a program can perform any screen operations, it must call the function **initscr()** to initialize the **curses** environment.

As noted above, **curses** manipulates text in a copy of the screen that it maintains in memory. After a program has manipulated text, it must call **refresh()** to copy these alterations from memory to the physical screen. (This is done because writing to the screen is slow; this scheme permits mass alterations to be made to copy in memory, then written to the screen in a batch.)

Finally, when the program has finished working with **curses**, it must call the function **endwin()**. This frees memory allocated by **curses**, and generally closes down the **curses** environment gracefully.

### **Example**

The following program, called **curexample.c**, gives a simple example of programming with **curses**. When this program is run, it clears the screen, then waits for you to type a Y coordinate, a space, and then an X coordinate. Note that these do not echo on the screen. It moves the cursor to the

requested coordinates, and there display any non-numeric string that you type. If you type numerals, **curexample** will assume that you wish to move the cursor to a new location. To exit, type **<ctrl-C>**.

```
#include <ascii.h>
#include <ctype.h>
#include <curses.h>

#define NORMAL 0
#define INY 1
#define INX 2

main()
{
    int c, y, x, state;

    initscr(); /* initialize curses */
    noecho();
    raw();

    clear();
    move(0, 0);

    for(state = NORMAL;;) {
        refresh();
        c = getch();
        if(isdigit(c)) {
            switch (state) {
                case NORMAL:
                    y = x = 0;
                    state = INY;
                case INY:
                    y += 10;
                    y += c - '0';
                    break;
                case INX:
                    x += 10;
                    x += c - '0';
            }
        } else {
            if (c == A_ETX) { /* ctrl-c */
                noraw();
                echo();
                endwin();
                exit(0);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
        switch (state) {
        case INX:
            state = NORMAL;
            move(y, x);
        case NORMAL:
            addch(c);
            break;
        case INY:
            state = INX;
        }
    }
}
```

### See Also

**libraries, termcap, terminfo**

Strang J: *Programming with curses*. Sebastopol, Calif, O'Reilly & Associates Inc., 1986.

### Notes

The COHERENT 386 implementation of **curses** was written by Pavel Curtis of Cornell University. It was ported to COHERENT by Udo Monk.

### **curses.h** — Header File

Define functions and macros in curses library

**#include <curses.h>**

**curses.h** defines the macros and declares the functions that comprise the **curses** library.

### See Also

**curses, header files, termcap, terminfo**

### **cut** — Command

Select portions of each line of its input

**cut -clist** [*file* ...]

**cut -flist** [-s] [-d *char*] [*file* ...]

**cut** selects portions of each line of its input and writes them to the standard output. *list* specifies the portions to select. **cut** reads its input from *file*, or the standard input by default.

*list* is a comma-separated set of numbers or number ranges. Number ranges consist of a number, a hyphen ('-'), and a second number, and select the fields or columns from the first number to the second, inclusive. Preceding a number or number range by a hyphen selects all fields or columns from one to the first number. Following a number or number range by a hyphen selects all fields or columns from the last number to the end of the line. Numbers and number ranges may be repeated, overlap, and appear in any order. It is not an error to select a field or column not present in the input line.

**cut** recognizes the following command-line options:

**-clist** *list* specifies character positions.

**-flist** *list* specifies fields, delimited in the input by one **<tab>** character. Output fields are separated by one **<tab>** character.

**-d char**

Use *char* as the field delimiter instead of the **<tab>** character.

- s** Suppress lines with no field-delimiter characters. Unless specified, **cut** passes through unmodified all lines with no delimiters.

**cut** returns zero on success, one if an error occurred.

**Examples**

The following example displays all serial port device names found in file **/etc/ttys**.

```
cut -c4- /etc/ttys
```

The following example displays the *login name* and *home directory* fields from the **/etc/passwd** password file. Note that fields in the password file are delimited by the colon character.

```
cut -d: -f1,6 /etc/passwd
```

**See Also**

**awk, commands, paste, sed**

**Notes**

**cut** is copyright © 1988,1990 by The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

**cut** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

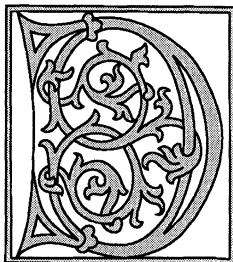
**CWD — Environmental Variable**

Current working directory

The Korn shell uses the environmental variable **CWD** to hold the current working directory.

**See Also**

**environmental variables, ksh**



### **daemon — Definition**

A *daemon* is a program that runs continually on your computer. It waits quietly for some condition to occur; then it awakens and performs some action (such as redirecting the file to a printer).

For example, when you submit a program to be printed with **hpr**, your file is copied into directory **/usr/spool/hpd**. When a file appears in that directory, then the printer daemon **/usr/bin/hpd** notices that there is a file to print. The advantage is that the user program **hpr** need not compete with other user programs for access to the printer; **/usr/bin/hpd** handles all access to the printer, and ensures that only one file is printed on the printer at a time.

Another example of a daemon in **/etc/cron**. Every five minutes, it wakes up and reads all **crontab** files. If a file contains a command to be executed at this time, then **cron** executes it.

As a general rule, anything that does not interact directly with users can be classified as a daemon. Daemons do not generally generate output to a user's terminal.

Any time you have a resource, like a printer or data base, to which access should be controlled, you can use a daemon.

### **See Also**

**definitions, libmisc**

### **Notes**

The function **bedaemon()**, which is included in **libmisc**, makes a program a daemon. See the article on **libmisc** for details.

A daemon may be killed accidentally, or through an error condition. When that occurs, a user may summon the daemon from the misty deep, but it does not come. The superuser **root** can reinvoke a daemon like any other program.

### **data formats — Technical Information**

Mark Williams Company has written C compilers for a number of different computers. Each has a unique architecture and defines data formats in its own way.

The following table gives the sizes, in **chars**, of the data types as they are defined by various microprocessors.

Type	i80386	i8086 SMALL	i8086 LARGE	Z8001	Z8002	68000	PDP11	VAX
<b>char</b>	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
<b>double</b>	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
<b>float</b>	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
<b>int</b>	4	2	2	2	2	2	2	4
<b>long</b>	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
<b>pointer</b>	4	2	4	4	2	4	2	4
<b>short</b>	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2

COHERENT places some alignment restrictions on data, which conform to all restrictions set by the microprocessor. Byte ordering is set by the microprocessor; see the Lexicon entry on **byte ordering** for more information.

### See Also

**byte ordering, C language, data types, double, float, memory allocation, technical information**

### Notes

The COHERENT system supports Intel SMALL model only.

## data types — Technical Information

The following table gives the data types that COHERENT recognizes:

```

char
double
float
int
long
long float
long int
short
short int
unsigned int
unsigned long int
unsigned long
unsigned char
unsigned short
unsigned short int

```

The terms **long** and **long int**, as are the terms **short** and **short int**, **double** and **long float**, **unsigned short int** and **unsigned short**, and **unsigned long int** and **unsigned long**. The type **unsigned char** was added to the language by the ANSI Standard; because COHERENT uses signed **chars** by default, you must declare a **char** to be **unsigned** if you want it to be so. If this type is used in arithmetic expressions, it is automatically cast to **unsigned int**.

### See Also

**C language, char, data formats, double, float, int, long, pointer, short, technical information, unsigned**

**date — Command**

Print/set the date and time

**date** [-s] [-u] [[*yy**mm**dd*]*hh**mm*[:*ss*]]

**date** prints the time of day and the current date, including the time zone. If an argument is given, the system's current time and date is changed, as follows:

<i>yy</i>	Year (00-99)
<i>mm</i>	Month (01-12)
<i>dd</i>	Day (01-31)
<i>hh</i>	Hour (00-23)
<i>mm</i>	Minute (00-59)
<i>ss</i>	Seconds (00-59)

The seconds fields are optional. For example, typing

```
date 860512141233
```

sets the date to May 12, 1986, and the time to 2:12:33 P.M. At least *hh* and *mm* must be specified — the rest are optional.

The date may be changed only by the superuser.

If option **-s** is specified, **date** suppresses daylight savings time conversion when setting the time.

If option **-u** is specified, dates are set and printed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) rather than in local time.

The library time conversion routines used by **date** look for the environmental variable **TIMEZONE**, which specifies local time zone and daylight saving time information in the format described in **ctime**.

**See Also**

**ATclock**, **commands**, **ctime()**, **time**, **TIMEZONE**

**Notes**

Note that the COHERENT version of the **date** command differs from the UNIX version in that the last two fields of its output are reversed. For example, the UNIX output of **date** reads

```
Sun Jan 13 12:02:09 CST 1991
```

where the COHERENT output reads:

```
Sun Jan 13 12:02:09 1991 CST
```

This may be important when importing UNIX shell commands into COHERENT.

**db — Command**

Assembler-level symbolic debugger

**db** [-cdefort] [*mapfile*] [*program*]

**db** is an assembly-language—level debugger. It allows you to run object files and executable programs under trace control (see the Lexicon entry for **ptrace**), run programs with embedded breakpoints, and dump and patch files in a variety of forms. You can use it to debug assembly-language programs that have been assembled by **as**, the Mark Williams assembler, and programs that have been compiled with the Mark Williams C compiler.



### What is db?

**db** is a symbolic debugger, which means that it works with the symbol tables that the compiler builds into the object files it generates. Because **db** works on the level of assembly language, you need a working knowledge of i80286/i80386 assembly language and microprocessor architecture.

### Invoking db

To invoke **db**, type its name, plus the options you want (if any) and the name of the files with which you will be working. *mapfile* is an object file that supplies a symbol table. *program* is the executable program to be debugged. If both names are given, the options default to **-c**. If only one name is given, it is the *program*; in this case the options default to **-o**. If both names are omitted, *mapfile* defaults to **l.out** and *program* defaults to **core**. If possible, **db** accesses *program* with write permission.

The following options to the **db** command specify the format of *program*:

- c** *program* is a core file produced by a user core dump. **db** checks the name of the command that invoked the process that produced the core, against the name of the *mapfile*, if given. Pure segments are read from the *mapfile*.
- d** *program* is a system dump. If the command line names only one file, *mapfile* defaults to **/coherent**.
- e** The next argument is an object file; **db** executes it as a child process and passes it the rest of the command line.
- f** Map *program* as a straight array of bytes (file).
- o** *program* is an object file. If *mapfile* is given, it is another object file that provides the symbol table.
- r** Only read the file, even though you have write permission for it. Use this to give a file additional protection.
- t** Perform input and output for **db** via **/dev/tty**. Permit the debugging of processes whose standard input or output have been redirected.

### Commands and Addresses

**db** executes commands that you give it from the standard input. A command usually consists of an *address*, which tells **db** where in the program to execute the command; and then the command name and its options, if any.

An address is represented by an *expression*, which can be built out of one or more of the following elements:

- The **'.'**, which represents the current address. When you enter an address, **db** sets the current address to that location. To advance the current address, type the **<Enter>** key.
- The name of a register. **db** recognizes the following register names:

#### PDP-11

r0 through r7, sp, and pc.

#### Z-8001, Z-8002

r0 through r15 and pc.

#### M68000, M68020

d0 through d7, a0 through a7, pc, and sp.

#### i8086, i80286, i80386

ax, ah, al, bx, bh, bl, cx, ch, cl, dx, dh, dl, si, di, bp, sp, pc, cs, ds, es, and ss. Typing the name of a register displays its contents. **db** uses the usual numeric base (octal on

the PDP-11, hexadecimal on all other machines) to display register contents and stack tracebacks, regardless of the current default radix.

- The symbols **d**, **i**, and **u**, which represent location 0 in, respectively, the data space, the instruction space, and the u-area.
- The names of global symbols and symbolic addresses can be used in place of the addresses where they occur. This is useful when setting a breakpoint at the beginning of a subroutine.
- An integer constant, which can be used in the same manner as a global symbol. The default is hexadecimal; a leading **0** indicates octal and **0x** indicates hexadecimal.
- You can use the following binary operators:

+	Addition
-	Subtraction
*	Multiplication
/	Integer division

All arithmetic is done in **longs**.

- You can use the following unary operators:

~	Complementation
-	Negation
*	Indirection

All operators are supported with their normal level of precedence. You can use parentheses '(' for binding.

Every symbol refers to a segment: the data segment, the instruction segment, or the u-area. This segment, in turn, dictates the format in which **db** displays by default what it finds at that address. The format used by an expression is that of its leftmost operand. The symbols **d**, **i**, and **u** name specific segments in the absence of other symbols.

### **Displaying Information**

To display information about *program*, use an expression of the form *address*[*count*]?[*format*]. This displays *format* for *count* iterations, starting at *address*. The symbol '.' represents the *address*, which defaults to the current display address if omitted. *count* defaults to one. The *format* string consists of one or more of the following characters:

---

<b>^</b>	Reset display address to '.'
<b>+</b>	Increment display address
<b>-</b>	Decrement display address
<b>b</b>	Byte
<b>c</b>	<b>char</b> ; control and non- <b>chars</b> escaped
<b>C</b>	Like 'c' except '\0' not displayed
<b>d</b>	Decimal
<b>f</b>	<b>float</b>
<b>F</b>	<b>double</b>
<b>i</b>	Machine instruction, disassembled
<b>l</b>	<b>long</b>
<b>n</b>	Output '\n'
<b>O</b>	octal
<b>p</b>	Symbolic address
<b>s</b>	String terminated by '\0', with escapes
<b>S</b>	String terminated by '\0', no escapes
<b>u</b>	<b>unsigned</b>
<b>w</b>	word
<b>x</b>	Hexadecimal
<b>Y</b>	time (as in i-node, etc.)

The format characters **d**, **o**, **u**, and **x**, specify a numeric base. Each of these can be followed by **b**, **l**, or **w**, which specify a datum size, to describe a single datum for display. A format item may also be preceded by a count that specifies how many times the item is to be applied. Note that *format* defaults to the previously set format for the segment (initially **o** for data and u-area, and **i** for instructions). Except where otherwise noted, **db** increments the display address by the size of the datum displayed after each format item.

### Execution Commands

In the following commands, *address* defaults to the address where execution stopped, unless otherwise specified; *count* and *expr* default to one. *commands* is an arbitrary string of **db** commands, terminated by a newline. A newline may be included by preceding it with a backslash '\ '.

**[address]=**  
Print *address* (offset) in hexadecimal. *address* defaults to '.'.

**[address[,count]]=value[,value[,value]...]**  
Patch *value* into the program, beginning at point *address*. The address defaults to '.'. You can list up to ten *values*. The command **=** assigns values to sequential locations in the traced process. **db** determines the size of the assigned value from the last display format used. You can set and display the registers of the traced process, just like any other address in the traced process.

**?** Print a verbose version of last error message.

**[address]:a**  
Print *address* symbolically. *address* defaults to '.'.

**[address]:b[commands]**  
Set a breakpoint at *address*; execute *commands* when the breakpoint is encountered. *commands* defaults to **i+.:a\ni+.:?i\n:x\n**.

**:br** [*commands*]

Set breakpoint at return from current routine. The defaults are the same as for **:b**, above.

**[address] :c**

Continue execution from *address*.

**[address] :d[r][s]**

Delete the breakpoint previously set at *address*. If the optional **r** or **s** is specified, delete return or single-step breakpoint. *address* defaults to `'.'`.

**[address]:e[commandline]**

Begin traced execution of the object file at *address* (default, entry point). **db** parses *commandline* and passes it to the traced process. **argv[0]** must be typed directly after **:e** if supplied. For example, **:eprogrname foo bar baz** sets **argv[0]** to **progrname**, **argv[1]** to **foo**, **argv[2]** to **bar**, and **argv[3]** to **baz**. Quotation marks, apostrophes, and redirection are parsed as by the shell, but special characters `"*|"` and shell punctuation `(){}|;` are not. For complete shell command line parsing use the **-e** option.

Note that you must use the **:e** command to start the program prior to using the single-step, trace-back, or display-register commands. For example, the following COHERENT-286 command sequence sets a breakpoint at **main**, begins execution, and single-steps through the program after having reached the breakpoint. For COHERENT 386, omit the trailing underscore character:

```
main_ :b
:e
:s
```

**:f** Print type of fault that caused a core dump or stopped the traced process.

**:m** Display segmentation map.

**[expr] :n**

Set default numeric display base to *expr*: **8**, **10**, and **16** indicate, respectively, octal, decimal, and hexadecimal.

**:p** Display all breakpoints.

**[expr] :q**

If *expr* is nonzero, quit the current level of command input (see **:x**). *expr* defaults to one. End-of-file is equivalent to **:q**.

**:r** Display the contents of all registers.

**[address],[count]:s[c][commands]**

Single-step execution starting at *address*, for *count* steps, executing *commands* at each step. *commands* defaults to **!+.?!**.

After a single-step command, **<Enter>** is equivalent to **.,!s[c]**. The option **c** tells **db** to turn off single-stepping at a subroutine call and turn it on again upon return.

**[depth] :t**

Print a call traceback to *depth* levels. If *depth* is zero (default), unwind the whole stack.

**[expr] :x**

If *expr* is nonzero, read and execute commands from the standard input up to end of file or to receiving the command **:q**. *expr* defaults to one.

Note that the **:c**, **:s**, **:t**, and **:r** commands cannot be executed before a program is started. If you are debugging the program **hello**, do the following first:

```

db hello
main:b
:e

```

This invokes the debugger for **hello** and advances it to **main**. Now you can use the full set of commands.

### Examples of Debugging

Consider the following simple program, which will be compiled and debugged using the COHERENT 286 version of **db**:

```

char version[] = "Ver. 1.2-beta";    /* a global string */

main(argc, argv, envp)
int argc; /* argument count from runtime startup */
char *argv[]; /* argument vector " " " */
char *envp[]; /* environment pointer " " */
{
    while (*++argv)
        display(*argv);
    exit(0);
}

/*
 * Display an argument.
 */
display(arg)
char *arg;
{
    printf("Got a %s\n", arg);
}

```

The following paragraphs walk through a sample compilation and debugging session, using the above program.

#### 1. Compile the Program

To compile the program, type the following command:

```
cc -O myprog.c
```

#### 2. Invoke the Debugger

To invoke the debugger for the sample program, type:

```
db myprog
```

#### 3. Set a Breakpoint

Now that you are working with **db**, you can set a breakpoint at the beginning of **main()** by typing:

```
main:b
```

#### 4. Begin Execution

Now that the breakpoint is set, execute the sample program from within the debugger, specifying the arguments that are passed to the program:

```
:emyprog foo bar baz
```

The program executes until it encounters the breakpoint set in step 3; **db** prints the following to show that it has reached the breakpoint:

```
main_
main_      push si
```

Note that the second line of the above display is a disassembly of the first instruction of **main()**.

#### 5. Display Traceback

Now that the program has run to the breakpoint, you can display a call (stack) traceback of function names and parameter values that were passed to the functions:

```
:t
```

**db** displays the following in response:

```
133A 0020 main_(4, 1348, 1352)
```

Note that **db** displays all function arguments as *int*-sized hexadecimal entries. In the case of **main()**, the three arguments correspond to **argc** (the argument count), **argv** (the argument vector), and **envp** (the environment vector).

#### 6. Display Memory Contents

Now, display the contents of five consecutive words of memory, starting at the address specified by the **argv** parameter passed to **main()** when the program is invoked:

```
d+1348,5?x
```

The **x** argument tells **db** to print its output in hexadecimal. **db** replies as follows:

```
brk_+590    1364 136B 136F 1373 0000
```

**db** attempts to display addresses in symbolic form, whenever possible. Note well that ambiguities in the symbol table may cause **db**'s choice of symbols not to correspond to the symbol that you entered.

#### 7. Display Argument Strings

Now, display the character strings pointed to by the individual elements of the **argv** vector. First, type:

```
d+1364?s
```

This displays the first argument, as shown by the addresses given in example 6, above. **db** replies to this command as follows:

```
brk_+5AC    myprog
```

The first argument to **main()** is always the name of the program itself. Now, press **<Enter>** to display the next memory item in the same format; this will show the next argument to **main()**, as follows:

```
brk_+5B3    foo
```

Press **<Enter>** again; you then see:

```
brk_+5B7    bar
```

Press **<Enter>** one more time, to show the last argument:

```
brk_+5BB    baz
```

**8. Set a Second Breakpoint**

To explore breakpoints further, press another breakpoint at the beginning of function **display()**:

```
display:b
```

**9. Show All Breakpoints**

Since you have set more than one breakpoint, display all the breakpoints you have set so far, by typing:

```
:p
```

**db** replies:

```
0020 (main_) i+.:a\ni+.?i\n:x\n
0047 (display_) i+.:a\ni+.?i\n:x\n
```

**10. Continue Execution**

Type:

```
:c
```

This continues program execution from the last breakpoint to the next one; in this case, from breakpoint set at **main()** to the breakpoint set at function **display()**. **db** replies:

```
display_
display_    push si
```

**11. Call Traceback**

Again, type the command

```
:t
```

to display a call traceback that shows the arguments passed so far. **db** replies:

```
1330 0047 display_(136B)
133A 0036 main_(4, 134A, 1352)
```

**12. Display Argument**

Again type the command

```
d+136b?s
```

to display as a string the argument passed to function **display()**. **db** replies:

```
brk_+5B3    foo
```

**13. Continue Execution**

Now, type

```
:c
```

again, to continue execution to the next breakpoint — in this case, to the next call to **display()**. **db** replies:

```
Got a foo
display_
display_    push si
```

The string “Got a foo” is output from function **printf()**.

**14. Display Traceback**

Again, type

```
:t
```

to display a call traceback that shows all arguments passed to functions. **db** replies:

```
1330 0047 display_(136F)
133A 0036 main_(4, 134C, 1352)
```

#### 15. Display Argument

Again, type the command

```
d+136f?s
```

to **display()** as a string the argument passed to **display()**. This time, **db** replies:

```
brk_+5B7 bar
```

#### 16. Continue Execution

Again, type

```
:c
```

to continue execution until the next breakpoint is reached. **db** replies:

```
Got a bar
display_
display_ push si
```

Again, the string "Got a bar" is output from **printf()**.

#### 17. Call Traceback

Once again, type

```
:t
```

to display a call traceback. **db** replies:

```
1330 0047 display_(1373)
133A 0036 main_(4, 134E, 1352)
```

#### 18. Display Argument

Again, typing

```
d+1373?s
```

displays as a string the argument passed to **display()**. **db** replies:

```
brk_+5BB baz
```

#### 19. Continue Execution

Type

```
:c
```

to again continue execution until the next breakpoint is reached. **db** replies:

```
Got a baz
Child process terminated (0)
```

Note that this was the final call to **display()**, so the program completes execution and exits with an exit status of zero, as indicated by the zero in parentheses.

Although you have run **myprog** to completion, the **db** session can continue.



**20. Display Global Variable**

Now, type

```
version?s
```

to display as a string the value of global character array **version**. **db** replies:

```
version_    Ver. 1.2-beta
```

**21. Display Symbol Offset**

To display the offset of symbol **version** within the data space, type:

```
version=
```

**db** replies:

```
22
```

**22. Display Individual Characters**

The next command displays as characters the first 14 bytes of memory pointed to by symbol **version**:

```
version,#14?c
```

**db** replies:

```
version_    V e r .   1 . 2 - b e t a \0
```

Note that the length specified includes the NUL character that terminates the string.

**23. Display Global Variable**

Next, type

```
errno?d
```

to display the value of global variable **errno** as a decimal number. **db** replies:

```
loc_0+2     0
```

Because no error occurred during the execution of this program, **errno** is set to zero.

**24. Exit**

To terminate the debugging session, type:

```
:q
```

The next example “patches” the value of an integer variable in an existing executable. Consider the following code:

```
int foo = 5;

main()
{
    printf("foo is %d\n", foo);
}
```

The following steps show the compilation, execution, patching, and re-execution of the patched executable:

**1. Compile Program**

To compile the program, type:

```
cc -O sample2.c
```

## 2. Run the Program

To run the program, type:

```
sample2
```

The program outputs the following:

```
foo is 5
```

## 3. Invoke the Debugger

To invoke the debugger for program **sample2**, type:

```
db sample2
```

## 4. Display Variable

Now, display the value of variable **foo** by typing:

```
foo?d
```

**db** replies:

```
foo_      5
```

## 5. Patch the Program

Now, type:

```
=#69
```

This patches the value of the last displayed variable (in this case, **foo**) to **69**. With this command, the value of **foo** in the executable has been changed from **5** to **69**.

## 6. Exit and Test

Type

```
:q
```

to exit from **db**. Now, type

```
sample2
```

to re-run **sample2**. The program prints the following:

```
foo is 69
```

As you can see, your patching has changed how **sample** executes.

The third sample **db** session demonstrates how to patch an integer variable in the data segment of an executing device driver. This process is extremely risky and should only be attempted by experienced users of the COHERENT Device Driver Kit. *Caveat Utilitor!*

For this example, we assume the existence of a piece of code in the user's device driver that checks the value of variable **mydebug** on a periodic basis, possibly at interrupt time. If the variable is zero, nothing happens. However, if the variable is non-zero, the device driver issues a status (debugging) message to the console device.

The following assumes that:

- You are running as the superuser.

- **/coherent** is the currently executing system.
- A user-supplied, loadable device driver named **driver** exists in the current directory.
- It has not been linked into the COHERENT kernel.
- The current directory is not **/tmp**.
- The global integer variable in the device driver is named **mydebug**.

Load the device driver and invoke **db** as follows:

```
/etc/drvid driver
db -f /tmp/driver /dev/kmem
```

To display the current value of driver variable **mydebug** in decimal, type:

```
mydebug?d
```

To set **mydebug** to value 100 decimal and exit the debugger, type:

```
mydebug=#100
:q
```

### See Also

**commands, core, l.out.h, od, ptrace()**

## dc — Command

Desk calculator  
**dc** [*file*]

**dc** is an arbitrary precision desk calculator. It simulates a stacking calculator with ancillary registers. Input must be entered in reverse Polish notation. **dc** maintains the expected number of decimal places during addition, subtraction, and multiplication, but the user must make an explicit request to maintain any places at all during division.

**dc** reads input from *file* if specified, and then from the standard input. **dc** accepts an arbitrary number of commands per line; moreover, spaces need not be left between them.

The *scale factor* of a number is the number of places to the right of its decimal point. The *scale factor register* controls decimal places in calculations. The scale factor does not affect addition or subtraction. It affects multiplication only if the sum of the scale factors of the two operands is greater than it. The result of every division command has as many decimal places as it specifies. It affects exponentiation in that multiplication is performed as many times as the integer part of the exponent indicates; any fractional part of the exponent is ignored.

**dc** recognizes the following commands and constructions:

#### *number*

Stack the value of *number*. A number is a string of symbols taken from the digits '0' through '9', and the capital letters 'A' through 'F' (usual hexadecimal notation), with an optional decimal point. An underscore '\_' as a prefix indicates a negative number. The letters retain values ten through 15, respectively, regardless of the base chosen by the user.

#### **+ - / \* % ^**

The arithmetic operations: addition(+), subtraction(-), division(/), multiplication(\*), remainder(%), and exponentiation(^). **dc** pops the two top stack elements, performs the desired operation by calling the multiprecision routine desired (see **multiprecision arithmetic**), and stacks the result.

- c** Clear the stack.
- d** Duplicate the top of the stack (so that it occupies the top two positions of the stack).
- f** Print the contents of the stack and the values of all registers.
- i** Remove the top of the stack and use its integer part as the assumed input base (default, ten). The new input base must be greater than one and less than 17.
- I** Stack the current assumed input base.
- k** Remove the top of the stack and put it in the internal scale factor register.
- K** Put the value of the internal scale register (which the **k** command sets) on the top of the stack.
- l x** Load the value of register *x* to the top of the stack. The value of register *x* is unaltered. *x* may be any character.
- o** Remove the top of the stack and use its integer part as the assumed output base (default, ten). The specified base may be any positive integer.
- O** Stack the current assumed output base.
- p** Print the top of the stack. The value remains on the stack.
- q** Quit the program; control returns to the shell **sh**.
- s x** Remove the top of the stack and store it in register *x*. The previous contents of *x* are overwritten. *x* may be any character.
- v** Replace the top of the stack by its square root.
- x** Remove the top of the stack, interpret it as a string containing a sequence of **dc** commands, and execute it.
- X** Replace the top of the stack by its scale factor (i.e., the number of decimal places it has).
- z** Place the number of occupied levels of the stack on top of the stack.
- [...]** Place the bracketed character string on top of the stack. The string may be executed subsequently with the **x** command.
- <x>x =x !<x !>x !=x**  
Remove the top two elements of the stack and compare them. If there is no **!** sign before the relation, execute register *x* if the two elements obey the relation. If a **!** sign is present, execute register *x* if the elements do not obey the relation.
- !** Interpret the rest of the line as a command to the shell **sh**. Control returns to **dc** after command execution terminates.

### Example

The following example program prints the first 20 Fibonacci numbers. The characters **l** and **l** are printed in boldface to help you tell them apart.

```
lsalsb1sc
[1albdsa+psblc1+dsc21<y]sy
lyx
```

### See Also

**bc, commands**

## Notes

For most purposes the infix notation of **bc** is more convenient than the Polish notation of **dc**.

## dcheck — Command

Check directory consistency

**dcheck** [-s] [-i *inumber...*] *filesystem* ...

**dcheck** checks the consistency of each *filesystem*. It scans all the directories in each *filesystem* and counts all i-nodes referenced. It then compares its counts against the link counts maintained in the i-nodes. **dcheck** notes any discrepancies, and notes allocated i-nodes with a link count of zero.

The **-i** argument tells **dcheck** to compare each *inumber* in the list against those in each directory. It reports matches by printing the i-number, the i-number of the parent directory, and the name of the entry. The **-s** argument tells **dcheck** to correct the link count of errant i-nodes to the entry count.

Because **dcheck** uses two passes to check a *filesystem*, the file system should be unmounted. If **-s** is used on the root file system, the system should be rebooted immediately (without performing a **sync**). The raw device should be used.

## See Also

**check**, **commands**, **dir.h**, **icheck**, **ncheck**, **sync**, **umount**

## Diagnostics

If the link count is zero and there are entries, the file system must be mounted and all entries removed immediately. If the link count is nonzero and the entry count is *larger*, the **-s** option must be used to make the counts agree. In all other cases there may be wasted disk space but there is no danger of losing file data.

## Notes

In earlier releases of COHERENT, **dcheck** acted upon a default file system if none was specified.

This command has largely been replaced by **fsck**.

## dd — Command

File conversion

**dd** [*option=value*] ...

**dd** copies an input file to an output file, while performing requested conversions. Options include case and character set conversions, byte swapping conversion for other machines, and different input and output buffer sizes. **dd** can be used with raw disk files or raw tape files to do efficient copies with large block (record) sizes. Read and write requests can be changed with the **bs** option described below.

The following list gives each available *option*. Any numbers which specify block sizes or seek positions may be written in several ways. A number followed by **w**, **b**, or **k** is multiplied by two (for words), 512 (for blocks), or 1,024 (for kilobytes), respectively, to obtain the size in bytes. A pair of such numbers separated by **x** is multiplied together to produce the size. All buffer sizes default to 512 bytes if not specified.

- bs=n**           Set the size of the buffer for both input and output to *n* bytes.
- cbs=n**        Set the conversion buffer size to *n* bytes (used only with character set conversions between ASCII and EBCDIC).
- conv=list**   Perform conversions specified by the comma-separated *list*, which may include the following:
  - ascii**           Convert EBCDIC to ASCII
  - ebcdic**         Convert ASCII to EBCDIC

<b>ibm</b>	Convert ASCII to EBCDIC, IBM flavor
<b>lcase</b>	Convert upper case to lower
<b>noerror</b>	Continue processing on I/O errors
<b>swab</b>	Swap every pair of bytes before output
<b>sync</b>	Pad input buffers with 0 bytes to size of <b>ibs</b>
<b>ucase</b>	Convert lower case to upper

**count=n** Copy a maximum of *n* input records.

**files=n** Copy a maximum of *n* input files (useful for multifile tapes).

**ibs=n** Set the input buffer size to *n* (normally used if input and output blocking sizes are to be different).

**if=file** Open *file* for input; the standard input is used when no **if=** option is given.

**obs=n** Set the output buffer size to *n*.

**of=file** Open *file* for output; the standard output is used when no **of=** option is given.

**seek=n** Seek to position *n* bytes into the output before copying (does not work on stream data such as tapes, communications devices, and pipes).

**skip=n** Read and discard the first *n* input records.

### Examples

The first example copies the entire contents of a 1.44-megabyte, 3.5-inch diskette from drive 0 to file **disk.dd**:

```
dd if=/dev/fva0 of=disk.dd bs=36b count=80
```

The second example writes the contents of the previously stored 5.25-inch file **backup.dd** to a 1.2-megabyte, 5.25-inch floppy disk in drive 1:

```
dd if=backup.dd of=/dev/fha1 bs=30b count=80
```

### See Also

**ASCII, commands, conv, cp, tape, tr**

### Diagnostics

The command reports the number of full and partial buffers read and written upon completion.

### Notes

Because of differing interpretations of EBCDIC, especially for certain more exotic graphic characters such as braces and backslash, no one conversion table will be adequate for all applications. The **ebcdic** table is the American Standard of the Business Equipment Manufacturers Association. The **ibm** table seems to be more practical for line printer codes at many IBM installations.

### **decvax\_d()** — General Function

Convert a double from IEEE to DECVAX format

**int**

**decvax\_d**(*ddp*, *idp*)

**double** \**ddp*, \**idp*;

**decvax\_d()** converts a **double** from IEEE format to DECVAX format. *idp* points to the IEEE-format **double** to convert. *ddp* points to a destination for the converted DECVAX value; *ddp* may be identical to *idp* for in-place conversion.

**decvax\_d()** returns zero on success, -1 on underflow, or one on overflow.

For a description of the IEEE and DECVAX formats for floating-point numbers, see the Lexicon article for **float**.

### See Also

**decvax\_f()**, **float**, **general functions**, **ieee\_d()**, **ieee\_f()**

### **decvax\_f()** — General Function

Convert a float from IEEE to DECVAX format

**int**

**decvax\_f**(*dfp*, *ifp*)

**float** \**dfp*, \**ifp*;

**decvax\_f()** converts a **float** from IEEE format to DECVAX format. *ifp* points to the IEEE-format **float** to convert. *dfp* points to a destination for the converted DECVAX value; *dfp* may be identical to *ifp* for in-place conversion.

**decvax\_f()** returns zero on success, -1 on underflow, or one on overflow.

For a description of the IEEE and DECVAX formats for floating-point numbers, see the Lexicon article for **float**.

### See Also

**decvax\_d()**, **float**, **general functions**, **ieee\_d()**, **ieee\_f()**

### **default** — C Keyword

Default label in switch statement

**default** is a prefix used in **switch** statement. If none of the **case** labels match the parameter in the **switch** statement, then the **default** label is used. A **switch** is not required to have a **default** case, but it is good programming practice to use one.

### See Also

**C keywords**, **case**, **switch**

### **defined** — Preprocessor Operator

Perform an action if a macro is defined

The preprocessor directive **defined** determines whether a symbol is defined to the **#if** preprocessor directive. For example,

```
#if defined(SYMBOL)
```

or

```
#if defined SYMBOL
```

is equivalent to

```
#ifdef SYMBOL
```

except that it can be used in more complex expressions, such as

```
#if defined FOO && defined BAR && FOO==10
```

**defined** is recognized only in lines beginning with **#if** or **#elif**.

### See Also

**#elif**, **#if**, **#ifdef**, **cpp**, **C preprocessor**

## Notes

Note that **defined** is a preprocessor operator, not a preprocessor directive or a C keyword. The difference lies in the fact that you could write a function called **defined()** without any complaint from the C compiler; and if **defined** does not appear within an **#if** or **#elif** directive, the preprocessor ignores it.

## definitions — Overview

The Lexicon contains the following articles that define aspects of COHERENT:

<b>address</b>	<b>alignment</b>	<b>arena</b>
<b>array</b>	<b>bit</b>	<b>bit map</b>
<b>buffer</b>	<b>byte</b>	<b>cast</b>
<b>caveat utilitor</b>	<b>cc0</b>	<b>ccl</b>
<b>cc2</b>	<b>cc3</b>	<b>daemon</b>
<b>directory</b>	<b>executable file</b>	<b>field</b>
<b>file</b>	<b>FILE</b>	<b>file descriptor</b>
<b>filter</b>	<b>function</b>	<b>GMT</b>
<b>i-node</b>	<b>interrupt</b>	<b>lvalue</b>
<b>macro</b>	<b>manifest constant</b>	<b>modulus</b>
<b>named pipe</b>	<b>NUL</b>	<b>NULL</b>
<b>nybble</b>	<b>object format</b>	<b>operator</b>
<b>pattern</b>	<b>pipe</b>	<b>port</b>
<b>process</b>	<b>pun</b>	<b>random access</b>
<b>root</b>	<b>rvalue</b>	<b>stack</b>
<b>standard error</b>	<b>standard input</b>	<b>standard output</b>
<b>stderr</b>	<b>stdin</b>	<b>stdout</b>
<b>sticky bit</b>	<b>stream</b>	<b>structure</b>
<b>superuser</b>	<b>wildcards</b>	

## See Also

Lexicon

## deftty.h — Header File

Define default tty settings

**#include <sys/deftty.h>**

**deftty.h** defines the default tty settings.

## See Also

header files

## deroff — Command

Remove text formatting control information

**deroff [-w] [-x] [file ...]**

**deroff** removes text formatting control information from each input text *file*, or from the standard input if no *file* is specified. It regards all lines that begin with **'.'** or **'"** as being **nroff** or **troff** commands and deletes them. **deroff** also recognizes some additional control lines. It deletes **eqn** information (between **.EQ** and **.EN** lines), **tbl** information (between **.TS** and **.TE** lines), and macro definitions. It also deletes embedded **.eqn** requests. It expands source file inclusion with **.so** and **.nx** requests, with the proviso that no input file is read twice. It also deletes some **troff** escape sequences, such as those for font and size change.

When the **-x** flag is present, **deroff** uses some additional knowledge about the **nroff -ms** macro package.



When the **-w** flag is present, **deroff** divides the remaining text into words and prints them to the standard output, one per line. A **word** comprises a sequence of letters, digits, and apostrophes that commences with a letter. **deroff** strips apostrophes from the output. All other characters between words are not printed. The spelling checking programs **spell** and **typo** use this option.

### See Also

**commands**, **nroff**, **spell**, **troff**, **typo**

### **detab** — Command

Replace tab characters with spaces

**detab** [-t*tabsize*]

**detab** reads the standard input, replaces every tab character with spaces, and writes the result to the standard output. If you do not specify the **-t** option, **detab** uses the standard value of eight. *tabsize* can range in value from two to 256, inclusive.

### See Also

**commands**

### **device drivers** — Overview

A *device driver* is a program that controls the action of one of the physical devices attached to your computer system.

The following table lists the device drivers included with this edition of the COHERENT system. The first field gives the device's major device number; the second gives its name; and the third describes it. When a major device number has no driver associated with it, that device is available for a driver yet to be written.

0:	<b>*mem</b>	Interface to memory and null device
1:	<b>tty</b>	Controlling terminal device
2:	<b>nkb/kb/mm</b>	Keyboard and video
3:	<b>lp</b>	Parallel line printer
4:	<b>fl</b>	Floppy drive
5:	<b>asy</b>	Serial driver (COHERENT 386 only)
5:	<b>al0</b>	Serial line 0 (COM1 and COM3) (COHERENT 286 only)
6:	<b>al1</b>	Serial line 1 (COM2 and COM4) (COHERENT 286 only)
7:	<b>hs</b>	Generic polled multi-port serial card (COHERENT 286 only)
8:	<b>rm</b>	Dual RAM disk
9:	<b>pty</b>	Pseudoterminals (COHERENT 386 only)
10:		
11:	<b>at</b>	AT hard disk
12:		
13:	<b>scsi</b>	SCSI device drivers: <b>aha154x</b> , <b>ss</b>
14:		
15:		
16:		
17:		
18:		
19:		
20:		
21:		
22:		
23:	<b>sem</b>	System V compatible semaphores
24:	<b>shm</b>	System V subset shared memory
25:	<b>msg</b>	System V compatible messaging

26:  
27:  
28:  
29:  
30:  
31:

Also included are drivers for the following devices:

<b>console</b>	Console driver
<b>ct</b>	Controlling terminal driver
<b>null</b>	The "bit bucket"

### **Major and Minor Numbers**

COHERENT uses a system of *major* and *minor* device numbers to manage devices and drivers. In theory, COHERENT assigns a unique major number to each type of device, and a unique minor number to each instance of that type. In practice, however, a major number describes a device driver (rather than a device *per se*). The individual devices serviced by that driver are identified by a minor number. Sometimes, certain parts of the minor number specify configuration. For example, bits 0 through 6 of the minor number for COHERENT RAM disks indicate the size of the allocated device.

In COHERENT 286, devices using different IRQ's may have different major numbers, even if the devices are of the same general type. For example, devices **com1\*** and **com3\*** have major number 5, while **com2\*** and **com4\*** have major number 6.

### **Serial Ports**

The two implementations of COHERENT come with different drivers for serial ports.

COHERENT 286 comes with two sets of drivers. **al0** and **al1** support ordinary serial lines. **al0** supports ports **COM1** and **COM3**, and has major number 5. **al1** supports ports **COM2** and **COM4**, and has major number 6. The driver **hs**, on the other hand, supports generic polled multi-port serial cards.

COHERENT 386 replaces these drivers with one driver, **asy**. It has major number 5, like **al0**, but it supports all four **COM** ports, and a variety of generic multi-port cards. The configuration of ports that **asy** supports is set when you install COHERENT; however, you can reconfigure **asy** should you wish to add more hardware to your system. See its Lexicon article for details.

### **See Also**

**asy**, **at**, **boot**, **com**, **console**, **ct**, **drvld**, **Lexicon**, **lp**, **mboot**, **mem**, **msg**, **null**, **psy**, **sem**, **sgtty**, **shm**, **tape**

### **Notes**

See the Release Notes for your release of COHERENT for a list of supported devices and device drivers.

Under COHERENT 286, the devices **msg**, **sem**, **shm**, **al0**, and **al1** are loadable drivers; you can load them into memory by using the command **drvld**. Under COHERENT 386, these devices are built into the kernel. See their respective entries in the COHERENT Lexicon for more information.

## **df — Command**

Measure free space on disk

**df** [-**ait**] *device*

**df** measures the amount of free space left on a floppy disk, on a logical device on a hard disk, or on a RAM disk. *device* is the name of the device you wish to check. For example, to check the amount of space left on filesystem **x**, type:

```
df /x
```

The default device is the one you are currently using. **df** displays three numbers: the total number of disk blocks in the device, the number of disk blocks being used, and the percent of total disk blocks that are free. Note that a disk block is 512 bytes (1/2 kilobyte).

**df** recognizes the following options:

- a Prints the amount of space left on all devices.
- i Show the number and percentage of i-nodes available.
- t Show the total number of blocks on the device. This number is based upon the number given to **/etc/mkfs** when the file system was created. The output of **df** is as follows:

```
$ df
/dev/at1a 23815/ 75197 = 31.6%
      (device)      ^      ^
# of free blocks---|      |----max data blocks on this device
```

Adding option **-t** yields:

```
$ df -t
/dev/at1a 23814/ 75197 = 31.6%, 76799
      size of partition in blocks----^
```

Note that unless you also specify the **-a** option, you will see information about the only file system that you are currently using (i.e., the only which contains the directory that you are in).

## See Also

commands

## diff — Command

Summarize differences between two files

**diff** [-bdefh] [-c *symbol*] *file1 file2*

**diff** compares *file1* with *file2*, and prints a summary of the changes needed to turn *file1* into *file2*.

Two options involve input file specification. First, the standard input may be specified in place of a file by entering a hyphen '-' in place of *file1* or *file2*. Second, if *file1* is a directory, **diff** looks within that directory for a file that has the same name as *file2*, then compares *file2* with the file of the same name in directory *file1*.

The default output script has lines in the following format:

```
1,2 c 3,4
```

The numbers 1,2 refer to line ranges in *file1*, and 3,4 to ranges in *file2*. The range is abbreviated to a single number if the first number is the same as the second. The command *c* was chosen from among the **ed** commands 'a', 'c', and 'd'. **diff** then prints the text from each of the two files. Text associated with *file1* is preceded by '< ', whereas text associated with *file2* is preceded by '> '.

The following summarizes **diff**'s options.

- b Ignore trailing blanks and treat more than one blank in an input line as a single blank. Spaces and tabs are considered to be blanks for this comparison.
- c *symbol*  
Produce output suitable for the C preprocessor **cpp**; the output contains **#ifdef**, **#ifndef**, **#else**, and **#endif** lines. *symbol* is the string used to build the **#ifdef** statements. If you define

*symbol* to the C preprocessor **cpp**, it will produce *file2* as its output; otherwise, it will produce *file1*. This option does *not* work for files that already contain **#ifdef**, **#ifndef**, **#else**, and **#endif** statements.

- e** Create an **ed** script that will convert *file1* into *file2*.
- f** Produce a script in the same manner as the **-e** option, but with line numbers taken directly from the two input files. This will work properly only if applied from end to beginning; it cannot be used directly by **ed**.
- h** Compare large files that have a minimal number of differences. This option uses an algorithm that is not limited by file length, but may not discover all differences.
- d** Select the **-h** algorithm only for files larger than 25,000 bytes; otherwise, use the normal algorithm.

### See Also

**ed**, **egrep**, **commands**

### Diagnostics

**diff**'s exit status is zero when the files are identical, one when they are different, and two if a problem was encountered (e.g., could not open a file).

### Notes

**diff** cannot handle files with more than 32,000 lines. Handling **diff** a file that exceeds that limit will cause it to fail, with unpredictable side effects.

### **diff3** — Command

Summarize differences among three files

**diff3** [-**ex3**] *file1 file2 file3*

**diff3** summarizes the differences among three text files. Each difference encountered is headed by one of the following separators, which categorizes how many of the three input files differ in a given range. The headers are as follows

====

All of the files are different.

====*n*

Only the *n*th file differs, where *n* may be 1, 2, or 3.

For each set of changes marked as above, the actual change is indicated for each file using a notation similar to commands to **ed**. For each *filen* the following is printed:

*n: la* Text is to be appended after line *l* in *filen*.

*n: l,mc* The text from line *l* to line *m* is to be changed for *filen*. The original text from *filen* follows this line. If this text is identical for two of the files, only the latter (higher numbered) of the two is printed.

Options are available to print a script of commands to **ed**. With the **-e** option, a script that will make all changes between *file2* and *file3* to *file1* is produced. This script is based upon all changes flagged with **====** or **====3** separators, as described above.

The **-x** option prints only those changes where all three files differ, i.e., those flagged with **====**.

The **-3** option requests only those changes where *file3* differs.

### Example

The following command sequence produces a script, applies it to *file1*, and sends the result to the standard output.

```
(diff3 -e file1 file2 file3; echo '1,$p') | ed - file1
```

### Files

**/tmp/d3\***  
**/usr/lib/diff3**

### See Also

**commands**, **diff**, **ed**

### Diagnostics

An exit status of zero indicates all three files were identical, one indicates differences, and two indicates some other failure.

## **dir.h** — Header File

Directory format

**#include <dir.h>**

A COHERENT directory is exactly like an ordinary file, except that a user's process may write on it only through system calls such as **creat**, **link**, **mknod**, or **unlink**. The system distinguishes directories from other types of files by the mode word **S\_IFDIR** in the i-node. (For more information on i-nodes, see **stat**).

Every directory is an array of entries of the following structure, as defined in the header file **dir.h**:

```
#define                                DIRSIZ 14

struct direct {
    ino_t d_ino;                        /* i-number */
    char d_name[DIRSIZ];               /* name */
};
```

Any entry in which **d\_ino** has a value of zero is unused.

The command **mkdir** creates a directory, with the convention that its first two entries are **.'** and **'..'**. The name **.'** is self-referential — a link to the directory itself. The name **'..'** is a link to the parent directory. Because the root directory has no parent, its **'..'** is a link to itself.

The **d\_ino** entry of the directory structure is stored in the file system in canonical form, as described in **canon.h**.

### See Also

**canon.h**, **header files**, **mkdir**, **stat()**

## **directory** — Definition

A **directory** is a table that maps names to files; in other words, it associates the names of a file with their locations on the mass storage device. Under some operating systems, directories are also files, and can be handled like a file.

Directories allow files to be organized on a mass storage device in a rational manner, by function or owner.

### See Also

**definitions**, **file**

**dirent.h** — Header File

Define dirent  
**#include <dirent.h>**

**dirent.h** defines the manifest constant **dirent**.

**See Also**

**closedir()**, **getdents()**, **header files**, **opendir()**, **readdir()**, **rewinddir()**, **telldir()**

**dirs** — Command

Print the contents of the directory stack  
**dirs**

The COHERENT shell **sh** maintains an internal “directory stack”, which is a stack of names of directories. You can manipulate this stack should you, for any reason, wish to traverse a number of directories quickly and efficiently.

The command **dirs** prints the current contents of the directory stack.

**See Also**

**commands**, **popd**, **pushd**, **sh**

**disable** — Command

Disable a port  
**/etc/disable port...**

**disable** tells the COHERENT system not to create a login process for each given asynchronous *port*. For example, the command

```
/etc/disable com1r
```

disables port **/dev/com1r**. **disable** changes the entry for each given *port* in the terminal characteristics file **/etc/ttys**, and signals **init** to rescan the **ttys** file.

The command **enable** enables a port. The command **ttystat** checks whether a port is enabled or disabled.

**Files**

**/etc/ttys** — Terminal characteristics file

**See Also**

**com**, **commands**, **enable**, **login**, **ttys**, **ttystat**

**Diagnostics**

**disable** normally returns one if it disables the *port* successfully and zero if not. If more than one *port* is specified, **disable** returns the success or failure status of the last *port* it finds. It returns -1 if it cannot find any given *port*. An exit status of -2 indicates an error.

**div()** — General Function

Perform integer division  
**#include <stdlib.h>**  
**div\_t div(***numerator***,** *denominator***)**  
**int** *numerator*, *denominator*;

**div()** divides *numerator* by *denominator*. It returns a structure of the type **div\_t**, which is structured as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    int quot;
    int rem;
} div_t;
```

**div()** writes the quotient into **quot** and the remainder into **rem**.

The sign of the quotient is positive if the signs of the arguments are the same; it is negative if the signs of the arguments differ. The sign of the remainder is the same as the sign of the numerator.

If the remainder is non-zero, the magnitude of the quotient is the largest integer less than the magnitude of the algebraic quotient. This is not guaranteed by the operators `/` and `%`, which merely do what the machine implements for divide.

### See Also

**general functions, ldiv**

### Notes

The ANSI Standard includes this function to permit a useful feature found in most versions of FORTRAN, where the sign of the remainder will be the same as the sign of the numerator. Also, on most machines, division produces a remainder. This allows a quotient and remainder to be returned from one machine-divide operation.

If the result of division cannot be represented (e.g., because *denominator* is set to zero), the behavior of **div()** is undefined. *Caveat utilitor.*

## do — C Keyword

Introduce a loop

**do** is a C control statement that introduces a loop. Unlike **for** and **while** loops, the condition in a **do** loop is evaluated *after* the operation is performed. **do** always works in tandem with **while**; for example

```
do {
    puts("Next entry? ");
    fflush(stdout);
} while(getchar() != EOF);
```

prints a prompt on the screen and waits for the user to reply. The **do** loop is convenient in this instance because the prompt must appear at least once on the screen before the user replies.

### See Also

**break, C keywords, continue, while**

## domain — System Maintenance

Set your system's mail domain  
**/etc/domain**

The file **/etc/domain** sets the domain that the COHERENT mail system uses to create your fully qualified domain name. Your fully qualified domain name is created by appending the contents of **/etc/domain** to the contents of **/etc/uucpname**, with an intervening `..`. Unless you have a registered domain name, the contents of this file should be **UUCP**.

For information on registering in the United States catch-all domain **.us**, send mail to:

`us-domain-request@venera.isi.edu`

UUNET Communications Services of Falls Church, Virginia, will help you set up your own domain for a modest fee. Contact **info@uunet.uu.net** for more information; or telephone them at 703-876-5050.

### See Also

**mail, paths, system maintenance, uucpname**

### **dos** — Command

Manipulate files on MS-DOS file systems

**dos** [-**dF****l****r****t****x**][*flags*] [*device*] [*file* ...]

The command **dos** allows the COHERENT user to manipulate an MS-DOS file system, which may be either a hard-disk partition or a floppy disk. It can build an empty MS-DOS file system, label it, list the files in it, transfer files between it and COHERENT, or delete files from it.

The given *device* must be a special file that specifies an MS-DOS file system, such as floppy-disk drive **/dev/fha0** or hard-disk partition **/dev/at0a**. The default *device* is **/dev/dos**, which the system administrator should link to the most commonly used device name.

**dos** converts between the differing file-name conventions of COHERENT and MS-DOS. An MS-DOS *file* argument may be specified in lower or upper case, using '/' as the path-name separator. When transferring files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, **dos** converts an MS-DOS file name to a COHERENT file name in lower case only. If the MS-DOS file name contains no extension, the COHERENT file name contains no '.'. When transferring files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, **dos** converts all alphabetic characters in a COHERENT file name to upper case; if a period '.' appears at the beginning or end of a file name, **dos** converts it to '\_'. **dos** truncates the part of the file name before the last '.' to a maximum of eight characters and truncates the extension to a maximum of three characters.

The command line must specify exactly one of the following *functions*.

- d** Delete each *file* from the MS-DOS file system. This option also allows the user to delete empty directories.
- F** Create an empty MS-DOS file system on a formatted diskette. This option is analogous to the COHERENT command **/etc/mkfs**. The COHERENT commands **/etc/fdformat** and **/etc/mkfs** initialize a COHERENT diskette in two steps. The MS-DOS command **format** initializes an MS-DOS diskette by performing both the physical and logical formatting operations with one command. To initialize an MS-DOS diskette under COHERENT, use the command **/etc/fdformat -v devicename**, followed by the command **dos F devicename**. If *file* is named, **dos** copies it to the boot block of the file system. The **dos** command cannot build a file system on a hard-disk partition.
- l** Label the MS-DOS file system. The command line must specify exactly one *file* argument, which gives the label.
- r** Replace each *file* on the MS-DOS file system with the COHERENT file of the same name. If a given *file* argument specifies a COHERENT directory, **dos** replaces its subdirectories recursively to the MS-DOS file system unless the **s** flag is used. If no *file* is specified, **dos** copies all files in the current directory to the MS-DOS file system.
- t** List the files on the MS-DOS file system. If no *file* argument is given, **dos** lists the entire MS-DOS file system; otherwise, it lists each *file*. If a *file* argument specifies an MS-DOS subdirectory, **dos** lists its contents. **dos** lists directories first in alphabetical order, then ordinary files in alphabetical order.



- x** Extract each *file* from the MS-DOS file system to a COHERENT file of the same name. If a given *file* argument specifies an MS-DOS subdirectory, **dos** extracts its contents recursively unless the **s** flag is used. If no *file* is given, **dos** extracts all files from the MS-DOS file system to the current COHERENT directory.

The following *flags* are available.

- a** Perform ASCII newline conversion on file transfer. When moving files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, this option converts each COHERENT newline character '\n' (ASCII **LF**) to an MS-DOS end-of-line (ASCII **CR** and **LF**); when moving files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, it does the opposite. By default, **dos** performs binary file transfer, without newline conversion.
- k** Keep the file modification time (mtime) on extract and replace operations. By default, **dos** gives extracted or replaced files the current time. With this option, **dos** gives the extracted or replaced file the same time as the original file.
- n** List files in order of creation (newest file last) rather than in alphabetical order. This option applies only to the table-of-contents function. **dos** always lists directories before files, with or without the **n** option.
- p** Perform a piped extract or replace (for use in pipelines). The command line must specify exactly one *file* argument. For extract, **dos** reads the given *file* and writes it to the standard output. For replace, **dos** reads the standard input and writes it to the given *file*.
- s** Suppress extraction or replacement of subdirectories. By default, **dos** extracts or replaces subdirectories recursively.
- v** Verbose option. Provide additional information about each function performed.
- [1-9] A digit specifies a logical drive number on an extended MS-DOS partition. For example, **dos tv2 /dev/at0c** lists the directory of the second logical drive on extended MS-DOS partition **/dev/at0c**.

## Examples

The first example copies all files located in directories **sources** and **include**, as well as any subdirectories, from floppy drive **/dev/fva1** to correspondingly named subdirectories in the current COHERENT directory:

```
dos xavk /dev/fva1 sources include
```

Note that **fva1** is a high-density, 3.5-inch floppy disk in floppy-disk drive 1 (a.k.a., drive B:). The files will be copied with ASCII newline conversion and will retain the time and date that they had under MS-DOS.

The next example copies a file from an MS-DOS partition on your hard disk. Suppose that **C:** is the primary MS-DOS partition on your first hard drive. The following command copies file **C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT** to **/autoexec.bat** in your COHERENT root partition:

```
dos xa /dev/at0a /autoexec.bat
```

You will want to use the **a** switch any time you are transferring a text file.

Suppose that the second partition on your first hard drive (COHERENT device **/dev/at0b**) is an extended MS-DOS partition with two logical drives, **D:** and **E:**. To copy a COHERENT text file **/tmp/foo** to **D:\TMP\FOO**, use the command

```
dos ral /dev/at0b /tmp/foo
```

To copy non-text file **frotz** in the current COHERENT directory to MS-DOS file **E:\DBF\AX\FROTZ**, use the command

```
dos rp2 /dev/at0b dbf/ax/frotz < frotz
```

### See Also

**commands**, **doscat**, **doscp**, **doscpdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**, **MS-DOS**

### Notes

**dos** is an obsolete command. It has been retained for compatibility with earlier versions of COHERENT. We urge you to use the other members in the **dos** family of commands, which have a cleaner syntax and are much easier to use.

**dos** does not check for unusual characters in a COHERENT file name or for file names that differ from other file names only in case.

The **dos** family of commands now support large file systems, such as those created by MS-DOS versions 4.0 and 5.0.

### **doscat** — Command

Concatenate a file on an MS-DOS file system

**doscat** *device*:[*/directory*]*/file*

**doscat** concatenates *file* that is in *directory* on an MS-DOS file system. *device* names the floppy-disk or hard-disk device that holds the file system to be modified, e.g., **/dev/fha0**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a:**, **b:**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

*file* can name either a single file, or can contain a wildcard character to name more than one file. For example, the command

```
doscat a:foo.c
```

concatenates file **foo.c** which is on the file system contained in device whose alias is **a:** (as defined in file **/etc/default/msdos**). Likewise, the command

```
doscat 'c:/dirname/*.txt'
```

concatenates all files with the suffix **.txt** in directory **dirname**, which, in turn, is on the file system contained in device whose alias is **c:** (as defined in file **/etc/default/msdos**). In this form of the command, **doscat** concatenates the files in the alphabetical order of their names. Note that the tail of the command must be enclosed within apostrophes, or the shell will expand the **\*\*** before it is read by **doscat**.

### Files

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

### See Also

**commands**, **dos**, **doscp**, **doscpdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

### **doscp** — Command

Copy files to/from an MS-DOS file system

**doscp** [**-abkmrv**] *src dest*

**doscp** copies files between MS-DOS and COHERENT file systems. The MS-DOS file system can reside either on a floppy disk, or on an MS-DOS partition of a hard disk.

*src* names the file being copied and the file system where it resides; *dest* names the file system and directory into which the file is copied. The operating system that owns the *src* file is implied by the

name of the file system on which it resides. An MS-DOS file system must be named using the device that holds it, such as floppy-disk drive **/dev/fha0** or hard-disk partition **/dev/at0a**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the section entitled *Configuring the dos Commands*, below.

**doscp** converts a file's name from one operating system's conventions to the other's. An MS-DOS file argument may be specified in lower or upper case, using '/' as the path-name separator. When transferring files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, **doscp** converts an MS-DOS file name to a COHERENT file name in lower case only. If the MS-DOS file name contains no extension, the COHERENT file name contains no '.'. When transferring files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, **doscp** converts all alphabetic characters in a COHERENT file name to upper case; if a period '.' appears at the beginning or end of a file name, **doscp** converts it to '\_'. **doscp** truncates the portion of the file name to the left of the '.' to a maximum of eight characters and portion to the right of the '.' to a maximum of three characters.

**doscp** recognizes the following options:

- a** Perform ASCII newline conversion on file transfer. When moving files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, this option converts each COHERENT newline character '\n' (ASCII LF) to an MS-DOS end-of-line (ASCII CR and LF). When moving files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, it does the opposite. By default, **doscp** performs ASCII conversion on files that have an ASCII extension. See **Setup**, below.
- b** Do not perform any newline conversion on file transfers.
- k** Keep: give the copied file the same time stamp as its original. By default, **doscp** gives copied files the current time.
- m** Same as **a**, described above
- r** Same as **b**, described above.
- v** Verbose. Provide additional information about each action performed.

### **Configuring the dos Commands**

The **dos** family commands read the file **/etc/default/msdos** before they begin to interpret arguments. By modifying this file, you can establish defaults that let COHERENT's **dos** commands resembles their counterparts under MS-DOS. You can set up two classes of defaults: *device* defaults and *file* defaults.

A device default lets you declare an alias for a device that holds an MS-DOS file system. This device can be a floppy-disk drive, a partition on a hard disk, or an extended partition on a hard disk. The alias must consist of one or two letters. No letter can serve as an alias for more than one device. For example, the following declaration:

```
c=/dev/at0a
```

specifies that the hard-disk partition accessed via device **/dev/at0a** is a "Primary MS-DOS" partition, and that its alias is **c**. Hereafter, the **dos** commands will interpret **c** as being equivalent to **/dev/at0a**.

The declaration

```
d=/dev/at0b;1
```

specifies the first "Extended MS-DOS" partition on the partition accessed via device **/dev/at0b**. Bumping the number from 1 to 2 would specify the second extended MS-DOS partition within partition **/dev/at0b**, as in:

```
e=/dev/at0b;2
```

Notice how the device names (c, d, and e) can correspond to the same drive names as under MS-DOS, whether or not they are primary or extended partitions.

File declarations, on the other hand, simply declare that all files with a given suffix are text files and should always have their newline characters converted from COHERENT to MS-DOS format (or vice versa). For example, placing the line

```
.c
```

in **/etc/default/msdos** tells all of the **dos** commands that all files with the suffix **.c** are text files and should have their newline characters converted by default. You can have any number of file defaults in **/etc/default/msdos**.

### Examples

The first example copies all C source files from floppy drive **/dev/fva1** to correspondingly named files in the current COHERENT directory, preserves the time stamp, and performs newline conversion upon them:

```
doscp -akv /dev/fva1:source/\*.c .
```

Note that you must quote wildcard characters with a backslash to keep the shell from interpreting them. Also note that **/dev/fva1** is a high-density, 3.5-inch floppy disk in floppy-disk drive 1. So, if your **default** file contained the entry

```
b=/dev/fva1
.c
```

you could also have typed:

```
doscp -kv b:source/\*.c .
```

The next example copies a file from an MS-DOS partition on your hard disk to a COHERENT file system. Suppose that C is the primary MS-DOS partition on your first hard drive. The following command copies file **C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT** to **/tmp/autoexec.bat** in your COHERENT partition:

```
doscp /dev/at0a:autoexec.bat /tmp
```

If your **/etc/default** file contains the entry

```
c=/dev/at0a
```

then you can also type:

```
doscp c:autoexec.bat /tmp
```

### Files

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

### See Also

**commands**, **dos**, **doscatt**, **doscpdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

### Notes

**doscp** does not check for unusual characters in a COHERENT file name or for file names that differ from other file names only in case.

**doscpdir — Command**

Copy a directory to/from an MS-DOS file system

**doscpdir** [-akmv] *src dest*

**doscpdir** copies a directory and its contents between an MS-DOS file system and a COHERENT file system. The MS-DOS file system can reside either on a floppy disk, or on the MS-DOS segment of a hard disk on your system.

*src* names the directory being copied and the file system where it resides; *dest* names the file system and directory into which the file is copied. The operating system that owns the *src* file is implied by the name of the file system on which it resides. An MS-DOS file system must be named using the device that holds it, such as floppy-disk drive **/dev/fha0** or hard-disk partition **/dev/at0a**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

**doscpdir** converts a file's name from one operating system's conventions to the other's. An MS-DOS file argument may be specified in lower or upper case, using '/' as the path-name separator. When transferring files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, **doscpdir** converts an MS-DOS file name to a COHERENT file name in lower case only. If the MS-DOS file name contains no extension, the COHERENT file name contains no '.'. When transferring files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, **doscpdir** converts all alphabetic characters in a COHERENT file name to upper case; if a period '.' appears at the beginning or end of a file name, **doscpdir** converts it to '\_'. **doscpdir** truncates the part of the file name before the last '.' to a maximum of eight characters and truncates the extension to a maximum of three characters.

**doscpdir** recognizes the following options:

- a** Perform ASCII newline conversion on file transfer. When moving files from COHERENT to MS-DOS, this option converts each COHERENT newline character '\n' (ASCII LF) to an MS-DOS end-of-line (ASCII CR and LF). When moving files from MS-DOS to COHERENT, it does the opposite. By default, **doscpdir** performs ASCII conversion on files that have an ASCII extension.
- k** Keep: give the copied file the same time stamp as its original. By default, **doscpdir** gives copied files the current time.
- m** Same as **a**, described above
- v** Verbose. Provide additional information about each action performed.

**Example**

The following command copies COHERENT directory **/usr/src** to directory **/mydir** on the MS-DOS file system. It assumes that you have set **c** as a default for a hard-disk device:

```
doscpdir -va /usr/src c:/mydir
```

**Files**

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

**See Also**

**commands**, **dos**, **dosc**, **dosc**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

**Notes**

**doscpdir** does not check for unusual characters in a COHERENT file name or for file names that differ from other file names only in case.

**dosdel — Command**

Delete a file from an MS-DOS file system

**dosdel** [-v] *device:/dir/file*

**dosdel** deletes *file* that lives on MS-DOS file-system *device*. The MS-DOS file system can reside either on a floppy disk, or on the MS-DOS segment of a hard disk on your system. The MS-DOS file system must be named using the device that holds it, such as floppy-disk drive **/dev/fha0** or hard-disk partition **/dev/at0a**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscsp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

**dosdel** takes one option, **v**, which provide additional information about each action it performs.

**Example**

The following command deletes **myfile**. It assumes that you have defined **c** to be a default for a device upon which you have set an MS-DOS file system:

```
dosdel c:/mydir/myfile
```

**Files**

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

**See Also**

**commands**, **dos**, **doscat**, **doscsp**, **doscpcdir**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

**dosdir — Command**

List contents of an MS-DOS directory

**dosdir** [-nv] *device:[dir/]file*

**dosdir** lists the contents of a *directory* that lives on an MS-DOS file system. The MS-DOS file system can reside either on a floppy disk, or on the MS-DOS segment of a hard disk on your system. The MS-DOS file system must be named using the device that holds it, such as floppy-disk drive **/dev/fha0** or hard-disk partition **/dev/at0a**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscsp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

**dosdir** recognizes the following options:

- n**        Newest: List the files in the order in which they were last modified, from newest to oldest. By default, **dosdir** lists files in alphabetical order.
- v**        Verbose. Provide additional information about each action performed.

**Example**

The following command lists the contents of **mydir**. It assumes that you have defined **c** as a default for a device on which is set an MS-DOS file system:

```
dosdir c:/mydir
```

**Files**

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

**See Also**

**commands**, **dos**, **doscat**, **doscsp**, **doscpcdir**, **dosdel**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrmdir**, **dosrm**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

**dosformat — Command**

Format a floppy disk  
**dosformat** [-v] *device*

**dosformat** builds an MS-DOS file system on a floppy disk. The floppy disk must first have been formatted with the command **fdformat -v**. *device* names the floppy-disk drive that holds the disk to receive the file system, such as **/dev/fha0**. See the Lexicon entry **floppy disks** for a table of the COHERENT floppy-disk devices. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscpc**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

The option **-v**, tells **dosformat** to provide additional information about each action it performs.

**Example**

The following example formats a disk. It assumes that you have defined **a** as a default for a device upon which is set an MS-DOS file system:

```
dosformat a:
```

**Files**

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

**See Also**

**commands**, **dos**, **doscpc**, **doscpcdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

**Notes**

To create a double-sided, double-density formatted floppy disk in drive 0 (drive A), use **/dev/fqa0** for 3.5-inch disks, or **/dev/f9a0** for 5.25-inch disks.

**doslabel — Command**

Label an MS-DOS floppy disk  
**doslabel** [-v] *device: label*

**doslabel** puts *label* onto an MS-DOS floppy disk. *device* names the floppy-disk drive that holds the disk to be labelled, such as **/dev/fha0**. See the Lexicon entry **floppy disks** for a table of the COHERENT floppy-disk devices. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscpc**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

The option **-v**, tells **doslabel** to provide additional information about each action it performs.

**Example**

The following command labels an MS-DOS floppy disk with the string **mydisk**. It assumes that you have defined **a** as a default for a device that holds an MS-DOS file system:

```
doslabel a: mydisk
```

**Files**

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

**See Also**

**commands**, **dos**, **doscpc**, **doscpcdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

**dosls — Command**

List files on an MS-DOS file system

**dosls** [-v] *device*:[/*directory*/][*file*]

**dosls** lists all files in *directory* on an MS-DOS file system. *device* names the floppy-disk or hard-disk device that holds the file system to be modified, e.g., **/dev/fha0**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscsp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

The option **-v** tells **dosls** to print its output in a long format, analogous to what the command **ls -l** prints.

**Example**

The following displays the contents of directory **src**. It assumes that you have defined **c** as a default for a device on which you have set an MS-DOS file system:

```
dosls -v c:/src
```

**Files**

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

**See Also**

**commands**, **dos**, **doscat**, **doscsp**, **doscspdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

**dosmkdir — Command**

Create a directory in an MS-DOS file system

**dosmkdir** *device*:*directory*

**dosmkdir** makes *directory* in an MS-DOS file system. *device* names the floppy-disk or hard-disk device that holds the file system to be modified, e.g., **/dev/fha0**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscsp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

**Example**

The following command creates directory **mydir**. It assumes that you have defined **a** to be a device in which is set an MS-DOS file system:

```
dosmkdir a:/mydir
```

**Files**

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

**See Also**

**commands**, **dos**, **doscat**, **doscsp**, **doscspdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosrm**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

**dosrm — Command**

Remove a file from an MS-DOS file system

**dosrm** *device*:[/*directory*/]*file*

**dosrm** removes *file* from *directory* on an MS-DOS file system. *device* names the floppy-disk or hard-disk device that holds the file system to be modified, e.g., **/dev/fha0**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscsp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.



### Example

The following deletes all **.c** files on an MS-DOS disk. It assumes that you have defined **b** to be a device on which you have set an MS-DOS file system:

```
dosrm 'b:*.c'
```

### Files

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

### See Also

**commands**, **dos**, **doscat**, **doscp**, **doscpdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **doslabel**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrmdir**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

### dosrmdir — Command

Remove a directory from an MS-DOS file system

**dosrmdir** *device:directory*

**dosrmdir** removes *directory* from an MS-DOS file system. *device* names the floppy-disk or hard-disk device that holds the file system to be modified, e.g., **/dev/fha0**. You can also build a file of aliases so that you can access the drives as **a**, **b**, etc. For details, see the Lexicon entry for **doscp**, which explains how to set up defaults for the **dos** family of commands.

### Example

The following command removes directory **foo**. It assumes that you have defined **a** to be a device in which you have set a disk with an MS-DOS file system:

```
dosrmdir c:/foo
```

### Files

**/etc/default/msdos** — Setup file

### See Also

**commands**, **dos**, **doscat**, **doscp**, **doscpdir**, **dosdel**, **dosdir**, **dosformat**, **dosls**, **dosmkdir**, **dosrm**, **fdformat**, **mkfs**

### double — C Keyword

Data type

A **double** is the data type that encodes a double-precision floating-point number. On most machines, **sizeof(double)** is defined as four machine words, or eight **chars**. If you wish your code to be portable, do *not* use routines that depend on a **double** being 64 bits long.

Different formats are used to encode **doubles** on various machines. These formats include IEEE, DECvAX, and BCD (binary coded decimal), as described in the entry for **float**.

### See Also

**C keywords**, **data formats**, **float**, **portability**

### drvld — Command

Load a loadable driver into memory

**/etc/drvld** *options driver*

**drvld** loads a loadable driver into memory. *driver* names a loadable driver. Only the superuser **root** can run **drvld**.

A loadable driver is one that is not linked into the kernel when it was built. The current suite of loadable drivers include multi-port serial cards, various SCSI host adapters, and a variety of add-on cards. The COHERENT drivers for shared memory, semaphores, and message passing are also

implemented as loadable drivers, to help make the COHERENT kernel more efficient.

**drvld** recognizes the following options:

**-k kernel**

By default, **drvld** assumes that file **/coherent** holds the symbol table for the in-core copy of COHERENT. The **-k** option tells **drvld** to load the driver using a version of COHERENT other than the default. You must use this option if you are running an alternate copy of COHERENT (e.g., a version based on the floppy disk drive).

**-r**      Suppress generation of a debugging symbol table.

**-o outfile**

By default, **drvld** writes the driver's debugging symbol table into a file that has the same name as the driver but is located in directory **/tmp**. The **-o** option tells **drvld** to output the symbol table to *outfile* rather than the default.

### Files

**/drv** — Directory that contains loadable drivers

**/etc/drvld.all** — File that names drivers to be loaded at boot-time

### See Also

commands, device drivers, **drvld.all**, **sload()**

### Notes

COHERENT supports user-written, loadable device drivers generated with the COHERENT device-driver kit. By convention, loadable drivers that have been tested thoroughly and released for production reside in directory **/drv**, not in **/dev**.

If you see a message of the form "loadable drivers disabled", you have attempted to use **drvld** on a kernel other than **/coherent** without specifying the **-k** option.

### **drvld.all** — System Maintenance

Load loadable drivers at boot time  
**/etc/drvld.all**

The file **/etc/drvld.all** holds commands to load loadable drivers into memory when you boot the COHERENT system. It is read from the script **/etc/brc**, which is executed whenever the COHERENT system is rebooted into single-user mode.

The following gives the contents of a typical version of **drvld.all** for a COHERENT-286 system:

```
: Configure US keyboard.  
/conf/kbd/us  
: Add driver for com1  
/etc/drvld -r /drv/al0
```

The command **/conf/kbd/us** loads the U.S. keyboard interpreter into memory, for use with the **nkb** keyboard driver. See the Lexicon article on **keyboard tables** for details on keyboard tables and their use.

The command **/etc/drvld /drv/al0** invokes the command **drvld** to load the loadable driver **/drv/al0** into memory. This is the driver for COM port 0, local mode. See the article **COM** for details on COHERENT's COM-port drivers, and the article **drvld** for details on how to load loadable drivers.

### See Also

**brc**, **drvld**, **keyboard tables**, **system maintenance**,

## Notes

COHERENT 386 version 4.0 does not implement loadable device drivers. This version of COHERENT still uses **drvld.all**, however, to load the keyboard table and perform other useful work.

## du — Command

Summarize disk usage

**du** [-a] [-s] [*directory* ...]

**du** prints the total number of disk blocks used by each named *directory*. If no *directory* is specified, **du** prints the disk usage of the current directory.

The **-a** (all) option causes **du** to print a line for every file and directory in the substructure. Normally it prints a line only for each directory.

The **-s** (summary) option prints only the line for the top level directory.

**du** understands links; it adds a file with more than one link to it into the total only once.

## See Also

**commands**, **df**, **find**

## Notes

**du** does not count file-system overhead such as indirect blocks, so occasionally a directory does not fit on a file system which appears to contain enough room for it.

## dump — Command

File-system backup utility

**dump** [*options*] [*argument* ...]

**dump** dumps either all or a portion of file system *argument* to magnetic tape or floppy disks. File-system dumps are in a format that permits you to restore all or some of the files to the original file system, and to select files either by name or by i-number.

A file-system dump includes all files changed since the *dump since* date, plus each file's full path name (for the benefit of **dumpdir**).

*options* specifies both the dump-since date and the processing options. It is made up of characters from the set **0123456789bdfsSuv**, which have the following meanings.

- 0-9** The digit gives the level number of the dump. The dump-since date is the most recent date in the dump-date file **/etc/ddate** that is (1) associated with this file system and (2) has a level number less than the current dump level. For example, if you request a level-3 dump, **dump** will back up all files not backed up since the last level-2 dump. A level-0 dump by definition backs up all files in the file system.
- b** The next *argument* gives the output tape's *blocking factor*. The blocking factor is the number of **dumpdata** structures in each tape block. The default blocking factor is 20.
- d** The next *argument* gives the density of the output tape in bytes per inch. The default density is 1600 bytes per inch (bpi). **dump** uses the density to compute the quantity of tape needed.
- f** The next *argument* gives the path name of the output file. If no **f** option is given, **/dev/dump** is assumed.
- s** The next *argument* gives the length of the dump tape in feet. **dump** keeps a running total of the quantity of tape it has written, and it asks for a new reel if it appears that the end of the reel is near. The default length is 2,300 feet.

- S** The next *argument* gives the size of the dump output device, in blocks. This is used only if you are backing up the file system to floppy disks or streaming cartridge tape rather than to nine-track magnetic tape.
- u** If the dump completes without error, update the record of successful dumps kept in file */etc/ddate*. There is an entry in this file for every file system and every dump level.
- v** Inform the user of the 'dump since' date and the length of tape used in feet. The length is useful for computing the quantity of tape remaining if multiple dumps are written onto a single reel of tape.

If no level number is given, **dump** assumes the options **9u**.

### **Files**

*/dev/dump* — Default dump device

*/etc/ddate* — Dump date file

### **See Also**

**badscan**, **commands**, **dumpdate**, **dumpdir**, **restor**

### **Diagnostics**

Most errors are fatal, caused by a table overflowing or a read or write error on the input or output device.

**dump** requires that its output be written to disks that are free of bad sectors. If you write a dump to a disk with bad sectors, you will not be able to restore files from that disk.

When formatting disks to be used with **dump**, use the command

```
/etc/fdformat -v device
```

This forces **fdformat** to verify the format. It takes twice as long, but it ensures that the disk is good at least at a first level of testing. Reject any disks that have any defects — or save them for use with COHERENT file systems, which can map out bad sectors.

### **Notes**

Please note that **dump** is now regarded as being obsolete. We strongly encourage users to use **cpio** instead.

### **dumpdate — Command**

Print dump dates

**dumpdate** [*filesystem* ...]

**dumpdate** reads through the dump date file */etc/ddate* and displays the dump date records associated with each specified *filesystem*.

If no *filesystem* is specified, the records for all file systems are displayed.

### **Files**

*/etc/ddate* — Dump date file

### **See Also**

**commands**, **dump**, **dumpdir**, **restor**

**dumpdir — Command**

Print the directory of a dump

**dumpdir** [**af** [*argument ...*]]

**dumpdir** reads through a file-system dump created by the **dump** command, gathers up its directory blocks, and displays the names and i-numbers of all files on the dump.

The **a** option causes **dumpdir** to display the directory entries for **.'** and **..**, which are normally suppressed.

The **f** option causes the next *argument* to be taken as the pathname of the dump device, which is otherwise assumed to be **/dev/dump**.

If no options are specified, **dumpdir** reads from the default dump device **/dev/dump** and suppresses the printing of **.'** and **..** entries.

**Files**

**/dev/dump** — Default dump device

**/tmp/ddXXXXXX** — To hold directory blocks

**See Also**

commands, **dump**

**Diagnostics**

The dump/restore format puts a header at the beginning of the dump that includes all the information about what lives where in the dump. **dumpdir** reads this header to discover what files are in the dump. If the header is too large to fit onto one disk, **dumpdir** will then prompt you to insert the additional disk or disks; if this happens, insert the requested disk and then type **<return>**.

**Notes**

**dump** requires that its output be written to disks that are free of bad sectors. If you write a dump to a disk with bad sectors, you will not be able to restore files from that disk. For details on using disks with **dump**, see its Lexicon entry.

**dumptape.h — Header File**

Define data structures used on dump tapes

**#include <dumptape.h>**

**dumptape.h** defines the data structures used on dump tapes. A dump tape begins with a header record. This contains the attributes of the tape. The remainder of the tape is filled with arrays of dumpdata records. The map comes first, then all the directories, then all the files.

**See Also**

**dump**, header files

**dup() — System Call**

Duplicate a file descriptor

**int dup(fd) int fd;**

**dup()** duplicates the existing file descriptor *fd*, and returns the new descriptor. The returned value is the smallest file descriptor that is not already in use by the calling process.

**See Also**

**dup2()**, **fopen()**, **fdopen()**, **STDIO**, system calls

**Diagnostics**

**dup()** returns a number less than zero when an error occurs, such as a bad file descriptor or no file descriptor available.

**dup2() — General Function**

Duplicate a file descriptor

**int dup2(*fd*, *newfd*) int *fd*, *newfd*;**

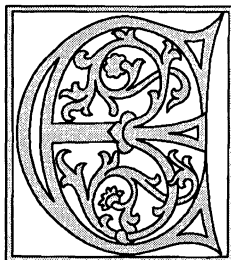
**dup2()** duplicates the file descriptor *fd*. Unlike its cousin **dup()**, **dup2()** allows you to specify a new file descriptor *newfd*, rather than having the system select one. If *newfd* is already open, the system closes it before assigning it to the new file. **dup2()** returns the duplicate descriptor.

**See Also**

**dup()**, **general functions**, **STDIO**

**Diagnostics**

**dup2()** returns a number less than zero when an error occurs, such as a bad file descriptor or no file descriptor available.



### ***ebcdic.h* — Header File**

Define constants for non-printable EBCDIC characters

**#include <ebcdic.h>**

**ebcdic.h** defines manifest constants for non-printable characters used in the EBCDIC character set. The constants correspond to those defined in the header file **ascii.h**.

### **See Also**

**ASCII, ascii.h, header files**

### ***echo* — Command**

Repeat/expand an argument

**echo [-n] [argument ...]**

**echo** prints each *argument* on the standard output, placing a space between each *argument*. It appends a newline to the end of the output unless the **-n** flag is present.

**echo** recognizes the following special character sequences. For each occurrence of the sequence, it substitutes the corresponding ASCII character.

<b>\b</b>	Backspace
<b>\c</b>	Print line without a newline (like <b>-n</b> option)
<b>\f</b>	Formfeed
<b>\n</b>	Newline
<b>\r</b>	Carriage return
<b>\t</b>	Tab
<b>\v</b>	Vertical tab
<b>\\</b>	Backslash
<b>\Onnn</b>	<i>nnn</i> is octal value of character ( <b>sh</b> only)
<b>\nnn</b>	<i>nnn</i> is the octal value of character ( <b>ksh</b> only)

For example, if you are running the Bourne shell and type

```
echo 'Please enter your name: \007\c'
```

or if you are running the Korn shell and type:

```
echo 'Please enter your name: \0007\c'
```

the shell rings the bell and prints

```
Please enter your name:
```

on your screen. Note that the **\007** sequence causes the terminal bell to sound, and that since the **\c** sequence was specified, the cursor will be left positioned after the colon.

**See Also****commands, ksh, sh****Notes**

Under the Korn shell, **echo** is an alias for its built-in command **print**.

Please note that **echo** converts characters to spaces. If you wish to preserve tab characters in an echoed string, you must enclose it within quotation marks. For example, the command

```
echo $RECORD
```

displays:

```
7 5 175 875
```

whereas the command

```
echo "$RECORD"
```

displays:

```
7      5      175  875
```

This is important when you use with **echo** with programs for which the tab character is significant, such as **/rdb**.

**ed — Command****Interactive line editor****ed [-] [+cmopsv] [file]**

**ed** is the COHERENT system's interactive line editor.

**ed** is a line-oriented interactive text editor. With it, you can locate and replace text patterns, move or copy blocks of text, and print parts of the text. **ed** can read text from input files and can write all or part of the edited text to other files.

**ed** reads commands from the standard input, usually one command per line. Normally, **ed** does not prompt for commands. If the optional *file* argument is given, **ed** edits the given file, as if the *file* were read with the **e** command described below.

**ed** manipulates a copy of the text in memory rather than with the file itself. No changes to a file occur until the user writes edited text with the **w** command. Large files can be divided with **split** or edited with the stream editor **sed**.

**ed** remembers some information to simplify its commands. The *current line* is typically the line most recently edited or printed. When **ed** reads in a file, the last line read becomes the current line. The *current file name* is the last file name specified in an **e** or **f** command. The *current search pattern* is the last pattern specified in a search specification.

**ed** identifies text lines by integer line numbers, beginning with one for the first line. Several special forms identify a line or a range of lines, as follows:

- n**        A decimal number *n* specifies the *n*th line of the text.
- .**        A period '.' specifies the current line.
- \$**        A dollar sign '\$' specifies the last line of the text.
- +,-**     Simple arithmetic may be performed on line numbers.



**/pattern/**

Search forward from the current line for the next occurrence of the *pattern*. If **ed** finds no occurrence before the end of the text, the search wraps to the beginning of the text. Patterns, also called *regular expressions*, are described in detail below.

**?pattern?**

Search backwards from the current line to the previous occurrence of the *pattern*. If **ed** finds no occurrence before the beginning of the text, the search wraps to the end of the text.

**'x** Lines marked with the **kx** command described below are identified by 'x. The x may be any lower-case letter.

**n,m** Line specifiers separated by a comma ',' specify the range of lines between the two given lines, inclusive.

**n;m** Line specifiers separated by a semicolon ';' specify the range of lines between the two given lines, inclusive. Normally, **ed** updates the current line after it executes each command. If a semicolon ';' rather than a comma separates two line specifiers, **ed** updates the current line before reading the second.

**\*** An asterisk '\*' specifies all lines; it is equivalent to **1,\$**.

**Commands**

**ed** commands consist of a single letter, which may be preceded by one or two specifiers that give the line or lines to which the command is to be applied. The following command summary uses the notations **[n]** and **[n,m]** to refer to an optional line specifier and an optional range, respectively. These default to the current line when omitted, except where otherwise noted. A semicolon ';' may be used instead of a comma ',' to separate two line specifiers.

**.** Print the current line. Also, a line containing only a period '.' marks the end of **appended**, **changed**, or **inserted** text.

**[n]** Print given line. If no line number is given (i.e., the command line consists only of a newline character), print the line that follows the current line.

**[n]=** Print the specified line number (default: last line number).

**[n]&** Print a screen of 23 lines; equivalent to **n,n+22p**.

**! line** Pass the given *line* to the shell **sh** for execution. **ed** prompts with an exclamation point '!' when execution is completed.

**?** Print a brief description of the most recent error.

**[n]a** Append new text after line *n*. Terminate new text with line that contains only a period '.'.

**[n[,m]]c**

Change specified lines to new text. Terminate new text with a line that contains only a period '.'.

**[n[,m]]d[p]**

Delete specified lines. If **p** follows, print new current line.

**e [file]**

Edit the specified *file* (default: current file name). An error occurs if there are unsaved changes. Reissuing the command after the error message forces **ed** to edit the *file*.

**E [file]**

Edit the specified *file* (default: current file name). No error occurs if there are unsaved changes.

- f** [*file*]  
Change the current file name to *file* and print it. If *file* is omitted, print the current file name.
- [n[,m]]g** [*pattern*]/*commands*  
Globally execute *commands* for each line in the specified range (default: all lines) that contains the *pattern* (default: current search pattern). The *commands* may extend over several lines, with all but the last terminated by '\'.
- [n]I**  
Insert text before line *n*. Terminate new text with a line that contains only a period '.'.
- [n[,m]]J** [*p*]  
Join specified lines into one line. If *m* is not specified, use range *n,n+1*. If no range is specified, join the current line with the next line. With optional *p*, print resulting line.
- [n]kx**  
Mark given line with lower-case letter *x*.
- [n[,m]]l**  
List selected lines, interpreting non-graphic characters.
- [n[,m]]m** [*d*]  
Move selected lines to follow line *d* (default: current line).
- o options**  
Change the given *options*. The *options* may consist of an optional sign '+' or '-', followed by one or more of the letters 'cmopsv'. Options are explained below.
- [n[,m]]p**  
Print selected lines. The *p* is optional.
- q**  
Quit editing and exit. An error occurs if there are unsaved changes. Reissuing the command after the error message forces **ed** to exit.
- Q**  
Quit editing and exit. No error occurs if there are unsaved changes.
- [n]r** [*file*]  
Read *file* into current text after given line (default: last line).
- [n[,m]]s** [*k*]/ [*pattern1*]/*pattern2* [*g*] [*p*]  
Search for *pattern1* (default, remembered search pattern) and substitute *pattern2* for *k*th occurrence (default, first) on each line of the given range. If *g* follows, substitute every occurrence on each line. If *p* follows, print the resulting current line.
- [n[,m]]t** [*d*]  
Transfer (copy) selected lines to follow line *d* (default, current line).
- [n]u** [*p*]  
Undo effect of last substitute command. If optional *p* specified, print undone line. The specified line must be the last substituted line.
- [n[,m]]v** [*pattern*]/*commands*  
Globally execute *commands* for each line in the specified range (default: all lines) *not* containing the *pattern* (default: current search pattern). The *commands* may extend over several lines, with all but the last terminated by '\'. The **v** command is like the **g** command, except the sense of the search is reversed.
- [n[,m]]w** [*file*]  
Write selected lines (default, all lines) to *file* (default, current file name). The previous contents of *file*, if any, are lost.

**[*n*,*m*]]**W** [*file*]**

Write specified lines (default, all lines) to the end of *file* (default, current file name). Like **w**, but appends to *file* instead of truncating it.

## Patterns

Substitution commands and search specifications may include *patterns*, also called *regular expressions*. A non-special character in a pattern matches itself. Special characters include the following.

**^** Match beginning of line, unless it appears immediately after '[' (see below).

**\$** Match end of line.

**\*** Matches zero or more repetitions of preceding character.

**.** Matches any character except newline.

**[*chars*]**

Matches any one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.

**[**^***chars*]**

Matches any character *except* one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.

**\c** Disregard special meaning of character *c*.

**\(*pattern*\)**

Delimit substring *pattern* for use with **\d**, described below.

The replacement part *pattern2* of the substitute command may also use the following:

**&** Insert characters matched by *pattern1*.

**\d** Insert substring delimited by *d*th occurrence of delimiters '\(' and '\)', where *d* is a digit.

## Options

The user may specify **ed** options on the command line, in the environment, or with the **o** command. The available options are as follows:

**c** Print character counts on **e**, **r**, and **w** commands.

**m** Allow multiple commands per line.

**o** Print line counts instead of character counts on **e**, **r**, and **w** commands.

**p** Prompt with an **\*\*** for each command.

**s** Match lower-case letters in a *pattern* to both upper-case and lower-case text characters.

**v** Print verbose versions of error messages.

The **c** option is normally set, and all others are normally reset. Options may be set on the command line with a leading '+' sign. The '-' command line option resets the **c** option.

Options may be set in the environment with an assignment, such as

```
export ED+=cv
```

Options may be set with the '+' prefix or reset with the '-' prefix.

## See Also

**commands**, **elvis**, **ex**, **me**, **sed**, **vi**

*Introduction to ed*

### Diagnostics

**ed** usually prints only the diagnostic '?' on any error. When the verbose option **v** is specified, the '?' is followed by a brief description of the nature of the error.

### EDITOR — Environmental Variable

Name editor to use by default

**EDITOR**=*editor*

The environmental variable **EDITOR** names the default editor that you wish to use. For example, **mail** invokes *editor* when you conclude a mail message by typing a question mark '?' at the beginning of a line followed by <return>. The screen pager **more** invokes *editor* when you enter the command **v** while displaying a file.

### See Also

environmental variables, mail, more

### egrep — Command

Extended pattern search

**egrep** [*option ...*] [*pattern*] [*file ...*]

**egrep** is an extended and faster version of **grep**. It searches each *file* for occurrences of *pattern* (also called a regular expression). If no *file* is specified, it searches the standard input. Normally, it prints each line matching the *pattern*.

### Wildcards

The simplest *patterns* accepted by **egrep** are ordinary alphanumeric strings. Like **ed**, **egrep** can also process *patterns* that include the following wildcard characters:

^ Match beginning of line, unless it appears immediately after '[' (see below).

\$ Match end of line.

\* Match zero or more repetitions of preceding character.

. Match any character except newline.

[*chars*]

Match any one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.

[^*chars*]

Match any character *except* one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.

\c Disregard special meaning of character *c*.

### Metacharacters

In addition, **egrep** accepts the following additional metacharacters:

| Match the preceding pattern *or* the following pattern. For example, the pattern **cat | dog** matches either **cat** or **dog**. A newline within the *pattern* has the same meaning as '|'.

+ Match one or more occurrences of the immediately preceding pattern element; it works like '\*', except it matches at least one occurrence instead of zero or more occurrences.

? Match zero or one occurrence of the preceding element of the pattern.

(...) Parentheses may be used to group patterns. For example, **(Ivan)+** matches a sequence of one or more occurrences of the four letters 'I' 'v' 'a' or 'n'.

Because the metacharacters `*`, `?`, `$`, `(`, `)`, `[`, `]`, and `|` are also special to the shell, patterns that contain those literal characters must be quoted by enclosing *pattern* within apostrophes.

## Options

The following lists the available options:

- A Write all lines in which *expression* is found into a temporary file. Then, call MicroEMACS with its error option to process the source file, with the contents of the temporary file serving as an "error" list. This option resembles the -A option to the cc command, and lets you build a MicroEMACS script to make systematic changes to the source file. To exit MicroEMACS and prevent **egrep** from searching further, `<ctrl-U> <ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>`.
- Unlike **cgrep**, **egrep** only matches patterns that are on a single line. Some systems have a context **grep cgrep** that works like **egrep** but displays lines found in context. The COHERENT **egrep -A** not only displays lines in context, via MicroEMACS, it lets you edit them.
- b With each output line, print the block number in which the line started (used to search file systems).
- c Print how many lines match, rather than the lines themselves.
- e The next argument is *pattern* (useful if the pattern starts with '-').
- f The next argument is a file that contains a list of patterns separated by newlines; there is no *pattern* argument.
- h When more than one *file* is specified, output lines are normally accompanied by the file name; -h suppresses this.
- l Print the name of each file that contains the string, rather than the lines themselves. This is useful when you are constructing a batch file.
- n When a line is printed, also print its number within the file.
- s Suppress all output, just return exit status.
- v Print a line only if the pattern is *not* found in the line.
- y Lower-case letters in the pattern match lower-case *and* upper-case letters on the input lines. A letter escaped with `0<2 '\'` in the pattern must be matched in exactly that case.

## See Also

**awk**, **cgrep**, **commands**, **ed**, **expr**, **grep**, **lex**, **sed**

## Diagnostics

**egrep** returns an exit status of zero for success, one for no matches, and two for error.

## Notes

For matching patterns in C programs, the command **cgrep** is preferred, because it is optimized to recognize C-style expressions.

Besides the difference in the range of patterns allowed, **egrep** uses a deterministic finite automaton (DFA) for the search. It builds the DFA dynamically, so it begins doing useful work immediately. This means that **egrep** is much faster than **grep**, often by more than an order of magnitude, and is considerably faster than earlier pattern-searching commands, on almost any length of file.

**else — C Keyword**

Introduce a conditional statement

**else** is the flip side of an **if** statement: if the condition described in the **if** statement fails, then the statements introduced by the **else** statement are executed. For example,

```
if (getchar() == EOF)
    exit(0);
else
    dosomething();
```

exits if the user types **EOF**, but does something if the user types anything else.

**See Also**

**C keywords, if**

**elvis — Command**

Clone of Berkeley-standard screen editor

**elvis** [ *options* ] [ **+cmd** ] [ *file1* ... *file27* ]

**elvis** is a clone of **vi** and **ex**, the standard UNIX screen editors.

Unlike MicroEMACS, the COHERENT system's other screen editor, **elvis** is a modal editor whose command structure resembles the **ed** line editor. *Modal* means that a keystroke assumes a different meaning, depending upon the mode that the editor is in. **elvis** uses three modes: *visual-command mode*, *colon-command mode*, and *input mode*. The following sections summarize the commands associated with each mode.

**Visual-Command Mode**

Visual-command mode closely resembles text-input mode. One quick way to tell the modes apart is to press the **<esc>** key. If **elvis** beeps, then you are in visual-command mode. If it does not beep, then you were in input mode, but pressing **<esc>** switched you to visual-command mode.

Most visual-mode commands are one keystroke long. The commands are in two groups: movement commands and edit commands. The former group moves the cursor through the file being edited, and the latter group alters text.

The following sections summarize the command set for **elvis**'s visual-command mode.

**Visual-Mode Movement Commands**

The following summarizes the visual mode's movement commands. *count* indicates that the command can be optionally prefaced by an argument that tells **elvis** how often to execute the command. *move* indicates that the command can be followed by a movement command, after which the command is executed on the text that lies between the point where the command was first typed and the point to which the cursor was moved. Typing the command a second time executes the command for the entire line upon which the cursor is positioned. *key* means that the command must be followed by an argument. The following describes

<b>&lt;ctrl-B&gt;</b>	Move up by one screenful.
[ <i>count</i> ] <b>&lt;ctrl-D&gt;</b>	Scroll down <i>count</i> lines (default, one-half screenful).
[ <i>count</i> ] <b>&lt;ctrl-E&gt;</b>	Scroll up <i>count</i> lines.
<b>&lt;ctrl-F&gt;</b>	Move down by one screenful.

<b>&lt;ctrl-G&gt;</b>	Show file status and the current line line.
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;ctrl-H&gt;</b>	Move one character to the left.
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;ctrl-J&gt;</b>	Move down <i>count</i> lines.
<b>&lt;ctrl-L&gt;</b>	Redraw the screen.
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;ctrl-M&gt;</b>	Move to the beginning of the next line.
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;ctrl-N&gt;</b>	Move down <i>count</i> lines (default, one).
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;ctrl-P&gt;</b>	Move up <i>count</i> lines (default, one).
<b>&lt;ctrl-R&gt;</b>	Redraw the screen.
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;ctrl-U&gt;</b>	Scroll up <i>count</i> lines (default, one-half screenful).
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;ctrl-Y&gt;</b>	Scroll down <i>count</i> lines.
<b>&lt;ctrl-]&gt;</b>	If the cursor is on a tag name, go to that tag.
<b>&lt;ctrl-^&gt;</b>	Switch to the previous file.
<i>[count]</i> <b>&lt;space&gt;</b>	Move right <i>count</i> spaces (default, one).
<b>! [move]</b>	Run the selected text through an external filter program.
<b>" key</b>	Select which cut buffer to use next.
<b>\$</b>	Move to the end of the current line.
<b>%</b>	Move to the matching ({}[]) character.
<b>' key</b>	Move to a marked line.
<i>[count]</i> <b>(</b>	Move backward <i>count</i> sentences (default, one).
<i>[count]</i> <b>)</b>	Move forward <i>count</i> sentences (default, one).
<b>*</b>	Go to the next error in the error list.
<i>[count]</i> <b>+</b>	Move to the beginning of the next line.
<i>[count]</i> <b>,</b>	Repeat the previous <b>f</b> or <b>t</b> command, but move in the opposite direction.
<i>[count]</i> <b>—</b>	Move to the beginning of the preceding line.
<i>[count]</i> <b>.</b>	Repeat the previous <i>edit</i> command.
<b>/ text</b>	Search forward for <i>text</i> , which can be a regular expression.
<b>O</b>	If not part of a count, move to the first character of this line.
<b>:</b>	Switch to colon-command mode to execute one command.
<i>[count]</i> <b>;</b>	Repeat the previous <b>f</b> or <b>t</b> command.
<b>? text</b>	Search backwards for <i>text</i> , which can be a regular expression.
<b>@ key</b>	Execute the contents of a cut-buffer as <b>vi</b> commands.
<i>[count]</i> <b>B</b>	Move backwards <i>count</i> words (default, one).
<i>[count]</i> <b>E</b>	Move forwards <i>count</i> words (default, one).

<i>[count]</i> <b>F</b> <i>key</i>	Move left to the <i>count</i> 'th occurrence of the given character (default, first).
<i>[count]</i> <b>G</b>	Move to to the <i>count</i> 'th line in the file (default, last).
<i>[count]</i> <b>H</b>	Move to the top of the screen.
<b>K</b>	Look up a keyword.
<i>[count]</i> <b>L</b>	Move to the bottom of the screen.
<b>M</b>	Move to the middle of the screen.
<b>N</b>	Repeat the last search, but in the opposite direction.
<b>P</b>	Paste text before the cursor.
<b>Q</b>	Shift to colon-command mode.
<i>[count]</i> <b>T</b> <i>key</i>	Move left <i>almost</i> to the given character.
<b>U</b>	Undo all recent changes to the current line.
<i>[count]</i> <b>U</b>	Move forward <i>count</i> words (default, one).
<i>[count]</i> <b>Y</b>	Copy (or "yank") <i>count</i> lines into a cut buffer (default, one).
<b>Z Z</b>	Save the file and exit.
<b>[ [</b>	Move back one section.
<b>] ]</b>	Move forward one section.
<b>^</b>	Move to the beginning of the current line, but after indent.
<b>`</b> <i>key</i>	Move to the <i>key</i> character.
<i>[count]</i> <b>b</b>	Move back <i>count</i> words.
<i>[count]</i> <b>e</b>	Move forward to the end of the <i>count</i> 'th word.
<i>[count]</i> <b>f</b> <i>key</i>	Move rightward to the <i>count</i> 'th occurrence of the given character.
<i>[count]</i> <b>h</b>	Move left <i>count</i> characters (default, one).
<i>[count]</i> <b>j</b>	Move down <i>count</i> characters (default, one).
<i>[count]</i> <b>k</b>	Move up <i>count</i> characters (default, one).
<i>[count]</i> <b>l</b>	Move right <i>count</i> characters (default, one).
<b>m</b> <i>key</i>	Mark a line or character.
<b>n</b>	Repeat the previous search.
<b>p</b>	Paste text after the cursor.
<i>[count]</i> <b>t</b> <i>key</i>	Move rightward <i>almost</i> to the <i>count</i> 'th occurrence of the given character (default, one).
<b>u</b>	Undo the previous edit command.
<i>[count]</i> <b>w</b>	Move forward <i>count</i> words (default, one).
<b>y</b> <i>move</i>	Copy (or "yank") text into a cut buffer.



<b>z key</b>	Scroll the screen, repositioning the current line as follows: + indicates top of the screen, — indicates the bottom, . indicates the middle.
<b>[count] {</b>	Move back <i>count</i> paragraphs (default, one).
<b>[count]  </b>	Move to the <i>count</i> 'th column on the screen (leftmost, one).
<b>[count] }</b>	Move forward <i>count</i> paragraphs (default, one).

### Visual-Mode Edit Commands

The following describes the visual mode's editing commands.

<b>[count] #</b>	Increment a number by <i>count</i> (default, one).
<b>[count] &amp;</b>	Repeat the previous <b>:s /</b> command.
<b>&lt; move</b>	Shift the enclosed text left.
<b>&gt; move</b>	Shift the enclosed text right.
<b>[count] A input</b>	Append input at end of the line.
<b>C input</b>	Change text from the cursor through the end of the line.
<b>D</b>	Delete text from the cursor through the end of the line.
<b>[count] I input</b>	Insert text at the beginning of the line (after indentations).
<b>[count] J</b>	Join lines the current with the following line.
<b>[count] O input</b>	Open a new line above the current line.
<b>R input</b>	Overtyping.
<b>[count] S input</b>	Change lines, like <b>cc</b> .
<b>[count] X</b>	Delete <i>count</i> characters from the left of the cursor (default, one).
<b>[count] a input</b>	Insert text after the cursor.
<b>c move</b>	Change text.
<b>d move</b>	Delete text.
<b>[count] i input</b>	Insert text at the cursor.
<b>[count] o input</b>	Open a new line below the current line.
<b>[count] r key</b>	Replace <i>count</i> characters with text you type (default, one).
<b>[count] s input</b>	Replace <i>count</i> characters with text you type (default, one).
<b>[count] x</b>	Delete the character at which the cursor is positioned.
<b>[count] ~</b>	Toggle a character between upper case and lower case.

### Colon-Mode Commands

The following summarizes the set of colon-mode commands. It is no accident that these commands closely resemble those for the **ed** line editor: they come, in fact, from **ex**, the editor upon which both **vi** (the UNIX visual editor) and **ed** derive. For that reason, colon-command mode is sometimes called **ex** mode.

*line* indicates whether the command can be executed on one or more lines. *line* can be a regular expression. Some commands can be used with an optional exclamation point; if done so, the editor

assumes you know what you are doing and suppresses the warnings and prompts it would normally issue for these commands. Please note, finally, that most commands can be invoked simply by typing the first one or two letters of their names.

- abbr** [*word* *full\_form*]  
Define *word* as an abbreviation for *full\_form*.
- [*line*] **append**  
Insert text after the current line.
- args** [*file1* ... *fileN*]  
With no arguments, print the files list on **elvis**'s command line. With one or more arguments, change the name of the current file.
- cc** [*files*]  
Invoke the C compiler to compile *files*, and redirects all error messages into file **errlist**. After the compiler exits, scan the contents of **errlist** for error messages; if one is found, jump to the line and file indicated on the error line, and display the error message on the status line.
- cd** [*directory*]  
Switch the current working directory. With no argument, switch to the **\$HOME** directory.
- [*line*][,*line*] **change** ["*x*"]  
Replace the range of lines with the contents of cut-buffer *x*.
- chdir** [*directory*]  
Same as the **cd** command.
- [*line*][,*line*] **copy** *targetline*  
Copy the range of lines to after the *targetline*.
- [*line*][,*line*] **delete** ["*x*"]  
Move the range of lines into cut buffer *x*.
- digraph**[!][*XX* [*Y*]]  
Set *XX* as a digraph for *Y*. With no arguments, display all currently defined digraphs. With one argument, undefine the argument as a digraph.
- edit**[!][*file*]  
Edit a file not named on the **elvis** command line.
- errlist**[!][*errlist*]  
Find the next error message in file **errlist**, as generated through **elvis**'s **cc** or **make** commands.
- file** [*file*]  
With an argument, change the output file to *file*. Without an argument, print information about the current output file.
- [*line*][,*line*] **global** /*regexp*/ *command*  
Search the range of lines for all lines that contain the regular expression *regexp*, and execute *command* upon each.
- [*line*] **insert**  
Insert text before the current line.
- [*line*][,*line*] **join**  
Concatenate the range of lines into one line.
- [*line*][,*line*] **list**  
Display the requested range of lines, making all embedded control characters explicit.
- make** [*target*]  
Same as the **cc** command, except that **make** is executed.
- map**[!]*key mapped\_to*  
Remap *key* to *mapped\_to*. Normally, remapping applies just to visual-command mode; '!' tells **elvis** to remap the key under all modes. With no arguments, show all current key mappings.

---

<b>[line] mark x</b>	Set a mark on <i>line</i> , and name it <i>x</i> .
<b>mkexrc</b>	Save current configuration into file <i>./exrc</i> , which will be read next time you invoke <b>elvis</b> .
<b>[line][,line] move targetline</b>	Move the range of lines to after <i>targetline</i> .
<b>next[!]</b> [ <i>files</i> ]	Switch to the next file on the <b>elvis</b> command line.
<b>Next[!]</b>	Switch to the preceeding file on the <b>elvis</b> command line.
<b>[line][,line] number</b>	Display the range of lines, with line numbers.
<b>previous[!]</b>	Switch to the preceeding file on the <b>elvis</b> command line.
<b>[line][,line] print</b>	Display the specified range of lines.
<b>[line] put ["x"]</b>	Copy text from cut buffer <i>x</i> after the current line.
<b>quit[!]</b>	Quit <b>elvis</b> , and return to the shell.
<b>[line] read file</b>	Read the contents of <i>file</i> and insert them after <b>line</b> (default, the last line).
<b>rewind[!]</b>	Switch to the first file on the <b>elvis</b> command line.
<b>set [options]</b>	Set an <b>elvis</b> option. With no arguments, list current settings for all options.
<b>shell</b>	Invoke a shell.
<b>source file</b>	Read a set of colon-mode commands from <i>file</i> , and execute them.
<b>[line][,line] substitute /regexp/replacement/[p][g][c]</b>	For the range of lines, replace the first instance of <i>regexp</i> with <i>replacement</i> . <i>p</i> tells <b>elvis</b> to print the <i>last</i> line upon which a substitution was performed. <i>g</i> means perform a global substitution, i.e., replace all instances of <i>regexp</i> on each line with <i>replacement</i> . <i>c</i> tells <b>elvis</b> to ask for confirmation before performing each substitution.
<b>tag[!]</b> <i>tagname</i>	Find <i>tagname</i> in file <b>tags</b> , which records information about all tags. If found, jump to the file and line upon which the tag is set.
<b>[line][,line] to targetline</b>	Copy the range of lines to after the <i>targetline</i> .
<b>unabbr word</b>	Unabbreviate <i>word</i> .
<b>undo</b>	Undo the last editing command.
<b>unmap[!]</b> <i>key</i>	Unmap <i>key</i> .
<b>version</b>	Display the current version of <b>elvis</b> .
<b>[line][,line] vglobal /regexp/ command</b>	Search the range of lines for all lines that do not contain the regular expression <i>regexp</i> , and execute <i>command</i> upon each.
<b>visual</b>	Enter visual-command mode.
<b>wq</b>	Save the changed file, and exit.
<b>[line][,line] write[!]</b> [ <i>&gt;&gt;file</i> ]	Write the file being edited into <i>file</i> . With the <i>&gt;&gt;</i> argument, append the edited text onto the end of <i>file</i> .

<b>xit[!]</b>	Same as the <b>wq</b> command, described above, except that it does not write files that have not changed.
<b>[line][,line] yank ["x]</b>	Copy the range of lines into cut buffer <i>x</i> .
<b>[line][,line] ! command</b>	Execute <i>command</i> under a subshell, then return.
<b>[line][,line] &lt;</b>	Shift the range of lines left by one tabwidth.
<b>[line][,line] =</b>	With no range of lines specified, print the number of the current line. With line arguments, print the endpoints of the lines in question, and the number of lines that lie between them. (Remember, <i>line</i> can be a regular expression as well as a number.)
<b>[line][,line] &gt;</b>	Shift the range of lines right by one tabwidth.
<b>[line][,line] &amp;</b>	Repeat the last substitution command.
<b>@ x</b>	Read the contents of cut-buffer <i>x</i> as a set of colon-mode commands, and execute them.

### Input-Mode Commands

Most keystrokes are interpreted as being text and inserted directly into the text; however, some keystrokes are still interpreted as commands. Thus, you can perform an entire session of simple editing directly within input mode without switching to either of the command modes.

The following summarizes the commands that can be executed directly within input mode:

<b>&lt;ctrl-A&gt;</b>	Insert a copy of the last input text.
<b>&lt;ctrl-D&gt;</b>	Delete one indent character.
<b>&lt;ctrl-H&gt;</b>	Erase the character before the cursor.
<b>&lt;ctrl-L&gt;</b>	Redraw the screen.
<b>&lt;ctrl-M&gt;</b>	Insert a newline.
<b>&lt;ctrl-P&gt;</b>	Insert the contents of the cut buffer.
<b>&lt;ctrl-R&gt;</b>	Redraw the screen, like <b>&lt;ctrl-L&gt;</b> .
<b>&lt;ctrl-T&gt;</b>	Insert an indent character.
<b>&lt;ctrl-U&gt;</b>	Move to the beginning of the line.
<b>&lt;ctrl-V&gt;</b>	Insert the following keystroke, even if special.
<b>&lt;ctrl-W&gt;</b>	Backspace to the beginning of the current word.
<b>&lt;ctrl-Z&gt;&lt;ctrl-Z&gt;</b>	Write the file and exit <b>elvis</b> .
<b>&lt;esc&gt;</b>	Shift from input mode to visual-command mode.
<b>&lt;del&gt;</b>	Delete the current character.

### Command-line Options

**elvis** lets you name up to 27 files on the command line, thus allowing you to edit up to 27 files simultaneously. The “next file” and “previous file” commands described above allow you to shift from one file to another during the same editing session; in this way, for example, you can cut text from one file and paste it into another.

**elvis** recognizes the following command-line options:

- r** Recover a previous edit. Because **elvis** uses the program **virec** for file recovery, invoking it with this option simply prints a message that tells you to run **virec**.
- R** Invoke **elvis** in "read-only" mode. This is equivalent to invoking **elvis** via the link **view**.
- t tag** Begin editing at *tag*.
- m [file]** Invoke **elvis** in error-handling mode. It searches through *file* for something that looks like an error message from a compiler, then positions the cursor at that point for editing.
- e** Begin in colon-command mode.
- v** Begin in visual-command mode.
- i** Begin in input mode.
- +command**  
Execute *command* immediately upon beginning editing. For example  
`elvis +237 foo`  
causes **elvis** to move directly to line 237 immediately upon beginning to edit file **foo**.

## Files

**/tmp/elv\*** — Temporary files

## See Also

**commands, ed, ex, me, vi, view**

## Notes

Full documentation for **elvis** is included with this release in compressed file **/usr/src/alien/Elvis.doc.Z**.

**elvis** is copyright © 1990 by Steve Kirkendall, and was written by Steve Kirkendall (kirkenda@cs.pdx.edu or ...uunet!tektronix!psueea!eecs!kirkenda), assisted by numerous volunteers. It is freely redistributable, subject to the restrictions noted in included documentation. Source code for **elvis** is available through the Mark Williams bulletin board, USENET, and numerous other outlets.

**elvis** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor*.

## enable — Command

Enable a port

**/etc/enable port...**

The COHERENT system is a multiuser operating system; it allows many users to use the system simultaneously. An asynchronous communication *port* connects each user to the system, normally by a terminal or a modem attached to the port. The system communicates with the port by means of a character special file in directory **/dev**, such as **/dev/com3r** or **/dev/com2l**.

The COHERENT system will not allow a user to log in on a port until the system creates a *login process* for the port. The **enable** command tells the system to create a login process for each given port. For example, the command

```
/etc/enable com1r
```

enables port `/dev/com1r`.

**enable** changes the entry for each given *port* in the terminal characteristics file `/etc/ttys`. The baud rate specified in `/etc/ttys` must be the appropriate baud rate for the terminal or modem connected to the port. See the Lexicon entry for **ttys** for more information.

The command **disable** disables a port. The command **ttystat** checks whether a port is enabled or disabled.

### Files

`/etc/ttys` — Terminal characteristics file

`/dev/com*` — Devices serial ports

### See Also

**com**, **commands**, **disable**, **getty**, **login**, **ttys**, **ttystat**

### Diagnostics

**enable** normally returns one if it enables the *port* successfully and zero if not. If more than one *port* is specified, **enable** returns the success or failure status of the last port it finds. It returns -1 if it cannot find any given *port*. An exit status of -2 indicates an error.

### Notes

It is not recommended that you attempt to enable a port that is already enabled. To make sure, run `/etc/disable` before running `/etc/enable`.

## **endgrent() — General Function**

Close group file

```
#include <grp.h>
```

```
endgrent()
```

**endgrent()** closes the file `/etc/group`. It returns NULL if an error occurs.

### Files

`/etc/group`

```
<grp.h>
```

### See Also

**general functions**, **group**

## **endpwent() — General Function**

Close password file

```
#include <pwd.h>
```

```
endpwent()
```

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file `/etc/passwd`, which contains information about every user of the system. **endpwent()** closes the password file. Please note that this function does not return a meaningful value.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **getpwent()**.

### Files

`/etc/passwd`

```
pwd.h
```

## See Also

general functions, `getpwent()`, `getpwnam()`, `getpwuid()`, `pwd.h`, `setpwent()`

## enum — C Keyword

Declare a type and identifiers

An **enum** declaration is a data type whose syntax resembles those of the **struct** and **union** declarations. It lets you enumerate the legal value for a given variable. For example,

```
enum opinion {yes, maybe, no} GUESS;
```

declares type **opinion** can have one of three values: **yes**, **no**, and **maybe**. It also declares the variable **GUESS** to be of type **opinion**.

As with a **struct** or **union** declaration, the tag (**opinion** in this example) is optional; if present, it may be used in subsequent declarations. For example, the statement

```
register enum opinion *op;
```

declares a register pointer to an object of type **opinion**.

All enumerated identifiers must be distinct from all other identifiers in the program. The identifiers act as constants and be used wherever constants are appropriate.

COHERENT assigns values to the identifiers from left to right, normally beginning with zero and increasing by one. In the above example, the values of **yes**, **no**, and **maybe** are set, respectively, to one, two, and three. The values often are **ints**, although if the range of values is small enough, the **enum** will be an **unsigned char**. If an identifier in the declaration is followed by an equal sign and a constant, the identifier is assigned the given value, and subsequent values increase by one from that value; for example,

```
enum opinion {yes=50, no, maybe} guess;
```

sets the values of the identifiers **yes**, **no**, and **maybe** to 50, 51, and 52, respectively.

## See Also

C keywords

## ENV — Environmental Variable

File read to set environment

The Korn shell reads the environmental variable **ENV** to determine what file to read after it executes the contents of **profile** and **.profile**. This file is usually used to set aliases and variables.

## See Also

environmental variables, **ksh**

## env — Command

Execute a command in an environment

**env** [-] [**VARIABLE=value ...**] [*command args*]

The command **env** executes *command* with *args*, modifying the existing environment by performing the requested assignments.

The **-** option tells **env** to replace the environment with the arguments of the form **VARIABLE=value**; otherwise the assignments are added to the environment.

If *command* is omitted, the resulting environment is printed.

**See Also**

commands

***environ* — Technical Information**

Process environment

**extern char \*\*environ;**

**environ** is an array of strings, called the *environment* of a process. By convention, each string has the form

*name=value*

Normally, each process inherits the environment of its parent process. The shell **sh** and various forms of **exec** can change the environment. The shell adds the name and value of each shell variable marked for *export* to the environment of subsequent commands. The shell adds assignments given on the same line as a command to the environment of the command, without affecting subsequent commands.

**See Also****exec, getenv(), sh, technical information*****environmental variables* — Overview**

The *environment* is a set of information that is read by all programs that run on your system. It consists of one or more *environmental variables* that you set. For example, when you set the environmental variable **PATH**, you tell COHERENT that you wish to pass this information to all programs on your system, including COHERENT itself.

By changing the environment, you can change the way a command works without rewriting any commands that you may have embedded in batch files, scripts, or **makefiles**.

Your programs may request environmental variables of their own definition. COHERENT uses the following environmental variables to set its environment. Note that the variables marked with an asterisk are used only by the Korn shell **ksh**.

<b>ASKCC</b> . . . . .	Have <b>mail</b> prompt for CC names
<b>CWD*</b> . . . . .	Current working directory
<b>EDITOR</b> . . . . .	Editor used by default by <b>mail</b>
<b>ENV*</b> . . . . .	File read to set environment
<b>FCEDIT*</b> . . . . .	Editor used by the <b>fc</b> command
<b>IFS</b> . . . . .	Characters recognized as white space
<b>HOME</b> . . . . .	User's home directory
<b>KSH_VERSION*</b> . .	List current version of Korn shell
<b>LASTERROR*</b> . . .	Program that last generated an error
<b>LIBPATH</b> . . . . .	Directories that hold compiler phases and libraries
<b>MAIL</b> . . . . .	File that holds user's mail messages
<b>PAGER</b> . . . . .	User's preferred output filter
<b>PATH</b> . . . . .	Directories that hold executable files
<b>PS1</b> . . . . .	User's default prompt
<b>PS2</b> . . . . .	Prompt when unbalanced quotation marks span a line
<b>SECONDS*</b> . . . .	Number of seconds since current shell started
<b>SHELL</b> . . . . .	Name the default shell
<b>TERM</b> . . . . .	Name the default terminal type
<b>TIMEZONE</b> . . . .	User's current time zone
<b>TMPDIR</b> . . . . .	Directory that holds temporary files
<b>USER</b> . . . . .	Name user's identifier



You can also set the following environmental variables to control the default settings of the COHERENT assembler **as**, the C compiler **cc**, and the linker **ld**:

**ARHEAD** . . Append options to beginning of **ar** command line  
**ARTAIL** . . . Append options to end of **ar** command line  
**ASHEAD** . . Append options to beginning of **as** command line  
**ASTAIL** . . . Append options to end of **as** command line  
**CCHEAD** . . Append options to beginning of **cc** command line  
**CCTAIL** . . . Append options to end of **cc** command line  
**LDHEAD** . . Append options to beginning of **ld** command line  
**LDTAIL** . . . Append options to end of **ld** command line

### See Also

**get\_env()**, **Lexicon**

## envp — C Language

Argument passed to **main()**

**char \*envp[];**

**envp** is an abbreviation for environmental parameter. It is the traditional name for a pointer to an array of string pointers passed to a C program's **main** function, and is by convention the third argument passed to **main**.

### Example

The following example demonstrates **envp**, **argc**, and **argv**.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main(argc, argv, envp)
int argc;                /* Number of args */
char *argv[];            /* Argument ptr array */
char *envp[];            /* Environment ptr array */
{
    int a;

    printf("The command name (argv[0]) is %s\n", argv[0]);
    printf("There are %d arguments:\n", argc-1);
    for (a=1; a<argc; a++)
        printf("\targument %2d:\t%s\n", a, argv[a]);

    printf("The environment is as follows:\n");
    a = 0;
    while (envp[a] != NULL)
        printf("\t%s\n", envp[a++]);
}
```

### See Also

**argc**, **argv**, **C language**, **environ**, **main()**

## EOF — Definition (Library/STDIO)

Indicate end of a file

**#include <stdio.h>**

**EOF** is an indicator that is returned by several **STDIO** functions to indicate that the current file position is the end of the file.

Many STDIO functions, when they read **EOF**, set the end-of-file indicator that is associated with the stream being read. Before more data can be read from the stream, its end-of-file indicator must be cleared. Resetting the file-position indicator with the functions **fseek**, **fsetpos**, or **ftell** will clear the indicator, as will returning a character to the stream with the function **ungetc**.

### See Also

**file**, **stream**, **STDIO**, **stdio.h**

## **epson** — Command

Print files on Epson printer

**epson** [ **-cdfw8** ] [ **-b head** ] [ **-i n** ] [ **-o ofile** ] [ **-s n** ] [ *file* ... ]

**epson** prints each *file*, or the standard input if none, on an Epson MX-80 printer or compatible. **epson** normally sends its output directly to the line printer **/dev/lp**. It recognizes the **nroff** output sequences for boldface and italics and normally converts them to emphasized print and italics.

**epson** recognizes the following options:

- b head** Print the given *head* as a double-width banner at the top of the first output page.
- c** Use compressed printing mode.
- d** Print boldface as double strikes. Normally, **epson** recognizes the sequence "**c\bc**" as boldface and prints *c* in emphasized printing mode. **-d** is useful in conjunction with **-c**.
- f** Do not print a formfeed character at the end of each *file*.
- in** Indent *n* spaces at the start of each output line.
- o ofile** Send output to *ofile* instead of **/dev/lp**.
- r** Print all characters in Roman; do not use italics. Normally, **epson** recognizes the sequence "**\_ \bc**" as italic and prints *c* in its italic character set.
- sn** Print *n* newlines at the end of each line. *n* must be 1, 2, or 3; the default is 1.
- w** Use double width printing mode.
- 8** Print lines with vertical spacing of eight lines per inch instead of the default six lines per inch.

### Files

**/dev/lp** — Line printer

### See Also

**commands**, **lpr**, **nroff**, **pr**, **printer**

### Diagnostics

**epson** prints appropriate messages on the standard error if it cannot open a *file* or if an argument is incorrect.

## **errno** — Technical Information

External integer for return of error status  
**extern int errno;**

**errno** is an external integer that COHERENT links into every program. COHERENT sets **errno** to the negative value of any error status returned by COHERENT to the functions that perform COHERENT system calls.

Mathematical functions use **errno** to indicate classifications of errors on return. **errno** is defined within the header file **errno.h**. Because not every function uses **errno**, it should be polled only in connection with those functions that document its use and the meaning of the various status values. For the names of the error codes (as defined in **errno.h**, their value, and the message returned by the function **perror**, see **errno.h**.

### **Example**

For an example of using **errno** in a mathematics program, see the entry for **acos**.

### **See Also**

**errno.h**, **mathematics library**, **perror()**, **signal()**, **technical information**

## **errno.h** — Header File

Error numbers used by **errno()**  
**#include <errno.h>**

**errno.h** is a header that defines and describes the error numbers returned in the external variable **errno**. The following lists the the error numbers defined in **errno.h**:

**EPERM**: Not super user

You are not the superuser **root**, and attempted an operation that requires **root** privileges.

**ENOENT**: No such file or directory

A program could not find a required file or directory.

**ESRCH**: Process not found

A program attempt to communicate with a process that did not exist.

**EINTR**: Interrupted system call

A COHERENT system call failed due to a signal being received or an alarm expiring.

**EIO**: I/O error

A physical I/O error occurred on a device driver. This could be a tape error, a CRC error on a disk, or a framing error on a synchronous HDLC link.

**ENXIO**: no such device or address

A specified minor device is invalid or the unit is powered off. This error might also indicate that a block number given to a minor device is out of range. **suload** returns this error code if the driver was not loaded.

**E2BIG**: argument list too long

The number of bytes of arguments passed in an **exec** is too large.

**ENOEXEC**: exec format error

The file given to **exec** or **load** is not a valid load module (probably because it does not have the magic number at the beginning), even though its mode indicates that it is executable.

**EBADF**: bad file descriptor

A file descriptor passed to a system call is not open or is inappropriate to the call. For example, a file descriptor opened only for reading may not be accessed for writing.

**ECHILD:** no children

A process issued a **wait** call when it had no outstanding children.

**EAGAIN:** no more processes

The system cannot create any more processes, either because it is out of table space or because the invoking process has reached its process quota.

**ENOMEM:** not enough memory

The system cannot accomodate the memory size requested (by **exec** or **brk**, for example).

**EACCES:** permission denied

The user is denied access to a file.

**EFAULT:** bad address

An address in a system call does not lie in the address space. Normally, this generates a **SIGSYS** signal, which terminates the process.

**ENOTBLK:** block device required

The **mount** and **umount** calls require block devices as arguments.

**EBUSY:** mount device busy

The special file passed to **mount** is already mounted, or the file system given to **umount** has open files or active working directories.

**EEXIST:** file exists

An attempt was made to **link** to a file that already exists.

**EXDEV:** cross-device link

A link to a file must be on the same logical device as the file.

**ENODEV:** no such device

An unsuitable I/O call was made to a device; for example, an attempts to read a line printer.

**ENOTDIR:** not a directory

A component in a path name exists but is not a directory, or a **chdir** or **chroot** argument is not a directory.

**EISDIR:** is a directory

Directories cannot be opened for writing.

**EINVAL:** invalid argument

An argument to a system call is out of range, e.g., a bad signal number to **kill** or **umount** of a device that is not mounted.

**ENFILE:** file table overflow

A table inside the COHERENT system has run out of space, preventing further **open** calls and related requests.

**EMFILE:** too many open files

A process is limited to 20 open files at any time.

**ENOTTY:** not a tty

An **ioctl** call was made to a file which is not a terminal device.

**ETXTBSY:** text file busy

The text segment of a shared load module is unwritable. Therefore, an attempt to execute it while it is being written or an attempt to open it for writing while it is being executed will fail.

**EFBIG:** file too large

The block mapping algorithm for files fails above 1,082,201,088 bytes.

**ENOSPC:** no space left on device

Indicates an attempt to write on a file when no free blocks remain on the associated device.

This error may also indicate that a device is out of i-nodes, so a file cannot be created.

**ESPIPE:** illegal seek

It is illegal to **lseek** on a pipe.

**EROFS:** read-only file system

Indicates an attempt to write on a file system mounted read-only (e.g., with **creat** or **unlink**).

**EMLINK:** too many links

A new link to a file cannot be created, because the link count would exceed 32,767.

**EPIPE:** broken pipe

A write occurred on a pipe for which there are no readers. This condition is accompanied by the signal **SIGPIPE**, so the error will only be seen if the signal is ignored or caught.

**EDOM:** mathematics library domain error

An argument to a mathematical routine falls outside the domain of the function.

**ERANGE:** mathematics library result too large

The result of a mathematical function is too large to be represented.

**EKSPACE:** out of kernel space

No more space is available for tables inside the COHERENT system. Table space is dynamically allocated from a fixed area of memory; it may be possible to increase the size of the area by reconfiguring the system.

**ENOLOAD:** driver not loaded

Not used.

**EBADFMT:** bad exec format

An attempt was made to **exec** a file on the wrong type of processor.

**EDATTN:** device needs attention

The device being referenced needs operator attention. For example, a line printer might need paper.

**EDBUSY:** device busy

The indicated device is busy. For **load**, this implies that the given major device number is already in use.

**See Also**

**errno**, **header files**, **perror()**, **signal()**

**eval** — Command

Evaluate arguments

**eval** [*token ...*]

The shell normally evaluates each token of an input line before executing it. During evaluation, the shell performs parameter, command, and file-name pattern substitution. The shell does *not* interpret special characters after performing substitution.

**eval** is useful when an additional level of evaluation is required. It evaluates its arguments and treats the result as shell input. For example,

```
A='>file'
echo a b c $A
```

simply prints the output

```
a b c >file
```

because '>' has no special meaning after substitution, but

```
A='>file'
eval echo a b c $A
```

redirects the output

```
a b c
```

to **file**. Similarly,

```
A='$B'
B='string'
echo $A
eval echo $A
```

prints

```
$B
string
```

In the first **echo** the shell performs substitution only once.

The shell executes **eval** directly.

### **See Also**

**commands, ksh, sh**

## **ex — Command**

Berkeley-style line editor

**ex** [ *options* ] [ *+cmd* ] [ *file1 ... file27* ]

**ex** is a link to **elvis**, which is a clone of the UNIX **vi/ex** set of editors. Invoking **elvis** through this link forces it to operate solely in colon-command mode, just as the UNIX **ex** editor operates.

For information on how to use this version of **ex**, see the Lexicon page for **elvis**.

### **See Also**

**commands, ed, elvis, me, vi, view**

### **Notes**

**elvis** is copyright © 1990 by Steve Kirkendall, and was written by Steve Kirkendall (kirkenda@cs.pdx.edu or ...uunet!tektronix!psueea!eecs!kirkenda), assisted by numerous volunteers. It is freely redistributable, subject to the restrictions noted in included documentation. Source code for **elvis** is available through the Mark Williams bulletin board, USENET, and numerous other outlets.

Please note that **elvis** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor*.

**exec — Command**

Execute command directly

**exec** [*command*]

The shell normally executes commands with a **fork** system call, which creates a new process. The shell command **exec** directly executes the given *command* with an **exec** system call instead. Normally, this terminates execution of the current shell.

If the *command* consists only of redirection specifications, **exec** redirects the input or output of the current shell accordingly without terminating it. If the *command* is omitted, **exec** has no effect.

**See Also**

**commands**, **fork()**, **ksh**, **sh**

**exec1() — General Function (libc)**

Execute a load module

**exec1**(*file*, *arg0*, *arg1*, ..., *argn*, **NULL**)

**char** \**file*, \**arg0*, \**arg1*, ..., \**argn*;

The function **exec1()** calls the COHERENT system call **execve()** to execute a program. It specifies arguments individually, as a NULL-terminated list of *arg* parameters. For more information on file execution, see **execution**.

**See Also**

**execution**, **execve()**, **general functions**, **getuid()**

**Diagnostics**

**exec1()** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

**execle() — General Function (libc)**

Execute a load module

**execle**(*file*, *arg0*, *arg1*, ..., *argn*, **NULL**, *env*)

**char** \**file*, \**arg0*, \**arg1*, ..., \**argn*, **char** \**env*[];

The function **execle()** calls the COHERENT system call **execve()** to execute a program. It first initializes the new stack of the process to contain a list of strings that are command arguments. It specifies arguments individually, as a NULL-terminated list of *arg* parameters. The argument *envp* points to an array of pointers to strings that define *file*'s environment. For more information on program execution and environments, see **execution**.

**See Also**

**environ**, **execution**, **execve()**, **general functions**

**Diagnostics**

**execle()** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or being too large to fit into memory.

**execvp() — General Function (libc)**

Execute a load module

**execvp**(*file*, *arg0*, *arg1*, ..., *argn*, **NULL**)

**char** \**file*, \**arg0*, \**arg1*, ..., \**argn*;

The function **execvp()** calls the COHERENT system call **execve()** to execute a program. It initializes the new stack of the process to contain a list of strings that are command arguments. It specifies arguments individually, as a NULL-terminated list of *arg* parameters. Unlike the related function

**execl()**, **execlp()** searches for *file* in all directories named in the environmental variable **PATH**. For more information on program execution, see **execution**.

### See Also

**environ**, **execution**, **execve()**, **general functions**

### Diagnostics

**execlp()** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* not existing in the directories named in **PATH**, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

### executable file — Definition

An **executable file** is one that can be loaded directly by the operating system and executed. Normally, an executable file is one that has both been *compiled*, where it is rendered into machine language, and *linked*, where the compiled program has received all operating system-specific information and library functions.

### See Also

**definitions**, **file**, **object format**

### execution — Technical Information

Program execution under COHERENT is governed by the various forms of the COHERENT system call **exec**. This call allows a process to execute another executable *file* (or load module). This is described in **l.out.h** under COHERENT 286 or **coff.h** under COHERENT 386.

The code, data and stack of *file* replace those of the requesting process. The new stack contains the command arguments and its environment, in the format given below. Execution starts at the entry point of *file*.

During a successful **exec**, the system deactivates profiling, and resets any caught signals to **SIG\_DFL**.

Every process has a real-user id, an effective-user id, a real-group id, and an effective-group id, as described in **getuid**. For most load modules, **exec** does not change any of these. However, if the *file* is marked with the set user id or set group id bit (see **stat**), **exec** sets the effective-user id (effective-group id) of the process to the user id (group id) of the *file* owner. In effect, this changes the file access privilege level from that of the real id to that of the effective id. The owner of *file* should be careful to limit its abilities, to avoid compromising file security.

**exec** initializes the new stack of the process to contain a list of strings which are command arguments. **execl**, **execle**, and **execlp** specify arguments individually, as a NULL-terminated list of *arg* parameters. **execv**, **execve**, and **execvp** specify arguments as a single NULL-terminated array of parameters.

The **main** routine of a C program is invoked in the following way:

```
main(argc, argv, envp)
int argc;
char *argv[], *envp[];
```

**argc** is the number of command arguments passed through **exec**, and **argv** is an array of the actual argument strings. **envp** is an array of strings that comprise the process environment. By convention, these strings are of the form *variable=value*, as described in the Lexicon entry **environ**. Typically, each *variable* is an **exported** shell variable with the given *value*.

**execl** and **execv** simply pass the old environment, referenced by the external pointer **environ**. **execle** and **execve** pass a new environment *env* explicitly. **execlp** and **execvp** search for *file* in each of the directories indicated by the shell variable **\$PATH**, in the same way that the shell



searches for a command. These calls will execute a shell command *file*.

### Files

**/bin/sh** — To execute command files

### See Also

**environ**, **exec()**, **execl()**, **execle()**, **execlp()**, **execv()**, **execve()**, **execvp()**, **fork()**, **ioctl()**, **signal()**, **stat()**, **technical information**

### Diagnostics

None of the **exec** routines returns if successful. Each returns -1 for errors, such as if *file* is nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, has a bad format, or is too large to fit in memory.

### execv() — General Function (libc)

Execute a load module

**execv(file, argv)**

**char \*file, \*argv[];**

The function **execv()** calls the COHERENT system call **execve()** to execute a program. It specifies arguments as a single, NULL-terminated array of parameters, called *argv*. **execv()** passes the environment of the calling program to the called program. For more information on program execution, see **execution**.

### See Also

**environ**, **execution**, **execve()**, **general functions**

### Diagnostics

**execv()** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

### execve() — System Call

Execute a load module

**execve(file, argv, env)**

**char \*file, \*argv[], \*env[];**

The function **execve()** executes a program. It specifies arguments as a single, NULL-terminated array of parameters, called *argv*. The argument *env* is the address of an array of pointers to strings that define *file*'s environment. This allows **execve()** to pass a new environment to the program being executed. For more information on program execution, see **execution**.

### Example

The following example demonstrates **execve()**, as well as **tmpnam()**, **getenv()**, and **path()**. It finds all lines with more than **LIMIT** characters and call MicroEMACS to edit them.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <path.h>
#include <sys/stat.h>

#define LIMIT 70

extern char *getenv(), **environ, *tmpnam();
```

```
main(argc, argv)
char *argv[];
{
    /*          me      -e   tmp   file */
    char *cmda[5] = { NULL, "-e", NULL, NULL, NULL };
    FILE *ifp, *tmp;
    char line[256];
    int ct, len;

    if ((NULL == (cmda[3] = argv[1])) ||
        (NULL == (ifp = fopen(argv[1], "r")))) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Cannot open %s\n", argv[1]);
        exit(1);
    }

    if ((cmda[0] = path(getenv("PATH"), "me", AEXEC)) == NULL) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Cannot locate me\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    if (NULL == (tmp = fopen((cmda[2] = tempnam(NULL, "lmg")), "w"))) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Cannot open tmpfile\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    for (ct = 1; NULL != fgets(line, sizeof(line), ifp); ct++)
        if (((len = strlen(line)) > LIMIT) ||
            ('\n' != line[len - 1]))
            fprintf(tmp, "%d: %d characters long\n", ct, len);

    fclose(tmp);
    fclose(ifp);

    if (execve(cmda[0], cmda, environ) < 0) {
        fprintf(stderr, "cannot execute me\n");
        exit(1);
    }
    /* We never reach here ! */
}
```

### See Also

**environ, execution, general functions**

### Diagnostics

**execve()** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

### **execvp()** — General Function (libc)

Execute a load module

**execvp**(*file*, *argv*)

**char** \**file*, \**argv*[];

The function **execvp()** calls the COHERENT system call **execve()** to execute a program. It specifies arguments as a single, NULL-terminated array of parameters, called *argv*. Unlike the related call **execv()**, **execvp()** searches for *file* in all of the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH**. For more information on program execution, see **execution**.

### See Also

**environ**, **execution**, **execve()**, **general functions**

### Diagnostics

**execvp()** does not return if successful. It returns -1 for errors, such as *file* being nonexistent, not accessible with execute permission, having a bad format, or too large to fit in memory.

### exit — Command

Exit from a shell

**exit** [*status*]

**exit** terminates a shell. If the optional *status* is specified, the shell returns it; otherwise, the previous status is unchanged. From an interactive shell, **exit** sets the *status* if specified, but does not terminate the shell. The shell executes **exit** directly.

### See Also

**commands**, **ksh**, **sh**

### exit() — System Call

Terminate a program gracefully

**void exit(status) int status;**

**exit()** is the normal method to terminate a program directly. *status* information is passed to the parent process. By convention, an exit status of zero indicates success, whereas an exit status greater than zero indicates failure. If the parent process issued a **wait()** call, it is notified of the termination and is passed the least significant eight bits of *status*. As **exit()** never returns, it is always successful. Unlike the related function **\_exit()**, **exit()** does extra cleanup, such as flushing buffered files and closing open files.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **fopen()**.

### See Also

**\_exit()**, **close()**, **system call**, **wait()**

### Notes

If a program leaves **main()** by an error condition, contents of register **AX** becomes the exit code. Usually, these register contents are random. If you want to test a program's return code, you must to exit or return from **main()**.

### exp() — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute exponent

**#include <math.h>**

**double exp(z) double z;**

**exp()** returns the exponential of *z*, or  $e^z$ .

### Example

The following program prompts you for a number, then prints the value for it as returned by **exp()**, **pow()**, **log()**, and **log10()**.

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) dodisplay((double)(x), #x)

dodisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];

    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter number: ");
        if(gets(string) == NULL)
            break;
        x = atof(string);

        display(x);
        display(exp(x));
        display(pow(10.0,x));
        display(log(exp(x)));
        display(log10(pow(10.0,x)));
    }
}
```

### **See Also**

**errno**, **mathematics library**

### **Diagnostics**

**exp()** indicates overflow by an **errno** of **ERANGE** and a huge returned value.

### **export** — Command

---

Add a shell variable to the environment

**export** [*name* ...]

**export** [*name=value*]

When the shell executes a command, it passes the command an *environment*. By convention, the environment consists of assignments, each of the form *name=value*. For example, typing

```
export TERM=vt100
```

sets the environmental variable **TERM** to equal the string **vt100**.

A command may look for information in the environment or may simply ignore it. In the above example, a program that reads the variable **TERM** (such as MicroEMACS) will assume that you are

working on a DEC VT-100 terminal or one that emulates it.

The shell places the *name* and the value of each shell variable that appears in an **export** command into the environment of subsequently executed commands. It does not place a shell variable into the environment until it appears in an **export** command.

With no arguments, **export** prints the name and the value of each shell variable currently marked for export.

The shell executes **export** directly.

### See Also

**commands, environ, exec, ksh, sh**

### expr — Command

Compute a command-line expression

**expr** *argument* ...

The arguments to **expr** form an expression. **expr** evaluates the expression and writes the result on the standard output. Among other uses, **expr** lets the user perform arithmetic in shell command files.

Each *argument* is a separate token in the expression. An argument has a logical value 'false' if it is a null string or has numerical value zero, 'true' otherwise. Integer arguments consist of an optional sign followed by a string of decimal digits. The range of valid integers is that of signed long integers. No check is made for overflow or illegal arithmetic operations. Floating point numbers are not supported.

The following list gives each **expr** operator and its meaning. The list is in order of increasing operator precedence; operators of the same precedence are grouped together. All operators associate left to right except the unary operators '!', '-', and 'len', which associate right to left. The spaces shown are significant - they separate the tokens of the expression.

**{ expr1, expr2, expr3 }**

Return *expr2* if *expr1* is logically true, and *expr3* otherwise. Alternatively, { *expr1* , *expr2* } is equivalent to { *expr1* , *expr2* , 0 }.

**expr1 | expr2**

Return *expr1* if it is true, *expr2* otherwise.

**expr1 & expr2**

Return *expr1* if both are true, zero otherwise.

**expr1 relation expr2**

Where *relation* is one of <, <=, >, >=, ==, or !=, return one if the *relation* is true, zero otherwise. The comparison is numeric if both arguments can be interpreted as numbers, lexicographic otherwise. The lexicographic comparison is the same as **strcmp** (see **string**).

**expr1 + expr2**

**expr1 - expr2**

Add or subtract the integer arguments. The expression is invalid if either *expr* is not a number.

**expr1 \* expr2**

**expr1 / expr2**

*expr1* % *expr2*

Multiply, divide, or take remainder of the arguments. The expression is invalid if either *expr* is not numeric.

*expr1* : *expr2*

Match patterns (regular expressions). *expr2* specifies a pattern in the syntax used by **ed**. It is compared to *expr1*, which may be any string. If the `\(...\)` pattern occurs in the regular expression the matching operator returns the matched field from the string; if there is more than one `\(...\)` pattern the extracted fields are concatenated in the result. Otherwise, the matching operator returns the number of characters matched.

**len** *expr*

Return the length of *expr*. It behaves like **strlen** (see **string**). *len* is a reserved word in **expr**.

**!expr** Perform logical negation: return zero if *expr* is true, one otherwise.

**-expr** Unary minus: return the negative of its integer argument. If the argument is non-numeric the expression is invalid.

( *expr* )

Return the *expr*. The parentheses allow grouping expressions in any desired way.

The following operators have special meanings to the shell **sh**, and must be quoted to be interpreted correctly: { } ( ) < > & | \*.

### See Also

**commands**, **ed**, **ksh**, **sh**, **test**

### Notes

**expr** returns zero if the expression is true, one if false, and two if an error occurs. In the latter case an error message is also printed.

## **extern** — C Keyword

Declare storage class

**extern** indicates that a C element belongs to the *external* storage class. Both variables and functions may be declared to be **extern**. Use of this keyword tells the C compiler that the variable or function is defined outside of the present file of source code. All functions and variables defined outside of functions are implicitly **extern** unless declared **static**.

When a source file references data that are defined in another file, it must declare the data to be **extern**, or the linker will return an error message of the form:

undefined symbol *name*

For example, the following declares the array **tzname**:

```
extern char tzname[2][32];
```

When a function calls a function that is defined in another source file or in a library, it should declare the function to be **extern**. In the absence of a declaration, **extern** functions are assumed to return **ints**, which may cause serious problems if the function actually returns a 32-bit pointer (such as on the 68000 or i8086 LARGE model), a **long**, or a **double**.

For example, the function **malloc** appears in a library and returns a pointer; therefore, it should be declared as follows:

```
extern char *malloc();
```

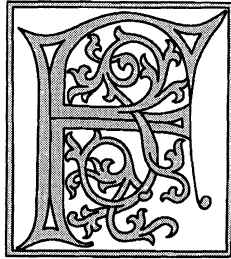
If you do not do so, the compiler assumes that **malloc** returns an **int**, and generate the error message

integer pointer pun

when you attempt to use **malloc** in your program.

***See Also***

**auto, C keywords, pun, register, static, storage class**



---

**fabs()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute absolute value

**#include** <math.h>

**double fabs**(*z*) **double** *z*;

**fabs()** implements the absolute value function. It returns *z* if *z* is zero or positive, or -*z* if *z* is negative.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ceil()**.

**See Also**

**abs()**, **ceil()**, **floor()**, **frexp()**, **mathematics library**

---

**factor** — Command

Factor a number

**factor** [ *number ...* ]

**factor** computes and prints the prime factorials for each of a list of given *numbers*. If no *numbers* are given on the command line, **factor** reads numbers from the standard input.

**See Also**

**commands**

---

**false** — Command

Unconditional failure

**false**

**false** does nothing. It is guaranteed to fail. It can be useful in shell scripts, to force certain situations to occur.

**See Also**

**commands**, **ksh**, **sh**, **true**

**Notes**

Under the Korn shell, **false** is an alias for its built-in command **let**.

---

**fblk.h** — Header File

Define the disk-free block

**#include** <sys/fblk.h>

**fblk.h** defines the disk-free block **fblk**.



**See Also**

header files

**fc — Command**

Edit and re-execute one or more previous commands

**fc [-ln] [first [last]]****fc -s [old=new] [command]"**

**fc**, the “fix command”, is a command built into the Korn shell **ksh**. It permits you to edit and re-execute one or more commands that have been executed previously.

**fc** has two forms, as shown above. The first version selects commands *first* through *last* and inserts them into a text editor. You can edit the commands in the editor; exiting from the editor re-executes the edited commands.

*first* and *last* can be addressed either by the command’s number (the first command issued to the shell is number one, the second is number two, and so on), or by a string that matches the beginning of the command. The editor used is the one set in the environmental variable **FCEDIT** (default, **ed**).

When called without a *last* variable, the command selects just *first*. Option **-l** prints the commands on the standard output rather than buffering the commands for editing and re-execution. Option **-n** suppresses the default command numbers.

The second form of the **fc** command substitutes string *new* for string *old* within *command*, then re-executes it. *command* can be addressed either by its number or by a string that matches its beginning. If no *command* is specified, it re-executes the previous command.

**See Also**commands, **FCEDIT**, **ksh****FCEDIT — Environmental Variable**Editor used by **fc** command

The Korn shell’s command **fc** reads the environmental variable **FCEDIT** to see which editor it should use to edit commands.

**See Also**environmental variables, **ksh****fclose() — STDIO Function (libc)**

Close a stream

**#include <stdio.h>****int fclose(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**fclose()** closes the stream **fp**. It calls **fflush()** on the given *fp*, closes the associated file, and releases any allocated buffer. The function **exit()** calls **fclose()** for open streams.

**Example**

For examples of how to use this function, see the entries for **fopen()** and **fseek()**.

**See Also****STDIO****Diagnostics**

**fclose()** returns **EOF** if an error occurs.

**fcntl()** — System Call

Control open files

```
#include <sys/fcntl.h>
```

```
int fcntl(fd, command, arg)
```

```
int fd, cmd;
```

The COHERENT system call **fcntl()** permits manipulation of an open file. *fd* is the file descriptor; this description must have been obtained from a call to **creat()**, **dup()**, **fcntl()**, **open()**, or **pipe()**.

*command* identifies the task that you want **fcntl()** to perform. The value **fcntl()** returns varies, depending on what command you ask it to perform. *arg* is an argument specific to the given *command*.

**fcntl()** recognizes the following commands:

**F\_DUPFD**

Duplicate file descriptor *fd* onto the first available file descriptor greater than or equal to *arg*. **fcntl()** returns the new file descriptor.

**F\_GETFL**

Get the file flags for the file specified by *fd*. With this option, **fcntl()** returns the file flags.

**F\_SETFL**

Set file flags for file descriptor *fd* to the value specified by *arg*. Here, **fcntl()** returns the new file flags.

**See Also**

**creat()**, **dup()**, **fcntl.h**, **file**, **file descriptor**, **open()**, **pipe()**, **system calls**

**fcntl.h** — Header File

Manifest constants for file-handling functions

```
#include <sys/fcntl.h>
```

**fcntl.h** declares manifest constants that are used by the file-handling functions **open** and **fcntl**.

**See Also**

**header files**

**fd** — Device Driver

Floppy disk driver

The files **/dev/f\*** are entries for the diskette drives of COHERENT on the IBM AT. Each entry is assigned major device number 4, is accessed as a block-special device, and has a corresponding character-special device entry.

The device entries are linked to a driver that handles up to four 5.25 inch disk drives, each in one of several formats. The least-significant four bits of an entry's minor device number identify the type of drive. The next least-significant two bits identify the drive. The following table summarizes the name, minor device number, sectors per track, partition sector size, characteristics, and addressing method for each device entry of floppy disk drive 0.

*9 sectors/track*

<b>f9d0</b>	4	9	720	DSDD	surface (5.25 inch — 360K)
<b>f9a0</b>	13	9	1440	DSQD	cylinder (3.25 inch — 720K)
<b>f9a0</b>	12	9	720	DSDD	cylinder (5.25 inch — 360K)

15 sectors/track

**fha0** 14 15 2400 DSHD cylinder (5.25 inch — 1.2MB)

18 sectors/track

**fva0** 15 18 2880 DSHD cylinder (3.5 inch — 1.44MB)

Prefixing an **r** to a name given above gives the name of the corresponding character-device entry. Corresponding device entries for drives 1, 2, and 3 have minor numbers with offsets of 16, 32, and 48 from the minor numbers given above and have 1, 2, or 3 in place of 0 in the names given above.

For device entries whose minor number's fourth least-significant bit is zero (minor numbers 0 through 7 for drive 0), the driver uses surface addressing rather than cylinder addressing. This means that it increments tracks before heads when computing sector addresses and the first surface is used completely before the second surface is accessed. For devices whose minor number's fourth least significant bit is 1 (minor numbers 8 through 15 for drive 0), the driver uses cylinder addressing.

For a diskette to be accessible from the COHERENT system, a device file must be present in directory **/dev** with the appropriate type, major and minor device numbers, and permissions. The command **mknod** creates a special file for a device.

## Files

**<fdioctl.h>** — Driver command header file

**/dev/fd\*** — Block-special files

**/dev/rfd\*** — Character special files

## See Also

device drivers, **fdformat**, **mkfs**, **mknod**,

## Diagnostics

The driver reports any error status received from the controller and retries the operation several times before it reports an error to the program that initiated an operation.

## Notes

The driver assumes that the disk is formatted with eight, nine, 15, or 18 sectors of 512 bytes each per track, depending upon the **/dev** entry. Cylinder addressing is the norm for COHERENT.

Programs that use the raw device interface must read whole sectors into buffers that do not straddle DMA boundaries.

## fd.h — Header File

Declare file-descriptor structure

**#include <sys/fd.h>**

**fd.h** declares the file-descriptor structure **fd**, plus associated constants and the function **fdget**.

## See Also

header files

## fdformat — Command

Low-level format a floppy disk

**/etc/fdformat** [ *option ...* ] *special*

**fdformat** formats a floppy disk. The given *special* should be the name of the special file that correspond to the floppy disk drive.

**fdformat** recognizes the following options:

- a** Print information on the standard output device during format. As it formats a cylinder, it will print a line of the form

hd=0 cyl=25

on your screen.

- i number**

Use *number* (0 through 7) as the interleave factor in formatting. Note that the default interleave is six.

- o number**

Use *number* (default, 0) as the skew factor for sector numbering.

- v** Verify formatting and verify data written with the **-w** option.

- w file** Format the floppy disk and then copy *file* to it track by track. The raw device should be used.

The command **mkfs** builds a COHERENT file system on a formatted floppy disk. The command **dosformat** builds a DOS file system on a formatted floppy disk. The command **mount** mounts a floppy disk containing a file system to allow access to it through the COHERENT directory structure. The command **umount** unmounts a floppy disk.

### Examples

The following command formats a 2400-block (1.2-megabyte), 5.25-inch floppy disk in drive 0 (otherwise known as drive A):

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0
```

The following command formats a 1440-block (720-kilobyte), 3.5-inch floppy disk in drive 1 (otherwise known as drive B):

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fqa1
```

### See Also

**commands, dosformat, fd, mkfs, mount, umount**

### Diagnostics

When errors occur on floppy-disk devices, the driver prints on the system console an error message that describes the error.

### Notes

**fdformat** formats a track at a time. **fdformat** can be interrupted between tracks, which may result in a partially formatted floppy disk.

### **fdioctl.h** — Header File

Control floppy-disk I/O

**#include <sys/fdioctl.h>**

**fdioctl.h** declares constants and structures used to control floppy-disk I/O.

### See Also

**header files**

**fdisk — Command**

Hard-disk partitioning utility

**/etc/fdisk [-r] [-c] [-b mboot] xdev ...**

The COHERENT version of the command **fdisk** supports flexible hard-disk partitioning among four operating systems, i.e. MS-DOS, CP/M, COHERENT, and XENIX. This capability means that with the COHERENT **fdisk**, you can support COHERENT plus any combination of MS-DOS, CP/M, or XENIX on one hard disk.

**fdisk** recognizes the following flags:

- r** Read-only access to partitioning information.
- b** Use the first 446 bytes of *mboot* as master boot code to replace that in *xdev*.
- c** Allow the specification of disk geometry (i.e., number of cylinders, heads, sectors) for disk drives that are not supported by the system BIOS.

**fdisk** accesses the first block from the special device *xdev* (e.g., */dev/at0x*) for the partitioning information. **fdisk** then queries the user for changes. These changes are written to *xdev* only if the user requests the changes to be saved. If omitted, *xdev* defaults to */dev/at0x* and */dev/at1x*. SCSI disk device users will need to specify *xdev* as */dev/sdnx* where *n* is a digit corresponding to the SCSI ID for the disk device (e.g., */dev/sd0x*).

**Files**

**<fdisk.h>**

**See Also**

**commands**

**Notes**

If the partition table is changed, the system should be rebooted; most device drivers will not recognize the revised partition information until a reboot occurs.

As the **-r** and **-b** options are contradictory, attempting to use them together generates an error message.

Please note that some versions of **fdisk** for other operating systems can rearrange the order of entries in the partition table. If this happens, you may lose the ability to run COHERENT until the table is restored to its previous order. A sign of this problem is getting the prompt **AT boot?** when trying to start COHERENT after running any **fdisk** program, and not being able to get past it.

Computer systems that use older BIOS releases may report incorrect disk parameters. Users of such systems should change the CMOS setup values if possible, but the BIOS on some older systems will not allow you to specify arbitrary values for disk parameters. Users with such systems can use the **fdisk -c** option instead.

If you plan to install and run COHERENT and MS-DOS on the same hard disk, note the following:

- If you wish to install COHERENT and MS-DOS on the same hard drive, you *must* run the MS-DOS **fdisk** first!
- If you plan on running both operating systems, you *must* install MS-DOS first and leave some free cylinders on the disk for COHERENT as well as a free partition. You can have both primary as well as extended MS-DOS partitions on the same drive as COHERENT, but COHERENT cannot use a sub-partition of the MS-DOS extended partition. COHERENT must have one of the four *real* partitions.

*Failure to observe these rules will result in loss of data*

**fdisk.h** — Header File

Fixed-disk constants and structures

**#include** <sys/fdisk.h>

**fdisk.h** declares structures and constants used to manipulate the fixed disk.

**See Also**

header files

**fdopen()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Open a stream for standard I/O

**#include** <stdio.h>

**FILE** \**fdopen*(*fd*, *type*) **int** *fd*; **char** \**type*;

**fdopen()** allocates and returns a **FILE** structure, or *stream*, for the file descriptor *fd*, as obtained from **open()**, **creat()**, **dup()**, or **pipe()**. *type* is the manner in which you want *fd* to be opened, as follows:

- r**     Read a file
- w**     Write into a file
- a**     Append onto a file

**Example**

The following example obtains a file descriptor with **open()**, and then uses **fdopen()** to build a pointer to the **FILE** structure.

```
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>

void adios(message)
char *message;
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", message);
    exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    extern FILE *fdopen();
    FILE *fp;
    int fd;
    int holder;

    if (--argc != 1)
        adios("Usage: example filename");

    if ((fd = open(argv[1], 0)) == -1)
        adios("open failed.");
    if ((fp = fdopen(fd, "r")) == NULL)
        adios("fdopen failed.");
```

```

while ((holder = fgetc(fp)) != EOF) {
    if ((holder > '\177') || (holder < ' '))
        switch(holder) {
            case '\t':
            case '\n':
                break;
            default:
                fprintf(stderr, "Seeing char %d\n", holder);
                exit(1);
        }
    fputc(holder, stdout);
}
}

```

### **See Also**

**creat()**, **dup()**, **fopen()**, **open()**, **STDIO**

### **Diagnostics**

**fdopen()** returns NULL if it cannot allocate a **FILE** structure. Currently, only 20 **FILE** structures can be allocated per program, including **stdin**, **stdout**, and **stderr**.

### **feof()** — **STDIO** Macro (**stdio.h**)

Discover stream status

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int feof(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**feof()** is a macro that tests the status of the argument stream *fp*. It returns a number other than zero if *fp* has reached the end of file, and zero if it has not. One use of **feof()** is to distinguish a value of -1 returned by **getw()** from an **EOF**.

### **Example**

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fopen()**.

### **See Also**

**EOF**, **STDIO**

### **ferror()** — **STDIO** Macro (**stdio.h**)

Discover stream status

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int ferror(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**ferror()** is a macro that tests the status of the file stream *fp*. It returns a number other than zero if an error has occurred on *fp*. Any error condition that is discovered will persist either until the stream is closed or until **clearerr()** is used to clear it. For write routines that employ buffers, **fflush()** should be called before **ferror()**, in case an error occurs on the last block written.

### **Example**

This example reads a word from one file and writes it into another.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
{
    FILE *fpin, *fpout;
    int inerr = 0;
    int outerr = 0;
    int word;
    char infile[20], outfile[20];

    printf("Name data file you wish to copy:\n");
    gets(infile);
    printf("Name new file:\n");
    gets(outfile);

    if ((fpin = fopen(infile, "r")) != NULL) {
        if ((fpout = fopen(outfile, "w")) != NULL) {
            for (;;) {
                word = fgetw(fpin);
                if (ferror(fpin)) {
                    clearerr(fpin);
                    inerr++;
                }

                if (feof(fpin))
                    break;
                fputw(word, fpout);
                if (ferror(fpout)) {
                    clearerr(fpout);
                    outerr++;
                }
            }
        } else {
            printf
                ("Cannot open output file %s\n",
                 outfile);
            exit(1);
        }
    } else {
        printf("Cannot open input file %s\n", infile);
        exit(1);
    }

    printf("%d - read error(s)   %d - write error(s)\n",
           inerr, outerr);
    exit(0);
}
```

**See Also**  
**STDIO**



**fflush()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Flush output stream's buffer

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int fflush(FILE *fp);
```

**fflush()** flushes any buffered output data associated with the file stream *fp*. The file stream stays open after **fflush()** is called. **fclose()** calls **fflush()**, so there is no need for you to call it when normally closing a file or buffer.

**Example**

This example demonstrates **fflush()**. When run, you will see the following:

```
Line 1
-----
Line 1
-----
Line 1
Line 2
-----
```

The call

```
fprintf(fp, "Line 2\n");
```

goes to a buffer and is not in the file when file **foo** is listed. However if you redirect the output of this program to a file and list the file, you will see:

```
Line 1
Line 1
Line 1
Line 2
-----
-----
-----
```

because the line

```
printf("-----\n");
```

goes into a buffer and is not printed until the program is over and all buffers are flushed by **exit()**.

Although the COHERENT screen drivers print all output immediately, not all operating systems work this way, so when in doubt, **fflush()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
    FILE *fp;

    if (NULL == (fp = fopen("foo", "w")))
        exit(1);
    fprintf (fp, "Line 1\n");
    fflush (fp);
    system ("cat foo"); /* print Line 1 */
}
```

```
printf("-----\n");
fprintf(fp, "Line 2\n");
system("cat foo"); /* print Line 1 */
printf("-----\n");

fflush(fp);
system("cat foo"); /* print Line 1 Line 2 */
printf("-----\n");
}
```

### **See Also**

**fclose(), setbuf(), STDIO, write()**

### **Diagnostics**

**fflush()** returns **EOF** if it cannot flush the contents of the buffers; otherwise it returns a meaningless value.

Note, also, that all STDIO routines are buffered. **fflush** should be used to flush the output buffer if you follow a STDIO routine with an unbuffered routine.

### ***fgetc()* — STDIO Function (libc)**

Read character from stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fgetc(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**fgetc()** reads characters from the input stream *fp*. In general, it behaves the same as the macro **getc()**: it runs more slowly than **getc()**, but yields a smaller object module when compiled.

### **Example**

This example counts the number of lines and "sentences" in a file.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
{
    FILE *fp;
    int filename[20];
    int ch;
    int nlines = 0;
    int nsents = 0;

    printf("Enter file to test: ");
    gets(filename);

    if ((fp = fopen(filename, "r")) == NULL) {
        printf("Cannot open file %s.\n", filename);
        exit(1);
    }

    while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF) {
        if (ch == '\n')
            ++nlines;
    }
```

```

        else if (ch == '.' || ch == '!' || ch == '?') {
            if ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != '.')
                ++nsents;

            else
                while((ch=fgetc(fp)) == '.')
                    ;
            ungetc(ch, fp);
        }
    }

    printf("%d line(s), %d sentence(s).\n",
        nlines, nsents);
}

```

### See Also

getc(), STDIO

### Diagnostics

fgetc() returns EOF at end of file or on error.

### fgets() — STDIO Function (libc)

Read line from stream

#include <stdio.h>

char \*fgets(s, n, fp) char \*s; int n; FILE \*fp;

**fgets()** reads characters from the stream *fp* into string *s* until either *n*-1 characters have been read, or a newline or EOF is encountered. It retains the newline, if any, and appends a null character at the end of the string. **fgets()** returns the argument *s* if any characters were read, and NULL if none were read.

### Example

This example looks for the pattern given by **argv[1]** in standard input or in file **argv[2]**. It demonstrates the functions **pnmatch()**, **fgets()**, and **freopen()**.

```

#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXLINE 128
char buf[MAXLINE];

void fatal(s) char *s;
{
    fprintf(stderr, "pnmatch: %s\n", s);
    exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    if (argc != 2 && argc != 3)
        fatal("Usage: pnmatch pattern [ file ]");

    if (argc==3 && freopen(argv[2], "r", stdin)==NULL)
        fatal("cannot open input file");
}

```

```
while (fgets(buf, MAXLINE, stdin) != NULL) {
    if (pnmatch(buf, argv[1], 1))
        printf("%s", buf);
}

if (!feof(stdin))
    fatal("read error");
exit(0);
}
```

**See Also****fgetc()**, **gets()**, **STDIO****Diagnostics****fgets()** returns NULL if an error occurs, or if **EOF** is seen before any characters are read.**fgetw()** — **STDIO** Function (**libc**)

Read integer from stream

#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;

int fgetw(fp) FILE \*fp;

**fgetw()** reads an integer from the stream *fp*.**Example**For an example of this function, see the entry for **ferror()**.**See Also****fputw()**, **STDIO****Notes****fgetw()** returns EOF on errors. A call to **feof()** or **ferror()** may be necessary to distinguish this value from a genuine end-of-file signal.**field** — DefinitionA **field** is an area that is set apart from whatever surrounds it, and that is defined as containing a particular type of data. In the context of C programming, a field is either an element of a structure, or a set of adjacent bits within an **int**.**See Also****bit map**, **data formats**, **definitions**, **structure****file** — DefinitionA **file** is a mass of bits that has been given a name and is stored on a nonvolatile medium. These bits may form ASCII characters or machine-executable data. Under the COHERENT system and related operating systems, external devices can mimic files, in that they can be opened, closed, read, and written to in a manner identical to that of files.To manipulate the contents of a file, you must first open it. This can be done with the COHERENT system call **open**, or with the function **fopen**. You can then read the file, write material to it, or append material onto it with the COHERENT system calls **read** and **write**, or with the functions **fread** and **fwrite**. See the entries on **system calls** and entry **STDIO** for more information on manipulating material within a file.

**See Also**

`close()`, `definitions`, `executable file`, `fopen()`, `fclose()`, `FILE`, `open()`

**file — Command**

Guess a file's type

**file** *file* ...

**file** examines each *file* and takes an educated guess as to its type. **file** recognizes the following classes of text files: files of commands to the shell; files containing the source for a C program; files containing **yacc** or **lex** source; files containing assembly language source; files containing unformatted documents that can be passed to **nroff**; and plain text files that fit into none of the above categories.

**file** recognizes the following classes of non-text or binary data files: the various forms of archives, object files, and link modules for various machines, and miscellaneous binary data files.

**See Also**

`commands`, `ls`, `size`

**Notes**

Because **file** only reads a set amount of data to determine the class of a text file, mistakes can happen.

**FILE — Definition**

Descriptor for a file stream

**#include** `<stdio.h>`

**FILE** describes a *file stream* which can be either a file on disk or a peripheral device through which data flow. It is defined in the header file **stdio.h**.

A pointer to **FILE** is returned by **fopen**, **freopen**, **fdopen**, and related functions.

The **FILE** structure is as follows:

```
typedef struct FILE
{
    unsigned char *_cp,
                  *_dp,
                  *_bp;
    int    _cc;
    int    (*_gt)(),
          (*_pt)();
    int    _ff;
    char    _fd;
    int    _uc;
} FILE;
```

**\_cp** points to the current character in the file. **\_dp** points to the start of the data within the buffer. **\_bp** points to the file buffer. **\_cc** is the number of unprocessed characters in the buffer. **\_gt** and **\_pt** point, respectively, to the functions **getc** and **putc**. **\_ff** is a bit map that holds the various file flags, as follows:

<b>_FINUSE</b>	0x01	Unused
<b>_FSTBUF</b>	0x02	Used by macro <b>setbuf</b>
<b>_FUNGOT</b>	0x04	Used by <b>ungetc</b>
<b>_FEOF</b>	0x08	Tested by macro <b>feof</b>
<b>_FERR</b>	0x10	Tested by macro <b>ferror</b>

**\_fd** is the file descriptor, which is used by low-level routines like **open**; it is also used by **reopen**. Finally, **\_uc** is the character that has been “ungotten” by **ungetc**, should it be used.

### **See Also**

**definitions, fopen(), freopen(), stdio.h, stream**

### **file descriptor — Definition**

A **file descriptor** is an integer between 1 and 20 that indexes an area in the operating system's list of internal file descriptors. It is used by routines like **open**, **close**, and **lseek** to work with files. A file descriptor is *not* the same as a **FILE** stream, which is used by routines like **fopen**, **fclose**, or **fread**.

### **See Also**

**definitions, file, FILE, system calls**

### **file formats — Overview**

The COHERENT system uses a number of different file formats. Each format is designed to order most efficiently the information that that file holds. This manual describes the following special file formats:

**core.** . . . . . Core dump file format  
**group.** . . . . . Format for file **/etc/group**  
**L-dev.** . . . . . Describe devices used by UUCP  
**L.sys.** . . . . . Describe remote sites to UUCP  
**passwd.** . . . . . Format for file **/etc/passwd**  
**Permissions.** . . Format of UUCP permissions file  
**term.** . . . . . Format of compiled **terminfo** file  
**ttys.** . . . . . Active terminal ports

The following header files also hold information on file formats:

**acct.h.** . . . . . Format for process-accounting file  
**ar.h.** . . . . . Format for archive files  
**canon.h.** . . . . . Portable layout of binary data  
**coff.h.** . . . . . Define format of COHERENT 386 objects  
**dir.h.** . . . . . Directory format  
**l.out.h.** . . . . . Define format of COHERENT 286 objects  
**mtab.h.** . . . . . Currently mounted file systems  
**utmp.h.** . . . . . Login accounting information

For a fuller description of each file and its contents, see its entry in the Lexicon.

### **See Also**

**header files, Lexicon**

## ***fileno()* — STDIO Function**

Get file descriptor

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fileno(FILE \*fp);**

**fileno()** returns the file descriptor associated with the file stream *fp*. The file descriptor is the integer returned by **open()** or **creat()**. It is used by routines such as **fopen()** to create a **FILE** stream.

### **Example**

This example reads a file descriptor and prints it on the screen.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main(argc,argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    FILE *fp;
    int fd;

    if (argc !=2) {
        printf("Usage: fd_from_fp filename\n");
        exit(0);
    }

    if ((fp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL) {
        printf("Cannot open input file\n");
        exit(0);
    }

    fd = fileno(fp);
    printf("The file descriptor for %s is %d\n",
        argv[1], fd);
}
```

### **See Also**

**FILE**, file descriptor, **STDIO**

## ***filsys.h* — Header File**

Structures and constants for super block

**#include <sys/filsys.h>**

**filsys.h** declares structures and constants used to by functions that manipulate the super block.

### **See Also**

header files

## ***filter* — Definition**

A *filter* is a program that reads a stream of input, transforms it in a precisely defined manner, and writes it to another stream. Two or more filters can be coupled with *pipes* to perform a complex transformation on a stream of input.

### **See Also**

definitions, pipe

**find** — Command

Search for files satisfying a pattern

**find** *directory* ... [*expression* ...]

**find** traverses each given *directory*, testing each file or subdirectory found with the *expression* part of the command line. The test can be the basis for deciding whether to process the file with a given command.

If the command line specifies no *expression* or specifies no execution or printing (**-print**, **-exec**, or **-ok**), by default **find** prints the pathnames of the files found.

In the following, *file* means any file: directory, special file, ordinary file, and so on. Numbers represented by *n* may be optionally prefixed by a '+' or '-' sign to signify values greater than *n* or less than *n*, respectively.

**find** recognizes the following *expression* primitives:

**-atime** *n* Match if the file was accessed in the last *n* days.

**-ctime** *n* Match if the i-node associated with the file was changed in the last *n* days, as by **chmod**.

**-exec** *command*

Match if *command* executes successfully (has a zero exit status). The *command* consists of the following arguments to **find**, terminated by a semicolon ';' (escaped to get past the shell). **find** substitutes the current pathname being tested for any argument of the form '{}'.

**-group** *name*

Match if the file is owned by group *name*. If *name* is a number, the owner must have that group number.

**-inum** *n* Match if the file is associated with i-number *n*.

**-links** *n* Match if the number of links to the file is *n*.

**-mtime** *n* Match if the most recent modification to the file was *n* days ago.

**-name** *pattern*

Match if the file name corresponds to *pattern*, which may include the special characters '\*', '?', and '[...]' recognized by the shell **sh**. The *pattern* matches only the part of the file name after any slash '/' characters.

**-newer** *file* Match if the file is newer than *file*.

**-nop** Always match; does nothing.

**-ok** *command*

Same as **-exec** above, except prompt interactively and only executes *command* if the user types response 'y'.

**-perm** *octal* Match if owner, group, and other permissions of the file are the *octal* bit pattern, as described in **chmod**. When *octal* begins with a '-' character, more of the permission bits (setuid, setgid, and sticky bit) become significant.

**-print** Always match; print the file name.

**-size** *n* Match if the file is *n* blocks in length; a block is 512 bytes long.



- type *c*** Match if the type of the file is *c*, chosen from the set **bcdfmp** (for block special, character special, directory, ordinary file, multiplexed file, or pipe, respectively).
- user *name*** Match if the file is owned by user *name*. If *name* is a number, the owner must have that user number.
- exp1 exp2*** Match if both expressions match. **find** evaluates *exp2* only if *exp1* matches.
- exp1 -a exp2*** Match if both expressions match, as above.
- exp1 -o exp2*** Match if either expression matches. **find** evaluates ***exp2*** only if ***exp1*** does not match.
- ! *exp*** Match if the expression does *not* match.
- ( *exp* )** Parentheses are available for expression grouping.

### Examples

A **find** command to print the names of all files and directories in user **fred**'s directory is:

```
find /usr/fred
```

The following, more complicated **find** command prints out information on all **core** and object (**.o**) files that have not been changed for a day. Because some characters are special both to **find** and **sh**, they must be escaped with **`** to avoid interpretation by the shell.

```
find / \( -name core -o -name \*.o \) -mtime +1 \
-exec ls -l {} \;
```

Finally, the following example a simple tool for keeping files on two COHERENT systems in synch with each other. **find** reads directory **src** and passes to **uucp** the names of all files that are newer than file **last\_upload**. It then uses the command **touch** to update the date on **last\_upload**, to use it as a marker of when the last upload was performed.

```
find $HOME/src -type f -newer last_upload | while read filename
do
    uucp -r -nyou $filename yoursystem!~/
    echo Queued file $filename to yoursystem ...
done | mail somebody@other
touch last_upload
```

### See Also

**chmod**, **commands**, **ls**, **sh**, **srcpath**, **test**

### fixstack — Command

Change stack allocation

**fixstack** **+-value** [*filename*]

**fixstack** alters the stack size of a COHERENT-286 executable file. It enlarges or shrinks the stack by *value* bytes. *value* is assumed to be a hexadecimal number, and must be preceded by **+** or **-**.

If *filename* is not given, **fixstack** by default alters the stack size of file **l.out**.

### See Also

**cc**, **commands**, **size**

### Notes

This command applies only to COHERENT 286.

### **fixterm()** — terminfo Function

Set the terminal into program mode

**#include <curses.h>**

**fixterm()**

COHERENT 386 comes with a set of functions that let you use **terminfo** descriptions to manipulate a terminal. **fixterm()** restores the terminal to its internal conditions, as set by the **curses/terminfo** library. Your program should call **fixterm()** after it returns from a shell escape.

### See Also

**curses.h**, **resetterm()**, **terminfo**

### **float** — C Keyword

Data type

Floating point numbers are a subset of the real numbers. Each has a built-in radix point (or “decimal point”) that shifts, or “floats”, as the value of the number changes. It consists of the following: one sign bit, which indicates whether the number is positive or negative; bits that encode the number’s *exponent*; and bits that encode the number’s *fraction*, or the number upon which the exponent works. In general, the magnitude of the number encoded depends upon the number of bits in the exponent, whereas its precision depends upon the number of bits in the fraction.

The exponent often uses a *bias*. This is a value that is subtracted from the exponent to yield the power of two by which the fraction will be increased.

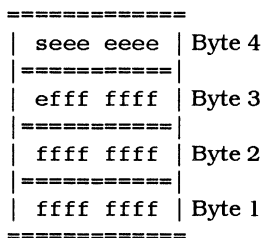
Floating point numbers come in two levels of precision: single precision, called **floats**; and double precision, called **doubles**. With most microprocessors, **sizeof(float)** returns four, which indicates that it is four **chars** (bytes) long, and **sizeof(double)** returns eight.

Several formats are used to encode **floats**, including IEEE, DECVAX, and BCD (binary coded decimal).

The following describes DECVAX, IEEE, and BCD formats, for your information.

### **DECVAX Format**

The 32 bits in a **float** consist of one sign bit, an eight-bit exponent, and a 24-bit fraction, as follows. Note that in this diagram, ‘s’ indicates “sign”, ‘e’ indicates “exponent”, and ‘f’ indicates “fraction”:



The exponent has a bias of 129.

If the sign bit is set to one, the number is negative; if it is set to zero, then the number is positive. If the number is all zeroes, then it equals zero; an exponent and fraction of zero plus a sign of one (“negative zero”) is by definition not a number. All other forms are numeric values.

The most significant bit in the fraction is always set to one and is not stored. It is usually called the "hidden bit".

The format for **doubles** simply adds another 32 fraction bits to the end of the **float** representation, as follows:

```

=====
|  seee  eeee  | Byte 8
|=====|
|  efff  ffff  | Byte 7
|=====|
|  ffff  ffff  | Byte 6
|=====|
|  ffff  ffff  | Byte 5
|=====|
|  ffff  ffff  | Byte 4
|=====|
|  ffff  ffff  | Byte 3
|=====|
|  ffff  ffff  | Byte 2
|=====|
|  ffff  ffff  | Byte 1
=====

```

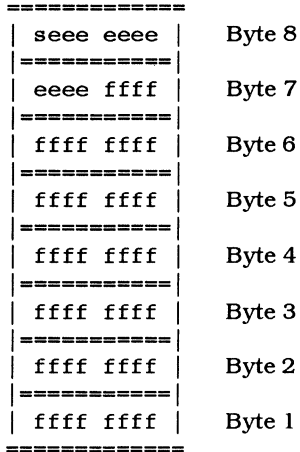
### IEEE Format

The IEEE encoding of a **float** is the same as that in the DECVAX format. Note, however, that the exponent has a bias of 127, rather than 129.

Unlike the DECVAX format, IEEE format assigns special values to several floating point numbers. Note that in the following description, a *tiny* exponent is one that is all zeroes, and a *huge* exponent is one that is all ones:

- A tiny exponent with a fraction of zero equals zero, regardless of the setting of the sign bit.
- A huge exponent with a fraction of zero equals infinity, regardless of the setting of the sign bit.
- A tiny exponent with a fraction greater than zero is a denormalized number, i.e., a number that is less than the least normalized number.
- A huge exponent with a fraction greater than zero is, by definition, not a number. These values can be used to handle special conditions.

An IEEE **double**, unlike DECVAX format, increases the number of exponent bits. It consists of a sign bit, an 11-bit exponent, and a 53-bit fraction, as follows:

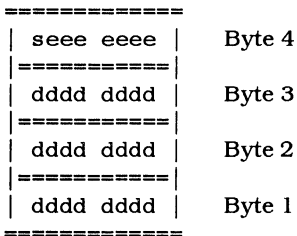


The exponent has a bias of 1,023. The rules of encoding are the same as for **floats**.

### **BCD Format**

The BCD format ("binary coded decimal", also called "packed decimal") is used to eliminate rounding errors that alter the worth of an account by a fraction of a cent. It consists of a sign, an exponent, and a chain of four-bit numbers, each of which is defined to hold the values zero through nine.

A BCD **float** has a sign bit, seven bits of exponent, and six four-bit digits. In the following diagrams, 'd' indicates "digit":



A BCD **double** has a sign bit, 11 bits of exponent, and 13 four-bit digits, as follows:

=====	
seee eeee	Byte 8
=====	
eeee dddd	Byte 7
=====	
dddd dddd	Byte 6
=====	
dddd dddd	Byte 5
=====	
dddd dddd	Byte 4
=====	
dddd dddd	Byte 3
=====	
dddd dddd	Byte 2
=====	
dddd dddd	Byte 1
=====	

Passing the hexadecimal numbers A through F in a digit yields unpredictable results.

The following rules apply when handling BCD numbers:

- A tiny exponent with a fraction of zero equals zero.
- A tiny exponent with a fraction of non-zero indicates a denormalized number.
- A huge exponent with a fraction of zero indicates infinity.
- A huge exponent with a fraction of non-zero is, by definition, not a number; these non-numbers are used to indicate errors.

### **COHERENT Floating Point**

COHERENT 286 uses DECVAX floating-point format, and will continue to do so.

COHERENT 386 uses IEEE floating-point format. Please note that this does *not* mean that the COHERENT 386 floating-point software fully implements the IEEE standard; for example, it does not support denormals.

To allow you to convert binary data from one floating-point format to another, COHERENT comes with four functions with which you can convert DECVAX-format floating-point numbers to IEEE format, and vice versa. They are as follows:

**decvax\_d()** Convert an IEEE **double** to DECVAX format.

**decvax\_f()** Convert an IEEE **float** to DECVAX format.

**ieee\_d()** Convert a DECVAX **double** to IEEE format.

**ieee\_f()** Convert a DECVAX **float** to IEEE format.

For details, see their respective entries in the Lexicon.

### **See Also**

**C keywords, data formats, decvax\_d, decvax\_f, double, ieee\_d, ieee\_f**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2, page 180ff

**Notes**

The COHERENT 386 preprocessor implicitly defines the macro **\_IEEE**, whereas the COHERENT 286 preprocessor implicitly defines the macro **\_DECVAX**. These can be used to conditionally include code that applies to a specific edition of COHERENT. If you were writing code that intensively used floating-point numbers and you want to compile the code under both editions of COHERENT, you can write code of the form:

```
#ifdef _DECVAX
...
#elif _IEEE
...
#endif
```

The C preprocessor under each edition of COHERENT will ensure that the correct code is included for compilation.

***floor()* — Mathematics Function (libm)**

Set a numeric floor

**#include <math.h>**

**double floor(z) double z;**

**floor()** sets a numeric floor. It returns a double-precision floating point number whose value is the largest integer less than or equal to *z*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ceil()**.

**See Also**

**abs()**, **ceil()**, **fabs()**, **frexp()**, **mathematics library**

***floppy disks* — Technical Information**

The COHERENT system lets you read or write to floppy disks, using a variety of different formats. You can choose the format that best suits the task at hand.

**Disks Supported**

COHERENT lets you use either 3.5-inch or 5.25-inch disks, in either high or low density; what you use depends upon the type of hardware that you have. The following table gives some commonly used diskette device names and formats:

<i>Device name</i>	<i>Sectors/Track</i>	<i>Heads</i>	<i>Sectors</i>	<i>Bytes</i>	<i>Format</i>
/dev/f9a0	9	2	720	360 KB	5.25"
/dev/f9a1	9	2	720	360 KB	5.25"
/dev/fqa0	9	2	1440	720 KB	3.5"
/dev/fqa1	9	2	1440	720 KB	3.5"
/dev/fha0	15	2	2400	1.2 MB	5.25"
/dev/fha1	15	2	2400	1.2 MB	5.25"
/dev/fva0	18	2	2880	1.44 MB	3.5"
/dev/fva1	18	2	2880	1.44 MB	3.5"

Device names ending in '0' indicate drive A:, names ending in '1' indicate drive B:. For a fuller description of COHERENT's floppy-disk devices, see the Lexicon entry for **fd**.

**MS-DOS Format**

COHERENT lets you read or write to floppy disks that contain MS-DOS file systems. Both tasks use the commands **doscp** or **doscpdir**. These commands are discussed in full in their respective Lexicon

entries.

To read files from an MS-DOS disk, use **dosc** with the name of the appropriate floppy-disk device that you will be using (as given in the above table). For example, to copy binary file **fred.exe** to the current directory from a low-density, 5.25-inch MS-DOS floppy disk in drive A, use the following command:

```
dosc /dev/f9a0:fred.exe .
```

The following command copies to the current directory all files on a high-density, 5.25-inch MS-DOS floppy disk in drive B:

```
dosc /dev/fha1:* .
```

To write a file to a preformatted MS-DOS floppy disk, again use the **dosc** command, but invert the order of the arguments. For example, to write file **fred.ms**, which contains text, to a low-density, 5.25-inch MS-DOS floppy disk in drive A, use the following command:

```
dosc -a fred.ms /dev/f9a0:
```

Note that the 'a' flag in the command line tells COHERENT to convert linefeeds to the linefeed/carriage return combination, as used by MS-DOS. You will want to use this flag *only* when transferring text files to or from an MS-DOS floppy disk.

The following command copies all files in the current directory to a high-density, 3.5-inch MS-DOS floppy disk in drive B:

```
doscdir . /dev/fva1:
```

Note that when you copy a file to an MS-DOS floppy disk, COHERENT observes the MS-DOS file-name conventions: it permits only eight characters to the left of the period, and only three characters to the right of it.

(It should be noted in passing that you can use the **dosc** or **doscdir** to read files from or write files to an MS-DOS partition on your hard disk. All that is necessary is to replace the name of floppy-disk device with that of the hard-disk device for the partition in question. See the Lexicon entry for **at** for a list of hard-disk devices; see the entry for **fdisk** for information on how to read the layout of your hard disk; and see the entries for **dosc** and **doscdir** for details of how to use these commands.)

Finally, COHERENT lets you format a floppy disk and create an MS-DOS file system on it. To do so, you must use the commands **fdformat** and **dosformat**. **fdformat** is described in detail in its Lexicon article.

To format a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk in drive B and write an MS-DOS file system onto it, use the following commands:

```
/etc/fdformat -av /dev/fha1
dosformat /dev/fha1:
```

### COHERENT Format

If you wish, you can create a COHERENT file system on a floppy disk, mount it, and manipulate the files on it with standard COHERENT commands. This is a good illustration of the fact that to COHERENT a file system is a file system, whether it resides on a hard, a floppy disk, or any other mass-storage device. You can use such mountable floppy disks as an easy method of backing up files, or as a flexible extension to any other file system that you have currently mounted.

To create a COHERENT file system on a floppy disk, you must use the commands **fdformat**, **badscan**, and **mkfs**. Each is described in detail in its own Lexicon article. The following example creates a COHERENT file system on a high-density, 3.5-inch floppy disk placed in drive B:

```
/etc/fdformat -a /dev/fval
/etc/badscan -v -o proto /dev/fval 2880
/etc/mkfs /dev/fval proto
rm proto
```

In this example, command **fdformat** formatted the disk. **badscan** then scanned the disk for any bad blocks, and wrote its results into file **proto**. Finally, command **mkfs** reads **proto** and used its contents to create a COHERENT file system on the disk.

Now that the file system is created on the disk, you must mount it. While it is customary to mount file systems under directory '/', you are not required to do it. For example, if your login identifier is **fred** and your home directory is **/usr/fred**, you can mount the floppy disk's file system onto a subdirectory of **/usr/fred** and so make the floppy disk, in effect, an extension of your home directory. The following command does this for the 3.5-inch disk we formatted in the above example:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fval /usr/fred/temp
```

Now, all files you copy into directory **/usr/fred/temp** using the **cp** command will be written directly onto the floppy disk. Note that you may need to log in as the superuser **root** and use the command **chown** to ensure that **fred** owns the file system on that floppy disk. For details on **chown**, see its entry in the Lexicon. For details on shorthand notations for **mount**, see its entry in the Lexicon.

One important point about mounting file systems: before you remove a COHERENT-formatted floppy disk from its drive, you **must** first use the command **/etc/umount** to unmount its file system. If you do not, all data that COHERENT has stored in its buffers will not be written to the disk, and may be lost. Worse, if you remove one COHERENT disk and insert another without unmounting the old disk and mounting the new one, COHERENT will write all data in its buffers onto the new disk without regard for what that disk contains; in all likelihood, this will trash the file system on the new disk and render its data unreadable. So, the lesson is: *always unmount a floppy disk before you remove it!*. To unmount the floppy disk we used in our previous example, use the command:

```
/etc/umount /dev/fval
```

By the way, that's not a misprint: the command is **umount**, not "unmount".

Finally, please note that you can mount only a COHERENT file system. You *cannot* mount a file system created with MS-DOS, XENIX, or any other operating system.

You can, however *import* a set of files — including their directory structure — from UNIX, XENIX, or any other UNIX-like operating system by using the **cpio** utility. **cpio** uses a standard backup algorithm that is implemented on many operating systems. To import files from another operating system, go to the machine that holds the files you want and use its version of **cpio** to back up the files or directories to a set of floppy disks. Then bring the floppy disks back to your COHERENT system and use COHERENT's implementation of **cpio** to read the back-up disks. The following section gives directions on how to do this; or see the Lexicon entry for **cpio** for more information.

### **Raw Format**

Finally, COHERENT lets you use floppy disks in their raw form as a backup medium, much as you would use magnetic tape on a larger computer. You must first use the command **fdformat** with the **-v** option to format the floppy disks you will be using; it is also wise to label and number the disks so you can keep them in some reasonable order. Then you can use any of COHERENT's archiving utilities, such as **ustar**, **cpio**, or **dump** to archive directories or entire file systems onto the disks. It is recommended that you format a generous supply of floppy disks before you begin; if you run short of disks while archiving your files, you will have to abort, format more disks, and begin again. For details on how to use the archiving programs, see their respective entries in the Lexicon.



**See Also**

badscan, cpio, doscp, doscpdir, dosformat, dump, fd, fdformat, mkfs, mount, technical information, umount, ustar

**fnkey — Command**

Set/print function keys for the console

**fnkey** [ *n* [ *string* ] ]

The console keyboard of an AT COHERENT system includes ten programmable function keys, labeled **F1** through **F10**. Initially, these are programmed to send the escape sequences set by the **nkb** keyboard driver.

**fnkey** with a numeric argument programs function key **F<sub>n</sub>** to send the given *string*, where *n* is a number from one through ten. If no *string* is given, **fnkey** resets **F<sub>n</sub>** to send nothing.

With no argument, **fnkey** prints the current string for each programmed function key.

**fnkey** also lets you change the default bindings for other special or function keys. See Lexicon articles **keyboard tables** and **nkb** for details.

**Example**

To set function key **F2** to execute the COHERENT command **date**, use the following command:

```
fnkey 2 'date
'
```

Note that this command sets **F2** to the string **date\n**. If you type **fnkey** without any arguments, it displays the binding of all function keys including the following:

```
F2:  date\n
```

**Files**

/dev/console

**See Also**

commands, keyboard tables, nkb

**Diagnostics**

**fnkey** prints "cannot open /dev/console" if you lack permission to open /dev/console.

**fopen() — STDIO Function (libc)**

Open a stream for standard I/O

#include <stdio.h>

**FILE \*fopen** (*name*, *type*) **char \*name**, **\*type**;

**fopen()** allocates and initializes a **FILE** structure, or *stream*; opens or creates the file *name*; and returns a pointer to the structure for use by other **STDIO** routines. *name* refers to the file to be opened.

*type* is a string that consists of one or more of the characters "rwa", to indicate the mode of the string, as follows:

<b>r</b>	Read; error if file not found
<b>w</b>	Write; truncate if found, create if not found
<b>a</b>	Append to end of file; no truncation, create if not found
<b>r+</b>	Read and write; no truncation, error if not found

- w+** Write and read; truncate if found, create if not found
- a+** Append and read; no truncation, create if not found

The modes that contain 'a' set the seek pointer to point at the end of the file; all other modes set it to point at the beginning of the file. Modes that contain '+' both read and write; however, a program must call **fseek** or **rewind** before it switches from reading to writing or vice versa.

### Example

This example copies **argv[1]** to **argv[2]** using STDIO routines. It demonstrates the functions **fopen()**, **fread()**, **fwrite()**, **fclose()**, and **feof()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
/* BUFSIZ is defined in stdio.h */
char buf[BUFSIZ];

void fatal(message)
char *message;
{
    fprintf(stderr, "copy: %s\n", message);
    exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    register FILE *ifp, *ofp;
    register unsigned int n;

    if (argc != 3)
        fatal("Usage: copy source destination");
    if ((ifp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        fatal("cannot open input file");
    if ((ofp = fopen(argv[2], "w")) == NULL)
        fatal("cannot open output file");

    while ((n = fread(buf, 1, BUFSIZ, ifp)) != 0) {
        if (fwrite(buf, 1, n, ofp) != n)
            fatal("write error");
    }

    if (!feof(ifp))
        fatal("read error");
    if (fclose(ifp) == EOF || fclose(ofp) == EOF)
        fatal("cannot close");
    exit(0);
}
```

### See Also

**fclose()**, **fdopen()**, **freopen()**, **STDIO**

### Diagnostics

**fopen()** returns NULL if it cannot allocate a **FILE** structure, if the *type* string is nonsense, or if the call to **open()** or **creat()** fails. Currently, only 20 **FILE** structures can be allocated per program.

including **stdin**, **stdout**, and **stderr**.

### Notes

Many operating systems recognize a 'b' modifier to the *type* argument; this indicates that the file contains binary information, and lets the operating system handle "funny characters" correctly. COHERENT has no need of such a modifier, so if you append 'b' to *type*, it will be ignored. This modifier, however, is recognized by numerous other operating systems, including MS-DOS, OS/2, and GEMDOS. If you expect to port developed code to any of these operating systems, files should append the 'b' to *type*.

### for — Command

Execute commands for tokens in list

**for** *name* [**in** *token ...*] **do** *sequence* **done**

The shell command **for** controls a loop. It assigns to the variable *name* each successive *token* in the list, and then executes the commands in the given *sequence*. If the **in** clause is omitted, **for** successively assigns *name* the value of each positional parameter to the current script ('\$@'). Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted first word of a command, both **do** and **done** must either occur unquoted at the start of a command or be preceded by `\"`.

The shell commands **break** and **continue** may be used to alter control flow within a **for** loop.

The shell executes **for** directly.

### See Also

**break**, **commands**, **continue**, **ksh**, **sh**

### for — C Keyword

Control a loop

**for**(*initialization*; *endcondition*; *modification*)

**for** is a C keyword that introduces a loop. It takes three arguments, which are separated by semicolons `;`. *initialization* is executed before the loop begins. *endcondition* describes the condition that ends the loop. *modification* is a statement that modifies *variable* to control the number of iterations of the loop. For example,

```
for (i=0; i<10; i++)
```

first sets the variable **i** to zero; then it declares that the loop will continue as long as **i** remains less than ten; and finally, increments **i** by one after every iteration of the loop. This ensures that the loop will iterate exactly ten times (from **i==0** through **i==9**). The statement

```
for(;;)
```

will loop until its execution is interrupted by a **break**, **goto**, or **return** statement. Also, either or both of *initialization* and *modification* may consist of multiple statements that are separated by commas. For example,

```
for (i=0, j=0; i<10; i++, j++)
```

initializes both *i* and *j*, and increments both with each iteration of the loop.

### See Also

**break**, **C keywords**, **continue**, **while**

**fork() — System Call**

Create a new process

**fork()**

In the COHERENT system, many processes may be active simultaneously. **fork()** creates a new process; the new process is a duplicate of the requesting process. In practice, the new process often issues a call to execute yet another new program.

The process that issues the **fork()** call is termed the *parent* process, and the newly forked process is termed the *child* process. **fork()** returns the process id of the newly created child to the parent process, and returns zero to the child process. The parent may call **wait()** to suspend itself until the child terminates.

The following parts of the environment of a process are exactly duplicated by a **fork()** call:

- Open files and their seek positions
- Current working and root directories
- The file creation mask
- The values of all signals
- The alarm clock setting
- Code, data, and stack segments

The system normally makes a fresh copy of the code, data, and stack segments for the child process. One advantage of *shared text* processes is that they do not need to copy the code segment. It is write protected, and therefore may be shared.

**Example**

For examples of how to use this call, see **pipe()** and **signal()**.

**See Also**

**alarm()**, **execl()**, **exit()**, **sh**, **system calls**, **umask()**, **wait()**

**Diagnostics**

**fork()** returns -1 on failure, which usually involves insufficient system resources. On successful calls, **fork()** returns zero to the child and the process id of the child to the parent.

**fortune — Command**

Print randomly selected, hopefully humorous, text

**/usr/games/fortune** [*file* ]

**fortune** prints a message that is randomly selected from the contents of a text file. **fortune** reads *file* if it is named on the command line; otherwise, it reads the default file **/usr/games/lib/fortunes**.

**Files****/usr/games/lib/fortunes** — Default fortunes**See Also****commands**

**fperr.h — Header File**

Constants used with floating-point exception codes

```
#include <fperr.h>
```

**fperr.h** declares constants used by routines that handle floating-point exceptions. It also defines the error messages they use.

**See Also**

header files

**fprintf() — STDIO (libc)**

Print formatted output into file stream

```
int fprintf(fp, format, [arg1, ..., argN])
```

```
FILE *fp; char *format;
```

```
[data type] arg1, ... argN;
```

**fprintf()** formats and prints a string. It resembles the function **printf()**, except that it writes its output into the stream pointed to by *fp*, instead of to the standard output.

**fprintf()** uses the *format* to specify an output format for *arg1* through *argN*.

See **printf()** for a description of **fprintf()**'s formatting codes.

**Example**

For an example of this routine, see the entry for **fscanf()**.

**See Also**

**printf()**, **sprintf()**, **STDIO**

**Notes**

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that an argument match its specification. For example, if the argument is a **long** and the specification is for an **int**, **fprintf()** will peel off the first word of that **long** and present it as an **int**.

At present, **fprintf()** does not return a meaningful value.

**fputc() — STDIO**

Write character into file stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int fputc(c, fp) char c; FILE *fp;
```

**fputc()** writes the character *c* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. It returns *c* if *c* was written successfully.

**Example**

The following example uses **fputc** to write the contents of one file into another.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
void fatal(message)
```

```
char *message;
```

```
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", message);
    exit(1);
}
```

```
main()
{
    FILE *fp, *fout;
    int ch;
    int infile[20];
    int outfile[20];

    printf("Enter name to copy: ");
    gets(infile);
    printf("Enter name of new file: ");
    gets(outfile);

    if ((fp = fopen(infile, "r")) == NULL)
        fatal("Cannot write input file");

    if ((fout = fopen(outfile, "w")) != NULL)
        fatal("Cannot write output file");

    while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF)
        fputc(ch, fout);
}
```

### See Also

**STDIO**

### Diagnostics

**fputc()** returns EOF when a write error occurs, e.g., when a disk runs out of space.

### **fputs()** — **STDIO (libc)**

Write string into file stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fputs(string, fp) char \*string; FILE \*fp;**

**fputs()** writes *string* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. Unlike its cousin **puts()**, it does not append a newline character to the end of *string*.

**fputs()** returns a nonnegative value on success and **EOF** if a write error occurs.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **freopen()**.

### See Also

**puts()**, **STDIO**

### **fputw()** — **STDIO (libc)**

Write an integer into a stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fputw(word, fp) int word; FILE \*fp;**

**fputw()** writes *word* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*, and returns the value written.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **fgetw()**.

**See Also**

fgetw(), STDIO

**Diagnostics**

**fputw()** returns **EOF** when an error occurs. A call to **ferror()** or **feof()** may be needed to distinguish this value from a valid end-of-file signal.

**fread() — STDIO Function (libc)**

Read data from file stream

#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;

int fread(buffer, size, n, fp)

char \*buffer; unsigned size, n; FILE \*fp;

**fread()** reads *n* items, each being *size* bytes long, from file stream *fp* into *buffer*.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fopen()**.

**See Also**

fwrite(), STDIO

**Diagnostics**

**fread()** returns zero upon reading EOF or on error; otherwise, it returns the number of items read.

**free() — General Function (libc)**

Return dynamic memory to free memory pool

void free(ptr) char \*ptr;

**free()** helps you manage the arena. It returns to the free memory pool memory that had previously been allocated by **malloc()**, **calloc()**, or **realloc()**. **free()** marks the block indicated by *ptr* as unused, so the **malloc()** search can coalesce it with contiguous free blocks. *ptr* must have been obtained from **malloc()**, **calloc()**, or **realloc()**.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this routine, see the entry for **malloc()**.

**See Also**

arena, calloc(), general functions, malloc(), realloc(), setbuf()

**Diagnostics**

**free()** prints a message and calls **abort** if it discovers that the arena has been corrupted. This most often occurs by storing data beyond the bounds of an allocated block.

**freopen() — STDIO Function**

Open file stream for standard I/O

#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;

FILE \*freopen(name, type, fp)

char \*name, \*type; FILE \*fp;

**freopen()** reinitializes the file stream *fp*. It closes the file currently associated with it, opens or creates the file *name*, and returns a pointer to the structure for use by other STDIO routines. *name* names a file.

*type* is a string that consists of one or more of the characters “**rwa**” (for, respectively, read, write, and append) to indicate the mode of the stream. For further discussion of the *type* variable, see the entry for **fopen()**. **freopen()** differs from **fopen()** only in that *fp* specifies the stream to be used. Any stream previously associated with *fp* is closed by **fclose()**. **freopen()** is usually used to change the

meaning of **stdin**, **stdout**, or **stderr**.

### Example

This example, called **match.c**, looks in **argv[2]** for the pattern given by **argv[1]**. If the pattern is found, the line that contains the pattern is written into the file **argv[3]** or to **stdout**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define MAXLINE 128
char buffer[MAXLINE];

void fatal(message)
char *message;
{
    fprintf(stderr, "match: %s\n", message);
    exit(1);
}

main(argc,argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    FILE *fpin, *fpout;

    if (argc != 3 && argc != 4)
        fatal("Usage: match pattern infile [outfile]");
    if ((fpin = fopen(argv[2], "r")) == NULL)
        fatal("Cannot open input file");

    fpout = stdout;
    if (argc == 4)
        if ((fpout = freopen(argv[3], "w", stdout)) == NULL)
            fatal("Cannot open output file");

    while (fgets(buffer, MAXLINE, fpin) != NULL) {
        if (pnmatch(buffer, argv[1], 1))
            fputs(buffer, stdout);
    }
    exit(0);
}
```

### See Also

**fopen()**, **STDIO**

### Diagnostics

**freopen()** returns **NULL** if the *type* string is nonsense or if the file cannot be opened. Currently, only 20 **FILE** structures can be allocated per program, including **stdin**, **stdout**, and **stderr**.

### **frexp()** — General Function

Separate fraction and exponent

**double frexp(real, ep) double real; int \*ep;**

**frexp()** breaks double-precision floating point numbers into fraction and exponent. It returns the fraction *m* of its *real* argument, such that  $0.5 \leq m < 1$  or  $m=0$ , and stores the binary exponent *e* in the location pointed to by *ep*. These numbers satisfy the equation  $real = m * 2^e$ .



**Example**

This example prompts for a number, then uses **frexp()** to break it into its fraction and exponent.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern double frexp(), atof();
    double real, fraction;
    int ep;

    char string[64];

    for (;;) {
        printf("Enter number: ");
        if (gets(string) == NULL)
            break;

        fraction = frexp(real, &ep);
        printf("%lf is the fraction of %lf\n",
            fraction, real);
        printf("%d is the binary exponent of %lf\n",
            ep, real);
    }

    putchar('\n');
}
```

**See Also**

**atof()**, **ceil()**, **fabs()**, **floor()**, **general functions**, **ldexp()**, **modf()**

**from — Command**

Generate list of numbers, for use in loop

**from** *start to stop* [ *by incr* ]

**from** prints a list of integers on the standard output, one per line. It prints beginning with *start*, and then prints successive numbers incrementing by *incr* (default, one) the previous number. It continues until the generated value matches or exceeds *stop*. Each of *start*, *stop*, and optional *incr* is a decimal integer with an optional leading '-' sign.

Typical uses of **from** include generating a file of numbers and generating a loop index for the shell. The following example creates special files for eight terminal ports:

```
for i in `from 0 to 7`
do
    /etc/mknod /dev/hs0$i c 7 $i
done
```

**See Also**

**commands**, **ksh**, **sh**

**Diagnostics**

**from** prints an error message if the generated list is empty.

**fscanf()** — STDIO

Format input from a file stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int fscanf**(*fp*, *format*, *arg1*, ... *argN*)

**FILE \*fp; char \*format;**

**[data type] \*arg1, ... \*argN;**

**fscanf()** reads the file stream pointed to by *fp*, and uses the string *format* to format the arguments *arg1* through *argN*, each of which must point to a variable of the appropriate data type.

**fscanf()** returns either the number of arguments matched, or EOF if no arguments matched.

For more information on **fscanf()**'s conversion codes, see **scanf()**.

**Example**

The following example uses **fprintf()** to write some data into a file, and then reads it back using **fscanf()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main ()
{
    FILE *fp;
    char let[4];

    /* open file into write/read mode */
    if ((fp = fopen("tmpfile", "wr")) == NULL) {
        printf("Cannot open 'tmpfile'\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    /* write a string of chars into file */
    fprintf(fp, "1234");

    /* move file pointer back to beginning of file */
    rewind(fp);

    /* read and print data from file */
    fscanf(fp, "%c %c %c %c",
           &let[0], &let[1], &let[2], &let[3]);
    printf("%c %c %c %c\n",
           let[3], let[2], let[1], let[0]);
}
```

**See Also**

**scanf()**, **sscanf()**, **STDIO**

**Notes**

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that an argument match its specification. For that reason, **fscanf()** is best used only to process data that you are certain are in the correct data format, such as data previously written out with **fprintf()**.

**fsck — Command**

Check and repair file systems interactively  
`/etc/fsck [ -fnqsSy ] [ -t tempfile ] [ filesystem ... ]`

**fsck** checks and interactively repairs file systems. If all is well, **fsck** merely prints the number of files used, the number of blocks used, and the number of blocks that are free. If the file system is found to be inconsistent in one of the aspects outlined below, **fsck** asks whether it should fix the inconsistency and waits for you to reply **yes** or **no**.

The following file system aspects are checked for consistency by **fsck**:

- If a block is claimed by more than one i-node, by an i-node and the free list, or more than once in the free list.
- Whether an i-node or the free list claims blocks beyond the file system's range.
- Link counts that are incorrect.
- Whether the directory size is not aligned for 16 bytes.
- Whether the i-node format is correct.
- Whether any blocks are not accounted for.
- Whether a file points to an unallocated i-node.
- Whether a file's i-node number is out of range.
- Whether the super block refers to more than 65,536 i-nodes.
- Whether the super block assigned more blocks to the i-nodes than the system contains.
- Whether the format of the free block list is correct.
- Whether the counts of the total free blocks and the free i-nodes are correct.

**fsck** prints a warning message when a file name is null, has an embedded slash '/', is not null-padded, or if '.' or '..' files do not have the correct i-node numbers.

When **fsck** repairs a file system, any file that is orphaned (that is, allocated but not referenced) is deleted if it is empty, or copied to a directory called **lost+found**, with its i-node number as its name. The directory **lost+found** must exist in the root of the file system being checked before **fsck** is executed, and it must have room for new entries without requiring that new blocks be allocated.

**fsck** recognizes the following options:

- f Fast check. **fsck** only checks whether a block has been claimed by more than one i-node, by an i-node and the free list, or more than once in the free list. If necessary, **fsck** will reconstruct the free list.
- n No option: a default reply of **no** is given to all of **fsck**'s questions.
- q Quiet option: run quietly. **fsck** automatically removes all unreferenced pipes, and automatically fixes list counts in the super block and the free list. File-name warning messages are suppressed, but **fsck** still prints the number of files used, the number of blocks used, and the number of blocks that remain free.
- s Sort the free lists, both free blocks and free i-nodes, based on the interleave number. This is useful in reducing fragmentation of a file system. This option ignores mounted file systems.

- S Same as -s, except that it also works on mounted file systems. Not recommended for the faint of heart.
- t Specify temporary file option. On COHERENT 286, **fsck** uses RAM device **/dev/rram1** for temporary storage when checking filesystems larger than approximately 35 megabytes. This option allows the user to specify temporary storage other than the RAM device.
- y Yes option: a default reply of **yes** is given to all of **fsck**'s questions.

If you do not name a file system in **fsck**'s command line, **fsck** checks the file systems named in the file **/etc/checklist**.

Under COHERENT 286, invoking **fsck** to check a file system larger than approximately 35 megabytes, forces it to use the RAM device **/dev/rram1** for temporary storage. For this reason, it is strongly advised that you not use **/dev/rram1** as a RAM disk. Under COHERENT 386, **fsck** has no such limitations.

### **Files**

**/etc/checklist**

### **See Also**

**clri, commands, lcheck, ncheck, ram, sync, umount**

### **Notes**

The correction of file systems almost always involves the destruction of data.

You should run **fsck** only when the COHERENT system is in single-user mode.

Previous editions of **fsck** could check no partition larger than 35 megabytes. This restriction has been lifted.

## **fseek()** — STDIO Function

Seek on file stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int fseek(fp, where, how)
```

```
FILE *fp; long where; int how;
```

**fseek()** changes where the next read or write operation will occur within the file stream *fp*. It handles any effects the seek routine might have had on the internal buffering strategies of the system. The arguments *where* and *how* specify the desired seek position. *where* indicates the new seek position in the file. It is measured from the start of the file if *how* equals **SEEK\_SET** (zero), from the current seek position if *how* equals **SEEK\_CUR** (one), and from the end of the file if *how* equals two **SEEK\_END** (two).

**fseek()** differs from its cousin **lseek()** in that **lseek()** is a COHERENT system call and takes a file number, whereas **fseek()** is a STDIO function and takes a **FILE** pointer.

### **Example**

This example opens file **argv[1]** and prints its last **argv[2]** characters (default, 100). It demonstrates the functions **fseek()**, **ftell()**, and **fclose()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
extern long atol();
```

```

void fatal(message)
char *message;
{
    fprintf(stderr, "tail: %s\n", message);
    exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    register FILE *ifp;
    register int c;
    long nchars, size;

    if (argc < 2 || argc > 3)
        fatal("Usage: tail file [ nchars ]");
    nchars = (argc == 3) ? atol(argv[2]) : 100L;

    if ((ifp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        fatal("cannot open input file");
    /* Seek to end */
    if (fseek(ifp, 0L, 2) == -1)
        fatal("seek error");

    /* Find current size */
    size = ftell(ifp);
    size = (size < nchars) ? 0L : size - nchars;

    /* Seek to point */
    if (fseek(ifp, size, 0) == -1)
        fatal("seek error");
    while ((c = getc(ifp)) != EOF)
        /* Copy rest to stdout */
        putchar(c);
    if (fclose(ifp) != EOF)
        fatal("cannot close");
    exit(0);
}

```

**See Also****ftell(), lseek(), STDIO****Diagnostics**

For any diagnostic error, **fseek()** returns -1; otherwise, it returns zero. If **fseek()** goes beyond the end of the file, it will not return an error message until the corresponding read or write is performed.

**fstat() — System Call**

Find file attributes

**#include <sys/stat.h>****fstat(descriptor, statptr) int descriptor; struct stat \*statptr;**

**fstat()** returns a structure that contains the attributes of a file including protection information, file type, and file size. *descriptor* is the file descriptor for the open file, and *statptr* points to a structure

of the type **stat**, which is defined in the header file **stat.h**.

The following summarizes the structure **stat** and defines the permission and file type bits.

```
struct stat {
    dev_t st_dev;
    ino_t st_ino;
    unsigned short st_mode;
    short st_nlink;
    short st_uid;
    short st_gid;
    dev_t st_rdev;
    size_t st_size;
    time_t st_atime;
    time_t st_mtime;
    time_t st_ctime;
};

#define S_IFMT 0170000      /* file types */
#define S_IFREG 0100000    /* ordinary file */
#define S_IFDIR 0040000    /* directory */
#define S_IFCHR 0020000    /* character special */
#define S_IFBLK 0060000    /* block special */
#define S_ISUID 0004000    /* set user id */
#define S_ISGID 0002000    /* set group id */
#define S_ISVTX 0001000    /* save text bit */
#define S_IREAD 0000400    /* owner read permission */
#define S_IWRITE 0000200   /* owner write permission */
#define S_IXEXEC 0000100   /* owner execute permission */
```

The entries **st\_dev** and **st\_ino** together form a unique description of the file. The former is the device on which the file and its i-node reside, whereas the latter is the index number of the file. The entry **st\_mode** gives the permission bits, as outlined above. The entry **st\_nlink** gives the number of links to the file. The user id and group id of the owner are **st\_uid** and **st\_gid**, respectively. The entry **st\_rdev**, valid only for special files, holds the major and minor numbers for the file.

The entry **st\_size** gives the size of the file, in bytes. For a pipe, the size is the number of bytes waiting to be read from the pipe.

Three entries for each file give the last occurrences of various events in the file's history. **st\_atime** gives time the file was last read or written to. **st\_mtime** gives the time of the last modification, write for files, create or delete entry for directories. **st\_ctime** gives the last change to the attributes, not including times and size.

### Example

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **pipe()**.

### Files

<sys/stat.h>

### See Also

chmod(), chown(), ls, open(), stat(), system calls

## Notes

**fstat()** differs from the related function **stat** mainly in that it accesses the file through its descriptor, which was returned by a successful call to **open()**, whereas **stat** takes the file's path name and opens it itself before checking its status.

## Diagnostics

**fstat()** returns -1 if the file is not found or if *statptr* is invalid.

## fstatfs() — System Call

Get information about a file system

```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/statfs.h>
int fstatfs (filedes, buffer, length, fstype)
int filedes;
struct statfs *buffer;
int length, fstype;
```

The COHERENT system call **fstatfs()** returns information about a file system, either mounted or unmounted.

*buffer* points to a structure of type **statfs**, which contains the following members:

short	f_fstyp;	/* type of the file system */
short	f_bsize;	/* block size */
short	f_frsize;	/* fragment size */
long	f_blocks;	/* number of blocks in the file system */
long	f_bfree;	/* number of free blocks */
long	f_files;	/* number of file nodes */
long	f_ffree;	/* number of free file nodes */
char	f_fname[6];	/* name of the volume */
char	f_fpack[6];	/* name of the pack */

*length* is the length of the area into which **fstatfs()** can write its output. Always set this to **sizeof(struct statfs)**.

*filedes* and *fstype* identify the file system. If the file system is unmounted, then *filedes* should give the file descriptor for the device by which the file system is accessed, as returned by a call to **creat()**, **dup()**, **open()**, or **pipe()**; and *fstype* contains the type of the file system. If the file system is mounted, then *filedes* should give the file descriptor of a file on the file system in question, and *fstype* must be set to zero.

**fstatfs()** returns zero if all went well. If something went wrong, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

## See Also

**mkfs**, **statfs()**, **system calls**, **ustat()**

## Notes

**fstatfs()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

## ftell() — STDIO Function (libc)

Return current position of file pointer

```
#include <stdio.h>
long ftell(fp) FILE *fp;
```

**ftell()** returns the current position of the seek pointer. Like its cousin **fseek()**, **ftell()** takes into account any buffering that is associated with the stream *fp*.

### Example

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fseek()**.

### See Also

**fseek()**, **lseek()**, **rewind()**, **STDIO**

### **ftime()** — System Call

Get the current time from the operating system

**#include** <sys/timeb.h>

**ftime**(*tbp*) **struct timeb** \**tbp*;

**ftime()** fills the structure **timeb**, which is pointed to *tbp*, with COHERENT's representation of the current time. **timeb** is defined in the header file **timeb.h**, as follows:

```
struct timeb {
    time_t time;
    unsigned short millitm;
    short timezone;
    short dstflag;
}
```

The member **time** is the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 0h00m00s GMT. **millitm** is a count of milliseconds. **timezone** and **dstflag** are obsolete; they have been replaced by the environmental variable **TIMEZONE**.

### See Also

**date**, **system calls**, **time**, **TIMEZONE**, **types.h**

### Notes

**ftime()** is found only under COHERENT 286. Users of COHERENT 386 should use **time()** instead. See its Lexicon entry for details.

The ANSI standard eliminates this function from the set of standard time functions. Users are well advised to modify their time routines to eliminate **ftime()**.

### **function** — Definition

A **function** is the C term for a portion of code that is named, can be invoked by name, and that performs a task. Many functions can accept data in the form of arguments, modify the data, and return a value to the statement that invoked it.

### See Also

**data types**, **definitions**, **executable file**, **library**, **portability**

### **fwrite()** — **STDIO** Function (**libc**)

Write into file stream

**#include** <stdio.h>

**int** **fwrite**(*buffer*, *size*, *n*, *fp*)

**char** \**buffer*; **unsigned** *size*, *n*; **FILE** \**fp*;

**fwrite()** writes *n* items, each of *size* bytes, from *buffer* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*.



### Example

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **fopen()**.

### See Also

**fread()**, **STDIO**

### Diagnostics

**fwrite()** normally returns the number of items written. If an error occurs, the returned value will not be the same as *n*.

### fwttable — Command

Build font-width table

**fwttable** [ **-pv** ] [ *infile* [ *outfile* ] ]

**fwttable** builds a binary font-width table for use by **troff**. It understands PCL (Printer Control Language) bitmap fonts for the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet family of printers (plus compatibles), and AFM (Adobe Font Metric) descriptions of PostScript fonts.

For the typesetting program **troff** to use a font, it must know the width of each character in the font and how to tell the printer to select the font. **troff** contains built-in information about a few standard fonts, but to use any other font you must use the **troff** directive **.lf** to load a binary *font-width table* that contains information about the font. The command **fwttable** normally reads a PCL bitmap font for an HP-compatible laser printer from *infile* (or the standard input) and writes a font-width table for the font to *outfile* (or the standard output).

Loading a PCL **troff** font-width table with an **.lf** directive provides **troff** with character-width information about the font and tells it the PCL command (escape sequence) required to select the font. However, it does *not* download the font to the printer. You must download each required font to the printer with the **hpr** command (using its **-f** option) before you print the **troff** output; if the fonts are not available in the printer, the output will not be what you expect.

With option **-p**, **fwttable** reads an AFM (Adobe Font Metric) description for a PostScript font from *infile* and writes a font-width table to *outfile*.

With option **-v**, **fwttable** prints a brief font description to the standard error file.

### Files

**/usr/lib/roff/troff\_pcl/fwt/** — Directory for PCL font-width tables

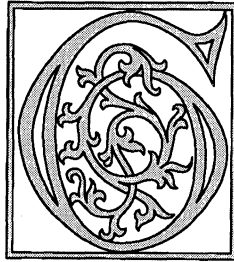
**/usr/lib/roff/troff\_ps/fwt/** — Directory for PostScript font-width tables

### See Also

**commands**, **hpr**, **troff**

### Notes

**fwttable** does not understand Intellifont scalable fonts.



---

***gcd()* — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Set variable to greatest common divisor

**#include** <mprec.h>

**void** gcd(*a*, *b*, *c*)

**mint** \**a*, \**b*, \**c*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. *gcd* sets *c* to the greatest common divisor of *a* and *b*.

**See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

---

***general functions* — Overview**

The library **libc** includes a number of functions that perform useful, general tasks:

<b>_exit()</b>	Terminate a process
<b>abort()</b>	End program immediately
<b>abs()</b>	Return the absolute value of an integer
<b>alloca()</b>	Dynamically allocate space on the stack (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>assert()</b>	Check assertion at run time
<b>atof()</b>	Convert ASCII strings to floating point
<b>atoi()</b>	Convert ASCII strings to integers
<b>atol()</b>	Convert ASCII strings to long integers
<b>bsearch()</b>	Search an array
<b>calloc()</b>	Allocate dynamic memory
<b>candaddr()</b>	Convert a <b>daddr_t</b> to canonical format
<b>candev()</b>	Convert a <b>dev_t</b> to canonical format
<b>canino()</b>	Convert a <b>ino_t</b> to canonical format
<b>canint()</b>	Convert a <b>int</b> to canonical format
<b>canlong()</b>	Convert a <b>long</b> to canonical format
<b>canshort()</b>	Convert a <b>short</b> to canonical format
<b>cansize()</b>	Convert an <b>fsize_t</b> to canonical format
<b>cantime()</b>	Convert a <b>time_t</b> to canonical format
<b>canvaddr()</b>	Convert a <b>vaddr_t</b> to canonical format
<b>closedir()</b>	Close a directory stream (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>crypt()</b>	Encryption using rotor algorithm
<b>decvax_d()</b>	Convert a <b>double</b> from IEEE to DECVAX format
<b>decvax_f()</b>	Convert a <b>float</b> from IEEE to DECVAX format
<b>div()</b>	Perform integer division
<b>dup2()</b>	Duplicate a file descriptor
<b>ieee_d()</b>	Convert a <b>double</b> from DECVAX to IEEE format
<b>ieee_f()</b>	Convert a <b>float</b> from DECVAX to IEEE format
<b>endgrent()</b>	Close group file

---

<b>endpwent()</b>	Close password file
<b>execl()</b>	Execute a load module
<b>execle()</b>	Execute a load module
<b>execlp()</b>	Execute a load module
<b>execv()</b>	Execute a load module
<b>execvp()</b>	Execute a load module
<b>free()</b>	Return dynamic memory to free memory pool
<b>frexp()</b>	Separate fraction and exponent
<b>getenv()</b>	Read environmental variable
<b>getgrent()</b>	Get group file information
<b>getgrgid()</b>	Get group file information, by group id
<b>getgrnam()</b>	Get group file information, by group name
<b>getlogin()</b>	Get login name
<b>getopt()</b>	Get a command-line option
<b>getpass()</b>	Get password with prompting
<b>getpw()</b>	Search password file
<b>getpwent()</b>	Get password file information
<b>getpwnam()</b>	Get password file information, by name
<b>getpwuid()</b>	Get password file information, by id
<b>getwd()</b>	Get current working directory name
<b>gtty()</b>	Terminal initialization
<b>isatty()</b>	Check if a device is a terminal
<b>l3tol()</b>	Convert file system block number to long integer
<b>ldexp()</b>	Combine fraction and exponent
<b>ldiv()</b>	Perform long integer division
<b>longjmp()</b>	Return from a non-local goto
<b>l3tol3()</b>	Convert long integer to file system block number
<b>malloc()</b>	Allocate dynamic memory
<b>mktemp()</b>	Generate a temporary file name
<b>modf()</b>	Separate integral part and fraction
<b>mtype()</b>	Return symbolic machine type
<b>nlist()</b>	Symbol table lookup
<b>opendir()</b>	Open a directory stream (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>path()</b>	Build a path name for a file
<b>perror()</b>	System call error messages
<b>qsort()</b>	Sort arrays in memory
<b>rand()</b>	Generate pseudo-random numbers
<b>readdir()</b>	Read a directory stream (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>realloc()</b>	Reallocate dynamic memory
<b>rewinddir()</b>	Rewind a directory stream (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>sbrk()</b>	Increase a program's data space
<b>seekdir()</b>	Reset the position within a directory stream (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>semctl()</b>	Control semaphore operations
<b>semget()</b>	Get a set of semaphores
<b>semop()</b>	Perform semaphore operations
<b>setgrent()</b>	Rewind group file
<b>setjmp()</b>	Perform non-local goto
<b>setpwent()</b>	Rewind password file
<b>shellsort()</b>	Sort arrays in memory
<b>shmctl()</b>	Control shared-memory operations
<b>shmget()</b>	Get the shared-memory segment
<b>sleep()</b>	Suspend execution
<b>srand()</b>	Seed random number generator
<b>strtod()</b>	Convert string to floating-point number

**strtol()** . . . . . Convert string to long integer  
**strtoul()** . . . . . Convert string to unsigned long integer  
**swab()** . . . . . Swap a pair of bytes  
**system()** . . . . . Pass a command to the shell for execution  
**telldir()** . . . . . Return position within a directory stream (COHERENT 386 only)  
**ttyname()** . . . . . Identify a terminal  
**ttyslot()** . . . . . Return a terminal's line number

### See Also

Libraries, system calls

### **getc()** — STDIO Macro (**stdio.h**)

Read character from file stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int getc(fp) FILE \*fp;**

**getc()** is a macro that reads a character from the file stream *fp*, and returns an **int**.

### Example

The following example creates a simple copy utility. It opens the first file named on the command line and copies its contents into the second file named on the command line.

```
#include <stdio.h>

void fatal(string)
char *string;
{
    printf("%s\n", string);
    exit (1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    int foo;
    FILE *source, *dest;

    if (--argc != 2)
        fatal("Usage: copy [source][destination]");

    if ((source = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        fatal("Cannot open source file");
    if ((dest = fopen(argv[2], "w")) == NULL)
        fatal("Cannot open destination file");

    while ((foo = getc(source)) != EOF)
        putc(foo, dest);
}
```

### See Also

**fgetc()**, **getchar()**, **putc()**, **STDIO**

### Diagnostics

**getc()** returns EOF at end of file or on read fatal.

## Notes

Because **getc()** is a macro, arguments with side effects probably will not work as expected. Also, because **getc()** is a complex macro, its use in expressions of too great a complexity may cause unforeseen difficulties. Use of the function **fgetc()** may avoid this.

## **getchar()** — STDIO Macro (stdio.h)

Read character from standard input

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int getchar()**

**getchar()** is a macro that reads a character from the standard input. It is equivalent to **getc(stdin)**.

## Example

The following example gets one or more characters from the keyboard, and echoes them on the screen.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
{
    int foo;
    while ((foo = getchar()) != EOF)
        putchar(foo);
}
```

## See Also

**getc()**, **putchar()**, **STDIO**

## Diagnostics

**getchar()** returns **EOF** at end of file or on read error.

## **getdents()** — System Call

Read directory entries

**#include <sys/dirent.h>**

**int getdents (fd, buffer, num)**

**int fd;**

**char \*buffer;**

**unsigned num;**

The COHERENT-386 system call **getdents()** is one of a set of COHERENT routines that manipulate directories in a device-independent manner. It reads an entry from a directory file and writes it into a structure of type **dirent**.

*fd* is the file descriptor for the directory file; it must be a file descriptor opened by a call to **open()** or **dup()**. *buffer* points to the area where **getdents()** writes its output. *num* gives the size of the area pointed to by *buffer*; **getdents()** returns no more than *num* bytes of information.

**getdents()** writes its output into a structure of type **dirent**, which is defined in the header file **dirent.h**. It has the following structure:

```
struct dirent {
    long d_ino;
    long d_off;
    unsigned short d_reclen;
    char d_name[1];
};
```

Field **d\_name** is a NUL-terminated string of indefinite length. Because this structure does not have a fixed size, you must tell **getdents()** the maximum number of bytes it can output.

**getdents()** automatically increments the offset pointer associated with *fd* to point to the next entry within the directory file. This lets you within a loop to read the entire contents of a directory file.

If all goes well, **getdents()** returns the number of bytes it wrote into *buffer*. It returns zero if it has reached the end of the directory file. If something went wrong (for example, you tried to use it to read a file other than a directory file), it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### See Also

**dirent.h**, **closedir()**, **opendir()**, **readdir()**, **rewinddir()**, **system calls**, **tellmdir()**, **system calls**

### Notes

This system call is designed to support directory-access library routines. It should not be called by user programs.

**getdents()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

The COHERENT implementation of **getdents** was written by D. Gwynn.

## **getegid()** — System Call

Get effective group identifier

**getegid()**

Every process has two different versions of its *group identifier*, called the *real* group identifier and the *effective* group identifier. The group identifiers determine eligibility to access files and use system privileges. Normally, these two identifiers are identical. However, for a *set group identifier* load module (see **exec**), the real group identifier is that of the group's current group, whereas the effective group identifier is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from groups that invoke the program.

**getegid()** returns the effective group identifier.

### See Also

**access**, **exec**, **geteuid()**, **getgid()**, **getuid()**, **login**, **setuid()**, **system calls**

## **getenv()** — General Function

Read environmental variable

**char \*getenv(VARIABLE) char \*VARIABLE;**

A program may read variables from its *environment*. This allows the program to accept information that is specific to it. The environment consists of an array of strings, each having the form *VARIABLE=VALUE*. When called with the string *VARIABLE*, **getenv()** reads the environment, and returns a pointer to the string *VALUE*.

### Example

This example prints the environmental variable **PATH**.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    char *env;
    extern char *getenv();

    if ((env = getenv("PATH")) == NULL) {
        printf("Sorry, cannot find PATH\n");
        exit(1);
    }
    printf("PATH = %s\n", env);
}
```

### See Also

environmental variables, envp, exec, sh

### Diagnostics

When *VARIABLE* is not found or has no value, `getenv()` returns NULL.

## geteuid() — System Call

Get effective user identifier

**geteuid()**

Every process has two different versions of its *user id*, called the *real* user id and the *effective* user id. The user ids determine eligibility to access files or employ system privileges. Normally, these two ids are identical. However, for a *set user id* load module (see **exec**), the real user id is that of the user, whereas the effective user id is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from the user who invokes the program.

**geteuid()** returns the effective user identifier

### Example

For an example of this call, see the entry for **getpwent()**.

### See Also

**access()**, **exec**, **getegid()**, **getgid()**, **getuid()**, **login**, **setuid()**, **system calls**

## getgid() — System Call

Get real group identifier

**getgid()**

Every process has two different versions of its *user id*, called the *real* user id and the *effective* user id. The user ids determine eligibility to access files or employ system privileges. Normally, these two ids are identical. However, for a *set user id* load module (see **exec**), the real user id is that of the user, whereas the effective user id is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from the user who invokes the program.

**getgid()** returns the real group id.

### See Also

**access()**, **exec**, **getegid()**, **geteuid()**, **getuid()**, **login**, **setuid()**, **system calls**

**getgrent() — General Function (libc)**

Get group file information

**#include <grp.h>**

**struct group \*getgrent();**

**getgrent()** returns the next entry from file **/etc/group**. It returns **NULL** if an error occurs or if the end of file is encountered.

**Files**

**/etc/group**

**<grp.h>**

**See Also**

**general functions, group**

**Notes**

All structures and information returned are in a static area internal to **getgrent()**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**getgrgid() — General Function (libc)**

Get group file information, by group id

**#include <grp.h>**

**struct group \*getgrgid(gid);**

**int gid;**

**getgrgid()** searches file **/etc/group** for the first entry with a numerical group id of *gid*. It returns a pointer to the entry if found; it returns **NULL** if an error occurs or if the end of file is encountered.

**Files**

**/etc/group**

**<grp.h>**

**See Also**

**general functions, group**

**Notes**

All structures and information returned are in a static area internal to **getgrgid()**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**getgrnam() — General Function (libc)**

Get group file information, by group name

**#include <grp.h>**

**struct group \*getgrnam(gname);**

**char \*gname;**

**getgrnam()** searches file **/etc/group** for the first entry with a group name of *gname*. It returns a pointer to the entry for *gname* if it is found; it returns **NULL** for any error or if the end of the file is encountered.

**Files**

**/etc/group**

**<grp.h>**

**See Also**

**general functions, group**



## Notes

All structures and information returned are in a static area internal to **getgrnam()**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

## **getlogin()** — General Function (libc)

Get login name

**char \*getlogin()**

The name corresponding to the current user id is not always the same as the name under which a user logged into the COHERENT system. For example, the user may have issued a **su** command, or there may be several login names associated with a user id. **getlogin()** returns the login name found in the file **/etc/utmp**.

In cases where **getlogin()** fails to produce a result, **getpwuid()** (described in **getpwent()**) is normally used to determine the user name for a process.

## Files

**/etc/utmp** login names

## See Also

general functions, **getpwent()**, **getuid()**, **su**, **ttyname()**, **utmp.h**, **who**

## Diagnostics

**getlogin()** returns NULL if the login name cannot be determined.

## Notes

**getlogin()** stores the returned name in a static area that is destroyed by subsequent calls.

## **getopt()** — General Function

Get option letter from argv

**int getopt(argc, argv, optstring)**

**int argc;**

**char \*\*argv;**

**char \*optstring;**

**extern char \*optarg;**

**extern int optind;**

**getopt()** returns the next option letter in **argv** that matches a letter in **optstring**. **optstring** is a string of recognized option letters. If a letter is followed by a colon, the option must have an argument, which may or may not be separated from it by white space. **optarg** points to the start of the option argument on return from **getopt()**.

**getopt()** writes into **optind** the **argv** index of the next argument to be processed. Because **optind** is external, it is normally initialized to one automatically before the first call to **getopt()**.

When all options have been processed (i.e., up to the first non-option argument), **getopt()** returns EOF. The special option "--" may be used to delimit the end of the options: **getopt()** returns EOF and skip "--".

## See Also

general functions

## Diagnostics

**getopt()** prints an error message and returns a question mark when it encounters an option letter not included in **optstring**.

### Notes

It is not obvious how '-' standing alone should be treated. This version treats it as a non-option argument, which is not always right.

Option arguments are allowed to begin with '-'. This is reasonable, but reduces the amount of error checking possible.

**getopt()** returns the parsed letter option in the external **int optopt**, which is overwritten by each call to **getopt()**. When **getopt()** returns '?', it can be helpful to examine the contents of this variable.

### **getopts** — Command

Parse command-line options

**getopts** *optstring* *name* [*opt*]

The command **getopts** is available under the Korn **ksh** to parse a command's options and check their legality. *optstring* must contain the options letters that the command using **getopts** will recognize. If a letter is followed by a colon ':', that option must have an argument that is separated from it by whitespace.

Each time it is invoked, **getopts** places the next option into the shell variable *name* and the index of the next argument to be processed into the shell variable **OPTIND**, which is initialized by default to one. When an option requires an argument, **getopts** copies it into the shell variable **OPTARG**. If **getopts** encounters an error, it initializes variable *name* to '?'.

When it encounters the end of the options, **getopts** exits with non-zero status. The special option "--" can be used to delineate the end of options.

### Example

The following example processes a command that takes options **a**, **b**, and **o**; the last option requires an argument:

```
while getopts abo: c
do
    case $c in
        a|b)  FLAGS=$FLAGS$c;;
        o)    OARG=$OPTARG;;
        \?)   echo $USAGE 1>&2
              exit 2;;
    esac
done
shift OPTIND-1
```

This code will accept any of the following as equivalent:

```
cmd -a -b -o "xxx z yy" file
cmd -a -b -o "xxx z yy" -- file
cmd -ab -o "xxx z yy" file
cmd -ab -o "xxx z yy" -- file
```

### See Also

**commands**, **getopt()**, **ksh**

**getpass() — General Function (libc)**

Get password with prompting

```
char *getpass(prompt)
char *prompt;
```

**getpass()** first prints the *prompt*. Then it disables echoing of input characters on the terminal device (either the file **/dev/tty** or the standard input), reads a password from it, and restores echoing on the terminal. It returns the given password.

**Files****/dev/tty****See Also****crypt()**, **general functions**, **login**, **passwd**, **su****Notes**

The password is stored in a static location that is overwritten by successive calls. This static buffer is 50 characters long; any password longer than that can cause problems of one sort or another.

**getpgrp() — System Call**

Get process group number

**getpgrp()**

**getpgrp()** gets and returns the process group number for the requesting process.

**See Also****system calls**, **setpgrp()****getpid() — System Call**

Get process identifier

**getpid()**

Every process has a unique number, called its *process id*. **fork()** returns the process id of a created child process to the parent process.

**getpid()** returns the process id of the requesting process. Typically a process uses **getpid()** to pass its process id to another process which wants to send it a signal, or to generate a unique temporary file name.

**Example**

For an example of using this system call in a C program, see **signal()**.

**See Also****fork()**, **kill**, **mktemp**, **system calls****getpw() — General Function**

Search password file

**getpw(uid, line)**

```
short uid;
char *line;
```

**getpw()** searches the password file **/etc/passwd** for the first entry with numerical user id *uid*. If found, *line* receives the corresponding line from the password file.

**Files**

/etc/passwd

**See Also**

general functions, **getpwent()**, **getuid()**, **passwd**

**Diagnostics**

**getpw()** returns a nonzero value on error.

**getpwent()** — General Function

Get password file information

**#include <pwd.h>**

**struct passwd \*getpwent()**

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file **/etc/passwd**, which contains information about every user of the system. The returned structure **passwd** is defined in the header file **pwd.h**. For a description of this structure, see **pwd.h**.

**getpwent()** returns the next entry from **/etc/passwd**.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates **getpwent()**, **getpwnam()**, **getpwuid()**, **setpwent()**, and **endpwent()**.

```
#include <pwd.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    int euid,                /* Effective user id */
        ruid;               /* Real user id */
    struct passwd *pstp;
    int i;

    /* Print out all users and home directories */
    i = 0;
    setpwent();              /* Rewind file /etc/passwd */
    while ((pstp = getpwent()) != NULL)
        printf("%d: user name is %s, home directory is %s.\n",
            ++i, pstp->pw_name, pstp->pw_dir);

    /* Find real user name.
     * NOTE: functions getpwuid and getpwnam rewind /etc/passwd
     * by calling setpwent().
     */
    ruid = getuid();
    if ((pstp = getpwuid(ruid)) == NULL) {
        /* If this message appears, something's wrong */
        fprintf(stderr, "Cannot find user with id number %d\n", pstp);
        exit (1);
    } else
        printf("User's real name is %s\n", pstp->pw_name);
}
```

```

/* Find the user id for superuser root */
((pstp = getpwnam("root")) == NULL) ?
    fprintf(stderr, "Do you have user root on your system?\n") :
    printf("root id is  %d\n", pstp->pw_uid);

/* Check if the effective process id is the superuser id.
 *
 * NOTE: if you wish to see how to enable the root
 * privileges, you can run this command:
 * cc pwfun.c
 * su root chown root pwfun
 * su root chmod 4511 pwfun
 */

euid = geteuid();          /* Get effective user id. */
printf("Process ");
(euid == pstp->pw_uid) ? printf("has ") : printf("doesn't have ");
printf("the root privileges\n");
exit(0);
}

```

### Files

/etc/passwd  
pwd.h

### See Also

endpwent(), general functions, getpwnam(), getpwuid(), pwd.h, setpwent()

### Diagnostics

getpwent() returns NULL for any error or on end of file.

### Notes

All structures and information returned are in static areas internal to **getpwent()**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

### getpwnam() — General Function

Get password file information, by name

#include <pwd.h>

struct passwd \*getpwnam(uname)

char \*uname;

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file **/etc/passwd**, which contains information about every user of the system. The returned structure **passwd** is defined in the header file **pwd.h**. For a description of this structure, see **pwd.h**.

**getpwnam()** attempts to find the first entry with a name of *uname*.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **getpwent()**.

### Files

/etc/passwd  
pwd.h

**See Also**

endpwent(), general functions, getpwent(), getpwuid(), pwd.h, setpwent()

**Diagnostics**

getpwnam() returns NULL for any error or on end of file.

**Notes**

All structures and information returned are in static areas internal to **getpwnam()**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**getpwuid() — General Function (libc)**

Get password file information, by id

**#include <pwd.h>**

**struct passwd \*getpwuid(uid)**

**int uid;**

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file **/etc/passwd**, which contains information about every user of the system. The returned structure **passwd** is defined in the header file **pwd.h**. For more information on this structure, see **pwd.h**.

**getpwuid()** attempts to find the first entry with a numerical user id of *uid*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **getpwent()**.

**Files**

**/etc/passwd**

**pwd.h**

**See Also**

endpwent(), general functions, getpwent(), getpwnam(), pwd.h, setpwent()

**Diagnostics**

getpwuid() returns NULL for any error or on end of file.

**Notes**

All structures and information returned are in static areas internal to **getpwuid()**. Therefore, information from a previous call is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**gets() — STDIO Function (libc)**

Read string from standard input

**#include <stdio.h>**

**char \*gets(buffer) char \*buffer;**

**gets()** reads characters from the standard input into a buffer pointed at by *buffer*. It stops reading as soon as it detects a newline character or EOF. **gets()** discards the newline or EOF, appends NUL onto the string it has built, and returns another copy of *buffer*.

**Example**

The following example uses **gets()** to get a string from the console; the string is echoed twice to demonstrate what **gets()** returns.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    char buffer[80];

    printf("Type something: ");

    /*
     * because of the way COHERENT's teletype
     * driver works, the following fflush has
     * no effect. It should be included for
     * portability to other operating systems.
     */

    fflush(stdout);
    printf("%s\n%s\n", gets(buffer), buffer);
}
```

### See Also

**buffer**, **fgets()**, **getc()**, **STDIO**

### Diagnostics

**gets()** returns NULL if an error occurs or if EOF is seen before any characters are read.

### Notes

**gets()** stops reading the input string as soon as it detects a newline character. If a previous input routine left a newline character in the standard input buffer, **gets()** will read it and immediately stop accepting characters; to the user, it will appear as if **gets()** is not working at all.

For example, if **getchar()** is followed by **gets()**, the first character **gets()** will receive is the newline character left behind by **getchar()**. A simple statement will remedy this:

```
while (getchar() != '\n')
    ;
```

This throws away the newline character left behind by **getchar()**; **gets()** will now work correctly.

## getty — System Maintenance

### Terminal initialization

#### /etc/getty type

The initialization process **init** invokes **getty** for each terminal indicated in the file **/etc/ttys**. **getty** tries to read a user name from the terminal which is the standard input, adapting its mode settings accordingly. Then **getty** invokes **login** with the name read. This process may set delays, mapping of upper to lower case, speed, and whether the terminal normally uses carriage return or linefeed to terminate input.

If the terminal baud rate is wrong, the login message printed by **getty** will appear garbled. If the specified *type* indicates variable speeds, as described below, hitting BREAK will try the next speed.

**init** passes the third character in a line of the file **/etc/ttys** as the *type* argument to **getty**. *type* conveys information about the terminal port. An upper-case letter in the range **A** to **S** specifies a hard-wired baud rate, as indicated in the header file **<sgtty.h>**. Other characters specify a range of speeds suitable to a dial-in modem. The following variable-speed settings are recognized:

## 710 *getuid()*

---

- 0 Cycles through speeds 300, 1200, 150, and 110 baud, in that order. This is a good default setting for dial-in ports.
- Teletype model 33, fixed at 110 baud.
- 1 Teletype model 37, fixed at 150 baud.
- 2 9600 baud with delays (e.g., Tektronix 4104).
- 3 Cycles between 2400, 1200, and 300 baud. This is used with 2400-bps modems.
- 4 DECwriter (LA36) with delays.
- 5 Like 3, but starts at 300 baud.

**getty** recognizes the following fixed-speed settings, for hard-wired terminals:

<b>A</b>	50 baud
<b>B</b>	75 baud
<b>C</b>	110 baud
<b>D</b>	134 baud
<b>E</b>	150 baud
<b>F</b>	200 baud
<b>G</b>	300 baud
<b>H</b>	600 baud
<b>I</b>	1200 baud
<b>J</b>	1800 baud
<b>K</b>	2000 baud
<b>L</b>	2400 baud
<b>M</b>	3600 baud
<b>N</b>	4800 baud
<b>O</b>	7200 baud
<b>P</b>	9600 baud
<b>Q</b>	19200 baud
<b>R</b>	EXT
<b>S</b>	EXT

### **Files**

/etc/tty  
<sgtty.h>

### **See Also**

**init**, **ioctl()**, **login**, **sgtty.h**, **system maintenance**, **stty**, **ttys**

## **getuid() — System Call**

Get real user identifier  
**getuid()**

Every process has two different versions of its *user id*, called the *real* user id and the *effective* user id. The user ids determine eligibility to access files or employ system privileges. Normally, these two ids are identical. However, for a *set user id* load module (see **exec()**), the real user id is that of the user, whereas the effective user id is that of the load module owner. This distinction allows system programs to use files which are protected from the user who invokes the program.

**getuid()** returns the real user id.

### **Example**

For an example of this call, see the entry for **getpwent()**.

## **LEXICON**



**See Also**

`access()`, `exec`, `getegid()`, `geteuid()`, `getgid()`, `login`, `setuid()`, `system` calls

**getw() — STDIO Function (libc)**

Read word from file stream

**#include** <stdio.h>

**int** `getw(fp)` **FILE** \*fp;

`getw()` reads a word (an **int**) from the file stream *fp*.

`getw()` differs from `getc()` in that `getw()` gets and returns an **int**, whereas `getc()` returns either a **char** promoted to an **int**, or EOF. To detect EOF while using `getw()`, you must use `feof()`.

**See Also**

`canon`, `getc()`, `STDIO`

**Notes**

`getw()` returns EOF on errors.

`getw()` assumes that the bytes of the word it receives are in the natural byte ordering of the machine. This means that such files might not be portable between machines.

**getwd() — General Function (libc)**

Get current working directory name

**char** \*`getwd(pathname)`

**char** \**pathname*

The *current working directory* is the directory from which file name searches commence when a path name does not begin with '/'. `getwd()` returns the name of the current working directory. It is useful for processes like spoolers and daemons, which must generate full path names for files.

If you do not have permission to search all levels of the directory hierarchy above the current directory, `getwd()` cannot obtain the directory name for you.

**See Also**

`chdir()`, `general` functions, `pwd`

**Diagnostics**

`getwd()` returns NULL and writes an error message into *pathname* if an error occurs, e.g., if the current directory cannot be found or if any other error occurs.

**Notes**

`getwd()` fails if the current directory name is longer than MAXPATHLEN characters (1,024 characters as defined in header file <sys/param.h>). The chunk of memory pointed to by *pathname* must be big enough to hold MAXPATHLEN characters plus a trailing NUL.

If `getwd()` fails, the working directory cannot be restored to its initial value.

**GMT — Definition**

**GMT** is an abbreviation of Greenwich Mean Time, the time recorded at the Greenwich Observatory in England, where by international convention the Earth's zero meridian is fixed.

By definition, COHERENT fixes system time in GMT. It calculates local time as an offset of GMT; for example, the time zone for Chicago is six hours (360 minutes) behind Greenwich, so the local time for Chicago is calculated by subtracting 360 minutes from GMT.

**See Also****definitions, gmtime(), localtime, time, time.h, TIMEZONE****Notes**

The ANSI Standard replaces GMT with UTC (*universal temps coordonne*, or universal coordinated time) for C programming. The change is mainly one of terminology rather than substance, as some signatories to international conventions object to naming the standard for global time after a village in England.

Under international convention, there are two UTC standards: UTC1 is based on solar time and is identical to current GMT, whereas UTC2 uses atomic clocks that are corrected by comparison with pulsars. These standards drift apart as the earth's rotation slows; thus, "leap seconds" are inserted periodically into UTC1 to bridge the difference.

**gmtime()** — Time Function (libc)

Convert system time to calendar structure

#include &lt;time.h&gt;

#include &lt;sys/types.h&gt;

tm \*gmtime(time\_t time\_t \*timep);

**gmtime()** converts the internal time from seconds since midnight January 1, 1970 GMT, into fields that give integer years since 1900, the month, day of the month, the hour, the minute, the second, the day of the week, and yearday. It returns a pointer to the structure **tm**, which defines these fields, and which is itself defined in the header file **time.h**. Unlike its cousin, **localtime()**, **gmtime()** returns Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

**Example**

For an example of how to use this function, see **asctime()**.

**See Also****GMT, localtime(), time, TIMEZONE****Notes**

**gmtime()** returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

**goto** — C Keyword

Unconditionally jump within a function

A **goto** command jumps to the area of the program introduced by a label. A program can **goto** only within a function; to jump across function boundaries, you must use the functions **setjmp** and **longjmp**.

In the context of C programming, the most common use for **goto** is to exit from a control block or go to the top of a control block. It is used most often to write "rip cord" routines, i.e., routines that are executed when an major error occurs too deeply within a function for the program to disentangle itself correctly. Note that in most instances, **goto** is a bad solution to a problem that can be better solved by structured programming.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates how to use **goto**.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    char line[80];
```

```

getline:
    printf("Enter line: ");
    fflush(stdout);
    gets(line);

/* a series of tests often is best done with goto's */
    if (*line == 'x') {
        printf("Bad line\n");
        goto getline;
    } else if (*line == 'y') {
        printf("Try again\n");
        goto getline;
    } else if (*line == 'q')
        goto goodbye;
    else
        goto getline;

goodbye:
    printf("Goodbye.\n");
    exit(0);
}

```

## See Also

### C keywords

### Notes

The *C Programming Language* describes **goto** as “infinitely-abusable”: *caveat utilitor*.

## grep — Command

Pattern search

**grep** [option ...] [pattern] [file ...]

**grep** searches each *file* for occurrences of the *pattern* (sometimes called a regular expression). If no *file* is specified, **grep** searches the standard input. The *pattern* is given in the same manner as to **ed**. Normally, **grep** prints each line matching the *pattern*.

The following options are available.

- b** With each output line, print the block number in which the line started (used to search file systems).
- c** Print the count of matching lines rather than the lines.
- e** The next argument is *pattern* (useful if the pattern starts with '-').
- f** The next argument is a file containing a list of patterns separated by newlines; there is no *pattern* argument.
- h** When more than one *file* is specified, output lines are normally accompanied by the file name; **-h** suppresses this.
- l** Print the name of each file containing matching lines rather than the lines.

- n** The line number in the file accompanies each line printed.
- s** Suppress all output, just return status.
- v** Print a line if the pattern is *not* found in the line.
- x** Print the line only if it is exactly the same as the pattern; treat wildcards in the pattern as plain text.
- y** Lower-case letters in the pattern match lower-case *and* upper-case letters on the input lines.

### **See Also**

**awk, cgrep, commands, ed, egrep, expr, lex, sed**

### **Diagnostics**

**grep** returns an exit status of zero for success, one for no matches, two for error.

### **Notes**

**cgrep** is a version of **grep** that is optimized for handling C-style expressions.

**egrep** is an extended and faster version of **grep**.

## **group — File Format**

Group file format

The group file **/etc/group** describes the user groups that have been defined on your COHERENT system. This allows users to control the access that members of their group have to certain files. **/etc/group** contains the information to map any ASCII group name to the corresponding numerical group identifier, and vice versa. It also contains, in ASCII, the names of the members of each group. This information is used by, among others, the command **newgrp**.

Each group has an entry in the file **/etc/group** one line per entry. Each line consists of four colon-separated ASCII fields, as follows:

```
group_name : password : group_number : member[,member...]
```

Passwords are encrypted with **crypt**, so the group file is generally readable.

The COHERENT system has five system calls that manipulate **/etc/group**, as follows:

**endgrent** Close **/etc/group**.

**getgrent** Return the next entry from **/etc/group**.

**getgrnam** Return the first entry with a given group name.

**getgrgid** Return the first entry with a given group identifier.

**setgrent** Rewind **/etc/group**, so that searches can begin again from the beginning of the file.

The calls **getgrent**, **getgrgid**, and **getgrnam** each return a pointer to structure **group**, which is defined in the header file **grp.h** as follows:

```
struct group {  
    char    *gr_name;      /* Group name */  
    char    *gr_passwd;    /* Group password */  
    int     gr_gid;        /* Numeric group id */  
    char    **gr_mem;      /* Group members */  
};
```

**Files**

/etc/group

**See Also**

chgrp(), crypt(), endgrent(), file formats, getgrent(), getgrgid(), getgrnam(), grp.h, newgrp, passwd, setgrent()

**Notes**

At present the group password field cannot be set directly (no command similar to **passwd** exists for groups). One alternative is to set the password in the **/etc/passwd** file for a user with the **passwd** command, and then transcribe the password into the group file manually.

**grp.h — Header File**

Declare group structure

**#include <grp.h>**

The header file **grp.h** declares the structure **group**, which is composed as follows:

```

struct group (
    char *gr_name;          /* group name */
    char *gr_passwd;        /* group password */
    int  gr_gid;            /* numeric group id */
    char **gr_mem;          /* group members */
};

```

This structure holds information about the group to which a given user belongs. It is used by the functions **endgrent**, **getgrent**, **getgrgid**, **getgrnam**, and **setgrent**.

**See Also**

header files

**gtty() — General Function (libc)**

Device-dependent control

**#include <sgtty.h>**

**int gtty(fd, sgp)**

**int fd;**

**struct sgttyb \*sgp;**

**gtty()** gets attributes of a terminal. It is shorthand notation for **ioctl** calls with a *command* argument of **TIOCGETP**.

**Example**

For examples of this system call, see **pipe()** and **stty()**.

**Files**

<sgtty.h>

**See Also**

exec, exec(), general functions, ioctl(), open(), read(), stty(), write()

**guess — Command**

Extraordinarily amusing guessing game

**/usr/games/guess**

The COHERENT game **guess** plays a guessing game with you. When you first invoke it, it will ask you to think of an object. As you go through the guessing game, it will ask you for questions by

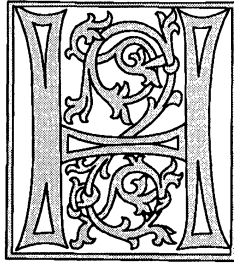
which that object can be distinguished from other objects. **guess** gets "smarter" over time (assuming you don't lie to it), so it over time develops a fighting chance of actually guessing something.

**See Also**

**commands**

**Notes**

**guess** is not for the impatient.



### **hard disk — Technical Information**

The hard disk is the primary means of storing and accessing data under the COHERENT system. This article introduces some aspects of the COHERENT system that affect the care and feeding of your hard disk.

#### **Device Drivers**

The COHERENT system comes with two sets of drivers for hard disks: the **at** drivers, for AT-style hard disks; and the **scsi** drivers, for the SCSI family of hard disks. See their respective articles in the Lexicon for details.

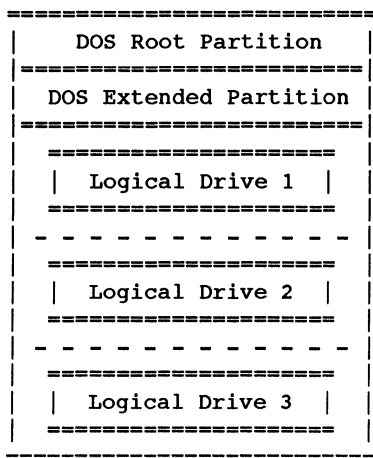
#### **Partitioning**

The COHERENT command **fdisk** displays information about how your hard disk is currently configured. You can also use it to repartition your hard disk and reassign partitions from MS-DOS to COHERENT, or vice versa.

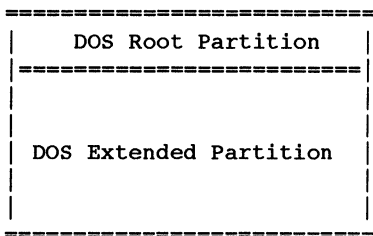
Note that this is an extremely powerful command, with which you can create much mayhem on your system. Like any powerful tool, it should be treated carefully and with respect. See the article on **fdisk** in the Lexicon for details on how to use this command.

Partitioning your hard drive can be an uncomplicated procedure. We offer these guidelines in an effort to make it as simple as possible. Before attempting any partitioning you should first back-up all the data currently on your hard drive. If you do not do this you risk losing data permanently. You should also know the correct physical parameters of your hard drive. This information can be obtained from your machine documentation or from the drive manufacturer. It is best not to rely on the parameters given in the BIOS: these may be translation parameters.

If your drive is formatted for MS-DOS, it is advisable to run MS-DOS **fdisk** before you start to install COHERENT. If the whole drive is taken up by DOS partitions, you must use MS-DOS **fdisk** to create a non-DOS area on the drive. It is not sufficient to have an empty MS-DOS logical drive set aside for COHERENT. COHERENT does not recognise MS-DOS logical drives, it only sees the whole partition. The following diagram shows the way the MS-DOS **fdisk** sees your drive:



And the following diagram shows the way the COHERENT **fdisk** sees your drive:



If you use COHERENT **fdisk** to repartition MS-DOS space, you risk causing MS-DOS **fdisk** to hang. One further word of warning. If you have an automated disk formatting and partitioning utility on your MS-DOS partition such as Disk Manager or Speedstor, you should operate it in "manual" mode, not in "automatic".

Some hard drives have more than 1,024 cylinders. COHERENT can only recognise a drive up to this limit. You may have a utility such as Speedstor that allows you to place MS-DOS partitions beyond that boundary. COHERENT will not see those partitions, but you can still access them as usual through MS-DOS.

When partitioning a drive with more than 1,024 cylinders, be sure to run the partitioning utility before you start to install COHERENT. You should create a non-DOS partition that falls completely within the 1,022-cylinder boundary. Your next MS-DOS partition should start no sooner than the 1,026th cylinder.

### **Adding a COHERENT Partition**

The following describes how to add a new COHERENT partition on your hard disk.

During your initial installation of COHERENT, the installation program handled the details of preparing your hard disk for COHERENT. Adding a partition after the system is installed is not difficult, but it requires that you understand the operation of the following commands: **badscan**, **chmod**, **chown**, **fdisk**, **fsck**, **mkfs** and **mount**. See the Lexicon articles for each of these commands for further information before attempting to add a partition.



In general, the following steps are required when creating a partition for use by COHERENT. Please note that you must not change the size of your existing root partition, or you may no longer be able to boot COHERENT from the hard disk.

1. Completely back up all partitions on your hard disk. Be sure to back up the COHERENT partitions, as well as any non-COHERENT partitions (e.g., those for MS-DOS or OS/2). Verify that your backups are *readable and correct*.
2. Log in as the superuser **root**. Make sure all other users are off the system; then invoke the command **/etc/shutdown**. This shuts down COHERENT and returns the system to single-user mode. Type the command **sync** to flush all buffers.
3. Invoke the COHERENT command **fdisk** and add the COHERENT partition to your disk, as described above. Be sure to write down the device name associated with your new partition (e.g., **/dev/at0c**) and its size.
4. The command **badscan** checks the device for bad blocks. If your partition resides on a non-SCSI device (e.g., MFM, RLL, ESDI, or IDE), run the command **badscan** as follows:

```
/etc/badscan -v -o /conf/proto.device raw_device xdevice
```

where *device* specifies the four-character block-special device name for the partition (e.g., **at0c**), *raw\_device* is the full device path name for the character-special device associated with the partition (e.g., **/dev/rat0c**), and *xdevice* specifies the partition-table device for the disk drive (e.g., **/dev/at0x**).

5. Invoke the command **mkfs** to create a COHERENT file system on the new partition, as follows:

```
/etc/mkfs /dev/device /conf/proto.device
```

This invocation will cause **mkfs** to use the contents of the "proto" file that **badscan** created when it built the *bad\_block* list for the new partition.

6. If need be, use command **mkdir** to create a directory to use as a *mount point* for the newly created file system. The mount point is the directory onto which this directory's file system will be appended. Usually, this directory is located under '/', also called the *root directory*. You can, however, mount a file system onto any directory that already exists. If you create a new directory (e.g., **/w** or **/mydir**), use the commands **chown** and **chmod** to set an appropriate ownership and mode for the directory.
7. Edit the file **/etc/mount.all** and add a line of the following form:

```
/etc/mount device /mount_point
```

where *device* is the full path name of the device that specifies your new partition (e.g., **/dev/at0c**), and *mount\_point* is the name of the directory that you created in the earlier step.

8. Finally, edit the file **/etc/checklist** and add the character special device name (e.g., **/dev/rat0c**) of the new COHERENT partition to it. This will ensure that COHERENT will automatically run **fsck** on that partition's file system whenever you boot the system. This can be vital in recovering from a system crash.

### Adding Another Hard Disk

If you wish to add another hard disk to your system, you may have to run some low-level routines that are hardware specific. See the documentation that accompanies your hardware for details.

In brief, when you install the hard disk, you must partition it, as you did your original hard disk when you first installed COHERENT. If you wish to add non-COHERENT operating systems to one or more partitions, do so first; then add COHERENT to the remaining partitions, as described above.

### Changing the Size of the Root Partition

Changing the size of your **root** file system requires that you reinstall COHERENT. It is strongly advised that you back up *all* partitions of your system before you attempt to do this. In addition, to reduce the time involved in restoring your data files, make an additional backup of all directories and files that have changed from your original MWC installation. The command **find** will help you locate all such files; see its Lexicon entry for details.

You should then follow the directions given in the release notes for installing COHERENT. Note that when you attempt to install COHERENT over an existing COHERENT partition, COHERENT will ask you if you are sure you know what you're doing before the installation procedure creates a new file system on the partition. Be sure to request that a new file system be created, or the installation will fail.

After installing the COHERENT distribution onto your new root partition, restore any data files and directories from the second set of backups that you performed.

### See Also

**at**, **badscan**, **chmod**, **chown**, **fdisk**, **fsck**, **technical information**, **mkfs**, **mount**, **scsi**

### **hash** — Command

Add a command to the shell's hash table

**hash** [-r] [*command* ... ]

The command **hash** lets you manipulate the Korn shell's hashing facility. A hashed command can be accessed instantly by the shell, without the delay of searching the directories in the **PATH** environmental variable.

When called with an argument, **hash** prints all hashed commands. When called with one or more *command* arguments, it adds *command* to its hash table. The option **-r** removes *command* from the hash table.

Note that before you can use hashing, you must use the **set** command to turn it on. For more information on the Korn shell's hashing feature, see the Lexicon entry for **ksh**.

### See Also

**commands**, **ksh**

### **hdiectl.h** — Header File

Control hard-disk I/O

**#include** <sys/hdiectl.h>

**hdiectl.h** declares constants and structures used to control hard-disk I/O.

### See Also

**header files**

### **head** — Command

Print the beginning of a file

**head** [+*n*[**bcl**]] [*file*]

**head** [-*n*[**bcl**]] [*file*]

**head** copies the first part of *file*, or of the standard input if none is named, to the standard output.

The given *number* tells **head** where to begin to copy the data. Numbers of the form *+number* measure the starting point from the beginning of the file; those of the form *-number* measure from the end of the file.

A specifier of blocks, characters, or lines (*b*, *c*, or *l*, respectively) may follow the number; the default is lines. If no *number* is specified, a default of +4 is assumed.

### See Also

commands, **dd**, **egrep**, **sed**, **tail**

### Notes

Because **head** buffers data measured from the end of the file, large counts may not work.

## header files — Overview

A *header file* is a file of C code that contains definitions, declarations, and structures commonly used in a given situation. By tradition, a header file always has the suffix “.h”. Header files are invoked within a C program by the command **#include**, which is read by **cpp**, the C preprocessor; for this reason, they are also called “include files”.

Header files are one of the most useful tools available to a C programmer. They allow you to put into one place all of the information that the different modules of your program share. Proper use of header files will make your programs easier to maintain and to port to other environments.

COHERENT includes the following header files:

<b>access.h</b>	Check accessibility
<b>acct.h</b>	Format for process-accounting file
<b>action.h</b>	Describe parsing action and goto tables
<b>sys/alloc.h</b>	Define the allocator
<b>ar.h</b>	Format for archive files
<b>ascii.h</b>	Define non-printable ASCII characters
<b>assert.h</b>	Define <b>assert()</b>
<b>sys/buf.h</b>	Buffer header
<b>canon.h</b>	Portable layout of binary data
<b>sys/chars.h</b>	Character definitions
<b>coff.h</b>	Format for COHERENT 386 objects
<b>sys/con.h</b>	Configure device drivers
<b>sys/const.h</b>	Declare machine-dependent constants
<b>ctype.h</b>	Header file for data tests
<b>curses.h</b>	Declare/define <b>curses</b> routines
<b>sys/deftty.h</b>	Default tty settings
<b>sys/dir.h</b>	Directory format
<b>dirent.h</b>	Define constant <b>dirent</b>
<b>dumptape.h</b>	Define data structures for dump tapes
<b>ebcdic.h</b>	Define constants for non-printable EBCDIC characters
<b>errno.h</b>	Error numbers used by <b>errno()</b>
<b>sys/fblk.h</b>	Define disk-free block
<b>sys/fcntl.h</b>	Manifest constants for file-handling functions"
<b>sys/fd.h</b>	Declare file-descriptor structure
<b>sys/fdioctl.h</b>	Control floppy-disk I/O
<b>sys/fdisk.h</b>	Fixed-disk constants and structures
<b>sys/filsys.h</b>	Structures and constants for super block
<b>fperr.h</b>	Constants used with floating-point exception codes
<b>grp.h</b>	Declare group structure
<b>sys/hdioctl.h</b>	Control hard-disk I/O
<b>sys/ino.h</b>	Constants and structures for i-nodes
<b>sys/inode.h</b>	Constants and structures for memory-resident i-nodes
<b>sys/io.h</b>	Constants and structures used by I/O
<b>sys/ipc.h</b>	Declarations for process communications

**l.out.h** . . . . . Format for COHERENT 286 objects  
**limits.h** . . . . . Define numerical limits  
**sys/lpioctl.h** . . . . . Definitions for line-printer I/O control  
**sys/machine.h** . . . . . Machine-dependent definitions  
**sys/malloc.h** . . . . . Definitions for memory-allocation functions  
**math.h** . . . . . Declare mathematics functions  
**sys/mdata.h** . . . . . Define machine-specific magic numbers  
**mnttab.h** . . . . . Structure for mount table  
**mon.h** . . . . . Read profile output files  
**sys/mount.h** . . . . . Define the mount table  
**mprec.h** . . . . . Multiple-precision arithmetic  
**sys/msg.h** . . . . . Definitions for message facility  
**sys/msig.h** . . . . . Machine-dependent signals  
**mtab.h** . . . . . Currently mounted file systems  
**sys/mtioctl.h** . . . . . Magnetic-tape I/O control  
**mtype.h** . . . . . List processor code numbers  
**n.out.h** . . . . . Define n.out file structure  
**ncurses.h** . . . . . Declare/define **ncurses** routines  
**sys/param.h** . . . . . Define machine-specific parameters  
**path.h** . . . . . Define/declare constants and functions used with path  
**sys/poll.h** . . . . . Define structures/constants used with polling devices  
**sys/proc.h** . . . . . Define structures/constants used with processes  
**pwd.h** . . . . . Declare password structure  
**sys/sched.h** . . . . . Define constants used with scheduling  
**sys/seg.h** . . . . . Definitions used with segmentation  
**sys/sem.h** . . . . . Definitions used by semaphore facility  
**setjmp.h** . . . . . Define setjmp() and longjmp()  
**sgtty.h** . . . . . Definitions used to control terminal I/O  
**sys/shm.h** . . . . . Definitions used with shared memory  
**signal.h** . . . . . Declare signals  
**sys/stat.h** . . . . . Definitions and declarations used to obtain file status  
**stdarg.h** . . . . . Declare/define routines for variable arguments  
**stddef.h** . . . . . Declare/define standard definitions  
**stdio.h** . . . . . Declarations and definitions for I/O  
**stdlib.h** . . . . . Declare/define general functions  
**sys/stream.h** . . . . . Definitions for message facility"  
**string.h** . . . . . Declare string functions  
**termio.h** . . . . . Definitions used with terminal input and output  
**time.h** . . . . . Give time-description structure  
**sys/timeb.h** . . . . . Declare timeb structure  
**timef.h** . . . . . Definitions for user-level timed functions  
**sys/timeout.h** . . . . . Define the timer queue  
**sys/times.h** . . . . . Definitions used with times() system call  
**sys/tty.h** . . . . . Define flags used with tty processing  
**sys/types.h** . . . . . Declare system-specific data types  
**sys/uproc.h** . . . . . Definitions used with user processes  
**utmp.h** . . . . . Login accounting information  
**sys/utsname.h** . . . . . Define utsname structure

**See Also**

**#include, C language, portability**

**help** — Command

Print concise description of command

**help** *command*

**help** prints a concise description of the options available for each specified *command*. If the *command* is omitted, **help** prints a simple description of itself, followed by information about the command given by **\$LASTERROR**, which is the last command returning a nonzero exit status.

**help** provides more information than the usage message printed by a command, but less than the detailed description given by the **man** command. The primary purpose of **help** is to refresh your memory if you have forgotten an option to *command*.

**help** looks in **/etc/helpfile** for system information and the file named in environmental variable **\$HELP** for user-specific information. Information about a *command* begins with a line

*#command*

and ends with the next line beginning with '#' in **/etc/helpfile** or **\$HELP**. **help** constructs the index file **/etc/helpindex** to make subsequent searches of **/etc/helpfile** faster.

**Files**

**/etc/helpfile** — Additional system information

**/etc/helpindex** — Index for helpfile

**\$HELP** — User information

**\$LASTERROR** — Default command help

**See Also**

**commands**, **man**

**HOME** — Environmental Variable

User's home directory

**HOME**=*home directory*

The environmental variable **HOME** name's the user's home directory. Some commands use this name by default if they require the name of a directory and none is supplied. For example, if you type the change directory command **cd** without an argument, it will change the current directory to the one named by the **HOME**.

**See Also**

**environmental variables**

**hp** — Command

Prepare files for Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer

**hp** [ **-acflr** ] [ **-imarg** ] [ **-ttop** ] [ **-plines** ] [ *file ...* ]

The command **hp** translates **nroff** font specifications into the correct escape sequences for an HP LaserJet compatible printer. It also allows the user to set indentation, page length, landscape mode, and so on. Because some LaserJet printers stack pages in reverse order as they are printed, **hp** can put pages out in reverse order.

**hp** recognizes the following options:

**-f**                Print pages in the normal order. This is the default.

**-imarg**          Set the page indentation to *marg*.

- l**            Print pages in landscape mode.
- plines**     Set the page length to *lines*.
- r**            Print pages in reverse order (for LaserJet I).
- ttop**        Set the top margin to *top*.

### Example

To generate listings of all C programs in the current directory, enter the command

```
pr *.c | hp | hpr -B
```

### See Also

**commands, hpd, printer**

## **hpd — System Maintenance**

Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler daemon  
**/usr/lib/hpd**

**hpd** is a daemon program that runs in the background and prints listings queued by the **hpr** command. **hpd** is run automatically by **hpr**. If there is no printing to do, or if another daemon is already running (indicated by the **dpid** file), **hpd** exits immediately. Otherwise, it searches the spool directory for control files of listings to print. These control files contain the names of files to print, the user name, banner pages, and files to be removed upon completion.

**hpd** does not print listings in any particular order. There is no prioritization of printing, either by size or by requester.

### Files

**/dev/rhp** — Raw device for LaserJet printer  
**/usr/spool/hpd** — Spool directory  
**/usr/spool/hpd/cf\*** — Control files  
**/usr/spool/hpd/df\*** — Data files  
**/usr/spool/hpd/dpid** — Lock and process id

### See Also

**hpr, hpskip, init, lpd, printer, system maintenance**

## **hpr — Command**

Send file to Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer spooler  
**hpr [-Bbcmnr] [-b banner] [-f fontnum] [file ...]**

**hpr** lets you print each specified *file* on the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer, without conflicting with printing by other users. If no *file* is specified, **hpr** prints the standard input on the LaserJet printer.

**hpr** recognizes the following options:

- B**            Suppress printing of a banner page. Note that **hpr** outputs its banner in plain text; therefore, if you have a PostScript printer, you *must* use this option. If you do not, your printer will hang.
- b**            The next argument is the banner.
- c**            Copy the files (allowing changes to be made before the printing completes).
- e**            Erase all “soft fonts” from the printer’s memory.

**-f** *fontnum file1 ... fileN*

Load the Hewlett-Packard "soft fonts" stored in files *file1* through *fileN* into the printer's memory; set the font identifiers to begin at *fontnum*.

**-m** Send a message when the printing completes.

**-n** Do not send a message (default).

**-r** Remove the files when they have been spooled.

**hpskip** terminates or restarts the current listing. **hp** converts **nroff** output into forms usable by the LaserJet; it is also used to describe the format of the printing.

### Examples

To print the file **foo** on the LaserJet, type:

```
hpr -B foo
```

The following example loads the soft fonts in files **foo**, **bar**, and **baz** into the printer's memory, and sets their font identifiers to begin at 15:

```
hpr -f 15 foo bar baz
```

### Files

**/dev/rhp** — Raw device for LaserJet printer

**/usr/lib/hpd** — Line-printer daemon for LaserJet printer

**/usr/spool/hpd** — Spool directory for LaserJet printer

**/usr/spool/hpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

### See Also

commands, **hp**, **hpd**, **hpskip**, **lpr**, **pr**, **printer**

## hpskip — Command

Abort/restart current listing on Hewlett-Packard LaserJet

**hpskip** [-r]

**hpskip** gives some control over printing with the LaserJet printer spooler. When invoked without the **-r** option, **hpskip** terminates the current listing with a message. When invoked with the **-r** option, **hpskip** restarts the current listing.

**hpr** spools files to the LaserJet printer.

### Files

**/usr/lib/hpd** — LaserJet printer daemon

**/usr/spool/hpd** — Spool directory

**/usr/spool/hpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

### See Also

commands, **hpd**, **hpr**, **lpskip**, **pr**

## hs — Device Driver

Device driver for polled serial ports

The COHERENT-286 driver **hs** adds support for up to eight serial lines: **/dev/hs00** through **/dev/hs07**. Serial lines controlled via **hs** can be opened into either of two ways, as follows:

**/dev/hs??**

Polled, local mode (no modem control).

**/dev/hs??r**

Polled, remote mode (modem control).

Any port used with **hs** will be polled, i.e., interrupt operation is not used. Please refer to the Lexicon article **com** for explanations of “local” vs “remote” and “polled” vs “interrupt-driven”.

To use **hs**, first configure it to match your equipment (see below), then load the driver using the following command while running as the superuser **root**:

```
/etc/drvld -r /drv/hs
```

To unload the driver without rebooting COHERENT, first use the **ps** command with the **-d** option to get the process identifier for **hs** process, then unload the driver process by using the **kill** command. Note that the **hs** driver process will not unload until all **opened** ports have been closed. For example (user input shown in bold):

```
$ ps -d
TTY          PID
-----
0           0  <idle>
38          38  <hs>
...
$ kill kill 38
```

The present version of COHERENT limits “polled” operation to one device driver at a time. Therefore, if any of the **com** family of devices is used in polled mode, **hs** devices cannot be used. Conversely, **/dev/com1pl** through **/dev/com4pl** and **/dev/com1pr** through **/dev/com4pr** cannot be used if the **hs** driver is in use. Both drivers can be present at the same time, but polled devices may not be **open** under both drivers at the same time. Note that enabling a port via **/etc/enable** keeps it open continuously.

### Port Configuration

The default configuration for the **hs** driver is for four ports, at hexadecimal addresses 0x3F8, 0x2F8, 0x3E8, and 0x2E8, at a speed of 9600 baud. The driver is configured by setting the following parameters:

1. The number of ports.
2. The I/O address for each port.
3. The default speed of each port.

All steps in the configuration must be done as the superuser **root**. Patch the number of ports into driver variable **HSNUM**. For example, if you wish to support three ports, enter:

```
/conf/patch /drv/hs HSNUM=3
```

Address and speed information are stored sequentially starting at variable **HS\_PORTS\_**. The speed for each port is indicated by the corresponding value found in **<sgtty.h>**, from one, corresponding to 50 baud, to 16, corresponding to 9600 baud. If the three ports in the example above are at hexadecimal addresses of 0x2A0, 0x2B0, and 0x2C0, with speeds of 2400, 2400, and 9600 baud, respectively, then the following three patches must be performed:

```
/conf/patch /drv/hs HS_PORTS_=0x2A0 HS_PORTS_+2=12
/conf/patch /drv/hs HS_PORTS_+4=0x2B0 HS_PORTS_+6=12
/conf/patch /drv/hs HS_PORTS_+8=0x2C0 HS_PORTS_+10=16
```

Finally, nodes must be created for each port using the **mknod** command. The major device number is 7; the minor number will range from 0 through 7 for ports **/dev/hs00** through **/dev/hs07**, respectively, with 128 added to the device minor number if modem control is desired. The following



commands will make nodes in **/dev** for local and remote versions of the three ports in the example:

```
/etc/mknod -f /dev/hs00 c 7 0
/etc/mknod -f /dev/hs01 c 7 1
/etc/mknod -f /dev/hs02 c 7 2
/etc/mknod -f /dev/hs00r c 7 128
/etc/mknod -f /dev/hs01r c 7 129
/etc/mknod -f /dev/hs02r c 7 130
```

### **See Also**

**com**, **device drivers**, **drvld**

### **Diagnostics**

An attempt to open a non-existent device will generate error messages. This can occur if hardware is absent or not turned on.

### **Notes**

**hs** is used only under COHERENT 286. To access serial devices under COHERENT 386, use the driver **asy**, which is described in its own Lexicon entry.

Note that if any **com** device driver is used in polling mode, you cannot use **hs**, and vice versa.

## **hypot()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute hypotenuse of right triangle

**#include <math.h>**

**double hypot(*x*, *y*) double *x*, *y*;**

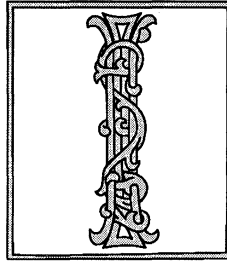
**hypot()** computes the hypotenuse, or distance from the origin, of its arguments *x* and *y*. The result is the square root of the sum of the squares of *x* and *y*.

### **Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

### **See Also**

**cabs()**, **mathematics library**



### ***i-node* — Definition**

COHERENT system file identifier

Each file on a COHERENT file system is identified by a unique number, called an *i-node number* or *i-number*. Each i-node contains information about a file: its mode, link count, user identifier, group identifier, size, location on the file system, access time, modify time, and creation time.

The user refers to a file by a file name, stored in a directory; the directory entry identifies the file by its i-node number. A device and i-node number together uniquely specify a file. The headers **ino.h** and **i-node.h** define, respectively, disk i-nodes and memory i-nodes.

**See Also**  
definitions

### ***ick* — Command**

i-node consistency check

**ick** [-s] [-b N ...] [-v] *filesystem* ...

Each block in a file system must be either free (i.e., in the free list) or allocated (i.e., associated with exactly one i-node). **ick** examines each specified *filesystem*, printing block numbers that are claimed by more than one i-node, or claimed by both an i-node and the free list. It also checks for blocks that appear more than once in the block list of an i-node or in the free list.

The option **-v** (verbose) causes **ick** to print a summary of block usage in the *filesystem*. The option **-s** causes **ick** to ignore the free list, to note which blocks are claimed by i-nodes, and to rebuild the free list with the remainder. A list of block numbers may be submitted with the **-b** flag; **ick** prints the data structure associated with each block as the file system is scanned.

The raw device should be used, and the *filesystem* should be unmounted if possible. If this is not possible (e.g., on the root file system) and the **-s** option is used, the system must be rebooted immediately to expunge the obsolete superblock.

The exit status bits for a bad return are as follows:

- 0x01** Miscellaneous error (e.g. out of space)
- 0x02** Too hard to fix without human intervention
- 0x04** Bad free block
- 0x08** Missing blocks
- 0x10** Duplicates in free list
- 0x20** Bad block in free list

**See Also**

**clri**, **commands**, **dcheck**, **fsck**, **ncheck**, **sync**, **umount**

## Diagnostics

The message “dups in free” indicates a block is in the free list more than once. “bad freelist” indicates the presence of bad blocks on the free list. A “bad” block is one that lies outside the bounds of the file system. A “dup” (duplicated) block is one associated with the free list and an i-node, or with more than one i-node. All the errors above *must* be corrected before the file system is mounted. “bad ifree” means allocated i-nodes are on the free i-node list; this is inconsequential.

This command has largely been replaced by **fsck**.

## ieee\_d() — General Function

Convert a double from DECVAX to IEEE format

**int**

**ieee\_d**(*idp*, *ddp*)

**double** \**idp*, \**ddp*;

**ieee\_d**() converts a **double** from DECVAX format to IEEE format. *ddp* points to a DECVAX-format **double** to convert. *idp* points to a destination for the converted IEEE value. *idp* may be identical to *ddp* for in-place conversion. The DECVAX significand is truncated, not rounded.

**ieee\_d**() always returns zero, because the conversion always succeeds.

For a description of the IEEE and DECVAX formats for floating-point numbers, see the Lexicon article for **float**.

## See Also

**decvax\_d()**, **decvax\_f()**, **float**, **general functions**, **ieee\_f()**

## ieee\_f() — General Function

Convert a float from DECVAX to IEEE format

**int**

**ieee\_f**(*ifp*, *dfp*)

**float** \**ifp*, \**dfp*;

**ieee\_f**() converts a **float** from DECVAX format to IEEE format. *dfp* points to a DECVAX-format **float** to convert. *ifp* points to a destination for the converted IEEE value. *ifp* may be identical to *dfp* for in-place conversion. The DECVAX significand is truncated, not rounded.

**ieee\_f**() always returns zero, because the conversion always succeeds.

For a description of the IEEE and DECVAX formats for floating-point numbers, see the Lexicon article for **float**.

## See Also

**decvax\_d()**, **decvax\_f()**, **float**, **general functions**, **ieee\_d()**

## if — Command

Execute a command conditionally

**if** *sequence1* **then** *sequence2* [**elif** *sequence3* **then** *sequence4*] ... [**else** *sequence5*] **fi**

The shell construct **if** executes commands conditionally, depending on the exit status of the execution of other commands.

First, **if** executes the commands in *sequence1*. If the exit status is zero, it executes the commands in *sequence2* and terminates. Otherwise, it executes the optional *sequence3* if given, and executes *sequence4* if the exit status is zero. It executes additional **elif** clauses similarly. If the exit status of each tested command sequence is nonzero, it executes the optional **else** part *sequence5*.

Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted first word of a command, each

**then**, **elif**, **else**, and **fi** must either occur unquoted at the start of a line or be preceded by `;`.

The shell executes **if** directly.

### Example

For an example of this command, see the entry for **trap**.

### See Also

**commands**, **ksh**, **sh**, **test**

### **if** — C Keyword

Introduce a conditional statement

**if** is a C keyword that introduces a conditional statement. For example,

```
if (i==10)
    dosomething();
```

will **dosomething** only if **i** equals ten.

**if** statements can be used with the statements **else if** and **else** to create a chain of conditional statements. Such a chain can include any number of **else if** statements, but only one **else** statement.

### See Also

**C keywords**, **else**

### **IFS** — Environmental Variable

Characters recognized as white space

The environmental variable **IFS** lists the characters that the shell recognizes as white space.

### See Also

**environmental variables**, **ksh**, **sh**

### **index()** — String Function

Find a character in a string

**char \*index(string, c) char \*string; char c;**

**index()** scans the given *string* for the first occurrence of the character *c*. If *c* is found, **index()** returns a pointer to it. If it is not found, **index()** returns **NULL**.

Note that having **index()** search for a NUL character will always produce a pointer to the end of a string. For example,

```
char *string;
assert(index(string, 0)==string+strlen(string));
```

will never fail.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **strncpy()**.

### See Also

**pnmatch()**, **rindex()**, **string functions**

### Notes

This function is identical to the function **strchr()**, which is described in the ANSI standard. COHERENT includes **strchr()** in its libraries. It is recommended that it be used instead of **index()**

so that programs more closely approach strict conformity with the ANSI standard.

### **infocmp — Command**

De-compile a terminfo file

**infocmp** [*file ...*]

**infocmp** reads a set of compiled terminal information, and decodes its contents. It does its best to recreate the **terminfo** source from which the set of information had been compiled.

*file* must hold compiled **terminfo** information. If no *file* is named on the command line, **infocmp** reads the standard input.

In case of emergency, the output of **infocmp** can be piped to the **terminfo** compiler **tic**.

### **See Also**

commands, **term**, **tic**, **terminfo**

### **Notes**

**infocmp** was written by Pavel Curtis of Cornell University. It was ported to COHERENT by Udo Munk, with additional changes by Mark Williams Company.

**terminfo** and its related programs are used only under COHERENT 386.

### **init — System Maintenance**

System initialization

**/etc/init**

The COHERENT boot procedure executes **init** as process 1 to perform initialization. **init** opens the console terminal **/dev/console** and invokes the shell script **/etc/brc** if it exists. If it does not, **init** invokes a shell **sh** on it with **HOME** set to **/etc**. The shell executes **/etc/profile** and **/etc/.profile** if present. The system then runs in single-user mode and accepts commands from the console.

When the console terminates the shell, normally by typing **<ctrl-D>**, **init** brings up the system in multiuser mode. It executes the shell command file **/etc/rc**, which performs standard bookkeeping and maintenance chores. Typically it mounts standard file systems, removes temporary files, and invokes **cron** and **update**. If desired, it may load device drivers, enable swapping with **swap**, and enable process accounting with **accton**.

Next, **init** opens terminals as specified in the file **/etc/ttys**. It invokes **getty** to read a user name and perform a **login** on each terminal.

When a user shell terminates, **init** updates the system accounting information in **/etc/utmp** and **/usr/adm/wtmp**. Then it reopens the appropriate terminal and invokes **getty**, as above.

**init** rescans the file **/etc/ttys** for terminal changes if it receives the signal **SIGQUIT**. The command **kill quit 1** sends **SIGQUIT** to the **init** process. **init** then invokes **getty** as necessary.

**init** returns the system to single user mode if it receives the signal **SIGHUP**. The command **kill -1 1** sends **SIGHUP** to the **init** process.

### **Files**

**/dev/console** — Console terminal  
**/dev/tty??** — Terminal devices  
**/etc/brc** — Boot command file  
**/etc/rc** — initialization command file  
**/etc/ttys** — Active terminals  
**/etc/utmp** — Logged in users  
**/usr/adm/wtmp** — Login accounting data  
**/usr/spool/uucp/LCK..\*** — Terminal locks

**See Also**

**getty, kill, login, sh, system maintenance, ttys**

**initialization — Definition**

The term *initialization* refers to setting a variable to its first, or initial, value.

**Rules of Initialization**

Initializers follow the same rules for type and conversion as do assignment statements.

If a static object with a scalar type is not explicitly initialized, it is initialized to zero by default. Likewise, if a static pointer is not explicitly initialized, it is initialized to NULL by default. If an object with automatic storage duration is not explicitly initialized, its contents are indeterminate.

Initializers on static objects must be constant expressions; greater flexibility is allowed for initializers of automatic variables. These latter initializers can be arbitrary expressions, not just constant expressions. For example,

```
double dsin = sin(30.0);
```

is a valid initializer, where **dsin** is declared inside a function.

To initialize an object, use the assignment operator '='. The following sections describe how to initialize different classes of objects.

**Scalars**

To initialize a scalar object, assign it the value of a expression. The expression may be enclosed within braces; doing so does not affect the value of the assignment. For example, the expressions

```
int example = 7+12;
```

and

```
int example = { 7+12 };
```

are equivalent.

**Unions and Structures**

The initialization of a **union** by definition fills only its *first* member.

To initialize a **union**, use an expression that is enclosed within braces:

```
union example_u {
    int member1;
    long member2;
    float member3;
} = { 5 };
```

This initializes **member1** to five. That is to say, the **union** is filled with an **int**-sized object whose value is five.

To initialize a structure, use a list of constants or expressions that are enclosed within braces. For example:

```
struct example_s {
    int member1;
    long member2;
    union example_u member3;
};

struct example_s test1 = { 5, 3, 15 };
```

This initializes **member1** to five, initializes **member2** to three, and initializes the *first* member of **member3** to 15.

### Strings and Wide Characters

To initialize a string pointer or an array of wide characters, use a string literal.

The following initializes a string:

```
char string[] = "This is a string";
```

The length of the character array is 17 characters: one for every character in the given string literal plus one for the null character that marks the end of the string.

If you wish, you can fix the length of a character array. In this case, the null character is appended to the end of the string only if there is room in the array. For example, the following

```
char string[16] = "This is a string";
```

writes the text into the array **string**, but does not include the concluding null character because there is not enough room for it.

A pointer to **char** can also be initialized when the pointer is declared. For example:

```
char *strptr = "This is a string";
```

initializes **strptr** to point to the first character in **This is a string**. This declaration automatically allocates exactly enough storage to hold the given string literal, plus the terminating null character.

### Arrays

To initialize an array, use a list of expressions that is enclosed within braces. For example, the expression

```
int array[] = { 1, 2, 3 };
```

initializes **array**. Because **array** does not have a declared number of elements, the initialization fixes its number of elements at three. The elements of the array are initialized in the order in which the elements of the initialization list appear. For example, **array[0]** is initialized to one, **array[1]** to two, and **array[2]** to three.

If an array has a fixed length and the initialization list does not contain enough initializers to initialize every element, then the remaining elements are initialized in the default manner: static variables are initialized to zero, and other variables to whatever happens to be in memory. For example, the following:

```
int array[3] = { 1, 2 };
```

initializes **array[0]** to one, **array[1]** to two, and **array[2]** to zero.

The initialization of a multi-dimensional array is something of a science in itself. The ANSI Standard defines that the ranks in an array are filled from right to left. For example, consider the array:

```
int example[2][3][4];
```

This array contains two groups of three elements, each of which consists of four elements. Initialization of this array will proceed from **example[0][0][0]** through **example[0][0][3]**; then from **example[0][1][0]** through **example[0][1][3]**; and so on, until the array is filled.

It is easy to check initialization when there is one initializer for each “slot” in the array; e.g.,

```
int example[2][3] = {
    1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
};
```

or:

```
int example[2][3] = {
    { 1, 2, 3 }, { 4, 5, 6 }
};
```

The situation becomes more difficult when an array is only partially initialized; e.g.,

```
int example[2][3] = {
    { 1 }, { 2, 3 }
};
```

which is equivalent to:

```
int example[2][3] = {
    { 1, 0, 0 }, { 2, 3, 0 }
};
```

As can be seen, braces mark the end of initialization for a “cluster” of elements within an array. For example, the following:

```
int example[2][3][4] = {
    5, { 1, 2 }, { 5, 2, 4, 3 }, { 9, 9, 5 },
    { 2, 3, 7 } };
```

is equivalent to entering:

```
int example[2][3][4] = {
    { 5, 0, 0, 0 },
    { 1, 2, 0, 0 },
    { 5, 2, 4, 3 },

    { 9, 9, 5, 0 },
    { 2, 3, 7, 0 },
    { 0, 0, 0, 0 }
};
```

The braces end the initialization of one cluster of elements; the next cluster is then initialized. Any elements within a cluster that have not yet been initialized when the brace is read are initialized in the default manner.

### **See Also**

**array, C language, definitions, struct, union**



**ino.h — Header File**

Constants and structures for disk i-nodes

**#include <sys/ino.h>**

**ino.h** declares structures and constants that are used to describe i-nodes.

**See Also**

i-node, header files

**inode.h — Header File**

Constants and structures for memory-resident i-nodes

**#include <sys/inode.h>**

**inode.h** declares structures and constants for memory-resident i-nodes.

**See Also**

header files, i-node

**install — Command**

Install a software update onto COHERENT

**/etc/install** *id device ndisks*

The command **install** installs an update of the COHERENT system onto your hard disk. *id* identifies the update to be installed. *device* is the device from which the update disks will be read. *ndisks* is the number of disks that comprise the update.

**Third-Party Software**

**install** also provides a standard mechanism by which software developers can install their software onto systems that run COHERENT. The rest of this article discusses how to prepare a software release so that it can be installed using **install**.

For **install** to be able to install a software distribution, the distribution must consist of a set of mountable floppy disks, each holding a COHERENT file system created by **mkfs**. This keeps the disks independent of each other and also lets the user to insert the disks in any order. **install** records the fact that it has read a given disk from the distribution, thus preventing the user from attempting to read a given disk more than once during an installation session.

Floppy disks should be built using **mkfs**, with possible input being generated by the command **unmkfs**. Each disk in the distribution must hold in its root directory a file whose name is of the form:

*/id.sequence*

Here, *id* identifies the release, as described above. Note that *id* must be formed from the set of upper- and lower-case letters, digits, the period '.', and the underscore character '\_', and not exceed nine characters in length. *sequence* indicates which disk in the distribution this disk is, from one through the total number of disks.

**install** uses the command **cpdir** to copy each of the distribution disks to directory / on the current system. Therefore, all disks should be "root based" (i.e., full path names should be used). Because **install** is run by the superuser, **cpdir** preserves the date and time for each file, and preserves ownership and modes. To keep file ownership consistent with COHERENT conventions, make files that are neither *setuid* nor *setgid* owned by user **bin** and group **bin**. Directories found on the distribution disks will be created on the target file system, as needed. Be careful when choosing the ownership and mode of directories because you could inadvertently compromise the security of your users' systems.

### **Postprocessing**

After all disks in a distribution have been successfully copied by the user, **install** checks for the existence of a file of the form

`/conf/id.post`

where *id* matches the *id* field found on the **install** command line. If found, **install** executes this file to allow special “postprocessing,” such as installing manual pages into directory `/usr/man` or executing installation-specific commands.

Before an installation procedure completes its postprocessing, it should remove any *id* files of the following form from the target system:

`/conf/id.post`  
`/id.sequence`

### **Adding Manual-Page Entries**

As part of building a distribution, you usually must generate pre-processed or “cooked” manual-page entries for distribution with your upgrade or add-on package. These should be inserted into the subdirectories of `/usr/man`, with the name of the subdirectory being specific to your product. This naming convention avoids name-space collisions, should multiple applications use the same name for a manual-page entry.

If you install new or additional manual pages, you must update the index file used by the **man** command to locate manual entries. File `/usr/man/man.index` on the target file system contains index entries for all manual pages on the system. As part of postprocessing, you must append index information for your manual pages to the end of the existing index file. In addition, file `/usr/man/man.help` contains the **man** command’s help message. This includes a list of valid topics and some explanatory text. You should also append to this file a brief list of the manual page entries that you have added. For further information on manual pages, see the Lexicon entry for the command **man**.

### **Logging**

**install** logs all partial as well as completed installations in file `/etc/install.log`. This information includes date/time stamps and the command-line arguments to **install**.

### **Example**

The following installs COHERENT update **coh.301**, which consists of one disk, from a high-density 5.25-inch floppy drive:

```
/etc/install coh.301 /dev/fha0 1
```

### **Uninstalling the Mark Williams Bootstrap**

The following describes how to remove the Mark Williams bootstrap program. You must do this if you are un-installing COHERENT from your system.

To remove the Mark Williams master boot program, you must overwrite the master boot-block on hard drive 0 with another boot program. Usually, this is the MS-DOS master boot program. The MS-DOS edition of **fdisk** writes a new master boot program if no valid signature appears at the end of the current contents of the master-boot block. So, to remove the COHERENT master bootstrap program, all you have to do is modify the last two bytes of the master-boot block, then run the MS-DOS **fdisk**.

**WARNING:** See the note below about MS-DOS **fdisk** — back up your hard drive is backed up before you try this!

Several ways are available to invalidate the signature at the end of the master-boot block. One way is to copy any sort of garbage into the master-boot block. You can (1) reformat cylinder 0 of your

hard drive — for example, using the **DIAGNOSTICS** menu of the AMI BIOS — or (2) use COHERENT to overwrite the block, e.g., with the command:

```
dd if=/coherent of=/dev/at0x count=1
```

The master-boot block is the first physical sector of the hard drive, i.e., cylinder 0, head 0, sector 1. (Note that numbering of sectors begins with 1, not 0.) The MWC master bootstrap is part of the initial program load, and does not belong to any operating system because it runs before an operating system is loaded.

*Please read the following carefully before you attempt erase the master-boot block:*

Mark Williams Company can make no promises or guarantees concerning the behavior of any given version of the MS-DOS **fdisk**. Every versions of the MS-DOS **fdisk** that we have tested does not recognize partitions allocated for other operating systems: MS-DOS cannot delete, or even display, such partitions. Certain configurations of empty partitions cause MS-DOS **fdisk** to hang.

Worst of all, don't expect *any* data on your hard drive to be available after MS-DOS **fdisk** rewrites an invalid master-boot block. Our experience is that MS-DOS **fdisk** erases all data in all partitions, even if previously existing MS-DOS partitions are re-allocated with identical cylinder ranges as at the time of their initial creation.

### **How To Remove COHERENT**

To remove COHERENT from your system, do the following:

1. Log in as the superuser **root**.
2. Invoke the COHERENT version of **fdisk**.
3. Choose the option to change all logical partitions. Don't change *any* parameters of any MS-DOS partitions.
4. Change *all* COHERENT partitions to type **Unused** with a size of 0, starting and ending at 0.
5. Exit **fdisk** and update the partition table.
6. Reboot the computer and run the DOS **fdisk** utility to create a new MS-DOS partition table. Turn the unused space (formerly the COHERENT partitions) into an MS-DOS-EXT partition. If you already have an MS-DOS-EXT partition, change its parameters so that it incorporates the unused space.
7. Create one or more logical drives in the MS-DOS-EXT partition.
8. Format the new logical drives using the MS-DOS **format** command.

Repeated tests with MS-DOS have shown that the above directions work. However, given the many flavors and releases of MS-DOS in circulation, Mark Williams Company cannot guarantee that the above steps with MS-DOS will work. If they do not, consult your MS-DOS manual for creating a DOS partition table and file system on a new hard drive. If that information is not available, telephone Microsoft Technical Support at (206)454-2030.

### **Files**

/etc/install.log

### **See Also**

**commands**, **man**, **mkfs**, **unmkfs**

**int** — C Keyword

Data type

An **int** is the most commonly used numeric data type, and is normally used to encode integers. With COHERENT, **sizeof int** equals 2, that is, two **chars** (15 bits plus a sign bit); therefore, an **int** can contain values from -32768 to +32767. An **int** normally is sign extended when cast to a larger data type; an **unsigned int**, however, will be zero extended.

**See Also**

C keywords, data formats, data types, long

**interrupt** — Definition

An **interrupt** is an interruption of the sequential flow of a program. It can be generated by the hardware, from within the program itself, or from the operating system.

**See Also**

definitions, signal()

**io.h** — Header File

Constants and structures used by I/O

**#include <sys/io.h>**

**io.h** declares constants and structures used by various I/O routines.

**See Also**

header files

**ioctl()** — System Call

Device-dependent control

**ioctl**(*fd*, *command*, *info*)

**int** *fd*, *command*;

**char** \**info*;

**ioctl()** provides direct interaction with a device driver. Possible uses include setting or retrieving parameters for devices (line printers, communications lines, terminals) and non-standard spacing operations for tape drives.

**ioctl()** acts upon a block special file or a character special file associated with the already open file descriptor *fd*. *command* points to the specific request. A system header file defines symbolic command parameters for each device type. For example, **sgtty.h** defines commands for terminals and **mtioctl.h** defines commands for magnetic tape drives. Using the symbolic command definitions from the header files promotes device independence within each device type. The entry for **device drivers** names other sections that detail specific devices.

*info* passes a buffer of information (defined by structures in the appropriate header files) to the driver. For any *command* not needing additional information, this argument should be NULL.

Some **ioctl()** requests work on all files, and are not passed to any driver.

**Files**

<sgtty.h>

<lpioctl.h>

<mtioctl.h>

**See Also**

exec, getty, open(), read(), sgtty, stty, system calls, write()

**Diagnostics**

**ioctl()** returns -1 on errors, such as a bad file descriptor. Because the call is device dependent, almost any other error could be returned.

**Notes**

The type of the *info* argument to **ioctl()** is declared as **char \*** mainly for portability reasons. In most cases, the actual argument type will be something like **struct sgttyb \***, depending on the particular device and command. The actual argument should be cast to type **char \*** to ensure cross-machine portability.

**ipc.h — Header File**

Definitions for process communications

**#include <sys/ipc.h>**

**ipc.h** defines constants and structures used by functions that perform inter-process communications.

**See Also**

header files

**isalnum() — ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character is a number or letter

**#include <ctype.h>**

**int isalnum(c) int c;**

**isalnum()** tests whether the argument *c* is alphanumeric (**0-9**, **A-Z**, or **a-z**). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is of the desired type, and zero if it is not. **isalnum()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

**ASCII**, **ctype**

**isalpha() — ctype Macro (ctype.h)**

Check if a character is a letter

**#include <ctype.h>**

**int isalpha(c) int c;**

**isalpha()** tests whether the argument *c* is a letter (**A-Z** or **a-z**). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is an alphabetic character, and zero if it is not. **isalpha()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

**Example**

For an example of this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

**ASCII**, **ctype**

**isascii()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is an ASCII character

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int isascii(c) int c;
```

**isascii()** tests whether the argument *c* is an ASCII character ( $0 \leq c \leq 0177$ ). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is an ASCII character, and zero if it is not. Many other **ctype** macros will fail if passed a non-ASCII value other than EOF.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ASCII, ctype

**isatty()** — General Function (libc)

Check if a device is a terminal

```
int isatty(fd) int fd;
```

**isatty()** checks to see if a device is a terminal. It returns one if the file descriptor *fd* describes a terminal, and zero otherwise.

**Files**

/dev/\* — Terminal special files

/etc/ttys — Login terminals

**See Also**

general functions, ioctl(), tty, ttyname(), ttyslot()

**iscntrl()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is a control character

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int iscntrl(c) int c;
```

**iscntrl()** tests whether the argument *c* is a control character (including a newline character) or a delete character. It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a control character, and zero if it is not. **iscntrl()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ctype

**isdigit()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is a numeral

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

```
int isdigit(c) int c;
```

**isdigit()** tests whether the argument *c* is a numeral (0-9). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a numeral, and zero if it is not. **isdigit()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ASCII, ctype

**islower()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is a lower-case letter

#include &lt;ctype.h&gt;

int islower(c) int c;

**islower()** tests whether the argument *c* is a lower-case letter (**a-z**). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a lower-case letter, and zero if it is not. **islower()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or **EOF**.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ASCII, ctype

**ispos()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Return if variable is positive or negative

#include &lt;mprec.h&gt;

int ispos(a)

mint \*a;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **ispos()** returns true (nonzero) if *a* is not negative, false (zero) if *a* is negative.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**isprint()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is printable

#include &lt;ctype.h&gt;

int isprint(c) int c;

**isprint()** is a macro that tests if *c* is printable, i.e., if it is neither a delete nor a control character. It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a printable character, and zero if it is not. **isprint()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or **EOF**.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ASCII, ctype

**ispunct()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is a punctuation mark

#include &lt;ctype.h&gt;

int ispunct(c) int c;

**ispunct()** tests whether the argument *c* is a punctuation mark, i.e., neither an alphanumeric character nor a control character. It returns a number other than zero if the character tested is a punctuation mark, and zero if it is not. **ispunct()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or **EOF**.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ASCII, ctype

**isspace()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character prints white space

#include &lt;ctype.h&gt;

int isspace(c) int c;

**isspace()** tests whether the argument *c* is a space, tab, newline, carriage return, or form-feed character. It returns a number other than zero if *c* is a white-space character, and zero if it is not. **isspace()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ASCII, ctype

**isupper()** — ctype Macro (ctype.h)

Check if a character is an upper-case letter

#include &lt;ctype.h&gt;

int isupper(c) int c;

**isupper()** tests whether the argument *c* is an upper-case letter (**A-Z**). It returns a number other than zero if *c* is an upper-case letter, and zero if it is not. **isupper()** assumes that *c* is an ASCII character or EOF.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this macro, see the entry for **ctype**.

**See Also**

ASCII, ctype

**itom()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Create a multiple-precision integer

#include &lt;mprec.h&gt;

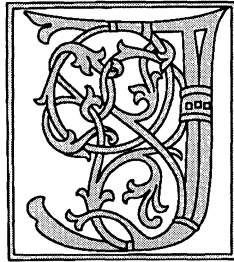
mint \*itom(*n*)int *n*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **itom()** creates a new multiple-precision integer (or **mint**), initializes it to the signed integer value *n*, and returns a pointer to it. You can use the function **mintfr()** to reclaim the storage used by the **mint** created by **itom()**.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics





### **j0()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute Bessel function

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double j0(z) double z;
```

**j0()** computes the Bessel function of the first kind for order 0 for its argument *z*.

#### **Example**

This example, called **bessel.c**, demonstrates the Bessel functions **j0()**, **j1()**, and **jn()**. Compile it with the following command line

```
cc -f bessel.c -lm
```

to include floating-point functions and the mathematics library.

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#define display(x) ddisplay((double)(x), #x)

ddisplay(value, name)
double value; char *name;
{
    if (errno)
        perror(name);
    else
        printf("%10g %s\n", value, name);
    errno = 0;
}

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    double x;
    char string[64];

    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter number: ");
        if(gets(string) == NULL)
            break;
        x = atof(string);
```

```
        display(x);
        display(j0(x));
        display(j1(x));
        display(jn(0,x));

        display(jn(1,x));
        display(jn(2,x));
        display(jn(3,x));
    }
    putchar('\n');
}
```

**See Also****j10, jn0, mathematics library****j10 — Mathematics Function (libm)**

Compute Bessel function

#include &lt;math.h&gt;

double j1(z) double z;

**j10** takes *z* and computes the Bessel function of the first kind for order 1.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **j00**.

**See Also****j00, jn0, mathematics library****jn0 — Mathematics Function (libm)**

Compute Bessel function

#include &lt;math.h&gt;

double jn(*n*, *z*) int *n*; double *z*;

**jn0** takes *z* and computes the Bessel function of the first kind for order *n*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **j00**.

**See Also****j00, j10, mathematics library****jobs — Command**

Print information about jobs

**jobs**

The command **jobs** is used with the Korn shell's job-control feature. It prints information about all background jobs. The information printed is in the following format:

*%num* [*+-*] *pid status command*

*num* indicates the job number, + indicates that the job is the "current job"; - indicates that it is the "previous job". *pid* gives the process identifier of the job. *status* indicates the status of the job. *command* gives the job's command line.

For details about job control, see the Lexicon entry for **ksh**.

**See Also**

**commands, ksh**

**join — Command**

Join two data bases

**join** [-a *n*] [-e *string*] [-j*n* *keyf*] [-o *n.m* ...] [-tc] *file1 file2*

**join** processes the text files *file1* and *file2*, each of which contains a relational data base. If either file name is '-', the standard input is used for that file.

For the purposes of **join**, a data base file contains a set of records, one per input line. Each record contains a number of *fields*. One field is differentiated as *key* field for each file. Each file must be sorted by key field, for example with **sort**.

By default, the key field is the first field in each record. The **-j** option changes the key field number to *keyf* for the desired file. In this and other options below, the optional file number *n* must be 1 to indicate *file1* or 2 to indicate *file2*. If no *n* is given, both *file1* and *file2* are assumed.

Normally, fields are separated by any amount of white space (blanks or tabs). Leading blanks or tabs are not considered part of the fields. With the **-t** option, the separator character is *c*. With this option zero-length fields are possible; every occurrence of the separator ends the previous field and starts a new one.

Output consists only of records for which the key field occurs in both files. As a consequence of the sorted order of the input, the output is also sorted by the key field. Each output record has first the key field, then each field from the *file1* record but the key field, and then each field from the *file2* record but the key field. Fields are separated in the output with the specified field character, or with a space character if no **-t** option was given. Output records are always terminated with a newline. Under the **-e** option, *string* is printed for each empty field.

The **-a** option enables printing of records found in only file *n*. If *n* is missing, unpaired records are printed from both input files. To output only certain fields, the **-o** option precedes a list of desired fields to print. Each element is of the form *n.m* where *n* is the file number and *m* is the field number.

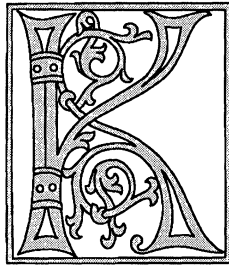
For example,

```
join -t: -j1 3 -o 1.3 2.4 1.4 1.1 2.2 filea fileb
```

joins **filea** and **fileb** which have fields separated by the colon (':') character. The join field number is 3 for **filea** and 1 (by default) for **fileb**. The selected five fields are produced in the output.

**See Also**

**awk, comm, commands, sort, uniq**

**kermit** — Command

Inter-system communication and file transfer

**kermit** *c*[*bell* *baud* *esc* *line*]

**kermit** *r*[*bdfhill**t* *baud* *line*]

**kermit** *s*[*abdfhillmtx* *baud* *line*]*file* ...

**kermit** allows the user to communicate with a remote computer system and to transfer files between the local and remote systems. **kermit** can transfer ASCII or binary files of any length in either direction. The two computers must be able to contact each other, such as through a serial line or by modem over a telephone line, and both systems must have **kermit** available. The user must have login privileges on both systems and appropriate permissions in directories used for file transfer.

The **kermit** command line specifies a *mode*, followed without intervening spaces by optional *flags*, perhaps followed by additional arguments and *files*. The three possible *modes* are as follows:

- c** Connect the two systems so they can communicate
- r** Receive files from the other system
- s** Send each *file* to the other system.

**kermit** normally uses a default communication line at a default baud rate; the defaults vary from system to system. **kermit** normally strips leading directory information from the path name of each *file* it sends and converts the name to upper case; it converts the file name to lower case when receiving.

The following *flags* modify **kermit**'s normal behavior.

- a** Specify complete path names for sending and receiving files. Used only with **s** mode. This flag requires file names in pairs: first gives the file to be sent, the second the receiving file. For example, the command  

```
kermit sa /usr/joe/stuff.c /usr/tom/src/thing.c
```

sends the file **/usr/joe/stuff.c** but specifies its name as **/usr/tom/src/thing.c** for the receiving system. The target directory must exist on the receiving system. The **a** flag implies the use of the **f** and **x** flags described below.
- b** *baud* Set the baud rate of the port to *baud*.
- d** Debug mode. Tell **kermit** to print messages that describe its actions. Message appear on the standard output, not the standard error.
- e** *esc* Change the escape character from the default '^' to *esc*; used only with **c** mode. The escape character marks commands to **kermit c** while it is running, as described below.

- f** Suppress conversion of the case of file names.
- h** Host mode. Tell **kermit** to use the same line for file transfer and for communication; used with either **r** or **s** mode on the remote system only. When invoked with the **h** flag, **kermit** resets the line modes properly when it completes a file transfer. If you do not use the **h** flag, **kermit** will probably leave the remote system line in raw, no-echo mode.
- i** Image mode. Tell **kermit** to send a full eight-bit byte for each character; this is necessary to transfer binary (non-ASCII) files. If you use **i** flag when sending, also use it on the receiving system.
- l line** Use *line*. For example, the command

`kermit clb /dev/tty50 1200`

tells **kermit** to use line tty50 at 1200 baud instead of the default line and baud rate.

- L** Log all **kermit** commands into file **Log**.
- m** Macintosh mode. Necessary when sending files to an Apple Macintosh; used only with **s** mode.
- t** Tymnet mode. Allows Tymnet to keep up with file transmission.
- x** Allows the specification of a complete pathname for the receiving file; used only with **s** mode. For example, the command

`kermit sx mydir/stuff`

sends the file **mydir/stuff** to **mydir/stuff** on the receiving system. The target directory must exist on the receiving system and the user must have write permission in it.

**kermit c** recognizes two escape sequences. The default escape character '^' can be changed with the **e** flag, as noted above.

- ^c** Exit from **kermit** and break the connection between the two systems. This notation does *not* mean <ctrl-C>; rather, you must literally type the escape character (by default, a carat '^') and then the letter 'c'.
- ^s** Suspend **kermit** on the host system but do not hang up the line.

Unlike some file transfer protocols, **kermit** requires that you invoke it on both the sending and receiving systems to transfer a file. As shown in the example below, you normally use **kermit c** to connect to the remote system, invoke **kermit** with the **h** flag in either send or receive mode on the remote system only, type "^s" to suspend the local **kermit c**, and finally invoke **kermit** in receive or send mode on the local system.

The following example demonstrates the use of **kermit**. The example assumes the user is already logged in on the local system. The communication line is **/dev/com2** and runs at 2400 baud. The user wants to transfer **locfile** to the remote system and **remfile** from the remote system. System names are in *italics* on the left, user input is in Roman, system responses are in **bold**, and remarks are in parentheses.

<i>local</i>	<b>kermit clb /dev/com2 2400</b>	(connect to remote system)
<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: connected...</b>	(type a carriage return)
<i>remote</i>	<b>Coherent login:</b>	(perform login procedure)
<i>remote</i>	<b>kermit shi remfile</b>	(send from remote)
<i>remote</i>	<b>)S~_@X#T</b>	(part of protocol, ignore)
<i>remote</i>	<b>^s</b>	(suspend local <b>kermit</b> )

<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: suspended.</b>	
<i>local</i>	kermit rilb /dev/com2 2400	(receive on local)
<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: Receiving REMFILE as remfile</b>	
<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: done.</b>	
<i>local</i>	kermit clb /dev/com2 2400	(connect again)
<i>remote</i>	kermit rhi	(receive on remote)
<i>remote</i>	^s	(suspend local <b>kermit</b> )
<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: suspended.</b>	
<i>local</i>	kermit silb /dev/com2 2400 locfile	(send from local)
<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: Sending locfile as LOCFILE</b>	
<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: done.</b>	
<i>local</i>	kermit clb /dev/com2 2400	(connect again)
<i>remote</i>	<ctrl-D>	(log off the remote system)
<i>remote</i>	<b>Coherent login:</b>	
<i>remote</i>	^c	(disconnect local <b>kermit</b> )
<i>local</i>	<b>kermit: disconnected.</b>	

### **Problems Connecting to the Modem**

Some users occasionally experience problems in having **kermit** talk to their modems. The **kermit** utility requires that the serial port it uses for communications *not* be enabled for logins. If you wish to use **kermit** on your modem line, you must perform the following steps. Note that comments are shown in *italic*.

who	(make sure nobody is logged in on the modem)
/etc/disable port	(where "port" is the modem port)
kermit options	(invoke kermit as needed)
. . .	
(disconnect via kermit)	
/etc/enable port	(re-enable modem port for logins)

### **See Also**

#### **commands, UUCP**

Kermit: A file-transfer protocol for universities, *BYTE*, June 1984 pp. 255ff, July 1984 pp. 143ff

### **Diagnostics**

**kermit** may print the following error messages:

Aborting with following error from remote host  
Problem appeared on receiving system.

Bad line speed  
Transmission was attempted at an illegal baud rate.

Cannot create *name*  
The receiving system cannot create *name*. Confirm that you have write permission on the receiving system.

Cannot open file *name*  
The sending system cannot open *name*. Either you do not have read permission on the sending system, or the file is not present in the named directory.

Cannot open *line*

An incorrect *line* number was specified.

No line specified for connection

The *line* argument missing after the **-l** option.

Receive failed

The file being sent was not received; this could be due to any one of a number of reasons. Check that everything is functioning normally, and then try to send the file again.

Send failed

The requested file was not sent.

Speed setting not implemented

An unimplemented baud rate was selected for the **-b** option.

Yes, I'm still here

The connect command was repeated.

## Notes

**kermit** is included only with COHERENT 286. To use the **kermit** protocol under COHERENT 386, use the command **ckermi**t.

If you type **kermit c** and get the message **kermit connected** but the remote system does not respond, check the line that connects the two systems and the ability of the remote system to accept a login on the line.

The file transfer protocol uses small (96-character) checksummed packets, with ACK/NAK responses from the receiving system. The timeout period is five seconds, and **kermit** does ten retries before it abandons an attempted file transfer.

The **kermit** protocol was developed at the Columbia University Center for Computing Activities. Tymnet is a trademark of Tymshare, Inc.

## keyboard tables — Technical Information

How to write a keyboard table

The COHERENT device-driver **nkb** supports industry-standard 83-, 101-, and 102-key AT-protocol keyboards attached as the computer console.

**nkb** lets you define both the layout of the keyboard and the values returned by function keys. You can change layout and function-key bindings by using the special keyboard mapping programs kept in directory **/conf/kbd**. This directory contains the C source code for the mapping tables, as well as a **Makefile** that helps you rebuild the mapping programs.

Before you begin to write or modify an existing keyboard table, be sure to read thoroughly this article and the Lexicon article on **nkb**. If you do not, you may foul up the keyboard so thoroughly that it will not work well enough for you to undo your mistake!

## Operational Overview

The device driver **nkb** provides the system's portion of the interface to the console keyboard. It handles hardware-specific details, such as initializing the keyboard and internal state, handling keyboard interrupts, processing key scan codes, and queuing characters.

The user half of the keyboard interface is provided by a set of stand-alone utilities. With these, you can program the **nkb** driver via specialized **ioctl** calls. These utilities differ from each other only in the keyboard binding or mapping tables each uses. You can re-construct the interface to the **nkb** driver by modifying a keyboard-mapping file and then using a support module to link that file to the driver.

The keyboard-mapping file is a C program that consists of initialized tables and strings. In addition, several header files provide the scan codes and other constants required for the key tables. This format makes the file easy to edit, and also lets you enter characters in several different formats.

The support module, in turn, performs several tasks. These include scanning the keyboard-mapping file for errors, reformatting the table for use by the device driver, and passing the reformatted table to the driver.

### **Key Mapping Files**

By convention, directory `/conf/kbd` contains the keyboard-mapping files, executables, and a **Makefile** that you use to construct the executables from the corresponding source files.

A keyboard-mapping source file consists primarily of three data structures that you must modify to support a given keyboard mapping. The first, and simplest, of the structures is **tbl\_name**. This is a character string that describes the keyboard. For example, the stock 101-key US AT keyboard mapping file `/conf/kbd/us.c` initializes this string to:

```
"U.S. AT keyboard table"
```

The second data structure, **kbtbl**, is an array of key-mapping entries. It has one entry (or row) for each possible key location. Each entry in this structure consists of 11 fields, which hold, respectively, the key number, nine possible mapping values, and a mode field. The following example is for physical key location 3 from key-mapping source file `/conf/kbd/belgian.c`:

```
{ K_3, 0x82, '2', none, none, 0x82, '2', '~', none, '~', O|T },
```

Field 1 contains the *scan code set 3* code value for the desired key. Header file `<sys/kbscan.h>` contains symbolic constants of the form **K\_nnn** that map the AT keyboard's *physical* key number *nnn* to the corresponding scan code set 3 value generated by the keyboard. In the above example, **K\_3** corresponds to key location three.

Fields 2 through 10 contain the key mappings corresponding to the following shift states, as follows:

- 2    base or unshifted
- 3    **SHIFT**
- 4    **CONTROL**
- 5    **CONTROL+SHIFT**
- 6    **ALT**
- 7    **ALT+SHIFT**
- 8    **ALT+CONTROL**
- 9    **ALT+CONTROL+SHIFT**
- 10   **ALT\_GRAPHIC**

For “regular” keys, the values for these nine fields are eight-bit characters; for “function” or “shift” keys, they are special values. The symbolic constant **none** indicates that you want no output when the key is pressed in the specified shift state.

In the case of a function key, the value specified is the number of the desired function key. Header file `<sys/kb.h>` defines a set of symbolic constants of the form **fn**, where *n* is the desired function key number. You should use these constants; they will improve the readability of your code, and they will protect your keyboard mapping source files from any future changes in the structure of the keyboard driver.

In the case of a “shift” key, all nine entries must be identical and must consist of one of the following symbolic constants: **scroll**, **num**, **caps**, **lalt**, **ralt**, **lshift**, **rshift**, **lctrl**, **rctrl**, or **altgr**. These are defined in the `<sys/kb.h>` header file. Note that 83-key XT-layout keyboards only have one “control” and “alt” key, so not all shift-key combinations may be possible on your target keyboard.



The last (11th) field in the key entry is the “mode” field. The following symbolic constants specify the mode of the current key:

- C** The **caps lock** key affects this key.
- F** The specified key is a “function” or special key. The value of all mapping entries must name function keys. See header file `<kb.h>` for a list of predefined function keys.
- M** Make: use this mode with keys that do not repeat. Note that accidentally using this mode with “shift” keys will stop you from being able to “unshift” upon releasing the key!
- MB** Make/Break: use this mode with “shift” keys.
- N** The **num lock** key affects this key.
- O** The specified key is “regular” and requires no special processing.
- S** The specified key is a “shift” or “lock” key. Note that all mapping entries for a given key must be identical for a “shift” or “lock” key to work correctly.
- T** Typematic: this type is usually associated with a “regular” key.
- TMB** Typematic/Make/Break.

The above example specifies a mode field of **O|T**, which corresponds to a “regular” key with Typematic repeat, and no special handling of the “lock” keys.

The last data structure, **funkey**, consists of an array of function-key initializers, one per function key. The initializers are simple quoted character strings delimited by either hexadecimal value **0xFF**, octal value **\377**, or symbolic constant **DELIM**. Note that any other value can be used as part of a function-key binding. Function keys are numbered starting at zero. By convention, function key 0, when enabled, reboots your computer. For traditional reasons, this function key is usually bound to the key sequence **<ctrl><alt><del>**.

Function keys are useful not only in the classic sense of the programmable function keys on the keyboard, but also as a general purpose mechanism for binding arbitrary length character sequences to a given key. For example, physical key location 16 is usually associated with the **<tab>** and **<back tab>** on the AT keyboard; and `/conf/kbd/us.c` sets the key mapping table entry for key 16 as follows:

```
{ K_16, f42, f43, none, none, f42, f43, none, none, none, F|T },
```

For traditional reasons, the **<back tab>** key outputs the sequence **<esc>[Z** whereas the **<tab>** key simply outputs the horizontal-tab character **<ctrl-I>**. Because at least one of the mapping values for this key is more than one character long, the key must be defined as a “function” key and all entries for the key must correspond to function-key numbers. In this example, function key number 42 was chosen for **<tab>**, and function key number 43 was chosen for **<back tab>**. The constant **none** indicates that you want no output when the key is pressed in the specified shift state. The corresponding **funkey** initialization entries for function keys **f42** and **f43** are as follows:

```
/* 42 */      "\t\377",          /* Tab */
/* 43 */      "\033[Z\377",      /* Back Tab */
```

We strongly recommend that you comment your function-key bindings.

You can also change function-key bindings via the command **fnkey**. This command lets you temporarily alter one or more function-key mappings without changing your key-mapping sources.

### **Building New Binaries**

After you have modified an existing keyboard-mapping table, use the following commands to rebuild the corresponding executables:

```
cd /conf/kbd
su root
make
```

If you have created a new keyboard mapping table, you must edit **/conf/kbd/Makefile**. Duplicate an existing entry from the **Makefile**, and change the duplicated name to match the name of your new keyboard-mapping table. After you have finished your editing, build an executable from your source file by simply executing the above series of commands.

To load your new keyboard table, simply type the name of the executable that corresponds to your keyboard-mapping file. For example, if you just built executable **french** from source file **french.c**, type the following command:

```
/conf/kbd/french
```

If the keyboard-support module finds an error, it will print an appropriate message. If it finds no errors, it will update the internal tables of the **nkb** keyboard driver, reprogram the keyboard, and print a message of the form:

```
Loaded French AT keyboard table
```

### **Examples**

Prior to the release of the 101- and 102-key, enhanced-layout AT keyboards, the **<ctrl>** key was positioned to the left of 'A' key. Most terminals also locate the **<ctrl>** key there. The first example shows how to swap the left **<ctrl>** key and the **<caps-lock>** key on a 101- and 102-key keyboard. The **<caps-lock>** key is physical key 30, whereas the left **<ctrl>** key is physical key 58. Their respective entries in file **/conf/kbd/us.c** source file are as follows:

```
{ K_30, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, S|M },
{ K_58, lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl, S|MB },
```

Note that the **<caps-lock>** key is defined with mode **M** as it is a "lock" key. The keyboard will interrupt only on key depressions, because releasing a "lock" key has no effect. The left **<ctrl>** key is defined with mode **MB** as it is a "shift" key. The keyboard generates an interrupt on both key depression and key release, because the driver must track the state of this key.

To swap the aforementioned keys, simply change all occurrences of **caps** to **lctrl** and vice-versa, as well as swapping the mode fields. After making the changes, the entries now appear as:

```
{ K_30, lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl,lctrl, S|MB },
{ K_58, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, caps, S|M },
```

The second example converts a 101- or 102-key keyboard table to support an XT-style 83-key keyboard layout. The following section summarizes the "typical" differences found when comparing the two keyboard layouts. Needless to say, given the extreme variety in keyboard designs, your mileage may vary.

Location	101/102 Value	83-key Value	Comments
14	none	Various	Keyboard-specific
30	caps	lctrl	
58	lctrl	lalt	
64	rctrl	caps	
65	none	F2	Function Key
66	none	F4	Function Key
67	none	F6	Function Key
68	none	F8	Function Key
69	none	F10	Function Key
70	none	F1	Function Key
71	none	F3	Function Key
72	none	F5	Function Key
73	none	F7	Function Key
74	none	F9	Function Key
90	num	Esc	
95	/	num	
100	*	scroll	
105	-	none	<SysReq> not used
106	+	*	
107	none	-	
108	<Enter>	+	
110	esc	none	Not on XT layout
112-123	F1-F12	none	Not on XT layout
124	none	none	<PrtScr> not used
125	scroll	none	Not on XT layout
126	none	none	<Pause> not used

### See Also

device drivers, fnkey, nkb

### Notes

Key 14, if used, varies considerably among keyboard models.

The location of the key that contains characters ` and | varies among 101-key US-layout keyboards.

When designing keyboard tables for keyboards that use the **ALT\_GRAPHIC** shift key, for reasons of backwards compatibility you should allow the use of combination shift **ALT+CTRL** as a synonym for **ALT\_GRAPHIC**.

### kill — Command

Signal a process

**kill** [- signal] pid ...

COHERENT assigns each active process a unique process id, or *pid*, and uses the *pid* to identify the process. **kill** sends *signal* to each *pid*. *signal* must be one of the numbers described in the header **<signal.h>** or **<sys/msig.h>**. The signal can be given by number or by name, as defined in these header files. By default, *signal* is **SIGTERM**, which terminates a given process.

If *pid* is zero, **kill** signals each process started by the user from the same tty.

The shell prints the process id of a process if the command is detached. The command **ps** prints a

list of all active processes, with process ids and command line arguments.

A user can kill only the processes he owns; the superuser, however, can kill anything. A process cannot ignore or catch **SIGKILL**.

See the Lexicon article for **signal** for a table of the signals and what each means.

### Files

<**sys/msig.h**> — Machine-dependent signal numbers

<**signal.h**> — Machine invariant signal numbers

### See Also

**commands**, **getpid()**, **init**, **kill()**, **ksh**, **ps**, **sh**, **signal()**

### **kill()** — System Call

Kill a system process

#include <**signal.h**>

**kill**(*pid*, *sig*)

int *pid*, *sig*;

**kill()** is the COHERENT system call that sends a signal to a process. *pid* is the process identifier of the process to be signalled, and *sig* identifies the signal to be sent, as set in the header file **signal.h**. This system call is most often used to kill processes, hence its name.

See the Lexicon article for **signal** for a table of the signals and what each means.

### Example

For an example of using this system call in a C program, see **signal()**.

### See Also

**signal()**, **signal.h**, **system calls**

### **ksh** — Command

The Korn shell

**ksh** *token* ...

The COHERENT system offers two command interpreters: **sh**, the Bourne shell; and **ksh**, the Korn shell. **sh** is the default COHERENT command interpreter. The shell tutorial included in this manual describes the Bourne shell in detail.

This article describes **ksh**, the Korn shell. **ksh** is a superset of the Bourne shell, and contains many features that you may well find useful. These include MicroEMACS-style editing of command lines; command hashing; a full-featured aliasing feature; and a job-control facility.

### Invoking **ksh**

To invoke **ksh** from within the Bourne shell, simply type **ksh** at the command-line prompt. To use **ksh** as your default shell, instead of **sh**, append the command **/usr/bin/ksh** to the end of your entry in the file **/etc/passwd**. (See the Lexicon entry for **passwd** for more information on this file.)

You can invoke **ksh** with one or more built-in options; these are described below.

### Commands

A *command* consists of one or more *tokens*. A *token* is a string of text characters (i.e., one or more alphabetic characters, punctuation marks, and numerals) delineated by spaces, tabs, or newlines.

A *simple command* consists of the command's name, followed by zero or more tokens that represent arguments to the command, names of files, or shell operators. A *complex command* will use shell constructs to execute one or more commands conditionally. In effect, a complex command is a mini-program that is written in the shell's programming language and interpreted by **ksh**.

## Shell Operators

The shell includes a number of operators that form pipes, redirect input and output to commands, and let you define conditions under which commands are executed.

### *command | command*

The *pipe* operator: let the output of one command serve as the input to a second. You can combine commands with '|' to form *pipelines*. A pipeline passes the standard output of the first (leftmost) command to the standard input of the second command. For example, in the pipeline

```
sort customers | uniq | more
```

**ksh** invokes **sort** to sort the contents of file **customers**. It pipes the output of **sort** to the command **uniq**, which outputs one unique copy of the text that is input into it. **ksh** then pipes the output of **uniq** to the command **more**, which displays it on your terminal one screenful at a time. Note that under COHERENT, unlike MS-DOS, pipes are executed concurrently; that is, **sort** does not have to finish its work before **uniq** and **more** can begin to receive input and get to work.

### *command ; command*

Execute commands on a command line sequentially. The command to the left of the ';' executes to completion; then the command to the right of it executes. For example, in the command line

```
a | b ; c | d
```

first execute the pipeline **a | b** then, when **a** and **b** complete, execute the pipeline **c | d**.

### *command &*

Execute a command in the background. This operator must follow the command, not precede it. It prints the process identifier of the command on the standard output, so you can use the **kill** command to kill that process should something go wrong. This operator lets you execute more than one command simultaneously. For example, the command

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0 &
```

formats a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk in drive 0 (that is, drive A); but while the disk is being formatted, **ksh** returns the command line prompt so you can immediately enter another command and begin to work. If you did not use the '&' in this command, you would have to wait until formatting was finished before you could enter another command.

**ksh** also prints a message on your terminal when a command that you are running in the background finishes processing. It does not check these "child" processes very often, however, so a command may have finished some time before **ksh** informs you of the fact. See the Lexicon article for the command **ps** for information on all processes; also see the description of the built-in command **jobs**, below.

### *command && command*

Execute a command upon success. **ksh** executes the command that follows the token '&&' only if the command that precedes it returns a zero exit status, which signifies success. For example, the command

```
cd /etc
fdformat -v /dev/fha0 && badscan -o proto /dev/fha0 2400
```

formats a floppy disk, as described above. If the format was successful, it then invokes the command **badscan** to scan the disk for bad blocks; if it was not successful, however, it does nothing.

**command || command**

Execute a command upon failure. This is identical to operator '&&', except that the second command is executed if the first returns a non-zero status, which signifies failure. For example, the command

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0 || echo "Format failed!"
```

formats a floppy disk. If formatting failed, it echoes the message **Format failed!** on your terminal; however, if formatting succeeds, it does nothing.

Note that the tokens newline, ';', and '&' bind less tightly than '&&' and '||'. **ksh** parses command lines from left to right if separators bind equally.

**>file** Redirect standard output. The *standard input*, *standard output*, and *standard error* streams are normally connected to the terminal. A pipeline attaches the output of one command to the input of another command. In addition, **ksh** includes a set of operators that redirect input and output into files rather than other commands.

The operator '>' redirects output into a file. For example, the command

```
sort customers >customers.sort
```

sorts file **customers** and writes the sorted output into file **customers.sort**. It creates **customers.sort** if it does not exist, and destroys its previous contents if it does exist.

**>>file** Redirect output into a file, and append. If the file does not exist, this operator creates it; however, if the file already exists, this operator appends the output to that file's contents rather than destroying those contents. For example, the command

```
sort customers.now | uniq >>customers.all
```

sorts file **customers.now**, pipes its output to command **uniq**, which throws away duplicate lines of input, and appends the results to file **customers.all**.

**<file** Redirect standard input. Here, **ksh** reads the contents of a file and processes them as if you had typed them from your keyboard. For example, the command

```
ed textfile <edit.script
```

invokes the line-editor **ed** to edit **textfile**; however, instead of reading editing commands from your keyboard, the shell passes **ed** the contents of **edit.script**. This command would let you prepare an editing script that you could execute repeatedly upon files rather than having to type the same commands over and over.

**<< token**

Prepare a "here document". This operator tells **ksh** to accept standard input from the shell input until it reads a line that contains only *token*. For example, the command

```
cat >FOO <<!\n    Here is some text.\n!
```

redirects all text between '<<!' and '!' to the **cat** command. The '>' in turn redirects the output of **cat** into file **FOO**. **ksh** performs parameter substitution on the here document unless the leading *token* is quoted; parameter substitution and quoting are described below.

**command 2> file**

Redirect the standard error stream into a file. For example, the command

```
nroff -ms textfile >textfile.p 2>textfile.err
```

invokes the command **nroff** to format the contents of **textfile**. It redirects the output of **nroff** (i.e., the standard output) into **textfile.p**; it also redirects any error messages that **nroff** may generate into file **textfile.err**.

Note in passing that a command may use up to 20 streams. By default, stream 0 is the standard input; stream 1 is the standard output; and stream 2 is the standard error. **ksh** lets you redirect any of these streams individually into files, or combine streams into each other.

**<&n** **ksh** can redirect the standard input and output to duplicate other file descriptors. (See the Lexicon article **file descriptor** for details on what these are.) This operator duplicates the standard input from file descriptor *n*.

**>&n** Duplicate the standard output from file descriptor *n*. For example,

```
2>&1
```

redirects file descriptor 2 (the standard error) to file descriptor 1 (the standard output).

Note that each command executed as a foreground process inherits the file descriptors and signal traps (described below) of the invoking shell, modified by any specified redirection. Background processes take input from the null device **/dev/null** (unless redirected), and ignore interrupt and quit signals.

### File-Name Patterns

The shell interprets an input token that contain any of the special characters **'?', '\*',** or **'['** as a file name *pattern*.

**?** Match any single character except newline. For example, the command

```
ls name?
```

will print the name of any file that consists of the string **name** plus any one character. If **name** is followed by no characters, or is followed by two or more characters, it will not be printed.

**\*** Match a string of non-newline characters of any length (including zero).

```
ls name*
```

prints the name of any file that begins with the string **name**, regardless of whether it is followed by any other characters. Likewise, the command

```
ls name?*
```

prints the name of any file that consists of the string **name** followed by at least one character. Unlike **name\***, the token **name?\*** must be followed by at least one character before it will be printed.

**~name**

Replace the name of user *name* with his **\$HOME** directory. For example, the command

```
ls -l -norm/src
```

lists the contents of the *src* subdirectory located under the **\$HOME** directory for user **norm**. This spares you from having to know where a given user's HOME directory is located.

**[!xyz]**

Exclude characters *xyz* from the string search. For example, the command

```
ls [!abc]*
```

prints all files in the current directory except those that begin with **a**, **b**, or **c**.

[C-c]

Enclose alternatives to match a single character. A hyphen '-' indicates a range of characters. For example, the command

```
ls name[ABC]
```

will print the names of files **nameA**, **nameB**, and **nameC** (assuming, of course, that those files exist in the current directory). The command

```
ls name[A-K]
```

prints the names of files **nameA** through **nameK** (again, assuming that they exist in the current directory).

When **ksh** reads a token that contains one of the above characters, it replaces the token in the command line with an alphabetized list of file names that match the pattern. If it finds no matches, it passes the token unchanged to the command. For example, when you enter the command

```
ls name[ABC]
```

**ksh** replaces the token **name[ABC]** with **nameA**, **nameB**, and **nameC** (again, if they exist in the current directory), so the command now reads:

```
ls nameA nameB nameC
```

It then passes this second, transformed version of the command line to the command **ls**.

Note that the slash '/' and leading period '.' must be matched explicitly in a pattern. The slash, of course, separates the elements of a path name; while a period at the begin of a file name usually (but not always) indicates that that file has special significance.

### Quoting Text

From time to time, you will want to "turn off" the special meaning of characters. For example, you may wish to pass a token that contains a literal asterisk to a command; to do so, you need a way to tell **ksh** not to expand the token into a list of file names. Therefore, **ksh** includes the **quotation operators** '\', '"', and "'"; these "turn off" (or *quote*) the special meaning of operators.

The backslash '\' quotes the following character. For example, the command

```
ls name\*
```

lists a file named **name\***, and no other.

The shell ignores a backslash immediately followed by a newline, called a *concealed newline*. This lets you give more arguments to a command than will fit on one line. For example, the command

```
cc -o output file1.c file2.c file3.c \  
file4.c file5.c file19.c
```

invokes the C compiler **cc** to compile a set of C source files, the names of which extend over more than one line of input. You will find this to be extremely helpful, especially when you write scripts and **makefiles**, to help you write neat, easily read commands.

A pair of apostrophes '' prevents interpretation of any enclosed special characters. For example, the command



```
find . -name '*.c' -print
```

finds and prints the name of any C-source file in the current directory and any subdirectory. The command **find** interprets the **\*** internally; therefore, you want to suppress the shell's expansion of that operator, which is accomplished by enclosing that token between apostrophes.

A pair of quotation marks **" "** has the same effect. Unlike apostrophes, however, **ksh** will perform parameter substitution and command-output substitution (described below) within quotation marks. Note that everything between quotation marks will be a single argument, even if there are spaces between the tokens. For example, the command

```
grep "x y" *.c
```

calls the string-search command **grep** to look for the string **x<space>y**.

## Scripts

Shell commands can be stored in a file, or *script*. The command

```
ksh script [ parameter ... ]
```

executes the commands in *script* with a new subshell **ksh**. Each *parameter* is a value for a positional parameter, as described below.

If you have used the command **chmod** to make *script* executable, then it is executed under the Bourne shell **sh**, without requiring the **ksh** command. Because all executable scripts are executed by the Bourne shell by default, not the Korn shell, you should avoid constructions that are unique to the Korn shell.

Parameters of the form **\$n** represent command-line arguments within a script. *n* can range from zero through nine; **\$0** always gives the name of the script. These parameters are also called *positional parameters*.

If no corresponding parameter is given on the command line, the shell substitutes the null string for that parameter. For example, if the script **format** contains the following line:

```
nroff -ms $1 >$1.out
```

then invoking **format** with the command line:

```
format mytext
```

invokes the command **nroff** to format the contents of **mytext**, and writes the output into file **mytext.out**. If, however, you invoke this command with the command line

```
format mytext yourtext
```

the script will format **mytext** but ignore **yourtext** altogether.

Reference **\$\*** represents all command-line arguments. If, for example, we change the contents of script **format** to read

```
nroff -ms $* >$1.out
```

then the command

```
format mytext yourtext
```

will invoke **nroff** to format the contents of **mytext** and **yourtext**, and write the output into file **mytext.out**.

Commands in a script can also be executed with the **.** (dot) command. It resembles the **ksh** command, but the current shell executes the script commands without creating a new subshell or a

new environment; therefore, you cannot use command-line arguments.

### **Variables**

Shell variables are names that can be assigned string values on a command line, in the form

```
name=value
```

The name must begin with a letter, and can contain letters, digits, and underscores '\_'. Note that no white space can appear around the '=', or the assignment will not work.

In shell input, '\$name' or '\${name}' represents the value of the variable. For example:

```
TEXT=mytext
```

```
nroff -ms $TEXT >$TEXT.out
```

Here, **ksh** expands **\$TEXT** before it executes the **nroff** command. This technique is very useful in large, complex scripts: by using variables, you can change the behavior of the script by editing one line, rather than having to edit numerous variables throughout the script.

Note that if an assignment precedes a command on the same command line, the effect of the assignment is local to that command; otherwise, the effect is permanent. For example,

```
kp=one testproc
```

assigns variable **kp** the value **one** only for the execution of the script **testproc**.

**ksh** sets the following variables by default:

- # The number of actual positional parameters given to the current command.
- @ The list of positional parameters "\$1 \$2 ...".
- \* The list of positional parameters "\$1" "\$2" ... (the same as '\$@' unless some parameters are quoted).
- Options set in the invocation of the shell or by the **set** command.
- ? The exit status returned by the last command.
- ! The process number of the last command invoked with '&'.  
\$ The process number of the current shell.

### **Environmental Variables**

**ksh** references the following environmental variables:

**ENV** If this variable is set at start-up, after all **profile** files have been executed, the expanded value is used as the shell's start-up file. It typically defines functions and aliases.

#### **FCEDIT**

This sets the editor used by the command **fc**.

**HOME** Initial working directory; usually specified in the password file **/etc/passwd**.

**IFS** Delimiters for tokens; by default space, tab, and newline.

#### **KSH\_VERSION**

The current version of the Korn shell that you are using.

**MAIL** Checked at intervals specified by environmental variable **MAILCHECK**. If file specified by this variable is new since last checked, the shell prints "You have mail." on the user's terminal. If the file has increased in size since the last check, the shell prints "You have new mail." on the user's terminal.

## **LEXICON**

**MAILCHECK**

Specifies the number of seconds between checking for new mail. If not specified, **MAILCHECK** defaults to 60 seconds.

**PATH** Colon-separated list of directories searched for commands.

**PS1** First prompt string, usually '\$'. Note that in this variable and **PS2**, **ksh** expands the symbol **!** into the current number of the command line. For example, the prompt **ksh !>** prints the prompt **ksh NN>** with every command, where **NN** is the number of the current command. This is useful when you have enabled the history feature, as described below.

To print a prompt that includes your local site name, include the variable **\$PWD** (described below) in the definition of **PS1**. For example,

```
PS1='$PWD>'
```

prints the current directory as your prompt, just like MS-DOS does. To include your system's name, read the contents of file **/etc/uucpname**, as follows:

```
SITE=`cat /etc/uucpname`  
PS1='$SITE!!$PWD>'
```

This form of the prompt is quite useful when you are working on networked machines and may not always be sure just what system you are working on. Note that two exclamation points are necessary; as noted above, **ksh** expands one **!** into the number of the current command.

Finally, to include the command number with site name and current directory, do the following:

```
SITE=`cat /etc/uucpname`  
PS1='$SITE!!$PWD !>'
```

This will give you a very long prompt, but one with much information in it.

**PS2** Second prompt string, usually '>'. **ksh** prints it when it expects more input, such as when an open quotation-mark has been typed but a close quotation-mark has not been typed, or within a shell construct.

**PWD** The present working directory, i.e., the directory within which you are now working.

**SECONDS**

The number of seconds since the current shell was started.

**SHELL** The full path name of the shell that you are now executing.

**TERM** The name of the type of terminal you are now using, as used by various programs for reading the file **/etc/termcap**.

**TIMEZONE**

The current timezone you are located in, as set in your **.profile**. This is an interesting and powerful variable; see its entry in the Lexicon for details.

**USER** The login-identifier of the user, i.e., you.

The following special forms substitute parameters conditionally:

**\${name-token}**

Substitute *name* if it is set; if it is not, substitute *token*.

**\${name=token}**  
Substitute *name* if it is set; if it is not set, substitute *token* and set *name* to equal *token*.

**\${name+token}**  
Substitute *token* if *name* is set.

**\${name?token}**  
Substitute *name* if it is set; if it is not, print *token* and exit from the shell.

### **Command Output Substitution**

**ksh** can use the output of a command as shell input (as command arguments, for example) by enclosing the command in grave characters ``. For example, to list the contents of the directories named in file **dirs**, use the command

```
ls -l `cat dirs`
```

### **Constructs**

**ksh** lets you control the execution of programs through the following constructs. It recognizes a construct only if it occurs unquoted as the first token of a command. This implies that a separator must precede each reserved word in the following constructs; for example, newline or ';' must precede **do** in the **for** construct.

**break** [*n*]  
Exit from **for**, **until**, or **while**. If *n* is given, exit from *n* levels.

**case** *token* **in** [ *pattern* [ | *pattern* ] ... ] *sequence*;; ] ... **esac**  
Check *token* against each *pattern*, and execute *sequence* associated with the first matching *pattern*.

**continue** [*n*]  
Branch to the end of the *n*th enclosing **for**, **until**, or **while** construct.

**for** *name* [ **in** *token* ... ] **do** *sequence* **done**  
Execute *sequence* once for each *token*. On each iteration, *name* takes the value of the next *token*. If the **in** clause is omitted, **\$@** is assumed. For example, to list all files ending with **.c**:

```
for i in *.c
do
    cat $i
done
```

**if** *seq1* **then** *seq2* [ **elif** *seq3* **then** *seq4* ] ... [ **else** *seq5* ] **fi**  
Execute *seq1*. If the exit status is zero, execute *seq2*; if not, execute the optional *seq3* if given. If the exit status of *seq3* is zero, then execute *seq4*, and so on. If the exit status of all tested sequences is nonzero, execute *seq5*.

**time** *sequence*  
Time how long it takes *sequence* to execute. When *sequence* has finished executing, the time is displayed on the standard output.

**while** *sequence1* [ **do** *sequence2* ] **done**  
Execute *sequence2* as long as the execution of *sequence1* results in an exit status of zero.

(*sequence*)  
Execute *sequence* within a subshell. This allows *sequence* to change the current directory, for example, and not affect the enclosing environment.

**{sequence}**

Braces simply enclose a *sequence*.

## Built-in Commands

**ksh** executes most commands via the **fork** system call, which creates a new process. See the Lexicon articles on **fork()** and **exec** for details on these calls. **ksh** also has the following commands built into itself.

**. script** Read and execute commands from *script*. Positional parameters are not allowed. **ksh** searches the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH** to find the given *script*.

**: [token ...]**

A colon ':' indicates a "partial comment". **ksh** normally ignores all commands on a line that begins with a colon, except for redirection and such symbols as \$, {, ?, etc.

**#** A complete comment: if # is the first character on a line, **ksh** ignores all text that follows on that line.

**alias [name=value ...]**

When called without arguments, **alias** prints all aliases and their values. When called with a *name* but no associated value, then it prints the value of *name*. When called with a *name* and *value* combination, it associated *value* with *name*.

For example, the command

```
alias logout='exit'
```

binds the token **logout** to the command **exit**: hereafter, whenever you type **logout**, it will be as if you typed the **exit** command.

Note that when you define an alias, you should be careful not to write one that is self-referring, or **ksh** will go into an infinite loop when it tries to expand the alias. For example, the definition:

```
# DO NOT DO THIS!
alias ls='ls -CF'
```

will send **ksh** into an infinite loop, as it tries infinitely to replace **ls** with **ls**. Rather, use the definition:

```
# THIS IS CORRECT
alias ls='/bin/ls -CF'
```

or

```
# THIS TOO IS CORRECT
alias ls='  ls -CF'
```

In the latter example, note the spaces between the first grave character and the **ls**.

**ksh** has a number of aliases set by default. See the section **Aliases**, below, for details.

**bind [-m] [key\_sequence=binding\_name ...]**

When called without arguments, list the current set of key bindings for MicroEMACS-style editing of command lines. When called with arguments, bind the *key\_sequence* to *binding\_name*.

For example, the command

```
bind '^H'=delete-word-backward
```

binds the editing command **delete-word-backward** to the key sequence **<esc><backspace>**. Note that the carat characters in this command are literally that, not the shell's representation of a literal **<esc>** or **<backspace>** character.

When called with the **-m** option, bind more than one *binding\_name* to a given *key\_sequence*. This lets you build keyboard macros, to perform complex editing tasks with one or two keystrokes.

See the section on **Command-line Editing**, below, for details.

**builtin** *command*

Execute *command* as a built-in command.

**cd** *dir* Change the working directory to *dir*. If no argument is given, change to the home directory as set by the environmental variable **HOME**. When invoked, it also changes the environmental variables **PWD** and **OLDPWD**.

Using a hyphen '-' as the argument causes **ksh** to change to the previous directory, i.e., the one indicated by shell variable **OLDPWD**. In effect, this swaps **OLDPWD** and **PWD**, thus allowing you to flop back and forth easily between two directories.

**echo** *token ...*

Echo *token* onto the standard output. **ksh** replaces the command **echo** with the alias **echo='print'**.

**eval** [*token ...*]

Evaluate each *token* and treat the result as shell input.

**exec** [*command*]

Execute *command* directly rather than as a subprocess. This terminates the current shell.

**exit** [*status*]

Set the exit status to *status*, if given, then terminate; otherwise, the previous status is used.

**export** [*name ...*]

**ksh** executes each command in an *environment*, which is essentially a set of shell variable names and corresponding string values. It inherits an environment when invoked, and normally it passes the same environment to each command it invokes. **export** specifies that the shell should pass the modified value of each given *name* to the environment of subsequent commands. When no *name* is given, **ksh** prints the name of each variable marked for export.

**export** *VARIABLE=value*

This form of the **export** command sets *VARIABLE* to *value*, and exports it. Thus, the command

```
export FOO=bar
```

is equivalent to the commands:

```
FOO=bar
export FOO
```

**fc** [**-l**] [**-n**] [*first* [*last*]]

Draw the previously executed commands *first* through *last* back for manipulation and possible execution. *first* and *last* can be referenced either by their history numbers, or by a string with which the command in question begins. Normally, the commands are pulled into an editor for manipulation before they are executed; the editor is defined by the environmental variable **FCEDIT** (default, **ed**). The commands in question are executed as soon as you exit from the editor. Option **-l** lists the command(s) on **stdout**, and so

suppresses the editing feature. Option **-n** inhibits the default history numbers.

**fc -s** [*old=new*] [*command*]

Re-execute *command* after substituting string *new* for *old*.

**function** *funcname* { *script* }

Define function **funcname** for the shell to execute. For example the following defines function **get\_name** for the shell:

```
function get_name {
    echo -n Please enter your name ...
    read name
    return 0
}
```

When **ksh** encounters **get\_name**, it runs the above-defined function, rather than trying to find **get\_name** on the disk. Note that the return status can be any valid status and can be checked in the code that called **get\_name** by reading the shell variable **\$?** (described above), or by using the function as the argument to an **if** statement. This allows you to build constructs like the following:

```
if get_name; then
    do_something
else
    do_something_else
fi
```

To list all defined functions, type the alias **functions**. To receive detailed information on a defined function, use the command **type name** where *name* is the name of the function in which you are interested.

**getopts** *optstring name* [*arg ...*]

Parse the *args* to *command*. See the Lexicon entry for **getopts** for details.

**hash** [-*r*] [*name ...*]

When called without arguments, **hash** lists the path names of all hashed commands. When called with *name* **hash** check to see if it is an executable command, and if so adds it to the shell's hash list. The **-r** option removes *name* from the hash list.

**kill** [-*l*] [*signal*] *process ...*

Send *signal* to *process*. The default signal is **TERM**, which terminates the process. *signal* may either be a number or a mnemonic as **#defined** in header file **<signal.h>**. When called with the **-l** option, it lists all known types of signals. See the Lexicon entry for **kill** for details.

**let** [*expression*]

Evaluate each *expression*. This command returns zero if *expression* evaluates to non-zero (i.e., fails), and returns non-zero if it evaluates to zero (i.e., succeeds). This is useful for evaluating expressions before actually executing them.

**print** [-*nreun*] [*argument ...*]

Print each *argument* on the standard output, separated by spaces and terminated with a newline. Option **-n** suppresses printing of the newline. Option **-un** redirects output from the standard output to file descriptor *n*.

Note that each *argument* can contain the following standard C escape characters: **\b**, **\f**, **\n**, **\r**, **\v**, and **\###**. See the Lexicon article on **C Language** for details each character's meaning. The option **-r** inhibits this feature, and the **-e** option re-enables it.

**read** *name ...*

Read a line from the standard input and assign each token of the input to the corresponding shell variable *name*. If the input contains fewer tokens than the *name* list, assign the null string to extra variables. If the input contains more tokens, assign the last *name* the remainder of the input.

**readonly** [*name ...*]

Mark each shell variable *name* as a read-only variable. Subsequent assignments to read-only variables will not be permitted. With no arguments, print the name and value of each read-only variable.

**return** [*status*]

Return *status* to the parent process.

**set** [-*aefhkmnuvx*] [-*o keyword*] [*name ...*]

Set listed flag. The -*o* option sets *keyword*, where *keyword* is a shell option.

When used with one or more *names*, this command sets shell variables *name* to values of positional parameters beginning with \$1.

For example, the command

```
set -h -o emacs ignoreeof
```

performs the following: turns on hashing for all commands, turns on MicroEMACS-style command-line editing, and turns off exiting upon EOF (that is, you must type **exit** to exit from the shell). **set** commands are especially useful when embedded in your **.profile**, where they can customize **ksh** to your preferences.

For details of this command, see its Lexicon entry.

**shift** Rename positional parameter 1 to current value of \$2, and so on.**test** [*option*] [*expression*]

Check *expression* for condition *option*. This is a useful and complex command, with more options than can be listed here. See its Lexicon entry for details.

**times** Print on the standard output a summary of processing time used by the current shell and all of its child processes.**trap** [*command*] [*n ...*]

Execute *command* if **ksh** receives signal *n*. If *command* is omitted, reset traps to original values. To ignore a signal, pass null string as *command*. With *n* zero, execute *command* when the shell exits. With no arguments, print the current trap settings.

**typeset** [-*flrx*] [+*flrx*] [*name [=value] ...*]

When called without an argument, this command lists all variables and their attributes.

When called with an option but without a *name*, it lists all variables that have the specified attribute; - tells **typeset** to list the value of each variable and + tells it not to.

When called with one or more *names*, it gives *name* to the listed attribute. If *name* is associated with a *value*, **typeset** also assigns the *value* to it.

**typeset** recognizes the following attributes:

- i Store variable's value as an integer
- f List function instead of variable
- r Make the variable read-only
- x Export variable to the environment

## LEXICON



**umask** [*nnn*]

Set user file creation mask to *nnn*. If no argument is given, print the current file creation mask.

**unalias** *name* ...

Remove the alias for each *name*.

**wait** [*pid*]

Hold execution of further commands until process *pid* terminates. If *pid* is omitted, wait for all child processes. If no children are active, this command finishes immediately.

**whence** [-v] *name* ...

List the type of command for each *name*. When called with the -v option, also list functions and aliases.

**Aliases**

**ksh** implements as aliases a number of commands that **sh** calls as separate executable programs. The **echo** alias, for instance, does everything that **/bin/echo** does, but **ksh** does not have to **fork()** and **exec()** simply to echo a token. Other aliases, like **pwd**, work by printing the contents of shell variables. The command **/bin/pwd** still works should you prefer it, but you must request it by its full path name should you not wish to use the much faster alias version.

**ksh** sets the following aliases by default. If you wish, you can use the built-in command **unalias** to make one or all of them go away.

```
echo=print
false=let
functions=typeset -f
history=fc -l
integer=typeset -i
login=exec login
newgrp=exec newgrp
pwd=print -r $PWD
r=fc -s
true=:
type=whence -v
```

The alias **history** is especially useful when you are using the Korn shell's history feature. When invoked with no argument, it prints the last 13 commands you typed. When invoked with one numeric argument, it lists the command that corresponds to that argument; for example

```
history 106
```

prints the 106th command you entered (assuming that you've entered that many). When used with two numeric arguments, it prints the range of commands between the two arguments; for example

```
history 10 99
```

prints the tenth through the 99th commands you entered.

**Job Control**

**ksh** lets you manipulate and monitor background jobs via its *job control* commands.

The following commands manipulate background jobs:

**jobs** Display information about all controlled jobs. Information is in the following format:

```
%num [+ -] pid status command
```

where *num* indicates the job number, '+' indicates the current job, '-' indicates the previous

job, *pid* is the job's process identifier, *status* shows the status of the job (e.g., Running, Done, Killed), and *command* is the command description. Note that **ksh** only checks for changes in job status when waiting for a command to complete.

**kill** [-signal] *pid* ...

Described above.

**wait** [*pid*]

Hold execution of further commands until process *pid* terminates. See its Lexicon entry for details.

The following '%' syntax can be used with the above commands:

%+ Select the current job.

%- Select the previous job.

%*num* Select the job with job number *num*.

%*string* Select the most recently invoked job whose command begins with *string*.

%?*string*

Select the most recently invoked job whose command contains *string*.

### **Command-line Editing**

One of the most useful features of **ksh** is its ability to remember commands that you have typed previously. You can interactively edit previously issued commands and re-issue them with just a few keystrokes.

You can recall commands and edit them using the **fc** command, described above. **ksh**, however, also has built into it a MicroEMACS editing feature that lets you recall and edit commands using MicroEMACS-style editing commands. When you have finished editing, simply typing **<enter>** dispatches the command for re-execution.

To turn on MicroEMACS editing, use the command

```
set -o emacs
```

The following table gives each editing command and its default keybinding. Note that you can replace any of the following keybindings by using the **bind** command, described above. Note, too, that not every command has a default keybinding. Those that do not have one are marked "None".

**abort** (<ctrl-G>)

Abort the current input line or function.

**auto-insert**

Insert text into the command line. This is the default for almost every key.

**backward-char** (<ctrl-B>)

Move the cursor one character to the left.

**backward-word** (<esc>B)

Move the cursor one word to the left. A **word** is defined as any cluster of characters delineated by any of the characters named in the environmental variable **IFS**: by default, **<space>**, **<tab>**, and **<newline>**.

**beginning-of-line** (<ctrl-A>)

Move the cursor to the leftmost position (i.e., the beginning) of the line.

**complete** (<esc><esc>)

Complete as much as is unique of the hashed command name or file name in which the cursor is positioned. If no unique command or file name is found, **ksh** beeps. Note that

## **LEXICON**

this command does nothing unless you have used the **set** command to turn on hashing.

**complete-command** (<ctrl-X><esc>)

Automatically complete as much as is unique of the hashed command name. Like the **complete** command, above, except that file names are not expanded.

**complete-file** (<ctrl-X><ctrl-X>)

Automatically complete as much as is unique of the file name. Like the **complete** command, above, except that commands are not expanded.

**delete-char-backward** (<ctrl-H>)

Delete the character to the left of the cursor. Shift text to the left to fill the gap left by the deleted character.

**delete-char-forward** (<ctrl-D>)

Delete the character upon which the cursor is positioned. Shift text to the left to fill the gap left by the deleted character.

**delete-word-backward** (<ctrl-W>)

Delete the word to the left of the cursor. Shift text to the left to fill the gap left by the deleted word.

**delete-word-forward** (<esc>D)

Delete the word to the right of the cursor. Shift text to the left to fill the gap left by the deleted word.

**down-history** (<ctrl-N>)

Scroll to the next command in the history buffer, if any.

**end-of-line** (<ctrl-E>)

Move the cursor to the rightmost position (i.e., the end) of the line.

**eot** (<ctrl-\_)

Send an EOT (end of transmission) signal to the shell. Normally, this is sent by <ctrl-D>, but MicroEMACS mode binds this keystroke to an editing command.

**forward-char** (<ctrl-F>)

Move the cursor one character to the right.

**forward-word** (<esc>F)

Move the cursor one word to the right.

**kill-line** (<ctrl-U>)

Delete (i.e., erase) this entire input line.

**kill-to-eol** (<ctrl-K>)

Kill the input line from where the cursor is positioned to the end of the line.

**list** (<esc>?)

Display a sorted listed of all hashed commands and file names that have been entered so far, and so lists the tokens that can be expanded with the **complete** commands, described above.

**list-command** (<ctrl-X>?)

List all hashed commands.

**list-file** (none)

List all files used in hashed commands so far.

**newline** (<ctrl-J> or <ctrl-M>)

Dispatch the current line to the shell for execution. The cursor need not be at the beginning or end of the line for this command to work correctly.

**prefix-1** (<esc>)

Introduce a two-character command sequence.

**prefix-2** (<ctrl-X>)

Introduce a two-character command sequence.

**quote** (<ctrl-^>)

Read the following character literally, rather than as an editing command.

**redraw** (<ctrl-L>)

Redisplay the prompt and the current command line. This is useful if the line is garbled due to, say, line noise when you are using a modem.

**search-character** (<ctrl-]>)

Search forward in the current command line for the next character typed.

**search-history** (<ctrl-R>)

Enter incremental-search mode and search backwards through the history buffer. **abort** aborts search and returns you to the line from which you began the search; <esc> ends searching and leaves you in the current line.

**stuff** (none)

Take a character that is bound to an editing command and “stuff” it back into the terminal input, so it can receive special treatment by the terminal handler.

**stuff-reset** (none)

“Stuffs” a character, then aborts input.

**transpose-chars** (<ctrl-T>)

Swap the character the cursor is on, with the character to its left.

**up-history** (<ctrl-P>)

Move to the previous line in the history buffer (if any).

**yank** (<ctrl-Y>)

Insert the most recently killed text back into the command string, at the point where the cursor is positioned.

**yank-pop** (<esc>Y)

Yank a string, then replace it within the “yank” buffer with the next most previously killed string.

Please note that when you turn on the MicroEMACS-style editing with the command **set -o emacs**, you can no longer log out by typing <ctrl-D>: the shell grabs this keystroke to edit the material in its input buffer. To log out, you must use the command **exit**, or type the command **set +o emacs** before typing <ctrl-D> to log out.

### **Command Completion**

**ksh** supports *command completion*. This feature permits you to invoke a command by typing only a fraction of it; **ksh** will flesh out the command, based on what commands you have already entered.

To invoke command completion, set the following in **.profile** or **.kshrc**:

```
set -h -o emacs
```

This turns on MicroEMACS-style command-line editing, as well as hashing and tracking.

As an example, say that you type the following commands:

```
compress foo.tar
ps alx
df -a
```

If you type **<ctrl-X>?**, you then see the commands you typed in alphabetical order:

```
compress      df      ps
```

If you want to re-invoke the **compress** command without having to type all of it, you can use either type **<ctrl-R>** followed by 'c' to use the shell's reverse-search capabilities; or you can type 'c' followed by **<esc><esc>** to have the shell's command-completion facility complete the command.

If you use the reverse-incremental search, you get the entire command line as you had typed it. Additional uses of **<ctrl-R>** while already in search mode tell **ksh** to search further back in its history list of commands.

If, however, you use the command completion, you get only the command. So, to continue the example, if you type the letter 'c' followed by **<esc><esc>** **ksh** displays the word **compress**, followed by a **<space>**, and awaits more input.

In general, the reverse-search is better if you wish to re-execute an entire command; but command completion is better if you want just the command name.

### **File-Name Completion**

**ksh** also lets you "complete" file names and directory names, just like you complete command names.

If you are entering a file name and have specified enough of the name in order to specify a unique file, typing **<esc><esc>** completes the file name or directory name. If you have not typed enough, **ksh** remains silent; type more characters of the file name, then try **<esc><esc>** again. If you enter a bogus file name or directory name, **ksh** beeps to indicate that it cannot complete the given name. When **ksh** completes a file name, it then prints a space character. This indicates that the string names a file (rather than a directory); the space character lets you begin immediately to type the next argument. When **ksh** completes a directory name, it appends a slash ('/') instead of a space character, and waits for you to type the next part of the path name.

For example, if you type

```
ls -l /usr/spool/uucp
```

followed by **<esc><esc>**, nothing happens because of the ambiguity between directory names **/usr/spool/uucp/** and **/usr/spool/uucppublic/**.

If you then type the letter 'p', the command now appears:

```
ls -l /usr/spool/uucpp
```

Typing **<esc><esc>** now expands it out to

```
ls -l /usr/spool/uucppublic/
```

which is the name you desire. Note that **ksh** appends the trailing slash and waits for more.

A file-name completion example is:

```
more /usr/lib/uucp/P
```

followed by **<esc><esc>**; this yields:

```
more /usr/lib/uucp/Permissions
```

which saves you eight keystrokes.

### Example

The following C code creates a program called **splurt.c**. It demonstrates numbered redirection of **ksh**, by writing to five streams without opening them. Compile it with the command:

```
cc -o splurt splurt.c
```

To call it from the command line, you could type a command of the form:

```
splurt      3> splurt3 4> splurt4 5> splurt5 6> splurt6 7> splurt7
```

This will redirect the **splurt**'s output into files **splurt3** through **splurt7**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    int i;
    char buf[50];
    for(i = 3; i < 8; i++) {
        sprintf(buf, "For fd %d\n", i);
        write(i, buf, strlen(buf));
    }
}
```

### Files

**/etc/profile** — System-wide initial commands

**\$HOME/.profile** — User-specific initial commands

**/dev/null** — For background input

### See Also

**bind, commands, dup(), environ, exec, fork(), getopt, jobs, kill, login, newgrp, set, sh, signal(), test, wait**

For a list of commands associated with **ksh**, see the **Shell Commands** section of the **Commands** Lexicon article.

*Introduction to sh, the Bourne Shell, tutorial*

### Notes

Note that the queue of previously issued commands is stored in memory, not on disk.

This version of **ksh** offers a subset of the features of the Korn shell shipped with UNIX System V.2. It does *not* offer the following features:

- **vi**-style command-line editing.
- Command **fc -e**.
- Variables **RANDOM** and **PPID**.
- Variable arrays.

- Variable attributes other than integers.

The Mark Williams version of **ksh** is based on the public-domain version of the Korn shell, which in turn is based on the public-domain version of the seventh edition Bourne shell written by Charles Forsyth and modified by Eric Gisin, Ron Natalie, Arnold Robbins, Doug Gwyn, and Erik Baalbergen.

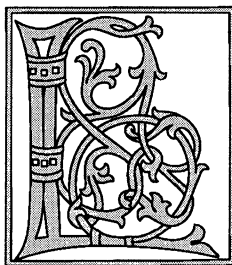
### **KSH\_VERSION** — Environmental Variable

List current version of Korn shell

The Korn shell stores its current version in environmental variable **KSH\_VERSION**.

#### **See Also**

**environmental variables, ksh**



---

**l — Command**

List directory's contents in long format

**l** [*file* ...]

**l** is a link to the command **ls -l**. It prints the contents of *file* in long format, that is, showing its length, its owner, the date and time it was last modified, and other useful information. If a *file* is a directory, **l** lists its contents. If no *file* is named, **l** lists the contents of the current directory by default.

**See Also**

**commands, lc, lf, lr, ls, lx**

---

**L-devices — File Format**

Describe devices used by UUCP

**/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices**

The file **L-devices** describes the communication lines from your COHERENT system to other sites. It indicates whether a line is directly wired or under modem control, and it also gives the protocol needed to manipulate it. The command **uucico** reads the contents of **L-devices** before it attempts to transfer a file to or from a remote site.

Each entry in **L-devices** has five fields, each field being a string demarcated by one or more white-space characters. The fields are as follows:

**1. Type**

The first field defines the type of line. A line can be either of two types: **DIR** (for a directly wired line), or **ACU** (for a modem). Note the spelling; both entries must be entirely in upper case.

**2. Line**

The second field defines the serial line into which the device is plugged. This entry must specify the "local" COM device (e.g., **com3l** or **hs00**).

**3. Disable**

For modem devices (type **ACU**), the third field must give the remote variant for the entry in field 2 (e.g., for **com3l** the entry would be **com3r**, for **hs00** it is **hs00r**). The device named in this field must appear in the file **/etc/ttys**. For directly connected devices (type **DIR**), the device is the same as the entry in the second field.

**4. Baud**

The fourth field must give a legal baud rate for your modem, as specified in the entry in file **/etc/modemcap** for your modem.



## 5. Modem

Field 5 must correctly name your modem using an entry from `/etc/modemcap`.

The file `/etc/modemcap` contains descriptions for a number of popular modems, to spare you the trouble of typing control sequences for your modem. For a list of the modems described in this file, as well as available speeds, see the Lexicon entry for `modemcap`.

### Example

The following entry in file `L-devices` specifies a 1200-baud Hayes (or Hayes-compatible) modem attached to serial port COM2:

```
ACU    com2l    com2r    1200    hayes
```

### See Also

`file formats`, `UUCP`

## **l.out.h** — Header File

Format for COHERENT 286 objects

**#include <l.out.h>**

The header file `l.out.h` describes the format for the output of compilers, assemblers, and the linker under COHERENT 286.

The assembler outputs an unlinked object module, which must be bound with any required libraries (leaving no unresolved symbols) to produce an executable file, or *load module*. A call to one of the **exec** routines can then execute the load module directly.

The link module begins with a header, which gives global and size information about each segment. Segments of the indicated size follow the header in a fixed order. The header file `l.out.h` defines the header structure as follows:

```
struct    ldheader {
            short        l_magic;
            short        l_flag;
            short        l_machine;
#pragma align 2
            vaddr_t      l_entry;
            size_t       l_ssize[NLSEG];
#pragma align
};
```

**l\_magic** is the magic number that identifies a link module; it always contains **L\_MAGIC**. **l\_flag** contains flags indicating the type of the object. **l\_machine** is the processor identifier, as defined in the header file `mtype.h`. **l\_tbase** is the start of the text segment. **l\_entry** contains the machine address where execution of the module commences. **l\_ssize** gives the size of each segment.

### Files

`l.out` — Default load module name

`<l.out.h>` — Define format of COHERENT 286 objects

`<mtype.h>` — Machine identifiers

### See Also

`as`, `cc`, `core`, `exec`, `ld`, `mtype`, `nm`, `system calls`

## Notes

COHERENT 386 uses the common object file format (COFF) for its executables. See the Lexicon entry for **coff.h** for information on this format.

## **L.sys** — File Format

Format for UUCP site descriptions

**/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys**

The file **L.sys** holds descriptions of remote sites that are accessed via UUCP. UUCP utilities read from this file the description of any system that you ask them to access. The superuser **root** can read and edit the contents of this file, both to update its contents and to add new descriptions.

Each line in **L.sys** is either a comment or a site descriptor. If a line begins with a pound sign ('#'), it is a comment; otherwise, it is treated as a site descriptor. Each site description consists of five or more fields, each field being demarcated by one or more white-space characters.

## Site Description

The first five fields of a site description identify the site and how to contact it. These fields are as follows:

### 1. Remote system name

This names the remote system. In COHERENT versions 3.0.0 and 3.1.0, only the first seven characters are significant.

### 2. Legal call times

This entry specifies when the remote site may be called. There are several possible formats:

**Never**

*day\_list*

*day\_and\_time\_list*

**Never** means never call the remote site; use it only for sites that will only be calling you. *day\_list* may be any of the following: **Any** (that is, call as soon as a file is queued for sending), **Wk** (for Monday through Friday), or one or more of **Su**, **Mo**, **Tu**, **We**, **Th**, **Fr**, or **Sa**, separated by commas (be sure not to use spaces here). A *day\_and\_time\_list* is identical to a *day\_list* but appends a *time* field to one or more of the days specified. The *time* field consists of two four-digit 24-hour times separated by a hyphen. The legal call time is any time at or after the first time and at or before the second time. If the first time is greater than the second time, then the valid calling times will be from midnight to the second time and from the first time through midnight. Omitting the *time* field permits calling at any time on the specified day. For example:

```
# never dial the site
Never
# dial the site whenever a file is queued
Any
# dial on Sunday, Monday and Tuesday, 2-5 AM
SuMoTu0200-0500
# Weekdays between 1-7 PM and all day on Saturday
Wk1300-1900,Sa
# Midnight Sunday through 2 AM and 11 PM through midnight
Su2300-0200
```

### 3. Device

This indicates the device on your computer via which UUCP is to contact the remote site. For sites accessed via a modem, use the entry **ACU**. For sites directly connected via a serial

port, use the name of the port, e.g., **com3l**.

#### 4. Speed

This gives the the baud rate at which UUCP is to call the remote system, e.g., 1200, 2400, or 9600. This speed must be valid according to the file **/etc/modemcap** for at least one modem described in the file **L-devices**.

#### 5. Telephone number

This gives the string that UUCP is to send to the modem in order to call the remote site. This string may include special characters for your modem (e.g., some modems accept a comma if a pause is needed during dialing), but will usually be simply the number to dial, e.g. "17085590412". The string that is actually sent to the modem consists of the **cs** and **ds** strings from the modem's entry in **/etc/modemcap**, the telephone number, and finally the **de** and **ce** strings from **/etc/modemcap**.

### Chat Script

The remaining fields in a descriptor form the "chat script", that is, the dialogue that your UUCP system must perform in order to log on to the remote computer. The chat script consists of strings of characters to be exchanged between the remote computer and your UUCP system; first comes an *expect\_string* (the string that your system expects), followed by a *send\_string* (the string to send in response to the *expect\_string*). When calling a remote site, your computer waits for a carrier from the remote modem, then waits for the first *expect\_string*, after which it sends the first *send\_string*, etc.

Consider, for example, the remote system **bazooka**, which has a login prompt of **Coherent login:**; assume that your login is **howard**, the remote system prompts for passwords with **password:**, and your password is **r56d92**. The chat script for **bazooka** will read as follows:

```
ogin: howard word: r56d92
```

As you can see from the above example, an *expect\_string* need contain only the last five characters of what the remote system sends.

An *expect\_string* may be compound or simple. A *simple\_expect\_string* is either a sequence of characters (not including spaces, tabs, or hyphens) or a pair of quotation marks **"**. An empty pair of quotation marks tells UUCP not to wait for any incoming prompt, but go ahead and send the next *send\_string* (i.e., expect a null string). A *compound\_expect\_string* is a sequence of fields separated by hyphens, in the format:

```
simple_expect_string-send_string-simple_expect_string-send_string...
```

A *compound\_expect\_string* has no spaces or tabs. If the first *simple\_expect\_string* is not received within 25 seconds, the first *send\_string* after the hyphen is sent and the system waits for the second *simple\_expect\_string*; if the second *simple\_expect\_string* is not received after 25 seconds, the second *send\_string* is sent, and so on. This syntax allows UUCP to use any number of alternate expect/send exchanges, rather than failing if it does not receive the first *expect\_string*.

A *send\_string* is the character sequence that UUCP sends to the remote site. Unless otherwise specified, UUCP sends a newline at the end of any *send\_string*. As a special case of this, an empty alternate *send\_string* tells UUCP to send a single newline to the remote site if the preceding *expect\_string* is not received. For example

```
ogin:--ogin:
```

is a compound *expect\_string* that tells UUCP to wait for the string **ogin:** from the remote site. If UUCP does not receive this string within the specified time limit, it sends a newline and again waits for **ogin:** from the remote site.

A *send\_string* that consists of only two quotation marks **" "** sends a carriage return and nothing

else. Otherwise, it sends the text specified followed by a carriage return. You can embed the following escape sequences into a *send\_string* to send special characters:

<i>Notation</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<b>\EOT</b>	Send an EOT character (\004)
<b>\BREAK</b>	Send a break signal on the line
<b>\b</b>	Send a backspace
<b>\c</b>	Suppress the carriage return normally sent (can occur anywhere in send string)
<b>\d</b>	Delay for two seconds
<b>\K</b>	Send a break signal on the line
<b>\n</b>	Send a newline
<b>\N</b>	Send a NUL character (\000)
<b>\p</b>	Delay for one second
<b>\r</b>	Send a carriage return
<b>\s</b>	Send a space character
<b>\t</b>	Send a tab character
<b>\\</b>	Send a backslash character
<b>\xxx</b>	Send the octal character specified

### Limitations

**L.sys** has the following limitations:

- Site descriptors may not continue beyond one line.
- Line length cannot exceed 511 characters.
- No line may have more than 27 composite-expect/send pairs.
- In the COHERENT versions 3.0.0 and 3.1.0, there is no way to send a break signal to the remote modem. This feature will be added in a future release.

### Example

The following **L.sys** entries are used to dial into the MWC UUCP BBS. The first entry corresponds to 2400 b.p.s. access and the second to 9600 b.p.s via a Telebit Trailblazer modem. Please note that in the example below, entries are continued over multiple lines; in the actual file, each entry must be on a single line, but the line may exceed 80 characters in length.

```
mwcbbbs      Any ACU 2400 17085590412 \
"" \r\d\r in:--in: nuucp word: public word: SERIALNUM
#mwcbbbs      Any ACU 9600 17085590445 \
FAST \r\d\r in:--in: nuucp word: public word: SERIALNUM
```

For further details on accessing the MWC BBS, refer to the COHERENT Release Notes.

### See Also

**file formats, L-devices, modemcap, Permissions, UUCP**

### ***l3tol()*** — General Function (libc)

Convert file system block number to long integer

**l3tol**(*lp*, *l3p*, *n*)

**long** \**lp*;

**char** \**l3p*;

**unsigned** *n*;

To conserve space inside i-nodes in COHERENT file systems, the system stores block addresses in three bytes. Programs that reference or maintain file systems use the functions **l3tol()** and **ltol3()** routines to convert between the three-byte representation and **long** numbers.

**l3tol()** converts *n* three-byte block addresses at location *l3p* to an array of **long** integers at location *lp*.

### See Also

**canon.h**, **general functions**, **ltol3()**

## LASTERROR — Environmental Variable

Program that last generated an error

**LASTERROR**=*program name*

The environmental variable **LASTERROR** names the last program to have returned an error to the shell. For example, if you had used the command **set** with an incorrect number of arguments, it would have failed to run and would have exited with an error condition, and **LASTERROR** would read **LASTERROR=set**.

The command **help** reads **LASTERROR** to determine what the last program was for which you needed help. Thus, if you type **help** without an argument, it will return information about the program named in **LASTERROR**.

### See Also

**environmental variables**

## lc — Command

List directory's contents in columnar format

**lc** [ **-labcdfp** ] [ *directory* ...]

**lc** lists the names of the files in each *directory*, or the current directory if no *directory* is named. The files are categorized by type (files, directories, and so on) and listed in columns within each category.

The following options modify the output.

- l** List only one file name per line (do not print in columns).
- a** List all file names, including '.' and '..'.
- b** List block-special files only.
- c** List character-special files only.
- d** List directories only.
- f** List regular files only.
- p** List pipe files only.

### See Also

**commands**, **ls**

### Notes

**lc -lf** is useful for producing a list of regular files. For example,

```
cp `lc -lf` mydir
```

copies all regular files to directory **mydir**.

**ld — Command**

Link relocatable object modules

**ld** [*option ...*] *file ...*

A compiler translates a file of source code into a *relocatable object*. This relocatable object cannot be executed by itself, for calls to routines stored in libraries have not yet been resolved. **ld** combines, or *links*, relocatable object files with routines stored in libraries produced by the archiver **ar** to construct an executable file. For this reason, **ld** is sometimes called a *linker*, a *link editor*, or a *loader*.

**ld** scans its arguments in order and interprets each option as described below. Each non-option argument is either a relocatable object file, produced by **cc**, **as**, or **ld**, or a library archive produced by **ar**. It rejects all other arguments and prints a diagnostic message.

Each relocatable file argument is bound into the output file if its machine type matches the machine type of the first file so bound; if it does not, **ld** prints a diagnostic message. The symbol table of the file is merged into the output symbol table and the list of defined and undefined symbols updated appropriately. If the file redefines a symbol defined in an earlier bound module, the redefinition is reported and the link continues. The last such redefinition determines the value that the symbol will have in the output file, which may be acceptable but is probably an error.

Each library archive argument is searched only to resolve undefined references, i.e., if there are no undefined symbols, the linker goes to the next argument immediately. The library is searched from first module to last and any module that resolves one or more undefined symbols is bound into the output exactly as an explicitly named relocatable file is bound. The library is searched repeatedly until an entire scan adds nothing to the executable file.

The order of modules in a library is important in two respects: it will affect the time required to search the library, and, if more than one module resolves an undefined symbol, it can alter the set of library modules bound into the output.

A library will link faster if the undefined symbols in any given library module are resolved by a library module that comes later in the library. Thus, the low-level library modules, those with no undefined symbols, should come at the end of the library, whereas the higher-level modules, those with many undefined symbols, should come at the beginning. The library module **ranlib.sym**, which is maintained by the **ar s** modifier, provides **ld** with a compressed index to the symbols defined in the library. But even with the index, the library will link much faster if the modules occur in top-down rather than bottom-up order.

A library can be constructed to provide a type of “conditional” linking if alternate resolutions of undefined symbols are archived in a carefully thought-out order. For instance, **libc.a** contains the modules

```
fini.o
exit.o
_finish.o
```

in precisely the order given, though some other modules may intervene. **fini.o** contains most of the internals of the STDIO library, **exit.o** contains the **exit()** function, and **\_finish.o** contains an empty version of **\_finish()**, the function that **exit()** calls to close STDIO streams before process termination. If a program uses any STDIO routines, macros, or data, then **fini.o** will be bound into the output with its version of **\_finish()**. If a program uses no STDIO, then the “dummy” **\_finish.o** will be bound into the output because it is the first module that defines **\_finish()** that the linker encounters after **exit.o** adds the undefined reference. This saves approximately 3,000 bytes. To set the order of routines within a library, use the archiver **ar**.

## COFF Linking

COHERENT 386 uses the Common Object File Format (COFF). This format renders many advantages, but it also places special demands upon the linker. The following discusses some of the complexities that arise for linking into the COFF format.

Under COFF, common variables are kept aligned according to their most strongly aligned contributor. If *name* is linked with another module that also declares *name* but sets it to another length, the linker creates one such variable and gives it the greater length of the two. **ld** deduces the alignment of a common variable by its length: if the length of a common is divisible by four, it is aligned on a four-byte boundary; if it is divisible by two, it is aligned on a two-byte boundary. Otherwise, it is assumed to be unaligned. The linker supports only three classes of alignment: four-byte, two-byte, and unaligned. It then aligns a common variable according to its most strongly aligned contributor.

For example, if one assembly-language module contributes a **.comm** (common) variable named **xyz** whose length is four bytes, and another contributes another **xyz** whose length is five bytes, **ld** gives the resulting **xyz** a length of eight bytes to satisfy the length requirement (at least five) and the alignment requirement (four-byte boundary).

Or in another example, if you declare a C variable **char x**; **x** is a common variable, with a length of one byte. If another C module declares **long x**; the two **x**'s will share a length of four bytes. However, in the first module **sizeof(x) == 1** and in the second **sizeof(x) == 4**. These will cause warning messages to appear, which you can turn off by using the **-q** option.

After **ld** has made its first pass, it places all common variables at the end of the **.bss** segment: first the four-byte-aligned variables, then the two-byte-aligned, then the unaligned.

## Options

**ld** recognizes the following options. Note that if an option labelled "COHERENT 386 only" is used under COHERENT 286, **ld** silently ignores it.

- d** Define common regions even if relocation information is retained. By default, **ld** leaves common areas undefined if there are undefined symbols or if the **-r** option is specified. COHERENT 286 only.
- e entry** Specify the *entry* point of the output module, either as a symbol or as an absolute octal address.
- f** (Force) Force link even if there are errors. Results may be undefined.
- i** This option is obsolete, but is kept for compatibility purposes. If you include it in a **makefile**, **ld** will silently ignore it.
- K** (COHERENT 386 only)  
Link a kernel segment.
- Ldirectory**  
Search *directory* for libraries and objects before searching the directories named in **LIBPATH**. Note that you can have more than one **-L** option in a **ld** command line. For example, if **LIBPATH** is set to **/lib;/usr/lib**, then the command line

```
ld -L/search/First -L/search/Next a.o -lxyz
```

tells **ld** to search for libraries **libxyz.a** and **libc.a** along the path:

```
/search/First;/search/Next;/lib;/usr/lib
```

- l name** An abbreviation for the library **/lib/libname.a** or **/usr/lib/libname.a** if the first is not found.
- o file** Write output to *file*. Under COHERENT 286, the default is **l.out**; under COHERENT 386, the default is **a.out**.
- q** (Quiet) Suppress all warning messages.
- r** Retain relocation information in the output, and issue no diagnostic message for undefined symbols. This option builds a **.o** file that appears as if its pieces had been compiled together.
- s** Strip the symbol table from the output. The same effect may be obtained by using the command **strip**. The **-s** and **-r** options are mutually exclusive.
- u symbol**  
Add *symbol* to the symbol table as a global reference, usually to force the linking of a particular library module.
- X** Discard local compiler-generated symbols beginning **.L**.
- x** Discard all local symbols.

**ld** reads the environmental variables **LDHEAD** and **LDTAIL** and appends them to, respectively, the beginning and end of its command line. For example, to ensure that **ld** is always executed with the option **-d**, insert the following into your **.profile**:

```
export LDHEAD=-d
```

Likewise, to ensure that **ld** always includes the mathematics library **libm** when it links, insert the following into your **.profile**:

```
export LDTAIL=-lm
```

## **LIBPATH**

Except when used with its **-l** option, **ld** does not know about paths: it links exactly what you tell it to link via the **cc** command line. **cc** looks for libraries by searching the directories named in the environmental variable **LIBPATH**. If you do not define **LIBPATH** in your environment, it searches the default **LIBPATH** as defined in **/usr/include/path.h**. If you define **LIBPATH**, **cc** searches the directories in the order you specify. For example, a typical definition is:

```
export LIBPATH=:/lib:/usr/lib
```

This searches the current directory **.**, then **/lib**, then **/usr/lib**.

## **Files**

**a.out** — Default output, COHERENT 386

**l.out** — Default output, COHERENT 286

**/coherent** for **-k** option

**/lib/lib\*.a** — Libraries

**/usr/lib/lib\*.a** — More libraries

## **See Also**

**ar**, **ar.h**, **as**, **cc**, **coff.h**, **commands**, **l.out.h**, **LIBPATH**, **linker-defined symbols**, **strip**

## **Notes**

By default, COHERENT 286 allocates two kilobytes of stack to a process. This is sufficient for most processes. To change the amount of stack used by a given executable program, use the command **fixstack**. See its Lexicon entry for details. COHERENT 386 uses the dynamic-stack allocation feature of the 80386, so inadequate stack should never be a problem.

# **LEXICON**



The error messages produced by the COHERENT 286 edition of **ld** differ significantly from those produced by the COHERENT 386 edition. Be sure to check the appropriate section in the table of error messages.

If you are linking a program by hand (that is, running **ld** independently from the **cc** command), be sure to include the appropriate run-time start-up routine with the **ld** command line; otherwise, the program will not link correctly.

**ld** for COHERENT 286 recognizes a limit of 16 significant characters in a variable name. **ld** for COHERENT 386 has no formal limit.

### ldexp() — General Function (libc)

Combine fraction and exponent

**double ldexp**(*f*, *e*) **double** *f*; **int** *e*;

**ldexp**() combines the fraction *f* with the binary exponent *e* to return a floating-point value *real* that satisfies the equation  $real = m \cdot 2^e$ .

#### See Also

**atof()**, **ceil()**, **fabs()**, **floor()**, **frexp()**, **general functions**, **modf()**

### LDHEAD — Environmental Variable

Append options to beginning of **ld** command line

**export LDHEAD=options**

The COHERENT linker **ld** reads the environmental variables **LDHEAD** and **LDTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the linker always to use.

**ld** appends the options in **LDHEAD** to the beginning of its command line.

#### See Also

**environmental variables**, **ld**, **LDTAIL**

### ldiv() — General Function (libc)

Perform long integer division

**#include <stdlib.h>**

**ldiv\_t** **ldiv**(*numerator*, *denominator*)

**long** *numerator*, *denominator*;

**ldiv**() divides *numerator* by *denominator*. It returns a structure of the type **ldiv\_t**, which is structured as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    long quot;
    long rem;
} ldiv_t;
```

**ldiv**() writes the quotient into **quot** and the remainder into **rem**.

The sign of the quotient is positive if the signs of the arguments are the same; it is negative if the signs of the arguments differ. The sign of the remainder is the same as the sign of the numerator.

If the remainder is non-zero, the magnitude of the quotient is the largest integer less than the magnitude of the algebraic quotient. This is not guaranteed by the operators **/** and **%**, which merely do what the machine implements for divide.

**See Also**

**div()**, **general functions**

**Notes**

The ANSI Standard includes this function to permit a useful feature found in most versions of FORTRAN, where the sign of the remainder will be the same as the sign of the numerator. Also, on most machines, division produces a remainder. This allows a quotient and remainder to be returned from one machine-divide operation.

If the result of division cannot be represented (e.g., because *denominator* is set to zero), the behavior of **ldiv()** is undefined. *Caveat utilitor.*

**LDTAIL — Environmental Variable**

Append options to end of **ld** command line

**export LDTAIL=options**

The COHERENT linker **ld** reads the environmental variables **LDHEAD** and **LDTAIL** before it begins its work. You can set these variables to hold the default options that you want the linker always to use.

**ld** appends the options in **LDTAIL** to the end of its command line.

**See Also**

**environmental variables**, **ld**, **LDHEAD**

**let — Command**

Evaluate an expression

**let** [*expression*]

The command **let** is built into the Korn shell **ksh**. It evaluates *expression*; it returns zero if *expression* evaluates to non-zero status, and non-zero if it evaluates to zero status.

**See Also**

**commands**, **ksh**

**lex — Command**

Lexical analyzer generator

**lex** [-t][**-v**][*file*]

**cc lex.yy.c -li**

Many programs, e.g., compilers, process highly structured input according to rules. Two of the most complicated parts of such programs are *lexical analysis* and *parsing* (also called *syntax analysis*). The COHERENT system includes two powerful tools called **lex** and **yacc** to help you construct these parts of a program. **lex** converts a set of lexical rules into a lexical analyzer, and **yacc** converts a set of parsing rules into a parser.

The output of **lex** may be used directly, or may be used by a parser generated by **yacc**.

**lex** reads a specification from the given *file* (or from the standard input if none), and generates a C function called **yylex()**. **lex** writes the generated function in the file **lex.yy.c**, or on standard output if you use the **-t** option. The **-v** option prints some statistics about the generated tables.

The tutorial on **lex** that appear in this manual describes **lex** in detail. In brief, the generated function **yylex()** matches portions of its input to one pattern (sometimes called a regular expression) from a set of rules, or *context*, and executes associated C commands. Unmatched portions of the input are copied to the output stream. **yylex()** returns EOF when input has been exhausted.

**lex** uses the following macros that you may replace with the preprocessor directive **#undef** if you wish: **input()** (read the standard input stream), and **output(c)** (write the character *c* to the standard output stream). You may also replace the following functions if you wish: **main()** (main function), **error(...)** (print error messages; takes same arguments as **printf**), and **yywrap()** (handle events at the end of a file). If an action is desired on end of file, such as arranging for more input, **yywrap()** should perform it, returning zero to keep going.

A full **lex** specification has the following format:

- Macro definitions, of the form:  
     name pattern
- Start condition declarations:  
     %S NAME ...
- Context declarations:  
     %C NAME ...
- Code to be included in the header section:  
     %{  
     anything  
     %}  
     <tab or space> anything
- Rules section delimiter (must always be present):  
     %%
- Code to appear at the start of **yylex()**:  
     <tab or space> anything
- Rules for initial context, in any of the forms:  
     rule action;  
     rule | (means use next action)  
     rule {  
     <tab or space> action;  
     <tab or space> }
- For each additional context:  
     %C NAME  
     ...rules for this context...
- End of rules section delimiter:  
     %%
- Code to be copied verbatim, such as user provided **input()**, **output()**, **yywrap()**, or other.

**lex** matches the longest string possible; if two rules match the same length string, the rule specified first takes precedence. **lex** puts the matched string, or *token*, in the **char** array **yytext[]**, and sets the variable **yylen** to its length.

Actions may use the following:

<b>ECHO</b>	Output the token
<b>REJECT</b>	Perform action for lower precedence match
<b>BEGIN NAME</b>	Set start condition to <i>NAME</i>
<b>BEGIN 0</b>	Clear start condition
<b>yyswitch(NAME)</b>	Switch to context <i>NAME</i> , return current
<b>yyswitch(0)</b>	Switch to initial context
<b>yynext()</b>	Steal next character from input
<b>yyback(c)</b>	Put character <i>c</i> back into input
<b>yyless(n)</b>	Reduce token length to <i>n</i> , put rest back
<b>yyomore()</b>	Append next token to this one
<b>yylook()</b>	Returns number of chars in input buffer

**lex** rules are contiguous strings of the form

```
[ <NAME,...> [| ^ ] token [ /lookahead [| $ ]
```

where brackets '[' ]' indicate optional items.

<NAME,...>	Match only under given start conditions
^	Match the beginning of a line
\$	Match the end of a line
token	Pattern that a given token is to match
/lookahead	Pattern that given trailing text is to match

Pattern elements:

<b>a</b>	The character <b>a</b>
<b>\a</b>	The character <b>a</b> , even if special
<b>.</b>	Any character except newline
<b>[abx-z]</b>	Any of <b>a</b> , <b>b</b> , or <b>x</b> through <b>z</b>
<b>[^abx-z]</b>	Any except <b>a</b> , <b>b</b> , or <b>x</b> through <b>z</b>
<b>abc</b>	The string <b>abc</b> , even if any are special
<b>{name}</b>	The macro definition <i>name</i>
<b>(exp)</b>	The pattern <i>exp</i> (grouping operator)

Optional operators on elements:

<b>e?</b>	Zero or one occurrence of <i>e</i>
<b>e*</b>	Zero or more consecutive <i>es</i>
<b>e+</b>	One or more consecutive <i>es</i>
<b>e{n}</b>	<i>n</i> (a decimal number) consecutive <i>es</i>
<b>e{m,n}</b>	<i>m</i> through <i>n</i> consecutive <i>es</i>

Patterns may be of the form:

*e1e2* Matches the sequence *e1 e2*

*e1|e2* Matches either *e1* or *e2*

**lex** recognizes the standard C escapes: **\n**, **\t**, **\r**, **\b**, **\f**, and **\ooo** (octal representation). The special characters

**\ ( ) < > { } % \* + ? [ - ] ^ / \$ . |**

must be prefixed with **\** or enclosed within quotation marks (excepting **"** and **\**) to be normal. Within classes, only the characters **.** **^** **-** **\** and **]** are special.

## LEXICON

## Files

`/usr/lib/libl.a`

`/usr/src/libl/*` — library source code

## See Also

**commands**, **yacc**

*Introduction to lex, the Lexical Analyzer*

## Lexicon — Introduction

The Mark Williams Lexicon is a new approach to documentation of computer software. The Lexicon is designed to improve documentation and eliminate some limitations found in more conventional documentation.

### How to Use the Lexicon

The Lexicon consists of one large document that contains entries for every aspect of COHERENT. You will not have to search through a number of different manuals to find the entry you are looking for.

Every entry in the Lexicon has the same structure. The first line gives the name of the topic being discussed, followed by its type (e.g., **Command**).

The next lines briefly describe the item, then give the item's usage, where applicable. These are followed by a brief discussion of the item, and an example.

Cross-references follow. These can be to other entries or to other texts. Diagnostics and notes, where applicable, conclude each entry.

Internally, the Lexicon has a tree structure. The "root" entry is the present entry, for **Lexicon**. Below this entry comes the set of *Overview* entries. Each Overview entry introduces a group of entries; for example, the Overview entry for **string** introduces all of the string functions and macros, lists them, and gives a lengthy example of how to use them.

Each entry cross-references other entries. These cross-references point up the documentation tree, toward an overview article and, ultimately, to the entry for **Lexicon** itself. They also point down the tree to subordinate entries, and across to entries on related subjects. For example, the entry for **getchar** cross-references **STDIO**, which is its Overview article, plus **putchar** and **getc**, which are related entries of interest to the user. The Lexicon is designed so that you can trace from any one entry to any other, simply by following the chain of cross-references up and down the documentation tree.

### Use the Lexicon

If, while reading an entry, you encounter a technical term that you do not understand, look it up in the Lexicon. You should find an entry for it. For example, if a function is said to return a data type **float** and you do not know exactly what a **float** is, look it up. You will find it described in full. In this way, you should increase your understanding of COHERENT, and make your programming easier and more productive.

### Overview Articles

The Lexicon includes the following overview articles. Look at the appropriate overview article for information on the subject in which you are interested. The overview article will give you an overview of the topic, and tell you which Lexicon articles you should read to find detailed information.

#### C language

This article summarizes COHERENT's implementation of the C language. It introduces subordinate articles, such as those that describe each C keyword.

**commands**

This article briefly summarizes each COHERENT system command.

**definitions**

The Lexicon includes a number of articles that define technical terms that are used through it. This overview article lists the definition articles included in the Lexicon.

**device drivers**

This article introduces COHERENT's suite of device drivers, and points to subordinate articles that describe each driver in details.

**environmental variables**

This article lists the commonly used environmental variables that are described in the Lexicon.

**file formats**

The COHERENT system has a number of special files that contain information presented in a special format. Some files are meant to be read mechanically, such as executable files or relocatable objects; others you can edit to change the behavior of one or another COHERENT system. This overview article introduces the subordinate articles that describe the formats of these special files.

**libraries**

This introduces the libraries included with the COHERENT system, for use with the COHERENT C compiler, and the families of functions in each.

**system maintenance**

Certain files and commands are used only to help you maintain your COHERENT system and help it run smoothly. This article introduces the subordinate articles that describe the COHERENT system's tools for to help you perform system maintenance.

**technical information**

Finally, the Lexicon contains a set of articles that do not easily fit into any other category. These give broad technical information, both to help you decypher other articles within the Lexicon, and to provide you with a "cookbook" with which you can solve common problems. The article names should be self-explanatory, e.g., **terminal**, **printer**, and **RS-232**. If you're trying to tackle a new problem and don't have a clue as to where to begin, check this overview article first. You may well find that it lists a subordinate article that is helpful.

***If* — Command**

List directory's contents in columnar format

**If** [*file* ...]

**If** is a link to the command **ls -CF**. It prints *file* in columnar format, like the command **lc**. **If**, however, combines files and directories into one listing, with directories being indicated by a slash after the file name and executable being indicated by an asterisk. If a *file* is a directory, **l** lists its contents. If no *file* is named, **If** lists the contents of the current directory by default.

**See Also**

**commands**, **l**, **lc**, **lr**, **ls**, **lx**

***libmisc* — Technical Information**

Library of miscellaneous functions

**libmisc** is a collection of library routines. These routines are useful for handling such programming tasks as allocation of memory, copying of strings, displaying variables from C with COBOL-like "picture" descriptions, and supporting virtual arrays via secondary storage.

Source code for the library is kept in the compressed **tar** archive file **/usr/src/misc.tar.Z**. To extract the files into a new subdirectory called **misc**, use the command:

```
zcat /usr/src/misc.tar.Z | tar xvf -
```

To build the library, type the following:

```
cd misc
make
```

file.

## Functions

following header file: **misc.tar.Z** contains the header file **misc.h**, which define and declare the functions, global variables, and macros used by the various functions in **libmisc.a**.

The following summarizes the functions in **libmisc.a**:

**char \* alloc(*n*) unsigned *n*;**

**malloc()** *n* bytes and initialize them to zero. Abort on failure.

**int approx(*a*, *b*) double *a*, *b*;**

If *a* and *b* are within epsilon, return one; otherwise, return zero. epsilon is a visible **double**.

**char \*ask(*reply*, *msg*, ...) char \**reply*, \**msg*;**

Print a message and retrieve the user's reply. This function the message, using *msg* as a **printf()**-style format string and including text pointed to by any trailing arguments. It then reads a line from stdin, stores it in the place pointed to by *reply*, and returns its address. *reply* must point to enough space to hold the user's reply.

For example,

```
scanf(ask(buff, "%d numbers", 3), &a, &b, &c);
```

prints the message

```
Enter: 3 numbers
```

retrieves the user's reply in **buff**, and hands it to **sscanf()**.

**void banner(*word*, *pad*) char \**word*; int *pad*;**

Print *word* on stdout as a banner, preceded by *pad* spaces. Each letter of the banner consists of many occurrences of itself.

**bedaeomon()**

**bedaeomon()** turns the calling program into a daemon. A *daemon* is a process that executes in the background, without the usual connections to standard I/O streams and terminals. Examples are **cron** and **uuxqt**. To ensure proper operation in connection with other system software, any program that is intended to run as a daemon should call **bedaeomon()** as its first step. This call takes care of closing inherited open file descriptors, detaching from inherited process group and controlling terminal, and setting current directory to "/" and umask to zero. For further information on daemon processes, see *Unix Network Programming* by W. Richard Stevens (Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice-Hall Inc, 1990), section 2.6.

**unsigned short crc16(*p*) char \**p*;**

Compute the 16-bit cyclic redundancy check (crc16) of the string pointed to by *p*, and return it. This function is very useful for building hash tables or checking differences between strings.

**void fatal(msg, ...) char \*msg;**

Print an error message and call **exit(1)**. *msg* is a **printf()**-style format string; trailing arguments must point to data.

**char \*getline(lfp, lineno) FILE \*lfp; int \*lineno;**

Get a line from the input file pointed to by *lfp*. Returns the address of the line, or NULL to indicate the end of file. **getline()** calls **malloc()** to acquire space for the line, and allows lines to be continued with a \-whitespace. It also implements **lineno**.

**getline()** recognizes the following escape sequences:

- # to end of line is passed
- \ whitespace through end of line is passed
- \n newline
- \p #
- \a alarm
- \b backspace
- \r carriage return
- \f form feed
- \t tab
- \\ backslash
- \ddd octal number

All other \ sequences are errors and reported on stderr.

**tm\_t \*jday\_to\_tm(jd) jday\_t jd;**

Turn a Julian date to **tm** (time) structure. The Julian date is the number of days since the beginning of the Julian calendar, January 1, 4713 B.C.; it is a good way to store dates in a system-independent manner, such as in a data base. The structure **jday\_t** is defined in **misc.h**.

**time\_t jday\_to\_time(jd) jday\_t jd;**

Turn Julian date structure to COHERENT time.

**void splitter(ofp, line, limit) FILE \*ofp; char \*line; int limit;**

Write *line* into file *ofp*, splitting it into chunks less than *limit* bytes long. **splitter()** inserts a \ between chunks, and attempts to do this on white-space boundaries. **splitter()** produces a long line rather than split on non-whitespace. If *line* does not end in a newline, **splitter()** adds one. This is the inverse of **getline()**.

**int is\_fs(special) char \*special;**

Check whether *special* names a well-formed file system. Users should never put file systems on **/dev/ram1**, but for multi-system software, like **compress**, it is smart to test.

**is\_fs()** returns -1 if *special* is not a device, or if **open()**, **read()**, or **seek()** fails. It returns zero if no file system was found, or one if *special* names a legal file system.

**char \*lcase(st) char \*str;**

Convert every character in *str* to lower case. Note that this works only with the U.S. dialect of English; it does not work with German or other languages that use characters in the upper half of the ASCII table.

**char \*match(string, pattern, fin) char \*string, \*pattern, \*\*fin;**

**match()** resembles **pnmatch()**, except that it returns the address of the pattern matched. *fin* is aimed past the end of the pattern found; that is, **match()** finds a pattern and tells you where it is.



**char \*metaphone(word) char \*word;**

Translate *word* into a short phonetic equivalent for easy lookup. It resembles Knuth's **soundex** method, except that it uses a superior algorithm.

**char \*newcpy(str) char \*str;**

Create a NUL-terminated copy of *str* and return its address. Call **fatal()** if there is no space.

**char \*pathn(name, envpath, deflpath, access)**

**char \*name, \*envpath, \*deflpath, \*access;**

**pathn()** looks for file *name*. It searches the directories named in the environmental variable *envpath*. If the user has not set *envpath*, or if it is NULL, **pathn()** searches the default path *deflpath*. *name* must have *access* permission. **pathn()** returns the full path to the file found. For example:

```
pathn("helpfile", "LIBPATH", "/lib", "r")
```

searches the directories named in **LIBPATH** for file **helpfile**, for which the user must have read permission. If **LIBPATH** is not set, **pathn** searches **/lib** for **helpfile**.

**#include <regexp.h>**

**regexp \*regcomp(exp) char \*exp;**

**int regexec(prog, string) regexp \*prog; char \*string;**

**regsub(prog, source, dest) regexp \*prog; char \*source; char \*dest;**

**regerror(msg) char \*msg;**

These functions implement a way of parsing regular expressions. **regcomp()** turns a regular expression into a structure of type **regexp** and returns a pointer to it. **regexec()** matches *string* against the regular expression in *prog*. It returns one if *string* matches *exp*, and zero if it does not. **regsub()** copies *source* to *dest*, and makes substitutions according to the most recent **regexec()** performed using *prog*. **regerror()** is called whenever an error is detected in **regcomp()**, **regexec()**, or **regsub()**. See **regexp.doc** for details.

**long randl()**

Return a long random number uniformly distributed between 1 and 2,147,483,562. This comes from *Communications of the ACM*, volume 31, number 6. See **srandl()**, below.

**char \*replace(s1, pat, s3, all, matcher)**

**char \*s1, \*pat, \*s3, (matcher);**

Replace one or all occurrences of *pat* in string *s1* by *s3*, and return the result. The definition of match is set by *matcher*. This calls the user-defined function

```
matcher(sw, pat, &fin).
```

The *matcher* must return the address of the pattern match and its end in **&fin**. **match()** is a valid example of *matcher*. It replaces the first occurrence, or all occurrences of the pattern, and returns the new pattern. The new pattern has been **alloc()**d.

**showflag(data, flags, output) long data; char \*flags, \*output;**

Turn the bits in *data* to the flags in *flags* or '-' in the string *output*, which must be as long as *flags*.

**char \*skip(s1, matcher, fin) char \*s1, \*\*fin; int (\*matcher);**

Skip all initial characters in string *s1* that fail when examined *matcher*. *matcher* is usually a character function, e.g., **isdigit()**. It returns the first character skipped. **skip()** points *fin* at the character after the skip.

**char \*span(s1, matcher, fin) char \*s1, \*\*fin; int (\*matcher);**

Span all initial characters in string *s1* that match when examined by *matcher*. *matcher* is usually a character function, e.g., **isdigit()**. It returns the first character spanned. **span()** points *fin* at the character after the span.

**srandl**(seed1, seed2) long seed1, seed2;

**randl**() needs two seeds; **srandl**() sets them. Use it only if you need to repeat a random-number sequence.

**strchr**(from, to, c, def)

char \*from, \*to; int c, def;

Look up the character *c* in the string *from*. Return the corresponding character in the string *to* if it is found; otherwise, return the default character *def*.

For example, consider the call:

```
strchr("ab", "xy", c, d);
```

If variable *c* equals 'a', then **strchr**() returns 'x'; if *c* equals 'b', then it returns 'y'; otherwise, it returns the value of *d*.

**strcmpl**(s1, s2)

Case-insensitive string comparison. Resembles **strcmp**().

**jday\_t time\_to\_jday**(time) time\_t time;

Turn COHERENT time to Julian date structure. The Julian date is the number of days since the beginning of the Julian calendar, January 1, 4713 B.C. The structure **jday\_t** is defined in **misc.h**.

**jday\_t tm\_to\_jday**(tm) tm\_t \*tm;

Turn the time structure **tm** date into Julian date structure.

char \*trim(s) char \*s;

Remove trailing whitespace from string *s*.

**ucase**(s) char \*s;

Convert a string to upper case.

**usage**(s) char \*s;

Print string *s* and call **exit**(1).

**xdump**(p, length) char \*p;

Print on stdout a vertical hexadecimal dump of string *p*.

A vertical hexadecimal dump prints as three lines. The top line is the display character, or '.' if the character cannot be displayed cleanly. The next two lines are the hexadecimal numerals. The data are blocked into groups of four bytes.

**xopen**(filename, acs) char \*filename, \*acs;

Like **fopen**(), but call **fatal**() if the open fails.

**yn**(question, ...) char \*question;

Ask a question and retrieve a 'Y' or 'N' answer. *question* is a **printf**()-style format string; any trailing parameters should point to data used in *question*. **yn**() returns one if the user answers 'Y' or 'y', and returns zero if she answers 'N' or 'n'.

The following are part of a virtual memory system for COHERENT 286. Occasionally, users port programs like **compress** to COHERENT 286 that use a small number of very large arrays. Because COHERENT 286 is a SMALL-model operating system, changes must be made. The following functions are intended to expedite these changes.

**void vinit**(filename, ram) char \*filename; unsigned ram;

Initialize the virtual-memory system, using *filename* for work. *filename* may be a raw device, such as */dev/rram1*. *ram* is the amount of buffer space to give the system — the more, the better.

**void vshutdown()**

Shut the virtual-memory system, and make it restartable.

**unsigned vopen(amt) unsigned long amt;**

Set up a virtual-memory object. For example, if you want to emulate having a 100,000-byte array and a 50,000-byte array, use the call

```
vid1 = vopen(100000L); vid2 = vopen(50000L);
```

This does some checking and tells the system that any reference to *vid2* will be between 100,000 and 150,000 in the virtual file.

**char \*vfind(vid, disp, dirty) unsigned vid, dirty; unsigned long disp;**

Find a character in the virtual system, mark the block's dirty bit if the access is to write. Given the example in **vopen()**, if you want to find the 1,000th byte in *vd1*, use the call:

```
c = *(vfind(vd1, 1000L, 0));
```

To change the 2000th byte in *vid2* **d**, use the call

```
*(vfind(vid2, 2000L, 1)) = d;
```

Note that the dirty indicator tells the system of the change so that the block will be written back before it is read over. Blocks are 512 bytes long, so **int**'s or **long**'s can be read or written without multiple accesses to **vfind()**.

**File Locking**

**libmisc** holds a number of routines with which you can lock and unlock files and devices. It is adapted from the mechanism used by the COHERENT implementation of UUCP.

Lock files are created in **\$SPOOLDIR**. A lock file is given the name **LCK..resource**. The lock file contains a decimal representation of the process identifier of the process that created the lock.

It is possible to provide an alternate pid by using one of the "n" routines. The unlocking routines regard a pid of zero as an override — they remove the lock regardless of which process created the lock.

For a tty device, the *resource* is a string that consists of a decimal representation of its major number, a decimal point, and the lower five bits of its minor number.

Each routine takes a string that names a resource to be locked or unlocked. The tty routines want the base name of the tty to be locked (without the **"/dev/"** part).

All lock routines all return zero on failure and one on success.

**lockit(resource) char \*resource;**

Use a resource string to lock a tty.

**lockexist(resource) char \*resource;**

Check whether a lock file exists for the tty with *resource*.

**locknrm(resource, pid) char \*resource; int pid;**

Remove a lock file for a tty owned by process *pid*.

**lockntty(tty, pid) char \*tty; int pid;**

Lock a tty for process *pid*.

**lockrm(resource) char \*resource;**

Remove a lock file for tty with *resource*.

**locktty**(*tty*) **char** \**tty*;  
Lock a *tty*.

**lockttyexist**(*tty*) **char** \**tty*;  
Check whether a given *tty* is locked.

**unlockntty**(*tty*, *pid*) **char** \**tty*; **int** *pid*;  
Unlock a *tty* for process *pid*. Unlocking always succeeds.

**unlocktty**(*tty*) **char** \**tty*;  
Unlock a *tty* that the current process owns.

**unlockit**(*resource*, *pid*) **char** \**resource*; **int** *pid*;  
Unlock something for process *pid*.

### Templates and Pictures

**libmisc** includes a function, **picture()**, for formatting numeric strings.

**double** **picture**(*dble*, *format*, *output*) **double** *dble*; **char** \**format*, \**output*;  
**picture()** performs numeric formatting under C. It resembles masking functions built into COBOL and BASIC, but is superior to either. *dble* gives the number to format; *format* gives the format mask; and *output* points to the area into which the formatted number is written. *output* must be at least as large as *format*. If *dble* overflows the picture, **picture()** returns the overflow.

The following summarizes the values that can appear in the *format* string. Note that throughout, the symbol **<sp>** indicates a space character, not the literal string "**<sp>**".

- 9** Provide a slot for a number. Passing 5.000 through a mask of **999 CR** gives "005". Passing -5.000 through a mask of **999 CR** yields "005 CR". Note that **picture()** does not recognize the characters 'C' and 'R' as being special. Trailing non-special characters print only if the number is negative.
- Z** Provide a slot for a number, but suppress leading zeroes. For example, passing 1034.000 through a mask of **ZZZ,ZZZ** gives "<sp><sp>1,034". Note that **picture()** does not recognize a comma as being a special character. **picture()** prints embedded non-special characters only if they are preceeded by significant digits.
- J** Provide a slot for a number, but shrink out leading zeros. For example, passing 1034.000 through a mask of **JJJ,JJJ** yields "1,034".
- K** Provide a slot for a number, but shrink out any zeros. For example, passing 70884.000 through a mask of **K9/K9/K9** yields "7/8/84".
- \$** Float a dollar sign to the left of the displayed number. For example, passing 105.000 through a mask of **\$ZZZ,ZZZ** yields "<sp><sp><sp><sp>\$105".
- .** Separate the number between decimal and integer portions. For example, passing 105.670 through a mask of **Z,ZZZ.999** yields "<sp><sp>105.670".
- T** Provide a slot for a number, but suppress trailing zeroes. For example, passing 105.670 through a mask of **Z,ZZ9.9TT** yields "<sp><sp>105.67<sp>".
- S** Provide a slot for a number, but shrink out trailing zeroes. For example, passing 105.670 through a mask of **Z,ZZ9.9SS** yields "<sp><sp>105.67".
- Float a negative sign in front of negative numbers. For example, passing 105.000 through a mask of **-Z,ZZZ** yields "<sp><sp><sp>105", whereas passing -105.000 through a mask of **-Z,ZZZ** yields "<sp><sp>-105".

- ( Acts like -, but prints a parenthesis. For example, passing 105.000 through a mask of (ZZZ) yields "<sp>105<sp>", whereas passing -5.000 through a mask of (ZZZ) yields "<sp><sp>(5)".
- + Float a + or - in front of the number, depending on its sign. For example, passing 5.000 through a mask of +ZZZ yields "<sp><sp>+5", whereas passing -5.000 through a mask of +ZZZ yields "<sp><sp>-5".
- \* Fill all spaces to right with asterisks. For example, passing 104.100 through a mask of \*ZZZ.ZZZ.99 yields "\*\*\*\*\*104.10"; whereas passing 104.100 through a mask of \*\$ZZZ.ZZZ.99 yields "\*\*\*\*\*\$104.10". `picture()` returns any overflow as a **double**. For example, passing -1234.000 through a mask of (ZZZ) yields "(234)" with an overflow of -1.0; passing 123.400 through a mask of 99 yields "23" with an overflow of 1.0; and passing 1200.000 through a mask of ZZ yields "00" with an overflow of 12.0.

### Files

/usr/src/misc.tar.Z — Compressed tar archive of sources

### See Also

tar, technical information, zcat

### Notes

The **misc** library is provided on an *as-is* basis only. *Caveat utilitor!*

## LIBPATH — Environmental Variable

Directories that hold compiler phases and libraries

**LIBPATH** names the directories that hold the phases of the COHERENT C compiler, the run-time start-up modules, and libraries. **cc** searches these directories as it orchestrates the compiling and linking of a program written in C or assembly-language.

A typical definition is:

```
export LIBPATH=/lib:/usr/lib
```

This searches the current directory '.', then **/lib**, then **/usr/lib**.

If you have not set **LIBPATH** in your **.profile**, **cc** uses the default **LIBPATH** that is set in header file **path.h**. This definition is adequate for all standard installations of COHERENT.

### See Also

cc, environmental variables, ld

## libraries — Overview

A **library** is an archive file of commonly used functions that have been compiled, tested, and stored for inclusion in a program at link time.

The COHERENT system stores its libraries in two directories, **/usr/lib** and **/lib**. The following libraries are kept in **/usr/lib**:

<b>libcurses.a</b>	<b>curses</b> library
<b>libl.a</b>	<b>lex</b> library
<b>libmp.a</b>	Multi-precision arithmetic library
<b>libterm.a</b>	Functions to read <b>termcap</b> or <b>terminfo</b> data
<b>liby.a</b>	<b>yacc</b> library
<b>lib.b</b>	<b>bc</b> 's function library (in <b>bc</b> source)

The following libraries are kept in **/lib**:

<b>libc.a</b>	General functions and system calls
<b>libm.a</b>	Mathematics routines

In addition, COHERENT comes with a library of miscellaneous routines, called **libmisc**. See the Lexicon article **libmisc** for information on how to prepare this library for use.

### **Library Functions**

The following Lexicon articles introduce the library functions included with the COHERENT system:

- ctype macros**
- curses**
- general functions**
- mathematics library**
- multiple-precision mathematics**
- ncurses**
- STDIO**
- string functions**
- system calls**
- termcap**
- time**
- variable arguments**

### **See Also**

ar, C language

### ***limits.h* — Header File**

Define numerical limits  
**#include <limits.h>**

The header file **limits.h** defines macros that set the numerical limits for the translation environment. It is described in sections 2.2.4.2 and 4.1.4 of the ANSI Standard.

The following table gives the macros defined in **limits.h**. Each value given is the macro's minimum maximum: a conforming implementation of C must meet these limits, and may exceed them.

#### **CHAR\_BIT**

Number of bits in a **char**. This must be at least eight.

#### **CHAR\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **char**. If the implementation defines a **char** to be signed, then it is equal to the value of the macro **SCHAR\_MAX**; otherwise, it is equal to the value of the macro **UCHAR\_MAX**.

#### **CHAR\_MIN**

Smallest value representable in an object of type **char**. If the implementation defines a **char** to be signed, then it is equal to the value of the macro **SCHAR\_MIN**; otherwise, it is zero.

#### **INT\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **int**; it must be at least 32,767 (0x7FFF).

#### **INT\_MIN**

Smallest value representable in an object of type **int**; it must be at most -32,767 (0x8000).

## **LEXICON**

**LONG\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **long int**; it must be at least 2,147,483,647 (0x7FFFFFFFL).

**LONG\_MIN**

Smallest value representable in an object of type **long int**; it must be at most -2,147,483,647 (0x80000000L).

**MB\_LEN\_MAX**

Largest number of bytes in any multibyte character, for any locale; it must be at least one.

**SCHAR\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **signed char**; it must be at least 127.

**SCHAR\_MIN**

Smallest value representable in an object of type **signed char**; it must be at most -127.

**SHRT\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **short int**; it must be at least 32,767 ((**short**)0x7FFF).

**SHRT\_MIN**

Smallest value representable in an object of type **short int**; it must be at most -32,767 ((**short**)0x8000).

**UCHAR\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **unsigned char**; it must be at least 255.

**UINT\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **unsigned int**; it must be at least 65,535 ((**unsigned int**)0xFFFF).

**ULONG\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **unsigned long int**; it must be at least 4,294,967,295 ((**unsigned long**)0xFFFFFFFFL).

**USHRT\_MAX**

Largest value representable in an object of type **unsigned short int**; it must be at least 65,535 ((**unsigned short**)0xFFFF).

**See Also****header files****lines — Command**

Highly amusing board game  
/usr/games/lines

**lines** is an interactive COHERENT version of a two-player board game by Claude Soucie called *Lines of Action*. The screen displays the game board with "X" and "O" characters marking the positions of the pieces. To see the rules of the game, type "r" and then press <Enter>. To see the available interactive commands, type "h" and press <Enter>.

Two players can use **lines** to keep track of a game between them by moving with the "M" command. Alternatively, one player can play against the computer by moving with the "m" command. The program uses a tree-search technique to consider possible moves; the player can vary the speed of the program's replies with commands that change the tree search width and depth.

For a more detailed description of *Lines of Action*, see *A Gamut of Games* by Sid Sackson (New York, Random House, 1969).

## See Also

commands

### **link()** — System Call

Create a link  
**link**(*old*, *new*)  
**char** \**old*, \**new*;

A *link* to a file is another name for the file. All attributes of the file appear identical among all links.

**link()** creates a link called *new* to an existing file named *old*.

For administrative reasons, it is an error for users other than the superuser to create a link to a directory. Such links can make the file system no longer tree structured unless carefully controlled, posing problems for commands such as **find**.

### Example

This example, called **lock.c**, demonstrates how **link()** can be used to perform intertask locking. With this technique, a program can start a process in the background and stop any other user from starting the identical process.

```
main()
{
    if(link("lock.c", "lockfile") == -1) {
        printf("Cannot link\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    sleep(50); /* do nothing for 50 seconds */
    unlink("lockfile");
    printf("done\n");
    exit(0);
}
```

## See Also

**find**, **ln**, system calls, **unlink()**

### Diagnostics

**link()** returns zero when successful. It returns -1 on errors, e.g., *old* does not exist, *new* already exists, attempt to link across file systems, or no permission to create *new* in the target directory.

### Notes

Because each mounted file system is a self-contained entity, links between different mounted file systems fail.

### **linker-defined symbols** — Overview

The COHERENT linker **ld** defines its own set of symbols within an executable program. Because COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386 use different formats for executable programs, their respective implementations of **ld** set different suites of symbols.

The COHERENT 286 edition of **ld** sets the following symbols:

<b>edata</b>	Location after shared and private data
<b>end</b>	Location after uninitialized data segment
<b>etext</b>	Location after text segments



The COHERENT 386 edition of **ld** sets the following symbols:

<b>__end_text</b>	End of the <b>.text</b> segment
<b>__end_data</b>	End of the <b>.data</b> segment
<b>__end_bss</b>	End of the <b>.bss</b> segment
<b>__end</b>	End of the highest segment

Note that if you have a segment named **.xyz**, then **ld** will allow you to use **\_\_end\_xyz**.

### See Also

C language, **ld**

### ln — Command

Create a link to a file

**ln [-f] oldfile newfile**

**ln [-f] oldfile ... directory**

The COHERENT system knows a file by its i-node number. Each file is also *linked* to one or more file names, each name being stored in a directory. This system means that the same file can be known by multiple names in multiple directories. The command **ln** lets you create a new link to a file.

In its first form, **ln** links the name *newfile* to the file that is already named *oldfile*, provided that *newfile* does not already exist.

In the second form, **ln** links *oldfile* with an identical name in another *directory*. In effect, one file will “live” in two directories.

If *newfile* already exists, **-f** forces **ln** to unlink it and assign its name to *oldfile*.

Links to directories or across file systems are impossible. For example, if your COHERENT system has two file systems, one mounted on **/f** and the other mounted on **/usr**, you cannot use **ln** to link a file in **/v** to one in **/usr**.

### See Also

commands, **cp**, **ls**, **mv**, **rm**

### localtime() — Time Function

Convert system time to calendar structure

**#include <time.h>**

**#include <sys/types.h>**

**tm \*localtime(timep) time\_t \*timep;**

**localtime()** converts the COHERENT internal time into the form described in the structure **tm**.

*timep* points to the system time. It is of type **time\_t**, which is defined in the header file **types.h**.

**localtime()** returns a pointer to the structure **tm**, which is also defined in **time.h**. The function **asctime()** turns **tm** into an ASCII string.

Unlike its cousin **gmtime()**, **localtime()** returns the local time, including conversion to daylight saving time, if applicable. The daylight saving time flag indicates whether daylight saving time is now in effect, *not* whether it is in effect during some part of the year. Note, too, that the time zone is set by **localtime()** every time the value returned by

```
getenv("TIMEZONE")
```

changes. See the Lexicon entry for **TIMEZONE** for more information on how COHERENT handles time zone settings.

### **Example**

The following example recreates the function **asctime()**. It builds a string somewhat different from that returned by **asctime()** to demonstrate how to manipulate the **tm** structure.

```
#include <time.h>
#include <sys/types.h>

char *month[] = {
    "January", "February", "March", "April",
    "May", "June", "July", "August", "September",
    "October", "November", "December"
};

char *weekday[] = {
    "Sunday", "Monday", "Tuesday", "Wednesday",
    "Thursday", "Friday", "Saturday"
};

main()
{
    char buf[20];
    time_t tnum;
    struct tm *ts;
    int hour = 0;

    time(&tnum);    /* get time from system */

    /* convert time to tm struct */
    ts=localtime(&tnum);

    if (ts->tm_hour == 0)
        sprintf(buf, "12:%02d:%02d A.M.",
            ts->tm_min, ts->tm_sec);
    else
        if (ts->tm_hour >= 12) {
            hour = ts->tm_hour - 12;
            if (hour == 0)
                hour = 12;
            sprintf(buf, "%02d:%02d:%02d P.M.",
                hour, ts->tm_min, ts->tm_sec);
        } else
            sprintf(buf, "%02d:%02d:%02d A.M.", ts->tm_hour,
                ts->tm_min, ts->tm_sec);

    printf("\n%s %d %s 19%d %s\n",
        weekday[ts->tm_wday], ts->tm_mday,
        month[ts->tm_mon], ts->tm_year, buf);
}
```

```

printf("Today is the %d day of 19%d\n",
      ts->tm_yday, ts->tm_year);

printf("Daylight Saving Time %s in effect\n",
      ts->tm_isdst ? "is" : "is not");
}

```

**See Also****gmtime()**, **time**, **TIMEZONE****Notes**

**localtime()** returns a pointer to a statically allocated data area that is overwritten by successive calls.

**log()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute natural logarithm

#include &lt;math.h&gt;

double log(z) double z;

**log()** returns the natural (base *e*) logarithm of its argument *z*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **exp()**.

**See Also****log10()**, **mathematics library****Diagnostics**

A domain error in **log()** (*z* is less than or equal to zero) sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns zero.

**log10()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute common logarithm

#include &lt;math.h&gt;

double log10(z) double z;

**log10()** returns the common (base 10) logarithm of its argument *z*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **exp()**.

**See Also****log()**, **mathematics library****Diagnostics**

A domain error in **log10()** (*z* is less than or equal to zero) sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns zero.

**login** — Command

Log in or change user name

**login** [username]

The COHERENT system normally invokes **login** as part of the log in sequence on an unused terminal. The user may also invoke **login** directly from the shell **sh**, usually to change to a different user name. If *username* is not present, **login** prompts the user. If the account has a password, **login** asks for it.

If the user logs in successfully, **login** then reads the file **/etc/motd** (which holds the “message of

the day”) and prints its contents on the screen, then notifies the user if mail is waiting to be read. It then sets the working directory to the user’s base directory and sets the user id and group id, transfers ownership of the tty to the user, and updates the login accounting file. Finally, if a program is specified in **/etc/passwd**, **login** reads **/etc/profile** for lines beginning “export”, inserts the remainder of the line into the environment, then executes the specified program. If the program field is blank, **login** executes **sh**, which executes the contents of **\$HOME/.profile** if it is present.

From the shell, a user may log in by typing **login** or by typing an end of file (normally **<ctrl-D>**) to terminate the previous shell.

When the superuser **root** logs in, **login** sets **HOME** to **’/’** and reads the file **/.profile** should one exist.

### Files

**/etc/logmsg** — Login message (default, “Coherent login:”)  
**/etc/passwd** — User information  
**/etc/profile** — System profile  
**/etc/motd** — Message of the day  
**/etc/utmp** — Users currently using system  
**/usr/adm/wtmp** — Login accounting history  
**/usr/adm/failed** — Log of failed login attempts  
**\$HOME/.profile** — User profile

### See Also

**ac**, **commands**, **getty**, **sh**, **su**, **utmp.h**

### Notes

Under the Korn shell, **login** is an alias for the expression **exec login**.

## **logmsg — System Maintenance**

Hold COHERENT Login Message

**/etc/logmsg**

The file **/etc/logmsg** holds the message that COHERENT displays to prompt the user to log in. The superuser **bin** can use **ed** or MicroEMACS to change the message to whatever she prefers.

### See Also

**system maintenance**

### Notes

The default message consists of the bell character **<ctrl-G>** followed by the text **Coherent login:.** If the bell annoys you, simply delete the **<ctrl-G>** from **/etc/logmsg**.

## **long — C Keyword**

Data type

A **long** is a numeric data type. By definition, a **long** is the largest integer data type. It cannot be smaller than an **int**, although on some machines an **int** and a **long** will be the same size. Under COHERENT, **sizeof long** equals two machine words, or four **chars** (31 data bits plus a sign bit).

### See Also

**C keywords**, **data formats**, **int**

**longjmp()** — General Function

Return from a non-local goto

```
#include <setjmp.h>
```

```
int longjmp(env, rval) jmp_buf env; int rval;
```

The function call is the only mechanism that C provides to transfer control between functions. This mechanism is inadequate for some purposes, such as handling unexpected errors or interrupts at lower levels of a program. To answer this need, **longjmp** provides a non-local goto.

**longjmp()** restores an environment that had been saved by a previous call to the function **setjmp()**. It returns the value *rval* to the caller of **setjmp()**, just as if the **setjmp()** call had just returned. Note that **longjmp()** must not restore the environment of a routine that has already returned. The type declaration for **jmp\_buf** is in the header file **setjmp.h**. The environment saved includes the program counter, stack pointer, and stack frame. These routines do not restore register variables in the environment returned.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **longjmp()**.

**See Also**

**general functions, setjmp()**

**Notes**

Programmers should note that many user-level routines cannot be interrupted and reentered safely. For that reason, improper use of **longjmp()** and **setjmp()** can result in the creation of mysterious and irreproducible bugs. Do not attempt to use **longjmp()** within an exception handler.

**look** — Command

Find matching lines in a sorted file

```
look [-df] string [file]
```

The command **look** scans the sorted *file* and prints each line that begins with *string*.

The following options specify the order of the search:

- d** Use dictionary order: the only characters tested are alphanumerics and blanks.
- f** Convert all alphabetic characters to upper case.

If no *file* is specified, **look** uses **/usr/dict/words** with the **-df** option.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this command, see the entry for **spell**.

**Files**

**/usr/dict/words** — File of words (sorted with **sort -df**).

**See Also**

**commands, sort**

**Notes**

Because the file **/usr/dict/words** is quite large, you may not have installed it or uncompressed it when you installed your COHERENT system. If this is the case, **look** will not work correctly.

***lp* — Device Driver**

Line printer driver

Files `/dev/lp*` access the line-printer's device drivers for IBM AT COHERENT. The drivers are assigned major device number 3.

The COHERENT system supports three printers, in both cooked and raw modes. The following gives the device name, minor device, and I/O port:

<code>/dev/lpt1</code>	0	0x3BC	<code>(/etc/mknod /dev/lpt1 c 3 0)</code>
<code>/dev/lpt2</code>	1	0x378	<code>(/etc/mknod /dev/lpt2 c 3 1)</code>
<code>/dev/lpt3</code>	2	0x278	<code>(/etc/mknod /dev/lpt3 c 3 2)</code>
<code>/dev/rlpt1</code>	128	0x3BC	<code>(/etc/mknod /dev/rlpt1 c 3 128)</code>
<code>/dev/rlpt2</code>	129	0x378	<code>(/etc/mknod /dev/rlpt2 c 3 129)</code>
<code>/dev/rlpt3</code>	130	0x278	<code>(/etc/mknod /dev/rlpt3 c 3 130)</code>

"Cooked" processing processes the special characters BS (backspace), HT (horizontal tab), LF (line feed), FF (form feed), and CR (carriage return) appropriately; raw processing simply passes them on to the printer.

**Kernel Variables**

Please note that the COHERENT 286 kernel references variables with a trailing underscore character; for example, `atparm_`. The COHERENT 386 kernel, however, does *not* use a trailing underscore; for example, `atparm`.

The following descriptions apply to both COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386, but the notation will be in the COHERENT-386 form.

**Discipline**

The driver uses a hybrid busy-wait/timeout discipline to support printers efficiently that have varying buffer sizes in a multi-tasking environment.

The kernel variable **LPWAIT** sets the time for which the processor waits for the printer to accept the next character. If the printer is not ready within the **LPWAIT** period, the processor then resumes normal processing for the number of ticks set by the kernel variable **LPTIME**. Thus, setting **LPWAIT** to an extremely number (e.g., 1,000) and **LPTIME** to a very small number (e.g., one) results in a fast printer, but leaves very few CPU cycles available for anything else. Conversely, setting **LPWAIT** to a small number (e.g., 50) and **LPTIME** to a large number (e.g., five) result in efficient multi-tasking but also results in a slow printer unless the printer itself contains a buffer (as is normal with all but the least expensive printers). By default, **LPWAIT** is set to 400 and **LPTIME** to four.

We recommend that you set **LPWAIT** to no less than 50 and no more than 1,000, and **LPTIME** to no less than one. To change the values of **LPWAIT** to 500 and **LPTIME** to one, use the following command:

```
/conf/patch -k /coherent LPWAIT=500 LPTIME=1
```

The kernel variable **LPTEST** determines whether the device driver checks to see if the printer is in an "on-line" condition before it uses the device. If your printer does not support this signal, you must set **LPTEST** to zero.

**Files**

`/dev/lp*` — "Cooked" printer interfaces

`/dev/rlp*` — Raw printer interfaces

**See Also**

ascii, db, device drivers, epson, lpr

**lpd — System Maintenance**

Line printer spooler daemon  
/usr/lib/lpd

**lpd** is a daemon program that runs in the background and prints listings queued by the command **lpr**. It is run automatically by **lpr**. If there is no printing to do, or if another daemon is already running (indicated by the file **dpid**), **lpd** exits immediately. Otherwise, it searches the spool directory for control files of listings to print. These control files contain the names of files to print, the user name, banners, and files to be removed upon completion.

**lpd** does not print listings in any particular order. Priority is not given to any file, either by size or by requester.

The command **lpskip** command terminates or restarts the current line printer listing.

**Files**

/dev/lp — Printer  
/usr/spool/lpd — Spool directory  
/usr/spool/lpd/cf\* — Control files  
/usr/spool/lpd/df\* — Data files  
/usr/spool/lpd/dpid — Lock and process id

**See Also**

init, lpr, lpskip, system maintenance

**lpioctl.h — Header File**

Definitions for line-printer I/O control  
#include <sys/lpioctl.h>

**lpioctl.h** defines constants used by routines that control I/O on the line printer.

**See Also**

header files

**lpr — Command**

Send to line printer spooler  
**lpr** [-cmnr] [-b *banner*] [*file* ...]

**lpr** lets a user print each specified *file* on the line printer, without conflicting with printing by other users. If no *file* is specified, **lpr** prints the standard input on the line printer.

**lpr** recognizes the following options:

- B Suppress printing of a banner. Note that if you are printing to a PostScript printer, you *must* use this option or your printer will hang.
- b *banner* Print *banner* at the beginning of the file. The default banner is the user's login name.
- c Copy the files (allowing changes to be made before the printing completes).
- m Send a message when the printing completes.
- n Do not send a message (default).

**-r** Remove the files when they have been spooled.

The command **lpskip** aborts or restarts the current listing.

### Files

**/dev/lp** — Line printer  
**/usr/lib/lpd** — Line printer daemon  
**/usr/spool/lpd** — Spool directory  
**/usr/spool/lpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

### See Also

**commands, lpd, lpskip, pr, printer**

## **lpskip — Command**

Terminate/restart current line printer listing

**lpskip [-r]**

The command **lpskip** aborts or restarts the printing of a file. By default, **lpskip** aborts the current listing and prints a diagnostic message. When invoked with the **-r** option, it restarts the current listing. This is useful when a printing is spoiled due to, say, a paper jam.

**lpskip** works only with files that have been spooled to the line printer via the command **lpr**.

### Files

**/usr/lib/lpd** — Line printer daemon  
**/usr/spool/lpd** — Spool directory  
**/usr/spool/lpd/dpid** — Daemon lockfile

### See Also

**commands, lpd, pr**

## **lr — Command**

List subdirectories' contents in columnar format

**lr [file ...]**

**lr** is a link to the command **ls -CR**. It prints each *file* in columnar format, like the command **lc**. If a *file* is a directory, **lr** also prints its contents and that of each of its subdirectories. If no *file* is named, it lists the contents of the current directory by default.

### See Also

**commands, l, lc, lf, ls, lx**

## **ls — Command**

List directory's contents

**ls [-abCcdFfgilmnopqRrstux] [file ...]**

The command **ls** prints information about each *file*. Normally, **ls** sorts its output by file name and prints only the name of each *file*. If a directory name is given as an argument, **ls** sorts and lists its contents, not including **.** and **..**. If no *file* is named, **ls** lists the contents of the current directory.

The following options control how **ls** sorts and displays its output:

- a** Print all directory entries, including **.**, **..**, any hidden files, and volume ID's.
- b** Print non-graphic characters in octal.



- C** Print the output in multi-column format, sorted down the columns.
- c** Print the time the files' attributes were last changed.
- d** Treat directories as if they were files.
- F** Print a '/' after the name of each directory, and print an '\*' after each executable file.
- f** Force each argument to be treated as a directory. This disables the **-lrs** options and sorting, and enables the **-a** option.
- l** Print the i-number of each file.
- l** Print information in long format. The fields give mode bits, link count, owner uid, owner gid, size in bytes, date, and file name. For special files, major and minor device numbers replace the size field.
- m** "Stream" the output horizontally across the screen, with each file name separated by a comma.
- n** Same as **-l**, except the group identifiers and user identifiers are numbers rather than names.
- o** Same as **-l**, except that the group id is not printed.
- p** Print a '/' after the each directory name.
- q** Print non-graphics characters as '?'.
- r** Reverse the sense of the sort.
- R** Recursively print directories.
- s** Print the size in blocks of each file.
- t** Sort by time, newest first.
- u** Sort by the *access* time.
- x** Print multicolumn output, sorted across the columns. This resembles the output of the command **lc**.

The date **ls** prints with the **-l** and **-t** options is the *modification* time, unless the **-c** or **-u** option is used as well.

The mode field in the long list format consists of ten characters. The first character will be one of the following:

- Regular file
- b** Block special file
- c** Character special file
- d** Directory
- p** Pipe
- x** Bad entry (remove it immediately!)

The remaining nine characters are permission bits, in three sets of three characters each. The first set pertains to the owner of the file, the second to users from the owner's group, and the third to users from other groups. Each set may contain three characters from the following.

<b>r</b>	The file can be read
<b>s</b>	Set effective user ID or group ID on execution
<b>t</b>	Shared text is sticky
<b>w</b>	The file can be written
<b>x</b>	The file is executable
<b>-</b>	No permission is given

### Links

COHERENT includes several commands that are links to **ls** and its options, to make it easier for you to use the various features of **ls**. The following table gives each command and the form of **ls** to which it is linked:

<b>l</b>	<b>ls -l</b>
<b>lf</b>	<b>ls -CF</b>
<b>lr</b>	<b>ls -CR</b>
<b>lx</b>	<b>ls -x</b>

### See Also

**chmod**, **commands**, **l**, **lc**, **lf**, **lr**, **lx**, **stat**

### **lseek()** — System Call

Set read/write position

**long lseek**(*fd*, *where*, *how*)

**int** *fd*, *how*; **long** *where*;

**lseek()** changes the *seek position*, or the point within a file where the next read or write operation is performed. *fd* is the file's file descriptor, which is returned by **open()**.

*where* and *how* describe the new seek position. *where* gives the number of bytes that you wish to move the seek position. It is measured from the beginning of the file if *how* equals **SEEK\_SET** (zero), from the current seek position if *how* equals **SEEK\_CUR** (one), and from the end of the file if *how* equals two **SEEK\_END** (two). A successful call to **lseek()** returns the new seek position. For example

```
position = lseek(fd, 100L, 0);
```

moves the seek position 100 bytes past the beginning of the file; whereas

```
position = lseek(fd, 0L, 1);
```

merely returns the current seek position, and does not change the seek position at all.

Sparse files may be created by seeking beyond the current size of the file and writing. The "hole" between the end of the file and where the write occurs is read as zero and will occupy no disk space. For example, if you **lseek()** 10,000 bytes past the current end of file and write a string, the data will be written 10,000 bytes past the old end of file and all intervening matter will be considered part of the file.

**lseek()** differs from its cousin **fseek()** in that **lseek()** is a system call and uses a file descriptor, whereas **fseek()** is a C function and uses a **FILE** pointer.

### See Also

**STDIO**, **system calls**

### Diagnostics

**lseek()** returns **-1L** on an error, such as seeking to a negative position. If no error occurs, it returns the new seek position.

## Notes

**lseek()** is permitted on character-special files, but drivers do not generally implement it. As a result, seeking a terminal will not generate an error but will have no discernible effect.

## l3tol3() — General Function

Convert long integer to file system block number

```
l3tol3(l3p, lp, n)
```

```
char *l3p;
```

```
long *lp;
```

```
unsigned n;
```

To conserve space inside i-nodes in COHERENT file systems, the system stores block addresses in three bytes. Programs that reference or maintain file systems use the functions **l3tol3()** and **l3tol3()** to convert between the three byte representation and **long** numbers.

**l3tol3()** converts *n* **long** integers at address *lp* to the more compact form at address *l3p*.

## See Also

**canon.h**, **general functions**, **l3tol3()**

## lvalue — Definition

An **lvalue** is an expression that designates a region of storage. The name comes from the assignment expression **e1=e2**;, in which the left operand must be an lvalue.

An identifier has both an *lvalue* (its address) and an *rvalue* (its contents). Some C operators require lvalue operands; for example, the left operand of an assignment statement must be an lvalue. Some operators give lvalue results; for example, if *e* is a pointer expression, *\*e* is an lvalue that designates the object to which *e* points.

A *variable* can be used as an lvalue, whereas a constant cannot. For example, you cannot say

```
6 = (foo+bar);
```

A pointer is a variable, and can be manipulated within limits. An array name, however, is a constant and cannot be altered legally. Thus, the code

```
int foo[10];
int *bar;
foo = bar;
```

will generate an error message when you attempt to compile it, whereas

```
int foo[10];
int *bar;
bar = foo;
```

will not.

The following example shows the use of both an lvalue and a rvalue:

```
int i, *ip;

ip = &i;      /* ip is an lvalue, i and &i are rvalues */
i = 3;        /* i is an lvalue, 3 is an rvalue */
*ip = 4;      /* *ip is an lvalue, 4 is an rvalue */
```

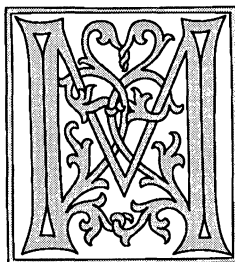
**See Also****definitions, rvalue****lx — Command**

List directory's contents in columnar format

**lx** [*file* ...]

**lx** is a link to the command **ls -x**. It prints each *file* in columnar format, like the command **lc**, except that directories and file names are printed together in one listing. If a *file* is a directory, **lx** lists its contents. If no *file* is named, **lx** lists the contents of the current directory by default.

**See Also****commands, l, lc, lf, lr, ls**



## m4 — Command

Macro processor

**m4** [*file* ...]

The command **m4** processes macros. It allows you to define strings for which **m4** is to search, and strings to replace them; **m4** then opens *file*, reads its contents, replaces each macro with its specified replacement string, and writes the results into the standard output stream.

**m4** can also perform file manipulation, conditional decision making, substring selection, and arithmetic. The *Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor* describes **m4** in detail.

The *files* are read in the order given; if no *file* is named, then **m4** reads the standard input stream. The file name '-' indicates the standard input.

**m4** copies input to output until it finds a potential *macro*. A macro is a string of alphanumeric (letters, digits, or underscores) that begins with a non-digit character and is surrounded by non-alphanumerics. If **m4** does not recognize the *macro*, it simply copies it to the output and continues processing. If **m4** recognizes the *macro* and the next character is a left parenthesis '(', an *argument set* follows:

```
macro(arg1,..., argn)
```

The arguments are collected by processing them in the same manner as other text (thus, an argument may itself be another macro), and resulting output text is diverted into storage. **m4** stores up to nine arguments; any more will be processed but not saved. An argument set consists of strings of text separated by commas (commas inside quotation marks or parentheses do not terminate an argument), and must contain balanced parentheses that are free of quotation marks (i.e., that are *unquoted*). **m4** strips arguments of unquoted leading space (blanks, tabs, newline characters).

**m4** then removes the *macro* and its optional argument set from the input stream, processes them, and replaces them in the input stream with the resulting value. The value becomes the next piece of text to be read.

Quotation marks, of the form '', inhibit the recognition of *macro*. **m4** strips off one level of quotation marks when it encounters them (quotation marks are nestable). Thus, '*macro*' is not processed, but is changed to *macro* and passed on.

**m4** determines the *value* of a user-defined macro by taking the text that constitutes the macro's *definition* and replacing any occurrence within that text of '\$*n*' (where *n* is '0' through '9') with the text of the *n*th argument. Argument 0 is the *macro* itself.

**m4** recognizes the following predefined macros:

**changequote**[[*openquote*],[*closequote*]]

Changes the quotation characters. Missing arguments default to ' for open or ' for close. Quotation characters will not nest if they are defined to be the same character. Value is null.

**decr**[(*number*)]

Decrement *number* (default, 0) by one and returns resulting value.

**define**(*macro*,*definition*)

Define or redefine *macro*. If a predefined macro is redefined, its original definition is irrecoverably lost. Value is null.

**divert**[(*n*)]

Redirects output to output stream *n* (default is 0). The standard output is 0, and 1 through 9 are maintained as temporary files. Any other *n* results in output being thrown away until the next **divert** macro. Value is null.

**divnum**

Value is current output stream number.

**dnl**

Delete to newline: removes all characters from the input stream up to and including the next newline. Value is null.

**dumpdef**[(*macros*)]

Value is quoted definitions of all *macros* specified, or names and definitions of all defined macros if no arguments.

**errprint**(*text*)

Print *text* on standard error file. Value is null.

**eval**(*expression*)

Value is a number that is the value of evaluated *expression*. It recognizes, in order of decreasing precedence: parentheses, \*\*, unary + -, \* / %, binary + -, relations, and logicals. Arithmetic is performed in **longs**.

**ifdef**(*macro*,*defvalue*,*undefvalue*)

Return *defvalue* if *macro* is defined, and *undefvalue* if not.

**ifelse**(*arg1*,*arg2*,*arg3*...)

Compares *arg1* and *arg2*. If they are the same, returns *arg3*. If not, and *arg4* is the last argument, return *arg4*. Otherwise, the process repeats, comparing *arg4* and *arg5*, and so on. Like other **m4** macros, this takes a maximum of nine arguments.

**include**(*file*)

Value is the entire contents of the *file* argument. If *file* is not accessible, a fatal error results.

**incr**[(*number*)]

Increments given *number* (default, zero) by one and returns resulting value.

**index**(*text*,*pattern*)

Value is a number corresponding to position of *pattern* in *text*. If *pattern* does not occur in *text*, value is -1.

**len**(*text*)

Value is a number that corresponds to length of *text*.

**maketemp**(*filename*XXXXXX)

Value is *filename* with last six characters, usually **XXXXXX**, replaced with current process id and a single letter. Same as system call **mktemp**.

**sinclude**(*file*)

Value is the entire contents of *file*. If *file* is not accessible, return null and continue processing.

**substr**(*text*[,*start*[,*count*]])

Value is a substring of *text*. *start* may be left-oriented (nonnegative) or right-oriented (negative). *count* specifies how many characters to the right (if positive) or to the left (if negative) to return. If absent, it is assumed to be large and of the same sign as *start*. If *start* is omitted, it is assumed to be zero if *count* is positive or omitted, or -1 if *count* is negative.

**syscmd**(*command*)

Pass *command* to the shell **sh** for execution. Value is null. Same as system call **system**.

**translit**(*text*,*characters*[,*replacements*])

Replaces *characters* in *text* with the corresponding characters from *replacements*. If the *replacements* is absent or too short, replace *characters* with a null character. Value is *text* with specified replacements.

**undefine**(*macro*)

Remove macro definition. Value is null. If a predefined macro is redefined, its original definition is irrecoverably lost.

**undivert**[(*stream*[,...])]

Dumps each specified *stream* into the current output stream. With no arguments, **undivert** dumps all output streams in numeric order. **m4** will not dump any output stream into itself. At the end of processing, **m4** automatically dumps all diverted text to standard output in numeric order. Value is null.

**See Also**

**commands**, **mktemp**, **system**

*Introduction to the m4 Macro Processor*

**machine.h** — Header File

Machine-dependent definitions

**#include** <sys/machine.h>

**machine.h** defines macros, constants, and structures that are specific to the machine upon which COHERENT is being run.

**See Also**

**header files**

**macro** — Definition

A **macro** is a body of text that is given a name. When the name is used in a program, it is replaced with the text to which it refers; this is called *macro expansion*. For example, **getchar** is a macro that consists of the function call **getc(stdin)**.

Because macros may employ an argument *n* times, any arguments that have side effects will have the side effect repeated *n* times as well, which may be undesirable.

**See Also**

**#define**, **definitions**, **function**, **m4**

**madd()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Add multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void madd(a, b, c)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *c;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **madd()** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mints**) pointed to by *c* to the sum of the **mints** pointed to by *a* and *b*.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**mail** — Overview

Electronic mail system

The COHERENT system includes a full-featured, UNIX-style mail system. It consists of a number of commands and files through which you can describe potential recipients of mail, either on your system or other systems, and send mail to them either directly or via UUCP. This article describes the design of the COHERENT mail system, and introduces the commands and files that compose it.

**Structure of the COHERENT Mail System**

The COHERENT mail system has three major components: the *user agent* (i.e., **mail**); the *routing agent* (the commands **smail** and **rmail**); and the *delivery agents* (the commands **lmail** and **uux**).

The user agent collects messages from the user and reads messages from a user's mailbox. It hands to the routing agent for delivery any messages it receives from the user.

The routing agents decode addresses and decide how to deliver a message. They are the only components of the mail system that must run **setuid** to assume the privilege of the superuser **root**.

The delivery agents move messages to their destination.

The local delivery agent, **lmail**, places messages into users' mailboxes. To discourage mail forging, **lmail** does not use **setuid**. It must be run by a privileged user (generally **root**) to write into all mail boxes. As a rule, **lmail** is invoked only by a routing agent.

The UUCP delivery agent, **uux**, queues messages for transmission to remote systems. It uses **setuid** to assume the identity of user **uucp** in order to write into the necessary spool directories. It has long been trivial to forge messages to remote systems with **uux**; keep this in mind if you plan to use electronic mail for any kind of authorization system.

**smail** looks up each *user* in file **/usr/lib/mail/aliases**. If it finds a match, it uses the matched name in place of *user*. If *user* is of the form

```
sys!user
```

or

```
sys! ... !user
```

or

```
user@sys[.domain]
```

it is treated as a remote destination. **smail** then invokes command **uux** to pass the message to *sys*, whose responsibility it becomes to pass the message to *user*.

If **smail** finds no match in **/usr/lib/mail/aliases**, or **\$HOME/.aliases**, however, it attempts to look



up each *user* in file `/etc/passwd`, to see if this is a local user. If it does not find *user* in this file, **smail** mails an error message back to the sender. If, however, it does find *user* in this file, **smail** checks file `$HOME/.forward` for any possible forwarding instructions. If this file is absent, **smail** passes the message to **lmail**. **lmail** writes the message into the file `/usr/spool/mail/user`. This file is called the user's "mailbox". Note that *user* owns this file, and can therefore permit or deny access to her mail by other users.

Note that before you can send mail, either locally or to a remote site, you must run the program **uucpinstall** and use its 'S' option to set the name of your local site and domain. Your local system must, of course, also have permission to log into any remote site to which you wish to send mail. See the tutorial and Lexicon articles on UUCP for details on using UUCP to exchange mail and files with remote sites.

## Mailing a File

To mail a file to another user, use the shell's redirection operator '<'. For example, the command

```
mail stephen <bug.report
```

mails file **bug.report** to user **stephen**. The file will be prefixed with your address, and suffixed with your mail "signature", should you have one.

## Files

**\$HOME/.aliases** — Personal mail alias file for outgoing mail  
**\$HOME/.forward** — Forwarding instructions for inbound mail  
**\$HOME/.sig.mail** — Personal signature  
**\$HOME/dead.letter** — Message that **mail** could not send  
**/etc/domain** — Name of your system's domain  
**/etc/passwd** — User identities  
**/etc/uucpname** — Name of your system  
**/tmp/mail\*** — Temporary and lock files  
**/usr/lib/mail/aliases** — Aliases of users  
**/usr/lib/mail/fullnames** — Short full name aliases of users  
**/usr/lib/mail/paths** — Mail routing control file  
**/usr/spool/mail** — Mailbox directory, filed by user name

## See Also

**aliases**, **commands**, **mail**, **mkfnames**, **msg**, **nptx**, **paths**, **rmail**, **smail**, **uux**

## Notes

The Lexicon entry on **mail** is more than sufficient for most users. The Lexicon entries for **rmail** and **smail** are only for those who wish to work with electronic mail in a very detailed manner.

## mail — Command

Computer mail

```
mail [-mpqrv] [-f file] [user ...]
```

**mail** allows you to exchange electronic mail with other COHERENT system users, either on your own system or on other systems via UUCP. Depending upon its form, this command can be used either to send mail to other users or to read the mail that other users have sent to you.

## Sending Mail

If you name one or more *users*, **mail** assumes that you wish to send a mail message to each *user*. **mail** first prints the prompt

```
Subject:
```

on the screen, requesting that you give the message a title.

**mail** then reads what you type on the standard input. A message is terminated by **<ctrl-D>**, by a line that contains only the character '.', or by a line that contains only the character '?'. Ending with a question mark prompts **mail** to feed the message into an editor for further editing. The editor used is the one named in the environmental variable **EDITOR**. If this variable is not defined, **mail** uses **ed**.

If you have defined environmental variable **ASKCC** to **YES**, **mail** asks you, after a message is ended, for a list of users to whom you wish to send a copy of the message.

Finally, **mail** prepends the date and the sender's name, and sends the result to each *user* named either on the command line or on the carbon-copy list with the **rmail** command.

Each *user* who has received mail is greeted by the message "You have mail." when she logs in. **mail** normally changes the contents of the mailbox as the user works with them; however, **mail** has options that allow the contents of the mailbox to remain unchanged if the user desires.

### **Reading Mail**

If no *user* is named on its command line, **mail** reads and displays the user's mail, message by message. If environmental variable **PAGER** is defined, **mail** will "pipe" each message through the command it names. For example, the **.profile** command line:

```
export PAGER="exec /bin/scat -1"
```

invokes **/bin/scat** for each mail message with the command-line argument **-1** (the digit one).

While reading mail, the user can use any of the following commands to save, delete, or send each message to another user interactively.

**d** Delete the current message and print the next message.

**m** [*user* ...]  
Mail the current message to each *user* given (default: yourself).

**p** Print the current message again.

**q** Quit, and update mailbox file to reflect changes.

**r** Reverse the direction in which the mailbox is being scanned.

**s** [*file* ...]  
Save the current mail message with the usual header in each *file* (default: **\$HOME/mbox**).

**t** [*user* ...]  
Send a message read from the standard input, terminated by an end-of-file character or by a line containing only '.' or '?', to each *user* (default: yourself).

**w** [*file* ...]  
Write the current message without the usual header in each *file* (default: **\$HOME/mbox**).

**x** Exit without updating the mailbox file.

**<newline>**  
Print the next message.

**-** Print the previous message.

**EOF** Quit, updating mailbox; same as **q**.

? Print a summary of available commands.

**!command**

Pass *command* to the shell for execution.

The following command line options control the sending and reading of mail.

- f file** Read mail from *file* instead of from the default, **/usr/spool/mail/user**.
- m** Send a message to the terminal of *user* if he is logged into the system when mail is sent.
- p** Print all mail without interaction.
- q** Quit without changing the mailbox if an interrupt character is typed. Normally, an interrupt character stops printing of the current message.
- r** Reverse the order of printing messages. Normally, **mail** prints messages in the order in which they were received.
- v** Verbose mode. Show the version number of the **mail** program, and display expanded aliases.

If you wish, you can create a signature file, **.sig.mail**, in your home directory. **mail** appends the contents of the signature file to the end of every mail message you send, as a signature. A signature can be your system's path name (for **uucp** messages), your telephone number, an amusing *bon mot*, or what you will.

### Files

**\$HOME/dead.letter** — Message that **mail** could not send

**\$HOME/mbox** — Default saved mail

**\$HOME/.sig.mail** — Signature file

**/etc/domain** — Name of your system's domain

**/etc/uucpname** — Name of your system

**/tmp/mail\*** — Temporary and lock files

**/usr/spool/mail** — Mailbox directory, filed by user name

### See Also

**aliases, ASKCC, commands, EDITOR, mkfnames, msg, nptx, PAGER, paths, rmail, smail, uux**

### Notes

Note that before you can send mail, either locally or to a remote site, you must run the program **uucinstall** and use its 'S' option to set the name of your local site and domain. Your local system must, of course, also have permission to log into any remote site to which you wish to send mail. See the tutorial and Lexicon articles on UUCP for details on using UUCP to exchange mail and files with remote sites.

## main() — C Language

Introduce program's main function

A C program consists of a set of functions, one of which must be called **main()**. This function is called from the runtime startup routine after the runtime environment has been initialized.

Programs can terminate in one of two ways. The easiest is simply to have the **main()** routine **return()**. Control returns to the runtime startup; it closes all open file streams and otherwise cleans up, and then returns control to the operating system, passing it the value returned by **main()** as exit status.

In some situations (errors, for example), it may be necessary to stop a program, and you may not want to return to **main()**. Here, you can use **exit()**; it cleans up the debris left by the broken program and returns control directly to the operating system.

A second exit routine, called `_exit()`, quickly returns control to the operating system without performing any cleanup. This routine should be used with care, because bypassing the cleanup will leave files open and buffers of data in memory.

Programs compiled by COHERENT return to the program that called them; if they return from `main()` with a value or call `exit()` with a value, that value is returned to their caller. Programs that invoke other programs through the function `system()` check the returned value to see if these secondary programs terminated successfully.

### See Also

`_exit()`, `argc`, `argv`, C language, `envp`, `exit()`

## major number — Definition

Device numbering

A *major number* specifies the device driver associated with a given device name found in the directory `/dev`. COHERENT uses a device's the major number as an index into an internal table of device-driver pointers.

Every COHERENT device has a device number associated with it. This device number is of type `dev_t`, as defined in `<sys/types.h>`. The macro `major()` in `<sys/stat.h>` extracts the major number from a given device number.

### See Also

device drivers, minor number, `stat.h`

## make — Command

Program building discipline

**make** [*option* ...] [*argument* ...] [*target* ...]

**make** helps you build programs that consist of more than one file of source code.

Complex programs often consist of several *object modules*, each of which is the product of compiling a *source file*. A source file may refer to one or more **include** files, which can also be changed. Some programs may be generated from specifications given to program generators, such as **yacc**. Recompiling and relinking complicated programs can be difficult and tedious.

**make** regenerates programs automatically. It follows a specification of the structure of the program that you write into a file called **makefile**. **make** also checks the date and time that COHERENT has recorded for each source file and its corresponding object module; to avoid unnecessary recompilation, **make** will recompile a source file only if it has been altered since its object module was last compiled.

### The Makefile

A **makefile** consists of three types of instructions: *macro definitions*, *dependency definitions*, and *commands*.

A macro definition simply defines a macro for use throughout the **makefile**; for example, the macro definition

```
FILES=file1.o file2.o file3.o
```

Note the use of the equal sign '='.

A dependency definition names the object modules used to build the target program, and source files used to build each object module. It consists of the *target name*, or name of the program to be created, followed by a colon ':' and the names of the object modules that build it. For example, the

statement

```
example: $(FILES)
```

uses the macro **FILES** to name the object modules used to build the program **example**. Likewise, the dependency definition

```
file1.o: file1.c macros.h
```

defines the object module **file1.o** as consisting of the source file **file1.c** and the header file **macros.h**.

Finally, a command line details an action that **make** must perform to build the target program. Each command line must begin with a space or tab character. For example, the command line

```
cc -o example $(FILES)
```

gives the **cc** command needed to build the program **example**. The **cc** command lists the *object modules* to be used, *not* the source files.

Note that if you prefix an action with a hyphen '-', **make** will ignore errors in the action. If the action is prefixed by '@', it tells **make** to be silent about the action — that is, do not echo the command to the standard output.

Finally, you can embed comments within a **makefile**. **make** recognizes any line that begins with a pound sign '#' as being a comment, and ignores it.

**make** searches for **makefile** first in directories named in the environmental variable **PATH**, and then in the current directory.

## Dependencies

The **makefile** specifies which files depend upon other files, and how to recreate the dependent files. For example, if the target file **test** depends upon the object module **test.o**, the dependency is as follows:

```
test: test.o
    cc -o test test.o
```

**make** knows about common dependencies, e.g., that **.o** files depend upon **.c** files with the same base name. The target **.SUFFIXES** contains the suffixes that **make** recognizes.

**make** also has a set of rules to regenerate dependent files. For example, for a source file with suffix **.c** and a dependent file with the suffix **.o**, the target **.c.o** gives the regeneration rule:

```
.c.o:
    cc -c $<
```

The **-c** option to the **cc** commands tells **cc** not to link or erase the compiled object module. **\$<** is a macro that **make** defines; it stands for the name of the file that causes the current action. The default suffixes and rules are kept in the files **/usr/lib/makemacros** and **/usr/lib/makeactions**.

## Macros

To simplify the writing of complex dependencies, **make** provides a *macro* facility. To define a macro, write

```
NAME = string
```

*string* is terminated by the end-of-line character, so it can contain blanks. To refer to the value of the macro, use a dollar sign '\$' followed by the macro name enclosed in parentheses:

**\$(NAME)**

If the macro name is one character, parentheses are not necessary. **make** uses macros in the definition of default rules:

```
.c.o:
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c $<
```

where the macros are defined as

```
CC=cc
CFLAGS=-V
```

The other built-in macros are:

<b>\$*</b>	Target name, minus suffix
<b>\$@</b>	Full target name
<b>\$&lt;</b>	List of referred files
<b>\$?</b>	Referred files newer than target

Each command line *argument* should be a macro definition of the form

```
OBJECT=a.o b.o
```

Arguments that include spaces must be surrounded by quotation marks, because blanks are significant to the shell **sh**.

You can specify macro definitions in the **makefile**, in the environment, or as a command-line argument. A macro defined as a command-line argument always overrides a definition of the same macro name in the environment or in the **makefile**. Normally, a definition in a **makefile** overrides a definition of the same macro name in the environment; however, with the **-e** option (described below), a definition in the environment overrides a definition in the **makefile**.

## Options

The following lists the options that can be passed to **make** on its command line.

- d** (Debug) Give verbose printout of all decisions and information going into decisions.
- e** Force macro definitions in environment to override those in the **makefile**.
- f file** *file* contains the **make** specification. If this option does not appear, **make** uses the file **makefile**, which is sought first in the directories named in the **PATH** environmental variable, and then in the current directory. If *file* is **-**, **make** uses the standard input; note, however, that the standard input can be used *only* if it is piped.
- i** Ignore all errors from commands, and continue processing. Normally, **make** exits if a command returns an error.
- n** Test only; suppresses actual execution of commands.
- p** Print all macro definitions and target descriptions.
- q** Return a zero exit status if the targets are up to date. Do not execute any commands.
- r** Do not use the built-in rules that describe dependencies.
- s** Do not print command lines when executing them. Commands preceded by **@** are not printed, except under the **-n** option.

**-t** (Touch option) Force the dates of targets to be the current time, and bypass actual regeneration.

### Source File Path

If a file is not specified with an absolute path name beginning with '/', **make** first looks for the file in the current directory. If the file is not found in the current directory, **make** searches for it in the list of directories specified by macro **\$(SRCPATH)**. This allows you to compile a program in an object directory separate from the source directory. For example

```
export SRCPATH=/usr/src/local/me
make
```

or alternatively

```
make SRCPATH=/usr/src/local/me
```

builds objects in the current directory as specified by the **makefile** and sources in **/usr/src/local/me**. To test changes to a program built from several source files, copy only the files you wish to change to the current directory; **make** will use the local sources and find the other sources on the **\$(SRCPATH)**.

Note that **\$(SRCPATH)** can be a single directory, as in the above example, or a ':'-separated list of directories, as described in the Lexicon entry for the function **path()**.

### Files

#### **makefile**

**Makefile** — List of dependencies and commands

**/usr/lib/makeactions** — Default actions

**/usr/lib/makemacros** — Default macros

### See Also

**as**, **cc**, **commands**, **ld**, **srcpath**, **touch**

*The make Programming Discipline*, tutorial

### Diagnostics

**make** reports its exit status if it is interrupted or if an executed command returns error status. It replies "Target *name* not defined" or "Don't know how to make target *name*" if it cannot find appropriate rules.

### Notes

The order of items in **makemacros/.SUFFIXES** is significant. The consequent of a default rule (e.g., **.o**) must *precede* the antecedent (e.g., **.c**) in the entry **.SUFFIXES**. Otherwise, **make** will not work properly.

## **malloc()** — General Function (libc)

Allocate dynamic memory

```
char *malloc(size) unsigned size;
```

**malloc()** helps to manage a program's free-space arenas. It uses a circular, first-fit algorithm to select an unused block of at least *size* bytes, marks the portion it uses, and returns a pointer to it. The function **free** returns allocated memory to the free memory pool.

Each area allocated by **malloc()** is rounded up to the nearest even number and preceded by an **unsigned int** that contains the true length. Thus, if you ask for three bytes you get four, and the **unsigned** that precedes the newly allocated area is set to four.

When an area is freed, its low order bit is turned on; consolidation occurs when **malloc()** passes over an area as it searches for space. The end of each arena contains a block with a length of zero,

followed by a pointer to the next arena. Arenas point in a circle.

The most common problem with **malloc()** occurs when a program modifies more space than it allocates with **malloc()**. This can cause later **malloc()**s to crash with a message that indicates that the arena has been corrupted. You can use the function **memok()** to isolate these problems.

### **Example**

This example reads from the standard input up to *NITEMS* items, each of which is up to *MAXLEN* long, sorts them, and writes the sorted list onto the standard output. It demonstrates the functions **qsort()**, **malloc()**, **free()**, **exit()**, and **strcmp()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define NITEMS 512
#define MAXLEN 256
char *data[NITEMS];
char string[MAXLEN];

main()
{
    register char **cpp;
    register int count;
    extern int compare();
    extern char *malloc();
    extern char *gets();

    for (cpp = &data[0]; cpp < &data[NITEMS]; cpp++) {
        if (gets(string) == NULL)
            break;
        if ((*cpp = malloc(strlen(string) + 1)) == NULL)
            exit(1);
        strcpy(*cpp, string);
    }

    count = cpp - &data[0];
    qsort(data, count, sizeof(char *), compare);

    for (cpp = &data[0]; cpp < &data[count]; cpp++) {
        printf("%s\n", *cpp);
        free(*cpp);
    }
    exit(0);
}

compare(p1, p2)
register char **p1, **p2;
{
    extern int strcmp();
    return(strcmp(*p1, *p2));
}
```

### **See Also**

**alloca()**, **arena**, **calloc()**, **free()**, **general functions**, **malloc.h**, **memok()**, **realloc()**, **setbuf()**



## Diagnostics

**malloc()** returns NULL if insufficient memory is available.

## Notes

The commonest error associated with **malloc()** is failing to declare it properly. You should always declare **malloc()** as returning a pointer to **char**.

The function **alloca()** (which is available with COHERENT 386) allocates space on the stack. The space so allocated does not need to be freed when the function that allocated the space exits.

## **malloc.h** — Header File

Definitions for memory-allocation functions

**#include <sys/malloc.h>**

**malloc.h** defines constants, structures, and macros used with COHERENT's memory-allocation functions. Note that this header does not declare the library's memory-allocation functions.

## See Also

header files

## **man** — Technical Information

Manual macro package

**nroff -man file ...**

The **nroff** macro package **man** formats manual pages in the style of the Lexicon. It includes the following macros:

- .B** Boldface font.
- .BI** Bold/italic alternating fonts.
- .BR** Bold/Roman alternating fonts.
- .CO** COHERENT.
- .DE** Display end.
- .DS** Display start.
- .DT** Default tabs.
- .HE** Help end.
- .HP** Hanging paragraph.
- .HS** Help start.
- .I** Italic font.
- .IB** Italic/bold alternating fonts.
- .IP** Indented paragraph.
- .IR** Italic/Roman alternating fonts.
- .LP** Paragraph, flush left.
- .PD** Paragraph distance.
- .PP** Paragraph, indented.
- .RB** Roman/bold alternating fonts.
- .RE** Relative indent end.
- .RI** Roman/italic alternating fonts.
- .RS** Relative indent start.
- .SH** Subheader.
- .SM** Smaller size.
- .TH** Define header.
- .TP** Tagged paragraph.

## Files

**/usr/lib/tmac.an** — Macro package

### See Also

**ms**, **nroff**, **technical information**, **troff**  
*nroff*, *The Text Processing Language*, tutorial

### **man** — Command

Print Lexicon entries

**man** [-w] [topic ...]

**man** prints the COHERENT lexicon entries for each specified *topic* on the standard output. It uses **scat** to display text (with the **-s** option to suppress blank lines). With no arguments, **man** prints a list of each available *topic*.

When used with the **-w** option, it prints the path name of the file instead of printing the document itself.

If environmental variable **PAGER** is defined, **man** pipes its output through the command specified in **PAGER**. For example, the **.profile** command line:

```
export PAGER="exec /bin/scat -1"
```

invokes **/bin/scat** with the command-line argument **-1** (the digit one).

### Manual-Page Control Files

**man** uses two control files when processing manual-page requests. File **/usr/man/man.help** contains the **man**'s help message. This includes a list of valid topics and some explanatory text. The second control file, **/usr/man/man.index**, contains index entries for all manual pages on the system. Lines in this text file are of the form:

*relative-path-name topic*

where *relative-path-name* gives the subdirectory and file in **/usr/man** that hold the manual-page entry, and *topic* gives a manual-page topic associated with this file. For example, entries

```
COHERENT/ascii  ascii
COHERENT/ascii  ASCII
local/chess     chess
```

associate system manual-page **/usr/man/COHERENT/ascii** with either upper- or lower-case spellings of topic **ascii**. Likewise, rules for a user-written chess game are found in file **/usr/man/local/chess** and are retrieved using topic **chess**.

### Adding Manual-Page Entries

When writing new manual-page entries for COHERENT, we recommend that you place them in subdirectories of **/usr/man**. These subdirectories should be uniquely named to avoid possible name-space collisions. A good rule of thumb is to name the subdirectory after the application with which it is associated. This also allows them to be updated easily, as all manual-pages associated with a given application reside in a specific subdirectory.

When you add manual-page entries to the system, you should also append a list of topics to **/usr/man/man.help**. In addition, you must append a line to the end of file **/usr/man/man.index** for each newly added topic.

### Files

**/usr/man/\*** — Directories that hold manual pages

### See Also

**commands**, **help**, **install**, **more**, **PAGER**, **scat**

**manifest constant — Definition**

A **manifest constant** is a numeric constant that is given a name so it can be defined differently under different computing environments. An example is **EOF**, the end-of-file marker, which has wildly different representations under different operating systems. Note, too, that numerals are manifest constants by definition.

The use of manifest constants in programs helps to ensure that code is portable by isolating the definition of these elements in a single header file, where they need to be changed only once.

**See Also**

**#define**, **definitions**, **NULL**, **portability**

**math.h — Header File**

Declare mathematics functions

**#include <math.h>**

**math.h** is the header file to be included with programs that use any of COHERENT's mathematics routines. It includes the following: definitions for mathematical functions; error return values, as used by the **errno** function; definitions of mathematical constants, e.g., **HUGE\_VAL**; the definition of structure **cpx**, which describes complex variables; definitions of internal compiler functions; and, finally, declarations of all mathematical functions.

**See Also**

**header files**, **mathematics library**

**mathematics library — Overview**

The COHERENT mathematics library **libm** contains the following useful mathematics functions:

<b>acos()</b>	Calculate inverse cosine
<b>asin()</b>	Calculate inverse sine
<b>atan()</b>	Calculate inverse tangent
<b>atan2()</b>	Calculate inverse tangent of quotient
<b>cabs()</b>	Calculate complex absolute value
<b>ceil()</b>	Set numeric ceiling
<b>cos()</b>	Calculate cosine
<b>cosh()</b>	Calculate hyperbolic cosine
<b>exp()</b>	Calculate exponent
<b>fabs()</b>	Calculate absolute value function
<b>floor()</b>	Calculate floor function
<b>hypot()</b>	Calculate hypotenuse
<b>j0()</b>	Calculate Bessel function, order 0
<b>j1()</b>	Calculate Bessel function, order 1
<b>jn()</b>	Calculate Bessel function, order <i>n</i>
<b>log()</b>	Calculate natural logarithm
<b>log10()</b>	Calculate common logarithm
<b>pow()</b>	Calculate power
<b>sin()</b>	Calculate sine
<b>sinh()</b>	Calculate hyperbolic sine
<b>sqrt()</b>	Calculate square root
<b>tan()</b>	Calculate tangent
<b>tanh()</b>	Calculate hyperbolic tangent

**See Also**

**Lexicon**, **libraries**, **math.h**

Hart, J.F., et al.: *Computer Approximations*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1968.

Press, W.H., Flannery, B.P., Teukolsky, S.A., Vetterling, W.T.: *Numerical Recipes in C*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1988. *Highly recommended.*

### Notes

When programs that contain mathematics routines are compiled, the mathematics libraries must be called specifically on the **cc** command line. For example, to compile the example presented under the entry for **acos**, use the following **cc** command line:

```
cc -f acos.c -lm
```

The **-f** option links in the floating point routines for **printf**, while the **-lm** option links in the mathematics libraries. Note that the **-lm** option must come *last* on the **cc** command line, or the library will not be searched properly.

### **mboot** — Device Driver

Master boot block for hard disk

To be bootable, a COHERENT file system must contain a boot block (either **boot** or **mboot**). In addition, all hard disks must contain the master boot block **mboot** or an equivalent.

**mboot** is the master boot block for a hard-disk drive. It is compatible with, and therefore can replace, the IBM master boot block installed by the MS-DOS command **FDISK**. It must be installed in the first sector of the hard disk, as follows:

```
/etc/fdisk -b /conf/mboot /dev/at0x  
/bin/sync
```

**mboot** searches its internal partition table (updated by the command **fdisk**) for an active partition. You can select an alternate partition by pressing 0 through 7 before the system selects the active partition. If the selected partition is of non-zero size with a valid partition boot block, COHERENT executes that partition's boot block. Otherwise, the prompt

```
Select partition [0-7]
```

appear, and the system waits for you to select the partition you want.

### Files

**/conf/mboot** — Hard-disk master boot block

### See Also

**boot**, **device drivers**, **fdisk**, **mkfs**

### **mcmp()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Compare multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
int mcmp(a, b)
```

```
mint *a, *b;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **mcmp()** compares the multiple-precision integers (or **mints**) pointed to by *a* and *b*. It returns a signed integer less than, equal to, or greater than zero according to whether the value pointed to by *a* is less than, equal to, or greater than that pointed to by *b*.

### See Also

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**mcopy()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Copy a multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mcopy(a, b)
```

```
mint *a, *b;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mcopy()** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *b* to the value pointed to by *a*.

**See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**mdata.h** — Header File

Define machine-specific magic numbers

```
#include <sys/mdata.h>
```

**mdata.h** defines the “magic numbers” for the machine upon which COHERENT is being run.

**See Also**

**header files**

**mdiv()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Divide multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mdiv(a, b, q, r)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *q, *r;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mdiv()** divides the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* with that pointed to by *b*. It writes the quotient and remainder into, respectively, *q* and *r*. *b* must not be zero. The results of the operation are defined by the following conditions:

1.  $a = q * b + r$
2. The sign of *r* equals the sign of *q*
3. The absolute value of *r* is greater than the absolute value of *b*.

**See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**me** — Command

MicroEMACS screen editor

```
me [-e errorfile] [-f bindfile] [textfile ...]
```

**me** is the command for MicroEMACS, the screen editor for COHERENT. With MicroEMACS, you can insert text, delete text, move text, search for a string and replace it, and perform many other editing tasks. MicroEMACS reads text from files and writes edited text to files; it can edit several files simultaneously, while displaying the contents of each file in its own screen window.

**Screen Layout**

Before you can use MicroEMACS, you must set the environmental variable **TERM** in your environment. If you do not set this variable explicitly in your **.profile** file, COHERENT sets it by default to **ansipc**. See the Lexicon entry **TERM** for details.

If the command **me** is used without arguments, MicroEMACS opens an empty buffer. If used with one or more file name arguments, MicroEMACS will open each of the files named, and display its contents in a window. If a file cannot be found, MicroEMACS will assume that you are creating it for the first time, and create an appropriately named buffer and file descriptor for it.

The last line of the screen is used to print messages and inquiries. The rest of the screen is portioned into one or more *windows* in which text is displayed. The last line of each window shows whether the text has been changed, the name of the buffer, and the name of the file associated with the window.

MicroEMACS notes its *current position*. It is important to remember that the current position is always to the *left* of the cursor, and lies *between* two letters, rather than at one letter or another. For example, if the cursor is positioned at the letter 'k' of the phrase "Mark Williams", then the current position lies *between* the letters 'r' and 'k'.

### Commands and Text

The printable ASCII characters, from ' ' to '~', can be inserted at the current position. Control characters and escape sequences are recognized as *commands*, described below. A control character can be inserted into the text by prefixing it with <ctrl-Q> (that is, hold down the <control> key and type the letter 'Q').

There are two types of commands to remove text. *Delete* commands remove text and throw it away, whereas *kill* commands remove text but save it in the *kill buffer*. Successive kill commands append text to the previous kill buffer. Moving the cursor before you kill a line will empty the kill buffer, and write the line just killed into it.

Search commands prompt for a search string terminated by <return> and then search for it. Case sensitivity for searching can be toggled with the command <esc>@. Typing <return> instead of a search string tells MicroEMACS to use the previous search string.

Some commands manipulate words rather than characters. MicroEMACS defines a word as consisting of all alphabetic characters, plus '\_' and '\$'. Usually, a character command is a control character and the corresponding word command is an escape sequence. For example, <ctrl-F> moves forward one character and <esc>F moves forward one word.

MicroEMACS can handle blocks of text as well as individual characters, words, and lines. MicroEMACS defines a block of text as all the text that lies between the *mark* and the current position of the cursor. For example, typing <ctrl-W> kills all text from the mark to the current position of the cursor; this is useful when moving text from one file to another. When you invoke MicroEMACS, the mark is set at the beginning of the file; you can reset the mark to the cursor's current position by typing <ctrl-@>.

### Using MicroEMACS with the Compiler

MicroEMACS can be invoked automatically by the compiler command **cc** to help you repair all errors that occur during compilation. The **-A** option to **cc** causes MicroEMACS to be invoked automatically when an error occurs. The compiler error messages are displayed in one window, the source code in the other, and the cursor is at the line on which the first error occurred. You can correct the errors one by one. To move to the next error in the list, type <ctrl-X>; to move the previous error, type <ctrl-X><.

When have finished making corrections, exit from MicroEMACS by typing <ctrl-Z>, as usual; the compiler will automatically be re-invoked to re-compile the corrected source code. If more errors are found, MicroEMACS will be re-invoked with the new list of errors. This cycle will continue either until the file compiles without error, or until you break the cycle by typing <ctrl-U> <ctrl-X> <ctrl-C>.

The option **-e** to the **me** command allows you to invoke the error buffer by hand. For example, the

commands

```
cc myprogram.c 2>errorfile
me -e errorfile myprogram.c
```

divert the compiler's error messages into **errorfile**, and then invokes MicroEMACS to let you correct them interactively.

### ***The MicroEMACS Help Facility***

MicroEMACS has a built-in help facility. With it, you can ask for information either for a word that you type in, or for a word over which the cursor is positioned. The MicroEMACS help file contains the bindings for all library functions and macros included with COHERENT.

For example, consider that you are preparing a C program and want more information about the function **fopen**. Type **<ctrl-X>?**. At the bottom of the screen will appear the prompt

Topic:

Type **fopen**. MicroEMACS will search its help file, find its entry for **fopen**, then open a window and print the following:

```
Open a stream for standard I/O
#include <stdio.h>
FILE *fopen (name, type) char *name, *type;
```

If you wish, you can kill the information in the help window and copy it into your program, to ensure that you prepare the function call correctly.

Consider, however, that you are checking a program written earlier, and you wish to check the call for a call to **fopen**. Simply move the cursor until it is positioned over one of the letters in **fopen**, then type **<esc>?**. MicroEMACS will open its help window, and show the same information it did above.

To erase the help window, type **<ctrl-X>1**.

### ***Options***

The following list gives the MicroEMACS commands. They are grouped by function, e.g., *Moving the cursor*. Some commands can take an *argument*, which specifies how often the command is to be executed. The default argument is 1. The command **<ctrl-U>** introduces an argument. By default, it sets the argument to four. Typing **<ctrl-U>** followed by a number sets the argument to that number. Typing **<ctrl-U>** followed by one or more **<ctrl-U>**s multiplies the argument by four.

#### ***Moving the Cursor***

<b>&lt;ctrl-A&gt;</b>	Move to start of line.
<b>&lt;ctrl-B&gt;</b>	(Back) Move backward by characters.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;B</b>	Move backward by words.
<b>&lt;ctrl-E&gt;</b>	(End) Move to end of line.
<b>&lt;ctrl-F&gt;</b>	(Forward) Move forward by characters.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;F</b>	(Forward) Move forward by words.
<b>&lt;esc&gt;G</b>	Go to an absolute line number in a file. Same as <b>&lt;ctrl-X&gt;G</b> .
<b>&lt;ctrl-N&gt;</b>	(Next) Move to next line.

- <ctrl-P>** (Previous) Move to previous line.
- <ctrl-V>** Move forward by pages.
- <esc>V** Move backward by pages.
- <ctrl-X>=** Print the current position.
- <ctrl-X>G** Go to an absolute line number in a file. Can be used with an argument; otherwise, it will prompt for a line number. Same as **<esc>G**.
- <ctrl-X>[** Go to matching C delimiter. For example, if the cursor is positioned under the character '{', then typing **<ctrl-X>[** moves the cursor to the next '}'. Likewise, if the cursor is positioned under the character '}', then typing **<ctrl-X>[** moves the cursor to the first preceding '{'. MicroEMACS recognizes the delimiters [, ], {, }, (, ), /\*, and \*/.
- <ctrl-X>]** Toggle reverse-video display of matching C delimiters. For example, if reverse-video displaying is toggled on, then whenever the cursor is positioned under a '}' MicroEMACS displays the first preceding '{' in reverse video (should it be on the screen). MicroEMACS recognizes the delimiters [, ], {, }, (, ), /\*, and \*/.
- <esc>!** Move the current line to the line within the window given by *argument*; the position is in lines from the top if positive, in lines from the bottom if negative, and the center of the window if zero.
- <esc><** Move to the beginning of the current buffer.
- <esc>>** Move to the end of the current buffer.

### ***Killing and Deleting***

- <ctrl-D>** (Delete) Delete next character.
- <esc>D** Kill the next word.
- <ctrl-H>** If no argument, delete previous character. Otherwise, kill *argument* previous characters.
- <ctrl-K>** (Kill) With no argument, kill from current position to end of line; if at the end, kill the newline. With argument set to one, kill from beginning of line to current position. Otherwise, kill *argument* lines forward (if positive) or backward (if negative).
- <ctrl-W>** Kill text from current position to mark.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-O>**  
Kill blank lines at current position.
- <ctrl-Y>** (Yank back) Copy the kill buffer into text at the current position; set current position to the end of the new text.
- <esc><ctrl-H>**  
Kill the previous word.
- <esc><DEL>**  
Kill the previous word.
- <DEL>** If no argument, delete the previous character. Otherwise, kill *argument* previous characters.

### ***Windows***



- <ctrl-X>1** Display only the current window.
- <ctrl-X>2** Split the current window into two windows. This command is usually followed by **<ctrl-X>B** or **<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>**.
- <ctrl-X>N** (Next) Move to next window.
- <ctrl-X>P** (Previous) Move to previous window.
- <ctrl-X>Z** Enlarge the current window by *argument* lines.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-N>**  
Move text in current window down by *argument* lines.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-P>**  
Move text in current window up by *argument* lines.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-Z>**  
Shrink current window by *argument* lines.

### **Buffers**

- <ctrl-X>B** (Buffer) Prompt for a buffer name, and display the buffer in the current window.
- <ctrl-X>K** (Kill) Prompt for a buffer name and delete it.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-B>**  
Display a window showing the change flag, size, buffer name, and file name of each buffer.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-F>**  
(File name) Prompt for a file name for current buffer.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-R>**  
(Read) Prompt for a file name, delete current buffer, and read the file.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-V>**  
(Visit) Prompt for a file name and display the file in the current window.

### **Saving Text and Exiting**

- <ctrl-X><ctrl-C>**  
Exit without saving text.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-S>**  
(Save) Save current buffer to the associated file.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-W>**  
(Write) Prompt for a file name and write the current buffer to it.
- <ctrl-Z>** Save current buffer to associated file and exit.

### **Compilation Error Handling**

- <ctrl-X>>** Move to next error.
- <ctrl-X><** Move to previous error.

### **Search and Replace**

- <ctrl-R>** (Reverse) Incremental search backward; a pattern is sought as each character is typed.

- <esc>R** (Reverse) Search toward the beginning of the file. Waits for entire pattern before search begins.
- <ctrl-S>** (Search) Incremental search forward; a pattern is sought as each character is typed.
- <esc>S** (Search) Search toward the end of the file. Waits for entire pattern before search begins.
- <esc>%** Search and replace. Prompt for two strings; then search for the first string and replace it with the second.
- <esc>/** Search for next occurrence of a string entered with the **<esc>S** or **<esc>R** commands; this remembers whether the previous search had been forward or backward.
- <esc>@** Toggle case sensitivity for searches. By default, searches are case insensitive.

### **Keyboard Macros**

- <ctrl-X>(** Begin a macro definition. MicroEMACS collects everything typed until the next **<ctrl-X>** for subsequent repeated execution. **<ctrl-G>** breaks the definition.
- <ctrl-X>)** End a macro definition.
- <ctrl-X>E** (Execute) Execute the keyboard macro.
- <ctrl-X>M** Bind a newly created keyboard macro to a given keystroke or set of keystrokes.

### **Flexible Key Bindings**

- <ctrl-X>R** Replace one binding with another.
- <ctrl-X>X** Rebind the prefix (meta) keys, and the multiple-execution key **<ctrl-U>**.
- <ctrl-X>S** Prompt for a file name, and write all flexible keybindings and macros into it.
- <ctrl-X>L** Prompt for a file name, and read all flexible keybindings and macros from it.
- <ctrl-X>I** Rebind current macro to the initialization macro.

By default, MicroEMACS checks for the existence of file **\$HOME/.emacs.rc** and executes it if found. The **-f** option lets you specify an alternate file of keybindings macros from the **me** command line. After loading the file, MicroEMACS then executes the initialization macro, if one exists. For example, to load the keybindings file **bindings** and edit file **textfile**, use the command:

```
me -f bindings textfile
```

### **Change Case of Text**

- <esc>C** (Capitalize) Capitalize the next word.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-L>**  
(Lower) Convert all text from current position to mark into lower case.
- <esc>L** (Lower) Convert the next word to lower case.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-U>**  
(Upper) Convert all text from current position to mark into upper case.
- <esc>U** (Upper) Convert the next word to upper case.

### **White Space**

**<ctrl-I>** Insert a tab. Default behavior is to move the cursor to the nearest 8's boundary; for example, if the cursor is in the 62nd column on the screen, pressing **<ctrl-I>** moves it to column 64.

When used with a positive argument, change the behavior of the tab key. For example, **<ctrl-U>4<ctrl-I>** commands MicroEMACS to insert enough spaces for a tab key to reach a four's boundary.

When used with a negative argument, change the behavior of the tab character. For example, **<ctrl-U>-4<ctrl-I>** says that a tab character on a file will take you to the nearest 4's boundary. Thus, if you have a file with tabs in it and you use '-4', the appearance of the file on the screen will change; but if you use '4' the appearance of the file on the screen will not change.

Exporting the shell variable **TABSIZ=4** will also change the behavior of MicroEMACS this way.

**<ctrl-J>** Insert a new line and indent to current level. This is often used in C programs to preserve the current level of indentation.

**<ctrl-M>** (Return) If the following line is not empty, insert a new line; if empty, move to next line.

**<ctrl-O>** Open a blank line; that is, insert newline after the current position.

**<tab>** With argument, set tab fields at every *argument* characters. An argument of zero restores the default of eight characters. Setting the tab to any character other than eight causes space characters to be set in your file instead of tab characters.

### ***Send Commands to Operating System***

**<ctrl-C>** Suspend MicroEMACS and execute a subshell. Typing **<ctrl-D>** returns you to MicroEMACS and allows you to resume editing.

**<ctrl-X>!** Prompt for a shell command and execute it.

These commands recognize the shell variable **SHELL** to determine the shell to which it should pass the command.

### ***Setting the Mark***

**<ctrl-@>** Set mark at current position.

**<esc>.** Set mark at current position.

**<ctrl><space>**  
Set mark at current position.

### ***Help Window***

**<ctrl-X>?** Prompt for word for which information is needed.

**<esc>?** Search for word over which cursor is positioned.

**<esc>2** Erase help window.

### ***Miscellaneous***

**<ctrl-G>** Abort a command.

**<ctrl-L>** Redraw the screen.

- <ctrl-G>** (Quote) Insert the next character into text; used to insert control characters.
- <esc>g** Quote a character by numeric value. When you type this command, MicroEMACS prompts you for a numeric value, in decimal. It then inserts into your text the character whose value you type. This command is useful when you wish to enter characters with the high bit set.
- <ctrl-T>** Transpose the characters before and after the current position.
- <ctrl-U>** Specify a numeric argument, as described above.
- <ctrl-U><ctrl-X><ctrl-C>** Abort editing and re-compilation. Use this command to abort editing and return to COHERENT when you are using the **-A** option to the **cc** command.
- <ctrl-X>H** Use word-wrap on a region.
- <ctrl-X>F** Set word wrap to *argument* column. If argument is one, set word wrap to cursor's current position.
- <ctrl-X><ctrl-X>** Mark the current position, then jump to the previous setting of the mark. This is useful when moving text from one place in a file to another.

### Diagnostics

MicroEMACS prints error messages on the bottom line of the screen. It prints informational messages (enclosed in square brackets '[' and ']') to distinguish them from error messages) in the same place.

MicroEMACS manipulates text in memory rather than in a file. The file on disk is not changed until you save the edited text. MicroEMACS prints a warning and prompts you whenever a command would cause it to lose changed text.

### See Also

**commands, ed, elvis, ex, sed, TERM, vi**

### Notes

Because MicroEMACS keeps text in memory, it does not work for extremely large files. It prints an error message if a file is too large to edit. If this happens when you first invoke a file, you should exit from the editor immediately. Otherwise, your file on disk will be truncated. If this happens in the middle of an editing session, however, delete text until the message disappears, then save your file and exit. Due to the way MicroEMACS works, saving a file after this error message has appeared will take more time than usual.

The source code for MicroEMACS is included with COHERENT, and is kept in directory **/usr/src/local**. You are invited to experiment with source code, to modify existing features or add new ones for your own use.

MicroEMACS is based upon the public domain editor by David G. Conroy.

### **mem** — Device Driver

Physical memory file

The special file **/dev/mem** allows the physical memory of the host computer to be read and written just like an ordinary file. The location where I/O will occur can be positioned to any valid byte address by a call to **lseek()**. Note that **ps** and related commands use **/dev/kmem**, which manipulates the kernel's data space.

Commands may examine or change addresses in physical memory. Addresses to use when changing the system itself normally are obtained from the system load module (**/coherent**) name

list, so that they always reflect the currently running version of the system.

### Files

/dev/mem

### See Also

core, device drivers, lseek, ps

### Diagnostics

On an error, such as nonexistent memory location, **mem** returns -1.

## memccpy() — String Function

Copy a region of memory up to a set character

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memccpy(dest, src, c, n)
```

```
char *dest, *src; unsigned int c, n;
```

**memccpy()** copies characters from *src* to *dest*, stopping when either it finds the first occurrence of character *c* or it has copied *n* characters. Unlike the routines **strcpy()** and **strncpy()**, **memccpy()** copies from one region to another. Therefore, it will not halt automatically when it encounters NUL.

**memccpy()** returns a pointer to the first location after character *c* in *dest*, or NULL if character *c* was not found.

### See Also

**memccpy()**, **strcpy()**, **strncpy()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

### Notes

**memccpy()** is not part of the ANSI C Standard. Use of this library routine may restrict portability.

If *dest* and *src* overlap, the behavior of **memccpy()** is undefined. *dest* should point to enough reserved memory to hold *n* bytes of data; otherwise, data corruption may result.

## memchr() — String Function

Search a region of memory for a character

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memchr(region, character, n)
```

```
char *region; int character; unsigned int n;
```

**memchr()** searches the first *n* characters in *region* for *character*. It returns the address of *character* if it is found, or NULL if it is not.

Unlike the string-search function **strchr()**, **memchr()** searches a region of memory. Therefore, it does not stop when it encounters a null character.

### Example

The following example deals a random hand of cards from a standard deck of 52. The command line takes one argument, which indicates the size of the hand you want dealt. It uses an algorithm published by Bob Floyd in the September 1987 *Communications of the ACM*.

```
#include <stddef.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <time.h>
#define DECK 52
```

```
main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    char deck[DECK], *fp;
    int deckp, n, j, t;

    if(argc != 2 ||
        52 < (n = atoi(argv[1])) ||
        1 > n) {
        printf("usage: memchr n # where 0 < n < 53\n");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

    /* exercise rand() to make it more random */
    srand((unsigned int)time(NULL));
    for(j = 0; j < 100; j++)
        rand();

    deckp = 0;
    /* Bob Floyd's algorithm */
    for(j = DECK - n; j < DECK; j++) {
        t = rand() % (j + 1);
        if((fp = memchr(deck, t, deckp)) != NULL)
            *fp = (char)j;
        deck[deckp++] = (char)t;
    }

    for(t = j = 0; j < deckp; j++) {
        div_t card;

        card = div(deck[j], 13);
        t += printf("%c%c ",
            /* note useful string addressing */
            "A23456789TJQK"[card.rem],
            "HCDS"[card.quot]);

        if(t > 50) {
            t = 0;
            putchar('\n');
        }
    }

    putchar('\n');
    return(EXIT_SUCCESS);
}
```

**See Also**

**strchr(), string functions, string.h**

**memcmp() — String Function**

Compare two regions

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
int memcmp(region1, region2, count)
```

```
char *region1; char *region2; unsigned int count;
```

**memcmp()** compares *region1* with *region2* character by character for *count* characters.

If every character in *region1* is identical to its corresponding character in *region2*, then **memcmp()** returns zero. If it finds that a character in *region1* has a numeric value greater than that of the corresponding character in *region2*, then it returns a number greater than zero. If it finds that a character in *region1* has a numeric value less than that of the corresponding character in *region2*, then it returns a number less than zero.

For example, consider the following code:

```
char region1[13], region2[13];
strcpy(region1, "Hello, world");
strcpy(region2, "Hello, World");
memcmp(region1, region2, 12);
```

**memcmp()** scans through the two regions of memory, comparing **region1[0]** with **region2[0]**, and so on, until it finds two corresponding “slots” in the arrays whose contents differ. In the above example, this will occur when it compares **region1[7]** (which contains ‘w’) with **region2[7]** (which contains ‘W’). It then compares the two letters to see which stands first in the character table used in this implementation, and returns the appropriate value.

**memcmp()** differs from the string comparison routine **strcmp()** in a number of ways. First, **memcmp()** compares regions of memory rather than strings; therefore, it does not stop when it encounters a NUL.

Also, **memcmp()** can be used to compare an **int** array with a **char** array is permissible because **memcmp()** simply compares areas of data.

**See Also**

**strcmp()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

**memcpy() — String Function**

Copy one region of memory into another

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memcpy(region1, region2, n)
```

```
char *region1; char *region2; unsigned int n;
```

**memcpy()** copies *n* characters from *region2* into *region1*. Unlike the routines **strcpy()** and **strncpy()**, **memcpy()** copies from one region to another. Therefore, it will not halt automatically when it encounters NUL.

**memcpy()** returns *region1*.

**See Also**

**strcpy()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

**Notes**

If *region1* and *region2* overlap, the behavior of **memcpy()** is undefined. *region1* should point to enough reserved memory to hold *n* bytes of data; otherwise, code or data will be overwritten.

**memmove()** — String Function

Copy region of memory into area it overlaps

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *memmove(region1, region2, count)
```

```
char *region1, char *region2, unsigned int count;
```

**memmove()** copies *count* characters from *region2* into *region1*. Unlike **memcpy()**, **memmove()** correctly copies the region pointed to by *region2* into that pointed by *region1* even if they overlap. To “correctly copy” means that the overlap does not propagate, not that the moved data stay intact. Unlike the string-copying routines **strcpy()** and **strncpy()**, **memmove()** continues to copy even if it encounters a NUL.

**memmove()** returns *region1*.

**See Also**

**string functions**, **string.h**

**Notes**

*region1* should point to enough reserved memory to hold the contents of *region2*. Otherwise, code or data will be overwritten.

**memok()** — General Function (libc)

Test if the arena is corrupted

```
int
```

```
memok();
```

The library function **memok()** checks to see if the area has been corrupted. It returns one if the arena is sound, and zero if it has been corrupted.

**Example**

The following example purposely corrupts the arena, to demonstrate **memok()**. Please note that this is not a recommended programming practice.

```
extern char *malloc();
main()
{
    char *p;

    p = malloc(2);                /* get 2 bytes of memory */
    printf("Arena is %s\n", memok() ? "OK" : "bad");
    strcpy(p, "too long");        /* clobber memory */
    printf("Arena is %s\n", memok() ? "OK" : "bad");
}
```

**See Also**

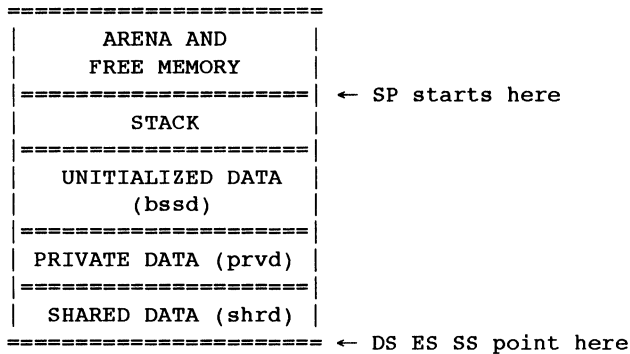
**arena**, **calloc()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **realloc()**

**memory allocation** — Technical Information

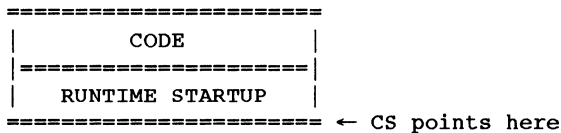
The following diagram shows how COHERENT 286 allocates memory.

Data Segment (maximum size 64 kilobytes)





Code Segment (maximum size 64 kilobytes)



Note that COHERENT can relocate the code and data segments at its own convenience and merely repoint the required segment registers.

The stack *descends* from the highest address in its space toward the static data area; new arguments are placed on the stack in its *lowest* address. Everything from the top of the stack space to the end of the data segment is free to accept dynamically allocated data.

Under COHERENT 286, The size of the stack cannot be altered while a program is running. By default, the runtime startup sets the stack size to four kilobytes (4,096 bytes). Note, however, that a highly recursive function may cause the stack to grow larger than four kilobytes so that it overwrites other data areas. This will cause your program to work incorrectly. To reset the amount of stack allocated to a COHERENT-286 program, use the command **fixstack**.

### See Also

**data formats, fixstack, technical information**

## memset() — String Function

Fill an area with a character

**#include <string.h>**

**char \*memset(buffer, character, n)**

**char \*buffer; int character; unsigned int n;**

**memset()** fills the first *n* bytes of the area pointed to by *buffer* with copies of *character*. It casts *character* to an **unsigned char** before filling *buffer* with copies of it.

**memset()** returns the pointer *buffer*.

### See Also

**string functions, string.h**

**mesg — Command**

Permit/deny messages from other users

**mesg** [**ny**]

Normally, a user can communicate with other users by using the commands **msg** and **write**.

In certain situations, it is useful to suppress messages from other users. Therefore, COHERENT supplies the command **mesg**, which, lets you permit or suppress messages from other users. The argument **y** allows messages, whereas argument **n** disallows messages. With no argument, **mesg** tells you whether you can receive messages (as **yes** or **no**) without changing the message state.

**Files**

/dev/\*

**See Also**

commands, **msg**, **write**

**Notes**

The owner-execute mode bit of the user's **tty** indicates whether messages are allowed.

**min()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Read multiple-precision integer from stdin

**#include <mprec.h>**

**void min(a)**

**mint \*a;**

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **min()** reads a multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) from the standard input and writes it at the address held by **a**. The base of the **mint** is indicated by the value held in the external variable **ibase**.

**min()** accepts leading blanks and an optional leading minus sign; the number is terminated by the first non-legal digit.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**minit()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Condition global or auto multiple-precision integer

**#include <mprec.h>**

**void minit(a)**

**mint \*a;**

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **minit()** helps to create a multiple-precision integer (or **mint**). If a new **mint** is declared to be global or automatic, you must call **minit()** before using the variable. This prevents garbage values in the newly created **mint** structure from causing chaos. A **mint** conditioned by **minit()** has no value; however, it may be used to receive the result of an operation.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**minor number — Definition**

Device numbering

A *minor number* specifies the device or type of device to use. COHERENT uses the minor number of a given device in a driver-specific manner. For example, a hard-disk driver may use the minor number to select a disk drive and partition.

Every COHERENT device has a device number associated with it. It is of type **dev\_t**, as defined in **<sys/types.h>**. The macro **minor()** in **<sys/stat.h>** extracts the minor number from a given device number.

**See Also**

device drivers, major number, stat.h

**mintfr() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Free a multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mintfr(a)
```

```
mint *a;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mintfr()** frees the memory used by a **mint**.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**mitom() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Reinitialize a multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mitom(n, a)
```

```
mint *a; int n;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mitom()** reinitializes the existing multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* to *n*.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**mkdir — Command**

Create a directory

```
mkdir [-r] directory
```

**mkdir** creates *directory*. Files or directories with the same name as *directory* must not already exist. **directory** will be empty except for the entries **.**, the directory's link to itself, and **..**, its link to its parent directory. The option **-r** creates directories recursively. For example, the command

```
mkdir -r /foo/bar/baz
```

creates directory **foo** in **/**; then creates directory **bar** in the newly created directory **foo**; and finally creates directory **baz** in the newly created directory **bar**.

**See Also**

commands, rm, rmdir

### Diagnostics

**mkdir** fails and prints an error message if you do not have permission to write into directory in which you are attempting to create a new directory, or if the directory in which you attempted to create a new directory does not exist.

### **mkdir()** — System Call

Create a directory  
**#include <sys/types.h>**  
**#include <sys/stat.h>**  
**int mkdir(path, mode)**  
**char \*path;**  
**int mode;**

The COHERENT system call **mkdir()** creates the directory specified by *path* and gives it the file mode specified by *mode*. If *path* is relative (that is, it doesn't begin with a '/' character), **mkdir()** creates the directory relates to the current directory of the process that calls **mkdir()**. If *path* is absolute (i.e., begins with a '/'), *path* specifies a directory to be created relative to the root directory for this process. See Lexicon article **chroot** for further details. If *path* specifies more than one directory level, all parent names specified must exist, must be accessible by the calling process, and actually must be directories.

Argument *mode* is formed by logically OR'ing permissions constants found in header file **<sys/stat.h>**. These constants begin with **S\_** and determine the permissions for the directory. See lexicon article **stat** for details.

If the directory is successfully created, **mkdir()** returns zero. If an error occurs, **mkdir()** returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### See Also

**mkdir**, **rmdir**, **rmdir()**, system calls

### Notes

**mkdir()** is available only with COHERENT 386.

### **mkfnames** — Command

Generate data base of user names  
**mkfnames [namefile ...]**

**mkfnames** reads the contents of *namefile* and writes to the standard output a sorted data base that the command **mail** can use as its data base of full users' names. The command **nptx** defines the format of an input line.

If no *namefiles* are named on the command line, **mkfnames** reads the file **/etc/passwd**, and attempts to parse its contents into the form required by **nptx**.

**mkfnames** is usually used to generate **/usr/lib/mail/fullnames**. If more than one login account has the same part of a name (i.e., the same last name), the lexicographically first login name will be used.

### See Also

commands, **mail**, **nptx**

**mkfs — Command**

Make a new file system

**/etc/mkfs** [-b *boot*] [-d] [-f *name*] [-i *inodes*] [-m *arg*] [-n *arg*] [-p *pack*] *filesystem* *proto*

**mkfs** makes a new file system. *filesystem* names the file (normally a block special file) where the new file system will reside. The contents of the newly created file system are described in *proto*. *proto* can be either a number or a file name.

If *proto* is a number, **mkfs** creates an empty file system (containing only a root directory) of the size in blocks given by *proto*. The number of i-nodes is calculated as a percentage of this number. The command

```
/etc/mkfs /dev/fha0 2400
```

creates a file system on a high-density, 5.25-inch diskette in drive 0. If the disk is a high-density, 3.5-inch diskette, use the command:

```
/etc/mkfs /dev/fva0 2880
```

If *proto* is a file name, however, the contents of that file will be used as a prototype for modeling the new file system. This prototype file must be laid out in the following manner:

```
bootstrap_file_name file_system_name device_name
no_of_blocks no_of_i-nodes n m
%b XX XX XX
...
directory_name
    directory_name mode user_id group_id contents
    ...
    $
$
```

Each line is described below.

The first line has three fields. Field 1, *bootstrap\_file\_name*, contains the name of a file that holds the boot strap, which must fit into block 0 of the disk. Field 2, *file\_system\_name*, gives the name of the file system; and field 3, *device\_name*, gives the name of file system's physical device (for example, **/dev/hd1**). Only the first six characters in field 2 and the first 11 in field 3 are significant; all characters after them are ignored.

The second line contains four fields. Field 1, *no\_of\_blocks*, gives the size of the file system in blocks; field 2, *no\_of\_i-nodes*, gives the number of i-nodes in the file system. Because each file or directory requires one i-node, this number represents the limit on the number of files that may be created in the file system. A ratio of seven blocks per i-node generally works well.

Fields 3 and 4 control free list interleaving on your disk. *n* is the size of a "virtual cylinder": **fsck** allocates all the blocks on one virtual cylinder before it advances to the next virtual cylinder. The value of *n* must be less than or equal to 255, and should evenly divide the actual size of a cylinder on the device. *m* tells the system how many blocks to skip each time it increments a free list block number, i.e., the free list "interleave"; *n* mod *m* must be zero. Choosing an optimal interleave value may improve system performance for the device. The optimal values for *n* and *m* are hardware-specific and can be determined by experimentation.

Next, the third line and following begin with **%b**. These list the bad blocks on your storage device. One or more block numbers may appear on each line, separated by white space. These blocks are allocated to the bad block file (i-node 1).

The remaining lines in the *proto* file define the names, modes, and contents of the directories and files in the file system. These lines are divided into fields separated by white space (blanks or tabs) as follows:

- The first field names the file or directory to be created. This field is missing on the first line, which describes the root directory of the file system.
- The second field describes the mode of the file, which is six characters long. The first character gives the file type, that is, whether the file is ordinary ('-'), directory ('d'), block special ('b'), or character special ('c'). The second character is 'u' for set user id on execution, and '-' otherwise. The third character is 'g' for set group id on execution, and '-' otherwise. Characters 4 through 6 specify permissions in octal; for example, **644** specifies read and write permission for the owner, read permission for other users from the same group, and read permission for users from other groups.  
If the above file type were a directory, subsequent files are recursively defined under that directory, until the current level of directory is terminated by a line containing a '\$' character.
- The next two fields specify the owner's numerical user id and group id.
- The last field describes file contents. For a directory, it is not needed. For an ordinary file, it is the name of a COHERENT file that will be copied into the newly created file. For block or character-special files, there are two fields that specify the numbers of the major and minor devices.

Finally, each directory's description and the entire *proto* file must terminate with dollar signs '\$'.

The *proto* file need not contain all of the above fields. However, it must contain the name of the boot block (line 1), the number of blocks and the number of i-nodes (line 2), the list of bad blocks, the name of at least one directory, and the dollar sign that ends the file.

### Command-line Options

**mkfs** recognizes the following command-line options:

**-b boot**

Specifies the file to use as the "bootstrap" for the file system.

**-d** Preserve file dates and times on the new file system.

**-f name**

Label the file system with the given *name*. *name* must be less than seven characters in length.

**-i inodes**

Use *inodes* as the number of inodes for the file system.

**-m arg**

Set the number of blocks to skip when incrementing virtual block number. This is the same as the *m* option as set on line 2 of the prototype file. You can use this option if you choose not to use a prototype file.

**-n arg**

Set the size of a "virtual cylinder". This is the same as the *n* option as set on line 2 of the prototype file. You can use this option if you choose not to use a prototype file.

**-p pack**

Set the file system "pack name" to *pack*. *pack* must be less than seven characters in length.

### Example

The following example specifies a *proto* file for a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk; note that this floppy disk is faulty and contains a number of bad blocks:

```

/conf/boot.fha
2400 100
%b 55
%b 185 86
d--755 3 1
    coherent ---644 3 1 /coherent
    tmp      d--777 3 1
    $
    bin      d--755 3 1
            mail      -u-755 0 1 /bin/mail
    $
    dev      d--755 3 1
            tty30      c--644 0 1 3 0
            tty35      c--644 0 1 3 5
            mt0        b--600 0 1 12 0
    $
$

```

You can use the command **badscan** to draw up the list of bad blocks on your disk and create a skeleton *proto* file.

### See Also

**badscan**, **chmod**, **commands**, **fsck**, **mount**, **restor**, **unmkfs**

### Diagnostics

Diagnostic message are generated for badly constructed *proto* files or for I/O errors on the file system.

### mknod — Command

Make a special file or named pipe  
**/etc/mknod** [ **-f** ] *filename type major minor*  
**/etc/mknod** [ **-f** ] *filename p*

In the first form, **mknod** creates a *special file*, which provides access to a device by the *filename* specified. Special files are conventionally stored in the **/dev** directory.

*type* can be either 'b' (for block-special file) or 'c' (for character-special file). Block-special files tend to be devices such as disks or magnetic tape, upon which COHERENT uses an elaborate buffering strategy. Character-special files are unstructured (character at a time) devices such as terminals, line printers, or communications devices. Character-special files may also be random-access devices; this circumvents system buffering, allowing transfers of arbitrary size directly between the user and the hardware.

The *major* device number uniquely identifies a device driver to COHERENT. The *minor* device number is a parameter interpreted by the driver; it might specify the channel of a multiplexor or the unit number of a drive.

The caller must be the superuser.

In the second form, **mknod** creates a named pipe with the given *filename*. Named pipes can be used for communication between processes.

The **-f** option to **mknod** forces the creation of a new node, even if one of the same name already exists.

**Files**

/dev/\*

**See Also**

commands, mount

**mknod() — System Call**

Create a special file

```
#include <sys/ino.h>
```

```
#include <sys/stat.h>
```

```
mknod(name, mode, addr)
```

```
char *name; int mode, addr;
```

**mknod()** is the COHERENT system call that creates a special file. A *special file* is one through which a device is accessed, or a named pipe.

*mode* gives the type of special file to be created. It can be set to **IFBLK**, for a block-special device, such as a disk driver; to **IFCHR**, for a character-special device, such as a serial-port driver; to **IFDIR**, for a directory; or to **IFPIPE**, for a named pipe.

*address* is a parameter interpreted by the driver; it might specify the channel of a multiplexor or the unit number of a drive. Note that this is not used with named pipes.

**See Also**

named pipe, pipe(), system calls

**Notes**

Only the superuser **root** can use **mknod()**. This is a security feature.

**mktemp() — General Function**

Generate a temporary file name

```
char *mktemp(pattern) char *pattern;
```

**mktemp()** generates a unique file name. It can be used, for example, to name intermediate data files. *pattern* must consist of a string with six **X**'s at the end. **mktemp** replaces these **X**'s with the five-digit process id of the requesting process and a letter that is changed for each subsequent call. **mktemp** returns *pattern*. For example, the call **mktemp("/tmp/sortXXXXXX");** might return the name **/tmp/sort01234a**. It is normal practice to place temporary files in the directory **/tmp**. The start of the file name identifies the originator of the file.

**See Also**

general functions, getpid(), tempnam(), tmpnam()

**mneg() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Negate multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mneg(a, b)
```

```
mint *a, *b;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mneg()** negates the value of the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a*, and writes the result into the **mint** pointed to by *b*.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics



**mnrtab.h — Header File**

Structure for mount table  
**#include <mnrtab.h>**

**mnrtab.h** defines the structure for the mount table maintained by the functions **/etc/mount** and **/etc/umount**.

**See Also**

header files, mount, umount

**modem — Technical Information**

The word *modem* is an abbreviation for “modulation/demodulation device”. With the COHERENT system, you can attach a modem to your computer either to dial out for remote communication, to let others dial into your COHERENT system, or both. With your modem, too, you can use COHERENT’s UUCP commands to exchange mail and files with remote sites automatically, and to download news and files from the USENET.

This article gives a summary of how to connect your modem to your computer, describe it to the COHERENT system, and set it up for UUCP connections. It also discusses some problems that may crop up when you attempt to use your modem.

**Internal vs. External Modems**

You can use internal and external modems with COHERENT. An internal modem is, however, more difficult to diagnose problems because there are typically no status lights to indicate operation.

**Hooking up a Modem**

A modem must be hooked up to a serial port on your computer. To plug your modem into the computer, simply take a normal serial-port cable, one with an RS-232 plug of the appropriate gender at each end, plug one end into your modem and the other into the serial port you wish to use. The Lexicon article **RS-232** describes the wiring of the RS-232 plug in detail; but if you are not skilled with a soldering iron, you are well advised simply to purchase a cable from your local electronics store and be done with it.

**Serial Ports**

The COHERENT system supports up to four serial ports; the devices for these are named **/dev/com1r** through **/dev/com4r**. If you are not sure which port you have plugged your modem into, perform the following test: First, turn on the modem. Then, type the following command:

```
echo FOO >/dev/com1l
```

If the “TX” light on the modem blinks, then you know the modem is plugged into **com1**. If it does not, try the command again for **/dev/com2l**, and so on through **com4l** until you find the appropriate port. If no command works, check the wiring on your cable and make sure that the plugs are securely inserted.

Once you have established which port your modem is plugged into, link the device **/dev/modem** to it, using the following command:

```
ln -f /dev/com?l /dev/modem
```

where **?** gives the number of the port, 1 through 4.

**Edit /etc/ttys**

If you intend to use your modem with UUCP, you must edit file **/etc/ttys** to tell COHERENT how you want it to handle that serial port handled. You must know (1) whether you want the port enabled or disabled; (2) the baud rate of the port (as set by your modem); and (3) the name of the port (which you just determined).

If a port is enabled, remote users can log into the system, either via a terminal directly plugged into the port or via a modem. COHERENT sends a login prompt to every enabled port. The COHERENT system also restricts permissions on all enabled serial ports, so that only the superuser **root** can read and write to the port. This prevents other users who may be using the system from accessing the serial port. If a port is disabled, you can dial out or use a direct-connect UUCP connection via that disabled port. To dial out on an enabled port, you must first use the command **disable** to disable the port. When you have finished dialing out, run the command **enable** to re-enable the port. (Note that UUCP automatically disables and re-enables a port when it dials out to poll a remote system.) Before you can use these commands with a port, the port must first be described in the file **/etc/ttys**.

See the Lexicon article on **ttys** for details on how to edit this file. Note that a modem is a remote device, and must be so described in **/etc/ttys**, or it will not work correctly.

After you have made your changes, type the command

```
kill quit 1
```

to make COHERENT re-read **/etc/ttys** and implement your changes.

### ***Remote-Access Password***

If you intend to let people dial into your computer, you are well advised to set the remote-access password. This will require that people who dial in know a special password in addition to whatever password their personal account may have.

To set this password, log in as the superuser **root**; then enter the command

```
passwd remacc
```

COHERENT then walks you through setting a password for user **remacc**, which is the remote-access account.

### ***Edit /etc/modemcap***

Once you have edited file **/etc/ttys** and have set the remote-access password, you must check the file **/etc/modemcap** and see if it holds a description that matches your modem. **modemcap** is used by a number of programs to control access to modems, and it comes with descriptions for many commonly used modems. You find, however, that you must edit an existing entry to match your modem's features exactly; for example, the existing entry may assume that you have a Touch-Tone telephone whereas you actually have a pulse telephone. The Lexicon entry on **modemcap** will walk you through this process.

When you have completed editing this entry, write it down, for you will need to insert it elsewhere.

### ***Edit /usr/bin/modeminit***

Once you have found or created the **modemcap** entry for your modem, check the file **/usr/bin/modeminit**. Programs that manipulate the modem execute this script to re-initialize the modem. You must decide how you want the modem to be re-initialized. Basically, if you wish to have people dial into your system, you turn on the modem's auto-answer feature; and you must turn off echoing and the printing of result codes. The commands to use will vary from modem to modem; see the documentation that comes with your modem for details. See below for details on modifying this script.

### ***Edit L-devices***

If you intend to use your modem with UUCP, you must now insert an entry for it into your the file **/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices**. See the Lexicon entry **L-devices** for details.

## Modem Maladies

The rest of this article discusses problems that have arisen with remote login via modem, as diagnosed by the technical support staff of Mark Williams Company.

Difficulty in logging in from a remote site via modem can be the result of problems in one or more of the following: cabling; enabling/disabling the port; flaws in the contents of file `/etc/ttys`; incorrect configuration of the modem; and setting the port to an incorrect state. See Lexicon articles **terminal** and **UUCP** for additional information. The following paragraphs discuss the above-named items in detail.

### RS-232 Cabling

When attaching an external modem to your computer, it is important to use a modem cable that supports "full modem control". COHERENT relies on modem-control signals when operating a modem for remote access purposes. When attaching a terminal directly to a serial port, a "null modem" cable must be used. When attaching a modem, a "straight through" cable must be used. See Lexicon articles **RS-232** and **terminal** for further details on cabling.

### Enabled vs. Disabled Ports

A serial port can be either enabled or disabled for remote access. Enabling a port allows a user on a remote terminal or modem to log into your COHERENT system. Disabling a port permits a user to dial out or use a direct connect UUCP connection via that disabled port.

If a port is enabled for remote logins and you will use it to call out, you must use the command **disable** to disable the port before you access the port. UUCP automatically disables and re-enables a port.

The port name supplied to an **enable** or **disable** command must *exactly* match the last part of a line in the `/etc/ttys` file (see below). For example, for the command **enable com2pr** to work, there must be an entry in the file `/etc/ttys` which ends with **com2pr**.

When a port is enabled, the first character for the port in file `/etc/ttys` is set to a '1' (one), the permissions for the port are changed so that only the superuser **root** can read and write to the port (to prevent other users on the system from accessing the port while a remote session is in progress), and a login prompt is sent to the port.

### `/etc/ttys` Problems

*This file should have permissions of 644 (-rw-r--r--) and belong to owner and group **root**. Review the Lexicon entry for **ttys** to ensure that the format of your version of `/etc/ttys` is correct.*

*Leaving blanks at the end of a line in `/etc/ttys` usually results in error messages stating that a device could not be found.*

*You do not need to edit the initial '0' or '1' in entries in `/etc/ttys`; this digit is updated by the commands **enable** and **disable**. See the Lexicon entries for **enable** and **disable** for more information.*

### Constant Flickering

Another problem is a constant flickering of send/receive LEDs and an unexplained continual access of the hard drive. This occurs when the port is enabled and the modem is set in echo mode: COHERENT sends the login prompt to the modem, the modem echoes it back to COHERENT, COHERENT then thinks the modem is trying to talk to it and sends the password prompt, and so on *ad infinitum*.

To fix this problem, place the modem into no-echo mode, and turn off the display of result codes. The following section discusses this in more detail.

### Modem Configuration

A modem that fails to answer an incoming call, hangs up before locking onto the remote carrier, becomes stuck in a loop echoing characters sent to it from the computer, or fails to operate at the expected baud rate probably is configured improperly. To remedy this situation, send the appropriate control string to the modem.

We offer some guidelines here for modem settings. Be warned, however, that modems from different manufacturers usually behave differently, regardless of claims of Hayes compatibility, and that you will need to check the manual for your particular modem.

- Echo should be OFF (usually by setting "E0").
- Result codes should be OFF (usually by setting "Q1").
- Modem status "DCD" should follow true carrier detect status, rather than being always on (usually by setting "&C1").
- Auto answer should be ON (usually obtained by setting register S0 to a nonzero value equal to the number of rings before answer).
- The delay value for "Wait for Carrier/Dial Tone" (usually register S7) should not be too short.

The scripts below show typical initialization for "Hayes-compatible" and Trailblazer modems. They are only examples; your modem may need something different. Please note that the commands **sleep** and **stty** are necessary in the first example so that the command string will be sent to the modem at 2400 baud; otherwise, the string is sent at the default port speed, which is 9600 baud.

```
# initialize 2400-baud Hayes-compatible modem
disable com3r
sleep 3 > /dev/com3l &
stty 2400 > /dev/com3l
echo 'AT E0 Q1 V0 S0=1 &C1 M3' > /dev/com3l
sleep 3
enable com3r

# initialize 9600 baud internal Trailblazer on com2
/etc/disable com2r
cat > /dev/com2l << EOF
at
at e0 t v0 x3 h0
at s0=1 s7=60 s48=1 s51=252 s52=0 s54=3 s58=2
at
EOF
/etc/enable com2r
```

You can edit the file **/usr/bin/modeminit** to suit your modem. To ensure that your modem is initialized every time you start COHERENT, you should add a line saying

```
/usr/bin/modeminit
```

to your copy of the file **/etc/rc**. Note that if are going to run a modem initialization script from with **/etc/rc**, do *not* invoke the **enable** or **disable** commands from within the initialization script.

### See Also

**modemcap**, **modem control**, **modeminit**, **RS-232**, **technical information**, **terminal**

## Notes

One final bit of hard-won wisdom: once you have something working, write down what you did, and store it in a place where you won't lose it. It makes life easier just knowing that you're looking for a female-to-female cable instead of male-to-female or male-to-male.

## modemcap — System Maintenance

Modem-description language  
/etc/modemcap

**modemcap** is a language for describing modems to your system. It resembles the **termcap** language in its syntax, although the two are by no means identical. With **modemcap**, you can describe your modem to any program that automatically dials out on your modem; this should spare you the tedium of continually describing your modem to one program after another.

The copy of **/etc/modemcap** included with your release of COHERENT already contains descriptions of many popular modems; the chances are good that yours has already been described for you.

Each **modemcap** command is one of three types: *flag*, *string*, or *number*. A *flag* command signals that your modem performs a particular action or has a particular feature. A *string* command gives the command that your modem recognizes to perform a particular action. For example, many modems recognize that the string **at** means that you want to gain its attention. Finally, a *number* command sets a value or parameter for your modem, such as the highest baud rate it recognizes.

The following table describes each **modemcap** command:

Name	Type	Meaning
<b>ad</b>	number	Delay after <b>as</b>
<b>as</b>	flag	Numbers are in ASCII, not binary
<b>at</b>	string	Attention string, forces model into command mode from online mode
<b>bd</b>	number	Highest online baud rate
<b>bl</b>	number	Alternate lower baud rate
<b>ce</b>	string	Command end string (required if CS is present)
<b>cl</b>	string	String from modem on remote connection at BL baud rate
<b>co</b>	string	String from modem on remote connection at BD baud rate
<b>cs</b>	string	Command start string
<b>de</b>	string	End dial command string (required if DS is present)
<b>di</b>	flag	Modem has a dialer
<b>ds</b>	string	Start dial command string
<b>id</b>	number	Delay after IS
<b>is</b>	string	Initialization string, resets modem to offline, ready to dial
<b>hc</b>	flag	Modem hangs up when DTR drops
<b>hu</b>	string	Hangup command
<b>tt</b>	flag	Modem dials touchtone by default (or DS is set that way)

All commands, such as **ds** (dial command) and **hu** (hang up) will be prefixed by **cs** and ended with **ce**. If there is a common prefix and suffix, use this feature. Otherwise, each command will have to have the entire string built in.

## Example Entry

The following gives the entry in **/etc/modemcap** for the Hayes Smartmodem 1200:

```
hy|hayes|Hayes Smartmodem 1200:\
:as:at=+++;ad#3:bd#1200:bl#300:cs=AT:ce=\r:co=CONNECT:\
:cl=CONNECT:di:ds=DT :de=:is=ATQ0 V1 E1\r:id#2:\
:hc:hu=H0 V0 E0 Q1:tt:
```

Each field is separated by a colon. A backslash ‘\’ character at the end of each line but the last lets the description extend over more than one line.

The three fields gives three versions of the modem’s name, separated by vertical bars ‘|’. The first version of the name is a two-character mnemonic; this must be unique. The other two versions give fuller versions of the name; these are optional.

The following explains each field in detail:

<b>as</b>	Numbers are in binary mode.
<b>at=+++</b>	To gain the attention of the modem, type +++.
<b>ad#3</b>	Delay three milliseconds after a number.
<b>bd#1200</b>	Maximum baud rate is 1200.
<b>bl#300</b>	Minimum baud rate is 300.
<b>cs=AT</b>	To initiate a command string, type <b>AT</b> .
<b>ce=\r</b>	A command string is ended by a carriage-return character.
<b>co=CONNECT</b>	Modem returns the string <b>CONNECT</b> when it makes a connection at 1200 baud.
<b>cl=CONNECT</b>	Modem returns the string <b>CONNECT</b> when it makes a connection at 300 baud.
<b>di</b>	The modem can dial a telephone number.
<b>ds=DT</b>	Begin dialing, touch-tone mode.
<b>de=</b>	No special string is needed to end the dial string.
<b>is=ATQ0</b>	To initialize the modem, type <b>ATQ0 V1 E1</b> <return>.
<b>id#2</b>	Delay two seconds after entering the initialization string.
<b>hc</b>	The modem hangs up when DTR drops (i.e., it hangs up when the program requests a hangup).
<b>hu=H0</b>	To hang up, type <b>H0 V0 E0 Q1</b> .
<b>tt</b>	The modem dials touch-tone by default.

### ***Currently Recognized Modems***

The file `/etc/modemcap` includes descriptions of the following modems:

<b>tbfast</b>	Trailblazer, 9600 baud
<b>xtb2400</b>	Trailblazer, 2400 baud
<b>hayes</b>	Hayes Smartmodem 1200
<b>avatex</b>	Avatex 2400 (clone of Hayes Smartmodem 2400)
<b>promodem</b>	Prometheus Promodem 1200
<b>mk12</b>	Signalman Mark XII
<b>dc300</b>	Radio Shack Direct-Connect 300 Modem

**See Also**

system maintenance, termcap

**modem control — Technical Information**

This article documents COHERENT's *modem control* protocol. Modem control describes how COHERENT handles RS-232 signals other than Receive Data and Transmit Data. The behavior of COHERENT's suite of device drivers for serial devices is evolving; changes will be documented in further revisions to this manual.

Many processes can have a device open at the same time. *First open* occurs if a process opens a device when no process has opened the device. *Last close* occurs when a process closes the port and no other remaining process has the port open.

**al[01] Drivers (Devices com[1-4]\*)**

On first open, RTS and DTR are asserted by the computer, regardless of whether the specified device used modem control. If modem control is used (the high-order bit in minor number set to zero), **open()** does not complete until CD is true. Once an **al[01]** device has been opened with modem control, loss of CD to that port causes **SIGHUP** to be sent to all processes in the group keeping the port open.

**hs Driver (Devices hs0[0-7]{r})**

Unfortunately, in this driver the meaning of the high-order bit in minor device numbers is reversed from that of the **al[01]** drivers: a one in this bit position indicates modem control *is* used.

Setting the speed of an **hs** device to a nonzero value causes assertion of RTS and DTR, regardless of whether the device has modem control; this happens whenever the device is opened, and at other times. Setting the speed to zero deasserts RTS and DTR.

If modem control is used (high-order bit in minor number is set to one), **open()** completes regardless of other modem signals, but attempts to read or write the device fail until DSR from the modem is true, with **errno** set to **EIO**. Transition to **false** of DSR causes **SIGHUP** to be sent to the process group using the device. In addition, when modem control is used, the computer halts transmission to the port whenever CTS from the modem goes false.

**See Also**

modem, RS-232, technical information

**modemininit — System Maintenance**

Initialize a modem

**/usr/bin/modemininit**

The script **/usr/bin/modemininit** can be used to initialize a modem. In its default form, this script sets a Hayes-compatible modem into no-echo mode, turns off command responses, and turns on auto-answering.

You can edit the file **rc** to have it call this script. This will ensure that your modem is properly initialized when you boot COHERENT.

**See Also**

modem, system maintenance

**modf()** — General Function

Separate integral part and fraction

**double modf**(*real*, *ip*) **double** *real*, *\*ip*;

**modf()** is the floating-point modulus function. It returns the fractional part of its argument *real*, which is a value  $f$  in the range  $0 \leq f < 1$ . It also stores the integral part in the **double** location referenced by *ip*. These numbers satisfy the equation  $real = f + *ip$ .

**Example**

This example prompts for a number from the keyboard, then uses **modf()** to calculate the number's fractional portion.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    extern char *gets();
    extern double modf(), atof();
    double real, fp, ip;
    char string[64];

    for (;;) {
        printf("Enter number: ");
        if (gets(string) == 0)
            break;

        real = atof(string);
        fp = modf(real, &ip);
        printf("%lf is the integral part of %lf\n",
              ip, real);
        printf("%lf is the fractional part of %lf\n",
              fp, real);
    }
}
```

**See Also**

atof(), ceil(), fabs(), floor(), frexp(), general function, ldexp()

**modulus** — Definition

**Modulus** is the operation that returns the remainder of a division operation. For example, 12 modulus four equals zero, because when 12 is divided by four it leaves no remainder. The term "modulo" also refers to the product of a modulus operation; in the above example, the modulo is zero. In C, the modulus operation is indicated with a percent sign '%'; therefore, 12 modulus 4 is written **12%4**.

The modulus operation often is used to trim numbers to a preset range. For example, if you wanted to create a list of single-digit random numbers, you would use the command:

```
rand() % 10
```

This is demonstrated by the following example.



**Example**

This example prints a list of 20 single-digit random numbers. The random-number table is seeded with a portion of the current system time.

```
main()
{
    long nowhere;    /* place to put unused data */
    int counter;

    srand((int)time(&nowhere));
    for (counter = 0; counter < 20; counter++)
        printf("%d\n", rand()%10);
}
```

**See Also**

definitions, operator

**Notes**

The implementation of C defines how a modulus operator behaves when it operates upon numbers with different signs. On the i8086,

```
10 % -4
```

yields -2. This is not mathematical modulus, which is +2.

**mon.h — Header File**

Read profile output files

**#include <mon.h>**

**mon.h** is used with programs that read the profile output files.

**See Also**

header files

**moo — Command**

Greatly amusing numeric guessing game

**/usr/games/moo** [ *numdigits* ]

**/usr/games/moo** is a guessing game of numbers, typically four digits, all different.

The game randomly selects a number that consists of *numdigits* unique digits. Obviously, *numdigits* cannot exceed ten; the default is four. **moo** then prompts you to guess the number it has selected. When you type your guess, **moo** responds with one of two possible answers. If you guess the number correctly, i.e., win, **moo** responds with "Right!". If any of the digits that you guessed were correct digits, but in the wrong place, you get a "cow." If you guess a digit correctly and in the correct place, you get a "bull." If the number of "bulls" is the same as the number of digits in the guess, you win. **moo** typically responds with a count of "bulls" and "cows," as in:

```
2 bulls, 1 cow.
```

**See Also**

commands

**Notes**

The game of **moo** is sometimes also called **mastermind**.

It will never replace "Defender."

**more — Command**

Display text one page at a time

**more** [ **-cdfisu** ] [ **-window\_size** ] [ **+line\_number** ] [ **+/pattern** ] [ *file* ... ] [ **-** ]

**more** is a filter for paging through text one screenful at a time. *file* is a text file; the operator **-** tells **more** to read and display the standard input.

**Options**

**more** reads options from the command line and from the environmental variable **MORE**. In case of a conflict, the options given on the command line take precedence. Every cluster of options must be preceded with a hyphen '**-**', even if passed via the environmental variable **MORE**.

**more** recognizes the following options:

- c** Paint the screen from the top line down. **more** normally repaints the screen by scrolling from the bottom of the screen.
- d** Prompt the user at the end of each screen with the message:

[Press space to continue, 'q' to quit.]

The default is to not issue a prompt.

- f** Count actual lines from the input file rather than screen lines. This option is useful when the input contains escape sequences that **more** does not recognize.
- l** Do not treat the formfeed character **<ctrl-L>** as special. By default, **more** pauses at each formfeed character, as if a full screen had been displayed.
- s** Squeeze consecutive blank lines into one blank line. This is useful for looking at **nroff** output, such as manual pages.
- u** Display backspaces as control characters and leave the carriage return-linefeed (CR-LF) pair alone. By default, **more** displays backspaces that appear adjacent to an underscore character as underlined text; backspaces that appear between two identical characters as emboldened text; and compresses CR-LF sequences.

**+/pattern**

Search for *pattern* before displaying a file. *pattern* is a regular expression, as recognized by commands **ed** or **egrep**. *pattern* should be escaped to avoid being processed by the shell.

**-window\_size**

Set the size of the window that **more** displays to *window\_size*, which is a decimal integer less than or equal to the number of lines on your terminal. The default window size is read from the **termcap** description for your terminal.

**+line\_number**

Make *line\_number* the beginning line to display in *file*. *line\_number* is a decimal integer less than the number of lines in *file*.

**Commands**

The following describes **more**'s interactive commands. These commands are based on those for the UNIX editor **vi**. Some commands may optionally be preceded by a decimal number. If you enter an invalid command, **more** will beep at you.

**h**

**?** Help: display a summary of these commands.

**[N]<space>**

Display the next *N* lines of text (default, one screenful).

**[N]z**

If *N* is not specified, display the next screenful. Otherwise, display *N* lines and set the default scrolling size to *N* for all subsequent **<space>** and **z** commands.

**[N]<ctrl-F>****[N]f**

Scroll forward *N* screenfuls (default, one screenful). If *N* is more than the screen size, only the final screenful is displayed.

**[N]<ctrl-B>****[N]b**

Scroll backward *N* screenfuls (default, one screenful). If *N* is more than the screen size, only the final screenful is displayed.

**[N]s**

Skip forward *N* lines (default, one line) and display one screenful.

**[N]<return>****[N]<enter>**

Scroll forward *N* lines (default, one). Display all *N* lines, even if *N* is more than the screen size.

**[N]<ctrl-D>****[N]d**

Scroll forward *N* lines (default, one half of the screen size). If *N* is specified, it becomes the new default for subsequent **d** and **<ctrl-D>** commands.

**<ctrl-L>**

Redraw the screen.

(Apostrophe) Return to the position in the current file where the previous search command started, or to the beginning of the file if no search commands have occurred. This information is lost when a new file is examined.

**[N]/pattern**

Search forward for the *N*-th line that contains *pattern* (default, one). *pattern* is a regular expression, as recognized by **ed** or **egrep**. The search starts at the second line displayed.

**n** Repeat previous search.

**:f** Display the name of the current file with the current line number.

**[N]:n**

Examine the *N*-th file after the current file, as given in the command line (default, the next file).

**[N]:p**

Examine the *N*-th file previous to the current file, as given in the command line (default, the previous file).

**! command****!: command**

Pass *command* to the shell specified by environment variable **SHELL** for execution. The default shell is **/bin/sh**.

**v** Invoke an editor to edit the current file. The editor is set by the environment variables **VISUAL** and **EDITOR**, in that order. If these variables are not set, use **vi**.

=    Display the current line number.

**q**

:**q**

**Q**

:**Q**    Quit.

### **Environment**

**more** uses the following environment variables:

**EDITOR**    Specify default editor.

**MORE**    Set default options for **more**

**SHELL**    Specify the shell being used (normally set at login time).

**TERM**    Specify the type of terminal you are using. **more** uses this variable to read from **/etc/termcap** the terminal characteristics needed to manipulate the screen.

**VISUAL**    Specify default visual editor.

### **See Also**

**commands, egrep, scat, vi**

### **Author**

This software is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Mark Nudleman. **more** is copyright © 1988,1990 by The Regents of the University of California. Copyright © 1988 by Mark Nudleman. All rights reserved.

**more** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

## **motd — System Maintenance**

---

File that holds message of the day

**/etc/motd**

The file **motd** holds the message of the day. Its contents are displayed on every user's screen whenever he logs in.

Only the superuser can alter the contents of this file.

### **See Also**

**login, system maintenance**

## **mount() — System Call**

---

Mount a file system

**#include <sys/mount.h>**

**#include <sys/filsys.h>**

**mount** (*special, name,flag*)

**char \*special, \*name; int flag;**

**mount()** is the COHERENT system call that mounts a file system. *special* names the physical device that through which the file system is accessed. *name* names the root directory of the newly mounted file system. *flag* controls the manner in which the file system is mounted, as set in header file **sys/mount.h**.

### **See Also**

**fd, system calls**

## mount.all — System Maintenance

Mount file systems at boot time  
/etc/mount.all

The file /etc/mount.all holds a set of **mount** commands to mount all COHERENT file systems on hard disk. It is invoked by the script /etc/rc, which COHERENT reads and executes at boot-time.

When you add a new COHERENT partition to your system, you should insert an appropriate entry into this file, to ensure that the new partition is mounted whenever you reboot your system.

### See Also

**checklist, mount, rc, system maintenance**

## mount — Command

Mount a file system  
/etc/mount [ *special directory* [ -ru ] ]

**mount** mounts a file system from the block special file *special* onto *directory* in the system's directory hierarchy. This operation makes the root directory of the mounted file system accessible using the specified *directory* name.

If the **-r** option is specified, the file system is read-only. This is useful for preventing inadvertent changes to precious file systems. The system will not update information such as access times if the **-r** option is used.

The **-u** option causes **mount** to write an entry into the mount table file /etc/mstab without actually performing the mount. This is used to note the file system.

When invoked with no arguments, **mount** summarizes the mounted file systems and where they attach.

The command **umount** unmounts a previously mounted file system.

The script /bin/mount calls /etc/mount, and provides convenient abbreviations for commonly used devices. For example,

```
mount f0
```

executes the command:

```
/etc/mount /dev/fha0 /f0
```

The system administrator should edit this script to reflect the devices used on your system.

### Files

/etc/mstab — Mount table

/etc/mnttab — Mount table

/bin/mount — Shell script that calls /etc/mount

### See Also

**commands, fsck, mkfs, mknod, umount**

### Diagnostics

Errors can occur if *special* or *directory* does not exist or if the user has no permissions on *special*.

The message

```
/etc/mstab older than /etc/boottime
```

indicates that **/etc/mtab** has probably been invalidated by booting the system.

Attempting to **mount** a block-special file which does not contain a COHERENT file system may have disastrous consequences. **mkfs** must be used to create a file system on a blank disk before it is mounted.

### **mount.h** — Header File

Define the mount table

```
#include <sys/mount.h>
```

**mount.h** defines the structures and constants that constitute the COHERENT system's mount table. It also declares functions that are used internally by routines that manipulate the mount table.

#### **See Also**

**header files**

### **mout()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Write multiple-precision integer to stdout

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void mout(a)
```

```
mint *a;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mout()** writes the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* onto the standard output. The base of the output is set by the value of the external variable **obase**.

#### **See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

### **mprec.h** — Header File

Multiple-precision arithmetic

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

The header file **mprec.h** declares a set of routines used to perform multiple-precision arithmetic. It also declares the structure **mint**, which holds multiple-precision integers.

#### **See Also**

**header files, multiple-precision arithmetic**

### **ms** — Technical Information

Manuscript macro package

```
nroff -ms file ...
```

The **nroff** macro package **ms** formats manuscripts. The tutorial on **nroff** describes the **ms** macros in detail.

**ms** includes the following macros:

- .AB**     Begin the abstract portion of a document's title page.
- .AE**     End the abstract
- .AI**     Indicate author's institution on a document's title page.
- .AU**     Name the author on the title page of a document.

- 
- .B** Boldface font: set the following argument in boldface. If the argument is longer than one word, it must be enclosed in quotation marks. Anything on the line after the argument is thrown away.
- .BD** Block-centered display. Take a portion of text; do not adjust it or break it between two lines, but center it as a whole.
- .BT** Bottom title. This controls the printing of the footer title, should you want one. It uses three strings, all or any of which can be defined by the user: **LF**, for left-hand portion; **CF**, for center portion; and **RF**, for right-hand portion. **CF** has the default definition of printing the page number; the other two strings are undefined.
- .CD** Centered display. Center individually every line within a display.
- .DA** Set the date.
- .DE** Mark the end of a display. Do *not* use after the macros **.LD**, **.CD**, or **.RD**.
- .DS** Mark the beginning of a display. Do *not* use for displays longer than one page.
- .FE** Mark the end of a footnote entry.
- .FS** Mark the beginning of a footnote entry.
- .I** Italic font. Used like **.B**, above.
- .ID** Indent a display 1/2 inch before printing.
- .IP** Indent a paragraph of text before printing. This macro can take two arguments: argument 1 is used as a **tag** that is printed to the left of the first line of the paragraph; argument 2 indicates how far to indent the paragraph, in characters (the default is five characters, or 1/2 inch).
- .KE** Indicate the end of a *keep*, or a portion of text that must not be broken between two pages.
- .KF** Start floating keep.
- .KS** Indicate the beginning of a *keep*.
- .LD** Set a display flush left; used with displays that are longer than one page.
- .NH** Set a numbered heading. This macro takes one argument: the *depth* of numbering. For example, a '4' here would yield a number of the format "1.1.1.1". No number higher than five is accepted here. The following line gives the text of the heading.
- .PP** Begin a new paragraph.
- .QE** Mark the end of a quoted paragraph.
- .QP** Quoted paragraph. Used like **.IP**, above.
- .QS** Mark the beginning of quoted text; text is indented by five characters (1/2 inch).
- .R** Roman font. Used like **.B**, above.
- .RE** Mark the end of a relative indentation.
- .RS** Mark the beginning of a relative indentation. A relative indentation is a block of text that is indented five characters (1/2 inch) more than the text before it.
- .SH** Subheading. One line of space is inserted, and the following line of text is set boldface and flush left.

**.TA** Set tabs, in characters.

**.TL** Title: format the title entry on the cover page of a document.

### Files

`/usr/lib/tmac.s`

### See Also

**man**, **nroff**, technical information, **troff**

*Introduction to nroff*, *Text Processing Language*, tutorial

## MS-DOS — Technical Information

That other operating system

MS-DOS is the native operating system of the IBM-AT and compatible computers. As such, it needs no introduction to most users. Many customers have asked, however, how MS-DOS and COHERENT compare in terms of their capabilities; and many have also asked for a chart that maps familiar MS-DOS commands to their COHERENT equivalents. This article attempts to fulfill these requests.

### MS-DOS vs. COHERENT

MS-DOS differs significantly from COHERENT in practically every aspect of its design. For example, its file system is incompatible with COHERENT; its shell **command.com** differs significantly from COHERENT's suite of shells; the manner in which it loads and executes a program differs completely from COHERENT's.

The most noticeable difference in design, however, is that MS-DOS is a single-user, single-process operating system, whereas COHERENT is a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system.

*Single-user* means that only one user can use MS-DOS at any given time: whoever sits at the keyboard "owns" the machine and all its facilities. *Multi-user* means, of course, that more than one user can use COHERENT at any given time, via terminals or modems plugged into the computer's serial ports. The number of users who can use your COHERENT system at once is limited only by your computer's speed, available memory, and by the number of serial ports that can be plugged into your computer.

*Single-tasking* means that MS-DOS can do only one task at a time: it loads a program into memory, runs it to completion, then awaits your request to execute another program. *Multi-tasking* means that COHERENT can execute more than one program at a time.

To grasp how multi-tasking can simplify some work, consider the task of formatting floppy disks. Under MS-DOS, you pop the floppy disk into the drive, invoke the MS-DOS program **format**, answer its queries, then go get a cup of coffee while the machine grinds away. Formatting a box of high-density floppy disks ties up your machine for the better part of an hour, which is largely wasted time for you. Under COHERENT, however, you can format a floppy disk in the *background* — that is, you can tell COHERENT to execute the disk-format program unsupervised, and let you work with another program. For example, if you wish to low-level format a 5.25-inch, high-density floppy disk in drive 0 (that is, drive A), use the following command:

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0 &
```

Try it. You'll notice that the COHERENT prompt returns immediately: while COHERENT is formatting your disk for you, you can edit a file, play a video game, dial out to a remote system, or even format a second disk in your machine's B drive (should you have one).

Multi-tasking also means that you can program COHERENT to execute programs untended, even while you are away from your machine. The UUCP system is a good example of this feature. UUCP lets you exchange mail and files with remote systems via modem; once the system is set up, it runs



automatically, without requiring that you sit at the keyboard to run it.

This discussion only gives you a taste of the advantages COHERENT enjoys over an obsolete system like MS-DOS. The following documents contain information that MS-DOS users will find helpful:

- The tutorial *Using the COHERENT System* introduces COHERENT to new users. If you are new to COHERENT and have not yet read this tutorial, you should do so before you continue any farther.
- The Lexicon articles **floppy disks** and **hard disk** discuss the in's and out's of using mass-storage device with COHERENT. The article **floppy disks** in particular discusses in detail all the steps required to format and manipulate MS-DOS-style floppy disks under COHERENT.
- The Lexicon articles **modem**, **printer**, and **terminal** discussion how to connect these devices to COHERENT, and introduce the set of commands with which you can manipulate them under COHERENT.
- The Lexicon article **execution** describes in detail how COHERENT loads and executes a program. This article is aimed at the technically knowledgeable, but neophytes may find parts of it helpful.
- The Lexicon article **commands** summarizes all commands available under the COHERENT system. This article will help you grasp the scope of COHERENT's suite of commands, and will help you explore them systematically.
- The following Lexicon articles describe COHERENT commands for manipulating MS-DOS files and disks:

<b>doscp</b>	Copy files to/from an MS-DOS file system.
<b>doscat</b>	Concatenate a file on an MS-DOS file system.
<b>doscp</b>	Copy a file to/from an MS-DOS file system.
<b>doscpdir</b>	Copy directories to/from an MS-DOS file system.
<b>dosdel</b>	Delete files from an MS-DOS file system.
<b>dosdir</b>	Show the contents of an MS-DOS directory.
<b>dosformat</b>	Write an MS-DOS file system onto a floppy disk.
<b>doslabel</b>	Label an MS-DOS floppy disk. The MS-DOS file system can reside on a floppy disk or an MS-DOS portion of a hard disk.
<b>dosls</b>	List contents of an MS-DOS file system.
<b>dosmkdir</b>	Create a directory on an MS-DOS file system.
<b>dosrm</b>	Remove a file on an MS-DOS file system.
<b>dosrmdir</b>	Remove a directory from an MS-DOS file system.

### **COHERENT Equivalents to MS-DOS Commands**

The following table lists the most commonly used MS-DOS commands, and gives COHERENT equivalents.

Note that often there is no single COHERENT command that equates to a given MS-DOS command. COHERENT often offers several alternatives, and you can select the one that best suits your needs. Every COHERENT command has its own article in the COHERENT Lexicon; look there first for details on how to use the command.

**BACKUP**

This command copies a directory's files to a formatted floppy disk to back them up. To do so under COHERENT, use the command:

```
find . -print | cpio -ocm > /dev/rfha0
```

Note that **cpio** requires a formatted, defect free floppy disk, however you do not need to create a filesystem on the floppy disk prior to using **cpio**.

Note that if you want COHERENT to prompt you before it backs up a file, use the command:

```
find . -print | cpio -ocmr > /dev/rfha0
```

See the article on the archiving command **cpio** for details on this command — especially important if you expect to retrieve your backed-up files.

Note, too, that the device **/dev/rfha0** corresponds to a 5.25-inch, high-density floppy disk in drive 0 (drive A). See the article **floppy disks** for a list of the devices that correspond to different sizes and configuration of floppy disks.

**BREAK**

Abort a command. Aborting a command under COHERENT varies, depending upon whether the command is running in the foreground or the background. The keystroke

```
<ctrl-c>
```

aborts most commands that are running in the foreground. To abort a command that is running in the background, you must use the **kill** command. See its Lexicon entry for details on how to use it.

**CHDIR or CD**

Change to another directory. To do so under COHERENT, use the command

```
cd dir
```

where *dir* is the directory to which you wish to go. The directories '.' and '..' are used by both COHERENT and MS-DOS; since MS-DOS "borrowed" its directory structure from UNIX (of which COHERENT is an implementation), the similarity should not be surprising.

Note that MS-DOS requires that before you can change to directory on another physical device or partition, you must first switch to that device by typing its name before you use the **chdir** command. COHERENT has no such restriction.

**CHKDSK**

Check the integrity of a file system. Under COHERENT, use the command:

```
/etc/fsck [option] [filesystem]
```

*Read the Lexicon entry on **fsck** before you attempt to run it!*

**COMP** Compare the contents of two files. To do so under COHERENT, use the following command to compare two binary files:

```
cmp [option] file1 file2
```

**cmp** displays the bytes which differ between the files.

To compare the contents of two text files, use the command:

```
diff [option] file1 file2
```

**COPY** Copy the contents of one file into another; create the target file if it does not already exist. Under COHERENT, say:

`cp oldfilename newfilename`

To copy a set of files into a directory without changing their names, use the following form of the command:

`cp file1 ...fileN directory`

**DATE** Reset the current date and time. Under COHERENT, use the command:

`date yymmddhhmm.ss`

Only the superuser can reset the system's date and time. When **date** is used without an argument, it prints the date and time on the standard output.

**DIR** Type the contents of a directory. Under COHERENT, use the command:

`ls -l`

**DIR/W** List a directory's contents in columnar form. Under COHERENT, use either the command:

`lc`

or the command:

`ls -C`

## **DISKCOPY**

Copy one floppy disk track-by-track to another floppy disk. COHERENT has no exact equivalent to this command; however, you can copy the contents of one disk to another by using the following set of commands.

First, place a write-protect tab on your source disk; insert the disk into drive 0 (drive A), then type the following command:

`dd if=/dev/fha0 of=/tmp/filename`

This copies the contents of the 5.25-inch, high-density floppy disk in drive 0 into file **/tmp/filename**. For a table of devices that correspond to other sizes and configurations of floppy disks, see the Lexicon article **floppy disks**.

Second, insert formatted destination diskette into drive 0, and then type the command:

`dd if=/tmp/filename of=/dev/fha0`

This command copies the files in directory **/tmp/filename** onto the target floppy disk. Note that the target disk must be formatted before it can receive files; see the Lexicon article **floppy disks** for information on how to do this.

**EDLIN** Perform simple-minded editing of text files. Under COHERENT, the **ed** editor performs line editing, but is much more sophisticated than **edlin**. COHERENT also includes the **vi** and MicroEMACS screen editors, which are more useful still.

## **ERASE or DEL**

Remove a file or a directory. To erase a file, use the command:

`rm file1 [ ... fileN ]`

To erase a directory, use the command:

`rmdir directory`

To erase a directory and all files and directories below it, use the command:

`rm -r directory`

**FIND** Find a pattern within a text file. Under COHERENT, use the command:

`egrep [option] pattern [file ...]`

**egrep** is an extremely useful command; see its Lexicon entry for details on how to use it.

**MEM** Find how much space is left free on your hard disk. Under COHERENT, say:

`df [options]`

See the Lexicon entry on **df** for details.

**MKDIR** Create a new directory. Under COHERENT:

`mkdir directory ...`

**MODE** Set parameters for terminals and ports. Under COHERENT, use the command **stty**. This command comes with many options; see its Lexicon entry for details. The default speeds of all ports and terminals reside in file `/etc/ttys`. The superuser can use a text editor to edit this file to change any or all default settings.

**MORE** Display text a screenful at a time. Under COHERENT, use the commands **more** or **scat**.

**PRINT** Print files via a serial port. To print a file on a dot-matrix printer, use the command:

`lpr file1 [ ... fileN ]`

To print a file on a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer, use the command

`hpr file1 [ ... fileN ]`

Note that before these commands can be used, the appropriate devices must be linked to your system. See the Lexicon article on **printer** for details.

Note, too, that COHERENT uses a spooling system to manage the printing of files; thus, attempting to print a non-existent file will not hang the system.

#### **PROMPT**

Change the **command.com** prompt. The COHERENT shells store the prompt format within the environmental variable **PS1**. This variable is usually defined in each user's **.profile** file; this file holds commands that are executed whenever the user logs in. To change the definition of your prompt, edit **.profile** to define **PS1** to suit your preference, then log in again.

Note that the information that can be embedded within the prompt varies between the Bourne and Korn shells. See the Lexicon articles **sh** and **ksh** for details on those shells and their prompts.

#### **RENAME**

Rename a file. Under COHERENT, use the command:

`mv oldfile newfile`

**mv** can also be used to move files from one directory or file system to another.

**RESTORE**

Restore a file saved with the **BACKUP** command. Under COHERENT, insert the floppy disk upon which the **cpio** utility saved its backup archive; then type the command:

```
cpio -icv < /dev/rfha0
```

Note that this command assumes you are using **/dev/rfha0**, which describes a 5.25-inch, high-density floppy disk in drive 0 (drive A). For a table of devices that correspond to other sizes and configurations of floppy disks, see the Lexicon article **floppy disks**.

**TREE** List all directories on a file system. Under COHERENT, use the command:

```
find / -type d | more
```

To list all files and directories that are subordinate to the current directory, use the command:

```
find . | more
```

The COHERENT command **ls -lR** also lists a directory tree, in a somewhat different output format.

**See Also**

**COHERENT, doscat, doscp, doscpdir, dosdel, dosdir, dosformat, doslabel, dosls, dosmkdir, dosrmdir, floppy disks, hard disk, modem, printer, terminal, technical information**

**msg — Device Driver**

Message device driver

The file **/dev/msg** is an interface to the message device driver. It is assigned major device 25 (minor device 0) and can be accessed as a character-special device.

All messaging operations are performed through the COHERENT system call **ioctl()**. Each of the operations **msgctl()**, **msgget()**, **msgsnd()**, and **msgrcv()** is performed with an integer array as its parameter. The first element of the array is reserved for the return value (default, -1). Subsequent elements represent arguments. The call to **ioctl()** passes **MSGCTL**, **MSGGET**, **MSGSEND**, or **MSGRCV** as the second argument, and an array of parameters as the third argument. The first argument is an open file descriptor to **/dev/msg**.

**Access**

If entry **/dev/msg** does not exist, you must create it, as follows:

```
/etc/mknod /dev/msg c 25 0
/bin/chmod 444 /dev/msg
```

**Files**

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/msg.h
/dev/msg
```

**See Also**

**device drivers, drvld, msgctl(), msgget(), msgop(), ps**

**Notes**

The space allocated for message text is set by the kernel variables **NMSG** and **NMSC**. These set, respectively, the number of message queues and the number of messages. Under COHERENT 286, the total space allocated (**NMSG \* NMSC**) must be less than 64 kilobytes; under COHERENT 386, there is no formal limit to this space.

Allocation of too many message queues or messages can exhaust kernel data space, thus preventing the system from running. Recommended safe limits are **NMSGID**=16 and **NMSG**=100. The values of these variables can be reset using the program **/conf/patch**; you should only do so, however, if you are thoroughly familiar with the workings of the COHERENT kernel.

Private message queues are not supported. Message queues must be removed manually when no longer required. Queue identifiers consist of a scaled slot number plus a slot usage sequence number. Using the system call **msgctl()** with the option **IPC\_STAT** will obtain information on the specified slot, even when it returns an error.

To remove all message queues, compile and run the following C code:

```
msgget( 0, 0 );    /* must do first */

for ( qid = 0x100; qid < 0x4000; qid += 0x100 ) {
    struct msqid_ds msb;
    msb.msg_perm.seq = 0;
    msgctl( qid, IPC_STAT, &msb );

    if ( msb.msg_perm.seq > 0 )
        msgctl (msb.msg_perm.seq, IPC_RMID, 0 );
}
```

COHERENT 286 implements **msg** as a loadable device driver. To load it into memory, use the command **drvld**.

### **msg — Command**

Send a brief message to other users

**msg** *user*  
*message*

The command **msg** prints the one-line *message* on the screen of *user*.

The message is sent as soon as you type **<return>** on the *message* line. If *user* is not logged in or is not known to the system, **msg** prints an error message on your screen.

### **See Also**

**commands**

### **msg.h — Header File**

Definitions for message facility

**#include <sys/msg.h>**

**msg.h** defines the structures and constants used with the COHERENT message facility.

### **See Also**

**header files**

### **msgctl() — System Call**

Message control operations

**#include <sys/msg.h>**

**int msgctl(msqid, cmd, buf)**

**int msqid; int cmd; struct msqid\_ds \*buf;**

**msgctl()** performs the message-control operations specified by *cmd*. The following *cmds* are available:

<b>IPC_STAT</b>	Place the current value of each member of the data structure associated with <i>msqid</i> into the structure pointed to by <i>buf</i> .
<b>IPC_SET</b>	Set the value of the following members of the data structure associated with <i>msqid</i> to the corresponding value found in the structure pointed to by <i>buf</i> :  <pre>msg_perm.uid msg_perm.gid msg_perm.mode /* only low 9 bits */ msg_qbytes</pre> <p>This <i>cmd</i> can only be executed by a process that has an effective-user identifier equal to either that of superuser or to the value of <b>msg_perm.uid</b> in the data structure associated with <i>msqid</i>. Only superuser can raise the value of <b>msg_qbytes</b>.</p>
<b>IPC_RMID</b>	Remove the system identifier specified by <i>msqid</i> from the system and destroy the message queue and data structure associated with it. This <i>cmd</i> can only be executed by a process that has an effective-user identifier equal to either that of superuser or to the value of <b>msg_perm.uid</b> in the data structure associated with <i>msqid</i> .

**msgctl()** fails if any of the following are true:

- *msqid* is not a valid message queue identifier. **msgctl()** sets the global variable **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- *cmd* is not a valid command (**EINVAL**).
- *cmd* is equal to **IPC\_STAT** and operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- *cmd* is equal to **IPC\_RMID** or **IPC\_SET**, and the effective-user identifier of the calling process is not equal to that of superuser and it is not equal to the value of **msg\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *msqid* (**EPERM**).
- *cmd* is equal to **IPC\_SET**, an attempt is being made to increase to the value of **msg\_qbytes**, and the effective-user identifier of the calling process is not equal to that of super user (**EPERM**).
- *buf* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, **msgctl()** returns zero. If a problem occurs, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/msg.h
/dev/msg
```

### See Also

**msg**, **msgget()**, **msgrcv()**, **msgsnd()**, **system calls**

### Notes

COHERENT 286 implements the **msg** functions as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

**msgget() — System Call**

Get message queue

```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```

```
msgget(key, msgflg)
```

```
key_t key; int msgflg;
```

**msgget()** returns the message queue identifier associated with *key*, should it exist. If *key* has no message queue associated with it, **msgget()** checks whether (*msgflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) is true; if it is, then **msgget()** creates a message queue identifier and associated message queue and data structure for *key*.

Upon creation, the data structure associated with the new message queue identifier is initialized as follows:

- **msg\_perm.cuid**, **msg\_perm.uid**, **msg\_perm.cgid**, and **msg\_perm.gid** are set to, respectively, the effective user identifier and effective group identifier of the calling process.
- The low-order nine bits of **msg\_perm.mode** are set to the low-order nine bits of *msgflg*. These nine bits define access permissions: the top three bits specify the owner's access permissions (read, write, execute), the middle three bits specify the owning group's access permissions, and the low three bits specify access permissions for others.
- **msg\_ctime** is set to the current time.
- **msg\_qbytes** is set equal to the system limit, as defined by the kernel variable **NMSQ\_B**.

**msgget()** fails if any of the following is true. The term within parentheses gives the value to which **msgget()** sets **errno**, as defined in the header file **errno.h**:

- A message queue identifier exists for *key* but operation permission as specified by the low-order nine bits of *msgflg* would not be granted (**EACCES**).
- A message queue identifier does not exist for *key* and (*msgflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) is false (**ENOENT**).
- A message queue identifier is to be created but the number of message queue identifiers system-wide exceeds the system limit as specified in the kernel variable **NMSQ\_ID** (**ENOSPC**).
- A message queue identifier exists for *key*, but ((*msgflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) && (*msgflg* & **IPC\_EXCL**)) is true (**EEXIST**).

**Return Value**

Upon successful completion, **msgget()** returns the message-queue identifier, which is always a non-negative integer. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**Files**

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
```

```
/usr/include/sys/msg.h
```

```
/dev/msg
```

**See Also**

**msg**, **msgctl()**, **msgrcv()**, **msgsnd()**, system calls

**Notes**

COHERENT 286 implements the **msg** functions as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.



**msgrcv() — System Call**

Receive a message

```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```

```
msgrcv(msqid, msgp, msgsz, msgtyp, msgflg)
```

```
int msqid, msgsz, msgflg; struct msgbuf *msgp; long msgtyp;
```

**msgrcv()** reads a message from the queue associated with the queue identifier *msqid* and writes it in the structure pointed to by *msgp*. This structure consists of the following members:

```
long mtype;    /* message type */
char mtext[];  /* message text */
```

*mtype* is the received message's type, as specified by the sending process. *mtext* is the text of the message. *msgsz* gives the size of *mtext*, in bytes. The received message is truncated to *msgsz* bytes if it is larger than *msgsz* and (*msgflg* & **MSG\_NOERROR**) is true. The truncated portion of the message is lost, with no indication given to the calling process.

*msgtyp* specifies the type of message requested, as follows:

- If *msgtyp* equals 0L, the first message on the queue is received.
- If *msgtyp* is greater than 0L, the first message of type *msgtyp* is received.
- If *msgtyp* is less than 0L, the first message of the lowest type that is less than or equal to the absolute value of *msgtyp* is received.

*msgflg* specifies the action taken if a message of the desired type is not on the queue, as follows:

- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true, the calling process immediately returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EAGAIN**.
- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is false, the calling process suspends execution until one of the following occurs:
  1. A message of the desired type is placed on the queue.
  2. *msqid* is removed from the system. When this occurs, **msgrcv** sets **errno** to **EDOM**
  3. The calling process receives a signal that is to be caught. In this case, a message is not received and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in **signal()**.

**msgrcv()** fails and no message is received if any of the following is true:

- *msqid* is not a valid message queue identifier. **msgrcv** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- *msgsz* is less than zero (**EINVAL**).
- *mtext* is greater than *msgsz* and (*msgflg* & **MSG\_NOERROR**) is false (**E2BIG**).
- The queue does not contain a message of the desired type and (*msgtyp* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true (**EAGAIN**).
- *msgp* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

Upon successful completion, the following actions are taken with respect to the data structure associated with *msqid*:

- **msg\_qnum** is decremented by one.

- **msg\_lrpId** is set equal to the process identifier of the calling process.
- **msg\_rtime** is set equal to the current time.

### Return Values

If **msgrcv()** returns due to the receipt of a signal, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EINTR**. If it returns due to the removal of **msgId** from the system, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EDOM**. Upon successful completion, **msgrcv()** returns a value equal to the number of bytes written into *mtext*. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

**/usr/include/sys/ipc.h**  
**/usr/include/sys/msg.h**  
**/dev/msg**

### See Also

**msg**, **msgctl()**, **msgget()**, **msgsnd()**, **system calls**

### Notes

COHERENT 286 implements the **msg** functions as a device driver rather than as actual system calls.

## **msgs** — Command

Read messages intended for all COHERENT users

**msgs** [-q] [*number*]

**msgs** selects and displays messages that are intended to be read by all COHERENT users. Messages are mailed to the login **msgs**. They should contain information meant to be read once by most users of the system.

The command **msgs** normally is in a user's **.profile**, so that it is executed every time he logs in. When invoked, it prompts the user with the identifier of the user who sent the message and the message's size. **msgs** then asks the user if he wishes to see the rest of the message. The user should reply with one of the following:

<b>y</b>	Display the message.
<b>&lt;return&gt;</b>	Display the message.
<b>n</b>	Skip this message and go to the next one.
<b>-</b>	Redisplay the last message.
<b>q</b>	Quit <b>msgs</b> .
<i>number</i>	Display message <i>number</i> ; then continue.

If environmental variable **PAGER** is defined, **msgs** will "pipe" each message through the command specified in **PAGER**. For example, the **.profile** command line:

```
export PAGER="exec /bin/scat -1"
```

would invoke **/bin/scat** for each message with the command line argument **-1** (the digit one).

**msgs** writes into the file **\$(HOME)/.msgsrc** the number of the next message the user will see when he invokes **msgs**. **msgs** keeps all messages in the directory **/usr/msgs**; each message is named with a sequential number, which indicates its message number. The file **/usr/msgs/bounds** contains the low and high numbers of the messages in the directory; **msgs** determines whether a user has not read a message by comparing the information in **\$(HOME)/.msgsrc** with that in **/usr/msgs/bounds**. If the contents of **/usr/msgs/bounds** are incorrect, the problem can be fixed by removing that file; **msgs** will create a new **bounds** file the next time it is run.

When the contents of a message are no longer needed, simply remove that message. Avoid removing the **bounds** file and the highest numbered message at the same time.

**msg**s accepts the following command-line options:

**-q** Query whether there are messages; print “There are new messages” if there are, and “No new messages” if not. The command **msg**s **-q** is often used in profile scripts.

*number* Start at message *number* rather than at the message recorded in **\$(HOME)/.msgsrc**. If *number* is greater than zero, then start with that message; if *number* is less than zero, then begin *number* messages before the one recorded in **\$(HOME)/.msgsrc**.

## Files

**/usr/spool/mail/msg**s — Mail messages file

**/usr/msg**s/[1-9]\* — Data base

**/usr/msg**s/**bounds** — File that contains message number bounds

**\$(HOME)/.msgsrc** — Number of next message to be presented

## See Also

**commands**, **mail**, **PAGER**, **scat**

## msgsnd() — System Call

Send a message

```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```

```
msgsnd(msqid, msgp, msgsz, msgflg)
```

```
int msqid, msgsz, msgflg; struct msgbuf *msgp;
```

The COHERENT system call **msgsnd()** sends a message to the queue associated with the message queue identifier *msqid*. *msgp* points to a structure that contains the message. This structure consists of the following members:

```
long mtype; /* message type */
char mtext[]; /* message text */
```

*mtype* is a positive long integer that the receiving process uses to select messages. *mtext* is a string that is *msgsz* bytes long. *msgsz* can range from zero to a system-imposed limit as specified in the kernel variable **NMSC**.

*msgflg* specifies the action to be taken if one or more of the following are true:

- The number of bytes already on the queue is equal to **msg\_qbytes**.
- The number of messages on all queues system-wide equals the system limit specified in the kernel variable **NMSG**.

*msgflg* can specify any of the following actions:

- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true, the message is not sent and the calling process returns immediately.
- If (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is false, the calling process suspends execution until one of the following occurs:
  1. The condition responsible for the suspension no longer exists, in which case the message is sent.
  2. *msqid* is removed from the system. When this occurs, **msgsnd** sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns -1.

3. The calling process receives a signal that is to be caught. In this case, the message is not sent and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in **signal()**.

**msgsnd()** fails and no message is sent if one or more of the following are true:

- *msqid* is not a valid message queue identifier. **msgsnd()** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- *mtype* is less than one (**EINVAL**).
- The message cannot be sent for one of the reasons cited above and (*msgflg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true (**EAGAIN**).
- *msgsz* is less than zero or greater than the system-imposed limit (**EINVAL**).
- *msgp* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

Upon successful completion, the following actions are taken with respect to the data structure associated with *msqid*.

- **msg\_qnum** is incremented by one.
- **msg\_lspid** is set equal to the process ID of the calling process.
- **msg\_stime** is set equal to the current time.

### Return Values

If **msgsnd()** return because it has received a signal, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EINTR**. If it returns because *msqid* was removed from the system, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EDOM**.

Upon successful completion, **msgsnd()** returns zero. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

**/usr/include/sys/ipc.h**  
**/usr/include/sys/msg.h**  
**/dev/msg**

### See Also

**msg**, **msgctl()**, **msgget()**, **msgrcv()**, **system calls**

### Notes

COHERENT 386 implements the **msg** functions a device driver rather than as actual system calls.

### **msig.h** — Header File

Machine-dependent signals  
**#include <signal.h>**

The header file **msig.h** defines the machine-dependent signals that the COHERENT system uses to communicate with its processes. The header file **signal.h** declares constants for the machine-independent signals, and includes **msig.h**.

### See Also

**header files**, **signal.h**

**msqrt() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Compute square root of multiple-precision integer

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void msqrt(a, b, r)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *r;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **msqrt()** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by **b** to the integral portion of the positive square root of the **mint** pointed to by **a**. It sets the **mint** pointed to by **r** to the remainder. The value pointed to by **a** must not be negative. The result of the operation is defined by the condition

$$a = b * b + r.$$

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**msub() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Subtract multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void msub(a, b, c)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *c;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **msub()** subtracts the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by **a** from the **mint** pointed to by **b**, and writes the result into the **mint** pointed to by **c**.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**mtab.h — Header File**

Currently mounted file systems

```
#include <mtab.h>
```

The file **/etc/mtab** contains an entry for each file system mounted by the **mount** command. This does not include the root file system, which is already mounted when the system boots.

Both the **mount** and **umount** commands use the following structure, defined in **mtab.h**. It contains the name of each special file mounted, the directory upon which it is mounted, and any flags passed to **mount** (such as read only).

```
#define    MNAMSIZ    32
struct    mtab {
    char    mt_name[MNAMSIZ];
    char    mt_special[MNAMSIZ];
    int     mt_flag;
};
```

**Files**

**/etc/mtab**

```
<mtab.h>
```

**See Also**

header files, mount, umount

**mtioctl.h** — Header File

Magnetic-tape I/O control

#include &lt;sys/mtioctl.h&gt;

**mtioctl.h** defines constants and structures used by routines that control magnetic-tape I/O.

**See Also**

header files

**mtol()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Convert multiple-precision integer to integer

#include &lt;mprec.h&gt;

int mtol(*a*)mint \**a*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mtol()** returns an integer equal to the value of the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a*. The value pointed to by *a* should be in the range allowable for a signed integer.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**mtos()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Convert multiple-precision integer to string

#include &lt;mprec.h&gt;

char \*mtos(*a*) mint \**a*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mtos()** converts the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* to a string. It returns a pointer to the string it creates. The string is allocated by **malloc()**, and may be freed by **free()**. The base of the string is set by the value of the external variable **obase**.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**mtype()** — General Function (libc)

Return symbolic machine type

#include &lt;mtype.h&gt;

char \*mtype(*type*)int *type*;

**mtype()** takes an integer machine *type* and returns the address of a string that contains the symbolic name of the machine. The header file **mtype.h** defines the possible machine types. For example,

```
mtype(M_PDP11)
```

returns the address of the string **PDP-11**.

**Files**

&lt;mtype.h&gt;

**See Also**

general functions, l.out.h, ld

## Diagnostics

**mtime()** returns NULL to indicate that it doesn't recognize the type of machine requested.

## **mtime.h** — Header File

List processor code numbers

**#include <mtime.h>**

The header file **mtime.h** assigns a code number to each of the processors supported by Mark Williams C compilers and operating systems. These include the Intel i8086, i8088, i80186, i80286, and i80386; the Zilog Z8001 and Z8002; the DEC PDP-11 and VAX; the IBM 370, and the Motorola 68000.

## See Also

header file

## **mult()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Multiply multiple-precision integers

**#include <mprec.h>**

**void mult(a, b, c)**

**mint \*a, \*b, \*c;**

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mult()** multiplies the multiple-precision integers (or **mints**) pointed to by *a* and *b*, and writes the product into the **mint** pointed to by *c*.

## See Also

multiple-precision mathematics

## **multiple-precision mathematics** — Overview

The COHERENT system includes the library **libmp**, whose routines allow you to perform multiple precision arithmetic. These functions manipulate a data structure called a **mint**, or "multiple-precision integer," which the header file **mprec.h** defines as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    unsigned len;
    char *val;
} mint;
```

You should not depend on the details of this structure, because on some machines a different representation may be more efficient. Using the listed functions is always safe.

The following gives the multiple-precision routines:

<b>gcd()</b>	Set variable to greatest common divisor
<b>ispos()</b>	Return if variable is positive or negative
<b>itom()</b>	Create a multiple-precision integer
<b>madd()</b>	Add multiple-precision integers
<b>ncmp()</b>	Compare multiple-precision integers
<b>ncpy()</b>	Copy a multiple-precision integer
<b>mdiv()</b>	Divide multiple-precision integers
<b>min()</b>	Read multiple-precision integer from stdin
<b>minit()</b>	Condition global or auto multiple-precision integer
<b>mintfr()</b>	Free a multiple-precision integer
<b>mitom()</b>	Reinitialize a multiple-precision integer
<b>mneg()</b>	Negate multiple-precision integer
<b>mout()</b>	Write multiple-precision integer to stdout

**msqrt()** . . . . . Compute square root of multiple-precision integer  
**msub()** . . . . . Subtract multiple-precision integers  
**mtol()** . . . . . Convert multiple-precision integer to integer  
**mtos()** . . . . . Convert multiple-precision integer to string  
**mult()** . . . . . Multiple multiple-precision integers  
**mvfree()** . . . . . Free multiple-precision integer  
**pow()** . . . . . Raise multiple-precision integer to power  
**rpow()** . . . . . Raise multiple-precision integer to power  
**sdiv()** . . . . . Divide multiple-precision integers  
**smult()** . . . . . Multiply multiple-precision integers  
**spow()** . . . . . Raise multiple-precision integer to power  
**xgcd()** . . . . . Extended greatest-common-divisor function  
**zerop()** . . . . . Indicate if multi-precision integer is zero

**itom()** creates a new **mint**, initializes it to the signed integer value *n*, and returns a pointer to it. Storage used by a **mint** created with **itom** may be reclaimed using **mintfr()**.

A **mint** that already exists may be reinitialized by **mitom()**, which sets *a* to the value *n*. If the **mint** was declared as a global or automatic variable, it must be conditioned before first use by **mint()**, which prevents garbage values in the **mint** structure from causing chaos. A **mint** conditioned by **mint()** has no value; however, it may be used to receive the result of an operation. For **mints** automatic to a function, **mvfree()** should be used before the function is exited to free the storage used by the **val** field of the **mint** structure. Otherwise, this storage will never be reclaimed.

**madd()**, **msub()**, and **mult()** set *c* to the sum, difference, or product of *a* and *b*. **mdiv** divides *a* by *b* and writes the quotient and remainder in *q* and *r*. *b* must not be zero. The results of the operation are defined by the following conditions:

1.  $a = q * b + r$
2. The sign of *r* equals the sign of *q*
3. The absolute value of *r* < the absolute value of *b*.

**smult()** is like **mult()**, except the second argument is an integer in the range  $0 \leq n \leq 127$ . **sdiv()** is like **mdiv()**, except the second argument is an integer in the range  $1 \leq n \leq 128$ , and the remainder argument points to an **int** instead of a **mint**.

**pow()** sets *c* to *a* raised to the *b* power reduced modulo *m*. **rpow()** sets *c* to *a* raised to the *b* power. **spow()** is like **rpow()**, except the exponent is an integer. In no case may the exponent be negative.

**mcopy()** sets *b* equal to *a*. **mneg()** sets *b* equal to negative *a*.

**msqrt()** sets *b* to the integral portion of the positive square root of *a*; *r* is set to the remainder. *a* must not be negative. The result of the operation is defined by the condition

$$a = b * b + r$$

**gcd()** sets *c* to the greatest common divisor of *a* and *b*. **xgcd()** is an extended gcd routine that sets *g* to the greatest common divisor of *a* and *b*, and sets *r* and *s* so the relation

$$g = a * r + b * s$$

holds. For **xgcd()**, *r*, *s* and *g* must all be distinct.

**mints** may be compared with **mcmp()**, which returns a signed integer less than, equal to, or greater than zero according to whether *a* is less than, equal to, or greater than *b*. **ispos()** returns true (nonzero) if *a* is not negative, false (zero) if *a* is negative. **zerop** returns true if *a* is zero, false otherwise.



**mtol()** returns an integer equal to the value of *a*. *a* should be in the allowable range for a signed integer.

The external integers **ibase** and **obase** govern the I/O and ASCII conversion routines. Allowable bases run from two to 16. Permissible digits are 0 through 9 and A through F (lower-case letters are not allowed). **min** reads a **mint** in base **ibase** from the standard input and sets *a* to that value. Leading blanks and an optional leading minus sign are allowed; the number is terminated by the first non-legal digit. **mout()** outputs *a* on the standard output in base **obase**. **mtos()** performs the same conversion as **mout()**, but the result is placed in a character string instead of being output; a pointer to the string is returned. The string is actually allocated by **malloc()**, and may be freed by **free()**.

**mzero()** and **mone()** point to **mints** with values zero and one. **mminint()** and **mmaxint()** point to **mints** containing the minimum and maximum values that will fit in a signed integer. These constants should never be used as the result of an operation.

All the necessary declarations for these constants and for the library functions are contained in the header file **mprec.h**. They need not be repeated.

To link **mp** modules with an executable object, use the argument **-lmp** with the **cc** or **ld** commands.

### Example

The following example converts a string into a multi-precision integer.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <mprec.h>
#include <ctype.h>

/*
 * "ibase" is an int which contains the input base used by "stom".
 * It should be between 2 and 16.
 */
int ibase = 10;

/*
 * stom() reads in a number in base ibase from string 'a' and returns
 * pointer to multiple-precision integer.
 */
mint *stom(s)
register char *s;
{
    char cval;
    mint c = {1, &cval};
    register int ch;
    char mifl = 0; /* leading minus flag */
    static mint    number;

    mcopy(mzero, &number); /* set number to zero */
    if ((ch = *s) == '-') { /* skip leading '-' */
        mifl = 1;
        ch = *++s;
    }
}
```

```

/* scan thru string 's', building result in "number" */
while (isascii(ch) && isdigit(ch)) {
    cval = (isdigit(ch) ? ch - '0' : ch - 'A');
    smult(&number, ibase, &number);
    madd(&number, &c, &number);
    ch = *++s;
}

if (mifl) /* adjust sign of a "number" */
    mneg(&number, &number);
return(&number);
}

/* simple test for "stom" */
main()
{
    char buffer[80];

    printf("Input string ? ");
    gets(buffer);
    mout(stom(buffer)); /* Print in stdout multiple-precision int */
}

```

## Files

<mprec.h>  
/usr/lib/libmp.a

## See Also

bc, dc, libraries, malloc(), mprec.h

## Diagnostics

On any error, such as division by zero, running out of space or taking the square root of a negative number, an appropriate message is printed on the standard error stream and the program exits with a nonzero status.

## **mv** — Command

Rename files or directories

**mv** [-f] *oldfile* [*newfile*]

**mv** [-f] *file* ... *directory*

**mv** renames files. In the first form above, it changes the name of *oldfile* to *newfile*. If *newfile* already exists, **mv** replaces it with the file being moved; if not, **mv** creates it. If *newfile* is a directory, **mv** places *oldfile* under that directory.

In the second form, **mv** moves each *file* so that it resides under *directory*. If a file with the new name exists but is unwritable, **mv** will not delete it unless the -f option is specified.

**mv** will not copy directories between devices and will not remove directories that occupy the destination of the command.

Normally, **mv** creates a link to the old file with the new file and then removes the old file. If it cannot create the link (e.g., because the new file is on a different file system than the old), **mv** performs a copy and then removes the old file.

### See Also

**commands**, **cp**, **ln**, **mmdir**

### Notes

**mv** tests the validity of directory moves by means of search permission. The superuser always has search permission and thus can use **mv** incorrectly.

### **mmdir** — Command

Rename a directory

**/etc/mmdir** *olddir newdir*

The COHERENT command **mmdir** renames directory *olddir* to *newdir*. Both can be path names.

For obvious reasons, *olddir* cannot be a subset of *newdir*. Both *olddir* and *newdir* must reside on the same file system.

### See Also

**commands**, **mv**

### Notes

**mmdir** is available only under COHERENT 386.

**mmdir** is a link to **mv**.

### **mvfree()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Free multiple-precision integer

**#include** <mprec.h>

**void** **mvfree**(*a*)

**mint** \**a*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **mvfree()** frees the space allocated to an automatic multiple-precision integer (or **mint**). You should call **mvfree()** before exiting the function that uses the **mint**, or the storage used by the **val** field of the **mint** structure will never be reclaimed.

### See Also

**multiple-precision mathematics**



### ***n.out.h* — Header File**

Define *n.out* file structure

**#include <n.out.h>**

**n.out.h** defines the **n.out** file structure. This file structure is used to encode executable files; it is the same as the standard COHERENT form **l.out**, except that it uses 32-bit addressing. This file structure is used internally in COHERENT, but is not available under the COHERENT C compiler or assembler.

#### **See Also**

header files, **l.out**

### ***named pipe* — Definition**

A *named pipe* is a special file created with the command **/etc/mknod**. Unlike the block- and character-special files created by **mknod**, a named pipe is not a device.

A named pipe acts like a conventional pipe set up between related processes. It differs in that it has a visible name that can be seen in a file system. It also differs in that it has permissions (since it's a file and has a name) associated with it just like any other file. This allows a named pipe to be accessed by processes that are *not* related to each other, and can even be used for processes that are running on behalf of difference users.

The following illustrates how one process can write data into a named pipe and an unrelated process can read from it:

```
/etc/mknod my_pipe p           # create the named pipe
chmod 644 my_pipe
ls -lR / > my_pipe &          # pump data into pipe in background
mail fred < my_pipe            # read from the pipe and process
```

This script creates a named pipe called **my\_pipe** and makes sure that it is readable; it then pumps a mass of data into the pipe (in the background), and then has a process read data from the named pipe and perform some action on them (in this case, mail the data to use **fred**). In this example, the **mail** process could be running from some other login and could either be in the foreground or background.

#### **See Also**

definitions, **mknod**, **pipe**

## **ncheck** — Command

Print file names corresponding to i-node

**ncheck** [ *-i number ...* ] [ *-as* ] *filesystem ...*

An *i-number* identifies an i-node. **ncheck** generates a list of file names by i-number for each *filesystem*, which should be the name of a device special file that contains a proper COHERENT file system. Using the raw device generally decreases the time **ncheck** requires to do its work.

The output is in the unsorted traversal order of the file system hierarchy. **ncheck** distinguishes directories from files by suffixing */.*  to directory names.

Under the *-i* option, **ncheck** prints the file name corresponding to each i-number *number* in the given list. Under the *-a* option, **ncheck** prints only the names of special files and set user-ID mode files; this option allows the system administrator to ascertain quickly whether these files represent possible security breaches.

### **See Also**

**commands**, **i-node**

### **Diagnostics**

**ncheck** appends *??* to the generated file name if it cannot find the proper parent structure while retrieving the file-name information. It represents any loops detected in the file name by the characters *...*. Extremely addled file systems may generate other reasonably self-explanatory diagnostics.

## **newgrp** — Command

Change to a new group

**newgrp** *group*

**newgrp** changes the user's group identification to the specified *group*, if access is permitted. The file */etc/group* determines group access. Group access may be unrestricted, or open to all users with specific exceptions, or restricted to certain users via a password.

The shell executes **newgrp** directly.

### **Files**

*/etc/group* — Give group access

### **See Also**

**commands**, **group**, **ksh**, **sh**

### **Diagnostics**

If **newgrp** succeeds, no diagnostic is printed.

### **Notes**

Interruption of **newgrp** can result in the user being logged off.

Under the Korn shell, **newgrp** is an alias for **exec newgrp**.

## **newusr** — Command

Add new user to COHERENT system

*/etc/newusr* *login "User Name" parentdir [ shell ]*

**newusr** adds a new user to the system. It automatically adds an entry to the file */etc/passwd*, creates a home directory for the user, installs the user in the mail system, and otherwise performs the myriad tasks required to add a new user to your COHERENT system.

*login* is the login identifier of the new user. This is a single word in lower case, by which that user is identified. Note that each user must have a unique login identifier. Identifiers are usually the user's first name, initials, or a nickname. *parentdir* is the directory or (more usually) the file system in which **newusr** will create the new user's home directory. *User Name* is the name of the human for whom *login* is being created. *shell* names the shell to be used; the default is the Bourne shell **/bin/sh**.

For example, the command

```
/etc/newusr batman "Bruce Wayne" /v /usr/bin/ksh
```

creates new user Bruce Wayne, with login **batman**, home directory **/v/batman**, and default shell **/usr/bin/ksh**.

### Files

**/etc/group** — User groups  
**/etc/passwd** — User passwords  
**/parentdir/user** — User home directory  
**/usr/spool/mail/user** — User mailbox

### See Also

**commands**, **passwd**

### Diagnostics

**newusr** complains if an entry for *user* already exists in the password file.

### Notes

Only the superuser can add new users to the system with **newusr**.

## **nkb** — Device Driver

Device driver for console keyboard

The COHERENT device-driver **nkb** supports industry-standard 83-, 101-, and 102-key AT-protocol keyboards attached as the computer console. Unlike **kb**, the other COHERENT keyboard driver, **nkb** lets you define both the layout of the keyboard and the values returned by function keys. It also lets you change layout and function-key bindings by using the special keyboard mapping programs kept in directory **/conf/kbd**. This directory contains the C source code for the mapping tables, as well as a **Makefile** that helps you rebuild the mapping programs. See the Lexicon article **keyboard tables** for details.

### Kernel Variables

Please note that the COHERENT 286 kernel references variables with a trailing underscore character; for example, **atparm\_**. The COHERENT 386 kernel, however, does *not* use a trailing underscore; for example, **atparm**.

The following descriptions apply to both COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386, but the notation will be in the COHERENT-386 form.

### Internal Structure

The following paragraphs describe the internal structure of the **nkb** driver. This information is of interest mainly to persons who wish to study the design of device drivers.

**nkb** understands the following “shift” and “lock” keys:

<b>scroll</b>	Scroll lock
<b>num</b>	Keypad NUM lock
<b>caps</b>	Shift or CAPS lock
<b>lalt</b>	Left ALT key
<b>ralt</b>	Right ALT key
<b>lshift</b>	Left SHIFT key
<b>rshift</b>	Right SHIFT key
<b>lctrl</b>	Left CTRL key
<b>rctrl</b>	Right CTRL key
<b>altgr</b>	ALT Graphic key (non-US keyboards)

**nkb** records an internal shift state, as defined by the current positions of the shift and lock keys. The shift state is a logical combination of internal states **SHIFT**, **CTRL**, **ALT**, and **ALT\_GR**. The **lshift** and **rshift** keys combine to form the current **SHIFT** state for non-alphabetic keys. Alphabetic keys generally use the current state of the **caps** lock key in addition to **lshift** and **rshift**. Numeric keys found on the keypad generally use the state of the **num** lock key combined with **lshift** and **rshift**. The two “control” keys, **lctrl** and **rctrl**, form the internal **CTRL** state. In a similar manner, the two “alt” keys, **lalt** and **ralt**, form the internal **ALT** state. Note that 102-key keyboards generally replace the **ralt** key with the **altgr** key, to allow access to the alternate graphics characters found on some keyboards.

**nkb** lets you configure or read the internal mapping tables via the following **ioctl()** requests, as defined in header file **<sgtty.h>**:

<b>TIOCGETF</b>	Get function key bindings
<b>TIOCSETF</b>	Set function key bindings
<b>TIOCGETKBT</b>	Get keyboard table bindings
<b>TIOCSETKBT</b>	Set keyboard table bindings

Requests **TIOCGETF** and **TIOCSETF** reference a data structure of type **FNKEY**, which is a **typedef** defined in header file **<sys/kb.h>**. Structure member **k\_fnval** is a character array that contains a series of contiguous function key/value bindings; the end of the bindings is marked by manifest constant **DELIM**. You can use any value other than **DELIM** as part of a function-key binding. Structure member **k\_nfkeys** indicates how many function keys have associated entries in **k\_fnval**. Function keys are numbered from zero through **k\_nfkeys**-1.

By convention, function-key 0, when enabled, causes the computer system to reboot. This function key is usually bound to the key sequence **<ctrl><alt><del>**, but you can disable it by setting the value of driver-variable **KBBOOT** to zero. To do so, use the following command:

```
/conf/patch /coherent KBBOOT=0
```

Requests **TIOCGETKBT** and **TIOCSETKBT** reference an array that contains **MAX\_KEYS** occurrences of data structure **KBTBL**, which is a **typedef** defined in header file **<sys/kb.h>**. Structure member **k\_key** contains the *scan code set three* code value for the desired key. Header file **<sys/kbscan.h>** contains manifest (symbolic) constants of the form **K\_nnn**, which map AT keyboard *physical* key number *nnn* to the corresponding scan-code set-three value generated by the keyboard. Note that the **nkb** driver disables the scan-code translation that the keyboard controller normally performs, as well as setting the keyboard to scan code set three.

Structure member **k\_val** is a nine-element array that contains the key mappings that correspond to the following index values and shift states:

0	<b>BASE</b>
1	<b>SHIFT</b>
2	<b>CTRL</b>
3	<b>CTRL_SHIFT</b>
4	<b>ALT</b>
5	<b>ALT_SHIFT</b>
6	<b>ALT_CTRL</b>
7	<b>ALT_CTRL_SHIFT</b>
8	<b>ALT_GR</b>

Structure member **k\_flags** contains mode information for the given key. One field in **k\_flags** indicates the *class* of key. This sub-field lets you specify whether a key is a “shift” key (as defined above), a special or programmable “function” key, or a “regular” key. The following symbolic constants specify the *class* of key:

- S** The specified key is a “shift” or “lock” key. Note that all entries in array **k\_val** must be identical for a “shift” or “lock” key to work correctly.
- F** The specified key is a “function” or special key. The value of all elements of array **k\_val** must specify a function key number. See header file **<kb.h>** for a list of predefined function keys.
- O** The specified key is “regular” and requires no special processing.

The next sub-field of **k\_flags** specifies the *type* of key, as specified in the AT keyboard technical reference. The *type* sub-field specifies under what conditions a given key will generate an interrupt. The possible choices are:

- M** Make: generate an interrupt only upon key “make” (i.e., when the key is depressed). This mode is useful for keys which do not repeat. Note that using this mode with “shift” keys stops you from unshifting upon release of the key!
- T** Typematic: generate an interrupt when the key is depressed, and generate subsequent key-depression interrupts while the key is depressed. The rate at which interrupts are generated is specified by the typematic rate of the keyboard. This type is usually associated with a “regular” key.
- MB** Make/Break: generate an interrupt when the key is depressed, and when it is released. No additional interrupts are generated no matter how long the key is depressed. This mode is used for “shift” keys.
- TMB** Typematic/Make/Break: generate an interrupt when the key is first depressed; generate subsequent key depression interrupts while the key remains depressed; and generate an interrupt when the key is released.

The last sub-field of **k\_flags** specifies the *lock* keys, if any, that affect the specified key:

- C** The **caps** lock key that affects this key. If the specified key is depressed while **caps** lock is active, it is equivalent to having used either of the SHIFT keys with this key. When **caps** lock is in effect, use of either of the SHIFT keys temporarily toggles the state of the **caps** lock.
- N** The **num** lock key affects this key. If the specified key is depressed while **num** lock is active, it is equivalent to having used either of the SHIFT keys in conjunction with the specified key. When **num** lock is in effect, use of either of the SHIFT keys temporarily toggles the state of the **num** lock.



**See Also**

**device drivers, fnkey, keyboard tables**

*Technical Reference for the IBM Personal Computer AT*, IBM Corporation, 1984.

*Multi-Function Keyboards: Layouts*, Cherry Electrical Products Corp.

**Notes**

With release 3.2 of COHERENT, **nkb** became the standard keyboard driver, replacing the **kb** driver used in earlier releases. Please note that either **nkb** or **kb** can be linked into the COHERENT kernel, like most other COHERENT device drivers. Neither driver is found in directory **/drv**; this directory is reserved for loadable device drivers, such as those for the COM ports or for the shared-memory driver. The COHERENT Device Driver Kit contains tools and information to rebuild the COHERENT kernel, which is necessary if you wish to switch keyboard drivers.

The main difference between **nkb** and **kb** is that **nkb** uses a “supplemental” process to interpret keystrokes. This permits COHERENT users to switch among flavors of international keyboards with a minimum of difficulty. As noted above, the source code for these supplemental programs is kept in directory **/conf/kbd**. See the Lexicon article on **keyboard tables** for details on how to modify, compile, and load one of these keyboard-interpretation programs.

Please note, finally, that if you attempt to use a keyboard interpreter with **kb**, it will fail with an error message.

**nlist() — General Function (libc)**

Symbol table lookup

```
#include <l.out.h>
```

```
int nlist(file, nlp)
```

```
char *file;
```

```
struct nlist *nlp;
```

**nlist** searches the name list (symbol table) of the load module *file* for each symbol in the array pointed to by *nlp*. For example, the command **ps** uses this routine on the system load module (**/coherent**) to obtain the addresses of system tables in memory (**/dev/mem**).

*nlp* points to an array of **nlist** structures, terminated by a structure with a null string as its **n\_name** member. The header file **l.out.h** defines **nlist** as follows:

```
#define      NCPLN16

struct nlist {
    char      n_name[NCPLN];
    int       n_type;
    unsignedn_value;
};
```

The caller should set the entry **n\_name**; **nlist** will fill in the other entries. **nlist** sets both **n\_type** and **n\_value** to zero if the symbol is not found.

**Files**

**l.out.h**

**See Also**

**general functions, l.out.h, nm, strip**

**Diagnostics**

If *file* is not a load module or has had its symbol table stripped, all returned **n\_type** and **n\_value** entries will be zero.

**nm — Command**

Print a program's symbol table

**nm** [ **-adgnopru** ] *file* ...

The command **nm** prints the symbol table of each *file*. It can read binary files produced by the compiler, assembler, or linker.

When a C source file is compiled with the **-c** switch to the **cc** command, or when a file of assembly language is assembled, the result is an object module, which is signified by the suffix **.o**.

The linker **ld** links multiple object modules to form an executable program. Frequently used object modules often are grouped by the archiver **ar** into a *library*, which is signified by the suffix **.a**. **nm** can read all three kinds of files: **.o**, **.a**, and fully linked executables.

**Options**

**nm** recognizes the following options:

**-a** (COHERENT 286 only)

Print all symbols. Normally, **nm** prints names that are in C-style format and ignores symbols with names inaccessible from C programs.

**-d** Print only defined symbol.

**-g** Print only global symbols.

**-n** Sort numerically rather than alphabetically. **nm** uses unsigned compares when sorting symbols with this option.

**-o** Append the file name to the beginning of each output line.

**-p** Print symbols in the order in which they appear within the symbol table.

**-r** Sort in reverse-alphabetical order.

**-u** Print only undefined symbols.

**COHERENT 286 Output**

Because COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386 use different object-file formats, the output of **nm** differs between the editions of COHERENT.

Under COHERENT 286, the output of **nm** is a series of lines of the form:

*addr type symbol*

For example,

0020 SI main

If the input file is a library, symbols are listed separately for each member of the library, preceded by a header line that names the library element. For example, if **foo.a** contains elements **foo1.o** and **foo2.o**, then the output of **nm** is something like this:

```

#nm foo.a
foo1.o:
    U ex1
0002 C ex2
0024 PD ex3
0000 SI fn1
...
foo2.o:
0022 PD ex1
    U ex2
    U fn1
0015 SI fn3
0000 SI main
...

```

The *addr* field gives the value of the symbol in hexadecimal. If the symbol belongs to the instruction or data segment of a program, then the value of the symbol is the offset within that segment. If the value is unknown, this field is left blank.

The *type* field is one of the following (symbol types **PI** and **SD** are relatively obscure and are available only through the assembler):

<b>SI</b>	Shared instruction
<b>PI</b>	Private instruction
<b>BI</b>	Uninitialized instruction
<b>SD</b>	Shared data
<b>PD</b>	Private data
<b>BD</b>	Uninitialized data
<b>D</b>	Debug tables
<b>A</b>	Absolute symbol
<b>C</b>	Reference
<b>U</b>	Undefined

Please note that the *type* field is printed in lower case (e.g., **sl** instead of **SI**) if the symbol is local rather than global. By default, the C compiler strips local symbols from the object modules files it creates.

### COHERENT 386 Output

Under COHERENT 386, the output of **nm** is a series of lines of the form:

*segment address symbol*

*segment* gives the segment in which the symbol appears, or **UNDEF** for undefined symbols. *address* is either the address in hexadecimal, or the length of a common variable. *symbol* names the symbol.

For example, if **foo.o** is a relocatable object module, the output of the command **nm -o foo.o** would appear as follows:

```
#nm foo.o
UNDEF      00000000 _canl
UNDEF      00000000 _stderr
.text      0000077C acomp
.text      00000034 acomp_old
UNDEF      00000000 alloc
.text      00000F28 archive
.comm      00000004 asw
.text      000003CC csymbol
.comm      00000004 dsw
```

### See Also

**cc**, **commands**, **ld**, **size**, **strip**

### **notmem()** — General Function (libc)

Check if memory is allocated

**int notmem(ptr);**

**char \*ptr;**

**notmem()** checks if a memory block has been allocated by **calloc()**, **malloc()**, or **realloc()**. *ptr* points to the block to be checked.

**notmem()** searches the arena for *ptr*. It returns one if *ptr* is not a memory block obtained from **malloc()**, **calloc()**, or **realloc()**, and zero if it is.

### Example

The following example prints a string, and frees it if it was **malloc**'d.

```
#include <sys/malloc.h>

pfree(s)
char *s;
{
    printf("%s\n", s);
    if(!notmem(s))
        free(s);
}

main()
{
    char *mallocked_string;
    char notmallocked_string[50];

    if ((mallocked_string = malloc(50)) == NULL)
        exit(1);

    strcpy(mallocked_string, "This is a malloc'd string");
    strcpy(notmallocked_string, "This is not a malloc'd string");

    pfree(mallocked_string);
    pfree(notmallocked_string);
}
```

**See Also**

**arena**, **calloc()**, **free()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **memok()**, **realloc()**, **setbuf()**

**nptx — Command**

Generate permutations of users' full names

**nptx**

The command **nptx** reads an address/name pair (that is, an address and a user's full name), and prints on the standard output as many permutations of the user's name as it can think of, each linked to the given address. A set of such permutations helps to relieve a user of needing to know the exact form of another user's name when she wishes to send mail to that user.

When a set of users' names are filtered through **nptx**, its output can be used as a "full-name data base" that can be used by the COHERENT mail system.

The format of an input line is:

```
address    name
```

*address* can contain any address. It is terminated by a <tab> character. *name* consists of white-space-separated names or initials, with an optional nickname given in parentheses, terminated by either a newline character or a comma.

**nptx** prints all permutations of the first names and initials, with the last name appearing in each permutation. Permutations are not necessarily unique.

**Example**

Given the address/name pair

```
chicago!widget!lc    LaMonte Cranston(Shadow)
```

**nptx** produces the following set of permutations:

```
Cranston                chicago!widget!lc
L.Cranston              chicago!widget!lc
LaMonte.Cranston        chicago!widget!lc
S.Cranston              chicago!widget!lc
Shadow.Cranston         chicago!widget!lc
```

**See Also**

**commands**, **mail**, **mkfnames**, **paths**

**Notes**

The command **mkfnames** can read a file of names and massage them into the form expected by **nptx**.

**nptx** assumes European-style names, i.e., that the family name comes last (unlike Oriental names, in which the family name comes first).

**nroff — Command**

Text-formatting language

**nroff** [*option ...*] [*file ...*]

**nroff** is the COHERENT text-formatter and text-formatting language. By embedding commands within files of text, you can instruct **nroff** to format text, create paragraphs, subheadings, headers, footers, and in general perform all tasks required to format text for the printed page or for screen display.

**nroff** is designed to be used with character-display terminals or monospace printers. The related program **troff** performs typeset-quality formatting, suitable for printing on the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer or any printer for which the PostScript language has been implemented. **troff**'s formatting language is a superset of that used by **nroff**. Text that you have encoded for formatting by **nroff** will work with **troff**, but the reverse is not always true. See the Lexicon entry on **troff** for information that applies to **troff** alone.

### **nroff** Input

**nroff** processes each *file*, or the standard input if none is specified, and prints the formatted result on the standard output. The input must contain formatting instructions as well as the text to be processed.

Basic **nroff** commands provide for such things as setting line length, page length, and page offset, generating vertical and horizontal motions, indentation, filling and adjusting output lines, and centering. The great flexibility of **nroff** lies in its acceptance of user-defined macros to control almost all formatting. For example, the formation of paragraphs, header and footer areas, and footnotes must all be implemented by the user via macros.

The following summarizes the commands and options that can be used with **nroff**. Four types of commands and options are described: (1) command line options; (2) **nroff**'s basic commands (also called *primitives*); (3) escape sequences that can be used with **nroff**; and (4) **nroff**'s dedicated number registers, and what information each one keeps.

### **Command-line Options**

Command-line options may be listed in any order on the command line. They are as follows:

- d**      Debug: print each request before execution. This options is extremely useful when you are writing new macros.
- f name**  
          Write the temporary file in file *name*.
- k**      Keep: do not erase the temporary file.
- i**      Read from the standard input after reading the given *files*.
- mname**  
          Include the macro file `/usr/lib/tmac.name` in the input stream.
- nN**     Number the first page of output *N*.
- raN**    Set number register *a* to the value *N*.
- rabN**   Set number register *ab* to value *N*. For obvious reasons, *ab* cannot contain a digit.
- x**      Do not eject to the bottom of the last page when text ends. Use this option when you wish to use **nroff** interactively. It, too, is useful when debugging macros.

**nroff** appends the contents of the environmental variable **NROFF** to the beginning of the list of command-line arguments. This let you set commonly used options once in the environment, rather than retype them for each invocation of **nroff**.

### **Primitives**

The following gives the basic commands, or *primitives*, that are built into **nroff**. These primitives can be assembled into macros, or can be written directly into the text of your document. Commands may begin either with a period '.' or with an apostrophe; the former causes a break (see **.br**, below), the latter does not.

# **.ab *msg***

Abort: print *msg* on the standard error and abort processing.

# **.ad [*bclr*]**

Enter adjust mode: that is, insert white space between words to create right-justified output. **b** adjusts for both margins; this is the default. **c** adjusts and centers on the line. **l** adjusts, flush with the left margin. **r** adjusts, flush with the right margin.

**.af *R X*** Assign format *X* to number register *R*. The assigned format may be one of the following:

- l** Arabic numerals (default)
- i** Lower-case Roman numerals
- I** Upper-case Roman numerals
- a** Lower-case alphabetic characters
- A** Upper-case alphabetic characters

**.am *XX*** Append the following to macro *XX*. Used like **.de**, below.

**.as *XX*** Append the following to string *XX*. Used like **.ds**, below.

**.bp** Begin a new page.

**.br** Break; print any fraction of a line of text that is in the input buffer before reading new text.

**.c2 *c*** Set the no-break control character to *c*. With no argument, reset it to the default apostrophe.

**.cc *c*** Set the normal control character to *c*. With no argument, reset it to the default period.

**.ce *N*** Center *N* lines of text (default, one).

# **.ch *XX N***

Change the location of the trap for macro *XX* to vertical position *N* on the page. Used like command **.wh**, below.

# **.co *endmark***

Copy input directly to the output until *endmark* is seen. If no *endmark* is given, copy until another **.co** is seen.

**.cu** Underline continuously.

**.da *X*** Divert and append the following text into macro *X*. A diversion is ended by a **.da** command that has no argument.

**.de *X*** Define macro *X*. The macro definition is ended by a line that contains only two periods “.”.

**.di *X*** Divert the following text into macro *X*. Diversion is ended by a **.di** command that has no argument.

# **.ds *X value***

Define string *X* to have the given *value*.

**.ec *c*** Set the escape character to *c*. With no argument, reset it to the default backslash character ‘\’.

# **.el *action***

Execute *action* when the test in an **.ie** command fails. This command must be used with an **.ie** command.

**.em *XX*** Execute macro *XX* when processing is completed.

- .eo**      Escape off: turn off special handling of all escape sequences.
- .ev N**    Change the environment. When followed by 0, 1, 2, the command *pushes* that environment; when used without an argument, the command *pops* the present environment and returns to the previous environment.
- .ex**      Exit from **nroff** without further ado.
- .fi**      Enter fill mode.
- .fl**      Flush; same as **.br**.
- .ft X**    Change the current font to X. **nroff** recognizes **R**, **B**, and **I**, for Roman, bold, and italic, respectively.
- .le condition action**  
This command tests to see if *condition* is true; if true, it then executes *action*; otherwise, it performs the action introduced by an **.el** primitive. This command must be used with the **.el** command.
- .if condition action**  
This command tests to see if *condition* is true; if so, then *action* is executed; otherwise, *action* is ignored. The command **.if o** applies if the page number is odd, and the command **.if e** applies if the page number is even. The command **.if n** applies if the text is processed by **nroff**, and the command **.if t** applies if the text is processed by **troff**. The command **.if l** applies in landscape mode. The command **.if p** applies to **troff** PostScript mode. Note that the last two conditions are unique to the COHERENT implementation of **nroff**, and may not be portable to other implementations.
- .ig X**    Ignore all input until macro **.X** is called; if no argument is given, ignore input until two periods "...".
- .in NX**   Change the normal indentation to N units of X scale. X can be **u** or **i**, for *machine units* or *inches*, respectively. If N is used without X, **nroff** assumes the indentation to be given in number of character-widths (in picas, or tenths of an inch). Default indentation is zero.
- .it N XX**  
Set an input trap to execute macro XX after N input lines (not counting request lines).
- .lc c**    Set the leader dot character to c. When **nroff** sees the escape sequence **\a**, it fills space to the next tab stop with the leader dot character. **lc** with no argument tells **nroff** to use spaces to fill leaders.
- .ll NX**   Set the line length. Used like the **.in** command, above.
- .ls X**    Leave spaces; insert X vertical spaces after each line of text. Default is zero.
- .lt NX**   Length of title. Used like the **.in** command, above.
- .na**      Enter no-adjust mode. Line lengths are not changed.
- .ne NX**   Confirm that at least N portions of X units of measure of vertical space are needed before the next trap. If this amount of space is not available, then move the text to the top of the next page. X can be **i** or **v**, for inches or vertical spaces, respectively. This command is used in display macros and in paragraph macros to help prevent widows and orphans.
- .nf**      Enter no-fill mode; no right justification is performed, although line lengths are changed to approximate uniform line length.
- .nh**      Turn off hyphenation. **nroff** hyphenates according to built-in algorithms that are correct most of the time, but not always.



**.nr X N1 N2**

Set number register *X* to value *N1*; set its default increment/decrement to *N2*. For example, **.nr X 2 3** sets number register *X* to 2, and sets its default increment to 3.

The basic unit of measurement for **nroff** is 1/120th of an inch; this is also called the *machine unit*. It is indicated by the suffix **u** to a measurement. Unless otherwise stated, all number registers that information about a page holds that information in **nroff** machine units.

Other units of measure convert into **nroff** units as follows:

inch:	<b>1i = 120u</b>
vertical line space:	<b>1v = 20u</b>
centimeter:	<b>1c = 47u</b>
em:	<b>1m = 12u</b>
en:	<b>1n = 12u</b>
pica:	<b>1P = 20u</b>
point:	<b>1p = 1u</b>

**.ns** No-space mode.

**.nx file** Terminate processing of the current input file and begin processing *file* instead.

**.pl NX** Set the page length to *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be **V** or **i**, for vertical spaces (sixths of an inch) or inches, respectively. The default unit of measure is vertical spaces.

**.pn N** Set the page number to *N*.

**.po NX** Set the default page offset to *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be set to **i**, for inches. The default unit of measure is number of characters.

**.rb file** Read binary: read the given *file* and copy it directly to the output without processing.

**.rd prompt**

Read an insertion from the standard input after issuing the given *prompt*.

**.rf XX YY**

Rename font *XX* as *YY*.

**.rm XX** Remove macro or string *XX*.

**.rn XX YY**

Change the name of a macro or string from *XX* to *YY*.

**.rr X** Remove register *X*.

**.rs** Restore normal space mode.

**.so file** Open *file*, read its contents, and process them. When the end of *file* is reached, resume processing the contents of the present file.

**.sp [|]NX**

Space down *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be **i**, for inches, with the default unit of measure being vertical spaces, or sixths of an inch. The optional vertical bar **|** indicates that *N* is an absolute value; for example, **.sp |1.5i** means to move to 1.5 inches below the top of the page, whereas **.sp 1.5i** means to move to 1.5 inches below the present position.

**.ta NX ...**

Set the tab to *N*. The unit of measure *X* can be set to **i**, for inches; the default unit of measure is number of characters, or tenths of an inch. A tab setting, of course, is for an absolute, not a relative, value. If more than one tab setting is defined, the first defines the first tabulation character on a text line, the second defines the second tabulation character,

etc. Any undefined tabulations are thrown away.

**.tc** *X N* Fill any unused space within a tabulation field with the character *X*. If the optional *N* is present, it specifies a width for the character; for example, **.tc . .11** fills tabs with dots spaced one-tenth of an inch apart.

**.ti** *NX* Temporary indent; indent only the next line. Used like the **.in** command, above.

**.tl** '*left*'*center*'*right*'

Set a three-part title, with *left* being set flush left, *center* being centered on the line, and *right* being set flush right. Note the use of the apostrophes to separate the fields; the apostrophes for an undefined field must still be present, or a syntax error will be generated.

**.tm** *message*

Print *message* on the standard error device. This is often used with **.if** or **.ie** commands to indicate an error condition.

**.tr** *xy* Translate character *x* to *y* on output.

**.ul** *N* Underline the next *N* lines.

**.vs** *Np* Reset the normal vertical spacing to *N* points **p**. One point equals 1/72 of an inch; the default setting is 12 points, or 1/6 of an inch.

**.wh** *NX action*

Set a trap to perform *action* when point *N* is reached on every formatted page. If *N* is negative, it is measured up from the bottom of the page. The unit of measure *X* may be **l** or **v**, for inches or number of vertical lines, respectively; the default unit of measure is **v**.

## Escape Sequences

The following lists **nroff**'s escape sequences, or commands that suspend or work around the normal operation of **nroff**. All escape sequences are introduced by the *escape character*, normally the backslash character '\'.

- \{xx** Print special character *xx*, as defined by a **.dc** request. **nroff** reads default special character definitions from file **/usr/lib/roff/nroff/specials.r**. For example, the escape sequence **\(<=** prints the less-than-or-equal-to symbol  $\leq$ .
- \.** Print a literal period.
- \'** Print a literal apostrophe. This should be used in text that will be manipulated by the **\w** escape sequence or the **.tl** primitive.
- \\** Delay interpretation of a backslash character. This normally is used to defer the interpretation of a macro or string from the time it is processed to the time that it is called.
- \-** Print a minus sign.
- \&** Ignore what is normally a command string.
- \\$N** Call macro argument *N*.
- \"** Introduce a comment within your text. All text to the right of this escape sequence will be ignored by **nroff**. This sequence must read **\"** when used at the beginning of a line.
- \\*S** Call string *S*.
- \\*(ST** Call string *ST*.
- \a** Fill the space to the next tab stop with leader dots (normally '.').

- \d** Move *down* by one-half em (**troff**) or one-half line (**nroff**). Normally used to do crude subscripting, or to undo the effect of the **\u** escape sequence.
- \e** Print the escape character in the output text — normally, a backslash.
- \fX** Set font to *X*; this can be either **R**, **I**, **B**, or **P**, for Roman, *italic*, **bold**, or previous font, respectively.
- \h'[|]NX'**  
Move horizontally by *N* units of *X*. If *N* is positive, move to the right; if negative, move to the left. The unit of measure *X* may be **i**, for inches; the default unit of measure is character-widths. When the optional vertical bar '|' is used, move to an absolute position on the line. For example **\h'|1.5i'** moves to 1.5 inches to the right of the left margin, whereas **\h'1.5i'** moves 1.5 inches to the right of the current position.
- \kx** Record the current vertical position into register *x*.
- \lNX'** Draw a horizontal line *N* units of *X* long. The unit of measure *X* may be **i**, for inches; the default unit of measure is character-widths.
- \LNX'** Draw a vertical line; used like **\l**, above.
- \nX** Read the value of number register *X*.
- \n(XY** Read the value of number register *XY*.
- \o'chars'**  
Overstrike the given *chars*, centered on the widest.
- \sN** Change the current size of the type to *N* points.
- \s±N** Increment/decrement the current point size by *N* points.
- \t** Print a tab.
- \u** Move *up* by one-half em (**troff**) or one-half line (**nroff**). Normally used to do crude superscripting, or to reverse the effect of the **\d** escape sequence.
- \vNX'** Vertical motion; move *N* units of *X* vertically. If *N* is positive, move down; if negative, move up. The unit of measure *X* may be **i** or **v**, for inches or vertical spaces (sixths of an inch), respectively. The default unit of measure is **v**.
- \w'argument'**  
Measure the width of *argument*. For example  
`\w'stuff and nonsense'`  
measures the width of the phrase **stuff and nonsense**; or  
`\w'$1'`  
measures the width of the first argument passed to a macro, whatever that argument might happen to be. Therefore, the command **.in \w'\$1'** will indent a line by the width of argument 1.
- \Xdd** Output the character with hexadecimal value *dd*, where *dd* are two hexadecimal digits. This escape sequence is unique to the COHERENT implementation of **troff**. Code that uses it will behave differently when ported to other implementations.
- \zc** Print character *c* with zero width.

**\<newline>**

Ignore this **<newline>** character.

**\{** Begin conditional commands; used after an **.if**, an **.le**, or an **.el** command.

**\{\** Begin conditional commands, and ignore the following carriage return.

**\}** End conditional commands.

### ***Dedicated Number Registers***

The following lists the number registers that are predefined in **nroff**. You can read or reset these registers to suit the need of any special formats that you wish to devise.

**.\$** Number of arguments passed to a macro.

**%** Present page number.

**.c** Number of lines read from the current input file. This can be used to help set an input-line trap.

**.d** Current vertical position in the current diversion. If no diversion is opened, this register's contents equal those of the **nl** register, described below.

**dl** Maximum width of last completed diversion.

**dn** Height of last completed diversion.

**dw** Day of the week (one through seven; one indicates Sunday).

**dy** Day of the month, as set by COHERENT.

**.F** Name of input file being read. This is very useful for printing error messages. This register applies only the COHERENT implementation of **nroff**. Code that uses it is not portable to other implementations.

**.h** Vertical position of the current line's base-line. This number register gives you the best idea of your current vertical position on the page.

**hp** Horizontal position on current input line.

**.i** Present amount of indentation.

**.j** Current type and mode of text adjustment.

**.l** Present line length.

**ln** Current line number in the output.

**mo** Month, as set by COHERENT.

**.n** Width of the text portion of the previously printed line. Useful for underlining, shading, or otherwise modifying the previous line of text. For example

`\l'\n(.nu'`

draws a line under the previously printed line of text.

**nl** Vertical position of the base-line of the last printed line of text.

**.o** Present page offset.

**.p** Page length.

- .s**     Size of the type currently being printed, in points.
- sb**    Depth to which a string hangs below its base line. This is generated by the width function.
- st**    Height to which a string extends above its base line. This is generated by the width function.
- .t**    Distance to the next trap. Check this register to see if the object you wish to print on a page will fit.
- .v**    Size of a line, in points. This is set by the **vs** primitive.
- yr**    Last two digits of the year, as set by COHERENT.
- .z**    Name of the current diversion.

### Printer Configuration

**nroff** reads several files in directory **/usr/lib/roff/nroff** to find printer-specific information. It reads special character definitions from file **specials.r**. If file **fonts.r** exists, **nroff** reads font information from it; **nroff** understands only Roman, bold and italic fonts, but **.rf** requests may define alternative font names. If file **.pre** exists, **nroff** copies it at the beginning of the output. If file **.post** exists, **nroff** copies it at the end of the output. In landscape mode, **nroff** looks for files **.pre\_land** and **.post\_land** instead. You can change these files as desired to include printer-specific commands in **nroff** output.

### Miscellaneous

The **-ms** macro package is kept in file **/usr/lib/tmac.s**. The macros in this package are more than sufficient for most ordinary text processing. Beginners should work through this macro package rather than trying to deal at once with the basic program.

The tutorial to **nroff**, which is included with this manual, provides a detailed introduction to **nroff**. Error messages for **nroff** appear in the appendix to this manual.

### Files

**/tmp/rof\*** — Temporary files  
**/usr/lib/tmac.\*** — Standard macro packages  
**/usr/lib/roff/nroff/** — Support files directory  
**/usr/lib/roff/nroff/.pre** — Output prefix  
**/usr/lib/roff/nroff/.pre\_land** — Output prefix, landscape mode  
**/usr/lib/roff/nroff/.post** — Output suffix  
**/usr/lib/roff/nroff/.post\_land** — Output suffix, landscape mode  
**/usr/lib/roff/nroff/fonts.r** — Alternative font name definitions  
**/usr/lib/roff/nroff/specials.r** — Special character definitions

### See Also

**col, commands, deroff, man, ms, troff**  
*nroff, The Text-Formatting Language*, tutorial

### Notes

You should avoid using characters with values 0x01 through 0x1F, and those with values 0x80 through 0x9F. These are reserved for internal use by **nroff** and **troff**, and using them in your input will cause errors.

### NUL — Definition

**NUL** is the ASCII null character ' '. Do not confuse it with the null pointer **NULL** or with the empty string **""**. A C-language string is always terminated with a NUL. The empty string **""** is an array of **chars** with only one element, namely a NUL.

**See Also****ASCII, definitions, NULL****NULL — Definition**

**NULL** is defined in the header file **stddef.h**. It is the null pointer (**char \*)0**, which is a pointer initialized to zero. Numerous routines return this value to indicate failure; it is useful as a return value because it points nowhere, and so removes the possibility of accidentally destroying a section of memory after failure.

**See Also****definitions, NUL, pointer, stdio.h****null — Device Driver**

The 'bit bucket'

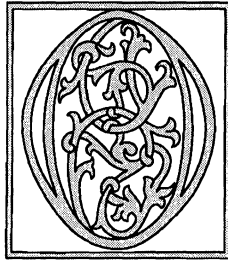
All data written to the special file **/dev/null** is thrown away (sent to the "bit bucket"). This is useful, for example, to test a program's side effects while ignoring its output.

A read from file **/dev/null** returns end of file (zero bytes of data). The shell **sh** uses **/dev/null** as input to background processes.

**Files****/dev/null****See Also****device drivers, sh****nybble — Definition**

A **nybble** is four bits, or half of an eight-bit byte. The term is generally used to refer to the low four bits or the high four bits of a byte. Thus, a byte may be said to have a "low nybble" and a "high nybble". One nybble encodes one hexadecimal digit.

**See Also****bit, byte, definitions**



### object format — Definition

An **object format** describes the form of compiled program that still contains relocation information. The linker **ld** reads file in object format to create executable files.

COHERENT creates object modules that are in the format **l.out**.

### See Also

definitions, l.out, ld

### od — Command

Print an octal dump of a file

**od [-bcdox] [file] [ [+] offset[.][b] ]**

**od** prints the specified *file* as a sequence of octal numbers, or machine words. If no *file* is specified, **od** dumps the standard input.

The following options set the format of **od**'s output:

- b Bytes in default base
- c Bytes in ASCII characters
- d Words in decimal
- o Words in octal
- x Words in hexadecimal

The default base is octal on the PDP-11 and hexadecimal on the i80286, Z-8001, and M68000 families of microprocessors.

Dumping can start at position *offset* into the file. The specified *offset* is octal unless the '.' suffix is present to signify decimal. *offset* is in bytes unless the **b** suffix is present to signify 512-byte blocks.

### See Also

ASCII, commands, conv, db, scat, strings

### open() — System Call

Open a file

**#include <sys/fcntl.h>**

**int open(file, type[, mode])**

**char \*file; int type; [int mode;]**

**open()** opens a *file* to receive data, or to have its data read. When it opens *file*, **open()** returns a file descriptor, which is a small, positive integer that identifies the open *file* for subsequent calls to **read()**, **write()**, **close()**, **dup()**, **dup2()**, or **lseek()**. After *file* is opened, reading or writing begins at byte 0.

The second argument, *type*, determines how the file is opened. It must take one of the following

values:

<b>O_RDONLY</b>	Read only
<b>O_WRONLY</b>	Write only
<b>O_RDWR</b>	Read and write

Under the COHERENT 386 version of **open()**, you can also OR any combination of the following values into *type*, to elaborate how *file* is to be manipulated:

**O\_CREAT**

If *file* does not exist, create it. If this flag is set the third argument, *mode*, sets the mode on the file. Note that this mode will be masked by **umask()**. See the Lexicon article on the command **chmod** for details.

**O\_APPEND**

All writes will be preceded by an automatic seek to end of *file*.

**O\_SYNC**

All writes to *file* will be synchronous to disk. This means that **write()** will not return until the data have been physically written to disk.

**O\_NOCTTY**

If *file* names a terminal device, do not set it to be the controlling terminal for the process.

**O\_TRUNC**

If *file* exists, truncate it to zero length. You must have write permissions on *file* to use this flag.

**O\_EXCL**

Exclusive open: if *file* is already opened (even by another process), then fail. Once an exclusive open succeeds, no other process can open *file* until it is closed. If **O\_CREAT** and **O\_EXCL** are both set and the file exists, the open fails.

### Example

This example copies the file named in **argv[1]** to the one named in **argv[2]** by using system calls. It demonstrates the COHERENT-286 version of **open()**, plus the system calls **close()**, **read()**, **write()**, and **creat()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <sys/fcntl.h>
#define BUFSIZE (20*512)
char buf[BUFSIZE];

void fatal(s)
char *s;
{
    fprintf(stderr, "copy: %s\n", s);
    exit(1);
}

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    register int ifd, ofd;
    register unsigned int n;
```



```

if (argc != 3)
    fatal("Usage: copy source destination");
if ((ifd = open(argv[1], O_RDONLY)) == -1)
    fatal("cannot open input file");
if ((ofd = creat(argv[2], 0666)) == -1)
    fatal("cannot open output file");

while ((n = read(ifd, buf, BUFSIZE)) != 0) {
    if (n == -1)
        fatal("read error");
    if (write(ofd, buf, n) != n)
        fatal("write error");
}

if (close(ifd) == -1 || close(ofd) == -1)
    fatal("cannot close");
exit(0);
}

```

### See Also

**fopen()**, **system calls**

### Diagnostics

**open()** returns -1 if the file does not exist, if the caller lacks permission, or if a system resource is exhausted.

### Notes

**open()** is a low-level call that passes data directly to COHERENT. It should not be mixed with high-level calls, such as **fread()**, **fwrite()**, or **fopen()**.

### opendir() — General Function

Open a directory stream

#include <sys/types.h>

#include <dirent.h>

DIR \*opendir (dirname)

char \*dirname;

The COHERENT function **opendir()** is one of a set of COHERENT routines that manipulate directories in a device-independent manner. It opens a directory stream and connects the directory *dirname* with it.

**opendir()** returns a pointer to the directory stream it has created. It returns NULL if it cannot access *dirname*, if *dirname* is not a directory, or if it cannot create the directory stream (perhaps due to insufficient memory).

If an error occurs, **opendir()** exits and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Example

The following example searches the current working directory for entry **FOO**:

```

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <dirent.h>

```

```
main()
{
    DIR *dirp
    struct dirent *dp;

    dirp = opendir( "." );

    while ( (dp = readdir( dirp )) != NULL )
        if ( strcmp( dp->d_name, "FOO" ) == 0 ) {
            printf("Found FOO\n");
            (void) closedir(dirp);
            return FOUND;
        }

    (void) closedir( dirp );
    printf("FOO not found\n");
    return NOT_FOUND;
}
```

### See Also

**closedir()**, **dirent.h**, **general functions**, **getdents()**, **readdir()**, **rewinddir()**, **seekdir()**, **telldir()**

### Notes

The **dirent** routines buffer directories; and because directory entries can appear and disappear as other users manipulate the directory, your application should continually rescan a directory to keep an accurate picture of its active entries.

**opendir()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

The COHERENT implementation of the **dirent** routines was written by D. Gwynn.

### **operator** — Definition

An **operator** is a function that is built into the C language. It usually relates one operand to another. For example, the statement

$1+2$

relates the operands **1** and **2** through the operation of addition; on the other hand, the statement

$A>B$

relates the operands **A** and **B** logically, by asserting that the former is greater than the latter; whereas

$A=B$

relates the operands **A** and **B** by assigning the value of the latter to the former. The following is a table of the C operators:

*	Multiplication
/	Division
%	Remainder
+	Addition
-	Subtraction
<	Less than

---

<=	Less than or equal to
>	Greater than
>=	Greater than or equal to
&&	Logical AND
!=	Inequality
!	Logical negation
	logical OR
&	Bitwise AND
^	Bitwise exclusive OR
~	Bitwise complement
	Bitwise inclusive OR
<<	Bitwise shift left
>>	Bitwise shift right
=	Assign
+=	Increment and assign
-=	Decrement and assign
*=	Multiply and assign
/=	Divide and assign
%=	Modulus and assign
++	Increment
--	Decrement
==	Equivalence
&=	Bitwise AND and assign
^=	Bitwise exclusive OR and assign
=	Bitwise inclusive OR and assign
<<=	Bitwise shift left and assign
>>=	Bitwise shift right and assign
*	Indirection
&	Render an address
()	Function indicator
[]	Array indicator
->	Structure pointer
.	Structure member
? :	Conditional expression
<b>sizeof</b>	size of an object

### **Precedence**

*Precedence* refers to the order in which C executes operators. The C languages assigns a level of precedence to each operator. Operators are executed in the order of their precedence level, from highest to lowest.

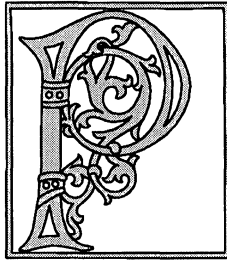
The following table summarizes the precedence of C operators. They are listed in *descending* order of precedence: those listed higher in the table are executed before those lower in the table. Operators listed on the same line have the same level of precedence, and the implementation determines the order in which they are executed. If you use two or more such operators in the same expression, you would be wise to use parentheses to indicate exactly the order in which you want the operators executed.

<i>Operator</i>	<i>Associativity</i>
() [] -> .	Left to right
! ~ ++ -- - (type) * & sizeof	Right to left
* / %	Left to right
+ -	Left to right
<< >>	Left to right
< <= > >=	Left to right
== !=	Left to right
&	Left to right
^	Left to right
	Left to right
&&	Left to right
	Left to right
? :	Right to left
= += -= *= /= %=	Right to left
,	Left to right

You can always determine precedence in an expression by enclosing sub-expressions within parentheses: the expression enclosed within the innermost parentheses is always executed first.

***See Also***

**definitions, sizeof**



## **PAGER** — Environmental Variable

Specify Output Filter

**PAGER**="*command options*"

The environmental variable **PAGER** directs programs such as **msgs**, **mail** and others to "pipe" their output into the *command* specified as the value of **PAGER**. For example, the following sets up **/bin/scat** as the desired output filter and passes a command line option to it to specify that the output screen has 20 lines.

```
export PAGER="exec /bin/scat -l20"
```

### **See Also**

**scat**, **environmental variables**, **mail**, **msgs**

## **param.h** — Header File

Define machine-specific parameters

**#include** <sys/param.h>

**param.h** defines machine-specific parameters. These parameters set limits on the operation of the COHERENT system; e.g., the number of files that can be open at any one time.

### **See Also**

**header files**

## **passwd** — Command

Set/change login password

**passwd** [*user*]

**passwd** sets or changes the password for the specified *user*. If *user* is not specified, **passwd** changes the password of the caller.

**passwd** requests that the old password (if any) be typed, to ensure the caller is who he claims to be. Next it requests a new password, and then requests it again in case of typing errors. **passwd** will ask for a longer password if the one given is too short or not unusual enough.

### **Files**

**/etc/passwd** — Encrypted passwords

### **See Also**

**commands**, **crypt()**, **login**

### **Notes**

One good way to construct a password is to concatenate two common words plus a punctuation mark. For example, "dog@collar" or "hamlet&horatio" are passwords that are both easy to remember and difficult to guess.

**passwd — File Format**

Password file format

The file **/etc/passwd** holds information about each user who has permission to use the COHERENT system. This information is read by the commands **login** and **passwd** whenever a user attempts to log in, to ensure that that user is really himself and not an impostor.

**/etc/passwd** holds one record for each user; each record, in turn, consists of seven colon-separated fields, as follows:

```
name:password:user_id:group_id:comments:home_dir:shell
```

*name* is the user's login name. *password* is his encrypted password. *user\_id* is a unique number that is also used to identify the user. *group\_id* identifies the group to which the user belongs, if any. *comments* holds miscellaneous data, such as names, telephone numbers, or office numbers. *home\_dir* gives the user's home directory. Finally, *shell* gives the program that is first executed when the user logs on; in most instances, this is an interactive shell (default, **/bin/sh**).

**/etc/passwd** includes a special entry for **remacc**. This entry controls access to the system by remote devices (for example, by a modem). If an entry in file **/etc/tty**s indicates that a serial line is remote (as set by placing an 'r' as the second character in its entry), COHERENT prompts

```
Remote access password:
```

when a user attempts to log in on that line.

To set the password for **remacc**, enter the following command while running as the superuser.

```
passwd remacc
```

**See Also**

**file formats, passwd (command)**

**Notes**

**/etc/passwd** can be read by anyone: if access to it were refused to a user, he could not log on. Thus, the passwords encrypted within it can be read and copied by anyone, and so may be vulnerable to brute-force decryption. For this reason, close attention should be paid to passwords: they should not be common words or names, preferably mix cases or use unique spellings, and be at least six characters long.

**paste — Command**

Merge lines of files

**paste [-s] [-d list] file ...**

**paste** merges corresponding lines from multiple input files. By default, **paste** uses the **<tab>** character to delineate texts from different files. **paste** writes the merged text to standard output; thus, **paste** can be used at the head of a shell pipeline.

If **paste** reads EOF from any of the input files while other files still contain data, it substitutes blank lines as input from the file that has ended.

**Options**

**paste** recognizes the following command-line options:

**-d list**

Use the characters in *list* to separate the output fields. The characters in *list* are taken in sequence and used circularly, i.e., taken in order until the end of *list* is reached, then returning to the first character in *list*. Normally, **paste** uses the **<tab>** character to delineate

the output fields. The following character sequences have special meaning when encountered in *list*:

```

\\    Output a single backslash character
\t    Output a <tab> character
\n    Output a <newline> character
\0    Output a null string (i.e., no separator between output fields)

```

- s** Output successive lines from each input *file* across the page, with each input line separated from the next by a <tab> character. After all input lines from a given file have been concatenated, terminate the output line with a <newline> character and repeat the process on the next input file.

### Example

The following two files will be used for subsequent examples. **File1** contains:

```

File1_Line1
File1_Line2
File1_Line3
File1_Line4

```

**File2** contains:

```

File2_Line1
File2_Line2
File2_Line3
File2_Line4

```

The command

```
paste File1 File2
```

generates the following output:

```

File1_Line1      File2_Line1
File1_Line2      File2_Line2
File1_Line3      File2_Line3
File1_Line4      File2_Line4

```

Adding the option **-s** yields the output:

```

File1_Line1      File1_Line2      File1_Line3      File1_Line4
File2_Line1      File2_Line2      File2_Line3      File2_Line4

```

### See Also

**awk**, **commands**, **cut**, **sed**

### Notes

**paste** is copyright © 1989 by The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

**paste** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

**patch** — Command

Modify portions of an executable

**/conf/patch [-k] image symbol=value ...**

The command **patch** alters the value of datum *symbol* to *value* in executable *image*. In general, you should use **patch** to alter configuration data (constants) in programs, in device drivers, and in the COHERENT kernel. For **patch** to work with a symbolic constant, *image* must have a symbol table that includes information about *symbol*. Therefore, executables that have been processed by the command **strip** cannot be **patched**.

Option **-k** patches the kernel memory of the running COHERENT system via device **/dev/kmem**, as well as the image. Only the superuser **root** can access kernel memory from the **patch** command.

Both *symbol* and *value* may consist of numeric constants or a symbol from the symbol table of *image*.

Please note that the COHERENT 286 kernel references variables with a trailing underscore character; for example, **atparm\_**. The COHERENT 386 kernel, however, does *not* use a trailing underscore; for example, **atparm**. The following descriptions apply to both COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386, but the notation will be in the COHERENT-386 form.

*symbol* and *value* expressions may include an optional numeric offset. In addition, the *value* field may optionally be composed of the construct **makedev(major,minor)**, where *major* and *minor* are the "major" and "minor" device numbers, respectively, resulting in a **dev\_t**-sized device type.

Numeric constants default to decimal, but may be specified with a leading **0** prefix to specify an octal number or a **0x** prefix to specify a hexadecimal number.

The size of the altered *symbol* field is, by default, **sizeof(int)**. **patch** recognizes the following explicit size overrides:

- :c** The size of the altered field is **sizeof(char)**.
- :i** The size of the altered field is **sizeof(int)**.
- :l** The size of the altered field is **sizeof(long)**.
- :s** The size of the altered field is **sizeof(short)**.

**Examples**

The following example patches the value of kernel variable **KBBOOT** in the **nkb** keyboard device driver to disallow rebooting of the system via the traditional **<ctrl><alt><del>** key sequence. See Lexicon article **nkb** for details. Note that this command changes **/coherent** on the boot device, not the copy of **/coherent** that is now running in memory.

```
/conf/patch /coherent KBBOOT=0
```

The second example patches the value of character variable **myvar** in user-supplied program **myprog** to hexadecimal value **12**:

```
/conf/patch myprog myvar=0x12:c
```

The final example modifies the default "root" and "pipe" devices for COHERENT-386 kernel **/testcoh** to be AT/IDE hard-disk partition **/dev/at0b**.

```
/conf/patch /testcoh 'rootdev=makedev(11,1):s' 'pipedev=makedev(11,1):s'
```

Note that in this last example, the arguments to **patch** must be quoted to avoid interpretation by the shell.



**See Also**

commands, device drivers

**Notes**

No spaces can appear around the equal sign in the **symbol=constant** construct.

Using **patch** to modify the kernel data area of a running system is extremely dangerous. It should only be done by experienced writers of device drivers. *Caveat utilitor!*

**path() — General Function**

Path name for a file

```
#include <path.h>
```

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
char *path(path, filename, mode);
```

```
char *path, *filename;
```

```
int mode;
```

The function **path()** builds a path name for a file.

*path* points to the list of directories to be searched for the file. You can use the function **getenv()** to obtain the current definition of the environmental variable **PATH**, or use the default setting of **PATH** found in the header file **path.h**, or, you can define *path* by hand.

*filename* is the name of the file for which **path** is to search. *mode* is the mode in which you wish to access the file, as follows:

- 1 Execute the file
- 2 Write to the file
- 4 Read the file

**path()** calls the function **access()** to check the access status of *filename*. If **path()** finds the file you requested and the file is available in the mode that you requested, it returns a pointer to a static area in which it has built the appropriate path name. It returns NULL if either *path* or *filename* are NULL, if the search failed, or if the requested file is not available in the correct mode.

**Example**

This example accepts a file name and a search mode. It then tries to find the file in one of the directories named in the **PATH** environmental variable.

```
#include <path.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

void
fatal(message)
char *message;
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", message);
    exit(1);
}
```

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    char *env, *pathname;
    int mode;

    if (argc != 3)
        fatal("Usage: findpath filename mode");

    if(((mode=atoi(argv[2]))>4) || (mode==3) || (mode<1))
        fatal("modes: 1=execute, 2=write, 3=read");

    env = getenv("PATH");
    if ((pathname = path(env, argv[1], mode)) != NULL) {
        printf("PATH = %s\n", env);
        printf("pathname = %s\n", pathname);
        return;
    } else
        fatal("search failed");
}
```

### See Also

**access()**, **access.h**, **general functions**, **PATH**, **path.h**

### **PATH** — Environmental Variable

Directories that hold executable files

**PATH** names a default set of directories that are searched by COHERENT when it seeks an executable file. You can set **PATH** with the command **PATH**. For example, typing

```
PATH=/bin:/usr/bin
```

tells COHERENT to search for executable files first in **/bin**, and then in **/usr/bin**. Note the use of the colon ':' to separate directory names.

### See Also

**environmental variables**, **path.h**

### **path.h** — Header File

Define/declare constants and functions used with **path**

**#include <path.h>**

**path.h** declares constants used to handle the **path** environmental variable. These include, among others, the default path, the path separator, and the list separator. **path.h** also declares the function **path**.

### See Also

**header files**, **path()**, **PATH**

### **paths** — Technical Information

Routing data base for mail

**/usr/lib/mail/paths**

File **/usr/lib/mail/paths** holds the data base used by the COHERENT mail system to route mail. Each line gives routing information to a host, and has the following format:

```
host route [cost]
```

*host* names a UUCP host. Because **smail** uses a binary-search algorithm when searching the data base for a given host name, the lines in **paths** must be sorted into ascending order. (See the Lexicon entry for **bsearch** for details on binary searches.) **smail** ignores case when it searches **paths**, so you should convert each host name to lower case before you sort **paths**.

The *route* field details the route by which mail can travel from your system to *host*. Note that it includes a **printf**-style format string.

The optional field *cost* is used by the COHERENT mail system to decide whether to queue outbound UUCP mail, or to invoke **uucico** to deliver the mail immediately. If the *cost* is at or below **smail**'s "queueing threshold", then **smail** will attempt to deliver it immediately. This speeds mail delivery between hosts that enjoy an inexpensive UUCP link, such as a hard-wired line, and batches mail that must be sent over expensive media, such as long-distance telephone. If the *cost* field is absent, **smail** gives this host a cost value above that of its queueing threshold.

### Example

The following gives a sample **paths** file for a COHERENT system that its owner has named **lepanto**.

```
friend      friend!%s 300
hubsys      hubsys!%s 95
lepanto     %s 0
lepanto.ampr.org %s 0
smart-host  hubsys!%s 95
widget      hubsys!widget!%s 95
```

As this file shows, **lepanto** is linked to systems **hubsys** and **friend**. The cost of 95 associated with **hubsys** is low, and is appropriate to a low-cost link, such as a hard-wired link; On the other hand, the cost of 300 associated with **friend** is high, which indicates that the connection with **friend** is high-cost, such as a long-distance telephone connection. If cost is 100 or greater, mail will be queued for later delivery. A cost below 100 tells **smail** to attempt immediate delivery.

In this example, machine **lepanto** is registered in the **ampr.org** Amateur Packet Radio domain. Note that machine name **lepanto** appears in both conventional and domain forms in order to help resolve addressing.

In order to avoid having to maintain a huge data base, the owner of **lepanto** uses **hubsys** as a *smart host*. The **smart-host** designation in the **paths** data base signals **smail** to forward any mail that it doesn't know how to deliver onto site **hubsys**.

Finally, **lepanto** can use **hubsys** to pass mail on to **widget**. Thus, when **rmail** receives mail for system **widget**, it will transmit it to **hubsys** for forwarding. Note that **hubsys**'s administrator must have given **lepanto** permission to use it as a mail relay, or this would not work.

### See Also

mail, technical information

### pattern — Definition

A **pattern** is any combination of ASCII characters and wildcard characters that can be interpreted by a command. Patterns are also known as "regular expressions".

The function **pnmatch** compares two patterns and signals if they match.

### See Also

definitions, **egrep**, **pnmatch()**, wildcards

**pause() — System Call**

Wait for signal

**int pause()**

**pause()** suspends execution until the process receives a signal. The awaited signal could come from **kill()**, **alarm()**, or the controlling terminal.

**See Also****alarm(), kill(), sleep(), system calls****pax — Command**

Portable archive interchange

**pax** is an archiving utility that reads and writes **tar** and **cpio** formats, both the traditional ones and the extended formats specified in IEEE document 1003.1. It handles multi-volume archives and automatically determines the format of an archive while reading it.

**pax** supports three user interfaces: **tar**, **cpio**, and **pax**. The **pax** interface was designed by IEEE 1003.2 as a compromise in the chronic controversy over which of **tar** or **cpio** interfaces is superior.

**See Also****commands, cpio, tar, ustar****Notes**

To avoid confusion with the traditional COHERENT **tar** command, the **tar** command distributed with **pax** is renamed **ustar**.

See the compressed **tar** archive **/usr/src/alien/pax.tar.Z** for full documentation on **pax**, **cpio**, and **ustar**.

**pax** was developed by Mark H. Colburn and sponsored by The USENIX Association. It is provided in binary form per the licensing terms set forth by the author. See file **/usr/src/alien/pax.tar.Z** for licensing terms. Copyright © 1989 by Mark H. Colburn. All rights reserved.

**pax** is provided in binary form per the licensing terms set forth by the author. It is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor*.

**pclose() — STDIO Function (libc)**

Close a pipe

**#include <stdio.h>****int pclose(fp)****FILE \*fp;**

**pclose()** closes the pipe pointed to by **fp**, which must have been opened by the function **popen()**.

**pclose()** awaits the completion of the child process and performs other cleanup. It returns the value from a **WAIT** done on the child process. This value includes information in addition to the “simple” exit value of the child process.

**Files****<stdio.h>****See Also****fclose(), fopen(), pipe(), popen(), sh, STDIO, system(), wait()**

## Diagnostics

**pclose()** returns -1 if *fp* had not been created by a call to **popen()**. Otherwise, **pclose()** returns the exit status of the *command*, in the format described in the entry for **wait()**: exit status in the high byte, signal information in the low byte.

## Permissions — File Format

Format of UUCP permissions file  
**/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions**

The file **Permissions** describes the remote sites that can communicate via UUCP with your COHERENT system, and lists the programs that each site can execute on your system. Before a remote site can communicate with your COHERENT system, that site must have an entry in **Permissions**.

When the command **uucico** attempts to execute a file transfer to or from a remote site, it checks to see that there is an entry for the site in **Permissions**. If your **Permissions** entries are not written correctly, you risk a breach of system security.

Each entry in **Permissions** takes one of two forms:

- **LOGNAME** entries detail the permissions granted to an individual user when he calls your system from a remote site.
- **MACHINE** entries detail the permissions for the remote sites that you call.

You can combine the two types of entries into one entry if the permissions are the same in both entries.

An entry in **Permissions** consists of pairs of entries of the form *OPTION=value*, each separated by one or more white-space characters. The *OPTION* side must be in upper-case characters, and the *value* side in lower-case characters. At the end of each line (except the last), you must include a backslash character ('\') to continue the current line onto the next one. Blank lines between entries are ignored.

For the **READ**, **NOREAD**, **WRITE**, and **NOWRITE** fields, described below, the value specified is a sequence of one or more directories on your computer, separated only by colons (i.e., no white space allowed).

An entry in **Permissions** can have up to ten fields:

### 1. MACHINE

This field names the remote system that you wish to communicate with. It is limited to seven characters. (Future releases of COHERENT will increase this limit.)

### 2. LOGNAME

This field specifies the login name that the remote system will use when it calls your system. Please note that if the remote site attempts to log into your system with a login name other than the one specified by this field, **uucico** will terminate the call for security reasons. There must be a valid entry in file **/etc/passwd** for the name specified in this field.

### 3. READ

This entry names the directories on your system that the UUCP commands can access. You must give the full path name of the directory. The default is **/usr/spool/uucppublic**.

### 4. NOREAD

When a directory is entered in the **READ** field, all of its sub-directories become available for reading. If you wish to make any of its sub-directories unreadable by the remote site, name it here. You must give the full path name of the directory. The default is NULL.

**5. WRITE**

Here, name the directories on your system into which the command **uucico** can deposit files. You must give the full path name of the directory. The default is **/usr/spool/uucppublic**.

**6. NOWRITE**

When a directory is entered in the **WRITE** field, the remote system can write into all of its sub-directories. If you wish to make any of its sub-directories unwriteable by the remote site, enter it here. You must give the full path name of the directory. The default is **NULL**.

**7. COMMANDS**

Here, name the commands that the remote system can execute on your computer. The two most basic commands to put in this entry are **rmail** and **uucp**. This lets the remote site send electronic mail to you and to use **uucp** to transfer files. You may add other commands, but the shorter the list, the greater your level of system security. The default is **rmail**.

**8. REQUEST**

This entry asks if the remote site can request to transfer files from your system. Respond **yes** if security is not an issue. If the value is **no**, only your system can request that files be transferred to the remote system. The default is **no**.

**9. SENDFILES**

This entry asks if your system can initiate file transfers to the remote site. Your response can be **yes**, **no**, or **call**. The default is **call**, which allows files to be sent only when your system calls the remote site. A value of **yes** allows your system to transfer files to the remote system regardless of which system originated the conversation. A value of **no** prohibits any file transfers from your system to the remote system.

**10. MYNAME**

This field contains the site name that you have been assigned by the system administrator of the remote site. It must contain no more than seven characters. If **MYNAME** is defined, its value is used as your site name rather than the value in **/etc/uucpname**. This is useful in situations where your site name is already used by an existing account on the remote site you wish to call, or when the remote site does not support "anonymous" UUCP access.

When writing your Permissions file, keep these considerations in mind:

- White space is not allowed before or after the '=' sign.
- Each line corresponds to one entry. You may continue to the next line by ending the line with a backslash character ('\').
- If a field has more than one value, use a colon to separate them.

**Example**

The following example gives an entry in **Permissions** to set up a connection with the Mark Williams Company's UUCP BBS:

```
MACHINE=mwcbbs MYNAME=bbsuser \  
REQUEST=yes SENDFILES=yes \  
COMMANDS=rmail:uucp \  
READ=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp \  
WRITE=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp
```

**See Also**

**file formats, UUCP**

**perror()** — General Function (libc)

System call error messages

```
#include <errno.h>
```

```
perror(string)
```

```
char *string; extern int sys_nerr; extern char *sys_errlist[];
```

**perror()** prints an error message on the standard error device. The message consists of the argument *string*, followed by a brief description of the last system call that failed. The external variable **errno** contains the last error number. Normally, *string* is the perror of the command that failed or a file perror.

The external array **sys\_errlist** gives the list of messages used by **perror()**. The external **sys\_nerr** gives the number of messages in the list.

**See Also**

**errno**, **errno.h**, **general functions**

**phone** — Command

Print numbers and addresses from phone directory

```
phone person ...
```

The command **phone** searches a number of telephone directory files for each *person* argument that is given. Any lines that matches any of the *person* arguments is printed. Typically, such lines contain the telephone number, name, and address of a person or organization. Lower-case letters in *person* can be matched by both the same letter and the corresponding upper-case letter in the phone directory.

The user may supply his own phone directory by setting the (exported) shell variable **PHONEBOOK**, to the name of that file. If given, this file is searched first. Then, the system-wide phone book is always searched.

**Files**

**\$PHONEBOOK** — User-supplied phonebook (searched first)

**/usr/pub/phonebook** — System-wide phone directory

**See Also**

**commands**

**Diagnostics**

**phone** exits with non-zero status if a call fails. A diagnostic message is written to **stderr** if no matching entries are found.

**pipe** — Definition

A *pipe* directs the output stream of one program into the input stream of another program, thus coupling the programs together. With pipes, two or more programs (or *filters*) can be coupled together to perform complex transforms on streams of data. For example, in the following command

```
cat DATAFILE1 DATAFILE2 | sort | uniq -d
```

the filter **cat** opens two files and prints their contents. Its output is piped to the filter **sort**, which sorts it. The output of **sort** is piped, in turn, to the filter **uniq**, which (with the **-d** option) prints a single copy of each line that is duplicated within the file. Thus, with this simple set of commands and pipes, a user can quickly print a list of all lines that appear in both files.

**See Also**

definitions, filter, named pipe

**pipe()** — System Call

Open a pipe

**int** pipe(*fd*)**int** *fd*[2];

A *pipe* is an interprocess communication mechanism. **pipe()** creates a pipe, typically to construct pipelines in the shell **sh**.

**pipe()** fills in *fd*[0] and *fd*[1] with *read* and *write* file descriptors, respectively. The file descriptors allow the transfer of data from one or more writers to one or more readers. Pipes are buffered to 5,120 bytes. If more than 5,120 bytes are written into the pipe, the **write()** call will not return until the reader has removed sufficient data for the **write()** to complete. If a **read()** occurs on an empty pipe, its completion awaits the writing of data.

When all writing processes close their write file descriptors, the reader receives an end of file indication. A write on a pipe with no remaining readers generates a **SIGPIPE** signal to the caller.

**pipe()** is generally called just before **fork()**. Once the parent and child processes are created, the unused file descriptors should be closed in each process.

**Example**

The following example prints the word **Waiting** until a line of data is entered. It illustrates how to use **pipe()**, **fstat()**, and **fork()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <sys/stat.h>          /* for stat */
#include <sgtty.h>             /* for stty/gtty functions */

static int fd[2];             /* pipe array */

main()
{
    printf("This prints 'Waiting' every second until a 'q' is hit.\n");

    /*
     * Pipe may also be constructed by /etc/mknod
     * If it is desired to have tasks communicate where
     * they are not parent and child. In this case make
     * sure the constructed pipe has the correct owner and
     * permissions. Such pipe may be used exactly like this
     * but open()ed on each side.
     */

    if (-1 == pipe(fd)) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Cannot open pipe\n");
        exit(1);
    }
}
```



```

    if (fork())
        parentProcess();
    else
        childProcess();
    exit(0);
}

parentProcess()
{
    struct stat s;
    char buff;

    for (buff = ' '; 'q' != buff;) {
        fstat(fd[0], &s);    /* get status of pipe */
        if (s.st_size) {    /* char in the pipe */
            read(fd[0], &buff, sizeof(buff));
            printf("Got a '%c'\n", buff);
            continue;
        }

        /*
         * This can be any process, it can use system()
         * or exec()
         */
        printf("Waiting\n");
        sleep(1);
    }
}

childProcess()
{
    struct sgttyb  os, ns;
    char buff;

    gtty(fileno(stdin), &os); /* save old state */
    ns = os;                  /* get base of new state */
    ns.sg_flags |= RAW;       /* process each character as entered */
    ns.sg_flags &= ~(ECHO|CRMOD); /* no echo for now... */
    stty(fileno(stdin), &ns); /* set mode */

    do {
        buff = getchar();    /* wait for the keyboard */
        write(fd[1], &buff, sizeof(buff));
    } while ('q' != buff);

    stty(fileno(stdin), &os); /* reset mode */
}

```

**See Also**

close(), mkknod(), read(), sh, signal(), system calls, write()

**Diagnostics**

**pipe()** returns zero on successful calls, or -1 if it could not create the pipe.

If it is necessary to create a pipe between tasks that are not parent and child, use **/etc/mknod** to create a named pipe. These named pipes can be opened and used by different programs for communication. Remember to give them the correct owner and permissions.

**pnmatch()** — String Function

Match string pattern

```
int pnmatch(string, pattern, flag)
char *string, *pattern; int flag;
```

**pnmatch()** matches *string* with *pattern*, which is a regular expression. The shell **sh** uses patterns for file name expansion and **case** statement expressions.

**pnmatch()** returns one if *pattern* matches *string*, and zero if it does not. Each character in *pattern* must exactly match a character in *string*; however, the wildcards "\*", "?", "[", and "]", and "[!" and "]" can be used in *pattern* to expand the range of matching.

*flag* must be either zero or one: zero means that *pattern* must match *string* exactly, whereas one means that *pattern* can match any part of *string*. In the latter case, the wildcards " and \$" can also be used in *pattern*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **fgets()**.

**See Also**

**egrep**, **general functions**, **grep**, **sh**

**Notes**

*flag* must be zero or one for **pnmatch()** to yield predictable results.

**pnmatch()** is a more powerful version of the ANSI functions **strstr()** and **strcmp()**.

For an **egrep**-style version of **pnmatch()**, see the function **regexp()**. It is described in the Lexicon article **libmisc**.

**pointer** — C Language

A *pointer* is an object whose value is the address of another object. The name "pointer" derives from the fact that its contents "point to" another object. A pointer may point to any type, complete or incomplete, including another pointer. It may also point to a function, or to nowhere.

The term *pointer type* refers to the object of a pointer. The object to which a pointer points is called the *referenced type*. For example, an **int \*** ("pointer to **int**") is a pointer type; the referenced type is **int**. Constructing a pointer type from a referenced type is called *pointer type derivation*.

**The Null Pointer**

A pointer that points to nowhere is a *null pointer*. The macro **NULL**, which is defined in the header **stdio.h**, defines the null pointer. The null pointer is an integer constant with the value zero. It compares unequal to a pointer to any object or function.

**Declaring a Pointer**

To declare a pointer, use the indirection operator **\*\***. For example, the declaration

```
int *pointer;
```

declares that the variable **pointer** holds the address of an **int**-length object. Likewise, the declaration

```
int **pointer;
```

declares that **pointer** holds the address of a pointer whose contents, in turn, point to an **int**-length object.

Failure to declare a function that returns a pointer will result in that function being implicitly declared as an **int**. This will not cause an error on microprocessors in which an **int** and a pointer have the same size; however, transporting this code to a microprocessor in which an **int** consists of 16 bits and a pointer consists of 32 bits will result in the pointers being truncated to 16 bits and the program probably failing.

C allows pointers and integers to be compared or converted to each other without restriction. The COHERENT C compiler flags such conversions with the strict message

```
integer pointer pun
```

and comparisons with the strict message

```
integer pointer comparison
```

These problems should be corrected if you want your code to be portable to other computing environments.

See for more information.

### Wild Pointers

Pointers are omnipresent in C. C also allows you to use a pointer to read or write the object to which the pointer points; this is called *pointer dereferencing*. Because a pointer can point to any place within memory, it is possible to write C code that generates unpredictable results, corrupts itself, or even obliterates the operating system if running in unprotected mode. A pointer that aims where it ought not is called a *wild pointer*.

When a program declares a pointer, space is set aside in memory for it. However, this space has not yet been filled with the address of an object. To fill a pointer with the address of the object you wish to access is called *initializing* it. A wild pointer, as often as not, is one that is not properly initialized.

Normally, to initialize a pointer means to fill it with a meaningful address. For example, the following initializes a pointer:

```
int number;
int *pointer;
. . .
pointer = &number;
```

The address operator '&' specifies that you want the address of an object rather than its contents. Thus, **pointer** is filled with the address of **number**, and it can now be used to access the contents of **number**.

The initialization of a string is somewhat different than the initialization of a pointer to an integer object. For example,

```
char *string = "This is a string."
```

declares that **string** is a pointer to a **char**. It then stores the string literal **This is a string** in memory and fills **string** with the address of its first character. **string** can then be passed to functions to access the string, or you can step through the string by incrementing **string** until its contents point to the null character at the end of the string.

Another way to initialize a pointer is to fill it with a value returned by a function that returns a pointer. For example, the code

```
extern char *malloc(size_t variable);
char *example;
. . .
example = malloc(50);
```

uses the function **malloc** to allocate 50 bytes of dynamic memory and then initializes **example** to the address that **malloc** returns.

### ***Reading What a Pointer Points To***

The indirection operator **\*\*** can be used to read the object to which a pointer points. For example,

```
int number;
int *pointer;
. . .
pointer = &number;
. . .
printf("%d\n", *pointer);
```

uses **pointer** to access the contents of **number**.

When a pointer points to a structure, the elements within the structure can be read by using the structure offset operator **->**. See the entry for **operators** for more information.

### ***Pointers to Functions***

A pointer can also contain the address of a function. For example,

```
char *(*example)();
```

declares **example** to be a pointer to a function that returns a pointer to a **char**.

This declaration is quite different from:

```
char **different();
```

The latter declares that **different** is a function that returns a pointer to a pointer to a **char**.

The following demonstrates how to call a function via a pointer:

```
(*example)(arg1, arg2);
```

Here, the **\*\*** takes the contents of the pointer, which in this case is the address of the function, and uses that address to pass to a function its list of arguments.

A pointer to a function can be passed as an argument to another function. The functions **bsearch** and **qsort** both take function pointers as arguments. A program may also use arrays of pointers to functions.

### ***Pointer Conversion***

One type of pointer may be converted, or *cast*, to another. For example, a pointer to a **char** may be cast to a pointer to an **int**, and vice versa.

Pointers to different data types are compatible in expressions, but only if they are cast appropriately. Using them without casting produces a *pointer-type mismatch*.

### ***Pointer Arithmetic***

Arithmetic may be performed on all pointers to scalar types, i.e., pointers to **chars** or **int**. Pointer arithmetic is quite limited and consists of the following:

1. One pointer may be subtracted from another.
2. An **int** or a **long**, either variable or constant, may be added to a pointer or subtracted from it.
3. The operators ++ or -- may be used to increment or decrement a pointer.

No other pointer arithmetic is permitted. No arithmetic can be performed on pointers to non-scalar objects, e.g., pointers to functions.

When an **int** or **long** is added to a pointer, it is first multiplied by the length of what the pointer is declared as pointing to. Thus, if a pointer to an **int** is incremented by two, it points down two more **ints**, not two more characters. The following program demonstrates this feature:

```
char *pc = "Welcome";
int array[5] = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 };
int *pi = array;

main()
{
    pc += 2;      /* pc points to 'l' */
    pi += 2;      /* pi points to 3 */
}
```

### i8086 Pointers

Intel designed the i8086 to use a segmented architecture. This means that the i8086 divides memory into 64-kilobyte segments. To program the i8086 requires that you use a specific *memory model*, which describes how the segments of memory are to be organized.

### See Also

C language, data formats, operators, portability

### poll() — System Call

Query several I/O devices

```
#include <poll.h>
int poll(fds, nfds, timeout)
struct pollfd fds[];
unsigned long nfds;
int timeout;
```

The COHERENT system call **poll()** polls one or more file streams for one or more polling conditions. *fds* gives the address of an array of **structs** of type **pollfd**, which has the following structure:

```
struct pollfd {
    int fd; /* file descriptor */
    short events; /* requested events */
    short revents; /* returned events */
};
```

Field **fd** gives the file descriptor for a file stream, as returned by a call to **open()**, or **creat()**. Fields **events** and **revents** give, respectively, the polling conditions that interest you, and those that have occurred. The legal conditions, as defined in header file **poll.h**, are as follows:

#### POLLIN

Input, or a non-priority or file-descriptor passing message, is available for reading. In **revents**, this bit is mutually exclusive with **POLLPRI**.

**POLLPRI**

A priority message is available for reading. In **revents**, this bit is mutually exclusive with **POLLIN**.

**POLLOUT**

Output may be performed; the output queue is not full.

**POLLERR**

An error message has arrived. This field is used only in **revents**, and is ignored in **events**.

**POLLHUP**

A hangup has occurred. This field is used only in **revents**, and is ignored in **events**.

**POLLNVAL**

The specified **fd** value does not belong to an open I/O stream. This field is used only in **revents**, and is ignored in **events**.

*nfds* gives the number of entries in *fds*.

For each array element *fds[i]*, **poll()** examines the file descriptor *fds[i].fd* for the events specified by bits set in *fds[i].events*, and places the resulting status into *fds[i].revents*. If the **fd** value is less than zero, **revents** for that entry is set to zero. Event flags **POLLIN**, **POLLPRI**, and **POLLOUT** are set in **revents** only if the same bits are set in **events** and the corresponding condition holds. Event flags **POLLHUP**, **POLLERR**, and **POLLNVAL** are always set in **revents** if the corresponding condition holds, regardless of the contents of **events**.

If none of the defined events for any of the file descriptors has occurred, **poll()** waits for *timeout* milliseconds. Because the system clock runs at 100 hertz, the value used for *timeout* is the next higher multiple of ten milliseconds. If *timeout* is zero, **poll()** returns immediately. If *timeout* is -1, **poll()** blocks until a requested event occurs or a signal interrupts the call.

**poll()** returns the number of file descriptors for which **revents** is nonzero. It returns zero if it timed out with no matching events. If the call failed, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**See Also**

system calls

**Notes**

**poll()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

**poll.h — Header File**

Define structures/constants used with polling devices

#include <sys/poll.h>

**poll.h** defines structures and constants used by routines that poll devices.

**See Also**

header files

**popd — Command**

Pop an item from the directory stack

**popd** [*item ...*]

The COHERENT shell **sh** maintains an internal “directory stack”, which is a stack of names of directories. You can manipulate this stack should you, for any reason, wish to traverse a number of directories quickly and efficiently.

The command **popd** pops an item from the directory stack. If called without an argument, it pops the last item. Otherwise, it pops the given stack *items* in the order requested, where each *item* is a

positive integer and zero is the top of the stack.

**See Also**

**commands, dirs, pushd, sh**

**popen()** — STDIO Function (libc)

Open a pipe

**#include <stdio.h>**

**FILE \*popen(command, how)**

**char \*command, \*how;**

**popen()** opens a pipe. It resembles the function **fopen()**, except that the opened object is a command line to the shell **sh** rather than a file.

The caller can read the standard output of *command* when *how* is **r**, or write to the standard input of *command* when *how* is **w**. **popen()** returns a pointer to a **FILE** structure that may be read or written.

**Files**

**<stdio.h>**

**See Also**

**fclose(), fopen(), pclose(), pipe(), sh, STDIO, system(), wait()**

**Diagnostics**

**popen()** returns NULL if the link to *command* could not be established.

**port** — Definition

A **port** passes data to and receives data from a remote device.

**See Also**

**definitions, FILE, stream**

**portability** — Technical Information

**Portability** means that code can be recompiled and run under different computing environments without modification. Although true portability is an ideal that is difficult to realize, you can take a number of practical steps to ensure that your code is portable:

- Do not assume that an integer and a pointer have the same size. Remember that undeclared functions are assumed to return an **int**. If a function returns a pointer, declare it so.
- Do not write routines that depend on a particular order of code evaluation, particular byte ordering, or particular length of data types.
- Do not write routines that play tricks with a machine's "magic characters"; for example, writing a routine that depends on a file's ending with **<ctrl-Z>** instead of **EOF** ensures that that code can run only under operating systems that recognize this magic character.
- Always use manifest constants, such as **EOF**, and make full use of **#define** statements.
- Use header files to hold all machine-dependent declarations and definitions.
- Declare everything explicitly. In particular, be sure to declare functions as **void** if they do not return a value; this avoids unforeseen problems with undefined return values.
- Do not assume that integers and pointers have the same size or even the same kind of structure. Do not assume that pointers are all the same or can point anywhere. On the i8086, in SMALL model a pointer to a function addresses relative to the code segment, whereas a pointer to data addresses relative to the data segment. On some machines, character pointers

are of a different size or structure than word pointers.

- The constant **NULL** is defined as being different from any valid pointer. Use it and nothing else for that purpose.

- Keep test scripts, preferably at the function level. That is, follow each function with an

```
#ifdef TEST
```

section that will exercise that function. Running these can rapidly isolate portability problems.

- Place plenty of

```
#assert
```

statements in your programs. These can often pick up portability problems.

### **See Also**

**header file, pointer, technical information, void**

### **pow()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Raise multiple-precision integer to power

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void pow(a, b, m, c)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *m, *c;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **pow()** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *c* to the value pointed to by *a* raised to the power of the value pointed to by *b*, reduced modulo of the value pointed to by *m*.

### **See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

### **pow()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Compute a power of a number

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double pow(z, x) double z, x;
```

**pow()** returns *z* raised to the power of *x*, or *z*<sup>*x*</sup>.

### **Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **exp()**.

### **See Also**

**mathematics library**

### **Diagnostics**

**pow()** indicates overflow by an **errno** of **ERANGE** and a huge returned value.

### **pr** — Command

Paginate and print files

```
pr [ options ] [ file ... ]
```

**pr** paginates each named *file* and sends it to the standard output. The file name '-' means standard input. If no *file* is named, **pr** reads the standard input.

Each page has a header that gives the date, file name, and page and line numbers. **pr** may be used with the following options.



- + *skip* Skip the first *skip* pages of each input file.
- N* Print the text in *N* columns. This is used to print out material that was typed in one or more columns.
- h** *header*  
Use *header* in place of the text name in the title. If *header* is more than one word long, it must be enclosed in quotation marks.
- IN* Set the page length to *N* lines (default, 66).
- m** Print the texts simultaneously, in separate columns. Each text will be assigned an equal amount of width on the page, and any lines longer than that width will be truncated. This is used to print several similar texts or listings simultaneously.
- n** Number each line as it is printed.
- sc** Separate each column by the character *c*. You can separate columns with a letter of the alphabet, a period, or an asterisk. Normally, each column is left justified in a fixed-width field.
- t** Suppress the printing of the header on each page, and the header and footer space.
- WN** Set the page width to *N* columns (default, 80). Text lines are truncated to fit the column width. The maximum width is 254 columns.

### See Also

**cat, commands, nroff, prps**

### Diagnostics

Messages are written on the standard error.

### prep — Command

Produce a word list

**prep** [ -**d***fp* ] [ -**i** *ifile* ] [ -**o** *ofile* ] [ *file ...* ]

The command **prep** prepares a word list that is useful for statistical processing from the textual data found in each input *file*. If no *file* is given, **prep** reads the standard input for text.

For the purposes of **prep**, a word consists of a string of alphabetic letters and apostrophes. Words are written, one per line, to the standard output. Hyphenated words are treated as two words. However, any word hyphenated between two lines is rejoined as one word.

**prep** recognizes the following options:

- d** Print a sequence number (of words in the input text) before each output word.
- f** Fold upper-case letters into lower case. This is sometimes useful for producing unique lists of words.
- i** *ifile* Ignore words found in *ifile*. *ifile* has words one per line that are matched again each input word independent of case.
- o** *ofile* Print only words found in *ofile*. Only one of -**i** or -**o** may be specified.
- p** In addition to printing words, also print each punctuation character (printable, non-numeric characters that separate words), one per line. These lines are not counted for -**d**.

### See Also

**commands, deroff, ksh, sh, sort, spell, typo, wc**

### Notes

What constitutes a *word* is different in **deroff**, **prep**, and **wc**.

### **print** — Command

Echo text onto the standard output

**print** [-enrun] [*argument* ...]

The command **print** is built into the Korn shell **ksh**. It echoes each *argument* onto the standard output. Arguments are separated from each other by whitespace, and the list of arguments is terminated by a newline character.

**print** recognizes and substitutes for the following C-style escape sequences:

<code>\b</code>	Backspace
<code>\f</code>	Formfeed
<code>\n</code>	Newline
<code>\r</code>	Carriage return
<code>\t</code>	Tab
<code>\v</code>	Vertical tab
<code>\Onnn</code>	<i>nnn</i> is the octal value of the desired character

**print** recognizes the following options:

- e** Re-enable expansion of C escape sequences.
- n** Suppress printing of a newline at the end of the list of arguments.
- r** Suppress expansion of C escape sequences.
- un** Redirect output from the standard output to shell file descriptor *n*.

### See Also

**commands**, **echo**, **ksh**

### **printer** — Technical Information

The printer is the device that transfers human-readable data to paper. It can be plugged into either a parallel or a serial port, depending upon how your printer is designed. The former is faster, whereas the latter permits the printer to be positioned farther away from the computer. The following descriptions assume that you have your printer plugged into a parallel port.

COHERENT permits you to have up to three parallel ports on your computer. Devices **/dev/lpt1**, **/dev/lpt2**, and **/dev/lpt3** control, respectively, parallel ports 1, 2, and 3 in cooked mode. The device **/dev/lp** is normally linked to the above device that you wish to use by default as your line printer. See the Lexicon article **lp** for more details on these devices.

COHERENT can print text on all “dumb” printers that have no special text-formatting features. It also supports text formatting on three varieties of printers: Epson-compatible dot-matrix printers; laser printers compatible with the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet family of printers that implement the Hewlett-Packard Page Control Language (PCL); and all printers that have implemented the PostScript language.

### Dumb Printers

To print on a “dumb” printer plugged into the parallel port, use the command **lpr**. This command performs some formatting on a file, and invokes the line-printer daemon **lpd** to spool the file for printing. Using the line-printer daemon is necessary in a multi-user environment to ensure that print requests from different users do not arrive at the printer at the same time, causing the printer to output a jumbled mess (if it prints anything at all).

For example, if **FOO** is a text file, the command

```
lpr FOO
```

prints it on your dumb printer. You should use the **lpr** command to print “simple” text (such as program listings) on any variety of dot-matrix printer. To print listings or other simple text on a laser printer, see below.

The output of the text-formatting command **nroff** can also be printed, with some success, on dumb printers. To represent an italicized character, it prints the character, followed by a backspace, followed by an underscore character; to represent a bold-face character, it outputs the character, followed by a backspace, followed by the character again (in the hope, perhaps naive, that presenting the same text twice will make it appear bolder).

### **Epson-Compatible Printers**

The command **epson** massages text into a form that uses some of the text-formatting features of the Epson MX-80 printer and clones thereof. It is especially to be used with text that has been formatted with **nroff**, as described above; there, it turns the “character/backspace/character” sequence into the Epson escape sequences for emphasized text and italics. It then directs its output to the line-printer device **/dev/lp**, which it assumes has an Epson-style printer plugged into it.

The following example uses **nroff** to format file **FOO** and prints the output on an Epson-style printer:

```
nroff -ms FOO | epson
```

### **LaserJet-style Printers**

COHERENT includes a large suite of commands to support the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet family of printers, as well as clones that run Hewlett-Packard’s PCL.

To begin, these commands use the HP devices **/dev/hp** and **/dev/rhp**. When you installed COHERENT on your system, you may have created these devices; if you did not, however, you should create them by simply using the command **ln** to link **/dev/lp** to **/dev/hp** and to link **/dev/rhp** to **/dev/rhp**, as follows:

```
ln /dev/lp /dev/hp
ln /dev/rhp /dev/rhp
```

You must log in as the superuser **root** to execute these commands.

The daemon **hpd** spools files to be printed on your laser printer. It works like the line-printer daemon **lpd**, as described above.

The command **hp** prepares files to be printed on a laser printer. You should use it to prepare “simple” text, such as program listings, for printing on your laser printer. Like the command **epson**, **hp** also massages the output of **nroff** into PCL-style escape sequences; unlike **epson**, however, it does not automatically spool the file for printing.

The command **hpr** spools files to be printed on a laser printer. It works like the command **lpr**, except that it includes a number of special features; for example, you can use it to download LaserJet “soft fonts” into your printer.

The following command uses **nroff** to format file **FOO**, then prints on a Hewlett-Packard style laser printer:

```
nroff -ms FOO | hp | hpr -B
```

Note that the **-B** option to **hpr** suppresses the printing of a banner page.

The text-formatting command **troff** can create proportionally spaced text to be printed on either a PCL or PostScript printer. In PCL mode, **troff** can make full use of all "soft fonts" that you have loaded onto your printer. For example, this manual was printed by COHERENT **troff** in PCL mode driving a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet III with soft fonts. See the Lexicon for details on how to use **troff** with laser printers.

### **PostScript Printers**

COHERENT includes two commands that can drive PostScript style printers, such as the Apple LaserWriter.

The command **prps** is a PostScript version of the COHERENT command **pr**. It paginates text, and supplies each page with a simple header. See its Lexicon entry for details.

As noted above, **troff**, the COHERENT text formatter, can create proportionally space text for either PCL or PostScript printers. In PostScript mode, **troff** can handle all 35 fonts available with most PostScript cartridges; it supports full font scaling and features such as outlining and shadowing. It also permits you to embed "raw" PostScript within your file, to create effects not already available with the **troff** text-formatting language. For details on using **troff** with PostScript printers, see its entry in the Lexicon.

Note that if you have a PostScript printer, you must use the **-B** option to the commands **hpr** and **lpr**. If you do not, these commands will attempt to print a banner page in ordinary text on your printer, and your printer will hang.

### **Printer Problems**

The following paragraphs describes the problems most commonly encountered with printers, and suggests some solutions.

If you are trying to access your parallel interface printer via special files **/dev/lp** or **/dev/lpt1** and receive an error message of the form

```
cannot open device /dev/lp
```

this means that your printer is not attached to the device that COHERENT associates with **/dev/lpt1**. Your printer is at either attached to **/dev/lpt2** or to **/dev/lpt3**. To discover which one, log in as the superuser **root** and use **cd** to enter directory **/dev**. Make sure that your printer is plugged in, turned on, and on-line; then enter the command:

```
cat file > lpt2
```

*file* can be any readable file that you specify (e.g., **/etc/passwd**). If your printer does not print *file*, then repeat the command for device **/dev/lpt3**:

```
cat file > lpt3
```

The command that works indicates the device into which your printer is plugged.

The final step is to "link" the actual location of the printer to devices **/dev/lp** and **/dev/rlp**, so that the COHERENT utilities know how to print a file. Enter the appropriate commands:

```
ln -f lpt2 lp
ln -f rlpt2 rlp
```

if your printer is attached to **/dev/lpt2**, or

```
ln -f lpt3 lp
ln -f rlpt3 rlp
```

if your printer was attached to `/dev/lpt3`.

If you have an Hewlett-Packard LaserJet or compatible printer, perform the above “link” operation again but substitute **hp** for **lp** and **rhp** for **rlp**. This allows the command **hpr** to find your printer.

If you are using a serial printer, note that flow control via CTS (clear-to-send) is not supported in the **com1** through **com4** family of devices, but is available in devices **hs00r** through **hs07r**. See Lexicon articles **com**, **hs**, and **terminal** for details.

### See Also

**epson**, **hp**, **hpd**, **hpr**, **lp**, **lpd**, **lpr**, **prps**, **technical information**, **troff**

## printf() — STDIO Function

Print formatted text

**int** printf(*format* [*arg1*, ..., *argN*])

**char** \**format*; [**data type**] *arg1*, ..., *argN*;

**printf()** prints formatted text. It uses the *format* string to specify an output format for each *arg*, which it then writes on the standard output.

**printf()** reads characters from *format* one at a time; any character other than a percent sign ‘%’ or a string that is introduced with a percent sign is copied directly to the output. A ‘%’ tells **printf()** that what follows specifies how the corresponding *arg* is to be formatted; the characters that follow ‘%’ can set the output width and the type of conversion desired. The following modifiers, in this order, may precede the conversion type:

1. A minus sign ‘-’ left-justifies the output field, instead of the default right justify.
2. A string of digits gives the *width* of the output field. Normally, **printf()** pads the field with spaces to the field width; it is padded on the left unless left justification is specified with a ‘-’. If the field width begins with ‘0’, the field is padded with ‘0’ characters instead of spaces; the ‘0’ does not cause the field width to be taken as an octal number. If the width specification is an asterisk ‘\*’, the routine uses the next *arg* as an integer that gives the width of the field.
3. A period ‘.’ followed by one or more digits gives the *precision*. For floating point (**e**, **f**, and **g**) conversions, the precision sets the number of digits printed after the decimal point. For string (**s**) conversions, the precision sets the maximum number of characters that can be used from the string. If the precision specification is given as an asterisk ‘\*’, the routine uses the next *arg* as an integer that gives the precision.
4. The letter ‘l’ before any integer conversion (**d**, **o**, **x**, or **u**) indicates that the argument is a **long** rather than an **int**. Capitalizing the conversion type has the same effect; note, however, that capitalized conversion types are *not* compatible with all C compiler libraries, or with the ANSI standard. This feature will not be supported in future editions of COHERENT.

The following format conversions are recognized:

- %** Print a ‘%’ character. No arguments are processed.
- c** Print the **int** argument as a character.
- d** Print the **int** argument as signed decimal numerals.
- D** Print the **long** argument as signed decimal numerals.
- e** Print the **float** or **double** argument in exponential form. The format is *d.dddddesdd*, where there is always one digit before the decimal point and as many as the *precision* digits after it (default, six). The exponent sign *s* may be either ‘+’ or ‘-’.

- f** Print the **float** or **double** argument as a string with an optional leading minus sign '-', at least one decimal digit, a decimal point ('.'), and optional decimal digits after the decimal point. The number of digits after the decimal point is the *precision* (default, six).
- g** Print the **float** or **double** argument as whichever of the formats **d**, **e**, or **f** loses no significant precision and takes the least space.
- o** Print the **int** argument in unsigned octal numerals.
- O** Print the **long** argument in unsigned octal numerals.
- r** The next argument points to an array of new arguments that may be used recursively. The first argument of the list is a **char \*** that contains a new format string. When the list is exhausted, the routine continues from where it left off in the original format string.
- s** Print the string to which the **char \*** argument points. Reaching either the end of the string, indicated by a null character, or the specified *precision*, will terminate output. If no *precision* is given, only the end of the string will terminate.
- u** Print the **int** argument in unsigned decimal numerals.
- U** Print the **long** argument in unsigned decimal numerals.
- x** Print the **int** argument in unsigned hexadecimal numerals.
- X** Print the **long** argument in unsigned hexadecimal numerals.

### Example

The following example demonstrates many **printf()** statements.

```
main()
{
    extern void demo_r();
    int precision = 1;
    int integer = 10;
    float decimal = 2.75;
    double bigdec = 27590.21;
    char letter = 'K';
    char buffer[20];

    strcpy (buffer, "This is a string.\n");

    printf("This is an int:   %d\n", integer);
    printf("This is a float:  %f\n", decimal);
    printf("Another float:   %3.*f\n", precision, decimal);
    printf("This is a double: %lf\n", bigdec);
    printf("This is a char:   %c\n", letter);
    printf("%s", buffer);
    printf("%s\n", "This is also a string.");

    demo_r("Print everything: %d %f %lf %c",
          integer, decimal, bigdec, letter);
    exit(0);
}
```

```
void demo_r(string)
char *string;
{
    printf("%r\n", (char **)&string);
}
```

### See Also

**fprintf()**, **putc()**, **puts()**, **scanf()**, **sprintf()**, **STDIO**

### Notes

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that each argument match its counterpart in the format string.

The use of upper-case format characters to specify long arguments is not standard, and will be phased out to conform with the ANSI standard. You should use the 'l' modifier to indicate a **long**.

At present, **printf()** does not return a meaningful value.

### proc.h — Header File

Define structures/constants used with processes

**#include <sys/proc.h>**

**proc.h** defines structures and constants used by routines that manipulate processes.

### See Also

**header files**

### process — Definition

A **process** is a program in the state of execution.

### See Also

**daemon**, **definitions**, **file**

### prof — Command

Print execution profile of a C program

**prof [ -abcs ][ *progfile* [ *monfile* ] ]**

**prof** interprets the profile file produced by an execution of a C program and reports the execution frequencies of each routine. It also reports the percentage of execution time spent in each routine.

**prof** normally reports times and frequencies spent for regions of programs between externally defined names. *progfile* is the executable program; if omitted, **l.out** is assumed. *monfile* is the monitor file produced during execution of the program; if omitted, **mon.out** is assumed.

To produce **mon.out**, a program must be compiled with the **-VPROF** option to **cc**. To profile all modules, each module must be compiled with this option.

The following options are available.

- a** Profile all symbols, not just externals.
- b** Print all bin information.
- c** Print all call information.
- s** Report stack usage high-water mark.

## Files

**l.out** — Program file (with name list intact)

**mon.out** — Raw execution profile

## See Also

**cc**, **commands**, **ld**, **nm**

## **profile** — System Maintenance

Set user's environment at login

**/etc/profile**

File **/etc/profile** holds a set of commands that the shell reads and executes when a user logs in.

If **/etc/passwd** specifies a program in the login-shell slot, then **/etc/profile** is read by **/bin/sh**. Those lines that begin with the command **export** are recognized as global environments, and the remainder of the line is inserted into the environment.

Please note that if **/bin/sh** or **/bin/ksh** is not the shell, any constructions other than

```
export foo=value
```

are not likely to work.

## See Also

**ksh**, **.profile**, **sh**, **system maintenance**

## **.profile** — System Maintenance

Set user's personal environment at login

**\$HOME/.profile**

The shell reads file **\$HOME/.profile** whenever a user logs in. This file is owned by user. She can edit its contents to set up her environment however she prefers, and to execute programs routinely upon login.

The following gives one user's **.profile**:

```
MAIL=/usr/spool/mail/sally
PATH=/usr/bin:/bin:/v/sally/bin:.
EDITOR=me
PS1="Sally(!) "
PS2="MORE(!)> "
PAGER=scat
set -h
set -o emacs
echo "CALENDAR:"
calendar
echo ""
/usr/games/fortune
```

The first six entries set environmental variables; note that these are in addition to the variables set in **/etc/profile**.

The next two entries

```
set -h
set -o emacs
```



set two features of the Korn shell, which is used by the person. The first turns on its hashing feature, and the second turns on MicroEMACS-style editing of the command line.

The last four entries

```
echo "CALENDAR:"
calendar
echo ""
/usr/games/fortune
```

execute two programs upon login. The two **echo** commands print, respectively, the word **CALENDAR** and a blank line on the screen. The command **calendar** reads the user's personal calendar and prints all entries the relate to today (or to the weekend, should today be a Friday). The command **fortune** prints a randomly selected (and, we hope, amusing) select from file **/usr/games/lib/fortunes**.

This example is relatively simple. A user's **.profile** can be turned into a complex shell program if you wish.

### See Also

**ksh**, **profile**, **sh**, **system maintenance**

### prps — Command

Prepare files for PostScript-compatible printer

**prps** [*options*] [*file ...*]

**prps** invokes a driver for a PostScript-compatible device, typically a printer such as an Apple LaserWriter or a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet with a PostScript cartridge. It generates a PostScript program listing each input *file* and writes it to the standard output. If no *file* is given, **prps** reads the standard input.

The PostScript output program generates a sequence of standard 8.5 by 11-inch pages, each containing a header line (filename, current time and date, and page number) and a box that encloses the text of *file*. The default output typeface is ten-point Courier.

The most common use of **prps** is to print output via **/dev/hp**. For example, the command

```
prps file.c file.doc | hpr -B
```

pipes the output from **prps** into **hpr** (the print spooler for **/dev/hp**) to generate a listing of **file.c** and **file.doc**.

**prps** recognizes the following options:

- b** Suppress the box around the page text. If the box is present, PostScript clips text that would extend beyond its right border.
- h** Suppress the header line.
- ln** Indent the left margin by an additional *n* characters.
- l** Generate "landscape"-format output. **prps** normally generates output pages in "portrait" format (upright 8.5 by 11 inches). The **-l** option generates output pages in landscape format (11 by 8.5) instead. This option is useful for files with long lines; by default, it prints 46 lines per page.
- l2** Generate landscape-format output pages that each contain two side-by-side "pages" of text. This format is useful for saving paper, especially when used with a small size of type. As it prints in a small size of type, it prints 66 lines per page.

- nname** Use *name* in place of the file name in the header line.
- tN** Set tab stops at every *N* characters. The default tab setting is eight.
- ptsize** Change the size of type to *ptsize* points. By default, **prps** sets its output in ten-point type. This yields 64 lines per normal output page, 46 lines in landscape format, and 52 lines per half page in **-l2** format. (Note that a "point" is one twelfth of a pica, which in turn is one sixth of an inch; thus, there are 72 points in an inch.) By specifying the *ptsize* on its command line, you can tell **prps** to use a different size of type. For example, **-8** tells **prps** to use eight-point type.
- pN** Print *N* lines of text on each output page (or half page). Note that the point size determines how many lines fit on a page, and lines per page determine point size. If you specify both, **prps** will use the given values unless the lines do not fit at the given point size.
- +N** Skip the first *N* output pages.

### Setting Fonts

**prps** recognizes the standard **nroff** font specification sequences and translates them into PostScript font specifications. The default font is Courier. Because the naming conventions for PostScript fonts are anything but uniform, **prps** appends a suffix to the fontname to designate a Roman, boldface and italic font variety. The default suffix is **'** for Roman, **-Bold** for bold and **-Oblique** for italic. These give the standard PostScript names for the Courier family, "Courier", "Courier-Bold", and "Courier-Oblique".

Option **-ffontname** specifies an alternative *fontname*. Option **-FsXsuffix** specifies an alternative font suffix, where *X* is one of the three characters **RBI** (for **R**oman, **B**old or **I**talic) and *suffix* is the desired suffix. For example, the option

```
-fTimes -FsR-Roman -FsI-Italic
```

generates the usual PostScript font names for the Times family, namely "Times-Roman", "Times-Bold", and "Times-Italic".

To spare you some of this grief, a few fonts have built-in abbreviations. Option **-FX**, where *X* is one of the characters **ABHNPST**, specifies a PostScript fontname as follows:

```
-FA AvantGarde
-FB Bookman
-FH Helvetica
-FN Helvetica-Narrow
-FP Palatino
-FS New Century Schoolbook
-FT Times
```

These options also set each suffix appropriately for the desired font. However, font naming conventions may differ on various PostScript devices; examine the **prps** output and your device documentation if problems occur.

### Examples

**prps** is especially useful as a way of printing the output of **nroff**, including manual pages. For example,

```
man prps | prps | hpr -B
```

or

```
man prps | prps -l2 | hpr -B
```

prints this Lexicon article in, respectively, portrait mode or two-page landscape mode. It looks nicer if you center the output with an indent:

```
man prps | prps -i8 | hpr -B
```

or

```
man prps | prps -l2 -i4 | hpr -B
```

## See Also

commands, hp, hpr, pr, nroff, printer

## ps — Command

Print process status

```
ps [ -afglmnrtnwx ] [ -c sys ] [ -k mem ]
```

**ps** prints information about a process or processes. It prints the information in fields, followed by the command name and arguments. The fields include the following:

**TTY** The controlling terminal of the command, printed in short form. "tty44:" means /dev/tty44. Dashes means there is no controlling terminal.

**PID** Process id; necessary to know when the process is to be killed.

**GROUP** PID of the group leader of the process; the shell started up when the user logs in.

**PPID** PID of the parent of the process; very often a shell.

**UID** User id or name of the owner.

**K** Size of the process in kilobytes.

**F** Process flag bits, as follows:

<b>PFCORE</b>	00001	Process is in core
<b>PFLOCK</b>	00002	Process is locked in core
<b>PFSWIO</b>	00004	Swap I/O in progress
<b>PFSWAP</b>	00010	Process is swapped out
<b>PFWAIT</b>	00020	Process is stopped (not waited)
<b>PFSTOP</b>	00040	Process is stopped (waited on)
<b>PFTRAC</b>	00100	Process is being traced
<b>PFKERN</b>	00200	Kernel process
<b>PFAUXM</b>	00400	Auxiliary segments in memory
<b>PFDISP</b>	01000	Dispatch at earliest convenience
<b>PFNDMP</b>	02000	Command mode forbids dump
<b>PFWAKE</b>	04000	Wakeup requested

**S** State of the process, as follows:

<b>R</b>	Ready to run (waiting for CPU time)
<b>S</b>	Stopped for other reasons (I/O completion, pause, etc.)
<b>T</b>	Being traced by another process
<b>W</b>	Waiting for an existent child
<b>Z</b>	Zombie (dead, but parent not waiting)

**EVENT** The condition which the process is anticipating; not applicable if the process is ready to run. The following gives the legal symbolic names of events. If a driver does not support symbolic event names, **ps** prints a unique hexadecimal number instead:

*System Sleeps:*

<b>bpwait</b>	Wait for a buffer to become valid
<b>bufneed</b>	Wait for a free buffer to become available
<b>bwrite</b>	Wait for a buffer write to finish
<b>loreq</b>	
<b>pause</b>	This process is in the <b>pause()</b> system call
<b>pipe data</b>	Wait for data to appear in a pipe
<b>poll</b>	Wake for polled event, poll timeout, or signal
<b>ptrace</b>	Send a <b>ptrace</b> command to a traced child
<b>ptret</b>	Wait for signal processing in a traced child to complete
<b>pwrite</b>	Wait for a pipe to empty enough for a write
<b>swap</b>	Wait for a process to get swapped in
<b>wait</b>	Wait for a child to terminate
<b>waitq</b>	Wait for more character queues to become available

*Driver Sleeps*

<b>aha:ccb</b>	AHA-154x driver is waiting for a SCSI command to complete
<b>nkbcmd</b>	
<b>nkbcmd...</b>	
<b>nkbcmd2</b>	
<b>nkbcmd2...</b>	<b>nkbcmd</b> is waiting for a command to complete
<b>ptycd</b>	Pseudoterminal driver is waiting for carrier
<b>ptyread</b>	Pseudoterminal driver is waiting for a read
<b>ptywrite</b>	Pseudoterminal driver is waiting for a write
<b>ttydrain</b>	Line discipline is waiting for a tty to drain
<b>ttyiodrn</b>	<b>ioctl()</b> asked line discipline to let tty output drain
<b>ttyoq</b>	Line discipline is waiting for an output queue to drain
<b>ttywait</b>	Line discipline is waiting for more data

**CVAL SVAL IVAL RVAL**

Scheduling information; bigger is better.

**UTIME** Time consumed while running in the program (in seconds).

**STIME** Time consumed while running in the system (in seconds).

Normally, **ps** displays the **TTY** and **PID** fields of each active process started on the caller's terminal, as well as the command name and arguments. The following flags can alter this behavior.

- a** Display information about processes started from all terminals.
- c sys** The argument *sys* gives the system executable image (default, **/coherent**).
- d** Print information about status of loadable drivers.
- f** Blank fields have '-' place-holders. This enables field-oriented commands like **sort** and **awk** to process the output.
- g** Print the group leader field **GROUP** if the **l** option is given.

- k mem** The next argument *mem* is the memory image (default, */dev/mem*).
- l** Long format. In addition to the TTY and PID fields, prints the PPID, UID, K, F, S and EVENT fields.
- m** Print the scheduling fields CVAL, SVAL, IVAL and RVAL.
- n** Suppress the header line.
- r** Print the real size of the process, which includes the user and auxiliary segments assigned to the process. Because the user segment (usually 1 kilobyte) is shared by all processes owned by that user, this may give a misleading total size for all the user's processes.
- t** Print elapsed CPU time fields UTIME and STIME.
- w** Wide format output; print 132 columns instead of 80.
- x** Display processes which do not have a controlling terminal (e.g. the swapper).

### Files

*/coherent* — Default system file  
*/dev/kmem* — Default kernel memory  
*/dev/mem* — Default memory file  
*/dev/tty\** — List of terminal names

### See Also

**commands**, **kill**, **mem**, **size**, **wait**

### Notes

Each process can modify or destroy its command name and arguments. The state of the system changes even as **ps** runs.

### PS1 — Environmental Variable

User's default prompt

**PS1**=prompt

The environmental variable **PS1** sets the prompt for your shell. The default is **\$**.

### See Also

**environmental variables**, **PS2**, **sh**

### PS2 — Environmental Variable

Prompt when user continues command onto additional lines

**PS2**=prompt

The environmental variable **PS2** sets the prompt that is displayed when a command extends onto additional input lines. The default is **>**.

### See Also

**environmental variables**, **PS1**, **sh**

### ptrace() — System Call

Trace process execution

**#include** <signal.h>

**int** ptrace(command, pid, location, value)

**int** command, pid, \*location, value;

**ptrace()** provides a parent process with primitives to monitor and alter the execution of a child process. These primitives typically are used by a debugger such as **db**, which needs to examine and change memory, plant breakpoints, and single-step the child process being debugged.

Once a child process indicates it wishes to be traced, its parent issues various *commands* to control the child. *pid* identifies the affected process. The parent may issue a command only when the child process is in a stopped state, which occurs when the child encounters a signal. A special return value of 0177 from **wait()** informs the parent that the child has entered the stopped state. The parent may then examine or change the child process memory space or restart the process at any point.

When the child process issues an **exec()**, the child stops with signal **SIGTRAP** to enable the parent to plant breakpoints. The set user id and set group id modes are ineffective when a traced process performs an **exec()**.

The following list describes each available *command*. A *command* ignores any arguments not mentioned.

- 0      This is the only *command* the child process may issue. It tells the system that the child wishes to be traced. Parent and child must agree that tracing should occur to achieve the desired effect. Only the *command* argument is significant.
- 1,2    The **int** at *location* is the return value. Command 1 signifies that *location* is in the instruction space, whereas command 2 signifies *data* space. Often these two spaces are equivalent.
- 3      The return value is the **int** of the process description, as defined in **sys/uproc.h**. This call may be used to obtain values such as hardware register contents and segment allocation information.
- 4,5    Modify the child process's memory by changing the **int** at *location* to *value*. Command 4 means instruction space and command 5 means *data* space. Shared segments may be written only if no other executing process is using them.
- 6      Modify the **int** at *location* in the process description area, as with command 3. The permissible values for *location* are restricted to such things as hardware registers and bits of machine status registers that the user may safely change.
- 7      This command restarts the stopped child process after it encounters a signal. The process resumes execution at *location*, or from where the process was stopped if *location* is **(int \*)1**. *value* gives a signal number that the process receives as it restarts. This is normally the number of the signal that caused the process to stop, fetched from the process description area by a 3 command. If *value* is zero, the effect of the signal is ignored.
- 8      Force the child process to exit.
- 9      Like command 7, except that the child stops again with signal **SIGTRAP** as soon as practicable after the execution of at least one instruction. The actual hardware method used to implement this command varies from machine to machine, explaining the imprecise nature of its definition. This call may provide part of the basis for breakpoints.

### Files

<signal.h>

<sys/uproc.h>

### See Also

**db**, **exec**, **signal()**, **system calls**, **wait()**

## Diagnostics

**ptrace()** returns -1 if *pid* is not the process id of an eligible child process or if some other argument is invalid or out of bounds. Some commands may return an arbitrary data value, in which case **errno** should be checked to distinguish a return value of -1 from an error return.

## Notes

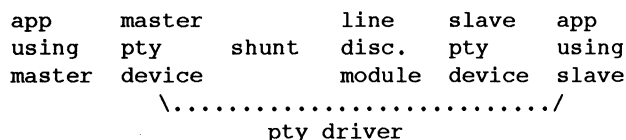
There is no way to specify which signals should not stop the process.

## pty — Device Driver

Device driver for pseudoterminals

The COHERENT device driver **pty** lets your system support up to 128 pairs of pseudoterminals. A *pseudoterminal* is a means of letting a process masquerade as a terminal. For example, a windowing terminal describes each window as a pseudoterminal; text written to the pseudoterminal appears in the window that “owns” that pseudoterminal.

Each pseudoterminal consists of a pair of devices: a master device and a slave device. The purpose of these pairs is to allow COHERENT to insert line-discipline processing into a chain of processes whose inputs and outputs are interconnected. *Line-discipline* processing refers to such tasks as handling backspacing, watching out for special interrupt characters (such as <ctrl-C>), and converting line-feed characters into carriage-return—line-feed character pairs. Here is a picture of the flow of data:



Within the driver, input to the master device becomes output from the slave, and vice versa. Typically, the slave device is connected to a process that expects input from a keyboard device — the command shells **sh** and **ksh** are examples of such processes. The master device is connected to a process that handles raw data, such as “script”-type utilities (programs that transcribe both sides of a login session to a file) and multisession or windowing managers.

Only one process at a time can open a master device; the device is opened as soon as requested. Several processes can open a slave device, but will block until the matching master device has been open. When blocked in this way, the slave is said to be “waiting for pseudocarrier.”

Attempts to read a master device when no input is available, or to write to a master device when the slave cannot accept data, will block unless nonblocking I/O has been specifically requested, in which case the read or write system call will fail and **errno** will be set to **EAGAIN**.

The system call **ioctl()** may be used on slave devices with all valid line discipline commands, including **TCGETA**, **TCSETA**, **TCSETAW**, **TCSETAF**, and **TCFLSH**. There are no valid **ioctl()** commands for master devices.

The system call **poll()** is allowed with both master and slave **pty** devices. However priority polls (**POLLPRI**) are not supported.

Master devices are named **/dev/pty[p-w][0-f]**. Corresponding slaves are **/dev/tty[p-w][0-f]**. Like any other device, each **pty** has a major and minor number. The major number is 9 (**PTY\_MAJOR** in system header file <**sys/devices.h**>). For slave devices, minor numbers are assigned according to the scheme shown:

device name	major number	minor number
/dev/ttyp0	9	0
/dev/ttyp1	9	1
...		
/dev/ttyp9	9	9
/dev/ttypa	9	10
/dev/ttypb	9	11
...		
/dev/ttypf	9	15
/dev/ttyq0	9	16
...		
/dev/ttyw0	9	112
...		
/dev/ttywf	9	127

For master devices, use **pty** instead of **tty** in the device name, and add 128 to the minor number.

The kernel variable **NUPTY** gives the number of pty pairs that may be used. The default is currently eight. If you want more than this, patch your copy of the kernel using **/conf/patch**, shutdown as usual, and reboot.

### See Also

device drivers

### **pun** — Definition

In the context of C, a **pun** occurs when a programmer uses one data form interchangeably with another. A pun most often occurs unintentionally when the programmer fails to declare a function as returning a pointer; by default, what the function returns is assumed to be an **int**, and is handled as such. No trouble will arise if the program is run on a machine that defines an **int** and a pointer to have the same length (e.g., i8086 SMALL model); however, such code cannot be transported to an environment in which this is not the case (e.g., i8086 LARGE model).

### See Also

definitions, pointer, portability

### **pushd** — Command

Push an item onto the directory stack

**pushd** [*directory0* ... *directoryN*]

The COHERENT shell **sh** maintains an internal “directory stack”, which is a stack of names of directories. You can manipulate this stack should you, for any reason, wish to traverse a number of directories quickly and efficiently.

The command **pushd** pushes *directory1* through *directoryN* onto the directory stack, and changes the current directory to the last directory pushed. If called without an argument, it transposes the last two directories on the directory stack.

### See Also

commands, dirs, popd, sh



### ***putc()* — STDIO (stdio.h)**

Write character into stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int putc(*c*, *fp*) char *c*; FILE \**fp*;**

**putc()** is a macro that writes a character *c* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. It returns *c* upon success.

#### ***Example***

The following example demonstrates **putc()**. It opens an ASCII file and prints its contents on the screen. For another example of **putc()**, see the entry for **getc()**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    FILE *fp;
    int ch;
    int filename[20];

    printf("Enter file name: ");
    gets(filename);

    if ((fp = fopen(filename, "r")) != NULL) {
        while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF)
            putc(ch, stdout);
    } else
        printf("Cannot open %s.\n", filename);
    fclose(fp);
}
```

#### ***See Also***

**fputc()**, **getc()**, **putchar()**, **STDIO**

#### ***Diagnostics***

**putc()** returns **EOF** when a write error occurs.

#### ***Notes***

Because **putc()** is a macro, arguments with side effects may not work as expected.

### ***putchar()* — STDIO (stdio.h)**

Write a character onto the standard output

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int putchar(*c*) char *c*;**

**putchar()** is a macro that expands to **putc(*c*, *stdout*)**. It writes a character onto the standard output.

#### ***Example***

For an example of this routine, see the entry for **getchar()**.

#### ***See Also***

**fputc()**, **putc()**, **STDIO**

**Diagnostics**

**putchar()** returns **EOF** when a write error occurs.

**Notes**

Because **putchar()** is a macro, arguments with side effects may not work as expected.

**putp() — terminfo Function**

Write a string into the standard window

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
putp(string)
```

```
char *string;
```

COHERENT 386 comes with a set of functions that let you use **terminfo** descriptions to manipulate a terminal. **putp()** writes the *string* into the standard window. It is equivalent to **tputs(string, 1, putchar);**.

**See Also**

curses.h, terminfo, tputs()

**puts() — STDIO (libc)**

Write string onto standard output

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int puts(string) char *string
```

**puts()** appends a newline character to the string pointed to by *string*, and writes the result onto the standard output. **puts()** returns a nonnegative value on success and **EOF** if a write error occurs.

**Example**

The following uses **puts** to write a string on the screen.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
```

```
    puts("This is a string.");
```

```
}
```

**See Also**

**fputs()**, **STDIO**

**Notes**

For historical reasons, **fputs()** outputs the string unchanged, whereas **puts()** appends a newline character.

**putw() — STDIO (stdio.h)**

Write word into stream

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int putw(word, fp) int word; FILE *fp;
```

The macro **putw()** writes *word* into the file stream pointed to by *fp*. It returns the value written.

**putw()** differs from the related macro **putc()** in that **putw()** writes an **int**, whereas **putc()** writes a **char** that is promoted to an **int**.

**See Also****ferror()**, **STDIO****Diagnostics**

**putw()** returns **EOF** when an error occurs. You may need to call **ferror()** to distinguish this value from a genuine end-of-file flag.

**Notes**

Because **putw()** is a macro, arguments with side effects may not work as expected. The bytes of *word* are written in the natural byte order of the machine.

**pwd — Command**

Print the name of the current directory

**pwd**

**pwd** prints the name of the directory that you are in.

**See Also****cd**, **commands**, **ksh**, **sh****Notes**

Under the Korn shell, **pwd** is an alias for the expression **print -r \$PWD**.

**pwd.h — Header File**

Declare password structure

**#include <pwd.h>**

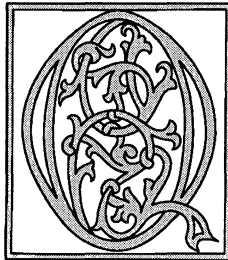
The header file **pwd.h** declares the structure **passwd**, which is used to build COHERENT's password file. **passwd** is defined as follows:

```
struct passwd {
    char    *pw_name;      /* login user name */
    char    *pw_passwd;    /* login password */
    int     pw_uid;        /* login user id */
    int     pw_gid;        /* login group id */
    int     pw_quota;      /* file quota (unused) */
    char    *pw_comment;   /* comments (unused) */
    char    *pw_gecos;     /* (unused) */
    char    *pw_dir;       /* working directory */
    char    *pw_shell;     /* initial program */
};
```

For detailed descriptions of the above fields, see the entry for **passwd**.

**See Also**

**endpwent()**, **getpwent()**, **getpwnam()**, **getpwuid()**, **header files**, **setpwent()**



### **qfind — Command**

Quickly find all files with a given name

**qfind** [-adp] name ...

**qfind** [-b]

**qfind** prints the full path name of each file with a given *name*. When invoked with the **-b** option, it builds a data base in file **/usr/adm/qfiles**; this data base names every file and directory in the system. When invoked without the **-b** option, **qfind** reads this data base to find file names fairly quickly.

Normally, **qfind** prints the full path name of each file in the COHERENT system that ends with the given *name* (as they were at the time you last executed **qfind -b**.) With the **-d** option, **qfind** prints matching directories instead of files. With the **-a** option, **qfind** prints both matching files and matching directories.

Option **-p** specifies partial name matching. For example, **qfind -p foo** matches files **/src/foo.c** and **/doc/foo.r** as well as file **/usr/bin/foo**.

### **Files**

**/usr/adm/qfiles**

### **See Also**

**commands**, **cron**, **find**, **whereis**, **which**

### **Notes**

Building the **qfind** data base with the **-b** option is slow, but it speeds finding files. You may find it convenient to use **cron** to execute **qfind -b** to rebuild the data base at night, or some other time when the machine is otherwise idle. The superuser **root** must run **qfind -b** if you want all files to appear in the data base.

### **qsort() — General Function (libc)**

Sort arrays in memory

**void qsort**(data, n, size, comp) **char** \*data; **int** n, size; **int** (\*comp)();

**qsort()** is a generalized algorithm for sorting arrays of data in memory, using C. A. R. Hoare's "quicksort" algorithm. **qsort()** works with a sequential array of memory called *data*, which is divided into *n* parts of *size* bytes each. In practice, *data* is usually an array of pointers or structures, and *size* is the **sizeof** the pointer or structure. Each routine compares pairs of items and exchanges them as required. The user-supplied routine to which *comp* points performs the comparison. It is called repeatedly, as follows:

```
(*comp)(p1, p2)
char *p1, *p2;
```

Here, *p1* and *p2* each point to a block of *size* bytes in the *data* array. In practice, they are usually pointers to pointers or pointers to structures. The comparison routine must return a negative, zero, or positive result, depending on whether *p1* is logically less than, equal to, or greater than *p2*, respectively.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **malloc()**.

### See Also

**general functions, shellsort(), strcmp(), strncmp()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 3

### Notes

The COHERENT library also includes the sorting function **shellsort()**. These functions use different algorithms for sorting items; each algorithm has its strengths and weaknesses. In general, the quicksort algorithm is faster than the **shellsort** algorithm for large arrays, whereas the shellsort algorithm is faster for small arrays (say, 50 items or fewer). The quicksort algorithm also performs poorly on arrays with a small number of keys, e.g., an array of 1,000 items whose keys are all '7' and '8'.

To get around these limitations, the COHERENT implementation of **qsort()** has an adaptive algorithm that recognizes when the quicksort algorithm is performing badly, and calls **shellsort()** in its place.

### quot — Command

Summarize file-system usage

**quot** [-c] [-f] [-n] [-t] *filesystem*

**quot** produces several different summaries about the ownership of files for each *filesystem* argument given. When no options are specified, **quot** produces a two-column listing that gives the amount of space used by each user, sorted in decreasing order of file space used; the first column gives the number of blocks used and the second gives the use name. Space is always given in blocks.

Options are available to modify the normal output or specify a completely different action.

**quot** recognizes the following options:

- c Give a three-column breakdown of files by size. The first column contains all file sizes, in increasing order. The second column gives the number of files of the size indicated in the first. The third gives a cumulative sum of the sizes of all files less than or equal to the current size.
- f Add an initial column that contains the number of files to the front of the normal output.
- n Takes as input a list of i-numbers and file names, one per line and sorted in ascending order by i-number; ignore all lines not in this form. The output is in two columns: the first gives the owner and the second contains the file name for each entry in the output. This conforms to usage with the following pipeline:

```
ncheck filesystem | sort +0n | quot -n filesystem
```

- t To the normal output, add a line that contains totals.

**quot** runs much faster with a raw device for *filesystem*.

Only the superuser **root** can run **quot**.

***Files***

***/etc/passwd***

***See Also***

**ac, commands, ncheck, sort**

***Notes***

Sparse files are recorded as if they had all of their blocks allocated.



## ram — Device Driver

Driver for manipulating RAM

The COHERENT **ram** devices let you allocate and use the random access memory (RAM) of the computer system directly. A typical use is for a RAM disk, which is a COHERENT file system kept in memory rather than on a floppy disk or hard disk.

The COHERENT RAM device driver has major number 8. It can be accessed either as a block-special device or as a character-special device. The high-order bit of the minor number gives a RAM device number (0 or 1), which lets you use up to two RAM devices simultaneously. The low-order seven bits specify the device size in 64-kilobyte increments. The first **open** call on a RAM device with nonzero size (1 to 127) allocates memory for the device; the system call **open** fails if sufficient memory is not available. Accessing a RAM device with a minor number specifying size zero frees the allocated memory, provided all earlier **open** calls have been closed.

Initially, COHERENT includes two block-special devices for RAM disks: the 512-kilobyte device **/dev/ram0** (8, 8) and the 192-kilobyte device **/dev/ram1** (8, 131). It also includes the devices **/dev/ram0close** (8, 0) and **/dev/ram1close** (8, 128). You should change the RAM devices to sizes appropriate for the amount of memory available on your system.

### Examples

The following example formats and mounts a 512-kilobyte RAM disk on directory **/fast**.

```
mkdir /fast
/etc/mkfs /dev/ram0 1024
/etc/mount /dev/ram0 /fast
```

When the RAM disk is no longer needed, its allocated memory can be freed as follows:

```
/etc/umount /dev/ram0
cat /dev/null >/dev/rram0close
```

The next example replaces the default **/dev/ram0** with a one-megabyte device containing a COHERENT file system. The new minor number 16 specifies RAM device 0 and size 16 times 64 kilobytes (i.e., one megabyte). The new RAM device contains 2,048 blocks of 512 bytes each.

```
rm /dev/ram0
/etc/mknod /dev/ram0 b 8 136
/etc/mknod /dev/rram0 c 8 136
/etc/mkfs /dev/ram0 2048
chmod ugo=rw /dev/ram0
chmod ugo=rw /dev/rram0
```

The **chmod** command is necessary to make the new RAM drive accessible.

### **Files**

**/dev/ram\***

### **See Also**

**compress**, **device drivers**, **fsck**, **mkfs**, **mount**, **ramdisk**, **umount**, **uncompress**, **zcat**

### **Notes**

Moving frequently used commands or files to a RAM disk can improve system performance substantially. However, the contents of a RAM device are lost if the system loses power, reboots, or crashes, files kept on a RAM disk should frequently be copied the hard disk or floppy disk.

If a RAM device uses most but not all available system memory, its **open** call will succeed but subsequent commands may fail because insufficient memory remains for the system.

The COHERENT installation program **/etc/build** uses RAM device **/dev/ram1** as a RAM disk during installation. Commands **compress**, **uncompress**, **zcat**, and **fsck** sometimes use **/dev/ram1** as a temporary storage device. Users should avoid using **/dev/ram1** as a RAM disk because of these programs. In addition, users of **compress**, **uncompress**, and **zcat** may have to change the size of **/dev/ram1** from the default size of 192 to 512 kilobytes, to handle files compressed to 16 bits. The following script makes this change; note that it must be run by the superuser **root**:

```
cat /dev/null >/dev/rram1close
rm /dev/ram1 /dev/rram1
mknod /dev/ram1 b 8 136
mknod /dev/rram1 c 8 136
```

Please note that increasing the size of **/dev/ram1** to 512 kilobytes requires a system with at least one megabyte of RAM.

## **ramdisk — System Maintenance**

Script to create a RAM-disk

**/usr/bin/ramdisk**

**ramdisk** is a script that creates a 500-kilobyte RAM disk that is accessed via device **/dev/ram0**.

To use **ramdisk** to create a RAM disk for you at boot-time, do the following:

1. Log in as the superuser **root**.
2. Edit file **/etc/rc**, and remove the colon ':' in front of the entry **/usr/bin/ramdisk**.
3. Use the command **mkdir** to create the directory **/ramdisk**.
4. Edit **/usr/bin/ramdisk** to copy your most-frequently used commands into the RAM disk.
5. Type **/usr/bin/ramdisk** to execute it.
6. Return to being yourself; then edit the **PATH** environmental variable in your **.profile** so that **/ramdisk** appears first. This means that the shell will search the RAM disk first for any commands you issue.
7. Log in again to reset your environment.

That's all. From now on, whenever you reboot your system a RAM disk will be created and your commonly used utilities loaded into it.



**See Also****ram, rc, system maintenance****Notes**

This script only works in machines that have sufficient memory.

**rand() — General Function**

Generate pseudo-random numbers

**int rand()**

**rand()** generates a set of pseudo-random numbers. It returns integers in the range 0 to 32,767, and purportedly has a period of 232. **rand()** will always return the same series of random numbers unless you first call the function **srand()** to change **rand()**'s seed, or beginning-point.

**Example**

This example demonstrates the functions **rand()** and **srand()**. It uses a threshold level that is passed in **argv[1]** (default, MAXVAL/2), the number of trials passed in **argv[2]** (default, 1,000), and a seed passed in **argv[3]** (default, no seeding).

```
#define MAXVAL 32767 /* range of rand: [0,2^15-1] */

main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    register int i, hits, threshold, ntrials;

    hits = 0;
    threshold = (argc > 1) ? atoi(argv[1]) : MAXVAL/2;
    ntrials = (argc > 2) ? atoi(argv[2]) : 1000;
    if (argc > 3)
        srand(atoi(argv[3]));

    for (i = 1; i <= ntrials; i++)
        if (rand() > threshold)
            ++hits;

    printf("%d values above %d in %d trials (%D%%).\n",
        hits, threshold, ntrials, (100L*hits)/ntrials);
}
```

**See Also****general functions, srand()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2

**random access — Definition**

In the context of computing, **random access** means that an entity, such as memory, can be accessed at any point, not just at the beginning. This means that all points within memory can be accessed equally quickly. This contrasts with *sequential access*, in which entities must be accessed in a particular order, so that some entities take longer to access than do others.

A tape drive is an example of a sequential access device, i.e., the order in which data are read is dictated by the order in which they stream past the tape head. Random-access memory (RAM) is an example of random access. Hard disks and floppy disks combine elements of random access and sequential access.

RAM, which usually consists of semiconductor integrated circuits, is also strictly random access. In

this regard, the term “RAM” is slightly misleading; a more accurate name would be “read/write memory”, to contrast RAM with read-only memory (ROM), which is also random access memory.

### **See Also**

**definitions, read-only memory**

### **ranlib — Command**

Create index for object library

**ranlib** *library* ...

The **ranlib** is a “directory” that appears at the beginning of each library. It contains the name of each global symbol (i.e., function name) that appears within the library, and a pointer to the module in which that symbol is defined. Thus, the **ranlib** eliminates the need for the linker to search the entire library sequentially to find a given global symbol, which speeds up linking noticeably.

If the date on the library file is later than that in the **ranlib** header, the linker will ignore the **ranlib** and perform a sequential search through the library; the linker will also send the warning message

Outdated ranlib

to the standard error device. This is done to prevent the accidental use of an outdated **ranlib**, which could be disastrous.

The COHERENT command **ranlib** creates a **ranlib** header for an archive. If the header already exists, **ranlib** updates it.

### **Files**

**\_.SYMDEF** — Index module

### **See Also**

**ar, ar.h, commands, ld**

### **Diagnostics**

**ranlib** issues appropriate messages for I/O errors or bad format files. It does not rewrite a library until the last possible moment, so the library is usually unchanged in case of error. **ranlib** processes each library independently. The exit status is the number of libraries in which errors were encountered.

Under COHERENT 386, **ranlib** exists as a link to the archiver **ar**.

### **rc — System Maintenance**

Perform standard maintenance chores

**/etc/rc**

The shell script **/etc/rc** is executed by the **init** process when the COHERENT system enters multi-user mode. The commands in **rc** do such things as set the local time zone and initialize file **/usr/adm/wtmp**, which holds records of user logins.

### **See Also**

**brc, init, system maintenance**

### **read — Command**

Assign values to shell variables

**read** *name* ...

**read** reads a line from the standard input. It assigns each token of the input to the corresponding shell variable *name*. If the input contains fewer tokens than the number of names specified, **read** assigns the null string to each extra variable. If the input contains more tokens than the number of

names specified, **read** assigns the last *name* in the list the remainder of the input.

The shell executes **read** directly.

### Example

The command

```
read foo bar baz
hello how are you
```

parses the line “hello how are you” and assigns the tokens to, respectively, the shell variables **foo**, **bar**, and **baz**. If you further type

```
echo $foo
echo $bar
echo $baz
```

you will see:

```
hello
how
are you
```

### See Also

**commands**, **ksh**, **sh**

### Diagnostics

**read** normally returns an exit status of zero. If it encounters end of file or is interrupted while reading the standard input, it then returns one.

### read() — System Call

Read from a file

```
int read(fd, buffer, n) int fd; char *buffer; int n;
```

**read()** reads up to *n* bytes of data from the file descriptor *fd* and writes them into *buffer*. The amount of data actually read may be less than that requested if **read()** detects **EOF**. The data are read beginning at the current seek position in the file, which was set by the most recently executed **read()** or **lseek()** routine. **read()** advances the seek pointer by the number of characters read.

### Example

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **open()**.

### See Also

**STDIO**, **system calls**

### Diagnostics

With a successful call, **read()** returns the number of bytes read; thus, zero bytes signals the end of the file. It returns -1 if an error occurs, such as bad file descriptor, bad *buffer* address, or physical read error.

### Notes

**read()** is a low-level call that passes data directly to COHERENT. It should not be intermixed with high-level calls, such as **fread()**, **fwrite()**, or **fopen()**.

**readdir()** — General Function

Read a directory stream

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
#include <dirent.h>
```

```
struct dirent *readdir(dirp)
```

```
DIR *dirp;
```

The COHERENT function **readdir()** is one of a set of COHERENT routines that manipulate directories in a device-independent manner. It reads the directory stream pointed to by *dirp* and returns information about the next active entry within the stream. It does not report on inactive entries.

**readdir()** returns a pointer to a structure of type **dirent**, which contains information about the next active entry within the stream. The internal structure may be overwritten by another operation on the same directory stream. The amount of memory needed to hold a copy of the internal structure is given by the value of a macro, **DIRENTSIZ(strlen(direntp->d\_name))**, not by **sizeof(struct dirent)** as one might expect.

**readdir()** returns NULL if it has reached the end of the directory, has detected an invalid location within the directory, or if an error occurs while it is reading the directory. If an error occurs, **readdir()** exits and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the Lexicon entry for **opendir()**.

**See Also**

**closedir()**, **dirent.h**, **general functions**, **getdents()**, **opendir()**, **rewinddir()**, **seekdir()**, **telldir()**

**Notes**

The **dirent** routines buffer directories; and because directory entries can appear and disappear as other users manipulate the directory, your application should continually rescan a directory to keep an accurate picture of its active entries.

**readdir()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

The COHERENT implementation of the **dirent** routines was written by D. Gwynn.

**readonly** — Command

Mark a shell variable as read only

**readonly**

Mark each *variable* as a read-only shell variable. The shell will not permit subsequent assignments to a readonly variable. With no arguments, **readonly** prints the name and value of each read-only variable.

**See Also**

**commands**, **ksh**, **sh**

**readonly** — C Keyword

Storage class

**readonly** is a C keyword that modifies data declarations. As its name implies, the **readonly** modifier declares that data are to be read only; this helps protect key data against casual modification by the user or another programmer.

**See Also**

C keywords, keyword

**Notes**

The ANSI standard for the C language eliminates this keyword.

**read-only memory — Definition**

As its name suggests, **read-only memory**, or ROM, is memory that can be read but not overwritten. It most often is used to store material that is used frequently or in key situations, such as a language interpreter or a boot routine.

**See Also**

definitions, random access

**realloc() — General Function (libc)**

Reallocate dynamic memory

**char \*realloc(ptr, size) char \*ptr; unsigned size;**

**realloc()** helps you manage a program's arena. It returns a block of *size* bytes that holds the contents of the old block, up to the smaller of the old and new sizes. **realloc()** tries to return the same block, truncated or extended; if *size* is smaller than the size of the old block, **realloc()** will return the same *ptr*.

If *ptr* is set to NULL, **realloc()** behaves like **malloc()**.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **calloc()**.

**See Also**

**alloca()**, **arena**, **calloc()**, **free()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**, **memok()**, **setbuf()**

**Diagnostics**

**realloc()** returns NULL if insufficient memory is available. It prints a message and calls **abort** if it discovers that the arena has been corrupted, which most often occurs by storing past the bounds of an allocated block. **realloc()** will behave unpredictably if handed an incorrect *ptr*.

**reboot — Command**

Reboot the COHERENT system

**/etc/reboot [ -p ]**

**reboot** reboots the COHERENT system. The option **-p** prompts the user if she really wishes to reboot before executing the reboot.

**reboot** can be run only by the superuser.

*The COHERENT system should be rebooted only while in single-user mode. Failure to return to single-user mode before rebooting could damage the COHERENT file system and destroy data.*

**See Also**

commands, shutdown

**ref — Command**

Display a C function header

**ref function**

**ref** looks up the function header of *function* in any of a series of reference files built by the command **ctags**. It is used by the **elvis** editor's **<shift-K>** command. This command checks the file **refs** in the

current directory.

### **See Also**

**commands, ctags, elvis**

### **Notes**

**ref** is copyright © 1990 by Steve Kirkendall, and was written by Steve Kirkendall (kirkenda@cs.pdx.edu or ...uunet!tektronix!psueea!eecs!kirkenda), assisted by numerous volunteers. It is freely redistributable, subject to the restrictions noted in included documentation. Source code for **ref** is available through the Mark Williams bulletin board, USENET, and numerous other outlets.

Please note that **ref** is included as a service to COHERENT users, but is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

## **register — C Keyword**

Storage class

**register** is a C keyword that declares a class of data storage. A variable so declared may be stored in a register, which may increase the speed with which it is read by a program.

### **See also**

**auto, C keywords, extern, register variable, static**

## **register variable — Definition**

**register** is a C storage class. A **register** declaration tells the compiler to try to keep the defined local data item in a machine register. Under the COHERENT C compiler, the **int foo** can be declared to be a register variable with the following statement:

```
register int foo;
```

COHERENT places the first two register variables declared in a function into registers SI and DI if the variable type is appropriate, i.e., **int** or SMALL-model pointer. Subsequent **register** declarations are ignored, because no registers are left to hold them. Note because of this fact, declaring more than two register variables may slow processing rather than speed it.

By definition of the C language, registers have no addresses, so you cannot pass the address of register variable as an argument to a function. For example, the following code will generate an error message when compiled:

```
register int i;
. . .
dosomething(&i);    /* WRONG */
```

This rule applies whether or not the variable is actually kept in a register.

Placing heavily-used local variables into registers often improves performance, but in some cases declaring **register** variables can degrade performance somewhat.

### **See Also**

**auto, definitions, extern, static, storage class**

## **rename — Technical Information**

How to rename a file

The COHERENT system has no “rename” procedure *per se*. On the shell level, you can use the **mv** command to rename a file. To rename a file from within a C program, you must use the COHERENT system calls **link** and **unlink**.

### Example

The following program demonstrates how to use **link** and **unlink** to rename a file.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main(argc, argv) int argc; char *argv[];
{
    register char *old, *new;

    if (argc != 3) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: rename old new\n");
        exit(1);
    }
    old = argv[1];
    new = argv[2];

    if (link(old, new) == -1) {
        fprintf(stderr, "rename: link(%s, %s) failed\n", old, new);
        exit(1);
    } else if (unlink(old) == -1) {
        fprintf(stderr, "rename: unlink(%s) failed\n", old);
        exit(1);
    }
    exit(0);
}
```

### See Also

**mv**, **technical information**

### **resetterm()** — terminfo Function

Reset the terminal to its previous settings

**#include** <curses.h>

**resetterm()**

COHERENT 386 comes with a set of functions that let you use **terminfo** descriptions to manipulate a terminal. **resetterm()** restores the terminal to the condition it was in when before the current program began to manipulate its settings. Your program should call **resetterm()** before it calls **system()** or **exit()**.

### See Also

**curses.h**, **fixterm()**, **terminfo**

### **restor** — Command

Restore file system

**restor** *command* [*dump\_device*] [*filesystem*] [*file* ...]

**restor** copies to the hard disk one or more files from floppy disks or tapes written by the command **dump**.

**restor** recognizes the following *commands*:

- r** Mass restore both full and incremental dump disks/tapes into the *filesystem*. The target file system must have enough data blocks and i-nodes to hold the dump.

The mass restoration is performed in three phases. In phase 1, **restor** clears all i-nodes that were either clear at dump time or are going to be restored. Any allocated blocks are released.

Second, it restores all files on the disk. The i-numbering is preserved; however, data blocks are allocated in the standard fashion. Third, a pass is made over the i-nodes and the list of free i-nodes in the superblock is updated.

Restoration begins immediately, using the currently mounted disk or tape.

- R** Like the **r** command, except that it pauses to ask for numbers of disks or reels.
- t** Read the header from the dump. Display the date the dump was written and the "dump since" date that produced the dump.
- x** Extract each *file* from the dump and restore it to the hard disk. All file names are absolute path names starting at the root of the dump (the first directory dumped, which is always the root directory of the file system). A numeric file name is taken to be an i-number on the dumped file system, permitting restore by i-number.  
  
**restor** looks up each *argument* file in the directories of the dumped file system and prints out each name and associated i-number. **restor** extracts the files from the currently mounted dump disk or tape, and writes the extracted files into the current directory. Extracted files are named after their i-numbers.
- X** Like command **x**, except that before it begins, it asks you for the number of the disk (or the reel number of the dump tape). It continues asking for dump disks until all files have been extracted or you types **<ctrl-D>**.

Each of the above commands can be modified either or both of the following modifiers:

- f** Tell **restor** to take the next *argument* as the path name of the dump device (floppy-disk drive or tape drive). If the **f** modifier is not specified, **restor** uses the device **/dev/dump**.
- v** Verbose output. Tell **restor** to print a step-by-step trace of its actions when restoring an entire file system. This is for discovering what went wrong when a mass restore runs into trouble.

### **Restoring from a Damaged Medium**

As noted below, **dump** requires that its output be written to disks or tapes that are free of defects. Restoring a file system from a damaged medium is difficult and is not associated with a high probability of success; if, however, you must try to do so, the following directions will give you a fighting chance of restoring your data.

1. Use the command **fdformat** to format a blank disk. Use the command **badscan** to examine it for bad sectors; if it does have bad sectors, put it aside and try another.
2. Use the command **dd** to copy the bad disk to directory **/tmp/foo1** **dd** should die at the bad sector in the disk.
3. **dd** again to directory **/tmp/foo2** using that command's **skip=n** to skip past the bad sector (or sectors).
4. Repeat step 3 (if it died too) until the end of the disk is reached. Now you have a set of directories named **/tmp/foo[1...n]** that contain parts of the bad disk.
5. Use the command

```
dd if=/tmp/foo1 of=/dev/fha0
```

with the new, defect-free disk.

6. Now, use the command

```
dd if=/tmp/foo2 of=/dev/fha0 seek=whatever
```

to place *foo2* into the right place on the new disk.



7. Repeat 6 for each directory *foo3* through *fooN*.
8. Create a 512-byte file that contain the string

GARBAGE\n

repeated 64 times. Use **dd** to copy it into new disk where the bad sectors were.

Now, you *should* have a disk that is a mirror image of the old, damaged dump disk. Each bad sectors will have been replaced by 64 iterations of the string **GARBAGE\n**. As noted, there is no guarantee that this scheme will work in every instance (the chances of error are quite high), but it will give you a fighting chance to save your data.

### Files

**/dev/dump** — Dump device  
**/etc/ddate** — Dump date file

### See Also

**commands, dump, dumpdir**

### Diagnostics

Most of the diagnostics produced by **restor** are self-explanatory, and are caused by internal table overflows or I/O errors on the dump medium or file system.

If the dump spans multiple disks or reels, **restor** asks you to mount the next disk at the appropriate time. Type a newline when the disk has been mounted. **restor** verifies that this is the correct disk, and gives you another chance if the disk number in the dump header is incorrect.

### Notes

You cannot perform a mass restore onto a live root partition. Instead, boot a stand-alone version of COHERENT on a floppy-disk drive, or boot from an alternative COHERENT file system on another hard-disk partition before you attempt to do a mass restoration.

The handling of tapes with multiple dumps on them (created by dumping to the no rewind special files) is not very general. Basically, **restor** assumes that tapes holding multiple dumps and tapes holding dumps that span multiple reels are mutually exclusive. You can restore from any file on a reel by positioning the tape and then restoring with the **x** or **r** commands, which do not reposition the tape. It is (almost) impossible to use the **X** or **R** commands, as the position of the dump tape will be lost when **restor** closes it.

**dump** requires that its output be written to disks that are free of bad sectors. If you write a dump to a disk with bad sectors, you will not be able to restore files from that disk. See **dump** for directions on processing disks to ensure that they are free of bad sectors.

## return — C Keyword

---

Return a value and control to calling function

**return** is a C statement that returns a value from a function to the function that called it. **return** can be used without a value, to return control of the program to the calling function; also, the calling function is free to ignore the value **return** hands it. Note that it is good programming practice to declare functions that return nothing to be of type **void**.

A function can return only one value to the function that called it. Most often, this value is used to signal whether the function performed successfully or not.

### See Also

**C keywords**

**rev — Command**

Print text backwards

**rev** [*file* ...]

**rev** reverses the order of the characters in each line of each input *file* and writes the result to the standard output. If no *file* is specified, the standard input is used instead.

**Example**

The following allows you to give a command like Mandrake the Magician

```
rev
Rocks break down wall!
<ctrl-D>
```

which displays:

```
!llaw nwod kaerb skcoR
```

on your screen.

**See Also**

commands

**rewind() — STDIO Function**

Reset file pointer

#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;

**int** rewind(*fp*) **FILE** \**fp*;

**rewind()** resets the file pointer to the beginning of stream *fp*. It is a synonym for **fseek(fp, 0L, 0)**.

**Example**

For an example of this routine, see the entry for **fscanf()**.

**See Also**

**fseek()**, **ftell()**, **lseek()**, **STDIO**

**Diagnostics**

**rewind()** returns **EOF** if an error occurs; otherwise, it returns zero.

**rewinddir() — General Function**

Rewind a directory stream

**void** rewinddir(*dirp*)**DIR** \**dirp*;

The COHERENT function **rewinddir()** is one of a set of COHERENT routines that manipulate directories in a device-independent manner. It resets the current position within the directory stream pointed to by *dirp* to the beginning of the directory.

**rewinddir()** discards all buffered data for its data stream. This ensures that your program knows about all modifications to the directory that occurred since the last time the directory stream was opened or rewound.

If an error occurs, **rewinddir()** exits and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**See Also**

**closedir()**, **dirent.h**, **general functions**, **getdents()**, **opendir()**, **readdir()**, **seekdir()**, **telldir()**

## Notes

Because directory entries can dynamically appear and disappear, and because directory contents are buffered by these routines, an application may need to continually rescan a directory to maintain an accurate picture of its active entries.

**rewinddir()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

The COHERENT implementation of the **dirent** routines was written by D. Gwynn.

## **rindex()** — String Function

Find a character in a string

**char \*rindex(string, c) char \*string; char c;**

**rindex()** scans *string* for the last occurrence of character *c*. If *c* is found, **rindex()** returns a pointer to it. If it is not found, **rindex()** returns NULL.

## Example

This example uses **rindex()** to help strip a sample file name of the path information.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#define PATHSEP '/' /* path name separator */

extern char *rindex();
extern char *basename();

main()
{
    char *testpath = "/foo/bar/baz";

    printf("Before massaging: %s\n", testpath);
    printf("After massaging: %s\n", basename(testpath));
}

char *basename(path)
char *path;
{
    char *cp;
    return (((cp = rindex(path, PATHSEP)) == NULL)
        ? path : ++cp);
}
```

## See Also

**index()**, **string functions**

## Notes

This function is identical to the function **strrchr()**, which is described in the ANSI standard.

COHERENT includes **strrchr()** in its libraries. It is recommended that it be used instead of **rindex()** so that programs more closely conform to the ANSI standard.

## **rm** — Command

Remove files

**rm [-flrtv] file ...**

**rm** removes each *file*. If no other links exist, **rm** frees the data blocks associated with the file.

To remove a file, a user must have write and execute permission on the directory in which the file

resides, and must also have write permission on the file itself. The force option **-f** forces the file to be removed if the user does not have write permission on the file itself. It suppresses all error messages and prompts.

The interactive option **-i** tells **rm** to prompt for permission to delete each *file*.

The recursive removal option **-r** causes **rm** to descend into every directory, search for and delete files, and descend further into subdirectories. Directories are removed if the directory is empty, is not the current directory, and is not the root directory.

The test option **-t** performs all access testing but removes no files.

The verbose option **-v** tells **rm** to print each file **rm** and the action taken. In conjunction with the **-t** option, this allows the extent of possible damage to be previewed.

### See Also

commands, **ln**, **rmdir**

### Notes

Absence of delete permission in parent directories is reported with the message "*file*: permission denied". Write protection is not inherited by subdirectories; they must be protected individually.

Note that unlike the similarly named command under MS-DOS, COHERENT's version of **rm** will *not* prompt you if you request a mass deletion. Thus, the command

```
rm *
```

will silently and immediately delete all files in the current directory. *Caveat utilitor!*

### **rmall** — Command

Receive UUCP mail

**rmall** [-LlRr] -q *num* -u *uuxflags address ...*

**rmall** receives mail from UUCP. It reads and interprets the address on the mail and either delivers it on the local machine (if this is where it is address to), or passes it on to the next machine named in the message's UUCP path.

### Options

The command **uux** can pass options to **rmall** to control its behavior. Because **rmall** and **small** are links to the same executable, **rmall** may be passed any option that you can type into **small**; in all likelihood, however, the range of options it will see is much narrower. The following gives the options likeliest to be passed to **rmall**:

- L** Send all addresses to the local mailer for processing, including UUCP paths.
- l** Send a domain address to the local mailer for processing. Normally, only local addresses go to the local mailer.
- q number**  
Set the queuing threshold to *number*. When routing mail to a given host, **rmall** checks the "cost" of contacting the host; this cost is given in **/usr/lib/mail/paths**. If the cost is less the queuing threshold, then **rmall** sends the mail immediately; otherwise, it queues the mail for later shipment. Under COHERENT, default queuing threshold is 100.
- R** Reroute UUCP paths, trying successively larger righthand substrings of a path until a component is recognized.
- r** Route the first component of a UUCP path (**host!address**) in addition to routing domain addresses (**user@domain**).

**-u uuxflags**

Pass *uuxflags* to **uux** for remote mail. This overrides any of the default values and other queueing strategies.

**-l** causes **rmail** to send all domain addresses through the local mailer, to process addresses for non-UUCP domains. **-L** causes **rmail** to send even explicit UUCP paths through the local mailer, presumably to make use of other transport mechanisms. In both cases, **rmail** **small** gets hold it.

**Files**

**/usr/lib/mail/aliases** — Alias data base  
**/usr/lib/mail/paths** — Path data base  
**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/mail/mail** — Log of mail  
**/bin/lmail** — Local mailer  
**/bin/mail** — Mail user agent

**See Also**

**aliases, mail, paths, small**

**Notes**

**small** and **rmail** are links to the same program.

For information on how **rmail** parses addresses and constructs headers, see the Lexicon entry for **small**.

**rmdir — Command**

Remove directories

**rmdir** [ **-f** ] *directory* ...

**rmdir** removes each *directory*. This will not be allowed if a *directory* is the current working directory or is not empty. The force option **-f** allows the superuser to override these restrictions. **rmdir** removes the **.** and **..** entries automatically. Note that using the **-f** option on a directory that is not empty will damage the file system, and require that it be fixed with **fsck**.

**See Also**

**commands, mkdir, rm**

**Notes**

**rmdir -f** does *not* remove files from a nonempty directory; it simply orphans them. To remove a nonempty directory and its contents, use **rm -r** instead.

**rmdir() — System Call**

Remove a directory

**int** **rmdir**(*path*)

**char** \**path*;

The COHERENT system call **rmdir()** removes the directory specified by argument *path*. To remove the directory, the following conditions must apply:

- *path* must exist and be accessible, it must be empty (i.e., contain only entries for **.** and **..**).
- You must have permission to remove the directory.
- The file system that contains *path* must not be mounted “read only”.
- The directory must not be the current directory for any process.
- The directory must not be a mount point for another file system.

If the directory is successfully removed, **rmdir()** returns zero. If an error occurs, it returns **-1** and

sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### See Also

**mkdir**, **mkdir()**, **rmdir**, **system calls**, **unlink()**

### Notes

**rmdir()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

## **root** — Definition

**root** is the login name for the superuser.

### See Also

**definitions**, **superuser**

## **rpow()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Raise multiple-precision integer to power

**#include** <mprec.h>

**void** **rpow**(*a*, *b*, *c*)

**mint** \**a*, \**b*, \**c*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **rpow()** sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *c* to the value pointed to by *a* raised to power of the value pointed to by *b*.

### See Also

**multiple-precision mathematics**

## **RS-232** — Technical Information

COM port wiring

This article details the connections (pinouts) of EIA standard RS-232C. This connect consists of a D-shaped plug with 25 pins in two rows: 13 pins in the upper row and 12 in the lower. This interface is commonly used by devices that require a serial interface to a computer; these devices include modems, terminals, serial printers, and such specialized devices as bar-code scanners. In addition, this articles gives the pinouts of the nine-pin DB-9P connector, which is a nine-pin version of the RS-232 that is commonly used in AT and AT-compatible computers.

### **RS-232 Pinout**

The following table gives the 25-pin EIA standard RS-232C pinouts. It also gives:

- Nine-pin DB-9P convention
- Common abbreviations of signal names
- Abbreviations of RS-232 signal names
- Equivalent CCITT signal-number designations
- Signal direction (as appropriate)
- Signal description

Please note that in this table, **DTE** stands for “data terminal equipment” and refers to terminal-type equipment such as a PC or a terminal, whereas **DCE** stands for “data communications equipment” and refers to modems and modem-type equipment.

DB-25 Pin #	DB-9 Pin #	Common Name	EIA	CCITT	DTE-DCE	Description
1		FG	AA	101	—	Frame ground
2	3	TD	BA	103	→	Transmitted data
3	2	RD	BB	104	←	Received data

4	7	RTS	CA	105	→	Request to send
5	8	CTS	CB	106	←	Clear to send
6	6	DSR	CC	107	←	Data set ready
7	5	SG	AB	102	—	Signal ground
8	1	DCD	CF	109	←	Data carrier detect
9		—	—	—	—	Positive DC test voltage
10		—	—	—	—	Negative DC test voltage
11		QM	—	—	←	Equalizer mode
12		SDCD	SCF	122	←	Secondary carrier detect
13		SCTS	SCB	121	←	Secondary clear to send
14		STD	SBA	118	→	Secondary transmitted data
15		TC	DB	114	←	Transmitter clock
16		SRD	SBB	119	←	Secondary receiver clock
17		RC	DD	115	→	Receiver clock
18		DCR	—	—	←	Divided clock receiver
19		SRTS	SCA	120	→	Secondary request to send
20	4	DTR	CD	108.2	→	Data terminal ready
21		SQ	CG	110	←	Signal quality
22	9	RI	CE	125	←	Ring indicator
23		—	CH	111	→	Data rate selector
24		TC	DA	113	←	Transmitted clock
25						

## Files

**/usr/pub/rs232** — On-line version of above table

## See Also

**modem control, technical information, terminal**

Seyer, M.D.: *RS-232 Made Easy: Connecting Computers, Printers, Terminals, and Modems*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice-Hall Inc., 1984.

## Notes

Serial ports on the back of the PC use either a 25-pin male (DB-25P) or a nine-pin male (DB-9P) connector. Due to what can only be considered as extreme stupidity, the 25-pin female (DB-25S) connector was chosen for the parallel printer port, rather than using the usual 36-pin parallel connector. Do not confuse these ports when wiring custom cable assemblies, as you can damage your equipment!

## rubik — Command

Play Rubik's cube

**/usr/games/rubik**

The COHERENT command **rubik** lets you fiddle with an electronic version of Rubik's cube. By issuing commands, you can "rotate" the segments of the virtual cube and, with some agony, align all the "colors".

**rubik** is written in **m4**, and is a good example of extended programming in this utility.

## See Also

**commands, m4**

***rvalue*** — Definition

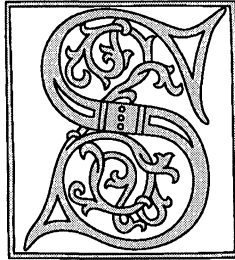
An ***rvalue*** is the value of an expression. The name comes from the assignment expression ***e1=e2;***, in which the right operand is an ***rvalue***.

Unlike an ***lvalue***, an ***rvalue*** can be either a variable or a constant.

***See Also***

***definitions, lvalue***





## sa — Command

Print a summary of process accounting

**sa** [-abc]lmnrstu] [-v N] [file]

One of the accounting mechanisms available on the COHERENT system is *process accounting* (also called *shell accounting*), which records the commands executed by each user. The command **accton** enables or disables shell accounting.

The command **sa** scans the accounting information in *file* and prints a summary. If *file* is omitted, it reads the file **/usr/adm/acct** by default. For each command executed, **sa** prints the number of calls made, the total CPU time (user and system), and the total real time. The output is ordered by decreasing CPU time.

**sa** recognizes the following options:

- a** Place commands executed only once and command names with unprintable characters in the category "\*\*\*other".
- b** Sort by average CPU time per call.
- c** Also print CPU time as a percentage of all CPU time used.
- j** Print average times per call rather than totals.
- l** Separate user and system time.
- m** Accumulate information for each user rather than for each command.
- n** Sort by number of calls.
- r** Reverse the order of the sort.
- s** After scanning, condense the accounting file and merge it into the summary files.
- t** Also print the CPU time as a percentage of real time.
- u** Print the user and command for each accounting record; this option overrides all others.
- v N** For commands called no more than *N* times, where *N* is a digit, **sa** asks whether to place the command in the category "\*\*\*junk\*\*\*".

**sa** uses the summary files **/usr/adm/savacct** and **/usr/adm/usracct** to lessen disk usage.

### Files

**/usr/adm/acct** — Default account data

**/usr/adm/savacct** — Summary

**/usr/adm/usracct** — Summary

**See Also**

**ac**, **acct()**, **acct.h**, **accton**, **commands**

**Notes**

The file **/usr/adm/acct** can become very large; therefore, you should truncate it periodically. Special care should be taken if process accounting is enabled on a COHERENT system with limited disk space.

**sbrk() — General Function (libc)**

Increase a program's data space

**char \*sbrk(increment) unsigned int increment;**

**sbrk()** increases a program's data space by *increment* bytes. It increments the variable **\_\_end**; this variable is set by the C runtime startup routine, and points to the end of the program's data space. **malloc()** calls **sbrk()** should you attempt to allocate more space than is available in the program's data space.

**sbrk()** returns a pointer to the previous setting of **\_\_end** if the requested memory is available, or -1 if it is not.

**See Also**

**brk()**, **general functions**, **malloc()**,

**Notes**

**sbrk()** will not increase the size of the program data area if the physical memory requested exceeds the physical memory allocated by COHERENT, or if the requested memory exceeds the limit set in the user-defined variable **maxmem**. **sbrk()** does not keep track of how space is used; therefore, memory seized with **sbrk()** cannot be freed. *Caveat utilitor.*

**scanf() — STDIO (libc)**

Accept and format input

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int scanf(format, arg1, ... argN)**

**char \*format; [data type] \*arg1, ... \*argN;**

**scanf()** reads the standard input, and uses the string *format* to specify a format for each *arg1* through *argN*, each of which must be a pointer.

**scanf()** reads one character at a time from *format*; white space characters are ignored. The percent sign character '%' marks the beginning of a conversion specification. '%' may be followed by characters that indicate the width of the input field and the type of conversion to be done.

**scanf()** reads the standard input until the return key is pressed. Inappropriate characters are thrown away; e.g., it will not try to write an alphabetic character into an **int**.

The following modifiers can be used within the conversion string:

1. The asterisk '\*', which indicates that the next input field should be skipped rather than assigned to the next *arg*.
2. A string of decimal digits, which specifies a maximum field width.
3. An **l**, which specifies that the next input item is a **long** object rather than an **int** object. Capitalizing the conversion character has the same effect.

The following conversion specifiers are recognized:

- c** Assign the next input character to the next *arg*, which should be of type **char \***.
- d** Assign the decimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **int \***.
- D** Assign the decimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **long \***.
- e** Assign the floating point number from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **float \***.
- E** Assign the floating point number from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **double \***.
- f** Same as **e**.
- F** Same as **E**.
- o** Assign the octal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **int \***.
- O** Assign the octal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **long \***.
- r** The next argument points to an array of new arguments that may be used recursively. The first argument of the list is a **char \*** that contains a new format string. When the list is exhausted, the routine continues from where it left off in the original format string.
- s** Assign the string from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **char \***. The array to which the **char \*** points should be long enough to accept the string and a terminating null character.
- x** Assign the hexadecimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **int \***.
- X** Assign the hexadecimal integer from the next input field to the next *arg*, which should be of type **long \***.

It is important to remember that **scanf** reads up, but not through, the newline character: the newline remains in the standard input device's buffer until you dispose of it somehow. Programmers have been known to forget to empty the buffer before calling **scanf()** a second time, which leads to unexpected results.

### Example

The following example uses **scanf** in a brief dialogue with the user.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    int left, right;

    printf("No. of fingers on your left hand: ");
    /* force message to appear on screen */
    fflush(stdout);
    scanf("%d", &left);

    /* eat newline char */
    while(getchar() != '\n')
        ;
}
```

```

printf("No. of fingers on your right hand: ");
fflush(stdout);
scanf("%d", &right);

/* again, eat newline */
while(getchar() != '\n')
    ;

printf("You've %d left fingers, %d right, & %d total\n",
       left, right, left+right);
}

```

**See Also****fscanf()**, **sscanf()**, **STDIO****Diagnostics**

**scanf()** returns the number of arguments filled. It returns **EOF** if no arguments can be filled or if an error occurs.

**Notes**

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that an argument match its specification. For that reason, **scanf()** is best used to process only data that you are certain are in the correct data format. The use of upper-case format characters to specify long arguments is not standard; use the 'l' modifier for portability.

**scanf()** is difficult to use correctly, and its misuse can be associated with intermittent and dangerous bugs. Rather than use **scanf()** to obtain a string from the keyboard: it is recommended that you use **gets()** to obtain the string, and use **strtok()** or **sscanf()** to parse it.

**scat — Command**

Print text files one screenful at a time

**scat** [ *option ...* ] [ *file ...* ] ...

**scat** prints each *file* on the standard output, one screenful (24 lines) at a time if the output is a screen. **scat** reads and prints the standard input if no *file* is named.

The text is processed to allow convenient viewing on a screen; the options described below select the nature of the processing. Options begin with '-' and may be interspersed with file names.

**scat** scans two argument lists. The first is in the environmental **SCAT**. It should consist of arguments separated by white space (space, tab, or newline characters), with no quoting or shell metacharacters. This string is a useful place to set terminal-dependent parameters (such as page width and length) and to place invocation lists (see below). The second argument list is supplied on the command line.

**scat** recognizes the following options:

- l      Do not stop at EOF if exactly one file was specified on the command line.
- bn     Begin output at input line *n*.
- c      Represent all control characters unambiguously. With this option, **scat** prints control characters in the range 0-037 as a character in the range 0100-0137 prefixed by a caret '^'; for example, SOH appears as "^A" and DEL as "^?". It prints mark-parity characters (in the range of 0200-0377) with '~'; for example, mark-parity 'A' and SOH appear as "~A" and "~^A", respectively. It also prefixes the characters '^', '~', and '\' with a '\\'. This option overrides the option -t.

- cs** Like **-c**, but map space ' ' to underscore '\_' and prefix underscore '\_' with '\'.
- ct** Like **-c**, but map tabs to spaces, not "^I".
- ln** Shift the display window right *n* columns into the text field. This is useful for viewing long lines.
- ln** Set the display window length to *n* lines. The default is 24 normally, 34 for the Tek 4012.
- n** Number input lines; wrapped lines are not numbered.
- r** Remote; the output is not paged.
- s** Skip empty lines.
- Sn** Seek *n* bytes into input before processing.
- t** Truncate long lines. Normally, **scat** wraps each long line, with the interrupted portion delimited by a '\'.
- wn** Set the display window width to *n* columns. The default is 80 normally, 72 for the Tek 4012.
- x** Expand tabs.
- . suffix** Invoke options by file-name suffix. If a file name ends with *.suffix*, then **scat** scans the argument sublist starting immediately after the invocation flag. New options will apply to the invoking file only. A sublist is terminated by the end of the argument list, by a file name, by the "--" flag, or by another "-." (invocation lists do not nest).
- Terminate a sublist (see previous option).

Numbers may begin with **0** to indicate octal, and may end in **b** or **k** to be scaled by 512 or 1,024, respectively.

If the output is being paged, **scat** waits for a user response, which may be one of the following:

- newline** Display next page
- /** Display next half-page
- space** Display next line
- f** Print current file name and line number
- n** **scat** next file
- q** Quit

### **Example**

The following shows how to use the environment argument list, invocation lists, and sublists:

```
SCAT="-l24 -.c -n -.s -b5"
export SCAT
scat *.c *.s
```

After processing the **SCAT** argument list, **scat** processes the command line argument list **"\*.c \*.s"** with the page length at 24 lines. If a file is a C source (**"\*.c"**) the invoke option in the **SCAT** argument list numbers the output lines. If a file is an assembly source (**"\*.s"**) **scat** skips the first four lines.

### **See Also**

**cat, commands, pr**

**sched.h — Header File**

Define constants used with scheduling

```
#include <sys/sched.h>
```

**sched.h** defines constants and structures that are used by routines that perform scheduling.

**See Also**

header files

**SCSI — Device Driver**

SCSI device drivers

The COHERENT SCSI series of device drivers lets you use SCSI-interface devices attached to host adapters from several vendors.

All COHERENT SCSI device drivers use major number 13, thus allowing all SCSI devices to be accessed via standard device-naming conventions. Peripherals can be accessed as either block- or character-special devices. The minor number specifies the device and partition number for disk-type devices; this allows the use of up to eight SCSI identifiers (SCSI-ID's), with up to four logical unit numbers (LUNs) per SCSI-ID and up to four partitions per LUN. Tape and other special devices decode the minor number to perform special operations such as "rewind on close" or "no rewind on close".

The first **open** call on a SCSI disk device allocates memory for the partition table and reads it into memory.

See the release notes for further information regarding supported host adapters and peripherals.

**Files**

**/dev/sd\*** — block-special devices

**/dev/rsd\*** — character-special devices

**See Also**

**aha154x**, **device drivers**, **drvld**, **ss**

**Notes**

The Mark Williams Company's bulletin board makes available loadable device drivers for various SCSI host adapters, as well as device driver updates. See the release notes for further information.

**sdiv() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Divide multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void sdiv(a, n, q, ip)
```

```
mint *a, *q; int n, *ip;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **sdiv()** divides the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* with the integer *n*, which is in the range  $1 \leq n \leq 128$ . It writes the quotient into the **mint** pointed to by *q* and the remainder into the integer pointed to by *ip*.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**SECONDS — Environmental Variable**

Number of seconds since current shell started

The Korn shell stores in environmental variable **SECONDS** the number of seconds since the current shell was started.

**See Also**

environmental variables, **ksh**

**security — Technical Information**

Because COHERENT is a multi-user, multi-tasking operating system which can support users from remote terminals, steps must be taken to ensure that the system is secure. Sensitive information that is stored on the system must be protected from being read or copied by unauthorized persons; files must be protected against vandalism by intruders. Unless a reasonable degree can be guaranteed, no multi-user operating system can be trusted to archive important information.

In one sense, it is easy to achieve perfect security in a computer system. As Grampp and Morris have noted, "It is easy to run a secure computer system. You merely disconnect all dial-up connections, put the machine and its terminals in a shielded room, and post a guard at the door." For practical uses, however, security means balancing ease of access against restrictiveness: users should have easy access to what is properly theirs, and should be barred from system facilities that do not belong to them.

The COHERENT system has the following tools to assist with security.

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <i>Passwords</i>   | <p>Every user account can be "locked" with a password. Each user can assign her own password, and the system administrator can set passwords for the superusers <b>root</b> and <b>bin</b>.</p> <p>Passwords should be changed frequently. A password should have at least six characters, should <i>not</i> be a common name or word, and preferably should include a mixture of upper- and lower-case letters, to prevent decryption by brute-force methods.</p> <p>Passwords should be guarded jealously. In particular, the password for the superuser <b>root</b> should be kept secret, as she can read every file and execute every program throughout the system.</p> |
| <i>Permissions</i> | <p>Execution of system-level programs, such as <b>mount</b>, is restricted to the superuser <b>root</b>. This prevents intruders from seizing superuser permissions through unauthorized manipulation of system services. Ordinary users are also restricted from directly access system devices, for the same reason.</p>  |
| <i>Encryption</i>  | <p>The command <b>crypt</b> performs rotary encryption, similar to that used by the German Enigma machine. Files of sensitive information should be encrypted, to protect them against being read by unauthorized persons. Note that encryption is the only true defense against unauthorized reading; not even the superuser can read an encrypted file unless she has the encryption key.</p>   |

Many COHERENT systems have only one user and are not networked; for such installations, the normal level of security may be an annoyance. Passwords can be turned off by using the command **passwd** to set the password to **<return>**. The command **chmod** can be used to widen access to devices and system-level utilities; see the Lexicon entry for **chmod** for more information on file access.

Security ultimately is a system-wide responsibility. To quote Grampp and Morris, "By far, the greatest security hazard for a system ... is the set of people who use it. If the people who use a

machine are naive about security issues, the machine will be vulnerable regardless of what is done by the local management. This applies particularly to the system's administrators, but ordinary users should also take heed."

### See Also

**chmod, crypt, passwd, technical information**

Grampp, F.T., Morris, R.H.: UNIX operating system security. *AT&T Bell Lab Tech J* 1984;8:1649-1672.

### sed — Command

Stream editor

**sed** [ **-n** ] [ **-e** *command* ] [ **-f** *script* ] ... *file* ...

**sed** is a non-interactive text editor. It reads input from each *file*, or from the standard input if no file is named. It edits the input according to commands given in the *commands* argument and the *script* files. It then writes the edited text onto the standard output.

**sed** resembles the interactive editor **ed**, but its operation is fundamentally different. **sed** normally edits one line at a time, so it may be used to edit very large files. After it constructs a list of commands from its *commands* and *script* arguments, **sed** reads the input one line at a time into a *work area*. Then **sed** executes each command that applies to the line, as explained below. Finally, it copies the work area to the standard output (unless the **-n** option is specified), erases the work area, and reads the next input line.

### Line Identifiers

**sed** identifies input lines by integer line numbers, beginning with one for the first line of the first *file* and continuing through each successive *file*. The following special forms identify lines:

**n** A decimal number *n* addresses the *n*th line of the input.

**.** A period '.' addresses the current input line.

**\$** A dollar sign '\$' addresses the last line of input.

**/pattern/**

A *pattern* enclosed within slashes addresses the next input line that contains *pattern*. Patterns, also called *regular expressions*, are described in detail below.

### Commands

Each command must be on a separate line. Most commands may be optionally preceded by a line identifier (abbreviated as [*n*] in the command summary below) or by two-line identifiers separated by a comma (abbreviated as [*n*,*m*]). If no line identifier precedes a command, **sed** applies the command to every input line. If one line identifier precedes a command, **sed** applies the command to each input line selected by the identifier. If two-line identifiers precede a command, **sed** begins to apply the command when an input line is selected by the first, and continues applying it through an input line selected by the second.

**sed** recognizes the following commands:

[*n*]= Output the current input line number.

[*n*,*m*]!*command*  
Apply *command* to each line not identified by [*n*,*m*].

[*n*,*m*]{*command*...}  
Execute each enclosed *command* on the given lines.



- :label** Define *label* for use in branch or test command.
- [n]a\** Append new text after given line. New text is terminated by any line not ending in '\.'
- b [label]** Branch to *label*, which must be defined in a ':' command. If *label* is omitted, branch to end of command script.
- [n[,m]]c\** Change specified lines to new text and proceed with next input line. New text is terminated by any line not ending in '\.'
- [n[,m]]d** Delete specified lines and proceed with next input line.
- [n[,m]]D** Delete first line in work area and proceed with next input line.
- [n[,m]]g** Copy secondary work area to work area, destroying previous contents.
- [n[,m]]G** Append secondary work area to work area.
- [n[,m]]h** Copy work area to secondary work area, destroying previous contents.
- [n[,m]]H** Append work area to secondary work area.
- [n]I\** Insert new text before given line. New text is terminated by any line not ending in '\.'
- [n[,m]]l** Print selected lines, interpreting non-graphic characters.
- [n[,m]]n** Print the work area and replace it with the next input line.
- [n[,m]]N** Append next input line preceded by a newline to work area.
- [n[,m]]p** Print work area.
- [n[,m]]P** Print first line of work area.
- [n]q** Quit without reading any more input.
- [n]r file** Copy *file* to output.
- [n[,m]]s[k]/pattern1/pattern2/[g][p][w file]**  
Search for *pattern1* and substitute *pattern2* for *k*th occurrence (default, first). If optional **g** is given, substitute all occurrences. If optional **p** is given, print the resulting line. If optional **w** is given, append the resulting line to *file*. Patterns are described in detail below.
- [n[,m]]t[label]**  
Test if substitutions have been made. If so, branch to *label*, which must be defined in a ':' command. If *label* is omitted, branch to end of command script.
- [n[,m]]w file**  
Append lines to *file*.
- [n[,m]]x**  
Exchange the work area and the secondary work area.
- [n[,m]]y/chars/replacements/**  
Translate characters in *chars* to the corresponding characters in *replacements*.

## Patterns

Substitution commands and search specifications may include *patterns*, also called *regular expressions*. Pattern specifications are identical to those of **ed**, except that the special characters '\n' match a newline character in the input.

A non-special character in a pattern matches itself. Special characters include the following:

- ^** Match beginning of line, unless it appears immediately after '[' (see below).
- \$** Match end of line.
- \n** Match the newline character.
- .** Match any character except newline.
- \*** Match zero or more repetitions of preceding character.
- [chars]** Match any one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.  
**[^chars]** Match any character *except* one of the enclosed *chars*. Ranges of letters or digits may be indicated using '-'.  
**\c** Disregard special meaning of character *c*.
- \(pattern\)** Delimit substring *pattern*; for use with *\d*, described below.

In addition, the replacement part *pattern2* of the substitute command may also use the following:

- &** Insert characters matched by *pattern1*.
- \d** Insert substring delimited by *d*th occurrence of delimiters '\(' and '\)', where *d* is a digit.

### Options

**sed** recognizes the following options:

- e** Next argument gives a **sed** command. **sed**'s command line can have more than one **-e** option.
- f** Next argument gives file name of command script.
- n** Output lines only when explicit **p** or **P** commands are given.

### See Also

**commands, ed, elvis, ex, me, vi**

### **seekdir()** — General Function

Reset the position within a directory stream

**void seekdir** (*dirp*, *loc*)

**DIR** \**dirp*;

**off\_t** *loc*;

The function **seekdir()** is one of a set of COHERENT routines that manipulate directories in a device-independent manner. It resets the current position within the directory stream pointed to by *dirp* to *loc*. *loc* must be a position indicator returned by a previous call to **telldir()**.

If an error occurs, **seekdir()** exits and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### See Also

**closedir(), dirent.h, general functions, getdents(), opendir(), readdir(), rewinddir(), telldir()**

### Notes

**telldir()** and **seekdir()** are unreliable when the directory stream has been closed and reopened. It is best to avoid using **telldir()** and **seekdir()** altogether.

Because directory entries can dynamically appear and disappear, and because directory contents are buffered by these routines, an application may need to continually rescan a directory to maintain an accurate picture of its active entries.

**seekdir()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

The COHERENT implementation of the **dirent** routines was written by D. Gwynn.

## seg.h — Header File

Definitions used with segmentation

**#include <seg.h>**

**seg.h** defines structures and constants used by routines that handle memory segmentation.

### See Also

header files

## sem — Device Driver

Semaphore device driver

**/dev/sem** is an interface to the semaphore device driver. It is assigned major device 23 (minor device 0) and can be accessed as a character-special device.

All semaphore operations are performed through the COHERENT system call **ioctl()**. The operations **semctl()**, **semget()**, and **semop()** are performed with an integer parameter array. The first element of the array is reserved for the return value (default -1). Subsequent elements represent arguments. The call to **ioctl()** passes **SEMCTL**, **SEMGET**, or **SEMOP** as the second argument, and the parameter array as the third argument. The first argument is an open file descriptor to **/dev/sem**.

### Access

If entry **/dev/sem** does not exist, you must create it, as follows:

```
/etc/mknod /dev/sem c 23 0
chmod 666 /dev/sem
```

### Files

**<sys/ipc.h>**

**<sys/sem.h>**

**/dev/sem** — Device

**/drv/sem** — Loadable device driver

### See Also

device drivers, **drvld**, **ps**, **semctl()**, **semget()**, **semop()**

### Notes

Under COHERENT 286, allocation of too many semaphore ids (**NSEMICID**) or semaphores per identifier (**NSEM**) can exhaust kernel data space, which will stop the system in its tracks. You can use the command **/conf/patch** to change either of these variables. Please note that you must patch the driver **/drv/sem**, *not* the kernel itself. Be sure to exercise extreme care when attempting to patch a driver!

Private semaphore sets are not supported. Semaphore ids must be removed manually when no longer required. To remove all semaphore identifiers, use the following code:

```
#include <sys/sem.h>
#define NSEMID 16

semget( 0, 0 );      /* must do first */

for ( id=0; id < NSEMID; ++id )
    semctl( id, 0, IPC_RMID, 0 );
```

COHERENT 286 implements **sem** as a loadable device driver. To load it into memory, use the command **drvld**.

### **sem.h — Header File**

Definitions used by semaphore facility

**#include <sys/sem.h>**

**sem.h** defines constants and structures used by the COHERENT semaphore facility.

### **See Also**

header files

### **semctl() — General Function**

Control semaphore operations

**#include <sys/sem.h>**

**semctl(semid, semnum, cmd, arg)**

**int semid, cmd, semnum;**

**union semun {**

**int val;**

**struct semid\_ds \*buf;**

**unsigned short array[];**

**} arg;**

**semctl()** controls a variety of semaphore operations. *cmd* sets the operation to be performed; the following *cmds* are executed with respect to the semaphore specified by *semid* and *semnum*:

<b>GETVAL</b>	Return the value of <b>semval</b> (READ).
<b>SETVAL</b>	Set the value of <b>semval</b> to <i>arg.val</i> (ALTER).
<b>GETPID</b>	Return the value of <b>sempid</b> (READ).
<b>GETNCNT</b>	Return the value of <b>semncnt</b> (READ).
<b>GETZCNT</b>	Return the value of <b>semzcnt</b> (READ).

The following *cmds* return and set, respectively, every **semval** in the set of semaphores.

<b>GETALL</b>	Place <b>semvals</b> into array pointed to by <i>arg.array</i> (READ).
<b>SETALL</b>	Set <i>semvals</i> according to the array pointed to by <i>arg.array</i> (ALTER).

The following *cmds* are also available:

<b>IPC_STAT</b>	Place the current value of each member of the data structure associated with <i>semid</i> into the structure pointed to by <i>arg.buf</i> (READ).
<b>IPC_SET</b>	Set the value of the following members of the data structure associated with <i>semid</i> to the corresponding value found in the structure pointed to by <i>arg.buf</i> :

```
sem_perm.uid
sem_perm.gid
sem_perm.mode /* only low 9 bits */
```

This command can only be executed by a process that has an effective user identifier equal to either that of superuser or to the value of **sem\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *semid*.

**IPC\_RMID** Remove the system identifier specified by *semid* from the system and destroy the set of semaphores and data structure associated with it. This *cmd* can only be executed by a process that has an effective user identifier equal to either that of super user or to the value of **sem\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *semid*.

**semctl()** will fail if one or more of the following are true:

- *semid* is not a valid semaphore identifier [EINVAL].
- *semnum* is less than zero or greater than **sem\_nsems** [EINVAL].
- *cmd* is not a valid command [EINVAL].
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process. [EACCES]
- *cmd* is **SETVAL** or **SETALL** and the value to which *semval* is to be set is greater than the system imposed maximum [ERANGE].
- *cmd* is equal to **IPC\_RMID** or **IPC\_SET** and the effective user identifier of the calling process is not equal to that of superuser and it is not equal to the value of **sem\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *semid* [EPERM].
- *arg.buf* points to an illegal address [EFAULT].

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, the value returned depends on *cmd* as follows:

<b>GETVAL</b>	The value of <b>semval</b> .
<b>GETPID</b>	The value of <b>sempid</b> .
<b>GETNCNT</b>	The value of <b>semncnt</b> .
<b>GETZCNT</b>	The value of <b>semzcnt</b> .
All others	Zero

Otherwise, **semctl()** returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/sem.h
/dev/sem
/dev/sem
```

### See Also

general functions, **sem**, **semget()**, **semop()**

### Notes

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements the semaphore functions as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

**semget()** — General Function

Get a set of semaphores

```
#include <sys/sem.h>
semget(key, nsems, semflg)
key_t key; int nsems, semflg;
```

**semget()** returns the semaphore identifier associated with *key*. It creates a semaphore identifier and associated data structure and set that contains *nsems* semaphores for *key* should one of the following be true:

- *key* equals **IPC\_PRIVATE**.
- *key* does not have a semaphore identifier associated with it, and (*semflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) is true.

When **semget()** creates a data structure for a new semaphore identifier, it initializes the structure as follows:

- It sets the fields **sem\_perm.cuid**, **sem\_perm.uid**, **sem\_perm.cgid**, and **sem\_perm.gid** equal to the effective user identifier, the calling process's identifier, and the effective group identifier, respectively.
- It sets the low-order nine bits of **sem\_perm.mode** equal to the low-order nine bits of *semflg*. These nine bits define access permissions: the top three bits specify the owner's access permissions (read, write, execute), the middle three bits the owning group's access permissions, and the low three bits access permissions for others.
- **sem\_nsems** is set equal to the value of *nsems*.
- **sem\_otime** is set to zero and **sem\_ctime** to the current time.

**semget()** fails if any of the following are true:

- *nsems* is either less than or equal to zero, or greater than the system imposed limit. It sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- A semaphore identifier exists for *key* but operation permission as specified by the low-order nine bits of *semflg* would not be granted (**EACCES**).
- A semaphore identifier exists for *key* but the number of semaphores in the set associated with it is less than *nsems* and *nsems* is not equal to zero (**EINVAL**).
- A semaphore identifier does not exist for *key* and (*semflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) is false (**ENOENT**).
- The number of semaphore identifiers allowed system-wide would be exceeded (**ENOSPC**).
- The number of semaphores allowed system-wide would be exceeded (**ENOSPC**).
- A semaphore identifier exists for *key* but ( (*semflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) && (*semflg* & **IPC\_EXCL**) ) is true (**EEXIST**).

**Return Value**

Upon successful completion, **semget()** returns a non-negative integer, namely a semaphore identifier. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**Files**

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/sem.h
/dev/sem
/dev/sem
```

**See Also**

general functions, sem, semctl(), semop()

**Notes**

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements the semaphore functions as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.

**semop() — General Function**

Perform semaphore operations

```
#include <sys/sem.h>
```

```
semop(semid, sops, nsops)
```

```
int semid, nsops; struct sembuf(sops)[];
```

**semop()** can atomically perform a number of operations on the set of semaphores associated with the semaphore identifier *semid*. *sops* pointer to the array of semaphore-operation structures. *nsops* is the number of such structures in the array. Each structure includes the following members:

```
short sem_num;    /* semaphore number */
short sem_op;     /* semaphore operation */
short sem_flg;    /* operation flags */
```

Each semaphore operation specified by *sem\_op* is performed on the semaphore specified by *semid* and *sem\_num*.

*sem\_op* specifies one of three semaphore operations, as follows:

- If *sem\_op* is negative, one of the following occurs:
  1. If **semval** is greater than or equal to the absolute value of *sem\_op*, the absolute value of *sem\_op* is subtracted from **semval**.
  2. If **semval** is less than the absolute value of *sem\_op* and (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true, **semop()** sets **errno** to **EGAIN** and returns -1.
  3. If **semval** is less than the absolute value of *sem\_op* and (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is false, **semop()** increments the **semncnt** associated with the specified semaphore and suspend execution of the calling process until one of the following occurs:
    - a. **semval** becomes greater than or equal to the absolute value of *sem\_op*. When this occurs, the value of **semncnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented, and the absolute value of *sem\_op* is subtracted from **semval**.
    - b. The *semid* for which the calling process is awaiting action is removed from the system.
    - c. The calling process receives a signal. When this occurs, the value of **semncnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented, and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in **signal()**.
- If *sem\_op* is positive, the value of *sem\_op* is added to **semval**.
- If *sem\_op* is zero, one of the following occurs:
  1. If **semval** is zero, **semop()** returns immediately.
  2. If **semval** does not equal zero and (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true, **semop()** immediately returns -1, with **errno** set to **EGAIN**.

3. If **semval** is not equal to zero and (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is false, **semop()** increments the **semzcnt** associated with the specified semaphore and suspends execution of the calling process until one of the following occurs:
  - a. **semval** becomes zero, at which time the value of **semzcnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented.
  - b. The *semid* for which the calling process is awaiting action is removed from the system.
  - c. The calling process receives a signal. When this occurs, the value of **semzcnt** associated with the specified semaphore is decremented, and the calling process resumes execution in the manner prescribed in *signal*.

**semop()** fails if one or more of the following are true for any of the semaphore operations specified by *sops*:

- *semid* is not a valid semaphore identifier. **semop()** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- *sem\_num* is less than zero or greater than or equal to the number of semaphores in the set associated with *semid* (**EFBIG**).
- *nsops* is greater than the system imposed maximum (**E2BIG**).
- Operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- The operation would result in suspension of the calling process but (*sem\_flg* & **IPC\_NOWAIT**) is true (**EAGAIN**).
- An operation would cause a **semval** to overflow the system imposed limit (**ERANGE**).
- *sops* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

Upon successful completion, the value of **sempld** for each semaphore specified in the array pointed to by *sops* is set equal to the process identifier of the calling process.

### **Return Value**

If **semop()** returns due to the receipt of a signal, it returns -1 to the calling process and sets **errno** to **EINTR**. If it returns due to the removal of a *semid* from the system, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to **EDOM**.

Upon successful completion, **semop()** returns the value of **semval** at the time of the call for the last operation in the array pointed to by *sops*. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### **Files**

**/usr/include/sys/ipc.h**  
**/usr/include/sys/sem.h**  
**/dev/sem**  
**/drv/sem**

### **See Also**

**general functions, sem, semctl(), semget()**

### **Notes**

The flag **SEM\_UNDO** is not supported. This flag would allow semaphore operations to be undone upon the termination of the process which performed the operations.

To improve portability, the COHERENT system implements semaphore operations as a device driver rather than as an actual system call.



**set — Command**

Set shell option flags and positional parameters

**set** [-ceknstuvx] [*name* ...] (Bourne shell)

**set** [[+-]aefhkmnuvx] [[+-]o *name*] (Korn shell)

**set** changes the options of the current shell and optionally sets the values of positional parameters. This command is used implemented by both the Bourne and Korn shells; however, its syntax and options vary from one shell to the other.

**Bourne Shell**

The shell variable `$-` contains the currently set shell flags. If the optional *name* list is given, **set** assigns the positional parameters `$1`, `$2` ... to the given shell variables.

**set** recognizes the following options:

**-c** *string*

Read shell commands from *string*.

**-e** Exit on any error (command not found or command returning nonzero status) if the shell is not interactive.

**-i** The shell is interactive, even if the terminal is not attached to it; print prompt strings. For a shell reading a script, ignore signals **SIGTERM** and **SIGINT**.

**-k** Place all keyword arguments into the environment. Normally, the shell places only assignments to variables preceding the command into the environment.

**-n** Read commands but do not execute them.

**-s** Read commands from the standard input and write shell output to the standard error.

**-t** Read and execute one command rather than the entire file.

**-u** If the actual value of a shell variable is blank, report an error rather than substituting the null string.

**-v** Print each line as it is read.

**-x** Print each command and its arguments as it is executed.

- Cancel the **-x** **-v** options.

The shell executes **set** directly.

**Korn Shell**

**set** recognizes the following options. Preceding an option with `-` turns on the option; preceding it with `+` turns it off.

**-a allexport:** Automatically export all new variables.

**-e errexit:** Exit from the shell when non-zero status is received.

**-f noglob:** Do not expand file names. This globally turns off the special meaning of characters `*` and `?`.

**-h trackall:** Automatically add all commands to the shell's hash table.

**-k keyword:** Recognize variable assignments anywhere in a command.

**-m monitor:** Enable job control. See the Lexicon article on **ksh** for details on job control and how to use it.

**-n noexec:** Compile an input command, but do not execute it.

**-o option**

Set *option*. **set** recognizes the following *options*:

**allexport** Same as **-a** option, above.

**emacs** Turn on MicroEMACS-style editing of command lines.

**errexit** Same as **-e** option, above.

**ignoreeof** Tell the shell not to exit when reading EOF: must use **exit** command to exit from the shell.

**keyword** Same as **-k** option, above.

**monitor** Same as **-m** option, above.

**noexec** Same as **-n** option, above.

**noglob** Same as **-f** option, above.

**trackall** Same as **-h** option, above.

**nounset** Same as **-u** option, below.

**verbose** Same as **-v** option, below.

**xtrace** Same as **-x** option, below.

**-u nounset:** Treat dollar-sign expansion of an unset variable as an error.

**-v verbose:** When compiling a command, echo its compiled (i.e., expanded) version on the standard output before executing it.

**-x xtrace:** Echo simple commands while executing.

The shells execute **set** directly.

**See Also**

**commands, ksh, sh**

---

**setbuf()** — **STDIO (libc)**

Set alternative stream buffers

**#include <stdio.h>**

**void setbuf(fp, buffer) FILE \*fp; char \*buffer;**

The standard I/O library **STDIO** automatically buffers all data read and written in streams, with the exception of streams to terminal devices. **STDIO** normally uses **malloc()** to allocate the buffer, which is a **char** array **BUFSIZ** characters long; **BUFSIZ** is defined in the header file **stdio.h**.

**setbuf()**'s arguments are the file stream *fp* and the *buffer* to be associated with the stream. The call should be issued after the stream has been opened, but before any input or output request has been issued. If *buffer* is **NULL**, the stream will be unbuffered. If *buffer* is not **NULL**, the area of memory it points to must contain at least **BUFSIZ** bytes.

**setbuf()** returns nothing.

**See Also**

**fopen(), malloc(), STDIO**

**setgid() — System Call**

Set group id and user id  
**int setgid(id) int id;**

**setgid()** sets the group id. This calls can be used to set group id privileges. (For more information on group id, see **exec()**.)

The call is allowed if the real id of the calling process matches *id* or is the superuser.

**See Also**

**exec()**, **getuid()**, **login**, **setuid()**, **system calls**

**Diagnostics**

**setgid()** returns zero on success, or -1 on failure.

**setgrent() — General Function**

Rewind group file

**#include <grp.h>**

**struct group \*setgrent();**

**setgrent()** rewinds the file **/etc/group**. It returns NULL if an error occurs.

**Files**

**/etc/group**

**<grp.h>**

**See Also**

**general functions**, **group**

**setjmp() — General Function**

Perform non-local goto

**#include <setjmp.h>**

**int setjmp(env) jmp\_buf env;**

The function call is the only mechanism that C provides to transfer control between functions. This mechanism, however, is inadequate for some purposes, such as handling unexpected errors or interrupts at lower levels of a program. To answer this need, **setjmp** helps to provide a non-local *goto* facility. **setjmp()** saves a stack context in *env*, and returns value zero. The stack context can be restored with the function **longjmp()**. The type declaration for **jmp\_buf** is in the header file **setjmp.h**. The context saved includes the program counter, stack pointer, and stack frame.

**Example**

The following gives a simple example of **setjmp()** and **longjmp()**.

```
#include <setjmp.h>

jmp_buf env;    /* place for setjmp to store its environment */

main()
{
    int rc;
```

```
    if(rc = setjmp(env)) { /* we come here on return */
        printf("First char was %c\n", rc);
        exit(0);
    }
    subfun(); /* this never returns */
}

subfun()
{
    char buf[80];

    do {
        printf("Enter some data\n");
        gets(buf); /* get data */
    } while(!buf[0]); /* retry on null line */

    longjmp(env, buf[0]); /* buf[0] must be non zero */
}
```

### See Also

general functions, `getenv()`, `longjmp()`

### Notes

Programmers should note that many user-level routines cannot be interrupted and reentered safely. For that reason, improper use of `setjmp()` and `longjmp()` can create mysterious and irreproducible bugs. The use of `longjmp()` to exit interrupt exception or signal handlers is particularly hazardous.

### setjmp.h — Header File

Define `setjmp()` and `longjmp()`

**#include <setjmp.h>**

**setjmp.h** defines the structure `jmp_buf` for a `setjmp` environment.

### See Also

header file, `longjmp`, `setjmp`

### setpgrp() — System Call

Set process group number

**int setpgrp()**

**setpgrp()** sets the group number of the requesting process to its process ID number. It is used to detach a process from its parent group. The requesting process becomes leader of its own processing group. If the requesting process was not already a process group leader, it is detached from its controlling terminal.

**setpgrp()** returns the new process group number.

### See Also

`getpgrp()`, system calls

**setpwent() — General Function (libc)**

Rewind password file

```
#include <pwd.h>
```

```
setpwent()
```

The COHERENT system has five routines that search the file `/etc/passwd`, which contains information about every user of the system. **setpwent()** rewinds the password file, which allows searches to begin from the beginning of the file. Please note that this function does not return a meaningful value.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **getpwent()**.

**Files**

`/etc/passwd`

`pwd.h`

**See Also**

**endpwent()**, **general functions**, **getpwent()**, **getpwnam()**, **getpwuid()**, `pwd.h`

**settz() — Time Function**

Set local time zone

```
#include <time.h>
```

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
void settz()
```

```
extern long timezone; char *tzname[2][16];
```

**settz()** is one of the suite of COHERENT functions that control and display the system's time. It searches for the environmental parameter **TIMEZONE**, which gives information on the local time zone. For more information on **TIMEZONE**, see its Lexicon entry.

If **TIMEZONE** is set, **settz()** initializes the external variables **timezone** and **tzname**. **timezone** contains the number of seconds to be subtracted from GMT to obtain local standard time. **tzname[0]** and **tzname[1]** are character arrays that hold, respectively, the names of the local standard time zone and the local daylight saving time zone. If **TIMEZONE** is not set, **timezone** defaults to zero, **tzname[0]** to GMT, and **tzname[1]** to the empty string.

**See Also**

**date**, **ftime()**, **time**, **TIMEZONE**

**setuid() — System Call**

Set user id

```
int setuid(id) int id;
```

**setuid()** sets the real user id and the user id of the calling process to *id*. (For more information on the user id, see **exec**).

The call is allowed if the real id of the calling process matches *id* or is the superuser.

**See Also**

**exec**, **getuid()**, **login**, **setgid()**, **system calls**

**Diagnostics**

**setuid()** returns zero on success, or -1 on failure.

**setupterm() — terminfo Function**

Initialize a terminal

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
setupterm(term,fd,erret)
```

```
char *term;
```

```
int fd, *erret;
```

COHERENT 386 comes with a set of functions that let you use **terminfo** descriptions to manipulate a terminal. **setupterm()** initializes terminal capabilities for terminal type *term*, which is accessed via file-descriptor *fd*. It inhales all capabilities at once, and performs all other system-dependent initialization — which is one reason why **terminfo** is much faster than **termcap**.

If *term* is initialized to NULL, **setupterm()** uses the contents of the environmental variable **TERM** as a default.

*erret* points to an integer into which **setupterm()** writes the terminal's status: zero if there is no such terminal type, one if all went well, or -1 if something has gone wrong. If *erret* is NULL, **setupterm()** prints an error message and exits if the terminal cannot be found.

**See Also**

**terminfo**

**sgtty — Device Driver**

General terminal interface

COHERENT uses two method for controlling terminals: **sgtty** and **termio**. Programmers who use COHERENT 286 must use **sgtty**. Programmers who use COHERENT 386 may use **sgtty** or **termio**, whichever they prefer.

To use **sgtty**, simply include the statement **#include <sgtty.h>** in your sources. To use **termio**, include the statement **#include <termio.h>**.

The rest of this article discusses the **sgtty** method of controlling terminals.

When a terminal file is opened, it normally causes the process to wait until a connection is established. In practice, users' programs seldom open these files; they are opened by the program *getty* and become a user's standard input, output, and error files. The very first terminal file opened by the process group leader of a terminal file not already associated with a process group becomes the *controlling terminal* for that process group. The controlling terminal plays a special role in handling **quit** and **interrupt** signals, as discussed below. The controlling terminal is inherited by a child process during a call to **fork**. A process can break this association by changing its process group using **setpgrp**.

A terminal associated with one of these files ordinarily operates in full-duplex mode. Characters can be typed at any time, even while output is occurring, and are only lost when the system's input buffers become completely full, which is rare, or when the user has accumulated the maximum allowed number of input characters that have not yet been read by some program. Currently, this limit is 256 characters. When the input limit is reached, the sytems throws away all the saved characters without notice.

Normally, terminal input is processed in units of lines. A line is delimited by a newline character (ASCII LF) or an end-of-file character (ASCII EOT). Unless otherwise directed, a program attempting to read will be suspended until an entire line has been typed. Also, no matter how many characters are requested in the read call, at most one line will be returned. It is not, however, necessary to read a whole line at once; any number of characters may be requested in a read, even one, without losing information.

During input, the system normally processes **erase** and **kill** characters. By default, the backspace character erases the last character typed, except that it will not erase beyond the beginning of the line. By default, the **<ctrl-U>** kills (deletes) the entire input line, and optionally outputs a newline character. Both these characters operate on a keystroke-by-keystroke basis, independently of any backspacing or tabbing which may have been done. Both the erase and kill characters may be entered literally by preceding them with the escape character (**\**). In this case, the escape character is not read. You may change the erase and kill characters via command **stty**.

Certain characters have special functions on input. These functions and their default character values are summarized as follows:

<b>INTR</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-C&gt;</b> or ASCII ETX) generates an <i>interrupt</i> signal that is sent to all processes associated with the controlling terminal. Normally, each such process is forced to terminate, but arrangements may be made either to ignore the signal or to receive a trap to an agreed-upon location; see the Lexicon entry for <b>signal</b> .
<b>QUIT</b>	(Control-\ <b>\</b> or ASCII ES) generates a <i>quit</i> signal. Its treatment is identical to that of the interrupt signal except that, unless a receiving process has made other arrangements, it will not only be terminated but a core image file (called <b>core</b> ) will be created in the current working directory.
<b>ERASE</b>	( <b>&lt;backspace&gt;</b> or ASCII BS) erases the preceding character. It will not erase beyond the start of a line, as delimited by a newline or <b>EOF</b> character.
<b>KILL</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-U&gt;</b> or ASCII NAK) deletes the entire line, as delimited by a newline or <b>EOF</b> character.
<b>EOF</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-D&gt;</b> or ASCII EOT) generates an end-of-file character from a terminal. When received, all the characters waiting to be read are immediately passed to the program without waiting for a newline, and the <b>EOF</b> is discarded. Thus, if no characters are waiting, which is to say the <b>EOF</b> occurred at the beginning of a line, zero characters will be passed back, which is the standard end-of-file indication.
<b>NL</b>	(ASCII LF) is the normal line delimiter. It cannot be changed or escaped.
<b>STOP</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-S&gt;</b> or ASCII DC3) can be used to suspend output. It is useful with CRT terminals to prevent output from disappearing before it can be read. While output is suspended, STOP characters are ignored and not read.
<b>START</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-Q&gt;</b> or ASCII DC1) resumes output that has been suspended by a STOP character. While output is not suspended, START characters are ignored and not read. The start/stop characters can be changed via command <b>stty</b> , or via special <b>ioctl()</b> calls described below.

The character values for INTR, QUIT, ERASE, **EOF**, and KILL may be changed to suit individual tastes. The ERASE, KILL, and **EOF** character may be escaped by a preceding **\** character, in which case the system ignores its special meaning. See the Lexicon article on **stty** for information on how to change these settings dynamically.

When using a "modem control" serial line, loss of carrier from the data-set (modem) causes a *hangup* signal to be sent to all processes that have this terminal as the controlling terminal. Unless other arrangements have been made, this signal causes the process to terminate. If the hangup signal is ignored, any subsequent read returns with an end-of-file indication. Thus programs that read a terminal and test for end-of-file can terminate appropriately when hung up on.

When one or more characters are written, they are transmitted to the terminal as soon as previously written characters have finished typing. Input characters are echoed by putting them into the output queue as they arrive. If a process produces characters more rapidly than they can be printed, it will be suspended when its output queue exceeds some limit, known as the "high water

mark". When the queue has "drained" down to some threshold, the program resumes.

The header file **<sgtty.h>** declares structures and manifest constants to control the **sgtty** interface. Of interest to users are the constants that define baud rates for terminal ports; these are as follows. Note that rates marked with an asterisk are unavailable under COHERENT 386; those marked with a dagger † are unavailable under COHERENT 286.

<b>B50</b>	50 baud
<b>B75</b>	75 baud
<b>B110</b>	110 baud
<b>B134</b>	134 baud
<b>B150</b>	150 baud
<b>B200</b>	200 baud
<b>B300</b>	300 baud
<b>B600</b>	600 baud
<b>B1200</b>	1200 baud
<b>B1800</b>	1800 baud
<b>B2000</b>	2000 baud *
<b>B2400</b>	2400 baud
<b>B3600</b>	3600 baud *
<b>B4800</b>	4800 baud
<b>B7200</b>	7200 baud *
<b>B9600</b>	9600 baud
<b>B19200</b>	19,200 baud
<b>B38400</b>	38,400 baud †

### **Terminal ioctl() Functions**

Header file **<sgtty.h>** defines the following data structures used by the various device drivers to convey terminal specific information. These structures are used in conjunction with special terminal or device driver symbolic constants as part of **ioctl()** requests.

The **sgttyb** structure contains information related to line discipline, such as serial line speed, if appropriate, the "erase" and "kill" characters, and a series of flags which set the mode of the line.

```
/*
 * Structure for TIOCSETP/TIOCGETP
 */
struct sgttyb {
    char    sg_ispeed;    /* Input speed */
    char    sg_ospeed;    /* Output speed */
    char    sg_erase;     /* Character erase */
    char    sg_kill;      /* Line kill character */
    int     sg_flags;     /* Flags */
};
```

The following symbolic constants are used to access bit positions of member **sg\_flags** in data structure **sgttyb**:

<b>CBREAK</b>	Each input character causes wakeup (i.e., forces a return from a <b>read()</b> system call).
<b>CRMOD</b>	Map the carriage return characters '\r' to the newline character '\n'.
<b>CRT</b>	Use CRT-style character erase.



<b>ECHO</b>	Echo input characters.
<b>EVENP</b>	Select even parity. If used in conjunction with <b>ODDP</b> , allow either parity.
<b>LCASE</b>	Lowercase mapping on input.
<b>ODDP</b>	Select odd parity. If used in conjunction with <b>EVENP</b> , allow either parity.
<b>RAW</b>	Raw mode. Same as <b>RAWIN</b> plus <b>RAWOUT</b> .
<b>RAWIN</b>	Input is treated as 8-bit characters and not interpreted.
<b>RAWOUT</b>	Output is treated as 8-bit characters and not interpreted.
<b>TANDEM</b>	Use X-ON/X-OFF flow control protocol to remote device.
<b>XTABS</b>	Expand tabs to spaces.

Data structure **tchars** specifies additional special terminal characters such as the "interrupt" and "quit" characters, the "start" and "stop" characters used for flow control, and the "end-of-file" character.

```

/*
 * Structure for TIOCSETC/TIOCGETC
 */
struct tchars {
    char  t_intrc;      /* Interrupt */
    char  t_quitc;      /* Quit */
    char  t_startc;     /* Start output */
    char  t_stopc;      /* Stop output */
    char  t_eofc;       /* End of file */
    char  t_brkc;       /* Input delimiter */
};

```

The following symbolic constants are used to access various device functions via **ioctl()** calls, as defined in header file **<sgtty.h>**. Note that not all functions are appropriate for all classes of devices.

<b>TIOCCBRK</b>	Clear a BREAK condition on a serial line (i.e., "mark" the line). This request cancels a previously issued <b>TIOCSBRK</b> request.
<b>TIOCCDTR</b>	Clear modem control signal Data Terminal Ready (DTR) on a serial line.
<b>TIOCCHPCL</b>	Do not force a hangup on "last close" on a modem line. The normal mode of operation for serial lines is to drop modem signal Data Terminal Ready (DTR) when the last <b>close()</b> operation is performed, thus requesting the attached modem to drop the connection.
<b>TIOCCRTS</b>	Clear the Request To Send (RTS) signal on a serial line. Modem control signal RTS is often used for hardware flow control.
<b>TIOCEXCL</b>	Set device access as exclusive use. This request requires the process to have <b>root</b> privileges.
<b>TIOCFLUSH</b>	Flush the input queue, discarding any pending input characters, and wait for the output queue to "drain".
<b>TIOCGETC</b>	Get current values of the special terminal characters, as defined by data structure <b>tchars</b> .

<b>TIOCGETF</b>	Get current console keyboard function key bindings. This request is specific to the <b>nkb</b> console keyboard device driver. See Lexicon article <b>nkb</b> for further details.
<b>TIOCGETKBT</b>	Get current console keyboard key mapping table. This request is specific to the <b>nkb</b> console keyboard device driver. See Lexicon article <b>nkb</b> for further details.
<b>TIOCGETP</b>	Get current terminal line settings, as defined by data structure <b>sgttyb</b> .
<b>TIOCGETTF</b>	Get current value of the terminal flags, as defined by field <b>t_flags</b> in the TTY structure.
<b>TIOCHPCL</b>	Set hangup on "last close". See <b>TIOCCHPCL</b> for further details.
<b>TIOCRMSR</b>	Get the current value of the Modem Status Register (MSR) for the specified serial line. This request is device driver specific and is currently supported only in the <b>al</b> device driver. Symbolic constants <b>MSRCTS</b> , <b>MSRDSR</b> , <b>MSRRI</b> , and <b>MSRRLSD</b> correspond to the Clear To Send, Data Set Ready, Ring Indicator and Receive Line Status Detect (i.e. Carrier Detect) signals, respectively, in the MSR.
<b>TIOCNXCL</b>	Set this device or port as non-exclusive use. See <b>TIOCEXCL</b> for further details.
<b>TIOCQUERY</b>	Query the number of characters currently waiting in the input queue.
<b>TIOCSBRK</b>	Assert BREAK (i.e., "space the line") on the given serial port. This is often used during login to signal a remote system to "hunt" to the next baud rate in a sequence. See <b>TIOCCBRK</b> for further details.
<b>TIOCSDTR</b>	Assert modem control signal Data Terminal Ready (DTR) on a serial line.
<b>TIOCSETC</b>	Wait for output to "drain", then set the terminal control characters for this device, as specified by data structure <b>tchars</b> .
<b>TIOCSETF</b>	Set console keyboard function key mapping. This request is specific to the <b>nkb</b> console keyboard device driver. See Lexicon article <b>nkb</b> for further details.
<b>TIOCSETKBT</b>	Set console keyboard key mapping table. This request is specific to the <b>nkb</b> console keyboard device driver. See Lexicon article <b>nkb</b> for further details.
<b>TIOCSETN</b>	Set terminal line settings, as defined by data structure <b>sgttyb</b> . Do not flush the input queue prior to using the new settings.
<b>TIOCSETP</b>	Same as request <b>TIOCSETN</b> , but also flush the input queue.
<b>TIOCSRTS</b>	Assert the Request To Send (RTS) signal on a serial line. Modem control signal RTS is often used for hardware flow control.

### **Examples**

The following code fragment gets the current terminal settings and turns off echo.

```
#include <sgtty.h>
static struct sgttyb new, orig;
. . .
/*
 * Get the existing terminal parameters for the terminal
 * device associated with file descriptor 0 (stdin),
 * turn off echo, turn on CBREAK (break on every input character)
 * and set the new parameters.
 */
ioctl(0, TIOCGETP, &orig);
new = orig;
new.sg_flags &= ~ECHO;          /* Turn off echo */
new.sg_flags |= CBREAK;        /* Turn on CBREAK mode */
ioctl(0, TIOCSETN, &new);
```

The following line uses the previously saved terminal mode to return the terminal mode to its prior state:

```
ioctl(0, TIOCSETN, &orig);
```

### See Also

device drivers, `gtty()`, `ioctl()`, `sgtty.h`, `stty()`, `stty`, `terminal`, `termio`

### sgtty.h — Header File

Definitions used to control terminal I/O

**#include <sgtty.h>**

**sgtty.h** defines structures, constants, and macros used by routines that control terminal I/O.

### See Also

header files, `sgtty`

### Notes

Programs that perform terminal control under COHERENT 286 must use **sgtty.h**. With COHERENT 386, the programmer may choose between **sgtty.h** and **termio.h** terminal control.

### sh — Command

The Bourne shell

**sh** [-ceiknstuvx] *token* ...

The COHERENT system offers two command interpreters: **ksh**, the Korn shell; and **sh**, the Bourne shell. **sh** is the default COHERENT command interpreter. The tutorial included in this manual describes the Bourne shell in detail.

As you will see from the following description, a shell is both a command interpreter and a programming language in its own right. Taking some time to learn the rudiments of your shell's programming language will pay great benefits in taking command of your COHERENT system.

### Commands

A *command* consists of one or more *tokens*. A *token* is a string of text characters (i.e., one or more alphabetic characters, punctuation marks, and numerals) delineated by spaces, tabs, or newlines.

A *simple command* consists of the command's name, followed by zero or more tokens that represent represent arguments to the command, names of files, or shell operators. A *complex command* will use shell constructs to execute one or more commands conditionally. In effect, a complex command

is a mini-program that is written in the shell's programming language and interpreted by **sh**.

## Shell Operators

The shell includes a number of operators that form pipes, redirect input and output to commands, and let you define conditions under which commands are executed.

### *command | command*

The *pipe* operator: let the output of one command serve as the input to a second. You can combine commands with '|' to form *pipelines*. A pipeline passes the standard output of the first (leftmost) command to the standard input of the second command. For example, in the pipeline

```
sort customers | uniq | more
```

**sh** invokes **sort** to sort the contents of file **customers**. It pipes the output of **sort** to the command **uniq**, which outputs one unique copy of the text that is input into it. **sh** then pipes the output of **uniq** to the command **more**, which displays it on your terminal one screenful at a time. Note that under COHERENT, unlike MS-DOS, pipes are executed concurrently: that is, **sort** does not have to finish its work before **uniq** and **more** can begin to receive input and get to work.

### *command ; command*

Execute commands on a command line sequentially. The command to the left of the ';' executes to completion; then the command to the right of it executes. For example, in the command line

```
a | b ; c | d
```

first executes the pipeline **a | b** then, when **a** and **b** are finished, executes the pipeline **c | d**.

### *command & command*

Execute a command in the background. This operator must follow the command, not precede it. It prints the process identifier of the command on the standard output, so you can use the **kill** command to kill that process should something go wrong. This operator lets you execute more than one command simultaneously. For example, the command

```
fdformat -v /dev/fha0 &
```

formats a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk in drive 0 (that is, drive A); but while the disk is being formatted, **sh** returns the command line prompt so you can immediately enter another command and begin to work. If you did not use the '&' in this command, you would have to wait until formatting was finished before you could enter another command.

### *command && command*

Execute a command upon success. **sh** executes the command that follows the token '&&' only if the commands that precedes it returns a zero exit status, which signifies success. For example, the command

```
cd /etc
fdformat -v /dev/fha0 && badscan -o proto /dev/fha0 2400
```

formats a floppy disk, as described above. If the format was successful, it then invokes the command **badscan** to scan the disk for bad blocks; if it was not successful, however, it does nothing.

### *command || command*

Execute a command upon failure. This is identical to operator '&&', except that the second command is executed if the first returns a non-zero status, which signifies failure. For example, the command

```
/etc/fdformat -v /dev/fha0 || echo "Format failed!"
```

formats a floppy disk. If formatting failed, it echoes the message **Format failed!** on your terminal; however, if formatting succeeds, it does nothing.

Note that the tokens newline, `';` and `'&'` bind less tightly than `'&&'` and `'|'`. **sh** parses command lines from left to right if separators bind equally.

**>file** Redirect output. The *standard input*, *standard output*, and *standard error* streams are normally connected to the terminal. A pipeline attaches the output of one command to the input of another command. In addition, **sh** includes a set of operators that redirect input and output into files rather than other commands.

The operator `>` redirects output into a file. For example, the command

```
sort customers >customers.sort
```

sorts file **customers** and writes the sorted output into file **customers.sort**. It creates **customers.sort** if it does not exist, and destroys its previous contents if it does exist.

**>>file** Redirect output into a file, and append. If the file does not exist, this operator creates it; however, if the file already exists, this operator appends the output to that file's contents rather than destroying those contents. For example, the command

```
sort customers.now | uniq >>customers.all
```

sorts file **customers.now**, pipes its output to command **uniq**, which throws away duplicate lines of input, and appends the results to file **customers.all**.

**<file** Redirect input. Here, **sh** reads the contents of a file and processes them as if you had typed them from your keyboard. For example, the command

```
ed textfile <edit.script
```

invokes the line-editor **ed** to edit **textfile**; however, instead of reading editing commands from your keyboard, the shell passes **ed** the contents of **edit.script**. This command would let you prepare an editing script that you could execute repeatedly upon files rather than having to type the same commands over and over.

**<< token**

Prepare a "here document". This operator tells **sh** to accept standard input from the shell input until it reads the next line that contains only *token*. For example, the command

```
cat >FOO <<\!
    Here is some text.
!
```

redirects all text between `<<\!` and `!` to the **cat** command. The `>` in turn redirects the output of **cat** into file **FOO**. **sh** performs parameter substitution on the here document unless the leading *token* is quoted; parameter substitution and quoting are described below.

**command 2>file**

Redirect the standard error stream into a file. For example, the command

```
nroff -ms textfile >textfile.p 2>textfile.err
```

invokes the command **nroff** to format the contents of **textfile**. It redirects the output of **nroff** (i.e., the standard output) into **textfile.p**; it also redirects any error messages that **nroff** may generate into file **textfile.err**.

Note in passing that a command may use up to 20 streams. By default, stream 0 is the

standard input; stream 1 is the standard output; and stream 2 is the standard error. **sh** lets you redirect any of these streams individually into files, or combine streams into each other.

**<&n** **sh** can redirect the standard input and output to duplicate other file descriptors. (See the Lexicon article **file descriptor** for details on what these are.) This operator duplicates the standard input from file descriptor *n*.

**>&n** Duplicate the standard output from file descriptor *n*. For example,

```
2>&1
```

redirects file descriptor 2 (the standard error) to file descriptor 1 (the standard output).

**<&-** Close the standard input.

**>&-** Close the standard output.

Note that each command executed as a foreground process inherits the file descriptors and signal traps (described below) of the invoking shell, modified by any specified redirection. Background processes take input from the null device **/dev/null** (unless redirected), and ignore interrupt and quit signals.

### **File Name Patterns**

The shell interprets an input token that contain any of the special characters '?', '\*', or '[' as a file name *pattern*.

**?** Match any single character except newline. For example, the command

```
ls name?
```

will print the name of any file that consists of the string **name** plus any one character. If **name** is followed by no characters, or is followed by two or more characters, it will not be printed.

**\*** Match a string of non-newline characters of any length (including zero).

```
ls name*
```

will print the name of any file that begins with the string **name**, regardless of whether it is followed by any other characters. Likewise, the command

```
ls name?*
```

will print the name of any file that consists of the string **name** followed by at least one character. Unlike **name\***, the token **name?\*** insists that be followed by at least one character before it will be printed.

**[!xyz]**

Exclude characters *xyz* from the string search. For example, the command

```
ls [!abc]*
```

prints all files in the current directory except those that begin with **a**, **b**, or **c**.

**[C-c]**

Enclose alternatives to match a single character. A hyphen '-' indicates a range of characters. For example, the command

```
ls name[ABC]
```

will print the names of files **nameA**, **nameB**, and **nameC** (assuming, of course, that those files exist in the current directory). The command

```
ls name[A-K]
```

prints the names of files **nameA** through **nameK** (again, assuming that they exist in the current directory).

When **sh** reads a token that contains one of the above characters, it replaces the token in the command line with an alphabetized list of file names that match the pattern. If it finds no matches, it passes the token unchanged to the command. For example, when you enter the command

```
ls name[ABC]
```

**sh** replaces the token **name[ABC]** with **nameA**, **nameB**, and **nameC** (again, if they exist in the current directory), so the command now reads:

```
ls nameA nameB nameC
```

It then passes this second, transformed version of the command line to the command **ls**.

Note that the slash '/' and leading period '.' must be matched explicitly in a pattern. The slash, of course, separates the elements of a path name; while a period at the begin of a file name usually (but not always) indicates that that file has special significance.

### Quoting Text

From time to time, you will want to "turn off" the special meaning of characters. For example, you may wish to pass a token that contains a literal asterisk to a command; to do so, you need a way to tell **sh** not to expand the token into a list of file names. Therefore, **sh** includes the **quotation operators** '\', '"', and ''; these "turn off" (or *quote*) the special meaning of operators.

The backslash '\' quotes the following character. For example, the command

```
ls name\*
```

lists a file named **name\***, and no other.

The shell ignores a backslash immediately followed by a newline, called a *concealed newline*. This lets you give more arguments to a command than will fit on one line. For example, the command

```
cc -o output file1.c file2.c file3.c \
    file4.c file5.c file19.c
```

invokes the C compiler **cc** to compile a set of C source files, the names of which extend over more than one line of input. You will find this to be extremely helpful, especially when you write scripts and **makefiles**, to help you write neat, easily read commands.

A pair of apostrophes '' prevents interpretation of any enclosed special characters. For example, the command

```
find . -name '*.c' -print
```

finds and prints the name of any C-source file in the current directory and any subdirectory. The command **find** interprets the '\*' internally; therefore, you want to suppress the shell's expansion of that operator, which is accomplished by enclosing that token between apostrophes.

A pair of quotation marks "" has the same effect. Unlike apostrophes, however, **sh** will perform parameter substitution and command-output substitution (described below) within quotation marks.

### Scripts

Shell commands can be stored in a file, or *script*. The command

```
sh script [ parameter ... ]
```

executes the commands in *script* with a new subshell **sh**. Each *parameter* is a value for a positional parameter, as described below. If you have used the command **chmod** to make *script* executable, you may omit the **sh** command.

Parameters of the form '\$*n*' represent command-line arguments within a script. *n* can range from zero through nine; **\$0** always gives the name of the script. These parameters are also called *positional parameters*.

If no corresponding parameter is given on the command line, the shell substitutes the null string for that parameter. For example, if the script **format** contains the following line:

```
nroff -ms $1 >$1.out
```

then invoking **format** with the command line:

```
format mytext
```

invokes the command **nroff** to format the contents of **mytext**, and writes the output into file **mytext.out**. If, however, you invoke this command with the command line

```
format mytext yourtext
```

the script will format **mytext** but ignore **yourtext** altogether.

Reference **\$\*** represents all command-line arguments. If, for example, we change the contents of script **format** to read

```
nroff -ms $* >$1.out
```

then the command

```
format mytext yourtext
```

will invoke **nroff** to format the contents of **mytext** and **yourtext**, and write the output into file **mytext.out**.

Commands in a script can also be executed with the **.** (dot) command. It resembles the **sh** command, but the current shell executes the script commands without creating a new subshell or a new environment; therefore, you cannot use command-line arguments.

## Variables

Shell variables are names that can be assigned string values on a command line, in the form

```
name=value
```

The name must begin with a letter, and can contain letters, digits, and underscores '\_'. In shell input, '\$*name*' or '\${*name*}' represents the value of the variable. For example:

```
TEXT=mytext
```

```
nroff -ms $TEXT >$TEXT.out
```

Here, **sh** expands **\$TEXT** before it executes the **nroff** command. This technique is very useful in large, complex scripts: by using variables, you can change the behavior of the script by editing one line, rather than having to edit numerous variables throughout the script.

Note that if an assignment precedes a command on the same command line, the effect of the assignment is local to that command; otherwise, the effect is permanent. For example,



```
kp=one testproc
```

assigns variable **kp** the value **one** only for the execution of the script **testproc**.

**sh** sets the following variables by default:

- # The number of actual positional parameters given to the current command.
- @ The list of positional parameters "\$1 \$2 ...".
- \* The list of positional parameters "\$1" "\$2" ... (the same as "\$@" unless quoted).
- Options set in the invocation of the shell or by the **set** command.
- ? The exit status returned by the last command.
- ! The process number of the last command invoked with '&'.
  - \$ The process number of the current shell.

**sh** also references the following variables:

- CWD** Current working directory: this is the name of the directory in which you are now working.
- HOME** Initial working directory; usually specified in the password file **/etc/passwd**.
- IFS** Delimiters for tokens; usually space, tab and newline.
- LASTERROR** Name of last command returning nonzero exit status.
- MAIL** Checked at the end of each command. If file specified in this variable is new since last command, the shell prints "You have mail." on the user's terminal.
- PATH** Colon-separated list of directories searched for commands.
- PS1** First prompt string, usually '\$'.
- PS2** Second prompt string, usually '>'. **sh** prints it when it expects more input, such as when an open quotation-mark has been typed but a close quotation-mark has not been typed, or within a shell construct.

The special forms '\$*{nameCtoken}*' perform conditional parameter substitution: *C* is one of the characters '-', '=', '+', or '?'. **sh** replaces the form '\$*{name-token}*' by the value of *name* if it is set, and by *token* otherwise. It handles the '=' form in the same way, but also sets the value of *name* to *token* if it was not set previously. **sh** replaces the '+' form by *token* if the given *name* is set. It replaces the '?' form by the value of *name* if set, and otherwise prints *token* and exits from the shell.

### Command Output Substitution

**sh** can use the output of a command as shell input (as command arguments, for example) by enclosing the command in grave characters ``. For example, to list the contents of the directories named in file **dirs**, use the command

```
ls -l `cat dirs`
```

### Constructs

**sh** lets you control execution of commands by the constructs **break**, **case**, **continue**, **for**, **if**, **until**, and **while**. It recognizes each reserved word only if it occurs unquoted as the first token of a command. This implies that a separator must precede each reserved word in the following constructs; for example, newline or ';' must precede **do** in the **for** construct.

**break** [*n*]

Exit from **for**, **until**, or **while**. If *n* is given, exit from *n* levels.

**case** *token in* [ *pattern* [ | *pattern* ] ... ] *sequence*;; ] ... **esac**

Check *token* against each *pattern*, and execute *sequence* associated with the first matching *pattern*.

**continue** [*n*]

Branch to the end of the *n*th enclosing **for**, **until**, or **while** construct.

**for** *name* [ **in** *token* ... ] **do** *sequence* **done**

Execute *sequence* once for each *token*. On each iteration, *name* takes the value of the next *token*. If the **in** clause is omitted, **\$@** is assumed. For example, to list all files ending with **.c**:

```
for i in *.c
do
    cat $i
done
```

**if** *seq1 then seq2* [ **elif** *seq3 then seq4* ] ... [ **else** *seq5* ] **fi**

Execute *seq1*. If the exit status is zero, execute *seq2*; if not, execute the optional *seq3* if given. If the exit status of *seq3* is zero, then execute *seq4*, and so on. If the exit status of all tested sequences is nonzero, execute *seq5*.

**until** *sequence1* [ **do** *sequence2* ] **done**

Execute *sequence2* until the execution of *sequence1* results in an exit status of zero.

**while** *sequence1* [ **do** *sequence2* ] **done**

Execute *sequence2* as long as the execution of *sequence1* results in an exit status of zero.

**(sequence**

)

Execute *sequence* within a subshell. This allows *sequence* to change the current directory, for example, and not affect the enclosing environment. Note that the closing ')' must appear on the line that follows *sequence*.

**{sequence**

}

Braces simply enclose a *sequence*. Note that the closing '}' must appear on the line that follows *sequence*.

## Special Commands

**sh** usually executes commands with the **fork** system call, which creates another process. However, **sh** executes the commands in this section either directly or with an **exec** system call. See the Lexicon articles on **fork()** and **exec** for details on these calls.

**. script** Read and execute commands from *script*. Positional parameters are not allowed. **sh** searches the directories named in the environmental variable **PATH** to find the given *script*.

**: [token ...]**

A colon ':' indicates a "partial comment". **sh** normally ignores all commands on a line that begins with a colon, except for redirection and such symbols as **\$**, **{**, **?**, etc.

**#**

A complete comment: if **#** is the first character on a line, **sh** ignores all text that follows on that line.

- cd** *dir* Change the working directory to *dir*. If no argument is given, change to the home directory.
- dirs** **sh** lets you maintain a "directory stack", or stack of names of directories. You can push, pop, and otherwise manipulate the contents of this stack, which you can use for any purpose for which you need to access a number of directory names quickly. The command **dirs** prints the contents of the directory stack. The commands **pushd** and **popd** also manipulate the directory stack.
- eval** [*token ...*]  
Evaluate each *token* and treat the result as shell input.
- exec** [*command*]  
Execute *command* directly rather than performing **fork**. This terminates the current shell.
- exit** [*status*]  
Set the exit status to *status*, if given; otherwise, the previous status is unchanged. If the shell is not interactive, terminate it.
- export** [*name ...*]  
**sh** executes each command in an *environment*, which is essentially a set of shell variable names and corresponding string values. It inherits an environment when invoked, and normally it passes the same environment to each command it invokes. **export** specifies that the shell should pass the modified value of each given *name* to the environment of subsequent commands. When no *name* is given, **sh** prints the name and value of each variable marked for export.
- popd** [*N ...*]  
Pop the directory stack. When used without an argument, it pops the stack once. When used with one or more numeric arguments, **popd** pops the specified items from the stack; item 0 is the top of the stack. (For information on the directory stack, see the entry for the command **dirs**, above.)
- pushd** [*dir0 ... dirN*]  
Push *dir0* through *dirN* onto the directory stack, and change the current directory to the last directory pushed onto the stack. When called without an argument, **pushd** exchanges the two top stack elements. (For information on the directory stack, see the entry for the command **dirs**, above.)
- read** *name ...*  
Read a line from the standard input and assign each token of the input to the corresponding shell variable *name*. If the input contains fewer tokens than the *name* list, assign the null string to extra variables. If the input contains more tokens, assign the last *name* the remainder of the input.
- readonly** [*name ...*]  
Mark each shell variable *name* as a read only variable. Subsequent assignments to read only variables will not be permitted. With no arguments, print the name and value of each read only variable.
- set** [-**ceiknstuvx**] [*name ...*]  
Set listed flag. If *name* list is provided, set shell variables *name* to values of positional parameters beginning with \$1.
- shift** Rename positional parameter 1 to current value of \$2, and so on.
- times** Print the total user and system times for all executed processes.
- trap** [*command*] [*n ...*]  
Execute *command* if **sh** receives signal *n*. If *command* is omitted, reset traps to original values. To ignore a signal, pass null string as *command*. With *n* zero, execute *command*

when the shell exits. With no arguments, print the current trap settings.

**umask** [*nnn*]

Set user file creation mask to *nnn*. If no argument is given, print the current file creation mask.

**wait** [*pid*]

Hold execution of further commands until process *pid* terminates. If *pid* is omitted, wait for all child processes. If no children are active, this command finishes immediately.

**Command-line Options****-c** *string*

Read shell commands from *string*.

**-e** Exit on any error (command not found or command returning nonzero status) if the shell is not interactive.

**-i** The shell is interactive, even if the terminal is not attached to it; print prompt strings. For a shell reading a script, ignore the signals **SIGTERM** and **SIGINT**.

**-k** Place all keyword arguments into the environment. Normally, **sh** places only assignments to variables preceding the command into the environment.

**-n** Read commands but do not execute them.

**-s** Read commands from the standard input and write shell output to the standard error.

**-t** Read and execute one command rather than the entire file.

**-u** If the actual value of a shell variable is blank, report an error rather than substituting the null string.

**-v** Print each line as it is read.

**-x** Print each command and its arguments as it is executed.

**-** Cancel the **-x** and **-v** options.

If the first character of argument 0 is '.', **sh** reads and executes the scripts **/etc/profile** and **\$HOME/.profile** before reading the standard input. **/etc/profile** is a convenient place for initializing system-wide variables, such as **TIMEZONE**.

**Files**

**/etc/profile** — System-wide initial commands

**\$HOME/.profile** — User-specific initial commands

**/dev/null** — For background input

**/tmp/sh\*** — Temporary files

**See Also**

**commands**, **dup()**, **environ**, **exec**, **fork()**, **ksh**, **login**, **newgrp**, **set**, **signal()**, **test**

For a list of all commands associated with **sh**, see the section **Shell Commands** in the **commands** Lexicon article.

*Introduction to sh, the Bourne Shell*, tutorial

**Diagnostics**

**sh** notes on the standard error all syntax errors in commands, and all commands which it cannot find. Syntax errors cause a noninteractive shell to exit. It gives error messages if I/O redirection is incorrect. **sh** returns the exit status of the last command executed or the status specified by an **exit** command.

**LEXICON**

**SHELL — Environmental Variable**

Name the default shell

**SHELL=shell**

The environmental variable **SHELL** names the shell that COHERENT invokes when you log in. The default is **SHELL=/bin/sh**, which invokes the Bourne shell.

**See Also**

**environmental variables, sh**

**shellsort() — General Function**

Sort arrays in memory

**void shellsort**(data, n, size, comp)

**char \*data; int n, size; int (\*comp)();**

**shellsort()** is a generalized algorithm for sorting arrays of data in memory, using D. L. Shell's sorting method. **shellsort()** works with a sequential array of memory called *data*, which is divided into *n* parts of *size* bytes each. In practice, *data* is usually an array of pointers or structures, and *size* is the **sizeof** the pointer or structure.

Each routine compares pairs of items and exchanges them as required. The user-supplied routine to which *comp* points performs the comparison. It is called repeatedly, as follows:

```
(*comp)(p1, p2)
char *p1, *p2;
```

Here, *p1* and *p2* each point to a block of *size* bytes in the *data* array. In practice, they are usually pointers to pointers or pointers to structures. The comparison routine must return a negative, zero, or positive result, depending on whether *p1* is less than, equal to, or greater than *p2*, respectively.

**Example**

For an example of how to use this routine, see the entry for **string**.

**See Also**

**ctype, general functions, qsort()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 3, pp. 84ff, 114ff

**Notes**

For a discussion of how the **shellsort** algorithm differs from that used by **qsort()**, see the Lexicon entry for **qsort()**.

**shift — Command**

Shift positional parameters

**shift**

Commands to the shell can be stored in a file, or *script*. Positional parameters pass command-line variables to a script.

**shift** changes the values of positional parameters. The old parameter values **\$2**, **\$3**, ... become the new parameter values **\$1**, **\$2** .... **shift** also reduces the value of **\$#**, which gives the number of positional parameters, by one.

The shell executes **shift** directly.

**See Also**

**commands, ksh, sh**

**shm — Device Driver**

## Shared memory device driver

The device **/dev/shm** is an interface to the shared memory device driver. It is assigned major device 24 (minor device 0) and can be accessed as a character-special device.

Shared memory access operations are performed by seeks, reads, and writes through the interface **/dev/shm**. The desired seek location is **(shmid << 16L) + offset**.

Shared memory control operations are performed through the system call **ioctl()**. The operations **shmctl()** and **shmget()** are performed with an integer parameter array. The first element of the array is reserved for the return value (default, -1). Subsequent elements represent arguments. **ioctl()** passes **SHMCTL**, **SHMGET**, **SHMAT**, or **SHMDT** as the second argument, and the parameter array as the third argument. The first argument is an open file descriptor to **/dev/shm**. Seeks, reads, and writes on shared memory can be performed through the file descriptor **shmfd**.

**Access**

To access shared memory, do the following:

1. If it does not yet exist, create **/dev/shm** as a special-character file with major number 24, minor number 0, and broad enough permissions. The command

```
/etc/mknod /dev/shm c 24 0
```

will create **/dev/shm** if it does not yet exist.

2. Become the superuser **root**. Execute the command

```
/etc/drvld /drv/shm
```

to load the driver.

3. Use the COHERENT system call **shmget()** to create a shared-memory segment and obtain the **shmid** value for it.
4. Use the COHERENT system call **lseek()** to position for read or write of a shared-memory segment. The first argument to **lseek()** is **shmfd**, which is an external declared in **<sys/shm.h>**. The second argument to **lseek()** is a **long** whose high word is the segment identifier **shmid** and whose low word is the offset within the shared-memory segment. The third argument to **lseek()** is zero.
5. Use the COHERENT system calls **read()** and **write()** to access the segment. Again, use **shmfd** as the file descriptor.
6. When you are finished using shared memory, use the call

```
shmctl(shmid, IPC_RMID, 0)
```

to remove segments when you are finished.

7. Finally, use **ps -d** to obtain the process identifier of the shared-memory driver. To unload the **shm** driver, first type the command

```
ps -d
```

and note the process identifier of the driver. Then, become the superuser **root** and type the command

```
kill -kill xxxx
```

where **xxxx** is the process identifier for the **shm** driver.

Note that this manner of preceeding is not entirely in the spirit of System V IPC shared memory: COHERENT does not support functions **shmat()** and **shmdt()**.

### Files

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/shm.h
/dev/shm
/drv/shm
```

### See Also

device drivers, **drvld**, **lseek()**, **ps**, **shmctl()**, **shmget()**

### Notes

If you allocate too many shared memory identifiers, you will exhaust kernel data space, and thus halt the system in its tracks.

Creating many large shared memory segments can exhaust main memory, as shared-memory segments do not currently support swapping.

Private shared memory is not supported. Shared memory segments must be removed manually when no longer required. To remove all shared memory segments use the following C code:

```
#include <sys/shm.h>

#define NSHMID 16

shmget( 0, 0, 0 );          /* must do first */

for ( id=0; id < NSHMID; ++id )
    shmctl( id, IPC_RMID, 0 );
```

COHERENT 286 implements **shm** as a loadable device driver. To load it into memory, use the command **drvld**.

### shm.h — Header File

Definitions used with shared memory

```
#include <sys/shm.h>
```

**shm.h** defines constants and macros used by routines that implement the COHERENT shared-memory facility.

### See Also

header files

### shmctl() — General Function

Control shared-memory operations

```
#include <sys/shm.h>
```

```
shmctl(shmid, cmd, buf)
```

```
int shmid, cmd; struct shmid_ds *buf;
```

**shmctl()** provides controls the COHERENT system's shared-memory facility. *cmd* specifies the operation to perform, as follows:

**IPC\_STAT** Place the current value of each member of the data structure associated with *shmid* into the structure pointed to by *buf*.

**IPC\_SET** Set the value of the following members of the data structure associated with *shmid* to the corresponding value found in the structure pointed to by *buf*:

```
shm_perm.uid
shm_perm.gid
shm_perm.mode /* only low 9 bits */
```

This *cmd* can be executed only by a process whose effective user ID equals either that of the superuser or **shm\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *shmid*.

**IPC\_RMID** Remove the system identifier specified by *shmid* from the system and destroy the shared memory segment and data structure associated with it. This *cmd* can be executed only by a process whose effective user ID equals either that of the superuser or **shm\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *shmid*.

**shmctl()** fails if any of the following is true:

- *shmid* is not a valid shared memory identifier **shmget()** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- *cmd* is not a valid command (**EINVAL**).
- *cmd* equals **IPC\_STAT** and operation permission is denied to the calling process (**EACCES**).
- *cmd* equals **IPC\_RMID** or **IPC\_SET** and the effective user identifier of the calling process does equals neither that of the superuser nor **shm\_perm.uid** in the data structure associated with *shmid* (**EPERM**).
- *buf* points to an illegal address (**EFAULT**).

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, **shmctl()** returns zero; otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

```
/usr/include/sys/ipc.h
/usr/include/sys/shm.h
/dev/shm
/dev/shm
```

### See Also

general functions, **lseek()**, **shm**, **shmget()**

### Notes

COHERENT 286 implements its shared-memory functions as a device driver instead of as an actual system call.

## **shmget()** — General Function

Get shared-memory segment

```
#include <sys/shm.h>
shmget(key, size, shmflg)
key_t key; int size, shmflg;
```

**shmget()** returns the shared-memory identifier associated with *key*.

A shared-memory identifier and associated data structure and shared memory segment of size *size* bytes is created for *key* if *key* does not already have a shared-memory identifier associated with it, and (*shmflg* & **IPC\_CREAT**) is true.



Upon creation, the data structure associated with the new shared memory identifier is initialized as follows:

- **shm\_perm.cuid**, **shm\_perm.uid**, **shm\_perm.cgid**, and **shm\_perm.gid** are set equal to the effective user ID and effective group ID, respectively, of the calling process.
- The low-order nine bits of **shm\_perm.mode** are set equal to the low-order nine bits of **shmflg**. These nine bits define access permissions: the top three bits give the owner's access permissions (read, write, execute), the middle three bits the owning group's access permissions, and the low three bits access permissions for others.
- **shm\_segsz** is set equal to the value of **size**.
- **shm\_lpid**, **shm\_nattch**, **shm\_atime**, and **shm\_dtime** are set equal to zero. **shm\_ctime** is set equal to the current time.

**shmget()** fails if any of the following is true:

- **size** is less than the system-imposed minimum or greater than the system-imposed maximum. **shmget()** sets **errno** to **EINVAL**.
- A shared-memory identifier exists for **key** but operation permission as specified by the low-order nine bits of **shmflg** would not be granted (**EACCES**).
- A shared-memory identifier exists for **key** but the size of the segment associated with it is less than **size** and **size** is not equal to zero (**EINVAL**).
- A shared-memory identifier does not exist for **key** and (**shmflg** & **IPC\_CREAT**) is false (**ENOENT**).
- A shared-memory identifier is to be created but the system-imposed limit on the maximum number of allowed shared memory identifiers system-wide would be exceeded (**ENOSPC**).
- A shared-memory identifier and associated shared-memory segment are to be created, but the amount of available physical memory is not sufficient to fill the request (**ENOMEM**).
- A shared-memory identifier exists for **key** but ( (**shmflg** & **IPC\_CREAT**) && (**shmflg** & **IPC\_EXCL**) ) is true (**EEXIST**).

### Return Value

Upon successful completion, **shmget()** returns a shared-memory identifier, which is always a non-negative integer. Otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### Files

/usr/include/sys/ipc.h  
 /usr/include/sys/shm.h  
 /dev/shm  
 /drv/shm

### See Also

general functions, **lseek()**, **shm**, **shmctl()**,

### Notes

COHERENT 286 implements its shared-memory functions as a device driver rather than actual system calls.

**short — C Keyword**

Data type

**short** is a numeric data type. By definition, it cannot be longer than an **int**. Under COHERENT, an **int** is equal to an **short**; that is, both **sizeof int** and **sizeof short** equals two **chars**, or 15 bits plus a sign. A **short** normally is sign extended when cast to a larger data type; however, an **unsigned short** will be zero extended when cast.

**See Also**

C keywords, data format, data type

**shutdown — Command**

Shut down the COHERENT system

**/etc/shutdown**

**shutdown** shuts down the COHERENT system. It is a shell script that leads you through each step of system shutdown. Only the superuser **root** can run **shutdown**. When shut down has been completed, the COHERENT system is in single-user mode. At this point, the user can safely run **fsck**, reboot the system, or turn the computer off.

*Failure to shut down the system before rebooting or shutting off the computer could damage the COHERENT file system and destroy data.*

**See Also**

commands, reboot

**signal() — System Call**

Specify disposition of a signal

**#include <signal.h>**

**int (\*signal(signum, action))()**

**int signum, (\*action)();**

A process can receive a *signal*, or interrupt, from a hardware exception, terminal input, or a **kill()** call made by another process. A hardware exception might be caused by an illegal instruction code or a bad machine address, caught by the segmentation hardware. A terminal interrupt character, described in detail in **tty**, generates a process interrupt (and in one case a core dump file for debugging purposes).

When a process receives a signal, it performs an appropriate *action*. The default action **SIG\_DFL** causes the process to terminate. By calling **signal**, you can specify what action the process takes when it receives a given signal *signum* is the number of the signal, and *action* points to the routine to execute when *signum* is received. The action **SIG\_IGN** causes a signal to be ignored. Note that the signal **SIGKILL**, which kills a process, can be neither caught nor ignored. **signal()** returns a pointer to the previous action.

With the exception of **SIGKILL** and **SIGTRAP**, caught signals are reset to the default action **SIG\_DFL**. To catch a signal again, the specified *action* must reissue the **signal()** call.

The following list gives machine-independent signals by symbolic name (defined in the header file **signal.h**), numeric value, and description. Signals marked by an asterisk produce a core dump if the action is **SIG\_DFL**.

<b>SIGHUP</b>	1	Hangup
<b>SIGINT</b>	2	Interrupt
<b>SIGQUIT</b>	3*	Quit
<b>SIGALRM</b>	4	Alarm clock
<b>SIGTERM</b>	5	Termination
<b>SIGREST</b>	6	Restart indication
<b>SIGSYS</b>	7*	Bad system call argument
<b>SIGPIPE</b>	8	Write on closed pipe
<b>SIGKILL</b>	9	Kill
<b>SIGTRAP</b>	10*	Breakpoint
<b>SIGSEGV</b>	11*	Segmentation violation

The following lists gives machine-dependent signals defined in the header file **msig.h**.

The following signals are specific to the Zilog Z8002 version of COHERENT:

<b>SIGUNI</b>	12*	Unimplemented instruction
<b>SIGPRV</b>	13*	Privileged instruction
<b>SIGNVI</b>	14*	Non-vectored interrupt
<b>SIGPAR</b>	15*	Parity error

The following signals are specific to the Zilog Z8001 version of COHERENT:

<b>SIGEPA</b>	12*	Extended processor trap
<b>SIGPRV</b>	13*	Privileged instruction
<b>SIGNVI</b>	14*	Non-vectored interrupt
<b>SIGNMI</b>	15*	Non-maskable interrupt (not in all versions)

The following signals are specific to the Intel 8086 or 80286 version of COHERENT:

<b>SIGDIVE</b>	12*	Divide error
<b>SIGOVFL</b>	13*	Overflow

A signal may be caught during a system call that has not yet returned. In this case, the system call appears to fail, with **errno** set to **EINTR**. If desired, such an interrupted system call may be reissued. System calls which may be interrupted in this way include **pause()**, **read()** on a device such as a terminal, **write()** on a pipe, and **wait()**.

### Example

The following program demonstrates **signal()**, **kill()**, **getpid()**, and **fork()**.

```
#include <signal.h>

int got_it;      /* Each side gets its own copy of all data at the fork */
int errset;

/*
 * Control comes here on SIGTRAP. Do no I/O in signal function.
 * Reset the signal if you ever want another.
 */

void
sig_ser()
{
    got_it = 1;      /* tell the child we got it */
}
```

## 1010 *signal()*

---

```
        if (0 > signal(SIGTRAP, sig_ser))    /* reset the signal */
            errset = 1;
    }
main()
{
    int count;
    int child, parent;

    parent = getpid();    /* Both sides will get a copy */
    if (signal(SIGTRAP, sig_ser) < 0) {    /* sets for both sides */
        perror("signal set failed");
        exit(0);
    }

    if (child = fork()) { /* parent gets the child's id */
        for (count = 0; count < 3; count++) {
            kill(child, SIGTRAP); /* signal the child */

            while(!got_it)        /* wait for signal */
                sleep(1);
            if (errset)
                perror("parent: signal reset failed");

            printf("parent got signal %d\n", count);
            got_it = errset = 0;
        }
        exit(0);
    }

    for (count = 0; count < 3; count++) {
        while(!got_it)            /* wait for signal */
            sleep(1);
        if (errset)
            perror("child: signal reset failed");
        printf("child got signal %d\n", count); /* show we got it */

        kill(parent, SIGTRAP);    /* signal the parent */
        got_it = errset = 0;
    }
    exit(0);
}
```

### **See Also**

**kill(), ptrace(), sh, signame, system calls**

### **Diagnostics**

In case of an error, **signal()** returns a pointer to a function returning **int**. That is, it returns **(int (\*)())-1** for an invalid *signum*.

## signal.h — Header Files

Declare signals

**#include <signal.h>**

The header file **signal.h** declares manifest constants that name all of the machine-independent signals that the COHERENT system uses to communicate with its processes. The header file **msig.h** declares constants for the machine-dependent signals.

### See Also

header files, kill, msig.h, signal()

## signame — Technical Information

Array of names of signals

**#include <signal.h>**

**extern char \*signame[NSIG+1];**

When a program terminates abnormally, its parent process receives a byte of termination information from the **wait** call. This byte contains a signal number, as defined in the header file **signal.h**. For example, **SIGINT** indicates an interrupt from the terminal.

The array **signame**, indexed by signal number, contains strings that give the meaning of each signal. Thus, **signame[SIGINT+1]** points to the string "interrupt". For portability reasons, all programs which wait on child processes (such as the shell **sh**) should use **signame**.

### Files

**<signal.h>**

### See Also

**sh**, **signal()**, technical information, **wait**

## sin() — Mathematics function (libm)

Calculate sine

**#include <math.h>**

**double sin(radian) double radian;**

**sin()** calculates the sine of its argument *radian*, which must be in radian measure.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

### See Also

mathematics library

## sinh() — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate hyperbolic sine

**#include <math.h>**

**double sinh(radian) double radian;**

**sinh()** calculates the hyperbolic sine of *radian*, which is in radian measure.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **cosh()**.

### See Also

mathematics library

**size — Command**

Print size of an object file

**size** [*file* ...]

**size** prints the sizes, in bytes, of the segments of each *file* (in decimal) and also prints the total size of all the segments (in both decimal and octal). Each *file* must be an object file.

Please note that because COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386 use different object formats, **size** does not behave the same on each implementation.

Under COHERENT 286, **size** outputs one line for each file, listing the following segments:

- Shared instructions
- Private instructions
- Uninitialized instructions
- Shared data
- Private data
- Uninitialized data

Under COHERENT 386 **size** outputs one line for each file, listing the following segments:

- .text
- .data
- .bss

**See Also**

**coff.h**, **commands**, **l.out.h**

**Notes**

**size** makes no concessions to machines that use hexadecimal.

**sizeof — C Keyword**

Return size of a data element

**sizeof** is a C operator that returns a constant **int** that gives the size of any given data element. The element examined can be a data object, a portion of a data object, or a type cast. **sizeof** returns the size of the element in **chars**; for example

```
long foo;
sizeof foo;
```

returns four, because a **long** is as long as four **chars**.

**sizeof** can also tell you the size of an array. This is especially helpful for use with external arrays, whose size can be set when they are initialized. For example:

```
char *arrayname[] = {
    "COHERENT", "Mark Williams C for the Atari ST",
    "Let's C", "Fast Forward"
};
```

```
main()
{
    printf("\"arrayname\" has %d entries\n",
           sizeof(arrayname)/sizeof char*);
}
```

**sizeof** is especially useful in **malloc** routines, and when you need to specify byte counts to I/O routines. Using it to set the size of data types instead of using a predetermined value will increase the portability of your code.

### See Also

**C keywords, data types, operators**

### sleep — Command

Stop executing for a specified time

**sleep** *seconds*

The command **sleep** suspends execution for a specified number of *seconds*. This routine is especially useful with other commands to the shell. For example, typing

```
(sleep 3600; echo coffee break time) &
```

executes the **echo** command in one hour (3,600 seconds) to indicate an important appointment.

### See Also

**alarm(), commands, ksh, pause(), sh**

### sleep() — General Function

Suspend execution for interval

**sleep**(*seconds*)

**unsigned** *seconds*;

**sleep()** suspends execution for *seconds*.

### Example

The following example, called **godot.c**, demonstrates how to use **sleep()**.

```
main()
{
    printf("Waiting for Godot ...\n");
    for ( ; ; ) {
        /* sleep for five seconds */
        sleep(5);
        printf("... still waiting ...\n");
    }
}
```

### See Also

**general functions**

**sload()** — System Call

Load device driver

```
#include <con.h>
int sload(major, file, conp)
int major; char *file; CON *conp;
```

The COHERENT system accesses all devices through drivers residing in the system. Except for the root device, drivers must be explicitly loaded before use; this operation does not involve re-booting.

**sload()** loads the driver given by *file* as device number *major*. This number uniquely identifies the driver to the system. *conp* is a reference to a **CON** structure, as defined in the header file **con.h**. It describes standard entry points and gives other information on the driver. Normally, *major* and *conp* are obtained from the driver load module; this is the method used by the **load** command.

*file* must be in the correct format. Usually, it is created using the **-k** option to **ld**.

This call is restricted to the superuser.

**Files**

<con.h>  
/drv/\*

**See Also**

**con.h**, **init**, **l.out.h**, **ld**, **suload**, **system calls**

**Diagnostics**

**sload()** return zero upon successful loading of the appropriate driver, or -1 on errors. **sload()** errors include nonexistent *file*, parameter (such as *major*) out of range, driver already loaded for *major*, or *file* not a file containing a proper driver.

**Notes**

Because COHERENT 386 version 4.0 does not support loadable device drivers, **sload()** is not included with that release of COHERENT.

**smail** — Command

Send UUCP mail

```
smail [-AcdLlRrv] -a aliasfile -F address -H [hostdomain] \
-h [host] -m num -n [namelist] -p pathfile \
-q num -u uuflags address ...
```

**smail** sends mail locally for delivery to remote COHERENT systems.

**Options**

**smail** recognizes the following options:

- A Print the resolved UUCP addresses. Do not collect a message or mail anything. The **-A** option to **smail** is only moderately helpful. It will expand any aliases, and expand routes to any machine it knows how to reach. However, it will *not* expand addresses that would otherwise get passed to the smart-host.
- a aliasfile  
Read *aliasfile* instead of **/usr/lib/mail/aliases** to find the list of mailing aliases that you have set.
- c Check **/usr/lib/mail/paths** for the cost of mailing a message to a given host, without actually sending the message. If you wish, you can redesign the path or reset the queueing threshold.



- d** Tell **smail** to give a verbose description of what it is doing. Do not invoke other mailers.
- F address**  
Use *address* on the **From:** line in locally generated mail. This lets you make a message appear as if it came from someone else.
- H hostdomain**  
Set the host's domain. The default is the contents of **/etc/domain**.
- h hostname**  
Set a *hostname*. The default is the contents of **/etc/uucpname**, followed by a period, followed by the contents of **/etc/domain**. Use this option only if you wishtolie to **smail** about your machine's name.
- L** Send all addresses to the local mailer for processing, including mail that appears to be for remote systems.
- l** Send a domain address to the local mailer for processing. Normally, only local addresses go to the local mailer.
- m number**  
Tell **smail** to hand no more than *number* jobs to **uux** for immediate delivery.
- n [namelist]**  
Use name-list style aliasing. In this method, a name is linked to an address. This correctly resolves addresses like **Santa.Claus@north.pole**. If no *namelist* is named, then **/usr/lib/mail/namelist** is read by default.  
  
The command **nptx** builds a file of all permutations of common names and addresses, to make such addressing easy.
- p pathfile**  
Read *pathfile* instead of **/usr/lib/mail/paths** to find paths to other systems.
- q number**  
Set the queuing threshold to *number*. When routing mail to a given host, **smail** checks the "cost" of contacting the host; this cost is given in **/usr/lib/mail/paths**. If the cost is less than the queuing threshold, then **smail** sends the mail immediately; otherwise, it queues the mail for later shipment. Under COHERENT, the default queueing threshold is 100.
- R** Reroute UUCP paths, trying successively larger righthand substrings of a path until a component is recognized. This is called "reroute" routing.
- r** Route the first component of a UUCP path (**host!address**) in addition to routing domain addresses (**user@domain**). This is called "always" routing.
- u uuxflags**  
Pass *uuxflags* to **uux** for remote mail. This overrides any of the default values and other queueing strategies.
- v** Give a verbose description, but invoke other mailers.

## Addresses

**smail** understands UUCP-style addresses, both domain-style addresses (e.g., **henry@mw.com**) full UUCP path names, (e.g., **mw.com!lepanto!henry**), or local addresses (e.g., **henry**). **smail** takes **user@domain** to be a domain address, **host!address** to be a UUCP path, and anything else to be a local address.

**smail** gives precedence to '@' over '!' when parsing mixed addresses. Thus, **a!b@c** is parsed as **(a!b)@c**, rather than **a!(b@c)**.

## Routing

There are two forms of an address for E-mail: *internal*, and *external* (also called *envelope*).

The internal address is what appears on the **To:** line in the message's header. This is usually the address typed in by the person who wrote the message.

The envelope address is the address that **smail** passes to the mail delivery agent (either **uux** or **lmail**).

*Resolving* is the act of transforming an internal address into an envelope address. There are two steps to resolving an address: *host resolution*, and *alias resolution*.

Host resolution determines the computer to which **smail** sends the message. Host resolution is also called *routing*.

If a message resolves to the local machine, then alias resolution is applied. Alias resolution is also called *alias expansion*. Mail aliases are expanded by alias resolution. If a local address is actually an alias, the newly resolved address must go through host resolution again.

Although **smail** understands domain-style addresses, it can only deliver to UUCP paths and local addresses. Thus, it must resolve a domain address into a UUCP path or local address.

To resolve a domain address, **smail** finds a route to the most specific part of the domain specified in the routing table. Two degrees of resolution can occur:

### *Full resolution*

**smail** finds a route for the entire domain specification. It either tacks the user specification onto the end of the UUCP path, or resolves it into a local address, whichever is appropriate.

### *Partial resolution*

**smail** finds a route for only the right portion of the domain specification; e.g., for

```
henry@lepanto.mwc.com
```

it finds **.mwc.com** but cannot identify **lepanto**. Here, **smail** tacks the complete address (in the form **domain!user**) onto the end of the UUCP path. For example, if **smail** finds that the route to **mwc.com** is via systems **foo**, **bar**, and **baz**, it constructs the path:

```
foo!bar!baz!lepanto.mwc.com!henry
```

This assumes that the version of **smail** on system **baz** will recognize the token **lepanto.mwc.com** as being a domain rather than a host.

It is an error if a partially resolved address routes to the local host (a null UUCP path), since according to the routing table, the local host is responsible for resolving the address more fully.

The **-r** flag tells **smail** to attempt to route the first (leftmost) component of a UUCP path — probably to impress people with how many UUCP hosts it knows. This is called “always routing”. If this fails, it passes the unrouted address to **uux**, in case the path data base is not complete.

The **-R** flag tells **smail** to take a UUCP path and route the rightmost host named in the path. This is called “reroute” routing. Use it if you have a very up-to-date routing table, and wish to bypass some obsolete routing information in the current path. This is generally considered dangerous and anti-social.

If a route cannot be found from the available routing data base, then one more attempt to route the mail is made by searching for an entry in the database for a route to a **smart-host**. If this entry exists, then **smail** forwards the mail there, for it to deliver. This lets one host depend on another, presumably better informed, host to deliver its mail. This kind of arrangement should be worked out in advance with the **smart-host's** administrator.

After **smail** resolves an address, it reparses it to see if it is now a UUCP path or local address. If the new address turns out to be another domain address, **smail** complains. This error occurs when an address partially resolves to the local host.

By default, **smail** does not alter an explicit UUCP path of any mail message. If the stated path is unuseable (i.e., the next host is unknown) then **smail** applies *always* routing, and attempt to deliver the mail to the potentially new address. If this fails too, then it uses *reroute* routing and makes another attempt to deliver the message. Finally, it attempts to find a path to a **smart-host** and pass the mail to it.

### **From-ming**

**smail** collapses the **From\_** and **>From\_** lines to generate a simple "from" argument, which it then uses to create its own **From** line. The rules for from-ming are: concatenate all "remote from" hosts (separating them by !'s), and tack on the address from the last **From\_** line. If that address is in **user@domain** format, rewrite it as **domain!user**. Ignore host or domain if either is simply the local hostname. It also removes redundant information from the **From\_** line.

**smail** generates its own **From\_** line. For UUCP-bound mail, **smail** generates a "remote from hostname", where hostname is the UUCP hostname (not the domain name), so that **From\_** can indicate a valid UUCP path, leaving the sender's domain address in **From:**.

### **Headers**

Protocol RFC822, which governs Internet mail, demands that messages contains certain headers, including **To:**, **From:**, and **Date**. If these headers are absent in locally generated mail, **smail** inserts them.

### **Undeliverable Mail**

**smail** returns to sender all undeliverable mail (i.e., unknown user or unknown host).

### **Logging**

If you are having problems with mail delivery and wish to log all messages, simply create the directory **/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/mail**. It will then generate a log in that directory called **mail**.

This file can grow quickly on a busy system, so you may want to add it to the script **uumvlog**, to trim it down to size automatically.

### **Files**

**/bin/lmail** — Local mailer  
**/bin/mail** — Mail user agent  
**/usr/lib/mail/aliases** — Alias data base  
**/usr/lib/mail/namelist** — Name list data base  
**/usr/lib/mail/paths** — Path data base  
**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/mail/mail** — Log of mail

### **See Also**

**aliases, mail, paths, rmail**

### **Notes**

**smail** and **rmail** are links to the same program.

**smult()** — Multiple-Precision Mathematics

Multiply multiple-precision integers

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void smult(a, n, c)
```

```
mint *a, *c; int n;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **smult()** multiplies the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* by the integer *n*, which is  $\leq 127$ . It writes the product into the **mint** pointed to by *c*.

**See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**sort** — Command

Sort lines of text

```
sort [-bcdffimnr] [-t c] [-o outfile] [-T dir] [+beg[-end]][file ...]
```

**sort** reads lines from each *file*, or from the standard input if no file is specified. It sorts what it reads, and writes the sorted material to the standard output.

**sort** sorts lines by comparing a *key* from each line. By default, the key is the entire input line (or *record*) and ordering is in ASCII order. The key, however, can be one or more *fields* within the input record; by using the appropriate options, you can select which fields are used as the key, and dictate the character that is used to separate the fields.

The following options affect how the key is constructed or how the output is ordered.

- b Ignore leading white space (blanks or tabs) in key comparisons.
- d Dictionary ordering: use only letters, blanks, and digits when comparing keys. This is essentially the ordering used to sort telephone directories.
- f Fold upper-case letters to lower case for comparison purposes.
- i Ignore all characters outside of the printable ASCII range (octal 040-0176).
- n The key is a numeric string that consists of optional leading blanks and optional minus sign followed by any number of digits with an optional decimal point. Ordering is by the numeric, as opposed to alphabetic, value of the string.
- r Reverse the ordering, i.e., **sort** from largest to smallest.

As noted above, the key compared from each line need not be the entire input line. The option *+beg* indicates the beginning position of the key field in the input line, and the optional *-end* indicates that the key field ends just before the *end* position. If no *-end* is given, the key field ends at the end of the line. Each of these positional indicators has the form *+m.nf* or *-m.nf*, where *m* is the number of fields to skip in the input line and *n* is the number of characters to skip after skipping fields. Optional flags *f* are chosen from the above key flags (**bdfinr**) and are local to the specified field.

The following additional options control how **sort** works.

- c Check the input to see if it is sorted. Print the first out-of-order line found.
- m Merge the input files. **sort** assumes each *file* to be sorted already. With large files, **sort** runs much faster with this option.
- o *outfile*  
Put the output into *outfile* rather than on the standard output. This allows **sort** to work correctly if the output file is one of the input files.

**-tc** Use the character *c* to separate fields rather than the default blanks and tabs. For example, **-t/** uses the slash instead of white space to separate fields; this is useful when sorting file names and directory names.

**-T *dir***  
Create temporary files in directory *dir* rather than the standard place.

**-u** Suppress multiple copies of lines with key fields that compare equally.

The following example sorts the password file **/etc/passwd**, first by group number (field 4) and then by user name (field 1):

```
sort -t: +3n -4 +0 -1 /etc/passwd
```

## Files

**/usr/tmp/sort\*** — First attempt at temporary files

**/tmp/sort\*** — Second attempt at temporary files

## See Also

**ASCII, commands, ctype, tsort, uniq**

## Diagnostics

**sort** returns a nonzero exit status if internal problems occurred or if the file was not correctly sorted, in the case of the **-c** option.

## spell — Command

Find spelling errors

**spell [-a][-b][*file* ...]**

**spell** builds a set of unique words from a document contained in each input *file*, or the standard input if none. It writes a list of words believed to be misspelled onto the standard output.

**spell** should normally be invoked with the document in the form of the input to the text formatter **nroff** rather than the output. **spell** deletes control information to the formatter by invoking **deroff**.

The default dictionary is for American spelling of English. The **-a** option specifies this dictionary explicitly. Under the **-b** option, British spelling is checked. This accepts *favour*, *fibre*, and *travelled* rather than the American spellings *favor*, *fiber*, and *traveled* for the same words. Words ending in *ize* are also accepted when ending in *ise* (e.g., *digitize*, *digitise*).

The dictionary has a reasonably complete coverage of proper names as well as technical terms in certain fields. However, it covers some fields (e.g., computer science) better than others (e.g., medicine).

## Looking up a Word

The COHERENT command **look** reads **spell**'s dictionaries to find words that resemble a fraction of a word that you type. For example, the command

```
look consider
```

returns the following to the standard output:

consider#  
considerable  
considerably  
considerate  
considerately  
consideration#  
considered  
considering

The '#' indicates a possible plural form by adding 's' to the end of the word. This lets you check the spelling of a word without having to enter the word into a file and run **spell** on it.

### Files

**/usr/dict/clista** — Compressed American dictionary  
**/usr/dict/clistb** — Compressed British dictionary  
**/usr/dict/spellhist** — History file for dictionary maintainer  
**/usr/lib/spell**

### See Also

**commands, deroff, look, nroff, sort, typo**

### Notes

Dictionaries are not provided for languages other than English.

No dictionary can be complete. You must add new words to the dictionary to ensure that it fully meets your needs.

Obscure words (such as opcodes, variable names, etc.) are flagged as spelling errors.

Because the data files required for **spell** are quite large, they might not be included on COHERENT systems for machines with insufficient disk space. As a result, the command might not work as expected on all systems.

## **split** — Command

Split a text file into smaller files

**split** [-nlines][-ccount][infile outfile]

**split** divides a file into a number of smaller files. This is especially useful for dividing text files into chunks that can be managed by MicroEMACS or similar editors, or for dividing binary files into chunks that can be easily transmitted via UUCP.

**split** uses *infile* as its input file if given; otherwise, it uses the standard input. If *infile* is '-', **split** uses the standard input.

**split** puts its output into files with names prefixed by *outfile* and suffixed consecutively with **aa**, **ab**, **ac**, and so on. If no *outfile* is specified, file names are prefixed with **x**.

Normally, **split** puts 1,000 lines in each output file. This default may be changed for text files by the option *-nlines*, where *nlines* gives the desired number of lines per file. When using **split** on binary files, the *count* argument to the *-c* option allows you to specify the number of characters to place in each output file.

### See Also

**commands**

**spow() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Raise multiple-precision integer to power

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void spow(a, n, b)
```

```
mint *a, *b; int n;
```

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. **spow()** raises the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* to the power of *n*, and writes the result into the **mint** pointed to by *b*. In no case may the exponent be negative.

**See Also**

multiple-precision mathematics

**sprintf() — STDIO (libc)**

Format output

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int sprintf(string, format [ , arg ] ...)
```

```
char *string, *format;
```

**sprintf()** formats and prints a string. It resembles the function **printf()**, except that it writes its output into the memory location pointed to by *string*, instead of to the standard output.

**sprintf()** reads the string pointed to by *format* to specify an output format for each *arg*; it then writes every *arg* into *string*, which it ends with a null character. For a detailed discussion of **sprintf()**'s formatting codes, see **printf()**.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **sscanf()**.

**See Also**

**printf()**, **fprintf()**, **STDIO**

**Notes**

The output *string* passed to **sprintf()** must be large enough to hold all output characters.

Because C does not perform type checking, it is essential that each argument match its format specification.

At present, **sprintf()** does not return a meaningful value.

**sqrt() — Mathematics Function (libm)**

Compute square root

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double sqrt(z) double z;
```

**sqrt()** returns the square root of *z*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **ceil()**.

**See Also**

mathematics library

**Diagnostics**

When a domain error occurs (i.e., when *z* is negative), **sqrt()** sets **errno** to **EDOM** and returns zero.

**srand()** — General Function (libc)

Seed random number generator

**void srand(seed) int seed;**

**srand()** uses *seed* to initialize the sequence of pseudo-random numbers returned by **rand()**. Different values of *seed* initialize different sequences.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **rand()**.

**See Also**

**general functions, rand()**

*The Art of Computer Programming*, vol. 2

**Notes**

For a superior but non-standard random-number generator, see the function **randl()**. It is described in the Lexicon article **libmisc**.

**srcpath** — Command

Find source files

**srcpath [-aw] [-p path] filename pattern ...**

The command **srcpath** expands the environmental variable **SRCPATH**, applies it to each argument, and prints the full path of each unique result.

An argument can either be a file name or a pattern. For example, the command

```
srcpath "*.ch]"
```

finds all **.c** and **.h** files on **SRCPATH**. By default, **srcpath** keeps only the first file that it finds with a given name. **srcpath** automatically appends **.** to the beginning of **SRCPATH** so files in the current directory have precedence.

**srcpath** recognizes the following command-line options:

**-p path**

Use *path* as its path instead of **SRCPATH**. For example,

```
srcpath -p " ./usr/src/cmd" "*.c"
```

tells **srcpath** to search **.** and **/usr/src/cmd** instead of **SRCPATH**. Note that with this option, **srcpath** does not automatically place **.** at the beginning of the list.

- a** Disable shadowing. Normally, if **srcpath** finds a file is found in more than one directory on the path, it prints only the first. The **-a** option forces **srcpath** to print all instances of the file name.
- w** By default, **srcpath** silently bypasses directories and matching files for which it has no read permission. The **-w** option causes it to print a warning message when this happens.

**See Also**

**commands, find, make, PATH**

**ss** — Device Driver

Future Domain/Seagate SCSI device driver

The device driver **ss** lets you use SCSI interface devices attached to any of the following host adapters:



Future Domain TMC-845/850/860/875/885

Future Domain TMC-840/841/880/881

Seagate ST01/ST02

This driver has major number 13. It can be accessed either as a block-special device or as a character-special device. The minor number specifies the device and partition number for disk-type devices; this lets you use up to eight SCSI-IDs, with one logical unit number (LUN) per SCSI-ID and up to four partitions per LUN. The present version supports only LUN 0 per SCSI-ID.

The first **open** call on a SCSI disk device reads the partition table into memory.

### Controller Configuration

For your Future Domain or Seagate host adapter to work with COHERENT, you must install it with interrupts enabled. If you have been running your host adapter with interrupts disabled, a good first choice for interrupt number is IRQ 5, unless you know that you have another device installed on your computer that already uses this interrupt. Consult the instructions provided with your host adapter, and the jumper settings, to determine the IRQ number.

The base address value used by **ss** is the four-digit hexadecimal memory-segment number of the host adapter's starting address. This number is most often **CA00**; other common values are **C800**, **CC00**, **CE00**, **DC00**, and **DE00**. You must use the correct value, as specified by the jumper settings on your host adapter.

Device driver variables **SS\_BASE\_** and **SS\_INT\_** correspond to the base address and interrupt vector, respectively. Device driver variable **NSDRIVE\_** must be patched before the driver is loaded. The low-order byte of this variable is a bit map that indicates the SCSI-IDs of all installed target devices. The high-order byte indicates the type of host adapter. Labelling the bits in the low-order byte of **NSDRIVE\_** is as follows:

*Bit number:*                      7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 ← least significant bit

There should be a value of one for each installed target device. Do not set a value of one for the SCSI-ID of the host adapter. The high-order byte of **NSDRIVE\_** is **0x00** for Seagate ST01 and ST02, **0x80** for TMC-845/850/860/875/885, and **0x40** for TMC-840/841/880/881. For example, if you are using a TMC-885 and a single hard drive with SCSI ID of zero, then set **NSDRIVE\_** to **0x8001**. See Lexicon article **hs** for an example of how to configure a device driver.

When processing BIOS I/O requests prior to booting COHERENT, SCSI host adapters use "translation-mode" drive parameters: number of heads, cylinders, and sectors per track. These numbers are called translation-mode parameters because they have nothing to do with physical drive geometry. The translation-mode parameters used by the BIOS code present on your host adapter can be obtained using the **dpb** utility found on the boot diskette of versions 3.2.0 and later of COHERENT.

**ss** has a table, **drv\_parm\_**, which contains eight two-word entries, one for each possible SCSI-ID. The first word of each entry must contain the number of cylinders for the drive. The high-order byte of the second word is the number of sectors per track; the low-order byte is the number of heads. Entries in **drv\_parm\_** should be patched for each drive which is accessible by the BIOS. Values need not be patched for drives inaccessible by the BIOS. Note that BIOS code is executed by COHERENT only during the initial bootstrap. After that, drive parameters are of no consequence because SCSI I/O requests are based upon logical block number, rather than upon cylinder/head/sector addressing.

The installation procedure for COHERENT versions 3.2.0 and later patches all necessary variables for the accompanying version of the **ss** driver by executing the command:

```
/etc/mkdev scsi
```

### Minor Device Numbers

**ss** usually uses the special files `/dev/sd*` and `/dev/rsd*`. For information on the meaning of minor numbers with these special files, see the article on **aha154x**.

### Loading the Driver

**ss** must be loaded on a system that does not have a SCSI hard disk as the root device. To do so, use the command `/etc/drvld`, as follows:

```
/etc/drvld -r /drv/ss
```

### Files

`/dev/sd*` — block-special devices

`/dev/rsd*` — character-special devices

### See Also

device drivers, `drvld`, `scsi`

### Notes

Current releases of **ss** support disk-type devices only. Zero is the only LUN allowed. Future versions will add support for tape-type and other devices, as well as nonzero LUN's.

In version 3.2.0 of COHERENT, another variable, **SS\_HOST\_**, must be patched in the driver to be equal to the SCSI-ID of the host adapter. This value is six for Future Domain adapters, and seven for Seagate. Variable **SS\_HOST\_** has been deleted from versions of the **ss** driver later than that shipped with COHERENT 3.2.0.

## **sscanf()** — STDIO

Format a string

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
int sscanf(string, format [, arg ] ...)
```

```
char *string; char *format;
```

**sscanf()** reads the argument *string*, and uses *format* to specify a format for each *arg*, each of which must be a pointer. For more information on **sscanf()**'s conversion codes, see **scanf()**.

### Example

This example uses **sprintf()** to create a string, and then reads it with **sscanf()**. It also illustrates a common problem with this routine.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    char string[80];
    char s1[10], s2[10];

    sprintf(string, "123456789012345678901234567890");
    sscanf(string, "%9c", s1);
    sscanf(string, "%10c", s2);

    printf("\n%s is the string\n", string);
    printf("%s: first 9 characters in string\n", s1);
    printf("%s: first 19 characters in string\n", s2);
}
```

**See Also****fscanf()**, **scanf()**, **STDIO****Diagnostics****sscanf()** returns the number of arguments filled. It returns zero if no arguments can be filled or if an error occurs.**Notes**

Because C does not perform type checking, an argument must match its format specification. **sscanf()** is best used only to process data that you are certain are in the correct data format, such as data that were written with **sprintf()**.

**sscanf()** is difficult to use correctly, and incorrect usage can create serious bugs in programs. It is recommended that you use **strtok()** instead.

**stack — Definition**

The **stack** is the segment of memory that holds function arguments, local variables, function return addresses, and stack frame linkage information. The COHERENT-286 library sets the stack size to four kilobytes. You can change the size of the stack by using the command **fixstack**.

If your program uses recursive algorithms, or declares large amounts of automatic data, or simply contains many levels of functions calls, the stack may "overflow", and overwrite the program data. Note that this is unlikely with COHERENT 386, because the 80386 has implemented dynamic stack allocation.

**See Also****definitions**, **fixstack****standard error — Definition**

The **standard error** is the peripheral device or file where programs write error messages by default. It is defined in the header file **stdio.h** under the abbreviation **stderr**, and by default is the computer's monitor.

The COHERENT shell **sh** lets you redirect into a file all text written to the standard error device. To do so, use the shell operator **2>**. For example

```
make 2>errorfile
```

redirects all error messages generated by **make** into file **errorfile**.

**See Also****definitions**, **stderr**, **stdio.h****standard input — Definition**

The **standard input** is the device or file from which data are accepted by default. It is defined in the header file **stdio.h** under the abbreviation **stdin**, and will be the computer's keyboard unless redirected by the operating system, a shell, or **freopen**.

The COHERENT shell **sh** lets you redirect the standard input device. To do so, use the shell operator **<**. For example

```
mail fwb <textfile
```

the standard input device from your terminal to file **textfile**; in effect, this commands mails the contents of **textfile** to user **fwb**.

**See Also**definitions, **stdin**, **stdio.h****standard output — Definition**

The **standard output** is the device or file where programs write output by default. It is defined in the header file **stdio.h** under the abbreviation **stdout**, and in most instances is defined to be the computer's monitor.

The COHERENT shell **sh** lets you redirect into a file all text written to the standard output device. To do so, use the shell operator **>**. For example

```
sort myfile >sortfile
```

redirects the text output by **sort** into file **sortfile**.

**See Also**definitions, **stdio.h**, **stdout****stat() — System Call**

Find file attributes

#include &lt;sys/stat.h&gt;

int stat(file, statptr)

char \*file; struct stat \*statptr;

**stat()** returns a structure that contains the attributes of a file, including protection information, file type, and file size.

*file* points to the path name of file. *statptr* points to a structure of the type **stat**, as defined in the header file **stat.h**.

The following summarizes the structure **stat**:

```
struct stat {
    dev_t    st_dev;        /* Device */
    ino_t    st_ino;        /* i-node number */
    unsigned short st_mode; /* Mode */
    short    st_nlink;      /* Link count */
    short    st_uid;        /* User id */
    short    st_gid;        /* Group id */
    dev_t    st_rdev;       /* Real device */
    fsize_t  st_size;       /* Size */
    time_t   st_atime;      /* Access time */
    time_t   st_mtime;      /* Modify time */
    time_t   st_ctime;      /* Change time */
};
```

The following lists the legal settings for the element **st\_mode** which defines the file's attributes:

<b>S_IFMT</b>	0170000	File types
<b>S_IFREG</b>	0100000	Ordinary file
<b>S_IFDIR</b>	0040000	Directory
<b>S_IFCHR</b>	0020000	Character-special file
<b>S_IFBLK</b>	0060000	Block-special file
<b>S_ISUID</b>	0004000	Set user identifier
<b>S_ISGID</b>	0002000	Set group identifier
<b>S_ISVTX</b>	0001000	Save text bit
<b>S_IREAD</b>	0000400	Owner read permission
<b>S_IWRITE</b>	0000200	Owner write permission
<b>S_IEXEC</b>	0000100	Owner execute permission

**st\_dev** and **st\_ino** together form a unique description of the file. The former is the device on which the file and its i-node reside, and the latter is the index number of the file. **st\_mode** gives the permission bits, as outlined above. **st\_nlink** gives the number of links to the file. The user id and group id of the owner are **st\_uid** and **st\_gid**, respectively. **st\_rdev**, which is valid only for special files, holds the major and minor numbers for the file.

The entry **st\_size** gives the size of the file, in bytes. For a pipe, the size is the number of bytes waiting to be read from the pipe.

Three entries for each file give the last occurrences of various events in the file's history. **st\_atime** gives the time the file was last read or written to. **st\_mtime** gives the time of the last modification, write for files, create or delete entry for directories. **st\_ctime** gives the last change to the attributes, not including times and size.

### Example

The following example uses **stat()** to print a file's status.

```
#include <sys/stat.h>
main()
{
    struct stat sbuf;
    int status;

    if (status = stat("/usr/include", &sbuf)) {
        printf("Can't find\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    printf("uid = %d gid = %d\n", sbuf.st_uid, sbuf.st_gid);
}
```

### Files

**<sys/stat.h>**

### See Also

**chmod()**, **chown()**, **ls**, **open()**, **system calls**

### Notes

**stat()** differs from the related function **fstat()** mainly in that **fstat()** accesses the file through its descriptor, which was returned by a successful call to **open()**, whereas **stat()** takes the file's path name and opens it before checking its status.

### Diagnostics

**stat()** returns -1 if an error occurs, e.g., the file cannot be found. Otherwise, it returns zero.

### **stat.h** — Header File

Definitions and declarations used to obtain file status

**#include <sys/stat.h>**

**stat.h** is a header file that contains the declarations of several structures used by the routines **fstat** and **stat**, which return information about a file's status.

### See Also

**chmod()**, **fstat()**, **header file**, **stat()**

### **statfs()** — System Call

Get information about a file system

**#include <sys/types.h>**

**#include <sys/statfs.h>**

**int statfs** (*path*, *buffer*, *length*, *fstype*)

**char** \**path*;

**struct statfs** \**buffer*;

**int** *length*, *fstype*;

The COHERENT system call **statfs()** returns information about a file system, either mounted or unmounted.

*buffer* points to a structure of type **statfs**, which contains the following members:

<b>short</b>	<b>f_fstyp;</b>	<b>/* type of the file system */</b>
<b>short</b>	<b>f_bsize;</b>	<b>/* block size */</b>
<b>short</b>	<b>f_frsize;</b>	<b>/* fragment size */</b>
<b>long</b>	<b>f_blocks;</b>	<b>/* number of blocks in the file system */</b>
<b>long</b>	<b>f_bfree;</b>	<b>/* number of free blocks */</b>
<b>long</b>	<b>f_files;</b>	<b>/* number of file nodes */</b>
<b>long</b>	<b>f_ffree;</b>	<b>/* number of free file nodes */</b>
<b>char</b>	<b>f_fname[6];</b>	<b>/* name of the volume */</b>
<b>char</b>	<b>f_fpack[6];</b>	<b>/* name of the pack */</b>

*length* is the length of the area into which **statfs()** can write its output. This should always be set to **sizeof(struct statfs)**.

*path* and *fstype* identify the file system. If the file system is unmounted, then *path* should name the device by which the file system is accessed, and *fstype* should contain the type of the file system. If the file system is mounted, then *path* should give the full path name of a file on the file system in question, and *fstype* must be set to zero.

**statfs()** returns zero if all went well. If something went wrong, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

### See Also

**fstatfs()**, **mkfs**, **system calls**, **ustat()**

### Notes

**statfs()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

**static — C Keyword**

Declare storage class

**static** is a C storage class. It has two entirely different meanings, depending upon whether it it appears inside or outside a function.

Outside a function, **static** means that the function or variable it preceeds may not be seen outside the module.

Inside a function, static may only precede a variable. It means that that variable is permanently allocated, rather than allocated on the stack when the function is entered and discarded when the function exits. If a **static** variable is initialized, that occurs before the program starts rather than every time the function is entered. If a function returns a pointer to a variable, often that variable is declared **static** within the function. If a pointer to a **non-static** local variable is returned, that variable is freed when the function returns and the pointer points to an unprotected location.

**Example**

The following example demonstrates the uses of the **static** keyword. It returns the next integer in a sequence as a string.

```
/* static to keep function hidden outside of this module */
static char *nextInt()
{
    /* static to protect value between calls */
    static int next = 0;
    /* static to allow the return of a pointer to s */
    static char s[5];

    sprintf(s, "%d", next++);
    return(s);
}
```

**See Also**

auto, C keywords, extern, register variable, storage class

**stdarg.h — Header File**

Header for variable numbers of arguments

**#include <stdarg.h>**

The header **stdarg.h** declares and defines the routines used to traverse a variable-length argument list. It declares the type **va\_list** and the function **va\_end**, and it defines the macros **va\_start** and **va\_arg**.

**See Also**

header files, varargs.h

**stddef.h — Header File**

Header for standard definitions

**#include <stddef.h>**

**stddef.h** defines three types and two macros that are used through the library. They are as follows:

<b>NULL</b>	Null pointer
<b>offsetof()</b>	Offset of a field within a structure
<b>ptrdiff_t</b>	Numeric difference between two pointers
<b>size_t</b>	Type returned by <b>sizeof</b> operator
<b>wchar_t</b>	Typedef for wide <b>chars</b>

### See Also

header files

### **stderr** — Definition

**stderr** is the name of the **FILE** pointer assigned to the standard error device. It is set in the header file **stdio.h**.

### See Also

definitions, **stdin**, **stdio.h**, **stdout**, standard error

### **stdin** — Definition

**stdin** is the name of the **FILE** pointer that is assigned to the standard input device. It is set in the header file **stdio.h**.

### See Also

definitions, standard input, **stderr**, **stdio.h**, **stdout**

### **STDIO** — Overview

**STDIO** is an abbreviation for *standard input and output*. It refers to a set of standard library functions that accompany all C compilers and that govern input and output with peripheral devices.

COHERENT includes the following **STDIO** routines:

<b>clearerr()</b>	Present status stream
<b>fclose()</b>	Close a file stream
<b>fdopen()</b>	Open a file stream for I/O
<b>feof()</b>	Discover a file stream's status
<b>ferror()</b>	Discover a file stream's status
<b>fflush()</b>	Flush an output buffer
<b>fgetc()</b>	Get a character
<b>fgets()</b>	Get a string
<b>fgetw()</b>	Get a word
<b>fileno()</b>	Get a file descriptor
<b>fopen()</b>	Open a file stream
<b>fprintf()</b>	Format and print to a file stream
<b>fputc()</b>	Output a character
<b>fputs()</b>	Output a string
<b>fputw()</b>	Output a word
<b>fread()</b>	Read a file stream
<b>freopen()</b>	Open a file stream
<b>fscanf()</b>	Format and read from a file stream
<b>fseek()</b>	Seek in a file stream
<b>ftell()</b>	Return file pointer position
<b>fwrite()</b>	Write to a file stream
<b>getc()</b>	Get a character
<b>getchar()</b>	Get a character
<b>gets()</b>	Get a string
<b>getw()</b>	Get a word



**pclose()** . . . . . Close a pipe  
**popen()** . . . . . Open a pipe  
**printf()** . . . . . Print a formatted string  
**putc()** . . . . . Output a character  
**putchar()** . . . . . Output a character  
**puts()** . . . . . Output a string  
**putw()** . . . . . Output a word  
**rewind()** . . . . . Reset a file pointer  
**scanf()** . . . . . Format and input from standard input  
**setbuf()** . . . . . Set alternative file-stream buffers  
**sprintf()** . . . . . Format and print to a string  
**sscanf()** . . . . . Format and read from a string  
**ungetc()** . . . . . Return character to file stream

STDIO routines are buffered by default.

### **See Also**

**buffer**, **FILE**, **Libraries**, **stdio.h**, **stream**

## **stdio.h — Header File**

Declarations and definitions for I/O

**stdio.h** is a header file that defines several manifest constants used in standard I/O, such as **NULL** and **FILE**, declares the STDIO functions, and defines numerous I/O macros.

### **See Also**

**header file**, **STDIO**

## **stdlib.h — Header File**

Declare/define general functions

**#include <stdlib.h>**

**stdlib.h** is a header file that is defined in the ANSI standard. It declares a set of general utilities and defines attending macros and data types, as follows:

### **Types**

**div\_t** . . . . . Type of object returned by **div**  
**ldiv\_t** . . . . . Type of object returned by **ldiv**

### **Manifest Constants**

**EXIT\_FAILURE** . . Value to indicate that program failed to execute properly  
**EXIT\_SUCCESS** . . Value to indicate that program executed properly  
**MB\_CUR\_MAX** . . Largest size of multibyte character in current locale  
**RAND\_MAX** . . . . Largest size of pseudo-random number

### **Functions**

**abort()** . . . . . End program immediately  
**abs()** . . . . . Compute the absolute value of an integer  
**atof()** . . . . . Convert string to floating-point number  
**atoi()** . . . . . Convert string to integer  
**atol()** . . . . . Convert string to long integer  
**bsearch()** . . . . . Search an array  
**calloc()** . . . . . Allocate dynamic memory  
**div()** . . . . . Perform integer division  
**exit()** . . . . . Terminate a program gracefully  
**free()** . . . . . De-allocate dynamic memory to free memory pool

**getenv()** . . . . . Read environmental variable  
**labs()** . . . . . Compute the absolute value of a long integer  
**ldiv()** . . . . . Perform long integer division  
**malloc()** . . . . . Allocate dynamic memory  
**qsort()** . . . . . Sort an array  
**rand()** . . . . . Generate pseudo-random numbers  
**realloc()** . . . . . Reallocate dynamic memory  
**srand()** . . . . . Seed the random-number generator  
**strtod()** . . . . . Convert string to floating-point number  
**strtol()** . . . . . Convert string to long integer  
**strtoul()** . . . . . Convert string to unsigned long integer  
**system()** . . . . . Suspend a program and execute another

**See Also**

header files

**stdout — Definition**

**stdout** is the name of the **FILE** pointer that is assigned to the standard output device. It is set in the header file **stdio.h**.

**See Also**

definitions, standard output, **stderr**, **stdin**, **stdio.h**

**sticky bit — Definition**

The *sticky bit* is one of the mode bits associated with a file. If the sticky bit is set for an executable file and swapping is enabled, COHERENT behaves in a special way when it executes that file.

When the COHERENT system executes the file the first time, all proceeds normally. When the program exits, however, the pure segments are left on the swap device; when the program is re-invoked, COHERENT reads “pure” code (text) areas from the swap device and all other (impure) segments from the file system. This speeds execution of large programs that are executed frequently.

This strategy works well on systems that have large swap devices. Because overuse of the sticky bit would quickly swamp the swap device, only the superuser can set the sticky bit.

**See Also**

**chmod**, definitions

**stime() — System Call**

Set the time

**#include**

**int stime(timep)**

**time\_t \*timep;**

**stime()** sets the system time. *timep* points to a variable of type **time\_t**, which contains the number of seconds since midnight GMT of January 1, 1970.

**stime()** is restricted to the superuser.

**Files**

<sys/types.h>

**See Also**

**ctime()**, **date**, **ftime()**, **stat()**, system calls, **utime()**

**Diagnostics**

**time()** returns -1 on error, zero otherwise.

**storage class — Technical Information**

**Storage class** refers to the part of a declaration that indicates how data are to be stored. The C language recognizes the following storage classes:

```
auto
extern
register
static
```

**typedef** is technically defined as a storage class as well, but it does not actually indicate how data are stored. The default class is **auto**.

**See Also**

**auto, extern, register, static, technical information, typedef**

**strcat() — String Function**

Concatenate strings

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strcat(string1, string2)
```

```
char *string1, *string2;
```

**strcat()** appends all characters in *string2* onto the end of *string1*. It returns the modified *string1*.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **string functions**.

**See Also**

**string functions, string.h, strncat()**

**Notes**

*string1* must point to enough space to hold itself and *string2*; otherwise, another portion of the program may be overwritten.

**strchr() — String Function**

Find a character in a string

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strchr(string, character)
```

```
char *string; int character;
```

**strchr()** searches for the first occurrence of *character* within *string*. The null character at the end of *string* is included within the search. It is equivalent to the COHERENT function **index()**.

**strchr()** returns a pointer to the first occurrence of *character* within *string*. If *character* is not found, it returns NULL.

Having **strchr()** search for a null character will always produce a pointer to the end of a string. For example,

```
char *string;
assert(strchr(string, '\0') == string + strlen(string));
```

never fails.

**See Also**

string functions

**strcmp() — String Function**

Compare two strings

#include &lt;string.h&gt;

int strcmp(string1, string2)

char \*string1, \*string2;

**strcmp()** compares *string1* with *string2* lexicographically. It returns zero if the strings are identical, returns a number less than zero if *string1* occurs earlier alphabetically than *string2*, and returns a number greater than zero if it occurs later. This routine is compatible with the ordering routine needed by **qsort()**.

**Example**

For examples of this function, see the entries for **string functions** and **malloc()**.

**See Also****qsort()**, **shellsort()**, **string functions**, **string.h**, **strncmp()****strcoll() — String Function**

Compare two strings, using locale-specific information

#include &lt;string.h&gt;

int strcoll(string1, string2)

char \*string1; char \*string2;

**strcoll()** lexicographically compares the string pointed to by *string1* with one pointed to by *string2*. Comparison ends when a null character is read.

**strcoll()** compares the two strings character by character until it finds a pair of characters that are not identical. It returns a number less than zero if the character in *string1* is less (i.e., occurs earlier in the character table) than its counterpart in *string2*. It returns a number greater than zero if the character in *string1* is greater (i.e., occurs later in the character table) than its counterpart in *string2*. If no characters are found to differ, then the strings are identical and **strcoll()** returns zero.

**See Also**

string functions, string.h

**Notes**

The string-comparison routines **strcoll()**, **strcmp()**, and **strncmp()** differ from the memory-comparison routine **memcmp()** in that they compare strings rather than regions of memory. They stop when they encounter a null character, but **memcmp()** does not.

The ANSI Standard's description of **strcoll()** emphasizes that it uses locale-specific information, as set by the ANSI function **setlocale()**, to perform string comparisons. The COHERENT system has not yet implement ANSI locales; therefore, **strcoll()** does not differ significantly from **strcmp()**. It is included to support programs written in ANSI C.

**strcpy() — String Function**

Copy one string into another

#include &lt;string.h&gt;

char \*strcpy(string1, string2)

char \*string1, \*string2;

**strcpy()** copies the contents of *string2*, up to the null character, into *string1* and returns *string1*.

**Example**

See **string**.

**See Also**

**memcpy()**, **string functions**, **string.h**, **strncpy()**

**Notes**

*string1* must point to enough space to hold *string2*, or another portion of the program or operating system may be overwritten.

**strcspn() — String Function**

Return length a string excludes characters in another

**#include <string.h>**

**unsigned int strcspn(string1, string2)**

**char \*string1, \*string2;**

**strcspn()** compares *string1* with *string2*. It then returns the length, in characters, for which *string1* consists of characters *not* found in *string2*.

**See Also**

**string functions**, **string.h**

**stream — Definition**

The term **stream** is a metaphor for any entity that can be named and from which bits can flow, such as a device or a file. The name "stream" reflects the fact that the C programming environment does not depend upon record descriptors and other devices that predetermine what form data can assume; instead, data from whatever source are conceived as being a flow of bytes whose significance is set entirely by the program that reads them.

For example, whether 16 bits forms an **int**, two **chars**, and should be used as an absolute value or a bit map, is entirely up to the program that receives it. It is also irrelevant to the program that processes these 16 bits whether they come from the keyboard, from a file on disk, or from a peripheral device.

The **FILE** structure holds all of the information needed to manipulate a stream. The **STDIO** functions can be used to open, close, or reopen a stream; read data from it; or write data to it.

**See Also**

**bit**, **byte**, **data formats**, **definitions**, **file**, **FILE**, **STDIO**

**stream.h — Header File**

Definitions for message facility

**#include <stream.h>**

**stream.h** definitions constants and structures used by the routines that implement the COHERENT message facility.

**See Also**

**header files**

**strerror() — String Function**

Translate an error number into a string

**#include <string.h>**

**char \*strerror(error)**

**int error;**

**strerror()** helps to generate an error message. It takes the argument *error*, which presumably is an error code generated by an error condition in a program, and may return a pointer to the corresponding error message.

The error numbers recognized and the texts of the corresponding error messages are set by COHERENT.

### **See Also**

**perror()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

### **Notes**

**strerror()** returns a pointer to a static array that may be overwritten by a subsequent call to **strerror()**.

**strerror()** differs from the related function **perror()** in the following ways: **strerror()** receives the error number through its argument *error*, whereas **perror()** reads the global constant **errno**. Also, **strerror()** returns a pointer to the error message, whereas **perror()** writes the message directly into the standard error stream.

The error numbers recognized and the texts of the messages associated with each error number are set by COHERENT. However, **strerror()** and **perror()** return the same error message when handed the same error number.

## **string.h — Header File**

Declarations for string library

**#include <string.h>**

**string.h** is the header that holds the declarations and definitions of all ANSI routines that handle strings and buffers.

### **See Also**

**header files**

## **string functions — Overview**

The character string is a common formation in C programs. The runtime representation of a string is an array of ASCII characters that is terminated by a null character ('\0'). COHERENT uses this representation when a program contains a string constant; for example:

```
"I am a string constant"
```

The address of the first character in the string is used as the starting point of the string. A pointer to a string holds only this address. Note, too, that an array of 20 characters can hold a string of 19 (*not* 20) non-null characters; the 20th character is the null character that terminates the string.

The following routines are available to help manipulate strings:

<b>index()</b>	Search string for a character; use <b>strchr</b> instead
<b>memchr()</b>	Search a region of memory for a character
<b>memcmp()</b>	Compare two regions of memory
<b>memcpy()</b>	Copy one region of memory into another
<b>memmove()</b>	Copy one region of memory into another with which it overlaps
<b>memset()</b>	Fill a region of memory with a character
<b>strcmp()</b>	Compare two strings
<b>strncmp()</b>	Compare two lengths for a set number of bytes
<b>strcpy()</b>	Copy a string
<b>strncpy()</b>	Copy a portion of a string
<b>strcoll()</b>	Compare two strings, using locale information

**strcspn()** . . . . . Return length one string excludes characters in another  
**strerror()** . . . . . Translate an error number into a string  
**strlen()** . . . . . Measure the length of a string  
**strpbrk()** . . . . . Find first occurrence in string of character from another string  
**strchr()** . . . . . Find leftmost occurrence of character in a string  
**strrchr()** . . . . . Find rightmost occurrence of character in a string  
**strspn()** . . . . . Return length one string includes character in another  
**strstr()** . . . . . Find one string within another string  
**strtok()** . . . . . Break a string into tokens  
**strxfrm()** . . . . . Transform a string, using locale information

See their respective entries in the Lexicon for details.

### **Example**

This example reads from **stdin** up to **NNAMES** names, each of which is no more than **MAXLEN** characters long. It then removes duplicate names, sorts the names, and writes the sorted list to the standard output. It demonstrates the functions **shellsort**, **strcat**, **strcmp**, **strcpy**, and **strlen**.

```
#include <stdio.h>

#define NNAMES 512
#define MAXLEN 60

char *array[NNAMES];
char first[MAXLEN], mid[MAXLEN], last[MAXLEN];
char *space = " ";

int compare();
extern char *strcat();

main()
{
    register int index, count, inflag;
    register char *name;

    count = 0;
    while (scanf("%s %s %s\n", first, mid, last) == 3) {
        strcat(first, space);
        strcat(mid, space);
        name = strcat(first, (strcat(mid, last)));
        inflag = 0;

        for (index=0; index < count; index++)
            if (strcmp(array[index], name) == 0)
                inflag = 1;
    }
```

```
    if (inflag == 0) {
        if ((array[count] =
            malloc(strlen(name) + 1)) == NULL) {
            fprintf(stderr, "Insufficient memory\n");
            exit(1);
        }
        strcpy(array[count], name);
        count++;
    }
}

shellsort(array, count, sizeof(char *), compare);
for (index=0; index < count; index++)
    printf("%s\n", array[index]);
exit(0);
}

compare(s1, s2)
register char **s1, **s2;
{
    extern int strcmp();
    return(strcmp(*s1, *s2));
}
```

### **See Also**

**ASCII, libraries**

### **Notes**

The ANSI standard allows adjacent string literals, e.g.:

```
"hello" "world"
```

Adjacent string literals are automatically concatenated. Thus, the compiler will automatically concatenate the above example into:

```
"helloworld"
```

Because this departs from the Kernighan and Ritchie description of C, it will generate a warning message if you use the compiler's **-VSBOOK** option.

### **strings — Command**

Print all character strings from a file

**strings** [-dopx] [-length] [file ...]

**strings** looks for ASCII strings in a binary file. A "string" is defined as any sequence of four or more printable characters. **strings** is useful for identifying unknown object files, or for looking at the messages printed by commands. You can also use it as a filter if *file* is not specified.

**strings** recognizes the following command-line options:

- d    Precede each string by its offset in the file in decimal.
- o    Precede each string by its offset in the file in octal.



- p** Strip the parity bits of all characters in the string prior to comparison.
- x** Precede each string by its offset in the file in hexadecimal.

Finally, the option *-length* forces **strings** to use *length* as the minimum length for a printable string.

### See Also

**commands, isprint, od**

### strip — Command

Strip debug, relocation, and symbol tables from executable file

**strip -drs file [...]**

**strip** removes the symbol table, relocation information, and debug tables from a file. It makes the executable file noticeably smaller.

**strip** recognizes the following options:

- d** Keep debug information.
- r** Keep relocation information.
- s** Keep symbols.

### See Also

**cc, commands, ld, nm, size**

### strlen() — String Function

Measure the length of a string

**#include <string.h>**

**int strlen(string)**

**char \*string;**

**strlen()** measures *string*, and returns its length in bytes, *not* including the null terminator. This is useful in determining how much storage to allocate for a string.

### Example

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **string**.

### See Also

**string functions, string.h**

### strncat() — String Function

Append one string onto another

**#include <string.h>**

**char \*strncat(string1, string2, n)**

**char \*string1, \*string2; unsigned n;**

**strncat()** copies up to *n* characters from *string2* onto the end of *string1*. It stops when *n* characters have been copied or it encounters a null character in *string2*, whichever occurs first, and returns the modified *string1*.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **strncpy**.

### See Also

**strcat(), string functions, string.h**

**Notes**

*string1* should point to enough space to hold itself and *n* characters of *string2*. If it does not, a portion of the program or operating system may be overwritten.

**strncmp() — String Function**

Compare two strings

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
int strncmp(string1, string2, n)
```

```
char *string1, *string2; unsigned n;
```

**strncmp()** compares lexicographically the first *n* bytes of *string1* with *string2*. Comparison ends when *n* bytes have been compared, or a null character encountered, whichever occurs first. **strncmp()** returns zero if the strings are identical, returns a number less than zero if *string1* occurs earlier alphabetically than *string2*, and returns a number greater than zero if it occurs later. This routine is compatible with the ordering routine needed by **qsort()**.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **strncpy()**.

**See Also**

**strcmp()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

**strncpy() — String Function**

Copy one string into another

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strncpy(string1, string2, n)
```

```
char *string1, *string2; unsigned n;
```

**strncpy()** copies up to *n* bytes of *string2* into *string1*, and returns *string1*. Copying ends when *n* bytes have been copied or a null character has been encountered, whichever comes first. If *string2* is less than *n* characters in length, *string2* is padded to length *n* with one or more null bytes.

**Example**

This example, called **swap.c**, reads a file of names, and changes them from the format

```
first_name [middle_initial] last_name
```

to the format

```
last_name, first_name [middle_initial]
```

It demonstrates **strncpy**, **strncat**, **strncmp**, and **index**.

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
#define NNAMES 512
```

```
#define MAXLEN 60
```

```
char *array[NNAMES];
```

```
char gname[MAXLEN], lname[MAXLEN];
```

```
extern int strncmp(), strcmp();
```

```
extern char *strncpy(), *strncpy(), *strncat(), *index();
```

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    FILE *fp;
    register int count, num;
    register char *name, string[60], *cptr, *eptr;
    unsigned glength, length;

    if (--argc != 1) {
        fprintf (stderr, "Usage: swap filename\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    if ((fp = fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
        printf("Cannot open %s\n", argv[1]);
    count = 0;

    while (fgets(string, 60, fp) != NULL) {
        if ((cptr = index(string, '.')) != NULL) {
            cptr++;
            cptr++;
        } else if ((cptr = index(string, ' ')) != NULL)
            cptr++;

        strcpy(lname, cptr);
        eptr = index(lname, '\n');
        *eptr = ',';

        strcat(lname, " ");
        glength = (unsigned)(strlen(string) - strlen(cptr));
        strncpy(gname, string, glength);

        name = strncat(lname, gname, glength);
        length = (unsigned)strlen(name);
        array[count] = malloc(length + 1);

        strcpy(array[count], name);
        count++;
    }

    for (num = 0; num < count; num++)
        printf("%s\n", array[num]);
    exit(0);
}
```

### **See Also**

**strcpy(), string functions, string.h**

### **Notes**

*string1* must point to enough space to *n* bytes; otherwise, a portion of the program or operating system may be overwritten.

**strpbrk()** — String Function

Find first occurrence of a character from another string

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strpbrk(string1, string2)
```

```
char *string1, *string2;
```

**strpbrk()** returns a pointer to the first character in *string1* that matches any character in *string2*. It returns NULL if no character in *string1* matches a character in *string2*.

The set of characters that *string2* points to is sometimes called the “break string”. For example,

```
char *string = "To be, or not to be: that is the question.";
char *brkset = ",;";
strpbrk(string, brkset);
```

returns the value of the pointer **string** plus five. This points to the comma, which is the first character in the area pointed to by **string** that matches any character in the string pointed to by **brkset**.

**See Also**

**string functions**, **string.h**

**Notes**

**strpbrk()** resembles the function **strtok()** in functionality, but unlike **strtok()**, it preserves the contents of the strings being compared. It also resembles the function **strchr()**, but lets you search for any one of a group of characters, rather than for one character alone.

**strrchr()** — String Function

Search for rightmost occurrence of a character in a string

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
char *strrchr(string, character)
```

```
char *string; int character;
```

**strrchr()** looks for the last, or rightmost, occurrence of *character* within *string*. *character* is declared to be an **int**, but is handled within the function as a **char**. Another way to describe this function is to say that it performs a reverse search for a character in a string. It is equivalent to the COHERENT function **rindex()**.

**strrchr()** returns a pointer to the rightmost occurrence of *character*, or NULL if *character* could not be found within *string*.

**See Also**

**rindex()**, **string functions**, **string.h**

**strspn()** — String Function

Return length a string includes characters in another

```
#include <string.h>
```

```
unsigned int strspn(string1, string2)
```

```
char *string1; char *string2;
```

**strspn()** returns the length for which *string1* initially consists only of characters that are found in *string2*. For example,

```
char *s1 = "hello, world";
char *s2 = "kernighan & ritchie";
strcspn(s1, s2);
```

returns two, which is the length for which the first string initially consists of characters found in the second.

### See Also

**string functions, string.h**

### **strstr()** — String Function

Find one string within another

**#include <string.h>**

**char \*strstr(string1, string2)**

**char \*string1, \*string2;**

**strstr()** looks for *string2* within *string1*. The terminating null character is not considered part of *string2*.

**strstr()** returns a pointer to where *string2* begins within *string1*, or NULL if *string2* does not occur within *string1*.

For example,

```
char *string1 = "Hello, world";
char *string2 = "world";
strstr(string1, string2);
```

returns **string1** plus seven, which points to the beginning of **world** within **Hello, world**. On the other hand,

```
char *string1 = "Hello, world";
char *string2 = "worlds";
strstr(string1, string2);
```

returns NULL because **worlds** does not occur within **Hello, world**.

### See Also

**string functions, string.h**

### **strtod()** — General Function

Convert string to floating-point number

**#include <stdlib.h>**

**double strtod(string, tailptr)**

**char \*string; char \*\*tailptr;**

**strtod()** converts the number given in *string* to a double-precision floating-point number and returns its value. It is a more general version of the function **atof()**. **strtod()** also stores a pointer to the first character following the number through *tailptr*, provided *tailptr* is not NULL.

**strtod()** parses the input *string* into three portions: beginning, subject sequence, and tail.

The *beginning* consists of zero or more white-space characters that begin the string.

The *subject sequence* is the portion of the input *string* that **strtod()** converts into a floating-point number. It consists of an optional sign character, a nonempty sequence of decimal digits optionally including a decimal-point character, and an optional exponent. If present, the exponent consists of either 'e' or 'E' followed by an optional sign and a nonempty sequence of decimal digits. **strtod()**

reads characters until it encounters either a second decimal-point character or exponent marker, or any other non-numeral.

The *tail* continues from the end of the subject sequence to the null character that ends the string.

**strtod()** ignores the beginning portion of the string. It converts the subject sequence to a double-precision number. Finally, it sets the pointer pointed to by *tailptr* to the address of the first character of the string's tail.

**strtod()** returns the **double** generated from the subject sequence. If no subject sequence could be recognized, it returns zero and stores the initial value of *string* through *tailptr*. If the number represented by the subject sequence is too large or too small to fit into a **double**, then **strtod()** sets the global constant **errno** to **ERANGE** and returns **HUGE\_VAL** or zero, respectively.

### Example

The following gives an example for **strtod()**.

```
extern double strtod();

main()
{
    static char st[] = " 123.4 567.8";
    char *head, *tail;

    for (head = st;; head = tail) {
        double amt = strtod(head, &tail);

        /* No token found is end of string */
        if (head == tail)
            break;
        printf("%f0, amt);
    }
}
```

### See Also

**atof()**, **double**, **errno**, **general functions**, **limits.h**, **stdlib.h**, **strtol()**, **strtoul()**

### Notes

**strtod()** ignores initial white space in the string pointed to by *string*; white space is defined as being all characters so recognized by the function **isspace()**.

### **strtok()** — String Function

Break a string into tokens

**#include <string.h>**

**char \*strtok(string1, string2)**

**char \*string1, \*string2;**

**strtok()** helps to divide a string into a set of tokens. *string1* points to the string to be divided, and *string2* points to the character or characters that delimit the tokens.

**strtok()** divides a string into tokens by being called repeatedly.

On the first call to **strtok()**, *string1* should point to the string being divided. **strtok()** searches for a character that is *not* included within *string2*. If it finds one, then **strtok()** regards it as the beginning of the first token within the string. If one cannot be found, then **strtok()** returns NULL to signal that the string could not be divided into tokens. When the beginning of the first token is found, **strtok()** then looks for a character that is included within *string2*. When one is found, **strtok()** replaces it with a null character to mark the end of the first token, stores a pointer to the remainder

of *string1* within a static buffer, and returns the address of the beginning of the first token.

On subsequent calls to **strtok()**, set *string1* to NULL. **strtok()** then looks for subsequent tokens, using the address that it saved from the first call. With each call to **strtok()**, *string2* may point to a different delimiter or set of delimiters.

### Example

The following example breaks **command\_string** into individual tokens and puts pointers to the tokens into the array **tokenlist[]**. It then returns the number of tokens created. No more than **maxtoken** tokens will be created. **command\_string** is modified to place '\0' over token separators. The token list points into **command\_string**. Tokens are separated by spaces, tabs, commas, semicolons, and newlines.

```
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stddef.h>
#include <stdio.h>

tokenize(command_string, tokenlist[], maxtoken)
char *command_string, *tokenlist[]; size_t maxtoken;
{
    static char tokensep[]="\t\n ,;";
    int tokencount;
    char *thistoken;

    if(command_string == NULL || !maxtoken)
        return 0;

    thistoken = strtok(command_string, tokensep);

    for(tokencount = 0; tokencount < maxtoken &&
        thistoken != NULL;) {
        tokenlist[tokencount++] = thistoken;
        thistoken = strtok(NULL, tokensep);
    }

    tokenlist[tokencount] = NULL;
    return tokencount;
}

#define MAXTOKEN 100
char *tokens[MAXTOKEN];
char buf[80];

main()
{
    for(;;) {
        int i, j;

        printf("Enter string ");
        fflush(stdout);
        if(gets(buf) == NULL)
            exit(0);
```

```
        i = tokenize(buf, tokens, MAXTOKEN);
        for (j = 0; j < i; j++)
            printf("%s\n", tokens[j]);
    }
}
```

**See Also****string functions, string.h****strtol() — General Function**

Convert string to long integer

**#include <stdlib.h>****long strtol(string, tailptr, base)****char \*string; char \*\*tailptr; int base;**

**strtol()** converts the number given in *string* to a **long** and returns its value; it is a more general version of the function **atol()**. **strtol()** also stores a pointer to the first character following the number through *tailptr*, provided *tailptr* is not **NULL**.

*base* gives the base of the number being read, either 0 or a value from 2 to 36. If the given *base* is zero, **strtol()** determines an implicit base for the number: hexadecimal if the number starts with **0x** or **0X**, octal if the number starts with 0, or decimal otherwise. Alternatively, you can specify a *base* between 2 and 36.

**strtol()** parses *string* into three portions: beginning, subject sequence, and tail.

The *beginning* consists of zero or more white-space characters that begin the string.

The *subject sequence* is the portion of the string that **strtol()** converts into a **long**. It consists of an optional sign character, an optional prefix **0x** or **0X** if the *base* is 16, and a nonempty sequence of *digits* in the specified base. For example, if the *base* is 16, then **strtol()** recognizes numeric characters '0' to '9' and alphabetic characters 'A' through 'F' and 'a' to 'f' as digits. It continues to scan until it encounters a nondigit.

The *tail* continues from the end of the subject sequence to the null character that ends the string.

**strtol()** ignores the beginning portion of the string. It converts the subject sequence to a **long**. Finally, if *tailptr* is not **NULL**, it sets the pointer pointed to by *tailptr* to the address of the first character of the string's tail.

**strtol()** returns a **long** representing the value of the subject sequence. If the input *string* does not specify a valid number, it returns zero and stores the initial value of *string* through *tailptr*. If the number it builds is too large or too small to fit into a **long**, it sets the global variable **errno** to the value of the macro **ERANGE** and returns **LONG\_MAX** or **LONG\_MIN**, respectively.

**See Also****atol(), errno, general functions, limits.h, long, stdlib.h, strtoul()****Notes**

**strtol()** ignores initial white space in the input *string*. White space is defined as being all characters so recognized by the function **isspace()**.



**strtol() — General Function**

Convert string to unsigned long integer

#include <stdlib.h>

unsigned long strtol(string, tailptr, base)

char \*string; char \*\*tailptr; int base;

**strtol()** converts the number given in *string* to a **unsigned long** and returns its value. It is the **unsigned long** counterpart of **strtol()** and a more general version of the function **atoi()**. **strtol()** also stores a pointer to the first character following the number through *tailptr*, provided *tailptr* is not **NULL**.

*base* gives the base of the number being read, either 0 or a value from 2 to 36. If the given *base* is zero, **strtol()** determines an implicit base for the number: hexadecimal if the number starts with **0x** or **0X**, octal if the number starts with **0**, or decimal otherwise. Alternatively, the user can specify an explicit *base* between 2 and 36.

**strtol()** parses the *string* into three portions: beginning, subject sequence, and tail.

The *beginning* consists of zero or more white-space characters that begin the string.

The *subject sequence* is the portion of the string that **strtol()** converts into an **unsigned long**. It consists of an optional sign character, an optional prefix **0x** or **0X** if the *base* is 16, and a nonempty sequence of *digits* in the specified base. For example, if the *base* is 16, then **strtol()** recognizes numeric characters '0' to '9' and alphabetic characters 'A' through 'F' and 'a' to 'f' as digits. It continues to scan until it encounters a nondigit.

The *tail* continues from the end of the subject sequence to the null character that ends the string.

**strtol()** ignores the beginning portion of the string. It converts the subject sequence to an **unsigned long**. Finally, if *tailptr* is not **NULL**, it sets the pointer pointed to by *tailptr* to the address of the first character of the string's tail.

**strtol()** returns an **unsigned long** representing the value of the subject sequence. If the input *string* does not specify a valid number, it returns zero and stores the initial value of *string* through *tailptr*. If the number it builds is too large to fit into an **unsigned long**, it sets the global variable **errno** to the value of the macro **ERANGE** and returns **ULONG\_MAX**.

**Example**

This example uses **strtol()** as a hash function for table lookup. It demonstrates both hashing and linked lists. Hash-table lookup is the most efficient when used to look up entries in large tables; this is an example only.

```
#include <stddef.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
```

```
/*
 * For fastest results, use a prime about 15% bigger
 * than the table. If short of space, use a smaller prime.
 */
#define HASHP 11
struct symbol {
    struct symbol *next;
    char *name;
    char *descr;
} *hasht[HASHP], codes[] = {

    NULL,      "a286",      "frogs togs",
    NULL,      "xy7800",    "doughnut holes",
    NULL,      "z678abc",   "used bits",
    NULL,      "xj781",     "black-hole varnish",
    NULL,      "h778a",     "table hash",
    NULL,      "q167",      "log(-5.2)",
    NULL,      "18888",     "quid pro quo",
    NULL,      NULL,        NULL /* end marker */
};

void
buildTable(void)
{
    long h;
    register struct symbol *sym, **symp;

    for(symp = hasht; symp != (hasht + HASHP); symp++)
        *symp = NULL;

    for(sym = codes; sym->descr != NULL; sym++) {
        /*
         * hash by converting to base 36. There are
         * many ways to hash, but use all the data.
         */

        h = strtol(sym->name, NULL, 36) % HASHP;
        sym->next = hasht[h];
        hasht[h] = sym;
    }
}

struct symbol *
lookup(char *s)
{
    long h;
    register struct symbol *sym;
```

```

    h = strtoul(s, NULL, 36) % HASHP;
    for(sym = hasht[h]; sym != NULL; sym = sym->next)
        if(!strcmp(sym->name, s))
            return(sym);
    return(NULL);
}

main(void)
{
    char buf[80];
    struct symbol *sym;

    buildTable();
    for(;;) {
        printf("Enter name ");
        fflush(stdout);

        if(gets(buf) == NULL)
            exit(EXIT_SUCCESS);

        if((sym = lookup(buf)) == NULL)
            printf("%s not found\n", buf);

        else
            printf("%s is %s\n", buf, sym->descr);
    }
}

```

**See Also**

**errno**, **general functions**, **limits.h**, **stdlib.h**, **strtoul()**

**Notes**

**strtoul()** ignores initial white space in the input *string*. White space is defined as being all characters so recognized by the function **isspace()**.

**struct — C Keyword**

Data type

**struct** is a C keyword that introduces a structure. The following is an example of how **struct** can be used in the description of a name and address file:

```

struct address {
    char firstname[10];
    char lastname[15];
    char street[25];
    char city[10];
    char state[2];
    char zip[5];
    int salescode;
};

```

The *C Programming Language* prohibits the assignment of structures, the passing of structures to functions, and the returning of structures by functions. COHERENT, however, lifts these restrictions. It allows one structure to be assigned to another, provided the two structures are of

the same type. It also allows structures to be passed by and returned by functions. These features are supported by most compilers, but users should be aware that their use can cause problems in porting code to some compilers.

### See Also

array, C keywords, field, initialization, structure

### structure — Definition

A *structure* is a set of variables that has been given a name and can be manipulated as a single entity. The variables may be of different data types. Structures are a convenient way to deal with data elements that belong together, such as names and addresses, employee descriptions, or sales and inventory information.

### See Also

definitions, struct

### structure assignment — Technical Information

The *C Programming Language* forbids structure assignment, the passing of structures to functions, and returning structures from functions (as opposed to the passing or returning of *pointers* to structures). The COHERENT C compiler lifts these restrictions.

Some C compilers transform structure arguments and structure returns into structure pointers. Note that the use of structure assignment, structure arguments, or structure returns may create problems when porting the code to another C compiler.

### See Also

portability, struct, structure, technical information

### Notes

Because this feature deviates from the description of the C language found in the first edition of *The C Programming Language*, compiling with the **-VSBOOK** option will flag all points where it occurs in your program.

### strxfrm() — String Function

Transform a string

**#include <string.h>**

**unsigned int strxfrm(string1, string2, n)**

**char \*string1, \*string2; unsigned int n;**

**strxfrm()** transforms *string2* using information concerning the program's locale, as set by the function **setlocale()**.

**strxfrm()** writes up to *n* bytes of the transformed result into the area pointed to by *string1*. It returns the length of the transformed string, not including the terminating null character. The transformation incorporates locale-specific material into *string2*.

If *n* is set to zero, **strxfrm()** returns the length of the transformed string.

If two strings return a given result when compared by **strcoll()** before transformation, they will return the same result when compared by **strcmp()** after transformation.

### See Also

string functions, string.h

### Notes

If **strxfrm()** returns a value equal to or greater than *n*, the contents of the area pointed to by *string1* are indeterminate.

COHERENT has not yet implemented the ANSI locale functions. Therefore, **strxfrm()** behaves the same as **strcpy**.

## **stty()** — System Call

Set terminal modes

**#include <sgtty.h>**

**int stty(fd, sgp)**

**int fd;**

**struct sgttyb \*sgp;**

The COHERENT system call **stty()** sets a terminal's attributes. See the Lexicon article for **stty()** for information on terminal attributes and their legal values.

### **Example**

This example demonstrates both **stty()** and **gtty()**. It sets terminal input to read one character at a time (that is, it reads the terminal in "raw" form). When you type 'q', it restores the terminal to its previous settings, and exits. For an additional example, see the **pipe** Lexicon article.

```
#include <sgtty.h>
```

```
main()
```

```
{
```

```
    struct sgttyb os, ns;
```

```
    char buff;
```

```
    printf("Waiting for q\n");
```

```
    gtty(1, &os);          /* save old state */
```

```
    ns = os;               /* get base of new state */
```

```
    ns.sg_flags |= RAW;    /* prevent <ctl-c> from working */
```

```
    ns.sg_flags &= ~(ECHO|CRMOD); /* no echo for now... */
```

```
    stty(1, &ns);          /* set mode */
```

```
    do {
```

```
        buff = getchar();  /* wait for the keyboard */
```

```
    } while(buff != 'q');
```

```
    stty(1, &os);          /* reset mode */
```

```
}
```

### **Files**

**<sgtty.h>** — Header file

### **See Also**

**exec, gtty(), ioctl(), open(), read(), sgtty.h, stty, system calls, write()**

### **Notes**

Please note that if you use **stty()** to change the baud rate on a port, you must first invoke **sleep()**. If you do not, the port reverts back to its default settings.

**stty** — Command

Set/print terminal modes

**stty** [*option* ...]

If no *option* is specified, **stty** prints the modes of the standard output device in the standard error stream. Otherwise, each *option* modifies the modes of the standard output device. The device is usually a terminal, although tapes, disks and other special files may be applicable.

In normal processing ("cooked" mode), the *erase* and *kill* characters (normally **<ctrl-H>** and **<ctrl-U>**) erase, respectively, one typed character and a typed line. The *stop-output* and *start-output* characters (normally **<ctrl-S>** and **<ctrl-Q>**) stop and restart output. The *interrupt* character (normally **DELETE** or **RUBOUT** ASCII 0177), sends the signal **SIGINT**, which usually terminates program execution. The *quit* character (normally ASCII 034, **FS**, which differs on various terminals but is often **<ctrl-\>**) sends the signal **SIGQUIT**, which usually terminates program execution with a core dump. The *end of file* character (normally **<ctrl-D>**) generates an end of file from the terminal. Each special character can be changed with the appropriate *option*.

On some machines, the default characters differ from those given above. On the IBM Personal Computer, for example, the default kill character is **<ctrl-U>** and the default interrupt character is **<ctrl-C>**.

The following table describes each available *option*. The *c* argument may be a literal character or may be of the form '^X' for **<ctrl-X>**.

<i>number</i>	Set input and output baud rates of the device to the speed <i>number</i> , if possible.
<b>0</b>	Hang up phone immediately.
<b>-a</b>	Display all modes.
<b>break c</b>	Set the break character to <i>c</i> .
<b>cbreak</b>	Break after every input character. This allows a program to return after having read <i>N</i> characters from a terminal, even if no end of file, break or newline character was typed.
<b>-cbreak</b>	Exit from cbreak mode.
<b>cooked</b>	Exit from raw mode.
<b>crt</b>	Terminal is a CRT. Echoing is enhanced.
<b>-crt</b>	The terminal is not a CRT.
<b>echo</b>	Echo characters as they are received on the input.
<b>-echo</b>	Disable echoing.
<b>ek</b>	Set the erase character to '#' and the kill character to '@'.
<b>eof c</b>	Set the end of file character to <i>c</i> .
<b>erase c</b>	Set the erase character to <i>c</i> .
<b>even</b>	Accept even-parity characters.
<b>-even</b>	Do not accept even-parity characters.
<b>excl</b>	Exclusive use: subsequent opens will fail.
<b>-excl</b>	Non-exclusive use.

<b>flush</b>	Flush characters waiting in output or input queues.
<b>-flush</b>	Do not flush characters.
<b>hup</b>	Hang up the phone on last close.
<b>-hup</b>	Do not hang up on last close.
<b>int c</b>	Set the interrupt character to <i>c</i> .
<b>kill c</b>	Set the kill character to <i>c</i> .
<b>nl</b>	Disable newline mapping.
<b>-nl</b>	Enable newline mapping: map carriage returns to linefeeds on input, and append carriage returns before linefeeds on output.
<b>odd</b>	Accept odd-parity characters.
<b>-odd</b>	Do not accept odd-parity characters.
<b>print</b>	Print terminal attributes.
<b>quit c</b>	Set the quit character to <i>c</i> .
<b>raw</b>	Raw mode: suppress all processing and mapping (except echo).
<b>-raw</b>	Exit from raw mode.
<b>rawin</b>	Suppress all processing and mapping on the input stream.
<b>-rawin</b>	Exit from rawin mode.
<b>rawout</b>	Suppress all processing and mapping on the output stream.
<b>-rawout</b>	Exit from rawout mode.
<b>sane</b>	Set the terminal to a known state.
<b>start c</b>	Set the start-output character to <i>c</i> .
<b>stop c</b>	Set the stop-output character to <i>c</i> .
<b>tabs</b>	Do not expand tabs: useful for terminals which process tabs internally.
<b>-tabs</b>	Expand tabs to the appropriate number of spaces on output. The system assumes tabstops are at every eighth column.
<b>tandem</b>	Tandem mode. The system will send the programmed stop-output character whenever there is a danger of losing characters from the input stream due to buffering limitations. The system will send the start-character when the level of unprocessed characters has subsided.
<b>-tandem</b>	Disable tandem mode.

### **See Also**

**ASCII, commands, getty, init, ioctl(), signal()**

### **Notes**

The system does not support character delays or mapping upper to lower case.

**su — Command**

Substitute user id, become superuser

**su** [*user* [*command*] ]

Default user is **root**; default *command* is **sh**. **su** changes the real user id and the effective user id to that of the *user*. If *user* has a login password, **su** requests it. Then it executes the specified *command*.

If *command* is absent, **su** invokes an interactive sub-shell.

If *user* is absent, **su** assumes user name **root** (the superuser).

**Files**

**/etc/passwd** — Login names and passwords

**See Also**

**commands, login, newgrp, sh, superuser**

**suload() — System Call**

Unload device driver

**#include** <con.h>

**int** suload(*major*)

**int** *major*;

The COHERENT system accesses all devices through drivers residing in the system. Except for the root device, drivers must be explicitly loaded before use; this operation does not involve re-booting.

**suload()** unloads the driver identified by *major*, which was previously loaded by a call to **sload()**. This call is restricted to the superuser.

**Files**

<con.h>

**/drv/\***

**See Also**

**init, l.out.h, ld, load, sload, system call**

**Diagnostics**

**suload()** returns zero upon successful unloading of the appropriate driver, or -1 on errors. It fails if the driver *major* is not loaded.

**Notes**

Because COHERENT 386 version 4.0 does not support loadable device drivers, **suload()** is not included with that release of COHERENT.

**sum — Command**

Print checksum of a file

**sum** [*file* ...]

**sum** prints an unsigned integer checksum and a size in blocks (rounding up) for each *file* specified. If more than one *file* is specified, **sum** also prints the file name. If no *file* is specified, **sum** reads the standard input.

**sum** may be used to verify the integrity of data transferred across phone lines or stored on an unreliable medium.



**See Also****cmp, commands****superuser — Definition**

The *superuser* is the user who has system-wide permissions. He can execute any program, read any file, and write into any directory. Thus, superuser status is reserved to the system administrator, also called **root**, who needs this status to control the operation of the system.

No person should be able to become the superuser without knowing a password. Because the superuser in effect “owns” the system, the superuser password should be guarded most carefully.

**See Also****definitions, root, su****swab() — General Function**

Swap a pair of bytes

**void swab(src, dest, nb) char \*src, \*dest; unsigned nb;**

The ordering of bytes within a word differs from machine to machine. This may cause problems when moving binary data between machines. **swab()** interchanges each pair of bytes in the array *src* that is *n* bytes long, and places the result into the array *dest*. The length *nb* should be an even number, or the last byte will not be touched. *src* and *dest* may be the same place.

**Example**

This example prompts for an integer; it then prints the integer both as you entered it, and as it appears with its bytes swapped.

```
#include <stdio.h>

main()
{
    int word;

    printf("Enter an integer: \n");
    scanf("%d", &word);
    printf("The word is 0x%x\n", word);
    swab(&word, &word, 2);
    printf("The word with bytes swapped is 0x%x\n", word);
}
```

**See Also****dd, canon.h, general functions****switch — C Keyword**

Test a variable against a table

**switch** is a C keyword that lets you perform a number of tests on a variable in a convenient manner. For example,

```
while(foo < 10)
    switch(foo) {
        case 1:
            dosomething();
            break;
        case 2:
            somethingelse();
        case 3:
            anotherthing();
            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
}
```

is equivalent to

```
while(foo < 10) {
    if(foo == 1) {
        dosomething();
        continue;
    } else if (foo == 2) {
        somethingelse();
        anotherthing();
        continue;
    } else if(foo == 3) {
        /* Note: compiler eliminates duplicate code */
        anotherthing();
        continue;
    } else
        break;
}
```

**switch** is always used with the **case** statement, and nearly always with the **default** statement.

### **See Also**

**break**, **C keywords**, **case**, **default**, **keyword**, **while**

## **sync — Command**

Flush system buffers

### **sync**

Most COHERENT commands manipulate files stored on a disk. To improve system performance, the COHERENT system often changes a copy of part of the disk in a buffer in memory, rather than repeatedly performing the time-consuming disk access required.

**sync** writes information from the memory buffers to the disk, updating the disk images of all mounted file systems which have been changed. In addition, it writes the date and time on the root file system.

**sync** should be executed before system shutdown to ensure the integrity of the file system.

## See Also

commands

## **sync()** — System Call

Flush system buffers

**sync()**

**sync()** is the COHERENT system call that copies the contents of all memory buffers to disk.

## See Also

system calls

## **system()** — General Function

Pass a command to the shell for execution

**int system(commandline) char \*commandline;**

**system()** passes *commandline* to the shell **sh**, which loads it into memory and executes it. **system()** executes commands exactly as if they had been typed directly into the shell. **system()** may be used by commands such as **ed**, which can pass commands to the COHERENT shell in addition to processing normal interactive requests.

## Example

This example uses **system** to list the names of all C source files in the parent directory.

```
#include <stdio.h>
main()
{
    system("cd .. ; ls *.c > mytemp; cat mytemp");
}
```

## See Also

exec, fork(), general functions, popen(), wait()

## Diagnostics

**system** returns the exit status of the child process, in the format described in **wait()**: exit status in the high byte, signal information in the low byte. Zero normally means success, whereas nonzero normally means failure. This, however, depends on the *command*. If the shell is not executable, **system** returns a special code of octal 0177.

## **system calls** — Overview

COHERENT system calls

The COHERENT system makes many services available to the C programmer. A programmer can use a COHERENT service through a system call. COHERENT's libraries include interfaces to the following system calls:

**access()**. . . . . Check if file can be accessed in given mode  
**acct()** . . . . . Enable/disable process accounting  
**alarm()** . . . . . Set an alarm  
**alarm2()** . . . . . Set an alarm  
**brk()**. . . . . Change size of data area  
**chdir()** . . . . . Change working directory  
**chmod()** . . . . . Change file protection modes  
**chown()**. . . . . Change ownership of a file  
**chroot()**. . . . . Change process's root directory  
**close()** . . . . . Close a file

<b>creat()</b>	Create/truncate a file
<b>dup()</b>	Duplicate a file descriptor
<b>execve()</b>	Execute a load module
<b>exit()</b>	Terminate a program gracefully
<b>fcntl()</b>	Manipulate an open file
<b>fork()</b>	Create a new process
<b>fstat()</b>	Find file attributes
<b>fstat()</b>	Get information about a file system (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>fstatfs()</b>	Get information about a file system (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>ftime()</b>	Get the current time (COHERENT 286 only)
<b>getdents()</b>	Read directory entries (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>getegid()</b>	Get effective group id
<b>geteuid()</b>	Get effective user id
<b>getgid()</b>	Get real group id
<b>getpgrp()</b>	Get process group number
<b>getpid()</b>	Get process id
<b>getuid()</b>	Get real user id
<b>gtty()</b>	Get terminal modes (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>ioctl()</b>	Device-dependent control
<b>kill()</b>	Send a signal to a process
<b>link()</b>	Create a link
<b>lseek()</b>	Set read/write position
<b>mkdir()</b>	Create a directory (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>mknod()</b>	Create a special file
<b>mount()</b>	Mount a file system
<b>msgctl()</b>	Control message operation
<b>msgget()</b>	Get a message queue
<b>msgrcv()</b>	Receive a message
<b>msgsnd()</b>	Send a message
<b>open()</b>	Open a file
<b>pause()</b>	Wait for signal
<b>pipe()</b>	Create a pipe
<b>poll()</b>	Query several I/O devices (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>ptrace()</b>	Trace process execution
<b>read()</b>	Read from a file
<b>rmdir()</b>	Remove a directory (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>setgid()</b>	Set group id and user id
<b>setpgrp()</b>	Set process group number
<b>setuid()</b>	Set user id
<b>signal()</b>	Specify disposition of a signal
<b>sload()</b>	Load device driver
<b>stat()</b>	Find file attributes
<b>statfs()</b>	Get information about a file system (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>stime()</b>	Set the time
<b>stty()</b>	Set terminal modes (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>suload()</b>	Unload device driver
<b>sync()</b>	Flush system buffers
<b>tick()</b>	Get time
<b>time()</b>	Get current system time
<b>times()</b>	Obtain process execution times
<b>umask()</b>	Set file creation mask
<b>umount()</b>	Unmount a file system
<b>uname()</b>	Get name and version of COHERENT (COHERENT 386 only)
<b>unique()</b>	Return a unique long integer

**unlink()** . . . . . Remove a file  
**ustat()** . . . . . Get statistics on a file system (COHERENT 386 only)  
**utime()** . . . . . Change file access and modification times  
**wait()** . . . . . Await completion of child process  
**write()** . . . . . Write to a file

### See Also

libraries

### Notes

Under COHERENT 386, the library **libmisc.a** contains a version of **ftime()**, for those who need it.

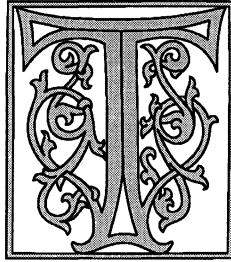
## system maintenance — Overview

The COHERENT system automatically invokes a number of utilities that help COHERENT to maintain itself. These utilities will, for example, run programs for you at pre-determined times, swap temporary files in and out of memory, update files, and perform other useful tasks. COHERENT includes the following system maintenance routines:

**aliases** . . . . . File of users' aliases  
**atrun** . . . . . Execute programs at a preset time  
**boottime** . . . . . Time of last system boot  
**brc** . . . . . Perform maintenance chores, single-user mode  
**checklist** . . . . . File systems to check when booting COHERENT  
**crond** . . . . . Execute commands periodically  
**domain** . . . . . Set system's mail domain  
**drvld.all** . . . . . Load drivers when booting COHERENT  
**getty** . . . . . Terminal initialization  
**hpd** . . . . . Spooler daemon for Hewlett-Packard LaserJet printer  
**init** . . . . . System initialization  
**logmsg** . . . . . File that holds login prompt  
**lpd** . . . . . Line printer spooler daemon  
**modemcap** . . . . . Modem-description language  
**modeminit** . . . . . Initialize a modem  
**motd** . . . . . File that holds message of the day  
**mount.all** . . . . . File systems to mount when booting COHERENT  
**paths** . . . . . Routing data base for mail  
**.profile** . . . . . Set user's personal environment at login  
**profile** . . . . . Set user's environment at login  
**ramdisk** . . . . . Script for creating a RAM-disk  
**rc** . . . . . Perform standard maintenance chores  
**termcap** . . . . . Terminal-description language  
**update** . . . . . Update file systems periodically  
**uucpname** . . . . . Set system's UUCP name

### See Also

Lexicon

**tail — Command**

Print the end of a file

**tail** [+*n*[**bcfl**]] [*file*]

**tail** [-*n*[**bcfl**]] [*file*]

**tail** copies the last part of *file*, or of the standard input if none is named, to the standard output.

The given *number* tells **tail** where to begin to copy the data. Numbers of the form +*number* measure the starting point from the beginning of the file; those of the form -*number* measure from the end of the file.

A specifier of blocks, characters, or lines (*b*, *c*, or *l*, respectively) may follow the number; the default is lines. If no *number* is specified, a default of -10 is assumed.

The **-f** option opens the tail of a file, and then displays new material as it is added to a file. This command lets you watch a file as it is being built, such as by **nroff**. Note that when **tail** is invoked with this option, it does not exit; therefore, when you wish to exit, type the interrupt character.

**See Also**

**commands**, **dd**, **egrep**, **head**, **sed**

**Notes**

Because **tail** buffers data measured from the end of the file, large counts may not work.

**tan()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate tangent

**#include** <math.h>

**double** **tan**(*radian*) **double** *radian*;

**tan()** calculates the tangent of its argument *radian*, which must be in radian measure.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **acos()**.

**See Also**

**mathematics library**, **tanh()**

**Diagnostics**

**tan()** returns a very large number where it is singular, and sets **errno** to **ERANGE**.

**tanh()** — Mathematics Function (libm)

Calculate hyperbolic cosine

```
#include <math.h>
```

```
double tanh(radian) double radian;
```

**tanh()** calculates the hyperbolic tangent of *radian*, which is in radian measure.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see the entry for **cosh()**.

**See Also**

**mathematics library**

**Diagnostics**

When an overflow occurs, **tanh()** sets **errno** to **ERANGE**.

**tape** — Device Driver

Magnetic tape devices

This section gives a general explanation of COHERENT's use of industry-standard half-inch, nine-track magnetic tape and cartridge streaming tape. Exceptions or additional information may be found in sections of this manual describing particular devices.

A tape volume contains files, each consisting of one or more records and terminated by a tape mark. Two tape marks terminate the last file. Tape records may vary in length, but cannot exceed  $2^{16}$  bytes ( $2^{15}$  is more practical).

Like other block-oriented devices, tape units may be accessed through the system's *cooked* interface or through the *raw* interface. On a cooked device, seeking to any byte offset and reading in any number of bytes is possible. It is not possible to read beyond the tape mark at the end of the current file. For block I/O requests, all records in the file must be 512 bytes long. Write requests must be made in increments of 512 bytes. A cooked tape may be mounted like a disk, but only as a read-only file system.

A raw device bypasses the buffer cache, so I/O occurs directly to or from the user's buffer. One write request generates one tape record, and one read request returns exactly one record. The number of bytes read may be less than expected. If the tape mark is read, a count of zero is returned, but the system positions the tape at the start of the next tape file. Seeking on a raw device is ignored, and mounting is not allowed. Raw (or character) requests are usually performed in large units, such as 20 kilobytes.

A unit cannot be opened if it is off-line or already in use. If the unit is write protected, the unit cannot be opened for writing. Closing the device has varying effects, depending on the minor device opened and whether the device was opened for reading or writing. In the case of reading, the tape is rewound; if the no-rewind device was specified, the tape advances to the next file. In the case of writing to a nine-track tape, two tape marks are written at the current position and the tape is rewound; if the no-rewind device was specified, two tape marks are written and the tape is positioned between them. When you close a device that had been opened for writing, the tape volume ends at the current position; data beyond this point are undefined.

The following device options exist, selected by prefixes to the device name:

- h** Read or write data at high density. The exact density depends on the drive model, but 1600 BPI (high) and 800 BPI (low) are typical.

- n** Do not rewind on close.
- r** The device is raw.

Hard errors may occur during tape operation. They include detection of the end-of-tape (EOT) reflector, reading an unexpectedly long record, or seeking a cooked tape into a tape mark. After an error, no further operations may be performed on the unit until the program closes the device and the operator rewinds the tape. Soft parity errors may arise due to dirt, bad tape or misaligned heads. On writes, the device may attempt to place the record further along the tape. On reads, the driver simply rescans the record. After several failures, the driver announces a hard error.

Most utilities use generic device names, which are links to the actual device files appropriate for the site.

### **Files**

**/dev/ct** — Generic cooked cartridge tape device  
**/dev/mt** — Generic cooked nine-track tape device  
**/dev/rct** — Generic raw cartridge tape device  
**/dev/rmt** — Generic raw nine-track tape device

### **See Also**

**device drivers**

### **Diagnostics**

Drivers may report errors to the console.

### **Notes**

Not every edition of COHERENT supports magnetic tape.

### **tar — Command**

V7 tape archive manager

**tar** [**crtux**[0-7**bfilmvwU**] [**blocks**] [**archive**] *file* ...

**tar** is a utility that lets you read, write, and update archives in a machine-independent format. Its name is an abbreviation for *tape archive*; however, **tar** can read/write output to files and floppy disks, as well as to magnetic tape.

Before proceeding further, users should note that **tar** is an obsolete utility. The command **ustar** should be used instead, especially if you wish to move archives from COHERENT to other operating systems.

The first argument of the command line must contain exactly one directive character, followed by zero or more option characters. *file* is the file to be written into or extracted from the archive. If *file* is a directory, **tar** processes its contents recursively. For directives that read an archive, the absence of a *file* argument tells **tar** to process every file in the archive. For directives that write to an archive, the absence of a *file* argument tells **tar** to process every file in the current directory.

The directives are as follows:

- c** Create a new archive. Overwrite the previous contents of the archive.
- r** Replace (append) the named files in the archive.
- t** Write a table of contents of the archive to the standard output.
- u** Update the archive by replacing the named files that are newer (*mtime* larger) than any version in the archive.



- x** Extract the named files from the archive. Overwrite identically names files. **tar** extracts each version of each file, leaving the latest version at the end.

The options are as follows:

- 0-7** A single octal digit specifies a tape drive on which the archive may be found. **tar** concatenates this digit to the default tape name **/dev/mt** to form the path name accessed. This option, of course, is available only to COHERENT systems that support a nine-track magnetic tape drive.
- b** The next argument is a number between one and 20, specifying how many **blocks** are to be written in each archive. **tar** determines the blocking factor automatically on input. When the blocking factor is not one, **tar** automatically writes its output to device **/dev/rmt**, i.e., the raw tape-drive device.
- f** The next argument names the *archive*. If the argument is a hyphen '-', it signifies the standard input for input directives and the standard output for output directives.
- l** **tar** preserves links within the structure it writes into its archive, but breaks any links across the boundary of the structure. This option requests that **tar** report all such broken links.
- m** Ignore the *mtime* for each extracted file. By default, **tar** restores the *mtime* for each extracted file.
- v** Verbose flag. If directive is **t**, the output for each file includes its mode, group id, user id, size, and mtime, in addition to its path name. Otherwise, **tar** writes the directive and the path name to the standard output for input directives or the standard error for output directives as each file is processed.
- w** For each file to be processed, **tar** writes the directive and path name to the terminal device, then reads a line from that device and acts on it as follows:
  - n** Skip the file.
  - y** Process the file.
  - x** Exit immediately.

An empty response is treated as **n**, and end of file is treated as **x**. If a directory is skipped, all its contents are skipped. If included, all its contents are processed with this option.

- U** The version of **tar** found on some UNIX systems have following bug: when the blocking factor is not one, the last few blocks of the last record written may be garbage. This bug is described elsewhere by other symptoms. This option says that the tape was created by the buggy program, so the trailing garbage should be ignored.

### Examples

To **tar** the contents of directory **piggy** into file **piggy.tar**, use the command:

```
tar cf piggy.tar piggy
```

To **tar** files to a floppy disk, it is sufficient to have a floppy disk formatted with the command **fdformat**. The floppy does not have to have a COHERENT file system on it. For example, to **tar** directory **stephen** to a high-density, 5.25-inch, formatted floppy disk in drive 0, use the following command:

```
tar cf /dev/fha0 stephen
```

Note that this permits you to **tar** only one archive per floppy disk. To read files from this archive, use the command:

```
tar xf /dev/fha0
```

### Files

**/dev/mt\*** — Default tape device

**/dev/rmt\*** — Default tape device for blocking factor greater than one

### See Also

**commands, cpio, dump, link(), restor, stat(), ustar**

### Notes

Path names must be less than 100 characters. The **m** option does not affect directories. The only way to extract the *N*th version of a file is with the **w** option.

### **tboot** — Technical Information

Describe the tertiary bootstrap

*Booting* is the process of loading COHERENT into memory and setting it into motion. This normally occurs after you have turned on your computer. The term comes from the old expression about pulling one's self up by one's bootstraps.

Booting can be quite involved, and uses a number of files, depending upon the version of COHERENT being booted and the medium from which you are booting it. The subject of this article, **tboot**, is the booting program that performs tertiary booting.

To grasp what is meant by "tertiary booting", consider how the boot sequence works:

1. The BIOS loads the first 512 bytes off of the first hard disk and runs it. This program is called the **master boot**. Mark Williams Company recommends that you use the COHERENT master boot, because it lets you boot off any partition on either of the first two drives.
2. The master boot loads the first 512 bytes off the active partition and runs that. This program is the "secondary boot" program.

The secondary boot is generally responsible for loading the operating system off the active partition and running it.

Recent releases of COHERENT need a more sophisticated program to load the operating system than can fit into 512 bytes. In these releases of COHERENT, the secondary boot loads a program off the root file system; this program is called the "tertiary boot", or **tboot**.

**tboot** evaluates the hardware of your computer to provide the operating system (COHERENT) with vital information. This evaluation allows COHERENT to run without modification on a wider range of hardware.

**tboot** is responsible for loading the operating system kernel. It first looks for a file called **autoboot**, which it then loads. If **autoboot** does not exist, **tboot** prompts you to type in the name of a kernel, e.g., **begin** (during installation) or **coherent**. If you do not remember the name of the kernel you wish to boot, you can type **dir** or **ls** for a list of files in your root file system.

Pressing the spacebar when the prompt is displayed prevents execution of **/autoboot** and causes **tboot** to pause. You can then type the name of an alternate kernel to load (assuming it already resides within the root directory), type **ls** to see a listing of files, or type **info** for a display of hard-drive parameters.

### See Also

**booting, technical information**

## technical information — Overview

The Lexicon includes the following entries that describe technical aspects of COHERENT:

**ASCII** . . . . . ASCII table  
**booting** . . . . . How booting works  
**byte ordering** . . . . . Machine-dependent order of bytes  
**calling conventions**  
**COHERENT** . . . . . Principles of the COHERENT system  
**data formats**  
**data types**  
**environ** . . . . . Process environment  
**errno** . . . . . External integer for return of error status  
**execution** . . . . . Program execution  
**floppy disks** . . . . . Information about floppy disks  
**hard disk** . . . . . Information about hard disks  
**keyboard tables** . . . . . How to write a keyboard table  
**libmisc** . . . . . Archive of miscellaneous library functions  
**man** . . . . . Manual macro package  
**memory allocation**  
**modem** . . . . . Information about modems  
**modem control** . . . . . Information about controlling modems  
**ms** . . . . . Manuscript macro package  
**MS-DOS** . . . . . That other operating system  
**portability**  
**printer** . . . . . Information about printers  
**rename** . . . . . How to rename a file  
**security**  
**signame** . . . . . Array of names of signals  
**storage class**  
**structure assignment**  
**terminal** . . . . . Information about terminals  
**tboot** . . . . . Describe the tertiary boot  
**type checking**  
**type promotion**

## See Also

Lexicon

## tee — Command

Branch pipe output

**tee** [ -a ] [ -i ] [*file* ...]

**tee** reads from standard input, usually a pipe, and writes to the standard output, usually a pipe. **tee** also writes a copy of the input data to each *file* specified.

The **-a** flag tells **tee** to append data to each *file*, analogous to the shell construct ">>*file*". Otherwise, it creates each *file*, analogous to the construct ">*file*".

The flag **-i** means ignore interrupts.

## See Also

commands, **ksh**, **sh**

**tellmdir() — General Function**

Return the current position within a directory stream

**off\_t tellmdir** (*dirp*)

**DIR \*dirp;**

The COHERENT function **tellmdir()** is one of a set of COHERENT routines that manipulate directories in a device-independent manner. It returns the current position within the directory stream pointed to by *dirp*.

If an error occurs, **tellmdir()** exits and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**See Also**

**closedir()**, **dirent.h**, **general functions**, **getdents()**, **opendir()**, **readdir()**, **rewinddir()**, **seekdir()**,

**Notes**

The value returned by **tellmdir()** should only be used as an argument to **seekdir()**.

**tellmdir()** and **seekdir()** are unreliable when directory stream has been closed and reopened. It is best to avoid using **tellmdir()** and **seekdir()** altogether.

Because directory entries can dynamically appear and disappear, and because directory contents are buffered by these routines, an application may need to continually rescan a directory to maintain an accurate picture of its active entries.

**tellmdir()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

The COHERENT implementation of the **dirent** routines was written by D. Gwynn.

**tempnam() — Extended Function**

Generate a unique name for a temporary file

**char \*tempnam**(*directory*, *name*);

**char \*directory**, **\*name**;

**tempnam()** constructs a unique temporary name that can be used to name a file. *directory* points to the name of the directory in which you want the temporary file written. If this variable is NULL, **tempnam()** reads the environmental variable **TMPDIR** and uses it for *directory*. If neither *directory* nor **TMPDIR** is given, **tempnam()** uses **/tmp**.

*name* points to the string of letters that will prefix the temporary name. This string should not be more than three or four characters, to prevent truncation or duplication of temporary file names. If *name* is NULL, **tempnam()** sets it to **t**.

**tempnam()** uses **malloc()** to allocate a buffer for the temporary file name it returns. If all goes well, it returns a pointer to the temporary name it has written. Otherwise, it returns NULL if the allocation fails or if it cannot build a temporary file name successfully.

**See Also**

**general functions**, **mktemp()**, **TMPDIR**, **tmpnam()**

**Notes**

**tempnam()** is not described in the ANSI Standard. Programs that use it will not conform strictly the Standard, and may not be portable to other compilers or environments.

**TERM — Environmental Variable**

Name the default terminal type

**TERM**=terminal type

The environmental variable **TERM** names the type of terminal that you are using. This variable is read by every program that uses the **termcap** or **terminfo** library, to ensure that the correct terminal description is read when the program is invoked. You should set this variable in your **profile**, to ensure that the system understands what type of terminal you use. The file **/etc/profile** sets **TERM** to **ansipc**.

**See Also**

environmental variables, **me**, **termcap**

**term — File Format**

Format of compiled terminfo file

Before it can be used, a file of **terminfo** information must be compiled with the command **tic**. It is read by the command **setupterm**.

Once compiled, the binary **terminfo** file is moved into a sub-directory of directory **/usr/lib/terminfo**. To avoid a linear search of a huge COHERENT directory, a two-level scheme is used to name the subdirectories: **/usr/lib/terminfo/C/name**, where *name* names the terminal and *C* is the first character of *name*. For example, the **terminfo** entry for the Wyse 150 terminal is kept in the file **/usr/lib/terminfo/w/wyse150**. Synonyms for a terminal exist as links to the same compiled file.

The binary format of a **terminfo** file has been designed to be the same on all hardware. The file is divided into six parts: header, terminal names, boolean flags, numbers, strings, and string table.

**Header**

The *header* section begins the file. This section contains the following six short integers:

1. The magic number (octal 0432).
2. The size, in bytes, of the *names* section.
3. The number of bytes in the *boolean* section.
4. The number of short integers in the *numbers* section.
5. The number of offsets (short integers) in the *strings* section.
6. The size, in bytes, of the *string* table.

A *short integer* is two bytes long. Under the **term** file format, 0xFFFF represents -1; all other negative value are illegal. Minus 1 generally means that a capability is missing from this terminal. All short integers are aligned on a short-word boundary.

**Names**

The *names* section contains the first line of the **terminfo** description, which lists the names for the terminal, each name separated by a vertical bar '|'. The section is terminated with a NUL.

**Boolean**

The *boolean* section contains the boolean flags for terminals. There is one flag for each boolean capacity recognized by **terminfo**. The flags appear in the order described in the header file **term.h**. Each flag is one byte long, and is set to zero or one, depending upon whether the capacity is absent or present in this terminal. If necessary, this section is ended with a NUL to ensure that the next section begins on an even byte.

## Numbers

The *numbers* section is similar to the *flags* section. There is one entry for each numeric capacity recognized by **terminfo**, each capacity being represented by a short integer. A value of -1 indicates that this terminal lacks this capability. Entries appear in the order described in the header file **term.h**.

## Strings

The *strings* section also contains one short integer for each string capability recognized by **terminfo**. A value of -1 means that this terminal lacks this capability. Otherwise, the value gives an offset from the beginning of the string table. Entries appear in the order described in the header file **term.h**.

Special characters in **^X** or **\c** notation are stored in their interpreted form. Padding information and parameter information are stored intact in uninterpreted form.

## String Table

The final section is the *string table*. It contains all the values of string capabilities referenced in the *string* section. Each string is null terminated.

## Files

**/usr/lib/terminfo/\*** — Default location of object files

## See Also

**curses**, **file formats**, **infocmp**, **tic**, **terminfo**

Strang, J., Mui, L., O'Reilly, T.: *termcap and terminfo*. Sebastopol, CA: O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., 1991.

## Notes

The total compiled file cannot exceed 4,096 bytes. The *name* field cannot exceed 128 bytes.

**terminfo** and its related programs are used only under COHERENT 386.

## **termcap** — System Maintenance

Terminal-description language

**/etc/termcap**

**termcap** is a language for describing terminals and their capabilities. Terminal descriptions are collected in the file **/etc/termcap** and are read by **tgetent** and its related programs to ensure that output to a particular terminal is in a format that that terminal can understand.

A terminal description written in **termcap** consists of a series of fields, which are separated from each other by colons ':'. Every line in the description, with the exception of the last line, must end in a backslash '\'. Tab characters are ignored. Lines that begin with a '#' are comments. A **termcap** description must not exceed 1,024 characters.

The first field names the terminal. Several different names may be used, each separated by a vertical bar '|'; each name given, however, must be unique within the file **/etc/termcap**. By convention, the first listed must be two characters long. The second name is the name by which the terminal is most commonly known; this name may contain no blanks in it. Other versions of the name may follow. By convention, the last version is the full name of the terminal; here, spaces may be used for legibility. Any of these may be used to name your terminal to the COHERENT system. For example, the name field for the VT-100 terminal is as follows:

```
d1|vt100|vt-100|pt100|pt-100|dec vt100;\
```

Note that the names are separated by vertical bars '|', that the field ends with a colon, and that the line ends with a backslash. Using any of these names in an **export** command will make the correct

terminal description available to programs that need to use it.

The remaining fields in the entry describe the *capabilities* of the terminal. Each capability field consists of a two-letter code, and may include additional information. There are three types of capability:

#### Boolean

This indicates whether or not a terminal has a specific feature. If the field is present, the terminal is assumed to have the feature; if it is absent, the terminal is assumed not to have that feature. For example, the field

**am:**

is present, **termcap** assumes that the terminal has automatic margins, whereas if that field is not present, the program using **termcap** assumes that the terminal does not have them.

#### Numeric

This gives the size of some aspect of the terminal. Numeric capability fields have the capability code, followed by a '#' and a number. For example, the entry

**co#80:**

means that the terminal screen is 80 columns wide.

#### String capabilities

These give a sequence of characters that trigger a terminal operation. These fields consist of the capability code, an equal sign '=', and the string.

Strings often include escape sequences. A "\E" indicates an <ESC> character; a control character is indicated with a caret '^' plus the appropriate letter; and the sequences \b, \f, \n, \r, and \t are, respectively, backspace, formfeed, newline, <return>, and tab.

An integer or an integer followed by an asterisk in the string (e.g., 'int\*') indicates that execution of the function should be delayed by *int* milliseconds; this delay is termed *padding*. Thus, deletion on lines on the Microterm Mime-2A is coded as:

**d1=20\*^W:**

**d1** is the capability code for *delete*, the equal sign introduces the deletion sequence, **20\*** indicates that each line deletion should be delayed by 20 milliseconds, and **^W** indicates that the line-deletion code on the Mime-2A is <ctrl-W>.

The asterisk indicates that the padding required is proportional to the number of lines affected by the operation. In the above example, the deletion of four lines on the Mime-2A generates a total of 80 milliseconds of padding; if no asterisk were present, however, the padding would be only 20 milliseconds, no matter how many lines were deleted. Also, when an asterisk is used, the number may be given to one decimal place, to show tenths of a millisecond of padding.

Note that with string capabilities, characters may be given as a backslash followed by the three octal digits of the character's ASCII code. Thus, a colon in a capability field may be given by \072. To put a null character into the string, use \200, because **termcap** strips the high bit from each character.

Finally, the literal characters '^' and '\' are given by "\^" and "\\".

### Capability Codes

The following table lists **termcap**'s capability codes. **Type** indicates whether the code is boolean, numeric, or string; a dagger '+' indicates that this capability may include padding, and a dagger plus an asterisk '+\*' indicates that it may be used with the asterisk padding function described above.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Type</i>	<i>Definition</i>
<b>ae</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	End alternate set of characters
<b>al</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	Add blank line
<b>am</b> . . . . .	boolean . . . . .	Automatic margins
<b>as</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Start alternate set of characters
<b>bc</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Backspace character, if not <ctrl-H>
<b>bs</b> . . . . .	boolean . . . . .	Backspace character is <ctrl-H>
<b>bt</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Backtab
<b>bw</b> . . . . .	boolean . . . . .	Backspace wraps from column 0 to last column
<b>cc</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Command character in prototype if it can be set at terminal
<b>cd</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	Clear to end of display
<b>ce</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Clear line
<b>ch</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Horizontal cursor motion
<b>cl</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	Clear screen
<b>cm</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Cursor motion, both vertical and horizontal
<b>co</b> . . . . .	number . . . . .	Number of columns
<b>cr</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	<return>; default <ctrl-M>
<b>cs</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Change scrolling region (DEC VT100 only); resembles <b>cm</b>
<b>cv</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Vertical cursor motion
<b>da</b> . . . . .	boolean† . . . . .	Display above may be retained
<b>dB</b> . . . . .	number . . . . .	Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>bs</b>
<b>db</b> . . . . .	boolean . . . . .	Display below may be retained
<b>dC</b> . . . . .	number . . . . .	Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>cr</b>
<b>dc</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	Delete a character
<b>dF</b> . . . . .	number . . . . .	Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>ff</b>
<b>dl</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	Delete a line
<b>dm</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Enter delete mode
<b>dN</b> . . . . .	number . . . . .	Milliseconds of delay needed by <b>nl</b>
<b>do</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Move down one line
<b>dT</b> . . . . .	number . . . . .	Milliseconds of delay needed by tab
<b>ed</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Leave delete mode
<b>ei</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Leave insert mode; use <b>:ei=:</b> if this string is the same as <b>ic</b>
<b>eo</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Erase overstrikes with a blank
<b>ff</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	Eject hardcopy terminal page; default <ctrl-L>
<b>hc</b> . . . . .	boolean . . . . .	Hardcopy terminal
<b>hd</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Move half-line down, i.e., forward 1/2 line feed)
<b>ho</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Move cursor to home position; use if <b>cm</b> is not set
<b>hu</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Move half-line up, i.e., reverse 1/2 line feed
<b>hz</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Cannot print tilde '~' (Hazeltine terminals only)
<b>ic</b> . . . . .	string† . . . . .	Insert a character
<b>if</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Name of the file that contains <b>is</b>
<b>im</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Begin insert mode; use <b>:im=:</b> if <b>ic</b> has not been set
<b>in</b> . . . . .	boolean . . . . .	Nulls are distinguished in display
<b>ip</b> . . . . .	string†* . . . . .	Insert padding after each character listed
<b>is</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Initialize terminal
<b>k0-k9</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Codes sent by function keys 0-9
<b>kb</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Code sent by backspace key
<b>kd</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Code sent by down-arrow key
<b>ke</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Leave "keypad transmit" mode
<b>kh</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Code sent by home key
<b>kl</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Code sent by left-arrow key
<b>kn</b> . . . . .	number . . . . .	No. of function keys; default is 10
<b>ko</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Entries for for all other non-function keys
<b>kr</b> . . . . .	string . . . . .	Code sent by right-arrow key



<b>ks</b>	string	Begin "keypad transmit" mode
<b>ku</b>	string	Code sent by up-arrow key
<b>l0-l9</b>	string	Function keys labels if not f0-f9
<b>li</b>	number	Number of lines
<b>ll</b>	string	Move cursor to first column of last line ( <b>cm</b> not set)
<b>ma</b>	string	Map keypad-to-cursor movement for <b>vi</b> version 2
<b>mi</b>	boolean	Cursor may be safely moved while in insert mode
<b>ml</b>	string	Turn on memory lock for area of screen above cursor
<b>ms</b>	boolean	Cursor can be moved while in standout or underline mode
<b>mu</b>	string	Turn off memory lock
<b>nc</b>	boolean	<b>&lt;return&gt;</b> does not work
<b>nd</b>	string	Move cursor right non-destructively
<b>nl</b>	string†	Newline character; default is <b>\n</b> ( <i>Obsolete</i> )
<b>ns</b>	boolean	Terminal is CRT, but does not scroll
<b>os</b>	boolean	Terminal can overstrike
<b>pc</b>	string	Pad character any character other than null
<b>pt</b>	boolean	Terminal's tabs set by hardware; may need to be set with <b>is</b>
<b>se</b>	string	Exit standout mode
<b>sf</b>	string†	Scroll forward
<b>sg</b>	number	Blank characters left by <b>so</b> or <b>se</b>
<b>so</b>	string	Enter standout mode
<b>sr</b>	string†	Reverse scroll
<b>ta</b>	string†	Tab character other than <b>&lt;ctrl-I&gt;</b> , or with padding
<b>tc</b>	string	Similar terminal — must be last field in entry
<b>te</b>	string	End a program that uses <b>cm</b>
<b>ti</b>	string	Begin a program that uses <b>cm</b>
<b>uc</b>	string	Underscore character and skip it
<b>ue</b>	string	Leave underscore mode
<b>ug</b>	number	Blank characters left by <b>us</b> or <b>ue</b>
<b>ul</b>	boolean	Terminal underlines but does not overstrike
<b>up</b>	string	Move up one line
<b>us</b>	string	Begin underscore mode
<b>vb</b>	string	Visible bell; may not move cursor
<b>ve</b>	string	Exit open/visual mode
<b>vs</b>	string	Begin open/visual mode
<b>xb</b>	boolean	Beehive terminal (f1= <b>&lt;esc&gt;</b> , f2= <b>&lt;ctrl-C&gt;</b> )
<b>xn</b>	boolean	Newline is ignored after wrap
<b>xr</b>	boolean	<b>&lt;return&gt;</b> behaves like <b>ce \r \n</b>
<b>xs</b>	boolean	Standout mode is not erased by writing over it
<b>xt</b>	boolean	Tabs are destructive

### Examples

The following is the **termcap** description of the Zenith Z-19 terminal. The meaning of each field will be described:

```
kb|h19|heath|h19b|heathkit|heath-19|z19|zenith|heathkit h19:\
:al=1*\EL:am:bs:cd=\EJ:ce=\EK:cl=\EE:cm=\EY%+ %+ :\
:co#80:dc=\EN:dl=1*\EM:do=\EB:ei=\EO:ho=\EH:\
:im=\E@:li#24:mi:nd=\EC:as=\EF:ae=\EG:ms:pt:\
:sr=\EI:se=\Eq:so=\Ep:up=\EA:vs=\Ex4:ve=\Ey4:\
:kb=^h:ku=\EA:kd=\EB:kl=\ED:kr=\EC:kh=\EH:kn#8:\
:kl=\ES:k2=\ET:k3=\EU:k4=\EV:k5=\EW:\
:l6=blue:l7=red:l8=white:k6=\EP:k7=\EQ:k8=\ER:
```

The first field, which occupies line 1, gives the various aliases for this terminal. The Heathkit H-19, which appears most prominently, was the home-kit version of the commercially sold Z-19. The remaining fields mean the following:

:al=1*\EL:	<esc>L adds new blank line; use one millisecond for each line added
:am:	Terminal has automatic margins
:bs:	Backspace character is <ctrl>-H (the default)
:cd=\EJ:	<esc>J clears to end of display
:ce=\EK:	<esc>K clears to end of line
:cl=\EE:	<esc>E clears screen
:cm=\EY%+ %+ :	Cursor motion (described later)
:co#80:	Screen has 80 columns
:dc=\EN:\	<esc>N deletes a character (backslash indicates end of a line)
:dl=1*\EM:	<esc>M deletes a line
:do=\EB:	<esc>B moves cursor down one line
:el=\EO:	<esc>O exits from insert mode
:ho=\EH:	<esc>H moves cursor to home position
:im=\E@:	<esc>@ begins insert mode (note that ic is set)
:li#24:	Terminal has 24 lines
:ml:	Cursor may be moved safely while terminal is in insert mode
:nd=\EC:	<esc>C moves cursor right non-destructively
:as=\EF:	<esc>F begins set of alternate characters
:ae=\EG:\	<esc>G ends set of alternate characters
:ms:	Cursor may be moved safely while terminal is in standout and underline mode
:pt:	Terminal has hardware tabs
:sr=\EI:	<esc>I reverse-scrolls the screen
:se=\Eq:	<esc>q exits standout mode
:so=\Ep:	<esc>p begins standout mode
:up=\EA:	<esc>A moves the cursor up one line
:vs=\Ex4:	<esc>x begins visual mode; insert 4 milliseconds of padding when visual mode is begun
:ve=\Ey4:\	<esc>y ends visual mode; insert 4 milliseconds of padding when visual mode is ended
:kb=^h:	Backspace key sends <Ctrl>-H
:ku=\EA:	Up-arrow key sends <esc>A
:kd=\EB:	Down-arrow key sends <esc>B
:kl=\ED:	Left-arrow key sends <esc>D
:kr=\EC:	Right-arrow key sends <esc>C
:kh=\EH:	Home key sends <esc>H
:kn#8:\	There are eight other keys on the keyboard
:k1=\ES:	Other key 1 sends <esc>S
:k2=\ET:	Other key 2 sends <esc>T
:k3=\EU:	Other key 3 sends <esc>U
:k4=\EV:	Other key 4 sends <esc>V
:k5=\EW:\	Other key 5 sends <esc>W
:l6=blue:	Other key 6 is labeled "blue"
:l7=red:	Other key 7 is labeled "red"
:l8=white:	Other key 8 is labeled "white"
:k6=\EP:	Other key 6 sends <esc>P
:k7=\EQ:	Other key 7 sends <esc>Q
:k8=\ER:	Other key 8 sends <esc>R

Note that the last field did *not* end with a backslash; this indicated to the COHERENT system that the **termcap** description was finished.

A terminal description does not have to be nearly so detailed. If you wish to use a new terminal, first check the following table to see if it already appears by **termcap**. If it does not, check the terminal's documentation to see if it mimics a terminal that is already in **/etc/termcap**, and use that description, modifying it if necessary and changing the name to suit your terminal. If you must create an entirely new description, first prepare a skeleton file that contains the following basic elements: number of lines, number of columns, backspace, cursor motion, line delete, clear screen, move cursor to home position, newline, move cursor up a line, and non-destructive right space. For example, the following is the **termcap** description for the Lear-Siegler ADM-3A terminal:

```
1a|adm3a|3a|lsi adm3a:\
    :am:bs:cd=^W:ce=^X:cm=\E=%+ %+ :cl=^Z:co#80:ho=^^:li#24:\
    :nd=<ctrl-L>;up=^K:
```

Once you have installed and debugged the skeleton description, add details gradually until every feature of the terminal is described.

### Cursor Motion

The cursor motion characteristic contains **printf**-like escape sequences not used elsewhere. These encode the line and column positions of the cursor, whereas other characters are passed unchanged. If the **cm** string is considered as a function, then its arguments are the line and the column to which the cursor is to move; the % codes have the following meanings:

- %d** Decimal number, as in **printf**. The origin is 0.
- %2** Two-digit decimal number. The same as **%2d** in **printf**.
- %3** Three-digit decimal number. The same as **%3d** in **printf**.
- %.** Single byte. The same as **%c** in **printf**.
- %+n** Add *n* to the current position value. *n* may be either a number or a character.
- %>nm** If the current position value is greater than *n+m*; then there is no output.
- %r** Reverse order of line and column, giving column first and then line. No output.
- %i** Increment line and column.
- %%** Give a % sign in the string.
- %n** Exclusive or line and column with 0140 (Datamedia 2500 terminal only).
- %B** Binary coded decimal ( $16 * (n/10) + (n\%10)$ ). No output.
- %D** Reverse coding ( $n - (2 * (n\%16))$ ). No output (Delta Data terminal only).

To send the cursor to line 3, column 12 on the Hewlett-Packard 2645, the terminal must be sent **<esc>&a12c03Y** padded for 6 milliseconds. Note that the column is given first and then the line, and that the line and column are given as two digits each. Thus, the **cm** capability for the Hewlett-Packard 2645 is given by:

```
:cm=6\E&%r%2c%2Y:
```

The Microterm ACT-IV needs the current position sent preceded by a **<Ctrl-T>**, with the line and column encoded in binary:

```
:cm=^T%.%.:
```

Terminals that use **%**, must be able to backspace the cursor (**bs** or **bc**) and to move the cursor up one line on the screen (**up**). This is because transmitting **\t**, **\n**, **\r**, or **<ctrl-D>** may have undesirable consequences or be ignored by the system.

### **Similar Terminals**

If your system uses two similar terminals, one can be defined as resembling the other, with certain exceptions. The code **tc** names the similar terminal. This field must be *last* in the **termcap** entry, and the combined length of the two entries cannot exceed 1,024 characters. Capabilities given first over-ride those in the similar terminal, and capabilities in the similar terminal can be cancelled by **xx@** where **xx** is the capability. For example, the entry

```
hn|2621nl|HP 2621nl:ks@:ke@:tc=2621
```

defines a Hewlett-Packard 2621 terminal that does not have the **ks** and **ke** capabilities, and thus cannot turn on the function keys when in visual mode.

### **Initialization**

A terminal initialization string may be given with the **is** capability; if the string is too long, it may be read from a file given by the **if** code. Usually, these strings set the tabs on a terminal with settable tabs. If both **is** and **if** are given, **is** will be printed first to clear the tabs, then the tabs will be set from the file specified by **if**. The Hewlett-Packard 2626 has:

```
:is=\E&j@\r\E3\r;if=/usr/lib/tabset/stdcrt:
```

### **Terminals Supported**

The following table lists the terminals described in **/etc/termcap**, and an abbreviated name for each.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Terminal</i>
<b>act5</b> . . . . .	Microterm Act V
<b>adm3a</b> . . . . .	Lear-Siegler ADM3A
<b>adm31</b> . . . . .	Lear-Siegler ADM31
<b>ansipc</b> . . . . .	AT COHERENT console
<b>cohibm</b> . . . . .	PC COHERENT console
<b>dos</b> . . . . .	DOS 3.1 ANSI.SYS
<b>h1510</b> . . . . .	Hazeltine 1510
<b>h19</b> . . . . .	Heathkit H-19
<b>h19a</b> . . . . .	Heathkit H-19 in ANSI
<b>mime1</b> . . . . .	Microterm Mime1
<b>mime2a</b> . . . . .	Microterm Mime2a
<b>mime3a</b> . . . . .	Microterm Mime3a
<b>qvt102</b> . . . . .	Qume QVT-102
<b>qume5</b> . . . . .	Qume Sprint 5
<b>tvi912</b> . . . . .	Televideo 920
<b>tvi920</b> . . . . .	Televideo 920
<b>tvi925</b> . . . . .	Televideo 925
<b>vt52</b> . . . . .	DEC VT-52
<b>vt100</b> . . . . .	DEC VT-100
<b>vt100n</b> . . . . .	DEC VT-100 without initialization
<b>vt100s</b> . . . . .	DEC VT-100, 132 columns, 14 lines
<b>vt100w</b> . . . . .	DEC VT-100, 132 columns, 24 lines
<b>wy50</b> . . . . .	Wyse 50

### **Programming With termcap**

The COHERENT library **libterm.a** contains the following routines that extract and use the

descriptions for **termcap**:

<b>tgetent()</b>	Read a <b>termcap</b> entry.
<b>tgetflag()</b>	Check if a given Boolean capability is present in the terminal's <b>termcap</b> entry.
<b>tgetnum()</b>	Return the value of a numeric <b>termcap</b> feature (e.g., the number of columns on the terminal).
<b>tgetstr()</b>	Read and decode a <b>termcap</b> string feature.
<b>tgoto()</b>	Read and decode a cursor-addressing string.
<b>tputs()</b>	Read and decode the leading padding information of a <b>termcap</b> string feature.

See the Lexicon entry for each function for details.

The external variable **ospeed** is the output speed to the terminal as encoded by **stty**. The external variable **PC** is a padding character if a NUL (<ctrl-@>) is not appropriate.

The following example shows how to read a **termcap** entry:

```
#include <stdio.h>

static char *CM, *SO, *SE, *CL;
static int rows, cols;
static int am;
static int errflag;
static char *ptr;
static char *tv_stype;

extern char *tgoto();           /* termcap cursor position command */
extern char *tgetstr();        /* get string code from termcap */
extern int tgetflag();         /* get boolean flag from termcap */
extern int tgetnum();          /* get numeric code from termcap */
extern void tputs();           /* termcap put data command */
extern char PC;                /* termcap's pad character */

/*
 * Get a required termcap string or exit with a message.
 */
static char *
qgetstr(ref)
char *ref;
{
    register char *tmp;

    if ((tmp = tgetstr(ref, &ptr)) == NULL) {
        printf("/etc/termcap terminal %s must have a %s= entry\n",
            tv_stype, ref);
        errflag = 1;
    }
    return (tmp);
}
```

```
/*
 * Get required termcap information for this terminal type.
 */
static void
tcapopen()
{
    extern char *getenv(), *realloc();
    char *tcapbuf;
    char tcbuf[1024]; /* this must hold the whole tml entry */
    char *p;

    /* set up termcap type */
    if ((tv_stype = getenv("TERM")) == NULL) {
        printf("Environment variable TERM not defined\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    if (tgetent(tcbuf, tv_stype) != 1) {
        printf("Terminal type %s not in /etc/termcap\n", tv_stype);
        exit(1);
    }

    /* get far too much and shrink later */
    if ((ptr = tcapbuf = malloc(1024)) == NULL) {
        printf("out of space\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    /* get termcap entries for later use */
    CM = qgetstr("cm"); /* this string used by tgoto() */
    CL = qgetstr("cl"); /* this string used to clear screen */
    SO = qgetstr("so"); /* this string used to set standout */
    SE = qgetstr("se"); /* this string used by clear standout */
    if (errflag) /* set if any missing entries */
        exit(1);

    /* set termcap's pad char */
    PC = (((p = tgetstr("pc", &ptr)) == NULL) ? 0 : *p);

    if (tcapbuf != realloc(tcapbuf, (unsigned)(ptr - tcapbuf))) {
        printf("Buffer not shrunk in place!\n");
        exit(1);
    }

    if ((cols = tgetnum("co")) < 0) /* Get rows and columns */
        cols = 80;
    if ((rows = tgetnum("li")) < 0)
        rows = 24;

    am = tgetflag("am"); /* automatic margins ? */
}
```

```
/*
 * output char function.
 */
static void
tputc(c)
{
    fputc(c, stdout);
}

/*
 * output command string, set padding to one line affected.
 * use tputc as character output function. Use only for
 * termcap created data not your own strings.
 */
void
putpad(str)
char *str;
{
    tputs(str, 1, tputc);
}

/*
 * Move cursor.
 */
void
move(col, row)
{
    putpad(tgoto(CM, col, row));
}

/*
 * Demonstrate termcap.
 */
main()
{
    tcapopen();
    putpad(CL);           /* clear the screen */
    move(30, 5);
    putpad(SO);           /* standout mode */
    printf("Termcap Demo");
    putpad(SE);           /* end standout mode */

    move(0, 7);
    printf("This terminal has %d columns and %d rows.", cols, rows);

    if (am) {
        move(0, 8);
        printf("Automatic margins.");
    }
}
```

```
    move(0, rows); /* quit at bottom of screen */
    exit(0);
}
```

### Files

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal-description data base

**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Routines for reading a **termcap** description

### See Also

**captaininfo**, **curses**, **modemcap**, **system maintenance**, **terminal**, **terminfo**, **tgetent()**, **tgetflag()**, **tgetnum()**, **tgetstr()**, **tgoto()**, **tputs()**

Strang, J., Mui, L., O'Reilly, T.: *Termcap & Terminfo*. Sebastopol, CA: O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., 1991. *Highly recommended.*

### Notes

COHERENT 386 also supports **terminfo**, a clone of the UNIX System-V terminal-description system. **terminfo** enjoys a number of features not available under **termcap**, and is the preferred system under COHERENT 386.

Should you wish to convert to **terminfo**, the command **captaininfo** converts a file of **termcap** descriptions to their **terminfo** analogues.

### **terminal** — Technical Information

This article describes how you can hook up a terminal to your COHERENT system via a serial port. It also discusses common problems that arise with this procedure, as diagnosed daily by the technical support staff at Mark Williams Company. For information on connecting a modem to your computer's serial port, see the article **modem**.

### **Hooking Up a Terminal to COHERENT**

This process is straightforward, but can be confusing if you overlook any details. Typical problems include send/receive confusion, baud rate confusion, and shell/no shell confusion.

### **Send/Receive Confusion**

A serial connection between your computer and a terminal requires at least three wires: one each for pins 2, 3, and 7. These pins, respectively, control send (TD), receive (RD), and signal-ground (Gnd or SG). These pin numbers correspond to the 25-pin "DB-25" connectors used on most equipment. If your system has the AT-style nine-pin "DB-9" connectors, you will need to wire to the corresponding signals. See the Lexicon entry for **RS-232** for details of the pin-outs for these two connectors.

When hooking up a terminal to a serial port using a three-wire connection, you must cross pins 2 and 3, so that each device's send pin talks to the other device's receive pin. You can plug a device called a "null modem" between the cable and the serial port, to do this automatically. Unless someone has sat down and taught you how to solder connectors, we strongly urge you to purchase the necessary cable and null modem at your local computer store or electronics shop.

Note that the only symptom of a problem in the cable is that nothing appears on your terminal when you type.

### **Baud-Rate Confusion**

The terminal and the computer must speak to each other at the same *baud rate*. A typical symptom of baud-rate confusion is garbage characters on the screen. When the wiring is wrong, you see nothing; when the baud rate is wrong, you see random collections of characters on the screen, but nothing meaningful.

You can fix baud-rate problems by using the command **stty** to reset the baud rate on the port, or



resetting the baud rate on the terminal. The problem should also be solved by editing file `/etc/ttys`. For directions on how to reset the baud rate for a port, see the Lexicon entry for **stty**; see the Lexicon entry for **ttys** for information on how to edit `/etc/ttys`.

Please note, too, that COHERENT supports the following configuration for terminals:

- 8 word bits
- 1 stop bit
- No parity bits

These settings, as well as the baud rate, must match before your terminal will work correctly.

### **The Old Shell Game**

Before a terminal is useful to you, you must *enable* the port into which it is plugged. Enabling a port means that the COHERENT system creates a shell for that port: this, in turn, means that COHERENT prints a login prompt on the device plugged into that port, and reads and processes interactively commands that are entered from that port. The COHERENT system also restricts permissions on all enabled serial ports, so that only the superuser **root** can read and write to the port. This prevents other users who may be using the system from accessing the serial port.

Note that not all ports need be enabled: printer ports, for example, should not be enabled; nor should you enable any port whose device you want to accept data passively.

When you boot the COHERENT system, it reads system file `/etc/ttys` and creates a shell for each serial port that needs one. One way to enable a port is to log in as the superuser **root**, then use a text editor to change the port's entry in `/etc/ttys`, as described its Lexicon article. Finally, typing the command

```
kill quit 1
```

forces COHERENT to re-read `/etc/ttys` and so create a shell for the port. Note that doing this will ensure that the port is re-enabled every time you boot.

A better way to enable a port is to use the command **enable**, as described in its Lexicon article. For example, to put up a shell on COM port `/dev/com1r`, log in as the superuser **root** and type the command:

```
/etc/enable com1r
```

### **Exiting Raw Mode**

A terminal is in *cooked* mode. In cooked mode, the tty driver interprets and correctly processes such predefined characters as the end-of-file character or the quit character. In *raw* mode, however, processing of such characters is turned off; and in general the terminal will behave bizarrely. Raw mode is used by programs that do not want the tty driver to interpret characters; for example, a program that uses a tty to transmit a binary to another machine does not want the tty driver to be interpreting the binary information being passed through it.

Occasionally, a program will exit abruptly and leave the terminal in raw mode. To return to cooked mode, use the command `<ctrl-J> stty sane <ctrl-J>`. This invokes the command **stty**, which lets you manipulate terminal settings, to restore the previous cooked state. See the Lexicon entry on **stty** for details on raw and cooked modes; this article also describes the options of this most useful command.

### **See Also**

**device drivers, hs, modem, RS-232, sgTTY, stty, technical information, termcap, terminfo, ttys**

### **Notes**

One final bit of hard-won wisdom: once you have something working, write down what you did, and store it in a place where you won't lose it. Note especially what connectors are where and how they

have been cabled together. It makes life easier just knowing that you are looking for a female-to-female cable instead of male-to-female or male-to-male. If you know whether to insert a null modem, you are even better off.

COHERENT supports multi-port serial cards as well as COM ports 1 through 4. See the Lexicon entry on **device drivers** for a list of the devices that COHERENT supports.

### **terminfo** — System Maintenance

terminal description language  
**/usr/lib/terminfo**

**terminfo** is a system for describing terminals. Descriptions are collect in the file **/usr/lib/terminfo** and are read by **curses**, **more**, **vi**, and other utilities. By passing her terminal's **terminfo** entry to a program, a user can make sure that the program can take full advantage of her terminal's capacities.

Note that **terminfo** is included only with COHERENT 386. Under COHERENT 286, programs that manipulate terminals must use **termcap**, which is a similar, but more limited, language.

#### **terminfo Entries**

Directory **/usr/lib/terminfo** consists of a number of sub-directories, one for each terminal type being described. A *terminal type* describes a given make of terminal (e.g., the Wyse 150) plus some special attribute, such as number of characters on a line or a specially defined bank of function keys. A **terminfo** entry can extend over more than one line by indenting every line after the first. A line that begin with a pound sign '#' is a comment.

A **terminfo** entry consists of an indefinite number of comma-separated fields. White space after each comma is ignored. The first field names the terminal; the remaining fields hold capability codes. (*Capability codes* are discussed in detail below.) Preceding a field with a period '.' comments out that field, and only that field.

#### **Naming Terminals**

The first field in a **terminfo** entry names the terminal being described. The name field consists of one or more names, which are separated by vertical-bar characters. The first name given is the most common abbreviation for the terminal. The last name is usually a long name that fully identifies the terminal. All names in between the first and the last give common synonyms for that terminal. All names can contain upper-case characters; the last name can also contain white space.

Terminal names (except for the last, verbose entry) should use the following conventions:

- The hardware should have a root name chosen, e.g., "wyse150".
- The root name should not contain hyphens, except to prevent synonyms from colliding with other names.
- Modes that the hardware can be in, or user preferences, should be indicated by appending a hyphen and an indicator of the mode. For example, a **wyse150** an old-fashioned 82-key keyboard could be called **wyse150-o**.

Use the following suffixes whenever possible:

Suffix	Meaning
<b>-w</b>	Wide (more than 80 columns)
<b>-am</b>	With automatic margins (usually default)
<b>-nam</b>	Without automatic margins
<b>-n</b>	Number of lines on the screen
<b>-na</b>	No arrow keys
<b>-np</b>	<i>n</i> pages of memory
<b>-rv</b>	Reverse video

## Capability Codes

A *capability code* describes a capability of a terminal. Capability codes come in three varieties:

<b>Boolean</b>	This indicates whether a terminal has a given feature. If the field is present, the terminal is assumed to have the capability; if not, then it is assumed not to be present. For example, the code <b>am</b> indicates “automatic margins”. If <b>am</b> appears in a terminal’s <b>terminfo</b> entry, then it can execute automatic margins; if not, then it can’t.
<b>Numeric</b>	This gives the size of some aspect of a terminal, such as the number of lines or the number of columns. A numeric code is followed by a number sign ‘#’ and then a string of digits, which set the value for that code. For example, the code <b>cols#80</b> indicates that a terminal has 80 columns per row.

### String Capabilities

This gives a sequence of characters that trigger a terminal operation. For example, a terminal may expect a “magic sequence” to wipe the screen clean, to print in reverse video, or to change the shape of its cursor. Likewise, a terminal may send a “magic sequence” when a particular function key is pressed. For example, the code **kifl=\E5** indicates that this terminal sends the string **<esc>5** when the user presses function-key 1.

Some terminal capabilities may involve *padding* — that is, telling the terminal to delay execution of the capability for a fraction of a second. In some instances, padding may make the difference between a terminal’s drawing information correction, or displaying a jumble.

A delay code can appear anywhere in a string capability code. It is introduced by a dollar sign ‘\$’ and enclosed in angle brackets ‘<>’. The numeric value is always in milliseconds. For example, the code **el=\EK\$<3>** indicates that the clear-to-end-of-line code **el** is invoked by the “magic sequence” **<esc>K**, and that it should involve a three-millisecond delay. Function **tputs()** provides the delay.

The delay can be either a number, e.g., “20”, or a number followed by an asterisk, e.g., “3\*”. An asterisk indicates that the padding must be proportional to the number of lines affected by the operation; the amount given is the amount of padding required by each line of output. (This is true even in the case of the insert-character code.) When an asterisk is specified, it is sometimes useful to give a delay of the form “3.5” to specify a delay-per-unit to tenths of milliseconds. (Only one decimal place is allowed.)

The following table gives the commonest **terminfo** capability codes. The *variable* is the name by which the programmer (at the **terminfo** level) accesses the capability. The *code* is the name used in the **terminfo** entry. There is no fixed limit to the length of a code, but the convention is to keep them to five characters or fewer. Whenever possible, names are the same as, or similar to, those in the ANSI Standard X3.64-1979.

The semantics describe features of the code:

- † You may specify padding.
- †\* Padding may be based on the number of lines affected.
- # The string is passed through `tparm()` with the number of parameters given in the description.
- #! Indicate the *i*th parameter.

**Boolean Codes**

<i>Variable</i>	<i>Code</i>	<i>Description</i>
auto_left_margin . . . . .	<b>bw</b> . . . . .	<b>cub1</b> wraps from column 0 to last column
auto_right_margin . . . . .	<b>am</b> . . . . .	Automatic margins
beehive_glitch . . . . .	<b>xsb</b> . . . . .	Beehive terminal (F1=escape, F2=<ctrl-C>)
ceol_standout_glitch . . . . .	<b>xhp</b> . . . . .	Standout not erased by overwriting (HP)
eat_newline_glitch . . . . .	<b>xenl</b> . . . . .	Newline ignored after 80 columns (Concept)
erase_overstrike . . . . .	<b>eo</b> . . . . .	Erase overstrikes with a blank
generic_type . . . . .	<b>gn</b> . . . . .	Generic line type (e.g., dialup, switch).
hard_copy . . . . .	<b>hc</b> . . . . .	Hardcopy terminal
has_meta_key . . . . .	<b>km</b> . . . . .	Has a metakey (shift sets parity bit)
has_status_line . . . . .	<b>hs</b> . . . . .	Has an extra "status line"
insert_null_glitch . . . . .	<b>in</b> . . . . .	Insert mode distinguishes NULs
memory_above . . . . .	<b>da</b> . . . . .	Display can be retained above the screen
memory_below . . . . .	<b>db</b> . . . . .	Display can be retained below the screen
move_insert_mode . . . . .	<b>mir</b> . . . . .	Safe to move while in insert mode
move_standout_mode . . . . .	<b>msgr</b> . . . . .	Safe to move in standout modes
over_strike . . . . .	<b>os</b> . . . . .	Terminal overstrikes
status_line_esc_ok . . . . .	<b>eslok</b> . . . . .	Escape can be used on the status line
teleray_glitch . . . . .	<b>xt</b> . . . . .	Tabs destructive, magic SO char (Teleray 1061)
tilde_glitch . . . . .	<b>hz</b> . . . . .	Hazeltine cannot print tildes '~'
transparent_underline . . . . .	<b>ul</b> . . . . .	Underline character overstrikes
xon_xoff . . . . .	<b>xon</b> . . . . .	Terminal uses XON/XOFF handshaking

**Numeric Codes**

<i>Variable</i>	<i>Code</i>	<i>Description</i>
columns . . . . .	<b>cols</b> . . . . .	Number of columns in a line
init_tabs . . . . .	<b>it</b> . . . . .	Tabs initially every <i>n</i> spaces
lines . . . . .	<b>lines</b> . . . . .	Number of lines on screen or page
lines_of_memory . . . . .	<b>lm</b> . . . . .	Lines of memory if greater than <b>lines</b> ; zero, variable
magic_cookie_glitch . . . . .	<b>xmc</b> . . . . .	Number of blank characters left by <b>smso</b> or <b>rmsso</b>
padding_baud_rate . . . . .	<b>pb</b> . . . . .	Lowest baud rate where CR/NL padding is needed
virtual_terminal . . . . .	<b>vt</b> . . . . .	Virtual terminal number
width_status_line . . . . .	<b>ws1</b> . . . . .	Number of columns in the status line

**String Capabilities**

<i>Variable</i>	<i>Code</i>	<i>Description</i>
back_tab . . . . .	<b>cbt</b> . . . . .	Back tab†
bell . . . . .	<b>bel</b> . . . . .	Audible signal (bell)†
carriage_return . . . . .	<b>cr</b> . . . . .	Carriage return†*
change_scroll_region . . . . .	<b>csr</b> . . . . .	change to lines #1 through #2 (vt100)†#
clear_all_tabs . . . . .	<b>tbc</b> . . . . .	Clear all tab stops.†
clear_screen . . . . .	<b>clear</b> . . . . .	Clear screen†*
clr_eol . . . . .	<b>el</b> . . . . .	Clear to end of line†
clr_eos . . . . .	<b>ed</b> . . . . .	Clear to end of display†*
column_address . . . . .	<b>hpa</b> . . . . .	Set cursor column†#
command_character . . . . .	<b>CC</b> . . . . .	Terminal-settable command character in prototype

cursor_address . . . . .	<b>cup</b> . . . .	Cursor motion relative to row 1 column 2†#
cursor_down . . . . .	<b>cudl</b> . . . .	Move cursor down one line
cursor_home . . . . .	<b>home</b> . . . .	Move cursor to home position (if no <b>cup</b> )
cursor_invisible . . . . .	<b>civis</b> . . . .	Make cursor invisible
cursor_left . . . . .	<b>cubl</b> . . . .	Move cursor left one space
cursor_mem_address . . . .	<b>mrcup</b> . . . .	Memory-relative cursor addressing
cursor_normal . . . . .	<b>cnorm</b> . . . .	Make cursor appear normal (undo <b>vs</b> and <b>vi</b> )
cursor_right . . . . .	<b>cuf1</b> . . . .	Move cursor right one space
cursor_to_ll . . . . .	<b>ll</b> . . . . .	Last line, first column (if no <b>cup</b> )
cursor_up . . . . .	<b>cuu1</b> . . . .	Upline (cursor up)
cursor_visible . . . . .	<b>cvvis</b> . . . .	Make cursor very visible
delete_character . . . . .	<b>dch1</b> . . . .	Delete character†*
delete_line . . . . .	<b>d11</b> . . . .	Delete line†*
dis_status_line . . . . .	<b>dsl</b> . . . .	Disable status line
down_half_line . . . . .	<b>hd</b> . . . . .	Half-line down (forward 1/2 linefeed)
enter_alt_charset_mode . .	<b>smacs</b> . . . .	Start alternate character set†
enter_blink_mode . . . . .	<b>blink</b> . . . .	Turn on blinking
enter_bold_mode . . . . .	<b>bold</b> . . . .	Turn on bold (extra bright)
enter_ca_mode . . . . .	<b>smcup</b> . . . .	String to begin programs that use <b>cup</b>
enter_delete_mode . . . . .	<b>smdc</b> . . . .	Delete mode (enter)
enter_dim_mode . . . . .	<b>dim</b> . . . . .	Turn on half-bright mode
enter_insert_mode . . . . .	<b>smir</b> . . . .	Insert mode (enter)
enter_protected_mode . . .	<b>prot</b> . . . .	Turn on protected mode
enter_reverse_mode . . . .	<b>rev</b> . . . . .	Turn on reverse-video
enter_secure_mode . . . . .	<b>invis</b> . . . .	Turn on blank mode (characters invisible)
enter_standout_mode . . . .	<b>smso</b> . . . .	Begin stand-out mode
enter_underline_mode . . .	<b>smul</b> . . . .	Start underscore mode
erase_charse . . . . .	<b>ch</b> . . . . .	Erase #1 characters†#
exit_alt_charset_mode . . .	<b>rmacs</b> . . . .	End alternate character set†
exit_attribute_mode . . . .	<b>sgr0</b> . . . .	Turn off all attributes
exit_ca_mode . . . . .	<b>rmcup</b> . . . .	String to end programs that use <b>cup</b>
exit_delete_mode . . . . .	<b>rmdc</b> . . . .	End delete mode
exit_insert_mode . . . . .	<b>rmir</b> . . . .	End insert mode
exit_standout_mode . . . .	<b>rmso</b> . . . .	End stand out mode
exit_underline_mode . . . .	<b>rmul</b> . . . .	End underscore mode
flash_screen . . . . .	<b>flash</b> . . . .	Visible bell (may not move cursor)
form_feed . . . . .	<b>ff</b> . . . . .	Hardcopy terminal page eject†*
from_status_line . . . . .	<b>fsl</b> . . . . .	Return from status line
init_1string . . . . .	<b>is1</b> . . . . .	Terminal-initialization string
init_2string . . . . .	<b>is2</b> . . . . .	Terminal-initialization string
init_3string . . . . .	<b>is3</b> . . . . .	Terminal-initialization string
init_file . . . . .	<b>if</b> . . . . .	Name of file containing <b>is</b>
insert_character . . . . .	<b>ich1</b> . . . .	Insert character†
insert_line . . . . .	<b>il1</b> . . . .	Add new blank line†*
insert_padding . . . . .	<b>ip</b> . . . . .	Insert pad after character inserted†*
key_backspace . . . . .	<b>kbs</b> . . . . .	Sent by backspace key
key_catab . . . . .	<b>ktbc</b> . . . .	Sent by clear-all-tabs key
key_clear . . . . .	<b>kclr</b> . . . .	Sent by clear-screen or erase key
key_ctab . . . . .	<b>kctab</b> . . . .	Sent by clear-tab key
key_dc . . . . .	<b>kdch1</b> . . . .	Sent by delete-character key
key_dl . . . . .	<b>kd11</b> . . . .	Sent by delete-line key
key_down . . . . .	<b>kcud1</b> . . . .	Sent by down-arrow key
key_eic . . . . .	<b>krmir</b> . . . .	Sent by <b>rmir</b> or <b>smir</b> in insert mode
key_eol . . . . .	<b>kel</b> . . . .	Sent by clear-to-end-of-line key

key_eos . . . . .	ked . . . . .	Sent by clear-to-end-of-screen key
key_f0 . . . . .	kf0 . . . . .	Sent by function key 0
key_f1 . . . . .	kf1 . . . . .	Sent by function key 1
key_f2 . . . . .	kf2 . . . . .	Sent by function key 2
key_f3 . . . . .	kf3 . . . . .	Sent by function key 3
key_f4 . . . . .	kf4 . . . . .	Sent by function key 4
key_f5 . . . . .	kf5 . . . . .	Sent by function key 5
key_f6 . . . . .	kf6 . . . . .	Sent by function key 6
key_f7 . . . . .	kf7 . . . . .	Sent by function key 7
key_f8 . . . . .	kf8 . . . . .	Sent by function key 8
key_f9 . . . . .	kf9 . . . . .	Sent by function key 9
key_f10 . . . . .	kf10 . . . . .	Sent by function key 10
key_home . . . . .	khome . . . . .	Sent by home key
key_ic . . . . .	kich1 . . . . .	Sent by insert char/enter insert-mode key
key_il . . . . .	kill . . . . .	Sent by insert line
key_left . . . . .	kcub1 . . . . .	Sent by left-arrow key
key_ll . . . . .	kll . . . . .	Sent by home-down key
key_npage . . . . .	knp . . . . .	Sent by next-page key
key_ppage . . . . .	kpp . . . . .	Sent by previous-page key
key_right . . . . .	kcuf1 . . . . .	Sent by right-arrow key
key_sf . . . . .	kind . . . . .	Sent by scroll-forward/down key
key_sr . . . . .	kri . . . . .	Sent by scroll-backward/up key
key_stab . . . . .	khts . . . . .	Sent by set-tab key
key_up . . . . .	kcuu1 . . . . .	Sent by terminal up arrow key
keypad_local . . . . .	rmkx . . . . .	Exit "keypad transmit" mode
keypad_xmit . . . . .	smkx . . . . .	Enter "keypad transmit" mode
label_f0 . . . . .	lf0 . . . . .	Label on function key 0 if not F0
label_f1 . . . . .	lf1 . . . . .	Label on function key 1 if not F1
label_f2 . . . . .	lf2 . . . . .	Label on function key 2 if not F2
label_f3 . . . . .	lf3 . . . . .	Label on function key 3 if not F3
label_f4 . . . . .	lf4 . . . . .	Label on function key 4 if not F4
label_f5 . . . . .	lf5 . . . . .	Label on function key 5 if not F5
label_f6 . . . . .	lf6 . . . . .	Label on function key 6 if not F6
label_f7 . . . . .	lf7 . . . . .	Label on function key 7 if not F7
label_f8 . . . . .	lf8 . . . . .	Label on function key 8 if not F8
label_f9 . . . . .	lf9 . . . . .	Label on function key 9 if not F9
label_f10 . . . . .	lf10 . . . . .	Label on function key 10 if not F10
meta_on . . . . .	smm . . . . .	Turn on "meta mode" (eighth bit)
meta_off . . . . .	rmm . . . . .	Turn off "meta mode"
newline . . . . .	nel . . . . .	Newline (behaves like CR followed by LF)
pad_char . . . . .	pad . . . . .	Pad character (rather than NUL)
parm_dch . . . . .	dch . . . . .	Delete #1 chars†*#
parm_delete_line . . . . .	dl . . . . .	Delete #1 lines†*#
parm_down_cursor . . . . .	cud . . . . .	Move cursor down #1 lines†*#
parm_ich . . . . .	ich . . . . .	Insert #1 blank characters†*#
parm_index . . . . .	indn . . . . .	Scroll forward #1 lines†#
parm_insert_line . . . . .	il . . . . .	Add #1 new blank lines†*#
parm_left_cursor . . . . .	cub . . . . .	Move cursor left #1 spaces†#
parm_right_cursor . . . . .	cuf . . . . .	Move cursor right #1 spaces†*#
parm_rindex . . . . .	rln . . . . .	Scroll backward #1 lines†#
parm_up_cursor . . . . .	cuu . . . . .	Move cursor up #1 lines†*#
pkey_key . . . . .	pfkey . . . . .	Program function key #1 to type string #2
pkey_local . . . . .	pfloc . . . . .	Program function key #1 to execute string #2
pkey_xmit . . . . .	pfx . . . . .	Program function key #1 to transmit string #2

---

```

print_screen . . . . . mc0 . . . . Print contents of the screen
prtr_off . . . . . mc4 . . . . Turn off printer
prtr_on . . . . . mc5 . . . . Turn on printer
repeat_char . . . . . rep . . . . Repeat character #1 #2 times. †*#
reset_1string. . . . . rs1 . . . . Reset terminal completely to sane modes
reset_2string. . . . . rs2 . . . . Reset terminal completely to sane modes
reset_3string. . . . . rs3 . . . . Reset terminal completely to sane modes
reset_file . . . . . rf . . . . Name of file containing reset string
restore_cursor. . . . . rc . . . . Restore cursor to position of last sc
row_address . . . . . vpa . . . . Vertical position absolute (set row)†#
save_cursor . . . . . sc . . . . Save cursor position†
scroll_forward . . . . . ind . . . . Scroll text up†
scroll_reverse . . . . . ri . . . . Scroll text down†
set_attributes . . . . . sgr . . . . Define the nine video attributes†*#
set_tab . . . . . hts . . . . Set a tab in all rows, current column.
set_window. . . . . wind . . . . Current window is lines #1-#2, columns #3-#4
tab. . . . . ht . . . . Tab to next eight-space hardware tab stop
to_status_line . . . . . tsl . . . . Go to status line, column #1
underline_char . . . . . uc . . . . Underscore one char and move past it
up_half_line . . . . . hu . . . . Half-line up (reverse 1/2 linefeed)

```

### Escape Sequences

You can use the following escape sequences with any string-capability entry:

```

\E          <esc> character
\e          <esc> character
^X          <ctrl-X> for any appropriate X
\n          Newline
\r          Carriage return
\t          Horizontal tab
\b          Backspace
\f          Formfeed
\s          Space
\000        Value of a character in three octal digits
\^          Literal carat
\,          Literal comma
\\          Literal backslash

```

### Parameterized Strings

Cursor-addressing and other strings requiring parameters in the terminal are described by a parameterized string capability, with **printf()**-like escape sequences in it. Each escape sequence is introduced with a percent sign '%', followed by one character that described the type of formatting to be performed, as follows:

```

%%          Literal '%'
%d          Decimal integer
%2d         Decimal integer with at least two places
%02d        Decimal integer, two places, zero padding
%3d         Decimal integer with at least three places
%03d        Decimal integer, three places, zero padding
%c          Character
%s          String

```

<b>%p[i]</b>	Push <i>i</i> th parameter
<b>%P[a-z]</b>	Set variable [a-z] to <b>pop()</b>
<b>%g[a-z]</b>	Push variable [a-z]
<b>%'c'</b>	Character constant <i>c</i>
<b>%{nn}</b>	Integer constant <i>nn</i>
<b>%+</b>	Addition: <b>push(pop() + pop())</b>
<b>%-</b>	Subtraction: <b>push(pop() - pop())</b>
<b>%*</b>	Multiplication: <b>push(pop() * pop())</b>
<b>%/</b>	Division: <b>push(pop() / pop())</b>
<b>%m</b>	Modulo: <b>push(pop() % pop())</b>
<b>%&amp;</b>	Bitwise AND: <b>push(pop() op pop())</b>
<b>% </b>	Bitwise OR: <b>push(pop() op pop())</b>
<b>%^</b>	Bitwise NOR: <b>push(pop() op pop())</b>
<b>%=</b>	Logical AND: <b>push(pop() op pop())</b>
<b>%&gt;</b>	Logical OR: <b>push(pop() op pop())</b>
<b>%&lt;</b>	Logical NOR: <b>push(pop() op pop())</b>
<b>%!</b>	Unary NOT: <b>push(op pop())</b>
<b>%~</b>	Unary complement: <b>push(op pop())</b>
<b>%i</b>	Add one to first two parmameters (for ANSI terminals)

The parameterized mechanism is based on a stack. % operations push parameters and constants onto the stack, do arithmetic and other operations on the top of the stack, and print out values in various formats. Up to nine parameters can be used at once. If-then-else testing is possible, as is storage in a limited number of variables. There is no provision for loops or printing strings in any format other than %s.

For example, compare the **termcap** entry **cm** and the **terminfo** entry **cup**. **%+** (add space and print as a character) **cm** would be treated as **%p1%' %+%c**, that is, push the first parameter, push space, add the top two numbers onto the stack, and output the top item on the stack using character (%c) format. For the second parameter, change **%p1** to **%p2**. **%.** (print as a character) becomes **%p1%c**. **%d** (print in decimal) becomes **%p1%d**.

As with **tgoto()**, characters standing by themselves (no '%' sign) are output as is.

### Changes from **termcap** to **terminfo**

This section describes features of **terminfo** that **termcap** does not contain.

#### Defaults

**terminfo** does not contain every default found in **termcap**. **termcap**, for example, assumed that \r was a carriage return unless **nc** was present, indicating that it did not work, or **cr** was present, indicating an alternative. In **terminfo**, if **cr** is present, the string so given works; otherwise it should be assumed *not* to work. The **bs** and **bc** capabilities are replaced by **cub** and **cub1**. (The former takes a parameter, moving left that many spaces. The latter is probably more common in terminals and moves left one space.) **nl** (linefeed) has been split into two functions: **cudl** (moves the cursor down one line) and **ind** (scroll forward). **cudl** applies when the cursor is not on the bottom line, **ind** applies when it is on the bottom line. The bell capability is now explicitly given as **bel**.

The **terminfo** data base is compiled, unlike **termcap**. This means that a **terminfo** source file (describing some set of terminals) is processed by the **terminfo** compiler, producing a binary description of the terminal in a file under **/usr/lib/terminfo**. The function **setupterm()** reads this file. The advantage to compilation is that starting up a program using **terminfo** is faster. The increase in speed comes partly from not having to skip past other terminal descriptions, and partly from the compiler having sorted the capabilities into order so that a linear scan can read them in.



The **terminfo** compiler **tic** uses the environment variable **TERMINFO** to be the destination directory of the new object files. It is also used by **setupterm()** to find an entry for a given terminal. First it looks in the directory given in **TERMINFO** and, if not found there, checks **/usr/lib/terminfo**.

### Basic Example

The following gives the **terminfo** description for a simple terminal, the Lear-Siegler ADM-3:

```
adm3 | 3 | lsi adm3,  
      cr=^M, cudl=^J, ind=^J, bel=^G,  
      am, cubl=^H, clear=^Z, lines#24, cols#80
```

As you can see, the description is divided into comma-separated fields. The following discusses each field in detail.

#### **adm3 | 3 | lsi adm3,**

The first field names the terminal. This field is unique in that it is divided into a number of sub-fields, which are separated by vertical bar characters. The first sub-field gives the name by which the terminal is normally addressed in a program; the last gives a longer, descriptive name.

**cr=^M,** To move the cursor to the left margin, send **<ctrl-M>**.

**cudl=^J,**

To move the cursor down one row, send **<ctrl-J>**.

**ind=^J,**

To scroll the screen up, send **<ctrl-J>**. Note that the ADM-3, like most terminals, does not scroll unless the cursor is on the last row.

**bel=^G,**

To ring the terminal's bell, send **<ctrl-G>**.

**am,**

This boolean code indicates that the ADM-3 wraps to the leftmost column of the of the next row when the cursor reaches the rightmost column.

**cubl=^H,**

To move the cursor nondestructively one column to the left, send **<ctrl-H>**.

**clear=^Z,**

To clear the screen, send **<ctrl-Z>**.

**lines#24,**

The ADM-3 has 24 rows (lines).

**cols#80,**

The ADM-3 has 80 columns.

### C-Level Routines

The following functions can be called from within a C program to read a **terminfo** entry:

<b>fixterm()</b>	Set the terminal into program mode
<b>putp()</b>	Write a string into <i>stdwn</i>
<b>resetterm()</b>	Reset the terminal into a saved mode
<b>setupterm()</b>	Initialize terminal capabilities
<b>tparm()</b>	Output a parameterized string
<b>tputs()</b>	Process a capability string
<b>vidattr()</b>	Set the terminal's video attributes
<b>vidputs()</b>	Set video attributes into a function

Function **setupterm()** initializes a terminal. This routine inhales all capabilities at once, and performs all other system-dependent initialization.

A program should call **resetterm()** when it exits or calls a shell escape, to restore the tty modes. When it returns from a shell escape, the program should call **fixterm()** to set the tty modes back to their internal settings.

**tparm()** is a more powerful, parameterized string mechanism. It resembles the **termcap** function **tgoto()**. **tgoto()** is still available for compatibility. **tputs()** is unchanged.

COHERENT-386 **curses** eliminates the external variables **UP**, **BC**, **PC**, and **ospeed**. It handles their function internally.

These functions live in library **/usr/lib/libcurses.a**.

### Files

**/usr/lib/libcurses.a** — Routines for reading **terminfo** descriptions  
**/usr/lib/terminfo/?/\*** — Directories containing compiled descriptions

### See Also

**captinfo**, **curses**, **fixterm()**, **putp()**, **resetterm()**, **setupterm()**, **system maintenance**, **term**, **termcap**, **tic**, **tparm()**, **tputs()**, **vi**, **vidaddr()**, **vidputs()**

Strang, J., Mui, L., O'Reilly, T.: *Termcap and Terminfo*. Sebastopol, CA: O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., 1991. *Highly recommended.*

### Notes

This implementation of **terminfo** was written by Pavel Curtis of Cornell University. It was ported to COHERENT by Udo Munk.

**terminfo** and its related programs are used only under COHERENT 386.

## **termio** — Device Driver (COHERENT 386)

General terminal interface

COHERENT uses two methods for controlling terminals: **sgtty** and **termio**. Programmers who use COHERENT 286 must use **sgtty**. Programmers who use COHERENT 386 may use **sgtty** or **termio**, whichever they prefer.

To use **sgtty**, simply include the statement **#include <sgtty.h>** in your sources. To use **termio**, include the statement **#include <termio.h>**.

The rest of this article discusses the **termio** method of controlling terminals.

When a terminal file is opened, it normally causes the process to wait until a connection is established. In practice, users' programs seldom open these files; they are opened by the program *getty* and become a user's standard input, output, and error files. The very first terminal file opened by the process group leader of a terminal file not already associated with a process group becomes the *control terminal* for that process group. The control terminal plays a special role in handling **quit** and **interrupt** signals, as discussed below. The control terminal is inherited by a child process

during a call to **fork**. A process can break this association by changing its process group using **setpgp**.

A terminal associated with one of these files ordinarily operates in full-duplex mode. Characters can be typed at any time, even while output is occurring, and are only lost when the system's input buffers become completely full, which is rare, or when the user has accumulated the maximum allowed number of input characters that have not yet been read by some program. Currently, this limit is 256 characters. When the input limit is reached, the system throws away all the saved characters without notice.

Normally, terminal input is processed in units of lines. A line is delimited by a newline character (ASCII LF), an end-of-file character (ASCII EOT), or an end-of-line character. This means that a program attempting to read will be suspended until an entire line has been typed. Also, no matter how many characters are requested in the read call, at most one line will be returned. It is not, however, necessary to read a whole line at once; any number of characters may be requested in a read, even one, without losing information.

During input, the system normally processes **erase** and **kill** characters. By default, the backspace character erases the last character typed, except that it will not erase beyond the beginning of the line. By default, the **<ctrl-U>** kills (deletes) the entire input line, and optionally outputs a newline character. Both these characters operate on a keystroke-by-keystroke basis, independently of any backspacing or tabbing which may have been done. Both the erase and kill characters may be entered literally by preceding them with the escape character (**\**). In this case, the escape character is not read. You may change the erase and kill characters.

Certain characters have special functions on input. These functions and their default character values are summarized as follows:

<b>INTR</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-C&gt;</b> or ASCII ETX) generates an <i>interrupt</i> signal that is sent to all processes with the associated control terminal. Normally, each such process is forced to terminate, but arrangements may be made either to ignore the signal or to receive a trap to an agreed-upon location; see the Lexicon entry for <b>signal</b> .
<b>QUIT</b>	(Control- <b>\</b> or ASCII ES) generates a <i>quit</i> signal. Its treatment is identical to that of the interrupt signal except that, unless a receiving process has made other arrangements, it will not only be terminated but a core image file (called <b>core</b> ) will be created in the current working directory.
<b>ERASE</b>	( <b>&lt;backspace&gt;</b> or ASCII BS) erases the preceding character. It will not erase beyond the start of a line, as delimited by a newline, <b>EOF</b> , or EOL character.
<b>KILL</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-U&gt;</b> or ASCII NAK) deletes the entire line, as delimited by a newline, <b>EOF</b> , or EOL character.
<b>EOF</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-D&gt;</b> or ASCII EOT) generates an end-of-file character from a terminal. When received, all the characters waiting to be read are immediately passed to the program without waiting for a newline, and the <b>EOF</b> is discarded. Thus, if no characters are waiting, which is to say the <b>EOF</b> occurred at the beginning of a line, zero characters will be passed back, which is the standard end-of-file indication.
<b>NL</b>	(ASCII LF) is the normal line delimiter. It cannot be changed or escaped.
<b>EOL</b>	(ASCII LF) is an additional line delimiter, line NL. It is not normally used.
<b>STOP</b>	( <b>&lt;ctrl-S&gt;</b> or ASCII DC3) can be used to suspend output. It is useful with CRT terminals to prevent output from disappearing before it can be read. While output is suspended, STOP characters are ignored and not read.

**START** (<ctrl-G> or ASCII DC1) resumes output that has been suspended by a STOP character. While output is not suspended, START characters are ignored and not read. The start/stop characters can not be changed or escaped.

You can change the character values for **INTR**, **QUIT**, **ERASE**, **KILL**, **EOF**, and **EOL** To suit your tastes. The **ERASE**, **KILL**, and **EOF** character may be escaped by a preceding \ character, in which case the system ignores its special meaning.

When the carrier signal from the data-set drops, a *hangup* signal is sent to all processes that have this terminal as the control terminal. Unless other arrangements have been made, this signal causes the process to terminate. If the hangup signal is ignored, any subsequent read returns with an end-of-file indication. Thus, programs that read a terminal and test for end-of-file can terminate appropriately when hung up on.

When one or more characters are written, they are transmitted to the terminal as soon as previously written characters have finished typing. Input characters are echoed by putting them into the output queue as they arrive. If a process produces characters more rapidly than they can be printed, it will be suspended when its output queue exceeds some limit. When the queue has drained down to some threshold, the program resumes.

Several calls to **ioctl** apply to terminal files. The primary calls use the following structure, defined in **<termio.h>**:

```
#define NCC 8
struct termio {
    unsigned short c_iflag;    /* input modes */
    unsigned short c_oflag;    /* output modes */
    unsigned short c_cflag;    /* control modes */
    unsigned short c_lflag;    /* local modes */
    char           c_line;     /* line discipline */
    unsigned char  c_cc[NCC];  /* control chars */
};
```

The special control characters are defined by the array **c\_cc**. The relative positions and initial values for each function are as follows:

```
0  INTR      ^C
1  QUIT      ^\
2  ERASE     \b
3  KILL      ^U
4  EOF       ^D
5  EOL       \n
6  reserved
7  reserved
```

The field **c\_iflag** describes the basic terminal input control:

<b>BRKINT</b>	Signal interrupt on break.
<b>IGNPAR</b>	Ignore characters with parity errors.
<b>INPCK</b>	Enable input parity check.
<b>ISTRIP</b>	Strip character.
<b>ICRNL</b>	Map CR to NL on input.
<b>IXON</b>	Enable start/stop output control.
<b>IXOFF</b>	Enable start/stop input control.

If INPCK is set, input parity checking is enabled. If INPCK is not set, input parity checking is disabled. This allows output parity generation without input parity errors.

If ISTRIP is set, valid input characters are stripped to 7-bits before being processed; otherwise, all eight bits are processed.

If IXON is set, start/stop output control is enabled. A received STOP character will suspend output and a received START character will restart output. All start/stop characters are ignored and not read.

If IXOFF is set, the system will transmit START/STOP characters when the input queue is nearly empty/full.

The initial input control value is all bits clear.

The field *c\_oflag* field specifies the system treatment of output:

<b>OPOST</b>	Postprocess output.
<b>OLCUC</b>	Map lower case to upper on output.
<b>ONLCR</b>	Map NL to CR-NL on output.

If OPOST is set, output characters are post-processed as indicated by the remaining flags; otherwise, characters are transmitted without change.

If OLCUC is set, a lower-case alphabetic character is transmitted as the corresponding upper-case character. This function is often used with IUCLC.

If ONLCR is set, the NL character is transmitted as the CR-NL character pair.

The initial output control value is all bits clear.

The field *c\_cflag* describes the hardware control of the terminal, as follows:

<b>CBAUD</b>	Baud rate:
<b>B0</b>	Hang up
<b>B50</b>	50 baud
<b>B75</b>	75 baud
<b>B110</b>	110 baud
<b>B134</b>	134.5 baud
<b>B150</b>	150 baud
<b>B200</b>	200 baud
<b>B300</b>	300 baud
<b>B600</b>	600 baud
<b>B1200</b>	1200 baud
<b>B1800</b>	1800 baud
<b>B2400</b>	2400 baud
<b>B4800</b>	4800 baud
<b>B9600</b>	9600 baud
<b>B19200</b>	19200 baud
<b>B38400</b>	38400 baud
<b>CREAD</b>	Enable receiver
<b>PARENB</b>	Parity enable
<b>PARODD</b>	Odd parity, else even
<b>HUPCL</b>	Hang up on last close
<b>CLOCAL</b>	Local line, else dial-up

The CBAUD bits specify the baud rate. The zero baud rate, B0, is used to hang up the connection. If B0 is specified, the data-terminal-ready signal is not asserted. Normally, this disconnects the line. For any particular hardware, the system ignores impossible changes to the speed.

If PARENB is set, parity generation and detection is enabled and a parity bit is added to each character. If parity is enabled, the PARODD flag specifies odd parity if set; otherwise, even parity is used.

If CREAD is set, the receiver is enabled. Otherwise, no characters will be received.

If HUPCL is set, COHERENT disconnects the line when the last process with the line open closes the line or terminates; that is, the data-terminal-ready signal is not asserted.

If CLOCAL is set, the system assumes that the line to be a local, direct connection with no modem control. Otherwise, it assumes modem control.

The line discipline uses the field *c\_lflag* to control terminal functions. The basic line discipline (0) provides the following:

<b>ISIG</b>	Enable signals.
<b>ICANON</b>	Canonical input (erase and kill processing).
<b>XCASE</b>	Canonical upper/lower presentation.
<b>ECHO</b>	Enable echo.
<b>ECHOE</b>	Echo erase character as BS-SP-BS.
<b>ECHOK</b>	Echo NL after kill character.
<b>ECHONL</b>	Echo NL.

If ISIG is set, the system checks each input character against the special control characters INTR and QUIT. If an input character matches one of these control characters, the system executes the function associated with that character. If ISIG is not set, the system performs no checking; thus, these special input functions are possible only if ISIG is set. You can disable these functions individually by changing the value of the control character to an unlikely or impossible value (e.g. 0377).

If ICANON is set, the system enables canonical processing. This enables the erase and kill edit functions, and limits the assembly of input characters into lines delimited by NL, EOF, and EOL. If ICANON is not set, read requests are satisfied directly from the input queue. A read will not be satisfied until at least MIN characters have been received or the timeout value TIME has expired. This allows the system to read efficiently fast bursts of input while still allowing single-character input. The MIN and TIME values are stored in the position for the EOF and EOL characters, respectively. The time value represents tenths of seconds.

If XCASE is set, and if ICANON is set, an upper-case letter is accepted on input by preceding it with a \ character, and is output preceded by a \ character. In this mode, the following escape sequences are generated on output and accepted on input:

For:    Use:

'	\'
	\
~	\^
{	\{
}	\}
\	\\

For example, **A** is input as **\a**, **\n** as **\\n**, and **\N** as **\\\n**.

If ECHO is set, characters are echoed as received.

When ICANON is set, the following echo functions are possible: If ECHO and ECHOE are set, the erase character is echoed as ASCII BS SP BS, which clears the last character from the screen. If

ECHOE is set and ECHO is not set, the erase character is echoed as ASCII SP BS. If ECHOK is set, the NL character is echoed after the kill character to emphasize that the line will be deleted. Note that an escape character preceding the erase or kill character removes any special function. If ECHONL is set, the NL character is echoed even if ECHO is not set. This is useful for terminals set to local echo ("half duplex"). Unless escaped, the EOF character is not echoed. Because EOT is the default EOF character, this prevents terminals that respond to EOT from hanging up.

The initial line-discipline control value is all bits clear.

The primary calls to **ioctl** have the following form:

```
ioctl( fildes, command, arg )
struct termio *arg;
```

The following commands use this form:

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| <b>TCGETA</b>  | Get the parameters associated with the terminal and store in the <i>termio</i> structure referenced by <b>arg</b> .                   |
| <b>TCSETA</b>  | Set the parameters associated with the terminal from the structure referenced by <b>arg</b> . The change is immediate.                |
| <b>TCSETAW</b> | Wait for the output to drain before setting the new parameters. This form should be used when changing parameters that affect output. |
| <b>TCSETAF</b> | Wait for the output to drain, then flush the input queue and set the new parameters.  |

Additional calls to **ioctl** have the following form:

```
ioctl( fildes, command, arg )
int arg;
```

The following commands use this form:

- TCFLSH**  
Flush both the input and output queues.

Note that header **termio.h** defines other constants for purposes of portability. Features designated by these constants are unavailable in the current release of COHERENT 386.

## Files

/dev/tty\*

## See Also

device drivers, **ioctl()**, **stty**, **terminal**, **termio.h**

## **termio.h** — Header File (COHERENT 386)

Definitions used with terminal input and output  
**#include <termio.h>**

**termio.h** defines structures and constants used by functions that control terminal input and output.

## See Also

header files, **termio**

## Notes

Programs that perform terminal control under COHERENT 286 must use **sgtty.h**. With COHERENT 386, the programmer may choose between **sgtty.h** and **termio.h** terminal control.

**test — Command**

Evaluate conditional expression

**test** *expression* ...

**test** evaluates an *expression*, which consists of string comparisons, numerical comparisons, and tests of file attributes. For example, a **test** command might be used within a shell command file to test whether a certain file exists and is readable. The logical result (true or false) of the *expression* is returned by the command, for use by a shell construct such as **if**.

*expression* is constructed from the following elements, which are true if the given condition holds and false if not:

- exp1 -a exp2** Both expressions *exp1* and *exp2* are true.
- b file** *file* is a block-special device. **ksh** only.
- c file** *file* is a character-special file. **ksh** only.
- d file** *file* exists and is a directory.
- file1 -ef file2** *file1* is the same file as *file2*. **ksh** only.
- n1 -eq n2** Numbers *n1* and *n2* are equal.
- f file** *file* exists and is not a directory.
- g file** File mode has **setgid** bit. **ksh** only.
- n1 -ge n2** Number *n1* is greater than or equal to *n2*.
- n1 -gt n2** Number *n1* is greater than *n2*.
- k file** File mode has sticky bit. **ksh** only.
- L file** File is a symbolic link. **ksh** only.
- n1 -le n2** Number *n1* is less than or equal to *n2*.
- n1 -lt n2** Number *n1* is less than *n2*.
- n string** *string* has nonzero length.
- n1 -ne n2** Numbers *n1* and *n2* are not equal.
- file1 -nt file2** *file1* is newer than *file2*. **ksh** only.
- exp1 -o exp2** Either expression *exp1* or *exp2* is true. **-a** has greater precedence than **-o**.
- file1 -ot file2** *file1* is older than *file2*. **ksh** only.
- p file** *file* is a named pipe. **ksh** only.
- r file** *file* exists and is readable.
- s file** *file* exists and has nonzero size.
- t [fd]** *fd* is the file descriptor number of a file which is open and a terminal. If no *fd* is given, it defaults to the standard output (file descriptor 1).
- u file** File mode has **setuid** set. **ksh** only.



**-w file**            *file* exists and is writable.  
**-x file**            *file* exists and executable. **ksh** only.  
**-z string**          *string* has zero length (is a null string).  
*string*            *string* has nonzero length.  
**string1 = string2**        *string1* is equal to *string2*.  
**! exp**               Negates the logical value of expression *exp*.  
**string1 != string2**       *string1* is not equal to *string2*.  
**(exp)**               Parentheses allow expression grouping.

### Example

The following example uses the **test** command to determine whether a file is writable.

```
if test ! -w /dev/lp
then
    echo The line printer is inaccessible.
fi
```

Under COHERENT, the command '[' is linked to **test**. If invoked as '[', **test** checks that its last argument is ']'. This allows an alternative syntax: simply enclose *expression* in square brackets. For example, the above example can be written as follows:

```
if [ ! -w /dev/lp ]
then
    echo The line printer is inaccessible.
fi
```

For a more extended example of the square-bracket syntax, see **sh**.

### See Also

**commands, expr, find, if, ksh, sh, while**

### Notes

The Korn shell's version of this command is based on the public-domain version written by Erik Baalbergen and Arnold Robbins.

### tgetent() — termcap Function

Read termcap entry  
**int tgetent(bp, name)**  
**char \*bp, \*name;**

**tgetent()** is one of a set of functions that read a **termcap** terminal description. It extracts the entry from file **/etc/termcap** for the terminal *name* and writes it into a buffer at address *bp*. *bp* should be a character buffer of 1,024 bytes and must be retained through all subsequent calls to the other functions. It returns -1 if it cannot open **/etc/termcap**, zero if the terminal name given does not have an entry, and one upon a successful search.

**tgetent()** first looks in the environment to see if the **termcap** variable had already been set. If it finds that the variable **termcap** has been set, that the value does *not* begin with a slash, and that the terminal type name in the **termcap** variable is the same as that in the environment variable **TERM**, then **tgetent()** uses the **termcap** string instead of reading the file **/etc/termcap**. However, if

the **termcap** string does begin with a slash, then it is used as the path name of a terminal-capabilities file other than **/etc/termcap**. This can speed entry into programs that call **tgetent()**, and can be used to help debug new terminal descriptions.

### Files

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base  
**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

### See Also

**termcap**

### **tgetflag()** — termcap Function

Get termcap Boolean entry

```
int tgetflag(name)
char *name;
```

**tgetflag()** is one of a set of functions that read a **termcap** terminal description. It returns one if the requested Boolean capability *name* is present in the terminal's **termcap** entry, zero if it is not.

### Files

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base  
**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

### See Also

**termcap**

### **tgetnum()** — termcap Function

Get termcap numeric feature

```
int tgetnum(name)
char *name;
```

**tgetnum()** is one of a set of functions that read a **termcap** terminal description. It returns the value of the numeric feature *name*, as defined in the terminal's **termcap** entry. It returns -1 if the feature is not present in the terminal's entry.

### Files

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base  
**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

### See Also

**termcap**

### **tgetstr()** — termcap Function

Get termcap string entry

```
char *tgetstr(name, area)
char *name, **area;
```

**tgetstr()** is one of a set of functions that read a **termcap** terminal description. It reads the string value of feature *name* from the terminal's **termcap** description, and writes it into the buffer at address *area*. It also advances the value of the pointer to *area*.

**tgetstr()** decodes the abbreviations for the fields used in the **termcap** entry, except for padding and for cursor-addressing information.

### Files

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base  
**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

## See Also

**termcap**

## **tgoto()** — termcap Function

Read/interpret termcap cursor-addressing string

**char \*tgoto**(*cm, destcol, destline*)

**char \*cm; int scrcol, scrline;**

**tgoto()** is one of a set of functions that read a **termcap** terminal description. It decodes a cursor-addressing string from the *cm* **termcap** feature, and writes it onto the screen, at column *scrcol* and line *destline*. **tgoto()** uses the external variables **UP** (from the **up** feature) and **BC** (if **bc** is given rather than **bs**) if it is necessary to avoid placing **\n**, **<ctrl-D>**, or **<ctrl-@>** into the returned string. Programs calling **tgoto()** should turn off the **XTABS** bits, as **tgoto()** may write a tab. If a '%' sequence is given that is not understood, **tgoto()** returns "OOPS".

## Files

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base

**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Function library

## See Also

**termcap**

## **tic** — Command

Compile a terminfo description

**tic [-v[n]] sourcefile**

The command **tic** compiles a *sourcefile* of **terminfo** information into a binary object.

*sourcefile* must be self-contained, i.e., it may not contain "use" entries that refer to terminals not described fully in the same file.

The object files generated by **tic** are normally placed into subdirectories of the directory **/usr/lib/terminfo**. If the environment variable **TERMINFO** is defined, it is assumed to name an alternative directory to use.

The flag **-vn** tells **tic** to output debugging and tracing information. *n* sets the amount of debugging information to produce, as follows:

- 1 Names of files created
- 2 Information related to the "use" facility
- 3 Statistics from the hashing algorithm
- 5 String-table memory allocations
- 7 Entries into the string-table
- 8 List of tokens encountered by scanner
- 9 All values computed in construction of the hash table

*n* is set to one by default.

## Files

**/usr/lib/terminfo/\*** — Default location of object files

## See Also

**commands, terminfo, term**

Strang, J., Mui, L., O'Reilly, T.: *termcap and terminfo*. Sebastopol, CA: O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., 1991.

### Notes

**tic** was written by Pavel Curtis of Cornell University. It was ported to COHERENT by Udo Munk, Neuss, Germany.

**terminfo** and its related programs are used only under COHERENT 386.

### **tick()** — System Call

Get time

**long tick()**

**tick()** returns the number of clock ticks since system startup. The number of clock ticks per second is set by the manifest constant **HZ**, which is defined in header file **const.h**. At present, there are 100 ticks per second.

### See Also

**alarm()**, **alarm2()**, **system calls**

### **time** — Overview

COHERENT includes a number of routines that allow you to set and manipulate time, as recorded on the system's clock, into a variety of formats. These routines should be adequate for nearly any task that involves temporal calculations or the maintenance of data gathered over a long period of time.

All functions, global variables, and manifest constants used in connection with time are defined and described in the header files **time.h** and **timeb.h**.

The COHERENT system includes the following functions to manipulate time:

<b>asctime()</b>	Convert time structure to ASCII string
<b>ctime()</b>	Convert system time to an ASCII string
<b>ftime()</b>	Get the current time (COHERENT 286 only)
<b>gmtime()</b>	Convert system time to calendar structure
<b>localtime()</b>	Convert system time to calendar structure
<b>settz()</b>	Set local time zone
<b>time()</b>	Get the current time

To print out the local time, a program must perform the following tasks: First, read the system time with **time()**. Then, it must pass **time()**'s output to **localtime()**, which breaks it down into the **tm** structure. Next, it must pass **localtime()**'s output to **asctime()**, which transforms the **tm** structure into an ASCII string. Finally, it must pass the output of **asctime()** to **printf()**, which displays it on the standard output device. See the entry for **asctime()** for an example of such a program.

### Example

For an example of time functions, see the entry for **asctime**.

### See Also

**libraries**

### Notes

COHERENT 286 implements **ftime()** as a system call and implements **time()** as a general function. COHERENT 386 implements **time()** as a system call and eliminates **ftime()**. Because **ftime()** is not part of the ANSI standard for C, you should strongly consider not using it, and replacing it in existing code with **time()**.

**time** — Command

Time the execution of a command

**time** [*command*]

**time** invokes the given *command* with any arguments provided. Upon termination, **time** prints the elapsed real time, CPU time in the system, and CPU time in the user program on the standard error output.

**See Also**

**commands**, **date**, **ps**, **times**

**Diagnostics**

If the *command* terminates abnormally, the reason is printed.

**time()** — System Call

Get current system time

**#include** <time.h>

**#include** <sys/types.h>

**time\_t** **time**(*tp*) **time\_t** \**tp*;

**time()** reads and returns the current system time. COHERENT defines the current system time as the number of seconds since January 1, 1970, 0h00m00s GMT.

*tp* points to a data element of the type **time\_t**, which is defined in the header file **types.h** as being equivalent to a **long**. If *tp* is initialized to a value other than NULL, then **time()** attempts to write the system time into the address to which *tp* points. If, however, *tp* is initialized to NULL, then **time()** returns the current system time but does not attempt to write it anywhere.

**Example**

For an example of this call, see the entry for **asctime**.

**See Also**

**date**, **ftime()**, **time** (overview)

**Notes**

Under COHERENT 286, **time()** is implemented as a general function rather than a system call.

**time()** in general replaces **ftime()**, which is not recognized by the ANSI Standard.

**time.h** — Header File

Give time-description structure

**#include** <time.h>

**time.h** is a header file that contains descriptions and declarations for elements used to manipulate system time under COHERENT.

**See Also**

**header files**, **time**

**timeb.h** — Header File

Declare timeb structure

**#include** <sys/timeb.h>

The header file **timeb.h** declares the structure **timeb**, which is used by the function **ftime** to return time information.

### See Also

**time()**, header files, **time**

### *timef.h* — Header File

Definitions for user-level timed functions

**#include <timef.h>**

**timef.h** defines structures and constants used by user-level timed functions.

### See Also

header files

### *timeout.h* — Header File

Define the timer queue

**#include <timeout.h>**

**timeout.h** defines the timeout queue. The timeout queue can, as its name implies, be used to call a function when a process has “timed out”.

### See Also

header files

### *times* — Command

Print total user and system times

**times**

**times** prints the total elapsed user time and system time for the current shell and all its children. It gives each time in minutes, seconds and tenths of seconds. For example,

```
1m11.8s 1m35.8s
```

indicates a total user time of 1 minute 11.8 seconds, and a total system time of 1 minute 35.8 seconds.

The shell executes **times** directly.

### See Also

commands, **ksh**, **time**, **sh**

### *times.h* — Header File

Definitions used with **times()** system call

**#include <times.h>**

**times.h** defines the structure **tbuffer**, which is used to implement the **times** system call.

### See Also

header files, **times()**

### *times()* — System Call

Obtain process execution times

**#include <sys/times.h>**

**#include <sys/const.h>**

**int times(*tbp*)**

**struct tbuffer \**tbp*;**

**times()** reads CPU time information about the current process and its children, and writes it into the structure pointed to by *tbp*. The structure **tbuffer** is declared in the header file **sys/times.h**, as

follows:

```
struct tbuffer {
    long   tb_utime;      /* process user time */
    long   tb_stime;      /* process system time */
    long   tb_cutime;     /* childrens' user times */
    long   tb_cstime;     /* childrens' system times */
};
```

All of the times are measured in basic machine cycles, or **HZ**, which may be obtained from the header file **sys/const.h**. Under AT COHERENT, **HZ** is 100.

The childrens' times include the sum of the times of all terminated child processes of the current process and of all of their children. The *user* time represents execution time of user code, whereas *system* time represents system overhead, such as executing system calls, processing signals, and other monitoring functions.

### Files

<sys/times.h>

<sys/const.h>

### See Also

acct(), const.h, ftime(), system calls, time()

## TIMEZONE — Environmental Variable

Time zone information

**TIMEZONE**=standard:offset[:daylight: date:date:hour:minutes]

The COHERENT system records time internally as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). It does so to make it easier to coordinate exchange of information across systems in different time zones around the world.

**TIMEZONE** is an environmental parameter that holds information about your local time zone. This information is used by COHERENT's time routines to convert GMT to the date and time in your local area. **TIMEZONE** takes into account your local time zone's offset from Greenwich, whether your country uses daylight savings time, and the date and hour that daylight savings time begins and ends.

To set **TIMEZONE**, use the command

```
export TIMEZONE=[description]
```

where *description* is the string that describes your time zone. What this string consists of will be described below. Most users write this command into the file **.profile**, so that **TIMEZONE** is set automatically whenever they log onto the COHERENT system.

COHERENT's installation procedure creates file **/etc/timezone**, which sets **TIMEZONE**. This file is executed by **/etc/profile** when each user logs in. Thus, you must set the **TIMEZONE** in your **.profile** only if it differs from the system's **TIMEZONE** as set in **/etc/timezone**. This would be necessary if, for example, a user in New York were to regularly login on a system in Chicago.

### The Description String

A **TIMEZONE** description string consists of seven fields that are separated by colons. Fields 1 and 2 must be filled; fields 3 through 7 are optional.

Field 1 gives the name of your standard time zone. Field 2 gives the time zone's offset from Greenwich Mean Time in minutes. Offsets are positive for time zones west of Greenwich and negative for time zones east of Greenwich. For example, users in Chicago set these fields as follows:

**TIMEZONE=CST:360**

**CST** is an abbreviation for Central Standard Time, that area's time zone; and 360 refers to the fact that Chicago's time zone is 360 minutes (six hours) behind that of Greenwich.

Field 3 gives the name of the local daylight saving time zone. In Chicago, for example, this field would be set as follows:

**TIMEZONE=CST:360:CDT**

**CDT** is an abbreviation for Central Daylight Time. The absence of this field indicates that your area does not use daylight saving time.

Fields 4 and 5 specify the dates on which daylight saving time begins and ends. If field 3 is set but fields 4 and 5 are not, changes between standard time and daylight saving time are assumed to occur at the times legislated in the United States: at 2 A.M. standard time on the first Sunday in April, and at 2 A.M. daylight saving time on the last Sunday in October.

Fields 4 and 5 each consist of three numbers separated by periods. The first number specifies which occurrence of the day in the month marks the change, counting positive occurrences from the beginning of the month and negative occurrences from the the end of the month. The second number specifies a day of the week, numbering Sunday as one. The third number specifies a month of the year, numbering January as one. For example, in Chicago fields 4 and 5 are set to the following:

**TIMEZONE=CST:360:CDT:1.1.4:-1.1.10**

If the first number in either field is set to zero, then the last two numbers are assumed to indicate an absolute date. This is done because some countries switch to daylight saving time on the same day each year, instead of a given day of the week.

Finally, fields 6 and 7 specify the hour of the day at which daylight saving time begins and ends, and the number of minutes of adjustment. In Chicago, these are set as follows:

**TIMEZONE=CST:360:CDT:1.1.4:-1.1.10:2:60**

The '2' of field 6 indicates that the switch to daylight savings time occurs at 2 A.M. The "60" of field 7 indicates that daylight savings time changes the local time by 60 minutes. Although 60 minutes is the standard change, some regions of the world shift by 30, 45, 90, or 120 minutes; the last shift is also called "double daylight saving time".

For an example of this variable's use in a program, see the entry for **asctime**.

### **See Also**

**environmental variables, time (overview)**

### **Notes**

For those requiring more information on this subject, much research has been performed by astrologers. See *Time Changes in the World*, compiled by Doris Chase Doane (three volumes, Hollywood, California, Professional Astrologers, Inc., 1970).

### **TMPDIR — Environmental Variable**

Directory that holds temporary files

The command **cc** reads the environmental variable **TMPDIR** to see where you want it to write its temporary files. You can speed compilation by building a RAM disk and pointing **TMPDIR** to point at it.

For example, if you have created a RAM disk and mounted it as **/z**, then by embedding the



instruction

```
export TMPDIR=/z/tmp
```

in your **.profile**, you can ensure that **cc** will write all of its temporary files onto the RAM disk.

### See Also

**cc**, **environmental variables**, **ram**

## tmpnam() — General Function

Generate a unique name for a temporary file

```
#include <stdio.h>
char *tmpnam(name);
char *name;
```

**tmpnam()** constructs a unique name for a file. The names returned by **tmpnam()** generally are mechanical concatenations of letters, and therefore are mostly used to name temporary files, which are never seen by the user. A file named by **tmpnam()** does not automatically disappear when the program exits. You must explicitly remove it before the program ends if you want it to disappear.

*name* points to the buffer into which **tmpnam()** writes the name it generates. If *name* is set to NULL, **tmpnam()** writes the name into an internal buffer that may be overwritten each time you call this function.

**tmpnam()** returns a pointer to the temporary name. Unlike the related function **tempnam()**, **tmpnam()** assumes that the temporary file will be written into directory **/tmp** and builds the name accordingly.

### Example

For an example of this function, see **execve()**.

### See Also

**general functions**, **mktemp()**, **STDIO**, **tempnam()**

### Notes

If you want the file name to be written into *buffer*, you should allocate at least **L\_tmpnam** bytes of memory for it; **L\_tmpnam** is defined in the header **stdio.h**. Under COHERENT, it is 64 characters long.

## tolower() — ctype Macro

Convert characters to lower case

```
#include <ctype.h>
int tolower(c) int c;
```

**tolower()** converts the letter *c* to lower case. **tolower()** returns *c* converted to lower case.

Note that **tolower()** is not guaranteed to work correctly if handed anything other than an upper-case character, that is, a character for which **isupper()** returns true.

### Example

The following example demonstrates **tolower()** and **toupper()**. It reverses the case of every character in a text file.

```
#include <ctype.h>
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
main()
{
    FILE *fp;
    int ch;
    int filename[100];

    printf("Enter name of file to use: ");
    fflush(stdout);
    gets(filename);

    if ((fp = fopen(filename,"r")) != NULL) {
        while ((ch = fgetc(fp)) != EOF) {
            if (islower(ch))
                putchar(toupper(ch));
            else if (isupper(ch))
                putchar(tolower(ch));
            else
                putchar(ch);
        }
    } else
        printf("Cannot open %s.\n", filename);
}
```

**See Also****ctype, toupper()****touch — Command**

Update modification time of a file

**touch** [-c ]*file* ...

COHERENT keeps track of when each file was last modified. **touch** changes the modification time of each *file* to the current time, but does not modify its contents. By default, **touch** creates *file* if it does not already exist; the -c flag suppresses this.

**See Also****commands, make****toupper() — ctype macro**

Convert characters to upper case

#include &lt;ctype.h&gt;

int toupper(c) int c;

**toupper()** is a macro that converts the letter *c* to upper case and returns the converted character.

Note that **toupper()** is not guaranteed to work correctly if it is passed something other than a lower-case character, that is, any character for which **islower()** returns true.

**Example**

For an example of this routine, see the entry for **tolower()**.

**See Also****ctype, tolower()**

### ***tparm()* — terminfo Function**

Output a parameterized string

**#include <curses.h>**

**tparm(string,p1...p9)**

**char \*string, parm1 ... par9;**

COHERENT 386 comes with a set of functions that let you use **terminfo** descriptions to manipulate a terminal. **tparm()** outputs a parameterized string.

A *parameterized string* is a string into which parameters can be inserted, as in a **printf()** formatting string. Under **terminfo**, a parameterized string can hold up to nine parameters. **tparm()** expands the parameters, inserts them into the appropriate “slots” within the string, and then outputs the string.

See the Lexicon entry on **terminfo** for more information on parameterized strings.

**curses.h, terminfo, tputs()**

### ***tputs()* — termcap/terminfo Function**

Read/decode leading padding information

**tputs(cp, affcnt, outc)**

**register char \*cp; int affcnt; int (\*outc)();**

**tputs()** is one of a set of functions that read a **termcap** or **terminfo** terminal description. It decodes the leading padding information of the string *name*. *affcnt* is the number of lines affected by the operation, and is set to one if it is not applicable. *outc* is a routine called to write each character.

#### ***Files***

**/etc/termcap** — Terminal capabilities data base

**/etc/terminfo** — Terminal capabilities data base (COHERENT 386 only)

**/usr/lib/libcurses.a** — Routines for reading **terminfo** descriptions

**/usr/lib/libterm.a** — Routines for reading **termcap** descriptions

#### ***See Also***

**curses, termcap, terminfo**

#### ***Notes***

As noted above, **tputs()** can read either a **termcap** or a **terminfo** description. Obtaining the correct version of **tputs()** varies between COHERENT 286 and COHERENT 386.

COHERENT 286 implements only **termcap**. The **termcap** version of **tputs()** lives in library **/usr/lib/libterm.a**.

COHERENT 386 implements both **termcap** and **terminfo**. To obtain the **termcap** version of **tputs()**, link in the library **/usr/lib/libterm.a**. To obtain the **terminfo** version, however, link in the library **/usr/lib/libcurses.a**.

Note that under COHERENT 286, the **curses** library reads **termcap** descriptions; whereas under COHERENT 386, the **curses** library reads **terminfo** and also contains the routines for reading **terminfo** descriptions. For more information on this rather confusing topic, see the Lexicon entries for **curses**, **termcap**, and **terminfo**.

**tr — Command**

Translate characters

**tr** [-cds] *string1* [*string2*]

**tr** reads characters from the standard input, possibly translates each to another value or deletes it, and writes to standard output.

Each specified *string* may contain literal characters of the form *a* or *\b* (where *b* is non-numeric), octal representations of the form *\ooo* (where *o* is an octal digit), and character ranges of the form *X-Y*. **tr** rewrites each *string* with the appropriate conversions and range expansions.

If an input character is in *string1*, **tr** outputs the corresponding character of *string2*. If *string2* is shorter than *string1*, the result is the last character in *string2*.

The following flags control how **tr** translates characters:

- c Replace *string1* by the set of characters not in *string1*.
- d Delete characters in *string1* rather than translating them.
- s The “squeeze” option: map a sequence of the same character from *string1* to one output character.

**Example**

The following example prints all sequences of four or more spaces or printing characters from **infile**:

```
tr -cs ' --' '\12' <infile | grep ....
```

Here *string1* is the range from **<space>** to **'~'**, which includes all printing characters. Because this example uses the flags **-cs**, **tr** maps sequences of nonprinting characters to newline (octal 12).

**See Also**

ASCII, commands, ctype, sed

**trap — Command**

Execute command on receipt of signal

**trap** [*command*] [*n* ...]

**trap** instructs the shell to execute the given *command* when the shell receives signal *n* or any other signal in the optional list. If the *command* is omitted, **trap** resets traps for the given signals to the original values. If the *command* is a null string (i.e., a string that consists only of one null character), the shell ignores the given signals. If *n* is zero, the shell executes the specified *command* when it exits. When it is invoked with no arguments, **trap** prints the signal number and command for each signal on which a trap is set.

The shell executes **trap** directly.

**Example**

The following example takes two files and outputs only those lines which are the same.

```
# If input only one file-name then simply "cat".
if [ $# = 1 ]; then
    cat $1
    exit 0
```

```
# If input two file-names - Ok, else "Usage".
else
    if [ $# != 2 ]; then
        echo "Usage: cmn file1 [file2]"
        exit 1
    fi
fi

# TMP is original name of temporary file (/tmp/temp_(pid)
TMP=/tmp/temp_$$

# Temporary file has to be removed
trap 'rm $TMP; exit 1' 1 2 9

# Difference between "file1" and "difference between file1 and file2"
# is the common strings "file1" and "file2"
# The strings that are in "file1" and absent in "file2" print in TMP.
diff $1 $2 | sed -n -e "s/^< //p" > $TMP

# The strings that are in "file1" and absent in TMP print in stdout.
diff $1 $TMP | sed -n -e "s/^< //p"

# Remove temporary file
rm $TMP
```

## See Also

**commands, ksh, sh, signal**

## troff — Command

Extended text-formatting language

**troff** [*option ...*] [*file ...*]

The command **troff** is the COHERENT typesetter and text-formatting language. It performs typeset-quality text formatting, suitable for printing on either the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet II or III printers, or on any printer for which the PostScript language has been implemented.

## troff Input

**troff** processes each given *file*, or the standard input if none is specified, and prints the formatted result on the standard output. The input must consist of text with formatting commands embedded within it.

**troff** provides a full suite of commands that set line length, page length and page offset, generate vertical and horizontal motions, indentation, fill and adjust output lines, and center text. The great flexibility of **troff** lies in its acceptance of user-defined macros to control almost all higher-level formatting. For example, the formation of paragraphs, header and footer areas, and footnotes must all be implemented by the user via macros.

**troff** uses a superset of the commands and syntax used by **nroff**, the other COHERENT text-formatter: files prepared for the latter usually can be processed through the former without requiring any changes. **troff** differs from **nroff** in that **nroff** can perform only monospaced formatting, whereas **troff** can handle multiple fonts of type, both monospaced and proportionally spaced. It lets you load font-width tables dynamically, so you can use whatever fonts you have loaded into your printer at a given time. **troff** also lets you move about the page in increments other than sixths of an inch vertically or tenths of an inch horizontally.

**troff** produces output either in the Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language (PCL) or PostScript, whichever you prefer. The former can be printed on the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet family of laser printer, and can use any PCL bitmapped “soft font”. The latter can be printed on any printer that supports the PostScript language, and can use any font for which you have an Adobe Font Metric (AFM) description. The default is PCL output; to obtain PostScript, use the **-p** command-line option.

### Fonts

**troff** produces output suitable for printing on a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet or HP-compatible laser printer, using either PCL or PostScript. The default font information for PCL format is in file **/usr/lib/roff/troff\_pcl/fonts.r**, whereas that for PostScript format is in **/usr/lib/roff/troff\_ps/fonts.r**. Both are described in detail below.

To use other fonts, you must use the **.lf** request (see below) to load a *font width table*. The font width table is a binary file that describes the width of each character in the font and the printer command (escape sequence) needed to tell the printer to use the font. The program **fwtable** can build a font width table from a PCL bitmap font or from a PostScript AFM description. See its Lexicon entry for details on its use.

**troff** output includes a printer command for each desired font change. In PostScript mode, you can invoke all fonts that are built into your printer’s cartridge. In PCL mode, you can either invoke fonts that are built into your printer, either in ROM or in a cartridge, or you can download bitmapped “soft fonts” to your printer’s RAM. If you use the **.lc** primitive to request a soft font, you must download that font into your printer before you print the formatted document, or the results will be very strange. To download a soft font to your printer, use the command **hpr**. See the Lexicon entry for **hpr** for details on its use.

### Command-line Options

Command-line options may be listed in any order. They are as follows:

- d**            Debug: print each request before execution. This option is very useful when you are writing and debugging new macros.
- D**            Display the available fonts. These are all the fonts that have been loaded into **troff** with the **.lf** primitive (described below).
- f name**      Write the temporary file into file *name*.
- i files**      Read from the standard input after reading the given *files*.
- k**            Keep: do not erase the temporary file.
- l**            Landscape mode: output is rotated 90 degrees, with default size 11 by 8.5 inches rather than 8.5 by 11 inches.
- mname**       Include the macro file **/usr/lib/tmac.name** in the input stream.
- nN**          Number the first page of output *N*.
- p**            Produce output for a PostScript printer rather than for a HP-compatible printer.
- raN**         Set number register *a* to the value *N*.
- rabN**        Set number register *ab* to value *N*. For obvious reasons, *ab* cannot contain a digit.
- x**            Do not eject to the bottom of the last page when text ends. This option lets you use **troff** interactively, which is especially useful when debugging macros.

If the environmental variable **TROFF** is set when **troff** is invoked, its contents are prefixed to the list of command-line arguments. This allows the user to set commonly used options once in the environment rather than on each **troff** command line.

## LEXICON

## troff's Primitives

As noted earlier, **troff**'s command set is a superset of that used by **nroff**: see the Lexicon entry on **nroff** for information on the commands and escape sequences shared by **troff** and **nroff**. This article describes the primitives that **troff** does *not* share with **nroff**.

Please note that the basic **troff** unit is one-tenth of a point. A printer's point is 1/12 of a pica, which is in turn one-sixth of an inch; therefore, there are 72 points and 720 **troff** units in an inch.

### **.co** *endmark*

Copy input to output file directly, with no processing. If *endmark* argument is present, **troff** copies input until it finds a line containing *endmark* followed by **\n**. If no *endmark* is given, **troff** copies input until it finds a line containing **.co\n**. This directive is useful for embedding PostScript commands in an input file.

### **.cs** *XX N M*

Set font *XX* to use constant character spacing. The width of each character is *N* divided by 36 ems. If *M* is present, it specifies the width of an em; otherwise, *N* assumes the point size em for the given font.

### **.fd**      Display the currently available fonts.

### **.fp** *N XX*

Associate font name *XX* with numeric font position *N*. The given *N* should be a number between 1 and 9. Subsequently, the numeric font position can be used in an escape sequence **\fN** to select the font. (This nomenclature comes from the days when phototypesetters used print wheels that were set in fixed positions on the device.) The **nroff** primitive **.rf** performs a similar task, and is more flexible in its syntax.

### **.fz** *XX N*

Fix the point size of font *XX* at *N*. The point size of the font will not be affected by subsequent **.ps** commands or **\sN** point size escapes.

### **.lf** *XX file [n]*

Load font width table from *file* and use it for font *XX*. If *file* is not found, **troff** looks for **/usr/lib/roff/troff\_pcl/fwt/file** or **/usr/lib/roff/troff\_ps/fwt/file** (depending on whether the **-p** option is used).

The optional third argument sets the default point size of the loaded font to *n*. Note that this argument takes effect only if **troff** is running in **-p** (PostScript) mode.

For example, to load the font-width table for the PCL bitmapped font **cn090rpn.usp** (which sets Century Roman, nine point, portrait mode) and name it font **RS**, use the command:

```
.lf RS cn090rpn.usp
```

To do the same thing under PostScript, use the command:

```
.lf RS Century_R.fwt 9
```

Thereafter, you can reference font **RS** with either **.ft RS** or **\f(RS**.

Note that the second argument to this primitive must name a font-width table generated by the COHERENT command **fwtable**, not the font itself, although both may have the same name. Look in directories **/usr/lib/roff/troff\*/fwt** for the set of font-width tables that are included with COHERENT. If you purchase additional PCL fonts, you must use **fwtable** to generate font-width tables for them. Note, too, that if you are using **troff** in PCL mode, you must both load the font-width table into **troff** and use the command **hpr** to load the font itself into your printer: doing one without the other will not produce the results you desire.

Finally, please note that **.lf** is unique to the COHERENT implementation of **troff**, and cannot be ported to other implementations.

- .ps Np** Set point size to *N* points. The default point size is 10 point.
- .rb file** Read input from *file* and copy it to the output without processing. This directive is useful for including files containing PostScript routines in the output.
- .ss N** Set the minimum word spacing to *N* divided by 36 ems.
- .vs Np** Set the vertical spacing to *N* points. The default vertical spacing for **troff** is 11 points.

### Escape Sequences

**troff** recognizes the following escape sequences, in addition to those recognized by **nroff**:

- \s'N'** Set the point-size escape sequence to *N*. Like the **.ps** primitive, it changes the point size to *N*. The specified *N* may have a leading plus or minus sign to make the new size relative to the current point size.
- \XNN** Output character *NN* where *NN* are two hexadecimal digits. This is useful for forcing **troff** to print characters outside the normal printable range, e.g., those with the high-order bit set. Note that this escape sequence is unique to the COHERENT implementation of **troff** and cannot be ported to other implementations.

### Number Registers

The basic unit of measure under **troff** is the decipoint, or one-tenth of a printer's point. A point is one-tenth of a pica, which in turn is one sixth of an inch; therefore, there are 72 points in an inch, or 720 decipoints. All **troff** number registers that hold information about page or type dimensions hold that information in decipoints. For this reason, the decipoint is sometimes called the "machine unit."

The following table shows how other units of measure translate into **troff** machine units:

inch:	1i = 720u
vertical line space:	1v = 110u
centimeter:	1c = 283u
em:	1m = 100u
en:	1n = 50u
pica:	1P = 120u
point:	1p = 10u

If you are working with PostScript, you must remember to divide the value of a **troff** number register by ten before you pass the value to PostScript, or you will see very strange results on your page — or likelier, no results at all.

### Special Characters

**troff** includes a set of escape sequences for setting special characters. These escape sequences are defined in the files **/usr/lib/roff/troff\_\*/specials.r**. If you have additional fonts or an extended PostScript cartridge on your printer, you can modify these files to change the current definitions or add new ones.

The following shows the escape sequences currently defined in **specials.r**, and the character each prints:

<b>\(em</b>	—	<b>\(hy</b>	-	<b>\(bu</b>	•	<b>\(sq</b>	[
<b>\(ru</b>	—	<b>\(l4</b>	1/4	<b>\(l2</b>	1/2	<b>\(34</b>	3/4
<b>\(fi</b>	fi	<b>\(fl</b>	fl	<b>\(ff</b>	ff	<b>\(Fi</b>	fi
<b>\(Fl</b>	fl	<b>\(de</b>	°	<b>\(dg</b>	†	<b>\(fm</b>	'
<b>\(ct</b>	¢	<b>\(rg</b>	®	<b>\(co</b>	©	<b>\(tm</b>	™



<code>\(pl</code>	+	<code>\(mi</code>	-	<code>\(eq</code>	=	<code>\(**</code>	*
<code>\(sc</code>	§	<code>\(aa</code>	'	<code>\(ga</code>	`	<code>\(ul</code>	—
<code>\(sl</code>	/	<code>\(*a</code>	α	<code>\(*b</code>	β	<code>\(*g</code>	γ
<code>\(*d</code>	δ	<code>\(*e</code>	ε	<code>\(*z</code>	ζ	<code>\(*y</code>	η
<code>\(*h</code>	θ	<code>\(*i</code>	ι	<code>\(*k</code>	κ	<code>\(*l</code>	λ
<code>\(*m</code>	μ	<code>\(*n</code>	ν	<code>\(*c</code>	ξ	<code>\(*o</code>	ο
<code>\(*p</code>	π	<code>\(*r</code>	ρ	<code>\(*s</code>	σ	<code>\(ts</code>	ς
<code>\(*t</code>	τ	<code>\(*u</code>	υ	<code>\(*f</code>	φ	<code>\(*x</code>	χ
<code>\(*q</code>	ψ	<code>\(*w</code>	ω	<code>\(*A</code>	A	<code>\(*B</code>	B
<code>\(*G</code>	Γ	<code>\(*D</code>	Δ	<code>\(*E</code>	E	<code>\(*Z</code>	Z
<code>\(*Y</code>	H	<code>\(*H</code>	Θ	<code>\(*I</code>	I	<code>\(*K</code>	K
<code>\(*L</code>	Λ	<code>\(*M</code>	M	<code>\(*N</code>	N	<code>\(*C</code>	Ξ
<code>\(*O</code>	O	<code>\(*P</code>	Π	<code>\(*R</code>	P	<code>\(*S</code>	Σ
<code>\(*T</code>	T	<code>\(*U</code>	Υ	<code>\(*F</code>	Φ	<code>\(*X</code>	Χ
<code>\(*Q</code>	Ψ	<code>\(*W</code>	Ω	<code>\(sr</code>	√	<code>\(rn</code>	—
<code>\(&gt;=</code>	≥	<code>\(&lt;=</code>	≤	<code>\(==</code>	≡	<code>\(~=</code>	≈
<code>\(ap</code>	~	<code>\(!=</code>	≠	<code>\(&gt;-</code>	→	<code>\(&lt;-</code>	←
<code>\(ua</code>	↑	<code>\(da</code>	↓	<code>\(mu</code>	×	<code>\(di</code>	/
<code>\(+-</code>	±	<code>\(cu</code>	U	<code>\(ca</code>	∩	<code>\(sb</code>	∩
<code>\(sp</code>	⊃	<code>\(ib</code>	⊆	<code>\(ip</code>	⊇	<code>\(in</code>	∞
<code>\(pd</code>	∂	<code>\(gr</code>	∇	<code>\(no</code>	¬	<code>\(is</code>	∫
<code>\(pt</code>	α	<code>\(es</code>	∅	<code>\(mo</code>	∈	<code>\(br</code>	
<code>\(dd</code>	‡	<code>\(rh</code>	ℝ	<code>\(lh</code>	<-	<code>\(or</code>	
<code>\(ci</code>	○	<code>\(lt</code>	(	<code>\(lb</code>	\	<code>\(rt</code>	)
<code>\(rb</code>	)	<code>\(lk</code>	}	<code>\(rk</code>	}	<code>\(bv</code>	
<code>\(lf</code>	[	<code>\(rf</code>	]	<code>\(lc</code>	[	<code>\(rc</code>	]

### Example

The following example prints an enormous 'E' on a Hewlett-Packard LaserJet III:

```
.sp |8i
.ps 500
.ce
E
```

### Printer Configuration

**troff** reads several files in directory `/usr/lib/roff/troff_pcl` (for normal **troff**) or `/usr/lib/roff/troff_ps` (for PostScript **troff**) to find printer-specific information. It reads special character definitions from file **specials.r**. It reads font loading requests from file **fonts.r**. It copies file **.pre** at the beginning of the output. It copies file **.post** at the end of the output. In landscape mode, **troff** looks for files **.pre\_land** and **.post\_land** instead. You can change these files as desired to include printer-specific commands in **troff** output.

### Files

- `/tmp/rof*` — Temporary files
- `/usr/lib/tmac.*` — Standard macro packages
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_pcl/` — Support files directory for PCL
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_ps/` — Support files directory for PostScript
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_*/.pre` — Output prefix
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_*/.pre_land` — Output prefix, landscape mode
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_*/.post` — Output suffix
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_*/.post_land` — Output suffix, landscape mode
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_*/fonts.r` — Font definitions
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_*/fwt/` — Directory for font width tables
- `/usr/lib/roff/troff_*/specials.r` — Special character definitions

**See Also**

**col**, **commands**, **deroff**, **fwtable**, **hpr**, **man**, **ms**, **nroff**  
*nroff*, *The Text-Formatting Language*, tutorial

Adobe Systems Incorporated: *PostScript Language Reference Manual*. Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc., 1988.

Adobe Systems Incorporated: *PostScript Language Tutorial and Cookbook*. Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Inc., 1988.

Emerson, S.L., Paulsell, K.: *troff Typesetting for Unix Systems*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1987 (ISBN 0-13-930959-4).

Lawson, A.: *Printing Types: An Introduction*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1971. *An excellent, one-volume introduction to type and typesetting.*

Tufte, E.W.: *The Visual Display of Quantitative Information*. Cheshire, Conn.: Graphics Press, 1983. *Superbly introduces the subject of graphic design. Especially useful if you wish to explore PostScript.*

University of Chicago Press: *A Manual of Style for Authors, Editors, and Copywriters*, ed. 12, revised. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1969. *Still the best one-volume reference for copy editors: if you're going to publish manuals, you should do it right.*

**Notes**

Like **nroff**, **troff** should be used with the macro packages **ms**, which is found in the file **/usr/lib/tmac.s**, and **man**, which is found in the file **/usr/lib/tmac.an**.

**troff** output, unlike that of **nroff**, cannot be processed through a terminal driver.

Laser printers cannot print on an area near each edge of the output page. Output sent to the unprintable area will disappear. On some printers, the *logical page* does not correspond to the *physical page*, so printed **troff** output may be offset from the specified position on the physical page.

**true — Command**

Unconditional success

**true**

**true** does nothing, successfully. It always returns zero (i.e., true).

**true** is useful in shell scripts when you want to execute a condition indefinitely. For example, the following example

```
while true; do
    date
done
```

prints the current date and time on your screen forever (or at least until interrupted by typing **<ctrl-C>**).

**See Also**

**commands**, **false**, **ksh**, **sh**

**Notes**

Under the Korn shell, **true** is an alias for the partial-comment **::**.

**tsort — Command**

Topological sort

**tsort** [*file*]

**tsort** performs a topological sort of a set of input items. The input *file* (or the standard input, if no *file* is given) specifies an ordering on pairs of items. It consists of pairs of items separated by blanks, tabs or newlines. If a pair contains the same item twice, it simply indicates that the item is in the input set. Otherwise, the pair indicates that the first item precedes the second in the ordering.

**tsort** prints a sorted list of the input items on the standard output.

**See Also**

**commands**, **sort**

**Diagnostics**

**tsort** prints an error message on the standard error if its input contains an odd number of items or if the specified ordering includes a cycle.

**ttt — Command**

Play 3-D tic-tac-toe

**/usr/games/ttt**

The COHERENT game **ttt** plays three-dimensional tic-tac-toe. Each playing board is four-by-four, and four are stacked on top of each other. You play against the computer; each player selects to occupy one "square" on one of the boards. The first player to get four four squares in a row, in any direction, wins.

**See Also**

**commands**

**tty — Command**

Print the user's terminal name

**tty**

**tty** prints the name of the character-special file that manages your terminal.

**Diagnostics**

**tty** prints the message "Not a tty." if the user is not associated with any controlling terminal.

**See Also**

**commands**, **who**

**tty.h — Header File**

Define flags used with tty processing

**#include <sys/tty.h>**

**tty.h** defines flags that are used by routines that handle ttys.

**See Also**

**header files**, **tty**

**ttname()** — General Function

Identify a terminal

**char \*ttname(*fd*)**  
**int *fd*;**

Given a file descriptor *fd* attached to a terminal, **ttname()** returns the complete pathname of the special file (normally found in the directory **/dev**).

**Files****/dev/\*** — Terminal special files**/etc/ttys** — Login terminals**See Also****general functions, ioctl(), isatty(), tty(), ttyslot()****Diagnostics**

**ttname()** returns NULL if it cannot find a special file corresponding to *fd*.

**Notes**

The string returned by **ttname()** kept in a static area, and is overwritten by each subsequent call.

**ttys** — File Format

Describe terminal ports

The file **/etc/ttys** describes the terminals in the COHERENT system. The process **init** reads this file when it brings up the system in multi-user mode.

**/etc/ttys** contains one line for each terminal. Each line consists of the following four fields:

1. The first field is one character long, and indicates if the device is enabled for logins: '0' indicates that the device is not enabled, and '1' (one) indicates that logins are enabled for the device.
2. The second field is one character long, and indicates whether the device is local (i.e., a terminal) or remote (i.e., a modem): 'r' indicates remote, and 'l' (lower-case L) indicates local. If 'r' is used and a password is included for **remacc** (remote access) in **/etc/passwd**, then persons logging in on this device will be required to supply the remote-access password. (See the Lexicon entry for **passwd** for more about **remacc**).
3. The third field is one character long, and sets the baud rate for the device. Note that a device can have either a fixed baud rate, or a variable baud rate. The following table gives the codes for fixed baud rates:

<b>C</b>	110
<b>G</b>	300
<b>I</b>	1200
<b>L</b>	2400
<b>N</b>	4800
<b>P</b>	9600
<b>Q</b>	19200

The common variable-speed codes terminal types are as follows:

<b>0</b>	300, 1200, 150, 110
<b>3</b>	2400, 1200, 300

When a user dials into a variable-speed line, a message is sent to the terminal using the first speed listed. If the message is unintelligible, the user hits the **<break>** key and the

system tries the next speed; and so on, until the correct speed is selected.

4. The fourth field names the port that this device is plugged into. The following table names the ports that COHERENT recognizes:

<b>console</b>	The tube and keyboard on your computer
<b>com1l</b>	Serial port <b>com1</b> , local device
<b>com1r</b>	Serial port <b>com1</b> , remote device
<b>com1pl</b>	Serial port <b>com1</b> , local device
<b>com1pr</b>	Serial port <b>com1</b> , remote device
<b>com2l</b>	Serial port <b>com2</b> , local device
<b>com2r</b>	Serial port <b>com2</b> , remote device
<b>com2pl</b>	Serial port <b>com2</b> , local device
<b>com2pr</b>	Serial port <b>com2</b> , remote device
<b>com3l</b>	Serial port <b>com3</b> , local device
<b>com3r</b>	Serial port <b>com3</b> , remote device
<b>com3pl</b>	Serial port <b>com3</b> , local device
<b>com3pr</b>	Serial port <b>com3</b> , remote device
<b>com4l</b>	Serial port <b>com4</b> , local device
<b>com4r</b>	Serial port <b>com4</b> , remote device
<b>com4pl</b>	Serial port <b>com4</b> , local device
<b>com4pr</b>	Serial port <b>com4</b> , remote device

Note that if field 2 (described above) says that this is a local device, then you must use a port descriptor that ends in 'l'; likewise, if field 2 states that this is a remote device, the port descriptor must end in 'r'. Doing otherwise will result in trouble. See Lexicon entry **com** for further details.

Do not leave trailing spaces at the end of an entry in **/etc/ttys**. Leaving blanks at the end of a line usually results in errors that state that a device could not be found.

After you have edited **/etc/ttys**, the following command forces COHERENT to re-read the file and use the new descriptions:

```
kill quit 1
```

## Examples

Consider the following **ttys** entry:

```
1lPconsole
```

Field 1 is the first character. Here it is set to '1' (one), which indicates that the device is enabled for logins. Field 2 is the second character. Here it is set to 'l' (lower-case **L**), which indicates that this is a local device. Field 3 is the third character. Here, it is set to 'P', which indicates that the device operates at the fixed baud rate of 9600 baud. This field is ignored by the console device driver since the console is not a serial device. Finally, field 4 is the remainder of the line. Here, it indicates that the device in question is the console.

Now, consider another example:

```
1r3com3r
```

Field 1 is the first character. Here it is set to '1' (one), which indicates that the device is enabled for logins. Field 2 is the second character. Here it is set to 'r', which indicates that this is a remote device, i.e., a modem. Field 3 is the third character. Here, it is set to '3', which indicates that the device operates at variable baud rates of 2400, 1200, and 300. By hitting the **<break>** key on the terminal, the user can select from among those three baud rates, in that order. Finally, field 4 is the remainder of the line. Here, it indicates that the device in question is plugged into port **com3**, and is accessed via special file **/dev/com3r**.

### **Files**

**/etc/ttys**

### **See Also**

**com**, **file formats**, **getty**, **init**, **login**, **stty**, **terminal**, **tty**

### **ttyslot()** — General Function

Return a terminal's line number

**int** **ttyslot()**

**ttyslot()** returns the number of the line in the file **/etc/ttys** that describes the controlling terminal (see **ttys**).

### **Files**

**/dev/\*** — Terminal special files

**/etc/ttys** — Login terminals

### **See Also**

**general functions**, **ioctl()**, **isatty()**, **tty**, **ttyname()**

### **Diagnostics**

**ttyslot()** returns zero if an error occurs.

### **ttystat** — Command

Get terminal status

**/etc/ttystat** [ **-d** ] *port*

**ttystat** checks the status of the specified asynchronous *port* in directory **/dev**. It normally just returns an exit status that indicates the status of the *port*. The option **-d** tells **ttystat** to print the status of the *port* on the standard output.

### **Example**

The following example prints the status of port **/dev/com2r**:

```
/etc/ttystat -d com2
```

If **/dev/com2r** is enabled, **ttystat** prints:

```
com2r is enabled
```

**ttystat** finds the port status from the **/etc/ttys** file.

### **Files**

**/etc/ttys** — Terminal characteristics file

### **See Also**

**commands**, **disable**, **enable**, **ttys**

### **Diagnostics**

**ttystat** returns one if the *port* is enabled and zero if the *port* is disabled. It returns -2 if an error occurs.

**type checking — Technical Information**

Every expression has a *type*, such as **int**, **char**, or **double**. C is not strongly typed, which means that it allows different types to be mixed relatively freely, and be changed (or **cast**) from one type to another.

COHERENT checks types more strictly than the C standard implies. COHERENT's type checking can be enabled or disabled in degrees, using **-VSTRICT** and other "variant" options with the **cc** command.

**See Also**

**cc**, **technical information**, **type promotion**

**typedef — C Keyword**

Define a new data type

**typedef** is a C facility that lets you define new data types. Such definitions are always made in terms of existing data types; for example,

```
typedef long time_t;
```

establishes the data type **time\_t**, and defines it to be equivalent to a **long**. By convention, programmer-defined data types are written in capital letters.

Judicious use of the **typedef** facility can make programs easier to maintain, and improve their portability.

**See Also**

**C keyword**, **manifest constants**, **portability**, **storage class**

**type promotion — Technical Information**

In arithmetic expressions, COHERENT promotes one signed type to another signed type by sign extension, and promotes one unsigned type to another unsigned type by zero padding. For example, **char** promotes to **int** by sign extension, whereas **unsigned char** promotes to **unsigned int** by zero padding.

**See Also**

**data formats**, **technical information**

**types.h — Header File**

Declare system-specific data types

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

The header file **types.h** declares a number of data types that are used throughout the COHERENT system.

**See Also**

**header files**

**typeset — Command**

Set/list variables and their attributes

**typeset**

**typeset** [+ -]fr

**typeset** [ irx ] variable=value

The command **typeset** is built into the Korn shell **ksh**. It sets or lists all variables and their attributes.

When called with an argument of the form *variable=value*, it sets variable *variable* to *value*. The following options modify *variable* or *value*:

- i** Store *value* as an integer
- r** Make *variable* read-only
- x** Export *variable* to the environment

When called without an argument, **typeset** lists all variables and their attributes. When called with one of the following options, it lists the variables of the appropriate type. When prefixed with a hyphen '-', it prints the variable plus its value; when prefixed with a plus sign '+', it prints the variable alone:

- f** List functions instead of variables
- r** List read-only variables

### See Also

commands, ksh

### **typo** — Command

Detect possible typographical and spelling errors

**typo** [-nrs][*file* ...]

**typo** proofreads an English-language document for typographical errors. It conducts a statistical test of letter digrams and trigrams in each input word against digram and trigram frequencies throughout the entire document. From this test, **typo** computes an index of peculiarity for each word in the document. A high index indicates a word less like other words in the document than does a low index. Built-in frequency tables ensure reasonable results even for relatively short documents.

**typo** reads each input *file* (or the standard input if none), and removes punctuation and non-alphabetic characters to produce a list of the words in the document. To reduce the volume of the output, **typo** compares each word against a small dictionary of technical words and discards it if found. The output consists of a list of unique non-dictionary words with associated index of peculiarity, most peculiar first. An index higher than ten indicates that the word almost certainly occurs only once in the document.

**typo** recognizes the following arguments:

- n** Inhibit use of the built-in English digram and trigram statistics, and inhibit dictionary screening of words. More words will be output and the indices of peculiarity will be less useful for short documents.
- r** Inhibit the default stripping of **nroff** escape sequences. Normally, **typo** strips lines beginning with '.' and removes the **nroff** escape sequences '\.'
- s** Produce output files **digrams** and **trigrams** that contain, respectively, the digram and trigram frequency statistics for the given document. No indices of peculiarity are calculated or printed. If desired, these files may be installed in directory **/usr/dict**.

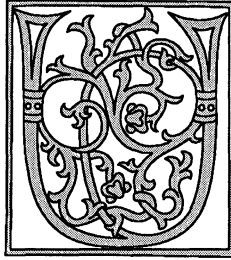
### Files

**/tmp/typo\*** — Intermediate files  
**/usr/dict/dict** — Limited dictionary  
**/usr/dict/digrams** — Digram frequency statistics  
**/usr/dict/trigrams** — Trigram frequency statistics



***See Also***

**commands, nroff, sort, spell**



---

**umask — Command**

Set the file-creation mask

**umask** [*mask*]

The *file-creation mask* modifies the default mode assigned to each file upon creation. The mode sets the permissions granted by the file's owner, plus other important information about a file.

The command **umask** sets the default file-creation mask to *mask*. *mask* is usually entered as an octal number prefixed by a zero digit. If invoked without an argument, **umask** prints the current file-creation mask in octal.

Note that zero bits in *mask* correspond to permitted permission bits in the target, and that execute permission cannot be enabled via any setting of *mask*. See the Lexicon entries for **umask()** and **chmod** for further details on file mode. The shell executes **umask** directly.

**Example**

Setting *mask* to octal 022 (i.e., 000 010 010) causes a file created with mode octal 0666 to actually have permissions of

```
rw- r-- r--
```

Setting *mask* to zero (i.e., 000 000 000) causes a file created with mode octal 0666 to actually have permissions of

```
rw- rw- rw-
```

**See Also**

**chmod**, **commands**, **ksh**, **sh**, **umask()**

---

**umask() — System Call**

Set file-creation mask

**int** **umask**(*mask*)

**int** *mask*;

**umask()** allows a process to restrict the mode of files it creates. Commands that create files should specify the maximum reasonable mode. A parent (e.g. the shell **sh**) usually calls **umask()** to restrict access to files created by subsequent commands.

*mask* should be constructed from any of the permission bits found in **chmod()** (the low-order nine bits). When a file is created with **creat()** or **mknod()**, every bit set in the *mask* is zeroed in *mode*; thus, bits set in *mask* specify permissions that will be denied.

**umask()** returns the old value of the file-creation mask.

**Example**

Setting *mask* to octal 022 (i.e., 000 010 010) causes a file created with mode octal 0666 to actually have permissions of

```
rw- r-- r--
```

Setting *mask* to zero (i.e., 000 000 000) causes a file created with mode octal 0666 to actually have permissions of

```
rw- rw- rw-
```

**See Also**

**creat()**, **mknod()**, **sh**, **system calls**

**Notes**

A file's default permission cannot be set to execute, regardless of the value of *umask()*.

**umount — Command**

Unmount file system  
/etc/**umount** *special*

**umount** unmounts a file system *special* that was previously mounted with the **mount** command.

The script **/bin/umount** calls **/etc/umount**, and provides convenient abbreviations for commonly used devices. For example, typing

```
umount f0
```

executes the command

```
/etc/umount /dev/fha0
```

The system administrator should edit this script to reflect the devices used on your specific system.

**Files**

**/etc/mtab** — Mount table

**/dev/\***

**/bin/umount** — Script that calls **/etc/umount**

**See Also**

**cldr**, **commands**, **fsck**, **lcheck**, **mount**

**Diagnostics**

Errors can occur if *special* does not exist or is not a mounted file system.

**umount()** — System Call

Unmount a file system  
**umount**(*filesystem*)  
**char** \**filesystem*;

**umount()** is the COHERENT system call that unmounts a file system. *filesystem* names the block-special file through which the file system is accessed. Note that this must have been previously mounted by a call to **mount()**, or the call will fail.

**See Also**

**mount()**, **system calls**

**unalias — Command**

Remove an alias  
**unalias** *alias* ...

The command **unalias** is built into the Korn shell **ksh**. It removes each *alias*.

**See Also**

**alias**, **commands**, **ksh**

**uname() — System Call**

Get the name and version of COHERENT

```
#include <sys/utsname.h>
uname(name)
struct utsname *name;
```

The COHERENT system call **uname()** identifies the current release of the COHERENT operating system. It writes its output into the structure pointed to by *name*. This must be of type **utsname**, which has the following members:

```
char sysname[9];      /* system name */
char nodename[9];     /* UUCP node name */
char release[9];      /* current release */
char version[9];      /* current version */
char machine[9];      /* hardware */
```

**uname()** returns a non-negative value upon success. If *name* points to an invalid address, **uname()** returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value.

**See Also**

**system calls**

**Notes**

**uname()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

**uncompress — Command**

Uncompress a compressed file

```
uncompress [ -w tmpfile ] [file ... ] (COHERENT 286)
uncompress [file ... ] (COHERENT 386)
```

**uncompress** uncompresses one or more *files* that had been compressed by the command **compress**.

Each *file*'s name must have the suffix **.Z**, which was appended onto it by **compress**; otherwise, **uncompress** prints an error message and exits. When **uncompress** has uncompressed a *file*, it removes the **.Z** suffix from that file's name.

If no *file* is specified on the command line, **uncompress** uncompresses matter read from the standard input, and writes its output to the standard output.

Older versions of **uncompress** could only uncompress files that had been compressed with option **-b12** or lower, with **-b12** being the default. The edition of **uncompress** released with COHERENT version 3.1 now handles values up to 16. COHERENT 286 uses RAM device **/dev/ram1** for temporary storage. For this reason, it is strongly advised that you not use **/dev/ram1** as a RAM disk on COHERENT 286 systems.

The **-w** option tell **uncompress** to write its temporary data into *tmpfile* instead of into the RAM device **/dev/ram1**. This option is available only under COHERENT 286.

**See Also**

commands, compress, ram, zcat

**ungetc() — STDIO (libc)**

Return character to input stream

**#include <stdio.h>**

**int ungetc (c, fp) int c; FILE \*fp;**

**ungetc()** returns the character *c* to the stream *fp*. *c* can then be read by a subsequent call to **getc()**, **gets()**, **getw()**, **scanf()**, or **fread()**. No more than one character can be pushed back into any stream at once. A call to **fseek()** will nullify the effects of a previous **ungetc()**.

**Example**

For an example of this function, see **fgetc()**.

**See Also**

**fgetc()**, **getc()**, **STDIO**

**Diagnostics**

**ungetc()** normally returns *c*. It returns **EOF** if the character cannot be pushed back.

**union — C Keyword**

Multiply declare a variable

A **union** defines an area of storage that can accept any one of several types of data. In effect, it is a multiple declaration of a variable. For example, a **union** may be declared to consist of an **int**, a **double**, and a **char \***. Any one of these three elements can be held by the **union** at a time, and will be handled appropriately by it. For example, the declaration

```
union {
    int number;
    double bignumber;
    char *stringptr;
} example;
```

allows **example** to hold either an **int**, a **double**, or a pointer to a **char**, whichever is needed at the time. All of these have the same address. The elements of a **union** are accessed like those of a **struct**: for example, to access **number** from the above example, type **example.number**.

**unions** are helpful in dealing with heterogeneous data, especially within structures; however, you are responsible for keeping track of what data type the **union** is holding at any given time. Passing a **double** to a **union** and then reading the **union** as though it held an **int** will yield results that are unpredictable, and probably unwelcome.

**Example**

For an example of how to use a **union** in a program, see the entry for **byte ordering**.

**See Also**

**C keywords**, **initialization**, **struct**, **structure**

**uniq — Command**

Remove/count repeated lines in a sorted file

**uniq [-cdw] [-n] [+n] [infile[outfile]]**

**uniq** reads input line by line from *infile* and writes all non-duplicated lines to *outfile*. The input file must be sorted. **uniq** uses the standard input or output if either *infile* or *outfile* is omitted. The

following describes the available options:

- c     Print each line once, discarding duplicate lines; before each line, print the number of times it appears within the file.
- d     Print only lines that are duplicated within the file; print each line only once; do not print any counts.
- u     Print only lines that are *not* duplicated within the file.

**uniq** by default behaves as if both **-u** and **-d** were specified, so it prints each unique line once.

Optional specifiers allow **uniq** to skip leading portions of the input lines when comparing for uniqueness.

- n     Skip *n* fields of each input line, where a field is any number of non-white space characters surrounded by any number of white space characters (blank or tab).
- +n     Skip *n* characters in each input line, after skipping fields as above.

### **See Also**

**comm, commands, sort**

### **unique() — System Call**

Return a unique long integer  
**long unique()**

**unique()** returns a unique long integer. The value of this integer is incremented with each call to **unique()**, and is saved in the root file system.

### **See Also**

**system calls**

### **units — Command**

Convert measurements  
**units [ -u ]**

**units** is an interactive program that tells you how to convert one unit of measurement into another. It prompts you for two quantities with the same dimensions (e.g., two measurements of weight, or two of size). It first prints the prompt "You have:" to ask for the unit you wish to convert from, and then prints the prompt "You want:" for the unit you wish to convert to.

### **Example**

The following example returns the formula for convert fortnights into days:

```
You have: fortnight
You want: days
* 14
/ 0.071428
```

The following fundamental units are recognized: **meter, gram, second, coulomb, radian, bit, unitedstatesdollar, sheet, candle, kelvin, and copperpiece** (shillings and pence).

A quantity consists of an optional number (default 1) and a dimension (default none). Numbers are floating point with optional sign, decimal part and exponent. Dimensions may be specified by fundamental or derived units, with optional orders. A quantity is evaluated left to right: a factor preceded by a '/' is a divisor, otherwise it is a multiplier. For example, the earth's gravitational acceleration may be entered as any of the following:

```
9.8e+0 m+1 sec-2
32 ft/sec/sec
32 ft/sec+2
```

British equivalents of US units are prefixed with **br**, e.g. **brpint**. Some other units include **c** (speed of light), **G** (gravitational constant), **R** (gas law constant), **phi** (golden ratio), **%** (1/100), **k** (1,024), and **buck** (United States dollar).

**/usr/lib/units** is an ASCII file that contains conversion tables. The binary file **/usr/lib/binunits** may be recreated by using the **-u** option.

### See Also

**bc**, **commands**, **conv**

### Files

**/usr/lib/units** — Known units

**/usr/lib/binunits** — Binary encoding of units file

### Diagnostics

If the ASCII file **/usr/lib/units** has been changed more recently than the binary file **/usr/lib/binunits**, **units** prints a message and regenerates the binary file before continuing; this takes up to a few minutes, depending on the speed of your system.

The error message “conformability” means that the quantities are not dimensionally compatible. For example, **m/sec** and **psi**. **units** prints each quantity and its dimensions in fundamental units.

### Notes

There are the inevitable name collisions: **g** for gram vs. **gee** for Earth’s gravitational acceleration, **exp** for the base of natural logarithms vs. **e** for the charge of an electron, **ms** for (plural) meters vs. **millisecond**, and of course **batman** for the Persian measure of weight rather than the Turkish.

## unlink() — System Call

Remove a file

```
int unlink(name) char *name;
```

**unlink()** removes the directory entry for the given file *name*, which in effect erases *name* from the disk. *name* cannot be opened once it has been **unlinked**. If *name* is the last link, **unlink()** frees the i-node and data blocks. Deallocation is delayed if the file is open. Other links to the file remain intact.

### Example

This example removes the files named on the command line.

```
main(argc, argv)
int argc; char *argv[];
{
    int i;
```

```
    for (i = 1; i < argc; i++) {
        if (unlink(argv[i]) == -1) {
            printf("Cannot unlink \"%s\"\n", argv[i]);
            exit(1);
        }
    }
    exit(0);
}
```

### See Also

**link(), ln, rm, rmdir, system calls**

### Diagnostics

**unlink()** returns zero when successful. It returns -1 if *file* does not exist, if the user does not have write and search permission in the directory containing *file*, or if *file* is a directory and the invoker is not the superuser.

### **unmkfs** — Command

Construct a prototype file system

**unmkfs** [-*prefix*] *directory* *nblocks* [*file*]

**unmkfs** scans *directory* and builds prototype files with which you can build file systems on backup disks.

If *prefix* is given, it creates files *prefix.p01*, *prefix.p02*, etc. If it is not given, **unmkfs** writes its output to the standard-output device.

*nblocks* gives the maximum size of a prototype file. COHERENT current defines a block as being 512 bytes (half a kilobyte); thus, to make the maximum size of a prototype file 10 kilobytes, set *nblocks* to 20.

The *file* option tells **unmkfs** to suppress all files in *directory* that are older than *file*. If it is not used, then **unmkfs** builds prototypes for all files in *directory*.

**unmkfs** provides a useful way to back up file systems onto floppy disks. To do this, perform the following steps:

1. **unmkfs** a directory, producing prototype files.
2. Format one floppy disk for each prototype file.
3. Using the prototype files in succession, **mkfs** each floppy disk. This puts the indicated files onto floppy disk, preserving links.

Later, you can use the command **cpdir** to restore all the files from the floppy disks, or you can use **cp** to restore individual files.

### See Also

**commands, mkfs**

### Notes

**unmkfs** builds a file system in memory as it does its work. With large directory structures, it can run out of memory.



**unsigned — C Keyword**

Data type

**unsigned** tells the compiler to treat the variable as an unsigned value. In effect, this doubles the largest absolute value that that type can hold, and changes the lowest storage value to zero.

**See Also**

C keywords, data type

**until — Command**

Execute commands repeatedly

**until** *sequence1* [ **do** *sequence2* ] **done**

The shell's **until** loop executes the commands in *sequence1*. If the exit status is nonzero, the shell then executes the commands in the optional *sequence2* and repeats the process until the exit status of *sequence1* is zero. Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted first word of a command, both **do** and **done** must occur either unquoted at the start of a line or preceded by `;'.

The shell commands **break** and **continue** may be used to alter control flow within an **until** loop. The construct **while** has the same form as **until** but the sense of the test is reversed.

The shell executes **until** directly.

**See Also****break, commands, continue, ksh, sh, test, while****update — System Maintenance**

Update file systems periodically

**/etc/update**

**update** periodically calls **sync** to write to the disk all file system data that are in memory. It never exits.

The initialization command file **/etc/rc** normally executes **update**. It should not be executed directly.

**See Also****init, sync, system maintenance****uproc.h — Header File**

Definitions used with user processes

**#include** <sys/uproc.h>

**uproc.h** defines constants and structures used by routines that manage user processes.

**See Also**

header files

**USER — Environmental Variable**

Name user's identifier

**USER**=*user\_identifier*

The environmental variable **USER** names your login identifier. For example, if your login identifier is **fwb**, then by typing **set** you will see the entry **USER=fwb**. **USER** is set by **login**.

**See Also**

environmental variables, *ksh*, *login*, *sh*

**ustar — Command**

Process tape archives

**ustar** -c[vw] [-f *archive*] *file* ...

**ustar** -r[vw] [-f *archive*] *file* ...

**ustar** -t[v] [-f *archive*]

**ustar** -x[lmovw] [-f *archive*] [*file* ...]

**ustar** reads and writes archive files that conform to the Archive/Interchange File Format specified in IEEE Standard 1003.1-1988.

**Options**

**ustar** recognizes the following command-line options:

- c Create a new archive. Write each *file* into the newly created archive
- r Append each *file* to the end of the archive.
- t Display a directory (table of contents) of the archive.
- x Extract each *file* from the archive. If *file* matches a directory whose contents had been written onto the archive, extract that directory recursively. If *file* does not exist on the system, **ustar** creates it with the same mode as the one in the archive, except that the set-user-id and get-group-id modes are not set unless you have appropriate privileges.

If *file* exists, **ustar** does not change file modes except as described above. It restores the owner, the group, and the modification time if possible.

If the command line does not name a *file*, **ustar** extracts the entire contents of the archive. Note that if several files with the same name are in the archive, the last one overwrites all earlier ones.

- f Use the next argument on the command line as the name of the archive instead of the default, which is standard input or standard output, whichever is appropriate for the options given. Thus, you can use **ustar** in a pipe. If you specify '-' as the archive name with option -f, **ustar** uses the default input and output streams.
- l Order **ustar** to report if it cannot resolve all of the links to the files being archived. If -l is not specified, no error messages are written to the standard output. This modifier is valid only with the -c or -r options.
- m Do not restore the modification times; set the modification time of the file to the time of extraction. This modifier is invalid with the -t option.
- o Give extracted files your user and group identifiers, rather than those on the archive. This modifier is only valid with the -x option.
- v Verbose operation. With this option, **ustar** prints the name of each file it processes, preceded by the option letter. With the -t option, the -v option tells **ustar** to give more information about the archive's entries than just their names.
- w Print the action to be taken and the name of the file, then wait for your confirmation. If you type a word beginning with 'y', **ustar** performs the action. Any other input means "no". This modifier is invalid with the -t option.

**See Also**

commands, *cpio*, *dd*, *find*, *pax*

## Notes

**ustar** was developed by Mark H. Colburn and sponsored by The USENIX Association. Copyright © 1989 by Mark H. Colburn (mark@jherreg.MN.ORG). All rights reserved. See the compressed **tar** archive **/usr/src/alien/pax.tar.Z** for full descriptions of copyright, restrictions, and licensing terms.

**ustar** is provided in binary form per the licensing terms set forth by the author. It is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

## ustat() — System Call

Get statistics on a file system

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
#include <ustat.h>
```

```
int ustat (device, buffer)
```

```
dev_t device;
```

```
struct ustat *buffer;
```

The COHERENT system call **ustat()** returns information about a mounted file system. *device* names the device upon which the file system is mounted. *buffer* points to a structure of type **ustat**, which contains the following fields:

```
daddr_t      f_tfree;           /* number of free blocks */
ino_t        f_tinode;          /* number of free i-nodes */
char         f_fname[6];        /* name of the file system */
char         f_fpack[6];        /* pack name of the file system */
```

Useful information may not be available for fields **f\_fname** and **f\_fpack**; in that case, they are initialized to nuls.

**ustat()** returns zero if all goes well; otherwise, it returns -1 and sets **errno** to an appropriate value. **ustat()** can fail for any of the following reasons:

- *device* does not contain a mounted file system.
- *buffer* points to an illegal address.
- The kernel caught a signal while it was executing the call.

## See Also

**mkfs**, **statfs()**, system calls

## Note

**ustat()** is largely superceded by **statfs()**.

**ustat()** is available only under COHERENT 386.

## utime() — System Call

Change file access and modification times

```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

```
int utime(file, times)
```

```
char *file;
```

```
time_t times[2];
```

**utime()** sets the access and modification times associated with the given *file* to times obtained from *times[0]* and *times[1]*, respectively. The time of last change to the attributes is set to the time of the **utime()** call.

This call must be made by the owner of *file* or by the superuser.

**Files**

<sys/types.h>

**See Also**

restor, stat(), system calls

**Diagnostics**

utime() returns -1 on errors, such as if *file* does not exist or the invoker not the owner.

**utmp.h — Header File**

Login accounting information

#include <utmp.h>

/etc/utmp contains a **utmp** entry for every user currently logged into the COHERENT system. The structure **utmp** is defined in the header file **utmp.h**, as follows:

```
#define DIRSIZ  14
struct utmp {
    char    ut_line[8];        /* terminal name */
    char    ut_name[DIRSIZ];   /* user name */
    time_t  ut_time;          /* time of login */
};
```

If either the user name or terminal name is cleared, the entry is unused. The element **ut\_line** is the name of the special file for the user's terminal, and is normally found in the directory **/dev**. **ut\_time** gives the date and time the user logged into COHERENT.

The file **/usr/adm/wtmp** maintains a record of all logins and logouts, and may be summarized by the command **ac**. The processes **login** and **init** write entries into the file **wtmp**; neither creates the file, so login accounting is disabled unless **/usr/adm/wtmp** exists.

Entries in **wtmp** are identical to those in **utmp**. A null string in the **ut\_name** field indicates a logout. The following three special terminal names may be found in **wtmp**. When the system is booted, **init** writes a **ut\_line** entry of '~'. When the time is changed with the command **date**, it writes an entry giving the old date ('|') and an entry giving the new date ('>'). This allows **ac** to adjust connect times appropriately.

**Files**

<utmp.h>

/etc/utmp

/usr/adm/wtmp

**See Also**

ac, date, file formats, header files, init, login, who

**utsname.h — Header File**

Define utsname structure

#include <sys/utsname.h>

**utsname.h** defines the structure **utsname**. This structure holds information that describes a given release of the COHERENT system.

**See Also**

header files

**uucheck — Command**

Sanity-check the UUCP system

**uucheck** [ **-fsv** ]

**uucheck** is a script which calls a series of programs designed to locate and fix problems in the UUCP system. The phases of the **uucheck** system all accept the same arguments.

**uucheck** recognizes the following options:

- f** Attempt to fix errors in the UUCP system. Note that it is not possible to automatically correct all errors. Only **root** (the super user) can use this option. Note that **uucheck -f** must be run twice to catch all errors.
- s** Run in “silent” mode (i.e., generate no output). Normally **uucheck** will report all errors and warnings encountered. With this option set, only errors internal to **uucheck** will be reported. Option **-s** overrides option **-v**.
- v** Generate verbose output messages. This will include messages on what is being checked, and often longer messages suggesting remedies.

The phases of **uucheck** are:

<b>uuccheckperms</b>	Check file permissions.
<b>uuccheckname</b>	Check <b>/etc/uucpname</b> .
<b>uucchecklock</b>	Look for lock files.

**Notes**

This system does not and probably cannot identify all possible failure modes of the UUCP system — nothing beats an experienced UUCP administrator.

**Files**

**/usr/lib/uuccheck/** — Directory for phases

**See Also**

commands, UUCP

**uucico — Command**

Transmit data to or from a remote site

**/usr/lib/uucp/uucico** [ **-csite** ] [ **-r1** ] [ **-ssite** ] [ **-sall** ] [ **-Ssite** ] [ **-xlevel** ]

**uucico** is the UUCP command that actually transfers files to or from a remote *site*. Its syntax is as follows:

- csite** Poll *site* only if files are queued for transmission to it.
- r0** Act as slave in polling process; that is, carry out the orders of another **uucico** that has dialed into your system.
- r1** Act as master in polling process; that is, dial out to another system and give it orders. This is the default.
- ssite** Name *site* as a place to be polled. *site* must name one of the entries in **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys**.
- sall** Poll all sites automatically.
- Ssite** Name *site* as a place to be polled. *site* must be a site described in file **L.sys**. Unlike the **-s** option, this option forces an immediate call to *site* even if the current time is not specified as valid in **L.sys**.

**-xlevel** Set the debugging level, where *level* is a number between one and ten, inclusive. **uucico** prints all messages at or below the current debugging level. The following gives the class of messages controlled by each level of debugging:

- 0 No additional logging
- 1 The call and pre-protocol negotiation
- 2 Conversation level
- 3 File transfer
- 4 Spool files
- 5 Messages sent out during call/pre-protocol
- 6 High-level protocol
- 7 Medium-level protocol
- 8 Low-level protocol (framing and such)
- 9 Actual packet data
- 10 Reading configuration files

If you do not use this option, **uucico** sets the debugging level to zero. Please note that enabling the debugging option causes certain non-COHERENT versions of **uucico** to fail.

### Example

To poll the site *sys* at five minutes after the hour, each hour, put the following entry into **/usr/lib/crontab**:

```
05 * * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uucico -ssys -r1
```

### Files

**/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** — List of reachable systems

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/sitename** — **uucico** activities log file for *sitename*

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename** — Spool directory for work

### See Also

**commands, cron, uucp, UUCP, uulog, uutouch, uuxqt**

## **UUCP — Overview**

Unattended communication with remote systems

**UUCP** stands for “UNIX to UNIX copy”. It is a system of commands that allows you to exchange files with other COHERENT or UNIX systems, in an unattended manner. With **UUCP**, you can send mail to other systems, upload files, and execute commands. When configured correctly, **UUCP** also lets other users upload files to your system, copy files from it, and execute commands. All this can be done without your having to sit at your console and type commands; thus, files can be transferred in the small hours, when telephone rates are lower and computers are relatively free.

**UUCP** gives you access to the Usenet, a nation-wide network of UNIX and COHERENT users. Access to the Usenet will let you exchange mail with any of the thousands of Usenet users, receive mail from them, download source code for many useful programs, and read the latest news on a host of subjects. For details on contacting UUNET, a commercially accessible Usenet site, enter the command:

```
phone uunet
```

The **UUCP** protocol is implemented through a suite of commands and files. The following Lexicon entries relate to **UUCP**:

**L-devices** . . . . . File that describes devices used by UUCP  
**L.sys** . . . . . File that describes systems contacted by UUCP  
**Permissions** . . . . . File that sets remote system permissions  
**uucheck** . . . . . Sanity check the UUCP system  
**uucico** . . . . . Transmit data to a remote site  
**uucp** . . . . . Prepare files for transmission  
**uucpname** . . . . . File that sets your system's UUCP name  
**uudecode** . . . . . Decode a binary file sent from a remote system  
**uuencode** . . . . . Encode a binary file for sending to a remote system  
**uuiinstall** . . . . . Install UUCP on your system  
**uulog** . . . . . Read UUCP log files  
**uumvlog** . . . . . Move UUCP log files to backup archive  
**uuname** . . . . . List UUCP names of known systems  
**uurmlock** . . . . . Remote UUCP lock files  
**uutouch** . . . . . Touch a file to trigger **uucico** poll  
**uux** . . . . . Execute command on a remote system  
**uuxq** . . . . . Execute commands requested by a remote system

The following sections discuss problems that can arise when using UUCP, as diagnosed by the Mark Williams Technical Support Staff.

### **Using Trailblazer Modems With UUCP**

The Trailblazer modem has been designed to be used with UUCP. It is extremely fast and extremely accurate; however, some users reported problems in using COHERENT UUCP with a Trailblazer modem. The following describes how Mark Williams Company has configured the Trailblazer modem that it uses under COHERENT at 9600 baud.

To begin, the following gives the permissions in **/usr/lib/uucp** for selected files:

```
-rw-r--r--  1 uucp      uucp          196 Wed May 23 10:16 L-devices
-rw-r--r--  1 uucp      uucp           740 Tue May 22 15:40 L.sys
-rw-r--r--  1 uucp      uucp        2151 Wed Jul 11 10:44 Permissions
```

The following gives partial contents of file **/usr/lib/uucp/L-devices**:

```
#type      line  remote  baud    brand
#-----  -
ACU        com3l  com3r   2400    tb2400
ACU        com3l  com3r   9600    tbfast
```

The following gives partial contents of file **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** (note that # should be replaced by the actual phone number):

```
uunet Any ACU 9600 # FAST \d\r\c in:-\r-in: \dmwc\r\c rd: PASSWORD\r
```

The following gives partial contents of **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions**:

```
MACHINE=uunet LOGNAME=uuunet \
  COMMANDS=rmail:rnews: \
  READ=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp \
  WRITE=/usr/spool/uucppublic:/tmp \
  SENDFILES=yes REQUEST=no
```

The following gives permissions and partial contents of file **/etc/ttys**:

```
--rw-r--r--  1 root   root   163 Wed Jul 11 11:36 /etc/ttys
1lPconsole
1rPcom3r
```

Finally, the following gives permissions on **/dev/com3r** (while enabled):

```
c--s-----  1 root   root    21  38 Wed Jul 11 11:50 /dev/com3r
```

To use the Trailblazer, log in as **root**, and type the following commands:

```
disable com3r
kermit cbl 9600 /dev/com3l > /tmp/modem_dump
```

Note that we disabled the “remote” device but used the “local” modem device when using **kermit**. This allows us to access the modem registers without having to wait for the modem to assert the carrier detect signal.

While talking to the Trailblazer, we sent it **ATN?** followed by the **<Enter>** key. We then entered **^** (the circumflex) followed by the letter **C** in order to exit from **kermit**. The following gives the results contained in file **/tmp/modem\_dump**:

```
kermit: connected...
EO F1 M1 Q9 T V0 W0 X3 Y0 &P0 &T4      Version BA5.01
S00=001 S01=000 S02=043 S03=013 S04=010 S05=008 S06=002 S07:060 \
      S08=002 S09=006
S10=007 S11=070 S12=050 S18=000 S25=005 S38=000
S41=000 S45=000 S47=004 S48:001 S49=000
S50=000 S51:252 S52=000      S54:003 S55=000 S56=017 S57=019 \
      S58:000 S59=000
S60=000 S61:230 S62=003 S63=001 S64=000 S65=000 S66=000 S67=000 \
      S68=255 S69=000
S90=000 S91=000 S92=000 S94=001 S95=000 S96=001
S100=000 S101=000 S102=000 S104=000 S105=001
S110=255 S111=255 S112=001
S121=000 S130=002 S131:001 S255=000
N0:
N1:
N2:
N3:
N4:
N5:
N6:
N7:
N8:
N9:
0
kermit: disconnected.
```

### ***/etc/ttys Problems***

Sometimes, UUCP problems will arise because the entry in file **/etc/ttys** for the serial port your modem is using, is either missing or is incorrect.



To discover which port UUCP thinks your modem is using, invoke the command **uuinstall**. Then, under its **Devices** option, look at the *remote* line. The remote device you specified on this line must be described in file **/etc/ttys**. If it is not, then you will find statements in the log file for the site you are calling stating that a device was not found.

If you see errors in the log files that state that a device is not found, and you have checked the "remote" entry in **uuinstall** against the contents of **/etc/ttys**, the next possible cause may be the **/etc/ttys** entry for the port. Look for trailing spaces at the end of the line that describes the **com** port. If you find a space at the end of a line, delete it.

### **com Port Driver Permissions**

By far, the most common problem deals with permissions associated with the **com** port devices. If you are trying to get UUCP to call out on a port, and keep seeing errors of the form

Dial failed, Line Problem

in the output of **uulog**, you may need to fix permissions on the port in question.

If you are using one **com** port both for remote logins and to call out using UUCP, note the following: When a port is enabled for remote access via a modem, the permissions for the port are changed so that only the superuser **root** can access the port. This prevents someone from inadvertently trying to send data out the port. When the port is later disabled so that UUCP can dial out, the permissions for that **com** port *are not* changed to give everyone access to the port. Remember, when UUCP is executing, it is just another user with the name "uucp" and does not have **root** privileges.

To set the permissions properly, use the command **chmod** to reset the permission of the **com** port device in directory **/dev**. For example, if your UUCP connection is via **com1r**, log in as the superuser **root** and enter the command:

```
chmod 666 /dev/com1*
```

Usually, serial ports should have read and write permissions turned on for all users. The main exception to this rule is that a port enabled for logins becomes readable and writeable only by **root**. This is not a problem for UUCP as the port is disabled (and permissions expanded) temporarily when **uucico** runs.

### **Lock Files and Temporary Files**

UUCP controls access to the modem and to various directories and sites via a set of "lock files". This is to prevent UUCP from tripping over its own feet by attempting to write more than one file to the same site at the same site.

When a UUCP session fails, it may fail to remove all of its lock files before it exits, depending upon the seriousness of the failure. "Stale" lock files and temporary files in directory will prevent UUCP from accessing a given site or even from working altogether. Symptoms of this problem are messages in the log files that state:

Site locked

This, of course, is not indicative of a problem unless no UUCP connection has been made recently (within the last minute or so). To cure this problem, log in as the superuser **root** and then enter the command:

```
uurmlock
```

This will remove all "stale" lock or temporary files.

### **UUCP Configuration Files**

By far the most common cause of problems are mistakes in one or another UUCP configuration file. If problems persist, check all UUCP configuration files against the descriptions found in

correspondingly named Lexicon articles. The files in question are **ttys**, **L-devices**, **L.sys**, and **Permissions**.

### ***UUCP Executable File Permissions***

UUCP commands can invoke each other from time to time. If a UUCP executable file's permissions are set incorrectly, that command may be prevented from being executed under certain conditions, or from reading or writing certain key files.

Key UUCP executable files are **/usr/lib/uucp/uucico**, **/usr/lib/uucp/uuxqt**, **/usr/bin/uucp**, and **/usr/bin/uux**. These files must belong to user and group **uucp**. Permissions on these files must be 6511 (-r-s--s--x). See the Lexicon article for the command **chmod** for further details on how to reset permissions for files.

### ***UUCP Connects, but ...***

Once UUCP is dialing out, it is extremely difficult to diagnose problems, as they can occur at either end of the connection. In most cases, one must know both systems to diagnose problems related to communication problems. Check the following:

- Check your chat scripts. Contact the other system's system administrator to be sure that you are expecting the correct prompts in the chat script for the system you are calling.
- Use the debugging mode of **uucico** to watch communications. Debugging mode is accessed using the **uucico** command suffixed by a **-x#**, where **#** is 1 to 9 which determines the debugging level. For example

```
/usr/lib/uucp/uucico -Smwcbbs -x1
```

Please note, the **uucico** debugging option is incompatible with certain non-COHERENT versions of **uucico**.

- Note also that the COHERENT default mailer does not yet support domains. If domain information is being sent to your system, an error may result and possibly cause unexpected results or errors from **uucico**. The error will usually state that a log file could not be written to. Alternate mailers are available from the various COHERENT archive sites, as well as the MWC UUCP bulletin board system.

### ***Remote Won't Accept Files ... Where'd My Mail Go?***

If you see messages in your log files that a site would not accept a file from your site, the other site may not have its permissions set to allow you to send files to it, or to write the files you are sending to a directory that you specified.

When sending files across systems, check the length of the site name. Currently, COHERENT can only work with a seven-character or shorter site name. If you are using an eight-character or longer site name, COHERENT will not properly distribute files transferred from your site. To change the name of your system, edit the contents of file **/etc/uucpname**; and to change the name of your system's domain, edit the contents of file **/etc/domain**.

### ***See Also***

**com**, **commands**, **domain**, **L-dev**, **L.sys**, **Permissions**, **terminal**, **uucico**, **uucp**, **uucpname**, **uudecode**, **uencode**, **uuninstall**, **uulog**, **uumvlog**, **uuname**, **uurmlock**, **uutouch**, **uux**, **uuxqt**  
*UUCP, Remote Communications Utility*, tutorial

### ***uucp — Command***

Ready files for transmission to other systems

**uucp** [ **-cCdfmr** ] [ **-nuser** ] [ **-s dir** ] [ **-xn** ] *source ... dest*

**uucp** copies files *source1* through *sourceN* to the destination system *dest*. Either source or destination files can contain specifications for the remote system.

**uucp** recognizes the following options:

- c** Do not copy the source file into spool directory; rather use the file itself. This is the default.
- C** Copy the source file into spool directory.
- d** Create directories as required on the destination system.
- f** Do not make intermediate directories for the file copy.
- m** Send mail to requester when the file is sent.
- nuser** Notify *user* on destination system when the file is received. Note that *user* may contain a path. Note that *user* is relative to the destination machine, not to originating machine or to any intervening machine. For example, consider the command:  
  
    uucp -nlepanto!fred myfile joe!/tmp  
  
Here, you are copying **myfile** from your machine into directory **/tmp** on machine **joe**, and sending notification to user **fred** on machine **lepanto**. If, however, machine **joe** does not know how to address machine **lepanto**, then **fred** will never be notified of the transfer.
- r** Spool transfer request, but do not initiate **uucico**.
- xn** Assign debug level *n* (0 to 9).

### Examples

The first example copies file **foo** to directory **/bar** on system **george**:

```
uucp foo george!/bar
```

The next example copies file **/foo** from system **george** into directory **/tmp** on your system:

```
uucp george!/foo /tmp
```

The next example copies file **/foo** from system **george** into file or directory **/bar** on system **ivan**:

```
uucp george!/foo ivan!/bar
```

Note that this assumes your system can talk to both **george** and **ivan** and that your system has permission to read file **/foo** on system **george** as well as to write file **/bar** on system **ivan**.

The next example downloads files **/foo** and **/bar** from remote systems **ivan** and **george** into directory **/tmp** on your system:

```
uucp ivan!/foo george!/bar /tmp
```

For an example of using the command **find** with **uucp** to spool files automatically, see the entry for **find**.

### Files

**/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** — List of reachable systems

**/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions** — List of system permissions

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/\*/sitename** — **uucp** activities log files for *sitename*

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename** — Spool directory for work

### See Also

**commands**, **mail**, **uucico**, **UUCP**, **uudecode**, **uuencode**, **uutouch**, **uuwatch**, **uuxqt**

**uucpname — System Maintenance**

Set the system's UUCP name  
**/etc/uucpname**

The file **/etc/uucpname** sets the name by which your system is known to all other system with which it communicates via UUCP. To rename your system, simply change the contents of this file.

The contents of **/etc/uucpname** is, in effect, your system's *nom de plume*. It should be unique (or as unique as possible), easily remembered, and preferably in good taste. Examples of existing systems include **lepanto**, **smiles**, and **stevesf**. You should avoid names taken from popular culture, such as **calvin**, **hobbes**, or **terminator**: many other people have already used them.

Note that system names must obey the following rules:

- UUCP names must be no more than 14 characters long.
- Names must consist of letters and numbers. No punctuation marks, white space, control characters, or diacritic marks are permitted.
- Each name must begin with a letter.

If you wish for your system to communicate with other systems in the world-wide UUCP network, you should follow the following restrictions as well:

- UUCP names should be contain no more than seven characters.
- They should use only lower-case letters and digits.

If you wish to publish a UUCP map entry for your system, it must be unique to the UUCP Mapping Project, run by the Usenix Association. Send mail to **uucp-map@rutgers.edu** for information on this project.

If you are connecting to other machines we recommend that you acquire a registered Fully Qualified Domain Name. Every person in the United States may register in the **.us** domain. Send mail to **us-domain-request@venera.lsi.edu** for information on this. If you wish to create your own domain (e.g., **mwc.com**), send mail to **info-request@uunet.uu.net** for information on this.

**See Also**

**domain system maintenance, UUCP**

**Notes**

Only the superuser **root** can edit **/etc/uucpname**.

**uudecode — Command**

Decode a binary file sent from a remote system  
**uudecode** [*file* ]

**uudecode** takes a **file** encoded by **uuencode** and translates it back to binary. Any leading and trailing lines added by **uucp** are discarded.

If the *file* is not specified, standard input is read.

**Example**

Consider the file **tmp** consisting of:

```
begin 644 sys
M5&AE( ' %U: 6-K( & ) R; W= N( & 9O> " ! J=6UP<R! O=F5R( ' 1H92! L87IY( & 1O9RX*

end
```

Note that the third line is a space followed by a newline. To decode it, type:

```
uudecode tmp
```

The output contained in file **sys** will be:

The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.

### See Also

commands, **uucp**, **UUCP**, **uuencode**

### Notes

The user on the remote system must be able to write the file.

### uuencode — Command

Encode a binary file for transmission

**uuencode** [ *source* ] *remotedest*

**uuencode** prepares a binary file for transmission to a remote destination via **uucp**. **uuencode** takes binary input and produces an encoded version, consisting of printable ASCII characters, on standard output, which may be redirected or piped to **uucp**. If *source* is not specified, the standard input is read.

The format of the encoded file is as follows:

1. A *header* line starting with the characters **begin** followed by a space. This is followed by the mode of the file in octal (see **chmod** for details) and the name of the output file specified on the command line. These last two fields are also separated by a space. The mode and the system name can be changed by directing the output into a file and editing it.
2. The *body* of the file, consisting of a number of lines, each no more than 62 characters long, including a newline character. Each line starts with a character count written as a single ASCII character, representing an integer value from 0 (octal 40) to 63 (octal 135) giving the number of characters in the rest of the line. This is followed by the encoded characters and a newline. The last line of the body is a line consisting of an ASCII space (octal 40).
3. The trailer line has just the characters **end** on a line by itself.

The encoding is done by taking three bytes and storing them in four characters, six bits per character.

### Example

To encode the file **tmp** consisting of the line

```
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.
```

to be sent to the remote system **george**, enter:

```
uuencode tmp george
```

The output will be:

```
begin 644 george
M5&AE( '8U:6-K(&)R;W=N(&9O>"!J=6UP<R!O=F5R( '1H92!L87IY(&1O9RX*

end
```

Note that the third line consists of a space followed by a newline.

### See Also

**commands**, **uucp**, **UUCP**, **uudecode**

### Notes

The file is expanded by more than one third, causing increased transmission time. This can be a factor when sending large files.

### **uuinstall** — Command

Install UUCP

**uuinstall**

**uuinstall** assists with the installation of UUCP. It uses screen templates, help lines, and prompts to help walk you through the installation of devices, remote systems, site names, domains, and permissions. For a detailed description of its use, see the tutorial on UUCP in the front of this manual.

### See Also

**commands**, **UUCP**

### Notes

Only the superuser **root** can execute **uuinstall**.

### **uulog** — Command

Examine UUCP operations

**uulog** [ **-fx** ] [ *system* ]

**uulog** copies the last part of the file **/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/system** to see what **uucico** has done recently. *system* names the remote system whose logfile will be examined. If it is not specified, logfiles for all systems are displayed.

**uulog** recognizes the following options:

- f** Similar to the command **tail -f**: this forces **uulog** to display UUCP activity as it is written into the log file, until you interrupt it by typing **<ctrl-C>**.
- x** Display the log files for the command **uuxqt** rather than **uucico**.

### Files

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uucico/system**— **uucico** log file for *system*

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/uuxqt/system**— **uuxqt** log file for *system*

### See Also

**commands**, **uucico**, **uucp**, **UUCP**, **uuxqt**

### **uumvlog** — Command

Archive UUCP log files

**uumvlog** *days*

**uumvlog** copies all UUCP log files into backup files, named for their respective commands and the date upon which the backup was performed. *days* gives the number of days for which backup files should be kept: if a backup file is more than *days* days old, then **uumvlog** will delete it.

This command should be run by **cron**, because the UUCP log files can threaten to exhaust available file space on a small system unless they are chopped back daily. For directions on how to do this, see the tutorial for UUCP or the Lexicon entry for **cron**.

### Files

**/usr/spool/uucp/.Log/command/system**— UUCP log files

### See Also

commands, crontab, uucico, uucp, UUCP, uuxqt

## uuname — Command

List UUCP names of known systems

**uuname** [ -l ]

**uuname** lists the names of all systems reachable directly by **uucp**. When used with the **-l** option, it reads and prints the contents of file **/etc/uucpname**, which holds the name of your local system.

### Files

**/etc/uucpname** — Name of local system

**/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys** — Site and remote login data list

### See Also

commands, uucico, uucp, UUCP, uulog

## uurmlock — Command

Remove UUCP lock files

**uurmlock**

UUCP uses a system of lock files to ensure that sites are polled in an orderly manner. It creates a lock file named after the site being polled, to prevent more than one invocation of **uucico** or another UUCP command from polling the same site at the same time. On occasion, if UUCP fails or crashes, it will neglect to clean up its lock files, thus preventing itself from polling the locked sites.

The command **uurmlock** removes all UUCP lock files. You should run this if you suspect that UUCP has died in a disorderly manner and has left lock files lying around unattended.

Before you run **uurmlock**, examine the output of the command **ps** to ensure that no UUCP command is running at the moment (and so has legitimately locked a site). Note that only the superuser **root** can run **uurmlock**.

### Files

**/usr/spool/uucp/LCK.\*** — UUCP lock files

### See Also

commands, UUCP

## uutoch — Command

Touch a file to trigger uucico poll

**uutoch** *system*

**uutoch** creates an empty control file for *system* in the directory **/usr/spool/uucp/system**. This forces UUCP to poll *system* when **uucico** is called with the option **-sany**. If the empty file for *system* already exists, it is left alone.

There are three types of files in the spool directory **/usr/spool/uucp/system**:

- C.** Command file.
- D.** Data file.
- X.** Execute file.

### **Example**

A typical usage is to put the following line into **/usr/lib/crontab**:

```
0 7 * * * /usr/lib/uucp/uutouch george
```

This forces UUCP to schedule a poll to the remote system **george** at 7 AM local time. The actual poll take place when **uucico** is started.

### **Files**

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename** — Directory for uucp work files

### **See Also**

**commands, cron, uucico, uucp, UUCP, uuxqt**

## **uux — Command**

Execute a command on a remote system

**uux** [-a user] [-rnpz] *command-string*

The command **uux** executes commands on a remote system. **uux** works in conjunction with the UUCP system. It is not generally used by the end user, but is instead called by the various UUCP subsystem components to request that work be performed at a remote system. For security reasons, you can execute on the remote system only the commands that are explicitly permitted by the remote system, as described in the entry for your system in the remote system's copy of **/usr/lib/uucp/Permissions**.

If all permissions are in order, an appropriately named **X.** file is created in the remote system's directory **/usr/spool/uucp/yoursystem**, where *yoursystem* gives the name by which the remote system knows your system. This file is then executed by the remote system's copy of **uuxqt**.

*command-string* consists of a command name followed by zero or more arguments. Both the command name and the arguments may be prefixed by an optional system name (sitename) and an exclamation mark. Note that all special characters must be escaped or enclosed in quotation marks to avoid being processed by your system's shell.

For example, the simplest form of the **uux** command is:

```
uux host!command arg0 arg2 argN
```

where *host* is the name of the remote system being contacted, as described in the file **/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys**, *command* is the name of the command to execute on the remote system, and *arg0* through *argN* give the arguments to *command*.

If an argument names a file, that file can either be on the remote system, on your system, or on some third system. For example, the command

```
uux widget!lpr /usr/sally/herfile
```

requests site **widget** to print its own file **/usr/sally/herfile**. On the other hand, the command

```
uux widget!lpr !$HOME/myfile
```



requests that site **widgit** print on its line printer the file **myfile** from your home directory on your home system. Note that the **'** that prefixes **myfile** indicates that it is on your system. Finally, the command

```
uux widgit!lpr ZEUS!usr/fred/hisfile
```

requests that **widgit** print file **/usr/fred/hisfile** which resides on site **ZEUS**. Note that if **widgit** does not know how to contact site **ZEUS**, the command will fail.

If you wish, you can embed the shell operators **<**, **>**, **:**, or **|** within a **uux** command. This lets you construct a more powerful command than you could do otherwise. Commands that contain these operators must, of course, be quoted so ensure that your shell does not interpret them. For example, the command

```
uux "widgit!pr /usr/sally/herfile > ZEUS!~/fred/hisfile"
```

tells **uux** to use **pr** to format its file **/usr/sally/herfile**, and write the output into file **/usr/spool/uucppublic/fred/hisfile** on site **ZEUS**. (Note that the tilde **~**, as always, is a synonym for **/usr/spool/uucppublic**.) Again, the command will fail if you do not have appropriate permissions on **widgit** or if **widgit** does not have appropriate permissions on **ZEUS**.

The operator **'.'** lets you use the standard input when constructing a **uux** command. For example, the command

```
who | uux - widgit!lpr
```

executes the **who** command on your system, pipes the output to **uux**, and tells **uux** to invoke the command **lpr** on remote system **widgit** to print the list of users on your system.

**uux** will attempt to transfer any needed input files to the system which will be executing the requested command. You must enclose in parentheses any output files generated by *command*, to distinguish them from input file names.

**uux** recognizes the following options:

**-a user**

Use *user* as the name of the requester. The default is the requester's login name.

**-r** Queue up the **uux** request but do not invoke **uucico** to actually handle the transfer. The default is to initiate **uucico**.

**-n** Suppress notification of command completion. The default is to send mail to the requester after the command has been run.

**-p** Input to **uux** will be via a pipe or input redirection.

**-z** Notify requester when *command-string* succeeds. The default is to not generate a notification.

## Examples

The following script uses a remote system to print files. Print files specified on the command line are sent unprocessed to system **prnsrvr** for printing using command **lpr**. Note that since the **-r** option is specified to **uux**, **uucico** will not be invoked automatically, thus causing the requests simply to be queued.

```
for i in $*
do
    uux -r prnsrvr!lpr !$i
done
```

The next example copies file **/foo** from system **george** and file **/bar** from system **norms** to your system and then invokes command **cmp** to compare the contents of the files. The results of the comparison are placed in output file **/tmp/cmp.results** on the local system, and notification of command completion is sent via electronic mail.

```
uux -z '!cmp -l george!/foo norms!/bar >/tmp/cmp.results'
```

Note that this example assumes that your system can talk to both **george** and **norms** and that your system has permission to read file **/foo** on system **george** as well as to read file **/bar** on system **norms**.

The last example runs a remote C compile on system **cserver** using local file **mycode.c** as input and producing executable file **mycode** as output. Any C compiler error messages will be placed in file **/tmp/errors** on the local system.

```
uux 'cserver!cc -O -o (!mycode) !mycode.c >!/tmp/errors'
```

### **See Also**

**commands, UUCP, uuxqt**

### **uuxqt — Command**

Execute commands requested by a remote system

**uuxqt**

**uuxqt** takes the execute files, those marked with the prefix **X.** in the directory **/usr/spool/uucp/sitename**, and executes them. It will only execute programs for which the remote system has permission.

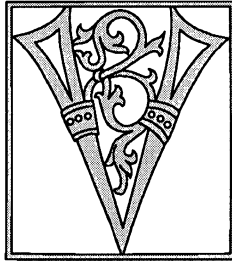
**uuxqt** may be called by either **uucp** or **uucico**. It is not generally considered a user-callable program.

### **Files**

**/usr/spool/uucp/sitename** — Directory for execute files

### **See Also**

**commands, uucico, uucp, UUCP, uux**



### va\_arg() — Variable Arguments

Return pointer to next argument in argument list

```
#include <stdarg.h>
```

```
typename *va_arg(listptr, typename)
```

```
va_list listptr, typename;
```

**va\_arg()** returns a pointer to the next argument in an argument list. It can be used with functions that take a variable number of arguments, such as **printf** or **scanf**, to help write such functions portably. It is always used with **va\_end()** and **va\_start()** within a function that takes a variable number of arguments.

*listptr* is of type **va\_list**, which is defined in the header **stdarg.h**. This object must first be initialized by the macro **va\_start()**.

*typename* is the name of the type for which **va\_arg()** is to return a pointer. For example, if you wish **va\_arg()** to return a pointer to an integer, *typename* should be of type **int**.

**va\_arg()** can only handle “standard” data types, i.e., those data types that can be transformed to pointers by appending an asterisk “\*”.

#### Example

For an example of this macro, see the entry for **variable arguments**.

#### See Also

**variable arguments**

#### Notes

If there is no next argument for **va\_arg()** to handle, or if *typename* is incorrect, then the behavior of **va\_arg()** is undefined.

The ANSI Standard demands that **va\_arg()** be implemented only as a macro. If its macro definition is suppressed within a program, its behavior is undefined.

### va\_end() — Variable Arguments

Tidy up after traversal of argument list

```
#include <stdarg.h>
```

```
void va_end(listptr)
```

```
va_list listptr;
```

**va\_end()** helps to tidy up a function after it has traversed the argument list for a function that takes a variable number of arguments. It can be used with functions that take a variable number of arguments, such as **printf** or **scanf**, to help write such functions portably. It should be used with the routines **va\_arg()** and **va\_start()** from within a function that takes a variable number of arguments.

*listptr* is of type **va\_list()**, which is declared in header **stdarg.h**. *listptr* must first have been initialized by macro **va\_start**.

### Example

For an example of this function, see the entry for **variable arguments**.

### See Also

**variable arguments**

### Notes

If **va\_list()** is not initialized by **va\_start()**, or if **va\_end()** is not called before a function with variable arguments exits, then the behavior of **va\_end()** is undefined.

### **va\_start()** — Variable Arguments

Point to beginning of argument list

```
#include <stdarg.h>
```

```
void va_start(listptr, rightparm)
```

```
va_list listptr, type rightparm;
```

**va\_start()** is a macro that points to the beginning of a list of arguments. It can be used with functions that take a variable number of arguments, such as **printf()** or **scanf()**, to help implement them portably. It is always used with **va\_arg()** and **va\_end()** from within a function that takes a variable number of arguments.

*listptr* is of type **va\_list**, which is a type defined in the header **stdarg.h**.

*rightparm* is the rightmost parameter defined in the function's parameter list. Its type is set by the function that is using **va\_start()**. Undefined behavior results if any of the following conditions apply to **rightparm**: if it has storage class **register**; if it has a function type or an array type; or if its type is not compatible with the type that results from the default argument promotions.

### Example

For an example of this macro, see the entry for **variable arguments**.

### See Also

**variable arguments**

### Notes

The ANSI Standard demands that **va\_start** be implemented only as a macro. If the macro definition of **va\_start** is suppressed within a program, the behavior is undefined.

### **variable arguments** — Overview

The ANSI Standard mandates the creation of a set of routines to help implement functions, such as **printf** and **scanf**, that take a variable number of arguments. These routines are called from within another function to help it handle its arguments.

These routines are declared or defined in the header **stdarg.h**, and are as follows:

<b>va_arg()</b>	Return pointer to next argument in argument list
<b>va_end()</b>	Tidy up after an argument list has been traversed
<b>va_start()</b>	Initialize object that holds function arguments

**va\_arg()** and **va\_start()** must be implemented as macros; **va\_end()** must be implemented as a library function. All three use the special type **va\_list**, which is an object that holds the arguments to the function being implemented.

**Example**

The following example concatenates multiple strings into a common allocated string and returns the string's address.

```
#include <stdarg.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stddef.h>
#include <stdio.h>

char *
multcat(numargs)
int numargs;
{
    va_list argptr;
    char *result;
    int i, siz;

    /* get size required */
    va_start(argptr, numargs);
    for(siz = i = 0; i < numargs; i++)
        siz += strlen(va_arg(argptr, char *));

    if ((result = calloc(siz + 1, 1)) == NULL) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Out of space\n");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
    va_end(argptr);

    va_start(argptr, numargs);
    for(i = 0; i < numargs; i++)
        strcat(result, va_arg(argptr, char *));
    va_end(argptr);
    return(result);
}

int
main(void)
{
    printf(multcat(5, "One ", "two ", "three ",
        "testing", ".\n"));
}
```

**See Also**

**libraries, stdarg.h**

**vi — Command**

Clone of Berkeley-style screen editor

**vi** [*options*] [*+cmd*] [*file1* ... *file27*]

**vi** is a link to the editor **elvis**, which is a clone of the UNIX editors **ex** and **vi**. For details on how to run **vi**, see the entry for **elvis** in the Lexicon.

**See Also**

commands, ed, ex, elvis, me, view

**Notes**

**elvis** is copyright © 1990 by Steve Kirkendall, and was written by Steve Kirkendall (kirkenda@cs.pdx.edu or ...uunet!tektronix!psueea!eecs!kirkenda), assisted by numerous volunteers. It is freely redistributable, subject to the restrictions noted in included documentation. Source code for **elvis** is available through the Mark Williams bulletin board, USENET, and numerous other outlets.

**elvis** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

**vidattr()** — terminfo Function

Set the terminal's video attributes

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
vidattr(newmode)
```

```
int newmode;
```

COHERENT 386 comes with a set of functions that let you use **terminfo** descriptions to manipulate a terminal. **vidattr()** sends one or more video attributes to the terminal opened by a call to **setupterm()**. *newmode* is any combination of the macros **A\_STANDOUT**, **A\_UNDERLINE**, **A\_REVERSE**, **A\_BLINK**, **A\_DIM**, **A\_BOLD**, **A\_INVIS**, **A\_PROTECT**, and **A\_ALTCHARSET**, OR'd together. Their names are self-explanatory; all are defined in the header file **curses.h**.

**See Also**

**curses.h**, **setupterm()**, **terminfo**, **vidputs()**

**vidputs()** — terminfo Function

Write video attributes into a function

```
#include <curses.h>
```

```
vidputs(newmode,outc)
```

```
int newmode;
```

```
int (*outc)();
```

COHERENT 386 comes with a set of functions that let you use **terminfo** descriptions to manipulate a terminal. **vidputs()** resets the video attributes of the terminal that had been opened by a call to **setupterm()**.

*newmode* is any combination of the macros **A\_STANDOUT**, **A\_UNDERLINE**, **A\_REVERSE**, **A\_BLINK**, **A\_DIM**, **A\_BOLD**, **A\_INVIS**, **A\_PROTECT**, and **A\_ALTCHARSET**, OR'd together. Their names are self-explanatory; all are defined in the header file **curses.h**.

*outc* points to a function that takes a single character as an argument, e.g., **putchar()**.

The related function **vidattr()** resets video attributes without requiring a pointer to a function.

**See Also**

**curses.h**, **setupterm()**, **terminfo**, **vidattr()**

**view** — Command

Screen-oriented viewing utility

```
view file1 ... file27
```

**view** is a link to **elvis**, which is a clone of the UNIX **vi/ex** set of editors. Invoking **elvis** through this link forces it to operate solely in read-only mode, just as the UNIX **view** utility operates.

For information on how to use this version of **view**, see the Lexicon page for **elvis**.

### See Also

**commands**, **ed**, **elvis**, **ex**, **me**, **vi**

### Notes

**view** is copyright © 1990 by Steve Kirkendall, and was written by Steve Kirkendall (kirkenda@cs.pdx.edu or ...uunet!tektronix!psueea!eecs!kirkenda), assisted by numerous volunteers. It is freely redistributable, subject to the restrictions noted in included documentation. Source code for **virec** is available through the Mark Williams bulletin board, USENET, and numerous other outlets.

**elvis** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

### **virec** — Command

Recover the modified version of a file after a crash

**virec** [-d *tmpdir*] *textfilename*...

**virec** </**tmp**/**elv**XXX

**virec** extracts the most recent version of a text file from a temporary file in **/tmp**.

When you edit a file with **elvis**, only about five kilobytes of the file are stored in RAM; the rest is stored in a file in **/tmp**. **virec** extracts the “undo” version from the file stored in **/tmp**. This is most useful when the system (or **elvis**) crashes in the middle of a long editing session, since the “undo” version of the file contains everything except your last change.

There are two ways to use **virec**. The first, and most common, way to invoke **virec** is to give it the name of the file you were editing; it finds the matching file in **/tmp** and writes the newest available version of the file over the existing version. It then deletes the **/tmp** file.

The second way is to use the ‘<’ to let **virec** read a particular **/tmp** file via **stdin**. Use this method when you either have forgotten which file you were editing and want to see its contents, or when you wish to recover a file without losing either the **/tmp** file or the current version of the text file.

The **-d** option tells **virec** to look for a temporary file in *directory* rather than in **/tmp**.

### Files

**/tmp/elv\*** — Temporary file created by **elvis**

### See Also

**commands**, **elvis**

### Notes

**virec** is copyright © 1990 by Steve Kirkendall, and was written by Steve Kirkendall (kirkenda@cs.pdx.edu or ...uunet!tektronix!psueea!eecs!kirkenda), assisted by numerous volunteers. It is freely redistributable, subject to the restrictions noted in included documentation. Source code for **virec** is available through the Mark Williams bulletin board, USENET, and numerous other outlets.

Please note that this program is distributed as a service to COHERENT users, but it is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

**void — C Keyword**

Data type

The keyword **void** indicates that the function does not return a value. Using **void** declarations makes programs clearer and is useful in error checking. For example, a function that prints an error message and calls **exit** to terminate a program should be declared **void** because it never returns. A function that performs a calculation and stores its result in a global variable (rather than **returning** the result), or one that returns no value, should also be declared **void** to prevent the accidental use of the function in an expression.

**See Also**

C keywords

**volatile — C Keyword**

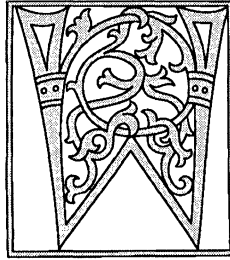
Qualify an identifier as frequently changing

The type qualifier **volatile** marks an identifier as being frequently changed, either by other portions of the program, by the hardware, by other programs in the execution environment, or by any combination of these. This alerts the translator to re-fetch the given identifier whenever it encounters an expression that includes the identifier. In addition, an object marked as **volatile** must be stored at the point where an assignment to this object takes place.

**See Also**C keyword, **const****Notes**

Although COHERENT recognizes this keyword, the semantics are not implemented in this release. Thus, storage declared to be **volatile** might have references removed by optimizations that the compiler performs. The compiler will generate a warning if the peephole optimizer is enabled and the keyword **volatile** is detected.





### **wait** — Command

Await completion of background process

**wait** [*pid*]

Typing the character '&' after a command tells the shell **sh** to execute it as a *background* (or *detached*) process; otherwise, it is executed as a *foreground* process. You can perform other tasks while a background process is being executed. The shell prints the process id number of each background process when it is invoked. **ps** reports on currently active processes.

The command **wait** tells the shell to suspend execution until the child process with the given *pid* is completed. If no *pid* is given, **wait** suspends execution until all background processes are completed. If the process with the given *pid* is not a child process of the current shell, **wait** returns immediately.

The shell executes **wait** directly.

### **See Also**

**commands, ksh, ps, sh**

### **Notes**

If a subshell invokes a background process and then terminates, **wait** will return immediately rather than waiting for termination of the grandchild process.

### **wait()** — System Call

Await completion of a child process

**wait**(*statp*)

**int** \**statp*;

**wait()** suspends execution of the invoking process until a child process (created with **fork()**) terminates. It returns the process identifier of the terminating child process. If there are no children or if an interrupt occurs, it returns -1.

If it is successful, **wait()** returns the process identifier of the terminated child process. In addition, **wait()** fills in the integer pointed to by *statp* with exit-status information about the completed process. If *statp* is NULL, **wait()** discards the exit-status information.

**wait()** fills in the low byte of the status-information word with the termination status of the child process. A child process may have terminated because of a signal, because of an exit call, or have stopped execution during **ptrace()**. Termination with **exit()**, which is normal completion, gives status 0. Other terminations give signal values as status (as defined in the article on **signal()**). The 0200 bit of the status code indicates that a core dump was produced. A status of 0177 indicates that the process is waiting for further action from **ptrace()**.

The high byte of the returned status is the low byte of the argument to the **exit()** system call.

If a parent process does not remain in existence long enough to **wait()** on a child process, the child process is adopted by process 1 (the initialization process).

### See Also

**\_exit()**, **fork()**, **ksh**, **ptrace()**, **signal()**, **sh**, **system calls**

### wall — Command

Send a message to all logged-in users  
**/etc/wall**

**wall** types a message to every user currently logged into the COHERENT system, with the exception of the sender. It can be used to inform users of information of general interest; for example, that man has landed on the moon, or that the system is going down in 15 minutes.

**wall** reads the message to be broadcast from the standard input until end of file. When it sends the message, it prefaces it with the herald "Broadcast message ...", which includes an audible warning. Only the superuser should invoke **/etc/wall** (to override access protections of the target terminals).

### Files

**/etc/utmp** — Current users file  
**/dev/tty\***

### See Also

**commands**, **msg**, **who**, **write**

### Diagnostics

The message "Cannot send to user on *ttyname*" indicates that **wall** cannot write to the given user.

### wc — Command

Count words, lines, and characters in text files  
**wc [-clw] [file...]**

**wc** counts words, lines, and characters in each *file*. If no *file* is given, **wc** uses the standard input. If more than one *file* is given, **wc** also prints a total for all of the files.

**wc** defines a *word* to be a string of characters surrounded by white space (blanks, tabs, or newlines). It defines the number of lines to be the number of newline characters in the file, plus one.

**wc** recognizes the following options:

- c** Count only characters.
- l** Count only lines.
- w** Count only words.

The default action is to print all counts.

### See Also

**commands**

### whence — Command

List a command's type  
**whence [-v] command ...**

The command **whence** is built into the Korn shell **ksh**. It lists the type for each *command*. Option **-v** lists function and alias values as well.

## See Also

commands, ksh

## whereis — Command

Locate source, binary, and manual files

**whereis** [-bmrsu] [-BMS *dir* ... -f] *name* ...

The command **whereis** locates source files, binary files (executables), and manual pages (documentation) that match a given *name*. Prior to searching, **whereis** strips *name* of any path information, extensions, and the **s.** prefix.

By default, **whereis** searches the following directories:

Sources	Binaries	Manual Pages
/usr/src/cmd	/bin	/usr/man/*
/usr/src/games	/usr/bin	
/usr/src/local	/usr/games	
/usr/src/alien	/usr/local	
/usr/include	/etc	
/usr/include/sys	/lib	
	/usr/lib	

## Options

**whereis** recognizes the following command-line options:

- b** Search only for binary files.
- B** Use the directory list specified by *dir* instead of the default directory list for binary files.
- f** Terminate the directory list introduced by options **-B**, **-M**, or **-S**, and treat any additional command-line arguments as file names to be searched for.
- m** Search only for manual pages (documentation files).
- M** Use the directory list specified by *dir* instead of the default directory list for manual pages.
- r** Search recursively downward from the directories specified by *dir* or from the default directories. This option is useful when the searched directories contain sub-directories. By default, **whereis** searches only the directories specified or the default directories.
- s** Search only for source files.
- S** Use the directory list specified by *dir* instead of the default directory list for source files.
- u** Search for “unusual” files. A file is said to be unusual if it does not have one entry for each of the three search categories.

Please note that if you use options **-B**, **-S**, or **-M**, you must use the **-f** option to terminate the directory list specified by *dir*.

## Example

The following example finds all commands in directory **bin** that have either no corresponding source code in directory **src** or no corresponding documentation in directory **doc**:

```
whereis -u -M doc -S src -B bin -f bin/*
```

## See Also

commands, find, qfind, which

**Notes**

**whereis** is copyright © 1980,1990 by The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

**whereis** is distributed as a service to COHERENT customers, as is. It is not supported by Mark Williams Company. *Caveat utilitor.*

**which — Command**

Locate executable files

**which** *command* ...

**which** displays the full path name associated with *command*. It searches the directories named by environment variable **PATH** for the first executable that matches *command* and that you have permission to execute. If **which** can find no executable that matches your request, an error message is displayed.

**Example**

The following example displays the path names that correspond to commands **write**, **vi**, **myprog**, and **fsck**:

```
which write vi myprog fsck
```

**See Also**

**commands**, **find**, **PATH**, **qfind**, **whereis**

**while — Command**

Execute commands repeatedly

**while** *sequence1* [**do** *sequence2*] **done**

The shell construct **while** controls a loop. It first executes the commands in *sequence1*. If the exit status is zero, the shell executes the commands in the optional *sequence2* and repeats the process until the exit status of *sequence1* is nonzero. Because the shell recognizes a reserved word only as the unquoted first word of a command, both **do** and **done** must occur unquoted at the start of a line or preceded by `;`.

The shell commands **break** and **continue** may be used to alter control flow within a **while** loop. The **until** construct has the same form as **while**, but the sense of the test is reversed.

The shell executes **while** directly.

**See Also**

**break**, **commands**, **continue**, **ksh**, **sh**, **test**, **until**

**while — C Keyword**

Introduce a loop

**while**(*condition*)

**while** is a C keyword that introduces a conditional loop. *condition* is tested on reiteration of the loop, and the loop ends when *condition* is no longer satisfied. For example,

```
while (foo < 10)
```

introduces a loop that will continue until the variable **foo** is reset to ten or greater. Note that the statement

```
while (1)
```

will loop forever, unless interrupted by a **break**, **goto**, or **return** statement.

**See Also**

**break**, **C keywords**, **continue**, **do**, **for**

**who — Command**

Print who is logged in

**who** [*file*] [**am i**]

The command **who** prints the names of the users who are logged in to the system. For each user, **who** prints her name, terminal name, login date, and login time. The form **who am i** prints this information only about yourself.

If *file* is specified, **who** uses it instead of **/etc/utmp** to obtain information about who is logged in. This is useful, for example, with the file **/usr/adm/wtmp**, which contains a continuous record of logins, logouts and reboots. When *file* is specified, **who** displays logouts; otherwise, they are suppressed.

**Files**

**/etc/utmp** — To get user information

**See Also**

**ac**, **commands**, **sa**

**wildcards — Definition**

Wildcards are characters that, in some circumstances, can represent a range of ASCII characters. Another name for them is “metacharacters”. The wildcards available under the COHERENT are as follows:

- ? Match any one character.
- \* Match any number of characters, or no characters at all.
- [ ] A set of characters enclosed between '[' and ']' match any one character of the set. Sets of characters may include ranges, such as **[a-z]** for all lower-case letters or **[0-9]** for all numerals.
- [! ] A set of characters enclosed between '[' and ']' match any one character *except* one of the set. Sets of characters may include ranges, such as **[a-z]** for all lower-case letters or **[0-9]** for all numerals. For example, the command

```
ls [!abc]*
```

prints the names of all files *except those that begin with a, b, or c*.

- \ Ignore the special meaning of a wildcard.

**See Also**

**definitions**, **egrep**, **pattern**, **pnmatch()**

**write — Command**

Converse with another user

**write** *user* [*tty*]

The COHERENT system provides several commands that allow users to communicate with each other. **write** allows two logged-in users to have an extended, interactive conversation.

**write** initiates a conversation with *user*. If *tty* is given, **write** looks for the *user* on that terminal; this is useful if a user is marked as being logged in on more than one device. Otherwise, **write** holds the conversation with the first instance of *user* found on any tty.

If found, **write** notifies *user* that you are beginning a conversation with him. All subsequent lines typed into **write** are forwarded to the *user's* terminal, except lines beginning with **!**, which are sent to the shell **sh**. Typing end of file (usually **<ctrl-D>**) terminates **write** and sends *user* the message "EOT" to tell him that communication has ended.

Two users typing lines to **write** at about the same time can cause extreme confusion, so users should agree on a protocol to limit when each is typing. The following protocol is suggested. One user initiates a **write** to another, and waits until the other user replies before beginning. The first user then types until he wishes a reply and suffixes "o" (over) to indicate he is through. The other user does the same, and the conversation alternates until one user wishes to terminate it. This user types "oo" (over and out). The other user replies in the same way, indicating he too is finished. Finally each of the users leave **write** by typing end-of-file (usually **<ctrl-D>**).

Any user may deny others the permission to **write** to his terminal by using the command **mesg**.

### **Files**

**/etc/utmp**  
**/dev/\***

### **See Also**

**commands, mail, mesg, msg, sh, wall, who**

### **Notes**

You should use **write** only for extended conversations. Use **msg** to send brief communications to a logged in user, and **mail** to communicate with a user not currently logged in. **wall** broadcasts a message to all logged in users.

## **write() — System Call**

Write to a file

```
int write(fd, buffer, n)  
int fd; char *buffer; int n;
```

**write()** writes *n* bytes of data, beginning at address *buffer*, into the file associated with the file descriptor *fd*. Writing begins at the current write position, as set by the last call to either **write()** or **lseek()**. **write()** advances the position of the file pointer by the number of characters written.

### **Example**

For an example of how to use this function, see the entry for **open()**.

### **See Also**

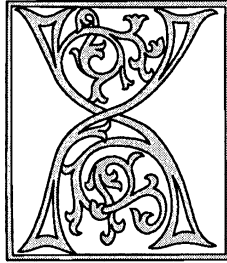
**STDIO, system calls**

### **Diagnostics**

**write()** returns -1 if an error occurred before the **write()** operation commenced, such as a bad file descriptor *fd* or invalid *buffer* pointer. Otherwise, it returns the number of bytes written. It should be considered an error if this number is not the same as *n*.

### **Notes**

**write()** is a low-level call that passes data directly to COHERENT. It should not be mixed with high-level calls, such as **fread()**, **fwrite()**, **fputs()**, or **fprintf()**.



### ***xgcd()* — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Extended greatest-common-divisor function

```
#include <mprec.h>
```

```
void xgcd(a, b, r, s, g)
```

```
mint *a, *b, *r, *s, *g;
```

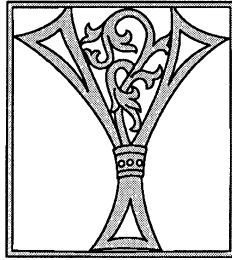
The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **xgcd()** is an extended version of the greatest-common-division function. It sets the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *g* to the greatest common divisor of the **mint** pointed to by *a* and that pointed to by *b*. It also sets the **mints** pointed to by *r* and *s* so the following relation holds:

$$g = a * r + b * s$$

*r*, *s*, and *g* must all be distinct.

**See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

**yacc — Command**

Parser generator

**yacc** [*option ...*] *file***cc** **y.tab.c** [-**ly**]

Many programs process highly structured input according to given rules. Compilers are a familiar example. Two of the most complicated parts of such programs are *lexical analysis* and *parsing* (sometimes called *syntax analysis*). The COHERENT system includes two powerful tools called **lex** and **yacc** to assist you in performing these tasks. **lex** takes a set of lexical rules and writes a lexical analyzer, whereas **yacc** takes a set of parsing rules and writes a parser; both output C source code that can be compiled into a full program.

The term *yacc* is an acronym for “yet another compiler-compiler”. In brief, the **yacc** input *file* describes a context free grammar using a BNF-like syntax. The output is a file **y.tab.c**; it contains the definition of a C function **yyparse()**, which parses the language described in *file*. The output is ready for processing by the C compiler **cc**. Ambiguities in the grammar are reported to the user, but resolved automatically by precedence rules. The user must provide a lexical scanner **yylex()**, which you may generate with **lex**. The **yacc** library includes default definitions of **main**, **yylex**, and **yyperror**, and may be included with the option **-ly** on the **cc** command line.

**yacc** recognizes the following options:

**-d** Enable debugging output; implies **-v**.

**-hdr** *headerfile*

Put the header output in *headerfile* instead of **y.tab.h**.

**-items** *N*

Allow *N* items per state. This option is designed to help **yacc** users deal with the ANSI C grammar.

**-l** *listfile*

Place a description of the state machine, tokens, parsing actions, and statistics in file *listfile*.

**-sprod** *N*

Allow *N* symbols per production; default, 20. This option is designed to help **yacc** users deal with the ANSI C grammar.

**-st** Print statistics on the standard output.

**-v** Verbose option. Like **-l**, but places the listing in file **y.output** by default.

The following options are useful if table overflow messages appear:

**-nterms** *N*

Allow for *N* nonterminals; default, 100.

**LEXICON**



- prods** *N*  
Allow for *N* productions (rules); default, 350.
- states** *N*  
Allow for *N* states; default, 300.
- terms** *N*  
Allow for *N* terminal symbols; default 100.
- types** *N*  
Allow for *N* types; default, ten.

### Files

**y.tab.c** — C source output  
**y.tab.h** — Default C header output  
**y.output** — Default listing output  
**/lib/yyparse.c** — Protoparser  
**/tmp/y[ao]\*** — Temporaries  
**/usr/include/action.h** — Header referenced by protoparser  
**/usr/lib/liby.a** — Library

### See Also

**cc, commands, lex**

*Introduction to yacc, Yet Another Compiler-Compiler*

DeRemer F, Pennello TJ: *Efficient computation of LALR(1) lookahead sets*. SIGPLAN conference, 1979.

### Diagnostics

**yacc** reports the number of R/R (reduce/reduce) and S/R (shift/reduce) conflicts (ambiguities) on the standard error stream.

### yes — Command

Print infinitely many responses

**yes** [*string*]

With no argument, **yes** prints the string **y\n** forever. If a *string* is named on the command line, then **yes** prints it forever.

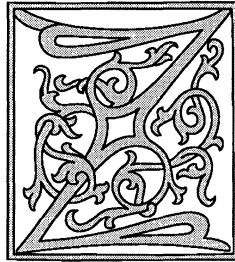
### Example

The following example scribbles the string **foo\n** over a high-density, 5.25-inch floppy disk in drive 0 (drive A):

```
yes foo >/dev/fha0
```

### See Also

**commands**

**zcat — Command**

Concatenate a compressed file

**zcat** [-w *tmpfile*] [*file* ...] (COHERENT 286)

**zcat** [*file* ...] (COHERENT 386)

**zcat** uncompresses each *file* “on the fly,” and prints the uncompressed text onto the standard output. Each *file* must have been compressed by the command **compress** and have the suffix **.Z**.

If no *file* is specified on the command, **zcat** uncompresses matter read from the standard input.

**Example**

**zcat** is extremely useful for extracting selected items from large archives; it spares you the overhead of having to uncompress the entire archive just to get at one or two files.

For example, to extract **myfile** from the compressed archive **backup.tar.Z**, use the following command line:

```
zcat backup.tar.Z | tar xvf - myfile
```

**See Also**

**commands, compress, ram, uncompress**

**Notes**

The COHERENT-286 edition of **zcat** includes the option **-w** — the “workfile” option. **zcat** writes its temporary data into *tmpfile* rather than writing it into the RAM device **/dev/ram1**. This option is not available under COHERENT 386.

Older versions of **zcat** could only uncompress files that had been compressed with option **-b12** or lower, with **-b12** being the default if the option was omitted. The current release of **zcat** (under both COHERENT 286 or COHERENT 386) now handles values up to **-b16**. COHERENT 286 uses RAM device **/dev/ram1** for temporary storage. For this reason, it is strongly advised that you not use **/dev/ram1** as a RAM disk under COHERENT 286.

**zerop() — Multiple-Precision Mathematics**

Indicate if multi-precision integer is zero

**#include** <mprec.h>

**int** zerop(*a*)

**mint** \**a*;

The COHERENT system includes a suite of routines that allow you to perform multiple-precision mathematics. The function **zerop()** returns true if the multiple-precision integer (or **mint**) pointed to by *a* is zero; otherwise, it returns false.

**See Also**

**multiple-precision mathematics**

---

# Error Messages

---

The following lists the error messages produced by major utilities within COHERENT.

## COHERENT System Error Messages

The following gives the error messages returned by the COHERENT kernel. The messages describe two categories of error:

- **Hardware:** These messages indicate serious problems with your system hardware. If any appears, you need to contact a representative of the hardware manufacturer. Note that the symbol '#' in the following messages stands for a number that appears when the kernel prints the message on the console. When reporting the problem, be sure to include the number actually printed out.
- **Halts:** These messages appear when COHERENT has crashed.

When you see a *halt* message on the console, copy it down, as well as all other information on the screen. If the advice offered in this section does not help the problem, call Mark Williams Support.

Arena # too small (*hardware*)

Bad block # (alloc) (*hardware*)

The kernel attempted to allocate a block of memory, only to find that there was something physically wrong with it.

Bad block # (free) (*hardware*)

The kernel attempted to free a block of memory, only to find that there was something physically wrong with it.

Bad free # (*hardware*)

Bad freelist (*halt*)

The *freelist* is a list of free blocks on the disk. The COHERENT system maintains this list so it can see where it can write data on the disk. This message indicates that the freelist has been corrupted somehow. To fix this problem, run **/etc/shutdown** to return to single-use mode; use **sync** to flush the buffers; use **umount** to unmount the affected file system; and then run **fsck** to repair the file system.

Bad segment count (*hardware*)

Bus error at # (*hardware*)

Cannot allocate stack (*hardware*)

Cannot create process (*hardware*)

Corrupt arena (*hardware*)

Illegal instruction at # (*hardware*)

Inode # busy (*hardware*)

Inode table overflow (*hardware*)

Not a separate I/D machine (*hardware*)

Out of i-nodes (*halt*)

A COHERENT file system has one i-node for each file it maintains. The number of i-nodes is set when the file system is created. If you have numerous small files on a file system, it is possible to exhaust that file system's resources even though the command **df** shows that space remains on the file system. To get around this problem, you must delete files, one file for each i-node needed; or you must use **ar** to archive a mass of files. To do this, first use **/etc/shutdown** to return the system to single-user mode, as described above. Delete files, or use **ar** as described above. Then use **sync** to flush all buffers, and use the command **umount** to unmount the affected file system. Then run **fsck** on the affected file system before rebooting. **fsck** checks COHERENT file systems and fixes them if necessary. Consult the Lexicon entry on **fsck** before you use this program for the first time.

Out of space (*m,n*) (*halt*)

When this error message appears, your file system still has i-nodes but the allotted disk space has been exhausted; perhaps you have a few large files that are eating up disk space. To get around this problem, you must delete or compress files to clear up disk space. First, use **/etc/shutdown** to return to single-user mode, as described above; then delete files or compress them as described above until enough space has been cleared to allow you to continue your work. Use **sync** to flush buffer, use **umount** to unmount the affected file system, and run **fsck** on the affected file system. Then reboot.

Random trap (*hardware*)

Raw I/O from non user (*hardware*)

System too large (*hardware*)

Swapio bad parameter (*hardware*)

Swapio error (*hardware*)

## Compiler Error Messages

The following gives the error messages returned by the COHERENT C compiler, the assembler **as** (both the 286 and 386 editions), and the linker **ld** (also in 286 and 386 editions). The messages are in alphabetical order, and each is marked as to whether it is a *fatal*, *error*, *warning*, or *strict* condition. The compilation phases are **cpp**, the preprocessor; **cc0**, the parser; **cc1**, the code generator; and **cc2**, the optimizer.

A fatal message usually indicates a condition that caused the compiler to terminate execution. Fatal errors from the later phases of compilation often cannot be fixed, and may indicate problems in the compiler or assembler.

An error message points to a condition in the source code that the compiler cannot resolve. This almost always occurs when the program does something illegal, e.g., has unbalanced braces.

Warning messages point out code that is compilable, but may produce trouble when the program is executed. A strict message refers to a passage in the code that is unorthodox and may not be portable.

### as 286 Error Messages

. (*error*)

Dot label error. This indicates that a period was used as a label, e.g., ".:".

**a (error)**

Addressing error. This is generated by nearly any kind of operand/instruction mismatch or semantic error in address fields.

**string: cannot create (error)**

The assembler cannot create the output file it was requested to create. This often is due to a problem with the output device; check and make sure that it is not full, and that it is working correctly.

**internal error, c=number in expr. (error)**

The assembler has detected a situation that "should not occur". Please send a copy of the source code that triggered this error to Mark Williams Company. For immediate help during business hours, contact Mark Williams Company technical support.

**m (error)**

Multiple definition. The offending line is involved in the multiple definition of a label.

**o (error)**

An unrecognized opcode mnemonic was found. Contrast this with error 'q', where the opcode is recognized but the syntax is in error.

**p (error)**

Phase error. The value of a label changed during the assembly. An instruction has a size that differs between the first and second passes.

**q (error)**

Questionable syntax. The assembler has no idea how to parse this line, and it has given up.

**r (error)**

Relocation error. The program attempted to create or use an expression in a way that the linker cannot resolve.

**s (error)**

Segment error. The program attempted to initialize something in a segment that contains only uninitialized data.

**u (error)**

A symbol is used but never defined. The symbol's name is displayed.

### **as 386 Error Messages**

**.align must be 1, 2 or 4 (error)**

**.align** must work after the link. These are the only values for which this can be true.

**Ambiguous operand length, n bytes selected (warning)**

The assembler cannot tell the operand length by looking at the opcode and the operands. You may want to do something like change **mov** to **movl**.

**Arithmetic between addresses on different segments (error)**

You may only add or subtract addresses if they are in the same segment.

**Bad scale (error)**

Address scale must be 0, 1, 2, 4, or 8.

**16 bit addressing mode used in 32 bit code (warning)**

You probably don't want to do this. For example, you may want to say **(%esi)**, not **(%si)**.

## **ERROR MESSAGES**

32 bit addressing mode used in 16 bit code (*warning*)

You probably don't want to do this. For example, you may want to say (%**sl**), not (%**esi**).

Cannot fopen(*string*, *string*) (*fatal*)

cannot insert \0 in string (*error*)

\0 terminates strings. Instead of

```
.byte "hello\n\0"
```

use:

```
.byte "hello\n", 0
```

Character constant *n* long (*error*)

Character constants must be one byte long.

.comm must have tag (*error*)

The format of **.comm** is **.comm name, size**.

Command option 'c' missing its argument (*fatal*)

Data defined in .bss (*error*)

The **.bss** segment is uninitialized data. You cannot place actual values there.

.define must have a label (*error*)

Duplicate symbol '*string*' (*error*)

*symbol* is defined on two different lines.

.else detected logic type *n* (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

End of line after backslash reading parm (*error*)

Macro parameters may not be broken up with backslash.

End of line after backslash (*error*)

End of line detected in character constant (*error*)

End of line detected in string (*error*)

End of macro building .while (*error*)

A **.macro** ended while reading in a **.while** loop.

.endi detected logic type *n* (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

Error in binary number (*error*)

Error in octal number (*error*)

Found *n* parms expected *n* (*error*)

Illegal combination of opcode and operands (*error*)

Although the opcode is valid and the operands are valid, there is no form of this opcode which takes this combination of operands in this order.

Illegal use of local symbol (*error*)

Illegal use of predefined symbol *string*. (*error*)

Improper instruction following lock (*warning*)

Only a few instructions are valid after a lock instruction. See your machine documentation for details.

Improper instruction following rep (*warning*)

Only a few instructions are valid after a rep instruction. See your machine documentation for details.

Indirect mode on invalid instruction (*error*)

Indirection is only allowed on call and jump near instructions.

Internal error relative branch logic (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

Invalid .mlist option must be on or off (*error*)

Invalid character 'c' string at position *n* (*error*)

Invalid character 0x0xn string at position *n* (*error*)

Invalid data type, must be symbol (*error*)

Invalid opcode: 'string' (*error*)

The string in the opcode position is not one of our opcodes or one of your macros.

Invalid operand type (*error*)

string is an improper register in this context (*error*)

Label ignored (*error*)

This statement cannot take a label.

Label on invalid operator (*error*)

Label required (*error*)

Length *n* string range exceeded (*error*)

Strings may not exceed 32 kilobytes.

Logic error in macro def 'string' *n* (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

Logic error in umark (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

Macro definition must have a label (*error*)

.mexit not in macro (*error*)

Missing .endi (*error*)

Input ended leaving .if open.

Missing .endm (*error*)

Input ended leaving .macro open.

Missing .endw (*error*)

Input ended leaving .while open.

Mixed 386/286 addressing modes (*error*)

No opcode allows mixed 286 and 386 addressing modes.

Mixed 386/286 data modes (*error*)

No 386 opcode allows mixed 286 and 386 data modes.

## ERROR MESSAGES



Mixed length addressing registers (*error*)

Addressing registers must both be the same length.

more than one file to process (*fatal*)

The assembler will only process one file at a time.

Name required (*error*)

The format of **set** is **.set name, value**

no work (*fatal*)

There were no files listed on the command line.

NULL address in relative branch (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

Octal number *n* truncated to char (*error*)

An octal number in a string was too big.

Optype *n* in lex (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

Org to invalid value (*error*)

You may not **.org** to doubles or strings.

Org to wrong segment (*error*)

You must **.org** to the current segment.

Out of space (*fatal*)

A call to **malloc()** failed. The typical large consumers of RAM are macros and **.defines**; symbols consume less. Can you break your assembly into smaller pieces? Could you be in some sort of endless recursion or loop?

Parm *n* not found (*error*)

An attempt to **.shift** too far has been made.

**.parmct** not in macro (*error*)

**.parmct** returns the number of parameters in the current macro.

Phase error '*string*' (*error*)

A symbol is defined one way in one phase of the assembly and another way in the next phase.

Redefinition of '*string*' (*error*)

An assembler internal symbol is being redefined.

Seek error on object file (*fatal*)

Seek error on object file (*fatal*)

**.shift** not in macro (*error*)

**.shift** shifts macro parameters. It has no meaning outside a macro.

String must be on **.byte** (*error*)

For example:

```
.byte "This is how we place a string", 0
```

Symbol may not be double (*error*)

You may not convert a symbol to a floating-point value.

Symbol may not be float (*error*)

You may not convert a symbol to a floating-point value.

Syntax error (*error*)

The syntax of this statement makes no sense to the parser. This can be a variety of problems.

Table error kind *0xn* detected (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

This code may not work the same way on all chips (*warning*)

Some chips may not execute this code as expected.

Too many operands (*error*)

No 386 opcode has more than three operands.

Undefined symbol '*string*' (*error*)

A symbol was used without defining it or using a **-g** option. You must define local symbols

Unexpected .else statement (*error*)

Unexpected .endi statement (*error*)

Unexpected .endm ignored (*error*)

Unexpected .endw (*error*)

Unexpected return from parser (*fatal*)

Logic error in assembler. Please report this problem to Mark Williams technical support.

Unknown command option *c* (*fatal*)

Unlikely output file '*string*' (*fatal*)

Output file-names should have .o suffixes. Because this is generally a typographical error, **as** aborts to avoid overwriting an important file.

Unmatched '*c*' (*error*)

A delimiter, [, (, ), or ] is unmatched in this command.

Unmatched bracket in parameter (*error*)

Line ended leaving an open bracket or parenthesis.

Write error on object file (*fatal*)

### **cpp Error Messages**

*string* argument mismatch (*error*)

The argument *string* does not match the type declared in the function's prototype. Either the function prototype or the argument should be changed.

**#assert** failure (*error*)

The condition being tested in a **#assert** statement has failed.

**##** at beginning of macro (*error*)

Macro replacement lists may contain tokens that are separated by **##**, but **##** cannot appear at the beginning or the end of the list. The tokens on either side of the **##** are pasted together into one token.

**##** at end of macro (*error*)

Macro replacement lists may contain tokens that are separated by **##**, but **##** cannot appear at the beginning or the end of the list. The tokens on either side of the **##** are pasted together into one token.

## **ERROR MESSAGES**

*string: cannot create (fatal)*

The preprocessor **cpp** cannot create the output file *string* that it was asked to create. This often is due to a problem with the output device; check and make sure that it is not full and that it is working correctly.

*string: cannot open (fatal)*

The compiler cannot open the file *string* of source code that it was asked to read. **cpp** may not have been told the correct directory in which this file is to be found; check that the file is located correctly, and that the **-I** options, if any, are correct.

*cannot open include file string (fatal)*

The program asked for file *string*, which was not found in the same directory as the source file, nor in the default **include** directory specified by the environmental variable **INCDIR**, nor in any of the directories named in **-I** options given to the **cc** command.

*conditional stack overflow (fatal)*

A series of **#if** expressions is nested so deeply that it overflowed the allotted stack space. You should simplify this code.

*#define argument mismatch (warning)*

The definition of an argument in a **#define** statement does not match its subsequent use. One or the other should be changed.

*#elif used without #if or #ifdef (error)*

An **#elif** control line must be preceded by an **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** control line.

*#elif used after #else (error)*

An **#elif** control line cannot be preceded by an **#else** control line.

*#else used without #if or #ifdef (error)*

An **#else** control line must be preceded by an **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** control line.

*#endif used without #if or #ifdef (error)*

An **#endif** control line must be preceded by an **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** control line.

*EOF in comment (fatal)*

Your source file appears to end in mid-comment. The file of source code may have been truncated, or you failed to close a comment; make sure that each open-comment symbol **/\*** is balanced with a close-comment symbol **\*/**.

*EOF in macro string invocation (error)*

Your source file appears to end in a macro call. The source file may be been truncated.

*EOF in midline (warning)*

Check to see that your source file has not been truncated accidentally.

*EOF in string (error)*

Your file appears to end in the middle of a quoted string literal. Check to see that your source file has not been truncated accidentally. Also, check that you did not accidentally embed a **<ctrl-Z>** in the line.

*#error: string (fatal)*

An **#error** control line has been expanded, printing the remaining tokens on the line and terminating the program.

*error in #define syntax (error)*

The syntax of a **#define** statement is incorrect. See the Lexicon entry for **#define** for more information.

error in `#include` syntax (*error*)

An **#include** directive must be followed by a string enclosed by either quotation marks (" ") or angle brackets (<>). Anything else is illegal.

identifier *string* has too many arguments (*error*)

Too many actual parameters have been provided.

illegal control line (*error*)

A '#' is followed by a word that the compiler does not recognize.

illegal cpp character (*n* decimal) (*error*)

The character noted cannot be processed by **cpp**. It may be a control character or a non-ASCII character.

illegal use of defined (*error*)

The construction **defined(token)** or **defined token** is legal only in **#if**, **#elif**, or **#assert** expressions.

*string* in **#if** (*error*)

A syntax error occurred in a **#if** declaration. *string* describes the error in detail.

include stack overflow (*fatal*)

A set of **#include** statements is nested so deeply that the allotted stack space cannot hold them. Examines the files for a loop. You should try to fold some of the header files into one, instead of having them call each other.

macro body too long (*fatal*)

The size of the macro in question exceeds the limit designed into the preprocessor. Try to shorten or split the macro.

macro expansion buffer overflow in *string* (*fatal*)

A macro call has expanded into more characters than **cpp** can handle. Try to shorten the macro, or break it up.

macro *string* redefined (*error*)

The program redefined the macro *string*.

macro *string* requires arguments (*error*)

The macro calls for arguments that the program has not supplied.

macros nested *number* deep, loop likely (*error*)

Macros call each other *number* times; you may have inadvertently created an infinite loop. Try to simplify the program.

missing **#endif** (*error*)

An **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** statement was not closed with an **#endif** statement.

missing output file (*fatal*)

The preprocessor **cpp** found a **-o** option that was not followed by a file name for the output file.

multiple **#else**'s (*error*)

An **#if**, **#ifdef**, or **#ifndef** expression can be followed by no more than one **#else** expression.

nested comment (*warning*)

The comment introducer sequence `/*` has been detected within a comment. Comments do not nest.

new line in *string* literal (*error*)

A newline character appears in the middle of a string. If you wish to embed a newline within a string, use the character constant `'\n'`. If you wish to continue the string on a new

## ERROR MESSAGES

line, insert a backslash '\ ' before the new line.

newline in macro argument (*warning*)

A macro argument contains a newline character. This may create trouble when the program is run.

out of space (*fatal*)

The compiler ran out of space while attempting to compile the program. To remove this error, examine your source and break up any functions that are extraordinarily large.

parameter must follow # (*error*)

Macro replacement lists may contain # followed by a macro parameter name. The macro argument is converted to a string literal.

preprocessor assertion failure (*warning*)

A **#assert** directive that was tested by the preprocessor **cpp** was found to be false.

string redefined (*error*)

**cpp** macros should not be redefined. You should check to see that you are not **#include**ing two different versions of a file somehow, or attempting to use the same macro name for two different purposes.

too many arguments in a macro (*fatal*)

The program uses more than the allowed ten arguments with a macro.

too many directories in include list (*fatal*)

The program uses more than the allowed ten **#include** directories.

string: unknown option (*fatal*)

The preprocessor **cpp** does not recognize the option *string*. Try re-typing the **cc** command line.

## **cc0 Error Messages**

ambiguous reference to "string" (*error*)

*string* is defined as a member of more than one **struct** or **union**, is referenced via a pointer to one of those **structs** or **unions**, and there is more than one offset that could be assigned.

argument list has incorrect syntax (*error*)

The argument list of a function declaration contains something other than a comma-separated list of formal parameters.

array bound must be a constant (*error*)

An array's size can be declared only with a constant; you cannot declare an array's size by using a variable. For example, it is correct to say **foo[5]**, but illegal to say

```
bar = 5;
foo[bar];
```

array bound must be positive (*error*)

An array must be declared to have a positive number of elements. The array flagged here was declared to have a negative size, e.g., **foo[-5]**.

array bound too large (*error*)

The array is too large to be compiled with 16-bit index arithmetic. You should devise a way to divide the array into compilable portions.

array row has 0 length (*error*)

This message can be triggered by either of two problems. The first problem is declaring an array to have a length of zero; e.g., **foo[0]**. The second problem is failing to declare the size of a dimension *other than the first* in a multi-dimensional array. C allows you to declare an indefinite number of array elements of *n* bytes each, but you cannot declare *n* array elements of an indefinite length. For example, it is correct say **foo[][5]** but illegal to say **foo[5][]**.

bad argument storage class (*error*)

An argument was assigned a storage class that the compiler does not recognize. The only valid storage class is **register**.

bad external storage class (*error*)

An **extern** has been declared with an invalid storage class, e.g., **register** or **auto**.

bad field width (*error*)

A field width was declared either to be negative or to be larger than the object that holds it. For example, **char foo:9** or **char foo:-1** will trigger this error.

bad filler field width (*error*)

A filler field width was declared either to be negative or to be larger than the object that holds it. For example, **char foo:9** or **char foo:-1** will trigger this error.

bad flexible array declaration (*error*)

A flexible array is missing an array boundary; e.g., **foo[5][]**. C permits you to declare an indefinite number of array elements of *n* bytes each, but you cannot declare an array to have *n* elements of an indefinite number of bytes each.

break not in a loop (*error*)

A **break** occurs that is not inside a loop or a **switch** statement.

call of non function (*error*)

What the program attempted to call is not a function. Check to make sure that you have not accidentally declared a function as a variable; e.g., typing **char \*foo;** when you meant **char \*foo();**.

cannot add pointers (*error*)

The program attempted to add two pointers. **ints** or **longs** may be added to or subtracted from pointers, and two pointers to the same type may be subtracted, but no other arithmetic operations are legal on pointers.

cannot apply unary '&' to a register variable (*error*)

Because register variables are stored within registers, they do not have addresses, which means that the unary **&** operator cannot be used with them.

cannot apply unary '&' to an alien function (*error*)

The unary **&** operator cannot be used with any function that has been declared to be of type **alien**. **alien** functions cannot be called by pointers.

cannot cast double to pointer (*error*)

The program attempted to cast a **double** to a pointer. This is illegal.

cannot cast pointer to double (*error*)

The program attempted to cast a pointer to a **double**. This is illegal.

cannot cast structure or union (*error*)

The program attempted to cast a **struct** or a **union**. This is illegal.

## ERROR MESSAGES

cannot cast to structure or union (*error*)

The program attempted to cast a variable to a **union** or **struct**. This is illegal.

cannot declare array of functions (*error*)

For example, the declaration **extern int (\*f)[];** declares **f** to be an array of pointers to functions that return **ints**. Arrays of functions are illegal.

cannot declare flexible automatic array (*error*)

The program does not explicitly declare the number of elements in an automatic array.

cannot initialize fields (*error*)

The program attempted to initialize bit fields within a structure. This is not supported.

cannot initialize unions (*error*)

The program attempted to initialize a **union** within its declaration. **unions** cannot be initialized in this way.

case not in a switch (*error*)

The program uses a **case** label outside of a **switch** statement. See the Lexicon entry for **case**.

character constant overflows long (*error*)

The character constant is too large to fit into a **long**. It should be redefined.

character constant promoted to long (*warning*)

A character constant has been promoted to a **long**.

class not allowed in structure body (*error*)

A storage class such as **register** or **auto** was specified within a structure.

compound statement required (*error*)

A construction that requires a compound statement does not have one, e.g., a function definition, array initialization, or **switch** statement.

constant expression required (*error*)

The expression used with a **#if** statement cannot be evaluated to a numeric constant. It probably uses a variable in a statement rather than a constant.

constant "number" promoted to long (*warning*)

The compiler promoted a constant in your program to **long**; although this is not strictly illegal, it may create problems when you attempt to port your code to another system, especially if the constant appears in an argument list.

constant used in truth context (*strict*)

A conditional expression for an **if**, **while**, or **for** statement has turned out to be always true or always false. For example, **while(1)** will trigger this message.

construction not in Kernighan and Ritchie (*strict*)

This construction is not found in *The C Programming Language*; although it can be compiled by COHERENT, it may not be portable to another compiler.

continue not in a loop (*error*)

The program uses a **continue** statement that is not inside a **for** or **while** loop.

declarator syntax (*error*)

The program used incorrect syntax in a declaration.

default label not in a switch (*error*)

The program used a **default** label outside a **switch** construct. See the Lexicon entry for **default**.

divide by zero (*warning*)

The program will divide by zero if this code is executed. Although the program can be parsed, this statement may create trouble if executed.

duplicated case constant (*error*)

A **case** value can appear only once in a **switch** statement. See the Lexicon entries for **case** and **switch**.

empty switch (*warning*)

A **switch** statement has no **case** labels and no **default** labels. See the Lexicon entry for **switch**.

error in enumeration list syntax (*error*)

The syntax of an enumeration declaration contains an error.

error in expression syntax (*error*)

The parser expected to see a valid expression, but did not find one.

exponent overflow in floating point constant (*warning*)

The exponent in a floating point constant has overflowed. The compiler has set the constant to the maximum allowable value, with the expected sign.

exponent underflow in floating point constant (*warning*)

The exponent in a floating point constant has underflowed. The compiler has set the constant to zero, with the expected sign.

external syntax (*error*)

This could be one of several errors, most often a missing '**{**'.

file ends within a comment (*error*)

The source file ended in the middle of a comment. If the program uses nested comments, it may have mismatched numbers of begin-comment and end-comment markers. If not, the program began a comment and did not end it, perhaps inadvertently when dividing by *\*something*, e.g., **a=b/\*cd;**

function cannot return a function (*error*)

The function is declared to return another function, which is illegal. A function, however, can return a *pointer* to a function, e.g., **int (\*signal(n, a))()**.

function cannot return an array (*error*)

A function is declared to return an array, which is illegal. A function, however, can return a pointer to a structure or array.

functions cannot be parameters (*error*)

The program uses a function as a parameter, e.g., **int q(); x(q);**. This is illegal.

identifier "*string*" is being redeclared (*error*)

The program declares variable *string* to be of two different types. This often is due to an implicit declaration, which occurs when a function is used before it is explicitly declared. Check for name conflicts.

identifier "*string*" is not a label (*error*)

The program attempts to **goto** a nonexistent label.

identifier "*string*" is not a parameter (*error*)

The variable "*string*" did not appear in the parameter list.

identifier "*string*" is not defined (*error*)

The program uses identifier *string* but does not define it.

## ERROR MESSAGES



identifier "*string*" not usable (*error*)

*string* is probably a member of a structure or **union** which appears by itself in an expression.

illegal character constant (*error*)

A legal character constant consists of a backslash `'\'` followed by **a**, **b**, **f**, **n**, **r**, **t**, **v**, **x**, or up to three octal digits.

illegal character (*number decimal*) (*error*)

A control character was embedded within the source code. *number* is the decimal value of the character.

illegal **#** construct (*error*)

The parser recognizes control lines of the form `#line_number` (decimal) or `#file_name`. Anything else is illegal.

illegal integer constant suffix (*error*)

Integer constants may be suffixed with **u**, **U**, **l**, or **L** to indicate **unsigned**, **long**, or **unsigned long**.

illegal label "*string*" (*error*)

The program uses the keyword *string* as a **goto** label. Remember that each label must end with a colon.

illegal operation on "void" type (*error*)

The program tried to manipulate a value returned by a function that had been declared to be of type **void**.

illegal structure assignment (*error*)

The structures have different sizes.

illegal subtraction of pointers (*error*)

A pointer can be subtracted from another pointer only if both point to objects of the same size.

illegal use of a pointer (*error*)

A pointer was used illegally, e.g., multiplied, divided, or &-ed. You may get the result you want if you cast the pointer to a **long**.

illegal use of a structure or union (*error*)

You may take the address of a **struct**, access one of its members, assign it to another structure, pass it as an argument, and return. All else is illegal.

illegal use of floating point (*error*)

A **float** was used illegally, e.g., in a bit-field structure.

illegal use of "void" type (*error*)

The program used **void** improperly. Strictly, there are only **void** functions; COHERENT also supports the cast to **void** of a function call.

illegal use of void type in cast (*error*)

The program uses a pointer where it should be using a variable.

inappropriate signed (*error*)

The **signed** modifier may only be applied to **char**, **short**, **int**, or **long** types.

inappropriate "long" (*error*)

Your program used the type **long** inappropriately.

inappropriate "short" (error)

Your program used the type **short** inappropriately.

inappropriate "unsigned" (error)

Your program used the type **unsigned** inappropriately.

indirection through non pointer (error)

The program attempted to use a scalar (e.g., a **long** or **int**) as a pointer. This may be due to not de-referencing the scalar.

initializer too complex (error)

An initializer was too complex to be calculated at compile time. You should simplify the initializer to correct this problem.

integer pointer comparison (strict)

The program compares an integer or **long** with a pointer without casting one to the type of the other. Although this is legal, the comparison may not work on machines with non-integer size pointers, e.g., Z8001 or LARGE-model on the i8086 family, or on machines with pointers larger than **ints**, e.g., the M68000 family of microprocessors.

integer pointer pun (strict)

The program assigns a pointer to an integer, or vice versa, without casting the right-hand side of the assignment to the type of the left-hand side. For example,

```
char *foo;
long bar;
foo = bar;
```

Although this is permitted, it is often an error if the integer has less precision than the pointer does. Make sure that you properly declare all functions that returns pointers.

internal compiler error (fatal)

The program produced a state that should not happen during compilation. Try to localize the offending statement if at all possible. Forward a minimal program that exhibits the error, preferably on a machine-readable medium, to Mark Williams Company, together with the version number of the compiler, the command line used to compile the program, and the system configuration. For immediate advice during business hours, telephone Mark Williams Company technical support.

"string" is a enum tag (error)

"string" is a struct tag (error)

"string" is a union tag (error)

*string* has been previously declared as a tag name for a **struct**, **union**, or **enum**, and is now being declared as another tag. Perhaps the structure declarations have been included twice.

"string" is not a tag (error)

A **struct** or **union** with tag *string* is referenced before any such **struct** or **union** is declared. Check your declarations against the reference.

"string" is not a typedef name (error)

*string* was found in a declaration in the position in which the base type of the declaration should have appeared. *string* is not one of the predefined types or a **typedef** name. See the Lexicon entry on **typedef** for more information.

"string" is not an "enum" tag (error)

An **enum** with tag *string* is referenced before any such **enum** has been declared. See the Lexicon entry for **enum** for more information.

class "string" [number] is not used (*strict*)

Your program declares variable *string* or *number* but does not use it.

label "string" undefined (*error*)

The program does not declare the label *string*, but it is referenced in a **goto** statement.

left side of "string" not usable (*error*)

The left side of the expression *string* should be a pointer, but is not.

lvalue required (*error*)

The left-hand value of a declaration is missing or incorrect. See the Lexicon entries for **lvalue** and **rvalue**.

member "string" is not addressable (*error*)

The array *string* has exceeded the machine's addressing capability. Structure members are addressed with 16-bit signed offsets on most machines.

member "string" is not defined (*error*)

The program references a structure member that has not been declared.

mismatched conditional (*error*)

In a '?' expression, the colon and all three expressions must be present.

missing "(" (*error*)

The **if**, **while**, **for**, and **switch** keywords must be followed by parenthesized expressions.

missing "=" (*warning*)

An equal sign is missing from the initialization of a variable declaration. Note that this is a warning, not an error: this allows COHERENT to compile programs with "old style" initializers, such as **int i 1**. Use of this feature is strongly discouraged, and it will disappear when the ANSI standard for the C language is adopted in full.

missing "," (*error*)

A comma is missing from an enumeration member list.

missing ":" (*error*)

A colon ':' is missing after a **case** label, after a default label, or after the '?' in a '?-:' construction.

missing ";" (*error*)

A semicolon ';' does not appear after an external data definition or declaration, after a **struct** or **union** member declaration, after an automatic data declaration or definition, after a statement, or in a **for(;;)** statement.

missing "]" (*error*)

A right bracket ']' is missing from an array declaration, or from an array reference; for example, **foo[5]**.

missing "{" (*error*)

A left brace '{' is missing after a **struct tag**, **union tag**, or **enum tag** in a definition.

missing "}" (*error*)

A right brace '}' is missing from a **struct**, **union**, or **enum** definition, from an initialization, or from a compound statement.

missing "while" (*error*)

A **while** command does not appear after a **do** in a **do-while()** statement.

missing label name in goto (*error*)

A **goto** statement does not have a label.

**missing member (error)**

A '.' or '->' is not followed by a member name.

**missing right brace (error)**

A right brace is missing at end of file. The missing brace probably precedes lines with errors reported earlier.

**missing "string" (error)**

The parser **cc0** expects to see token *string*, but sees something else.

**missing semicolon (error)**

External declarations should continue with ',' or end with ';'.

**missing type in structure body (error)**

A structure member declaration has no type.

**multiple classes (error)**

An element has been assigned to more than one storage class, e.g., **extern register**.

**multiple types (error)**

An element has been assigned more than one data type, e.g., **int float**.

**nonterminated string or character constant (error)**

A line that contains single or double quotation marks left off the closing quotation mark. A newline in a string constant may be escaped with '\\'.

**number has too many digits (error)**

A number is too big to fit into its type.

**only one default label allowed (error)**

The program uses more than one **default** label in a **switch** expression. See the Lexicon entries for **default** and **switch** for more information.

**out of tree space (fatal)**

The compiler allows a program to use up to 350 tree nodes; the program exceeded that allowance.

**parameter string is not addressable (error)**

The parameter has a stack frame offset greater than 32,767. Perhaps you should pass a pointer instead of a structure.

**potentially nonportable structure access (strict)**

A program that uses this construction may not be portable to another compiler.

**return type/function type mismatch (error)**

What the function was declared to return and what it actually returns do not match, and cannot be made to match.

**return(e) illegal in void function (error)**

A function that was declared to be type **void** has nevertheless attempted to return a value. Either the declaration or the function should be altered.

**risky type in truth context (strict)**

The program uses a variable declared to be a pointer, **long**, **unsigned long**, **float**, or **double** as the condition expression in an **if**, **while**, **do**, or '?-:'. This could be misinterpreted by some C compilers.

**size of string overflows size\_t (strict)**

A string was so large that it overran an internal compiler limit. You should try to break the string in question into several small strings.

size of union "*string*" is not known (*error*)

A pointer to a **struct** or **union** is being incremented, decremented, or subjected to array arithmetic, but the **struct** or **union** has not been defined.

size of *string* too large (*error*)

The program declared an array or **struct** that is too big to be addressable, e.g., **long a[20000]**; on a machine that has a 64-kilobyte limit on data size and four-byte **longs**.

sizeof truncated to unsigned (*warning*)

An object's **sizeof** value has lost precision when truncated to a **size\_t** integer.

sizeof(*string*) set to *number* (*warning*)

The program attempts to set the value of *string* by applying **sizeof** to a function or an **extern**; the compiler in this instance has set *string* to *number*.

storage class not allowed in cast (*error*)

The program **casts** an item as a **register**, **static**, or other storage class.

string initializer not terminated by NUL (*warning*)

An array of **chars** that was initialized by a string is too small in dimension to hold the terminating NUL character. For example, **char foo[3] = "ABC"**.

structure "*string*" does not contain member "*m*" (*error*)

The program attempted to address the variable *string.m*, which is not defined as part of the structure *string*.

structure or union used in truth context (*error*)

The program uses a structure in an **if**, **while**, or **for**, or **'?:'** statement.

switch of non integer (*error*)

The expression in a **switch** statement is not type **int** or **char**. You should cast the **switch** expression to an **int** if the loss of precision is not critical.

too many adjectives (*error*)

A variable's type was described with too many of **long**, **short**, or **unsigned**.

too many arguments (*fatal*)

No function may have more than 30 arguments.

too many initializers (*error*)

The program has more initializers than the space allocated can hold.

too many structure initializers (*error*)

The program contains a structure initialization that has more values than members.

trailing " ," in initialization list (*warning*)

An initialization statement ends with a comma, which is legal.

type clash (*error*)

The parser expected to find matching types but did not. For example, the types of **e1** and **e2** in **(x) ? e1 : e2** must either both be pointers or neither be pointers.

type of function "*string*" adjusted to *string* (*warning*)

This warning is given when the type of a numeric constant is widened to **unsigned**, **long**, or **unsigned long** to preserve the constant's value. The type of the constant may be explicitly specified with the **u** or **L** constant suffixes.

type of parameter "*string*" adjusted to *string* (*warning*)

The program uses a parameter that the C language says must be adjusted to a wider type, e.g., **char** to **int** or **float** to **double**.

type required in cast (*error*)

The type is missing from a cast declaration.

unexpected end of enumeration list (*error*)

An end-of-file flag or a right brace occurred in the middle of the list of enumerators.

union "string" does not contain member *m* (*error*)

The program attempted to address the variable string *m*, which is not defined as part of the structure *string*.

zero modulus (*warning*)

The program will perform a modulo operation by zero if the code just parsed is executed. Although the program can be parsed, this statement may create trouble if executed.

### cc1 Error Messages

associative expression too complex (*fatal*)

An expression that uses associative binary operators (e.g., '+') has too many operators; for example, `i=11+i2+i3+ . . . +i30;`. You should simplify the expression.

expression too complex (*fatal*)

The code generator cannot generate code for an expression. You should simplify your code.

internal compiler error (*fatal*)

The program produced a state that should not happen during compilation. Try to localize the offending statement if at all possible. Forward a minimal program that exhibits the error, preferably on a machine-readable medium, to Mark Williams Company, together with the version number of the compiler, the command line used to compile the program, and the system configuration. For immediate advice during business hours, telephone Mark Williams Company technical support.

misplaced ":" operator (*error*)

The program used a colon without a preceding question mark. It may be a misplaced label.

switch overflow (*fatal*)

The program has more than ten nested **switches**.

too many cases (*fatal*)

The program cannot allocate space to build a **switch** statement.

unexpected EOF (*fatal*)

**EOF** occurred in the middle of a statement. The temporary file may have been corrupted or truncated accidentally. Check your disk drive to see that it is working correctly.

### cc2 Error Messages

*string*: cannot reopen (*fatal*)

The optimizer in **cc2** cannot reopen a file with which it has worked. Make sure that your mass storage device is working correctly and that it is not full.

internal compiler error (*fatal*)

The program produced a state that should not happen during compilation. Try to localize the offending statement if at all possible. Forward a minimal program that exhibits the error, preferably on a machine-readable medium, to Mark Williams Company, together with the version number of the compiler, the command line used to compile the program, and the system configuration. For immediate advice during business hours, telephone Mark Williams Company technical support.

## ERROR MESSAGES

unexpected EOF (*fatal*)

**EOF** occurred in the middle of a statement. The temporary file may have been corrupted or truncated accidentally. Check your disk drive to see that it is working correctly.

write error on output object file (*fatal*)

**cc2** could not write the relocatable object module. Most likely, your mass storage device has run out of room. Check to see that your disk drive or hard disk has enough room to hold the object module, and that it is working correctly.

## ***ld 286 Error Messages***

address wraparound (*fatal*)

A segment of the program has exceeded the size allowed by the microprocessor's architecture.

baddisk: disk error (*fatal*)

**ld** either cannot read or cannot write to the mass-storage device. Check the disk you are using to see that it is working correctly.

cannot create string (*fatal*)

The linker **ld** cannot create the output file it was requested to create. This often is due to a problem with the output device; check and make sure that it is working correctly and is not full.

cannot open string (seg number) (*fatal*)

The linker **ld** cannot open the object module that it was asked to read. Make sure that the storage device is working correctly, and that **ld** has been given the correct names of the file and of the directory in which it is stored.

can't open libstring.a (*fatal*)

The linker **ld** cannot open a library that it has been asked to link into your program. Make sure that you named the library correctly and that the **LIBPATH** is set correctly if you used the **-l** option to the **cc** command line.

can't open temp file (*fatal*)

The linker **ld** cannot open a temporary file. Make sure that your mass storage device is working correctly.

can't read string (*fatal*)

The linker **ld** cannot read the file named. Make sure that your mass storage device is working correctly, and that **ld** has been given the correct names of the file and of the directory in which it is stored.

disk error (*fatal*)

The linker **ld** encountered a problem with the storage device when it attempted to read or write a file. Check that the disk is working correctly.

no input found (*fatal*)

The **ld** command line names no object or archive files to link.

out of space (*fatal*)

**malloc** could not allocate adequate space in memory for the linker **ld** to work.

outdated ranlib (*warning*)

The date stamp on the library file is younger than that in the ranlib header. If the library has been altered, the ranlib can be updated with the archiver **ar**; see the Lexicon entry on **ar** to see how this is done. If the library has not been altered, this message may be due to an installation error; see the Lexicon entry on **ranlib** for more information.

### ***ld 386 Error Messages***

archive '*string*' is corrupt (fatal)

This file makes no sense as a COFF archive.

file '*string*': module '*string*': bad header (message)

Put modules on load list.

can't find '*string*' (fatal)

Can't locate requested library.

cannot create '*string*' (fatal)

Cannot create linker output file.

cannot execute loadable driver '*string*' (fatal)

entry point '*string*' not in .text (message)

error reading '*string*' (fatal)

'*string*' is not a COFF archive (fatal)

All files ending **.a** should be COFF archives.

kernel interface failed (fatal)

This will become more elaborate when the kernel is done

Library must be created with ar -s option (fatal)

The **ar -s** option gives libraries a symbol table for the use of **ld**.

No work (fatal)

There were no object files loaded.

pass 1, *n* errors (fatal)

At the end of pass 1 there were *n* **errors detected. The link stopped here.**

symbol '*string*' redefined in file '*string*': module '*string*' (message)

A symbol is defined in incompatible ways in different files.

symbol '*string*' redefined in file '*string*' (message)

A symbol is defined in incompatible ways in different files.

file '*string*': module '*string*': relocation out of range 0xn (message)

A relocation record points outside the range of its segment.

symbol '*string*' severe warning symbol defined as a common and a global (message)

A symbol was defined as a common, e.g.

```
int x;
```

and as a global, e.g.:

```
int x = 5;
```

There is no good way to fix this without reading the code and thinking about the variable usage. The linker turned the global into an external. That is, it turned

```
int x;
```

into

```
extern int x;
```

## **ERROR MESSAGES**



This matches the UNIX linker.

file *string*: module *string*: unknown r\_type *n* in segment *n* record *n* (message)  
Unknown type on COFF relocation record.

unlikely input file name '*string*' (message)  
Input file names must end **.o** for object or **.a** for archive.

symbol '*string*' warning defined with lengths *n* and *n* (message)  
A common was defined with different lengths, while this is legal it is very unusual in C programs. This warning may be turned off with the **-c** flag

symbol '*string*' warning, redefines builtin symbol (message)  
Some symbols such as **\_\_end** and **\_\_end\_text** are special to the linker. In general, symbols beginning **\_\_** are reserved to implementors and should be avoided by users. Your definition has been used.

write error (fatal)

## ***fsck Error Messages***

The COHERENT command **fsck** checks the COHERENT file systems. This command produces an especially rich set of error messages, both to keep you abreast of its actions and to warn you of potential problems with a file or file system.

**fsck** can correct most of the common error conditions it detects; however, before it will ask for your approval before it makes any changes that modify a file system. Therefore, if it detects an error that it can correct, it will stop and ask your permission.

The following describes **fsck**'s error messages and questions. The error messages fall into two categories: *warnings*, which describe something possibly wrong with a file; and *fatals*, which indicate that something has gone wrong with a file system or with **fsck** with which **fsck** cannot cope. Each question describes the condition in question; here, it is followed by advice on what is probably the correct response.

### ***Initialization***

Can't open checklist file: /etc/checklist (*fatal*)

Too many file systems in checklist file: /etc/checklist (*fatal*)

file is not a block or character device; OK? [yes/no]: (*question*)

You are attempting to **fsck** a file that is not a block or character device. If you are certain it is a file system, then answer yes to continue.

Can't open: *file system* (*warning*)

Can't stat: *file system* (*warning*)

Size check: *fsize blocks isize first non-i-node block* (*warning*)

Too large free block count (*warning*)

Too large free i-node count (*warning*)

*fsck: file system*: Bad Super Block: *number* (*warning*)

*file system* mounted on *point* as of *time* (*message*)

*file system unmounted. Last mounted on point. (message)*

### **Phase 1: Check Blocks and Sizes**

Unknown File Type i-number = *number* (Clear) [yes/no] (*question*)

The mode field in the specified i-node is unknown. If you wish, you can clear the named i-node.

Excessive Bad Blocks i-number = *number* (Continue) [yes/no] (*question*)

The specified i-node references an excessive number of bad blocks. You can continue with the **fsck** (at the next i-node), or abort.

DUP Table Overflow (Continue) [yes/no] (*question*)

The table of dublicately referenced disk blocks has overflowed. You can continue with the **fsck** (as best as it is able), or abort.

Excessive Dup Blocks i-number = *number* (Continue) [yes/no] (*question*)

The specified i-node references an excessive number of duplicate blocks. You can continue with the **fsck** (at the next i-node), or abort.

Bad block *number*, i-number = *number* (*warning*)

Dup Block *number*, i-number = *number* (*warning*)

Directory Misaligned i-number = *number* (*warning*)

Possible Directory Size Error i-number = *number* (*warning*)

Possible File Size Error i-number = *number* (*warning*)

### **Phase 1b: Rescan for more Duplicates**

Dup Block *number*, i-number = *number* (*warning*)

### **Phase 2: Check Path Names**

Root i-node is unallocated. Terminating (*fatal*)

File System Read-Only (NO WRITE) (*fatal*)

Can't malloc memory, phase 2 (*fatal*)

Fixblock error. (*fatal*)

Tried to checkpath i-node *number* which is not dir. (*fatal*)

Root i-node is not a directory (FIX) [yes/no] (*question*)

The root i-node must be a directory. **fsck** is asking whether you wish to fix this. If not, then **fsck** will abort.

Dup/Bad blocks in root i-node (Continue) [yes/no] (*question*)

The root i-node has bad or duplicate blocks. This may require a guru to fix properly. **fsck** is asking whether you want it to continue. If not, then **fsck** will abort.

I-number is out of range I=*file name* (Remove) [yes/no] (*question*)

*file* has an i-node number that is out of range. **fsck** is asking if you wish to remove the stated file (which, after all, does not exist).

Unallocated *file* (Remove) [yes/no] (*question*)

*file*'s i-node is unallocated. **fsck** is asking if you wish to remove the stated file (which, after all, does not exist).

## **ERROR MESSAGES**

Bad or Dup blocks in *directory /file* (Remove) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given file's i-node references bad or dublicately referenced blocks. **fsck** is asking if you wish to remove *file* from the directory.

Null name entry in block *number* in directory *name* / *i-node* (*warning*)

Non null padded entry in block *number* in directory *name* / *i-node* (*warning*)

Embedded slashes in entry in block *number* in directory *name* / *i-node* (*warning*)

Inconsistent . entry in block *number* in directory *name* / *i-node* (*warning*)

Inconsistent .. entry in block *number* in directory *name* / *i-node* (*warning*)

Bad entry in block *number* in directory *name* / *i-node* (*warning*)

*i-number* = *number* is in a bad inode block. (*warning*)

I-node *number* is a multiply referenced directory i-node. (*warning*)

Name too long. (*warning*)

### **Phase 3: Check Connectivity**

Unref Dir *name* (Reconnect) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given directory's i-node is unreferenced. You are asked if you would like to reconnect the stated directory. If you answer yes, then the directory will be reconnected in directory **/lost+found** in the given file system. If not, it will remain unreferenced and you will be asked later if you would like to remove it.

Dir *i-number* = *number* connected. Parent was *i-number* = *number* (*warning*)

Dir *i-number* = *number* connected. It has bad/dup blocks. (*warning*)

Dir *i-number* = *number* connected. It has no .. entry. (*warning*)

Sorry. No lost+found directory. (*warning*)

Sorry. No space in lost+found directory. (*warning*)

### **Phase 4: Check Reference Counts**

Unref *i-node type file name* (Reconnect) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given i-node is unreferenced. **fsck** is asking if you wish to reconnect it to the stated file. If you answer yes, then the file will be reconnected in directory **/lost+found** in the given file system. If not, it will remain unreferenced and you will be asked later if you would like to remove it.

Unref *i-node type file name* (Clear i-node) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given i-node is unreferenced. **fsck** asks if you wish to clear the i-node completely. If you answer yes, the file is lost forever. You have already decided not to reconnect it, so there seems to be no reason to keep it anyway.

Bad/Dup blocks in *i-node type file name* (Clear i-node) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given i-node contains bad or dublicately referenced blocks. You are asked if you would like to clear the inode completely. If you answer yes, then the file will be lost forever.

Link count discrepancy in *i-node type file name*

Count = *count*, should be *count* (Adjust) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given i-node claims to have a different number of links than was actually found in the file system. You are asked if you wish to adjust the count found in the i-node. If you answer yes, then **fsck** will correct the i-node count.

Free i-node count wrong in superblock. (FIX) [yes/no] (*question*)

The free i-node count in the superblock is incorrect. You should allow **fsck** to repair it unless you are a guru and have reason to believe that **fsck** should not use the redundancy in the file system (via all previously reported messages) to repair this crucial piece of data in the superblock.

### Phase 5: Check Free List

Free Block count wrong in superblock. (FIX) [yes/no] (*question*)

The free block count in the superblock is incorrect. You should allow **fsck** to repair it unless you are a guru and have reason to believe that **fsck** should not use the redundancy in the file system (via all previously reported messages) to repair this crucial piece of data in the superblock.

Excessive *bad/dup* blocks in free list (Continue) [yes/no] (*question*)

This indicates that there are excessive bad or duplicately referenced blocks in the free list off of the superblock. This is a very bad condition. You should choose to continue, which will fall to phase 6 to salvage the free list. If you answer no, then **fsck** will abort.

Bad Free List (SALVAGE) [yes/no] (*question*)

**fsck** is asking if you want it to salvage the free list automatically. This is almost certainly a good thing to do.

Number Bad blocks in Free List (*warning*)

Number Dup blocks in Free List (*warning*)

Number Blocks missing (*warning*)

### Phase 6: Salvage Free List

Invalid interleave factors in superblock. Default free-block list spacing assumed. (*warning*)

Can't malloc space for interleave table. Free-block list is not rebuilt. (*warning*)

### Cleanup

Number files *number* blocks *number* free (*message*)

Expect roughly *number* missing blocks next time fsck is run as a result of i-nodes being cleared. (*message*)

\*\*\*\*\* File System *system* was modified \*\*\*\*\* (*message*)

\*\*\*\*\* BOOT Coherent (NO SYNC!) \*\*\*\*\* (*message*)

Do as the message says: reboot COHERENT *without* running the command **sync**.

### General Messages

Bad action in virtual system (*fatal*)

Can not Seek: Blk num: *number* (CONTINUE) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given action could not be performed. If you choose to not continue, **fsck** will abort. If you choose to continue, the results may be unpredictable.

## ERROR MESSAGES

Can not Read: Blk num: *number* (CONTINUE) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given action could not be performed. If you choose to not continue, **fsck** will abort. If you choose to continue, the results may be unpredictable.

Can not Write: Blk num: *number* (CONTINUE) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given action could not be performed. If you choose to not continue, **fsck** will abort. If you choose to continue, the results may be unpredictable.

Cannot create temp file *name* (*fatal*)

Cannot close Ram Disk Close /dev/rram1close (*fatal*)

Cannot open Ram Disk Close /dev/rram1close (*fatal*)

Cannot open read/write Ram Disk /dev/rram1 (*fatal*)

Can't access ram disk /dev/rram1, use the -t option (*fatal*)

Can't stat temp file *name* (*fatal*)

Error seeking tmp file (*fatal*)

Error writing tmp file (*fatal*)

Error writing to tmp file (*fatal*)

internal linktable corruption. (*fatal*)

Invalid Response (*fatal*)

Out of Range Block number: *number* (CONTINUE) [yes/no] (*question*)

The given action could not be performed. If you choose to not continue, **fsck** will abort. If you choose to continue, the results may be unpredictable.

Possible file system on ram disk /dev/rram1, use the -t option (*fatal*)

Ram disk close /dev/rram1close not mknoded properly (*fatal*)

Ram disk /dev/rram1 not mknoded properly (*fatal*)

Temp File must not be on file system to fsck (*fatal*)

Too many links in i-node *number* (*fatal*)

## ***make Error Messages***

The following gives the error messages that can be produced by **make**. Its message describe fatal conditions, errors, or warnings, as described above.

; after target or macroname (*error*)

A semicolon appeared after a target name or a macro name.

Bad macro name (*error*)

A bad macro name was used; for example, a macro name included a control character.

= in or after dependency (*error*)

An equal sign '=' appeared within or followed the definition of a macro name or target file; for example, **OBJ=atod.o=factor.o** will produce this error.

Incomplete line at end of file (*error*)

An incomplete line appeared at the end of the **makefile**.

Macro definition too long (*error*)

The macro definition exceeds the limited designed into the preprocessor.

Multiple actions for *name* (*error*)

A target is defined with more than one single-colon target line.

Multiple detailed actions for *name* (*error*)

A target is defined with more than one single-colon target line.

Must use "::" for *name* (*error*)

A double-colon target line was followed by a single-colon target line.

Newline after target or macroname (*error*)

A newline character appears after a target name or a macro name.

':' not allowed for *name* (*error*)

A double-colon target line was used illegally; for example, after single-colon target line.

:: or : in or after dependency list (*error*)

A triple colon is meaningless to and therefore illegal wherever it appears. A single colon may be used only in a target line (which is also called the *dependency list*), and nowhere else.

Out of core (adddep) (*error*)

This results from a system problem. Try reducing the size of your **makefile**.

Out of range number input. (*warning*)

You attempted to use a numeric value that is out of range.

Out of space (*error*)

System problem. Try reducing the size of your **makefile**.

Out of space (lookup) (*error*)

System problem. Try reducing the size of your **makefile**.

Syntax error (*error*)

The syntax of a line is faulty.

Too many macro definitions (*error*)

The number of macros you have created exceeds the capacity of your computer to process them.

= without macro name or in token list (*error*)

An equal sign '=' can be used only to define a macro, using the following syntax: "MACRO=*definition*". An incomplete macro definition, or the appearance of an equal sign outside the context of a macro definition, will trigger this error message.

: without preceding target (*error*)

A colon appeared without a target file name, e.g., *:string*.

### **nroff Error Messages**

The following gives **nroff**'s error messages, and hints about how to correct the situation. Errors are of two types: *simple errors*, which simply cause an error message to be printed on your screen; and *panics*, which causes processing to abort. Note that a panic will leave behind a half-written temporary file; you may wish to look at the end of it to see just how far processing proceeded, but otherwise it should be thrown away.

## **ERROR MESSAGES**

**-f** option requires file argument (*fatal*)  
**.bd** not implemented yet  
**.co:** unexpected EOF before *string* (*error*)  
**.dt** not implemented yet  
**.el** without **.ie** (*error*)  
**.fc** not implemented yet  
**.hc** not implemented yet  
**.hw** not implemented yet  
**.hy** not implemented yet  
**.ie** nested more than *N* levels (*error*)  
    The **.ie/.el** combination can be nested only 15 levels deep.  
**.ie** without matching **.el** (*error*)  
    Every **.ie** must be followed by an **.el**.  
**.lf:** *string*, file "*string*" (*error*)  
    **nroff** could not load a font-width table from file *string*.  
**.lf:** "*string*" is not a PCL font width table (*error*)  
    **nroff** expects a PCL font-width table, but file *string* is not in the PCL font-width format.  
**.lf:** "*string*" is not a PostScript font width table (*error*)  
    **nroff** expects a PostScript font-width table, but file *string* is not in the PostScript font-width format.  
**.lf:** cannot load more than *N* fonts (*error*)  
    **nroff** has a static limit on the number of font-width tables that can be loaded at one time.  
**.lf:** cannot open file "*string*" (*error*)  
**.lf:** requires fontname and filename (*error*)  
**.nm** not implemented yet  
**.nn** not implemented yet  
**.pi** not implemented yet  
**.rb:** cannot open file *string* (*error*)  
**.rb:** no file specified (*error*)  
**.rf:** requires name and new name (*error*)  
**\}** without matching **\{** (*error*)  
    Every **\}** must be preceded by a **\{**.  
arguments too long (*error*)  
attempted zero divide (*error*)  
attempted zero modulus (*error*)  
bad adjustment type (*error*)

bad argument reference (*error*)

bad directive *N* (*fatal*)

bad font *N* (*fatal*)

bad font *N* at dev\_font, nfonts=*N* (*fatal*)

bad font *N*, nfonts=*N* (*fatal*)

bad pattern (*fatal*)

bad tab stop (*error*)

bad tab stop (*error*)

botch: fontname(*N*) (*fatal*)

**nroff** cannot handle font *N* and must abort processing.

botch: swdmul=*N* psz=*N* swddiv=*N* (*fatal*)

An undefined error has occurred within **nroff**. The printed numbers give the value of **nroff**'s internal registers. If such an error occurs regularly when you process a given piece of text, please send the text in question and a copy of the error message to Mark Williams technical support.

bracket building not implemented yet

cannot create temp file (*fatal*)

cannot dehyphenate (*fatal*)

cannot end diversion (*error*)

cannot find current file (*error*)

cannot find font *XX* (*error*)

cannot find font *N* (*error*)

cannot find register *string* (*error*)

cannot open *string* (*error*)

cannot open file "*string*" (*error*)

cannot pop environment (*error*)

cannot read environment (*fatal*)

cannot remove *string* (*error*)

cannot reopen temp file (*fatal*)

cannot write environment (*fatal*)

delimiter argument too large (*error*)

diversion buffer odd alignment (*fatal*)

environment does not exist (*error*)

environments stacked too deeply (*error*)

field with too large (*error*)

## ERROR MESSAGES



file "*string*" not found (*error*)

flushd -- current diversion null (*fatal*)

font position out of range (*error*)

fonts.r not found (*fatal*)

illegal hex digit (*error*)

The escape sequence `\XNN` prints a character by its literal hexadecimal value. This should be used when processing characters that are not normally printable on the terminal screen. Digit *N* can be the numerals '0' through '9', the letters 'a' through 'f', or the letters 'A' through 'F'. All other characters will trigger this error.

illegal option: *string* (*fatal*)

incomplete macro in trap (*fatal*)

line buffer overflow (*fatal*)

no room for new font name *XX* (*error*)

out of space - memory *string* (*fatal*)

request '*string*' not found (*error*)

section *N* of title too large (*error*)

special character *XX* not found (*error*)

syntax error (*error*)

temporary file write error (*fatal*)

too many tab stops (*error*)

unexpected end of file (*fatal*)

unknown macro/register type *N* (*fatal*)

vertical line drawing not implemented yet (*error*)

word buffer overflow (*fatal*)



Index

# to \_

# . . . . . 382  
 ## . . . . . 383  
 #define . . . . . 179, 384  
 #elif . . . . . 385  
 #else . . . . . 385  
 #endif . . . . . 386  
 #if . . . . . 386  
 #ifdef . . . . . 386  
 #ifndef . . . . . 387  
 #include . . . . . 178, 387  
 #line . . . . . 387  
 #pragma . . . . . 388  
 #undef . . . . . 389  
  
 \$. . . . . 62, 67  
  
 &. . . . . 42, 58, 755, 994  
 &&. . . . . 70, 755, 994  
  
 ) . . . . . 73  
  
 \* . . . . . 60-61, 73  
 \*). . . . . 73  
  
 , (comma). . . . . 42  
  
 - (hyphen) . . . . . 42  
  
 .profile . . . . . 934  
  
 / . . . . . 62  
 / (slash) . . . . . 27-28  
 /bin . . . . . 14, 28, 67  
 /dev . . . . . 28  
 /dev/console . . . . . 731  
 /dev/tty/?/? . . . . . 731  
 /drv . . . . . 28  
 /etc . . . . . 28  
 /etc/default/async . . . . . 455  
 /etc/drvld . . . . . 28  
 /etc/group . . . . . 511  
 /etc/passwd . . . . . 28, 47-48  
 /etc/rc . . . . . 397, 473, 731  
 /etc/ttys . . . . . 28, 43, 731  
 /etc/update . . . . . 27, 474  
 /etc/utmp . . . . . 474, 731  
 /etc/wtmp . . . . . 474  
 /lib . . . . . 29  
 /u . . . . . 29  
 /usr . . . . . 29  
 /usr/adm . . . . . 29  
 /usr/adm/acct . . . . . 55, 397  
 /usr/adm/savacct . . . . . 55

/usr/adm/wtmp . . . . . 53, 393  
 /usr/bin . . . . . 29  
 /usr/games . . . . . 29  
 /usr/games/lib/fortunes . . . . . 29  
 /usr/include. . . . . 29  
 /usr/lib/crontab . . . . . 29, 41  
 /usr/lib/lib.b . . . . . 469  
 /usr/man . . . . . 29  
 /usr/messages . . . . . 29  
 /usr/pub. . . . . 29  
 /usr/spool . . . . . 29  
 /usr/wtmp. . . . . 731  
  
 24-hour time. . . . . 42  
 2> . . . . . 756, 995  
  
 : (colon). . . . . 67  
  
 ; . . . . . 57, 755, 994  
 ;; (double semicolon) . . . . . 74  
  
 <. . . . . 30, 756, 995  
 <&. . . . . 757, 996  
 <&- . . . . . 996  
 <<. . . . . 756, 995  
 <ctrl-D>. . . . . 10, 36  
 <ctrl-H>. . . . . 6  
 <erase>. . . . . 6, 40  
 <interrupt>. . . . . 7  
 <kill>. . . . . 6, 40  
 <Return>. . . . . 7, 38  
  
 = . . . . . 414  
  
 >. . . . . 15, 30, 67, 70, 756, 995  
 >&. . . . . 757, 996  
 >&- . . . . . 996  
 >>. . . . . 756, 995  
  
 ? . . . . . 61  
  
 [ . . . . . 62, 413  
  
 .sig.mail . . . . . 817  
  
 ] . . . . . 62, 413  
  
 \_DATE\_ . . . . . 389  
 \_end . . . . . 799  
 \_end\_bss . . . . . 799  
 \_end\_data . . . . . 799  
 \_end\_text . . . . . 799  
 \_FILE\_ . . . . . 390  
 \_LINE\_ . . . . . 390  
 \_STDC\_ . . . . . 390  
 \_TIME\_ . . . . . 391  
 \_DECVAX. . . . . 556, 676  
 \_exit() . . . . . 391  
 \_I386 . . . . . 556  
 \_IEEE. . . . . 556, 676

## A

a.out	502	as 386	425
abort()	392	ASCII	448
abs()	392	ASCII file	667
ac	393	ascii.h	450
access permission	22	asctime()	451
access()	394	asfix	451
access.h	395	ASHEAD	426, 452
accounting	52	asin()	452
login	52	ask()	789
process	53	ASKCC	452
reports	52	assembler	
starting login	53	80286 instructions	421
starting process	55	8086 instructions	416
acct()	395	address descriptors	415
acct.h	396	blank between tokens	411
accton	397	blank character	411
acos()	397	C compatibility	421
action.h	398	comments	411
adding a modem	847	current location counter	412
adding a terminal	1078	diagnostics	424
adding hard disk	717	directives	414
address	171, 177, 398	error messages	1163-1164
aggregate	408	expressions	413
aha154x	399	function arguments	422
al0	531	function return values	422
all	531	function-calling conventions	422
alarm()	401	identifiers	411
alarm2()	401	labels name	414
alias	402	labels temporary	414
aliases	402	names	411
alignment	404	naming conventions	422
alloc()	789	operators	413
alloc.h	404	options -g	410
alloca()	404	options -l	410
altering stack size	171	options -o	410
ANSI Standard	388	private data	412
apostrophe	61	private instruction	412
approx()	789	register names	410
ar	405	registers	423
ar.h	406	sections	412
archive		shared data	412
extracting from compressed	1160	shared instruction	412
archive file, format	406	statements	414
archive files	551	strings section	412
arena	407, 1162	symbol table	412
argc	178, 407	symbols	411
argument	174	tabulation between tokens	411
arguments	8	tokens	411
arguments, variable number of	1146	type propagation	413
argv	178, 407	uninitialized data	412
ARHEAD	406, 408	uninitialized instruction	412
array	408	assembler directive	
array, search	479	ascii	415
ARTAIL	406, 409	blkb	415
as	171	blkw	415
error messages	1163-1164	bssd	414
as 286	410	bssi	414
		byte	415
		even	415
		globl	415

odd . . . . .	415
page . . . . .	415
prvd . . . . .	414
prvi . . . . .	414
shrd . . . . .	414
shri . . . . .	414
strn . . . . .	414
synt . . . . .	414
title . . . . .	415
word . . . . .	415
assembler expressions	
grouping . . . . .	413
assembler operators	
* . . . . .	414
+ . . . . .	413-414
binary - . . . . .	414
unary - . . . . .	413
~ . . . . .	413
assembler statements	
assignment . . . . .	414
null . . . . .	414
assembler types	
absolute . . . . .	413
register . . . . .	413
relocatable . . . . .	413
undefined . . . . .	413
assembly language . . . . .	44, 172
assembly-language generator . . . . .	168
assembly-language programs . . . . .	170
assert() . . . . .	452
assert.h . . . . .	453
assertion, check at run time . . . . .	452
ASTAIL . . . . .	426, 453
asy . . . . .	453
async . . . . .	455
at . . . . .	457, 459
atan() . . . . .	460
atan2() . . . . .	461
ATclock . . . . .	461
atod.c . . . . .	169
atof() . . . . .	461
atoi(). . . . .	462
atol(). . . . .	462
atrun . . . . .	463
auto . . . . .	463
awk . . . . .	463
tutorial . . . . .	189

## B

background . . . . .	994
running programs in . . . . .	862
background process . . . . .	58, 755
background, execution in . . . . .	754, 993
backup . . . . .	676
backup files . . . . .	551, 617, 1062, 1128
backups	
strategies . . . . .	49
bad . . . . .	465
badscan . . . . .	465

banner . . . . .	466
banner() . . . . .	789
basename . . . . .	466
Bathsheba . . . . .	298
baud rate . . . . .	531
table . . . . .	990
bc . . . . .	467
assignment . . . . .	253
exponentiation operator . . . . .	251
library . . . . .	267
tutorial . . . . .	251
BCD format . . . . .	674
bedaemon(). . . . .	789
bibliography . . . . .	187
binary coded decimal . . . . .	674
Binary Compatibility Standard . . . . .	388, 433
binary files . . . . .	667
binary search . . . . .	479
bind . . . . .	469
bit . . . . .	470
bit map . . . . .	471
bit-fields . . . . .	470
block . . . . .	471
block, disk . . . . .	20
block-special device . . . . .	471
boot . . . . .	471
device . . . . .	472
secondary . . . . .	472-473
tertiary . . . . .	473
boot.fha. . . . .	472
bootable floppy disk . . . . .	475
booting . . . . .	472
master boot program . . . . .	471
booting, tertiary . . . . .	1064
bootstap	
uninstall . . . . .	736
bootstrap . . . . .	472-473
boottime . . . . .	477
boottime, check file system . . . . .	511
boottime, load loadable drivers . . . . .	616
boottime, mount file system . . . . .	859
boottime, standard chores . . . . .	952
Bourne shell . . . . .	993
brace . . . . .	45, 65
braces . . . . .	174
brc. . . . .	478
break . . . . .	478
break a string into tokens . . . . .	1044
brk(). . . . .	478
bsearch(). . . . .	479
bssd . . . . .	412
bssi . . . . .	412
buf.h . . . . .	481
buffer . . . . .	481
build . . . . .	482
builtin . . . . .	482
byte . . . . .	482
byte ordering . . . . .	482

## C

C . . . . .	44-45, 529	chdir() . . . . .	510
c . . . . .	484	check . . . . .	510
C		check assertion at run time . . . . .	452
program linker . . . . .	45	checklist . . . . .	511
C keywords . . . . .	520	chgrp . . . . .	511, 513
C language . . . . .	520	chmod . . . . .	23, 59, 511, 513
tutorial . . . . .	167	chmod(). . . . .	513
C preprocessor . . . . .	168, 554	chmog . . . . .	513
error messages . . . . .	1168	choices	
C programming		in case statements . . . . .	73
introduction . . . . .	171	chown . . . . .	513-514
cabs() . . . . .	484	chown(). . . . .	514
cal . . . . .	485	chroot . . . . .	514
calendar . . . . .	485	chroot(). . . . .	515
calling conventions . . . . .	486	ckernit . . . . .	515
calloc() . . . . .	492	clear . . . . .	525
candaddr() . . . . .	493	clearerr() . . . . .	525
candev(). . . . .	493	close standard input . . . . .	996
canino(). . . . .	493	close the standard output . . . . .	996
canint(). . . . .	494	close(). . . . .	525
canlong(). . . . .	494	closedir(). . . . .	526
canon.h. . . . .	494	clri . . . . .	526
canshort(). . . . .	496	cmp . . . . .	68-69, 526
cansize(). . . . .	496	code generator . . . . .	168
cantime(). . . . .	497	code, conditional inclusion, end . . . . .	386
canvaddr(). . . . .	497	code, include code conditionally . . . . .	386-387
captoinfo . . . . .	497	code, include conditionally . . . . .	386
carriage return . . . . .	174	COFF	
case . . . . .	73, 497-498	definition . . . . .	527
case sensitivity		linking . . . . .	781
in file names . . . . .	11	coeff.h . . . . .	527
in shell variable . . . . .	64	COHERENT . . . . .	528
cast . . . . .	498	coherent . . . . .	473
cat . . . . .	8, 15, 30, 499	COHERENT	
caveat utilitor . . . . .	499	description . . . . .	1
cc . . . . .	44-45, 167, 499	editions . . . . .	1
error messages . . . . .	1163	hardware requirements . . . . .	1
MicroEMACS mode . . . . .	105	on same hard drive as MS-DOS . . . . .	659
cc0 . . . . .	168, 504	principles . . . . .	528
error messages . . . . .	1171	rebooting . . . . .	9
cc1 . . . . .	168, 505, 1180	shutting down . . . . .	9
cc2 . . . . .	168, 505, 1180	uninstall . . . . .	737
cc3 . . . . .	168, 505	COHERENT file format . . . . .	603
CCHEAD . . . . .	503, 505	COHERENT system	
CCTAIL . . . . .	503, 506	error messages . . . . .	1162
cd . . . . .	16, 67, 506	col . . . . .	530
cdmp . . . . .	506	Colburn, Mark H. . . . .	50, 553, 914, 1129
ceil(). . . . .	507	color, setting on terminal . . . . .	544
cgrep . . . . .	508	Columbia University . . . . .	520
char . . . . .	176, 509	com . . . . .	531
character, copy . . . . .	835, 837-838	com1 . . . . .	533
character, fill an area with. . . . .	839	com2 . . . . .	533
character, reverse search for . . . . .	1042	com3 . . . . .	534
character, search for in region of memory . . . . .	835	com4 . . . . .	535
character, search for in string . . . . .	1033, 1042	comm . . . . .	535
character, search string for . . . . .	1042	command	
character-special device . . . . .	471	definition . . . . .	8
chars.h . . . . .	509	command, definition . . . . .	754, 993
chase . . . . .	509	commands . . . . .	535
		background . . . . .	58

COHERENT. . . . .	57
concurrent execution . . . . .	58
first part. . . . .	8
in files . . . . .	58
value. . . . .	68
comment . . . . .	175
compare strings . . . . .	1035, 1042
compare two regions . . . . .	837
compare two strings . . . . .	1034
compiler . . . . .	167
C . . . . .	45
error messages . . . . .	1163
function-calling conventions . . . . .	422
naming conventions . . . . .	422
compiling without linking . . . . .	170
compress . . . . .	542
computer . . . . .	
connecting via serial port. . . . .	1078
computer language . . . . .	172
computer time accounting. . . . .	52
con.h . . . . .	543
conditional inclusion of code, end . . . . .	386
conforming translator, mark . . . . .	390
connector . . . . .	
DB-9P . . . . .	964
RS-232C . . . . .	964
serial. . . . .	964
console . . . . .	543
const . . . . .	546
const.h . . . . .	547
cont. . . . .	6
continue . . . . .	547
control key . . . . .	6
conv. . . . .	547
convert string to floating-point number . . . . .	1043
convert string to long integer . . . . .	1046
convert string to unsigned long integer . . . . .	1047
cooked devices. . . . .	1052
cooked files . . . . .	27
cooked terminal . . . . .	1079
copy a region of memory . . . . .	835, 837-838
copy header into program . . . . .	387
core . . . . .	548
core dump file format . . . . .	548
cos(). . . . .	549
cosh(). . . . .	549
cp . . . . .	18, 550
cpdir . . . . .	551
cpio . . . . .	50, 551
cpp . . . . .	168, 554
error messages . . . . .	1168
floating-point numbers . . . . .	676
crackers . . . . .	5
crc16(). . . . .	789
creat(). . . . .	557
cron . . . . .	29, 42, 557
crontab . . . . .	559
crypt . . . . .	48, 561
crypt(). . . . .	561
ct . . . . .	562

ctags	562
ctime()	563
ctrl key	6
ctype	564
ctype.h	565
current directory	14, 28
current line within source file.	390
curses.	566
curses.h	578
Curtis, Pavel	731, 1088, 1098
cut.	578
CWD	579

## D

daemon . . . . .	580
definition . . . . .	789
data formats . . . . .	580
data structure . . . . .	176
data types . . . . .	581
date . . . . .	39, 582
date of translation . . . . .	389
db . . . . .	44, 46, 582
setting registers . . . . .	585
DB-25 connector . . . . .	964
DB-9P connector . . . . .	964
dc . . . . .	593
dcheck . . . . .	595
dd . . . . .	595
debugging . . . . .	46
decvax_d() . . . . .	596
decvax_f() . . . . .	597
default . . . . .	597
directory . . . . .	67
prompt . . . . .	67
defined . . . . .	597
definitions . . . . .	598
deftty.h . . . . .	598
del key . . . . .	7
dereferencing, pointer . . . . .	920
deroff . . . . .	598
detab . . . . .	599
device . . . . .	
boot . . . . .	472
root . . . . .	472
device drivers . . . . .	599
device-independent I/O . . . . .	26, 529
df . . . . .	20, 600
diff . . . . .	601
diff3 . . . . .	602
dir.h . . . . .	603
directory . . . . .	11-12, 603
current . . . . .	14, 28
home . . . . .	12-13, 60, 67
parent . . . . .	67
removing . . . . .	20
root . . . . .	13, 27
tree-structured . . . . .	529
dirent.h . . . . .	604
dirs . . . . .	604

disable . . . . . 604  
 disk  
     block. . . . . 20  
 disk usage . . . . . 20  
 disk, floppy. . . . . 676  
 disk, MS-DOS . . . . . 676  
 div() . . . . . 604  
 div t. . . . . 604  
 division, integer . . . . . 604, 783  
 do . . . . . 70, 605  
 dollar . . . . . 482  
 domain . . . . . 605  
 done. . . . . 70  
 dos . . . . . 606  
 doscat. . . . . 608  
 doscp . . . . . 608  
 doscpdir . . . . . 611  
 dosdel. . . . . 612  
 dosdir. . . . . 612  
 dosformat . . . . . 613  
 doslabel. . . . . 613  
 dosls . . . . . 614  
 dosmkdir . . . . . 614  
 dosrm. . . . . 614  
 dosrmdir . . . . . 615  
 dot command . . . . . 68  
 double . . . . . 615  
     convert from DECVAX to IEEE format . . . . . 729  
     convert from IEEE to DECVAX format . . . . . 596  
 drvld . . . . . 28, 615  
 drvld.all. . . . . 616  
 du . . . . . 20, 617  
 dump . . . . . 27, 617  
 dumpdate . . . . . 618  
 dumpdir . . . . . 619  
 dumptape.h . . . . . 619  
 dup() . . . . . 619  
 dup2(). . . . . 620  
 duplicate file stream . . . . . 996  
 duplicate stream . . . . . 757

## E

ebcidic.h . . . . . 621  
 echo . . . . . 60, 621  
 ed . . . . . 7, 44, 622  
     \$ . . . . . 115-116  
     & . . . . . 136  
     \* . . . . . 115  
     + . . . . . 122  
     - . . . . . 122  
     . (dot) . . . . . 112, 122  
     .= . . . . . 116  
     ;. . . . . 140  
     <ctrl-D> . . . . . 110  
     = . . . . . 116  
     ? . . . . . 126  
     adding lines. . . . . 112  
     advanced commands . . . . . 132  
     backslash . . . . . 128

    caret . . . . . 135  
     carriage return . . . . . 110  
     changing lines . . . . . 118  
     characters, special. . . . . 121, 134  
     commands, advanced . . . . . 122, 132  
     commands, global . . . . . 141  
     copying blocks of texts . . . . . 125  
     current, line . . . . . 114, 139  
     deleting lines . . . . . 117  
     file, editing commands . . . . . 132  
     file, name, in ed command . . . . . 113  
     global substitute . . . . . 121  
     global, command. . . . . 128, 141  
     inserting lines . . . . . 114  
     joining lines. . . . . 129  
     line, locators . . . . . 126  
     line, number . . . . . 111  
     line, number ranges . . . . . 115  
     line, number zero . . . . . 125  
     line, numbers, relative . . . . . 122  
     move, blocks of text . . . . . 124  
     pattern . . . . . 119  
     print command. . . . . 115  
     prompt character . . . . . 112  
     removing lines . . . . . 116  
     reverse searching . . . . . 132  
     sed . . . . . 112  
     special characters . . . . . 134  
     splitting lines . . . . . 130  
     substitute command . . . . . 119  
     tutorial . . . . . 109  
 edata . . . . . 798  
 EDITOR. . . . . 626  
 egrep . . . . . 626  
 elif. . . . . 72  
 else . . . . . 72, 184, 628  
 elvis . . . . . 628  
 enable. . . . . 635  
 end . . . . . 798  
 end conditional inclusion of code. . . . . 386  
 end-of-file indicator . . . . . 639  
 endgrent() . . . . . 636  
 endpwent() . . . . . 636  
 enter . . . . . 6  
 enum . . . . . 637  
 ENV . . . . . 637  
 env . . . . . 637  
 environ . . . . . 638  
 environmental variables . . . . . 638  
 envp. . . . . 639  
 EOF . . . . . 639  
 eol . . . . . 6  
 epson . . . . . 640  
 Epson MX-80 . . . . . 928  
 erase . . . . . 40-41  
 errno . . . . . 641  
 errno.h . . . . . 641  
 error message, return text of . . . . . 1035  
 error messages  
     assembler . . . . . 1163-1164



cc.	1163
cc0	1171
cc1	1180
cc2	1180
cpp	1168
fsck	1183
linker	1181-1182
make.	1187
nroff	1188
system.	1162
esac	73
etext.	798
eval	643
event scheduling	41
ex	644
example.	381
exec	645
execl()	645
execle()	645
execlp()	645
executable file	646
executable files	168
executable program	168
execute upon failure	994
execute upon success	994
execution.	646
execv()	647
execve()	647
execvp()	648
exit	181, 649
exit().	649
exp().	649
export.	66, 650
expr	651
extern	652

## F

fabs()	654
factor	654
factor.c	169
failure.	68
failure, execute upon	755
false.	72, 654
fatal()	789
fblk.h	654
fc	655
FCEDIT.	655
fclose()	655
fcntl()	656
fcntl.h.	656
fd	656
fd.h	657
fdformat	49, 657
fdioctl.h.	658
fdisk.	659
fdisk.h	660
fdopen().	660
feof().	661
ferror()	661

fflush()	663
fgetc()	664
fgets.	177
fgets().	665
fgetw().	666
fi.	72
field	666
FILE.	176, 667
file.	11, 666-667
block special	27
concatenation	15
copying	18
creating empty	61
creation	16
include	46
links	21
mailing	815
modification time	46
move.	17
name.	11
of commands.	58
protection.	48
prototype	24
raw.	27
removal of.	19
rename	17
restoring.	51
special character.	27
file descriptor	668
file format	
archive file	406
COHERENT file	603
core dump	548
file format, processing accounting	396
file formats.	668
file locking, UUCP.	350, 1141
file system	
layout	27
mounting non-COHERENT.	678
root	26
file, generate name for temporary file	1103
file, indicate end of	639
file, source, include.	387
file, transfer to/from MS-DOS	606
file-creation mask.	1120
fileno()	669
files	
back up	551
backup	617, 1062, 1128
cooked.	27
fill an area with a character.	839
filsys.h	669
filter.	31, 669
find	670
find one string within another	1043
fixstack.	671
fixterm()	672
flexible arrays	408
float	672
convert from DECVAX to IEEE format	729

convert from IEEE to DECVAX format .	597
floating-point number, create from string	1043
floating-point numbers. . . . .	169
inclusion . . . . .	676
floor() . . . . .	676
floppy disk	
bootable . . . . .	475
floppy disk, copy MS-DOS files to/from .	606
floppy disks . . . . .	676
Floyd, Bob . . . . .	835
fnkey . . . . .	679
font, soft . . . . .	928
fopen . . . . .	177, 179, 181
fopen() . . . . .	679
for . . . . .	70, 177, 182-183, 681
fork() . . . . .	682
fortune . . . . .	682
fperr.h . . . . .	683
fprintf() . . . . .	683
fputc() . . . . .	683
fputs() . . . . .	684
fputw() . . . . .	684
fread() . . . . .	685
free() . . . . .	685
freelist . . . . .	1162
freopen() . . . . .	685
frexp() . . . . .	686
from . . . . .	687
fscanf() . . . . .	688
fsck . . . . .	26-27, 689
error messages. . . . .	1183
fseek() . . . . .	690
fstat() . . . . .	691
fstatfs() . . . . .	693
ftell() . . . . .	693
ftime() . . . . .	694
function . . . . .	173, 694
function keys . . . . .	679
function, pointer to . . . . .	920
fwrite() . . . . .	694
fwtable . . . . .	695

## G

gallows . . . . .	334
gcd() . . . . .	696
general functions . . . . .	696
generate name for temporary file . . . . .	1103
getc() . . . . .	698
getchar() . . . . .	699
getdents() . . . . .	699
getegid() . . . . .	700
getenv() . . . . .	700
geteuid() . . . . .	701
getgid() . . . . .	701
getgrent() . . . . .	702
getgrgid() . . . . .	702
getgrnam() . . . . .	702
getline() . . . . .	790
getlogin() . . . . .	703

getopt() . . . . .	703
getopts . . . . .	704
getpass() . . . . .	705
getpgrp() . . . . .	705
getpid() . . . . .	705
getpw() . . . . .	705
getpwent() . . . . .	706
getpwnam() . . . . .	707
getpwuid() . . . . .	708
gets() . . . . .	708
getty. . . . .	709
getuid() . . . . .	710
getw() . . . . .	711
getwd() . . . . .	711
GMT. . . . .	40, 711
gmtime() . . . . .	712
goto . . . . .	712
grave accent . . . . .	67
grep . . . . .	39, 713
group . . . . .	714
id . . . . .	47
name. . . . .	47
group structure . . . . .	715
grp.h . . . . .	715
gtty() . . . . .	715
guess . . . . .	715
guillotine . . . . .	334
Gwynn, D. . . . .	526, 700, 904, 954, 961, 977, 1066

## H

hard disk . . . . .	717
adding . . . . .	717
adding another. . . . .	719
hard disk, copy MS-DOS files to/from. . . . .	606
hash. . . . .	720
hashing, example . . . . .	1047
hdioctl.h . . . . .	720
head. . . . .	720
header file . . . . .	173, 178
header files. . . . .	721
header, copy into program. . . . .	387
help . . . . .	9, 723
here document . . . . .	754, 756, 993, 995
Hewlett-Packard LaserJet . . . . .	928
high-level language . . . . .	172, 529
Hoare, C.A.R. . . . .	946
HOME. . . . .	67, 723
home directory . . . . .	12-13, 60
hp . . . . .	723
hpd . . . . .	724
hpr . . . . .	724
hpskip . . . . .	725
hs . . . . .	725
hypot() . . . . .	727

## I

i-node. . . . .	728
list . . . . .	26

I/O redirection . . . . .	15, 30
i8086	
registers . . . . .	423
IAPX286 . . . . .	556
icheck . . . . .	728
identifier, define as macro . . . . .	384
idle . . . . .	473
ieee_d() . . . . .	729
ieee_f() . . . . .	729
if . . . . .	72, 729-730
IFS . . . . .	730
include code conditionally . . . . .	385-387
include file . . . . .	721
include source file . . . . .	387
inclusion of code, conditional, end . . . . .	386
index() . . . . .	730, 1033
infocmp . . . . .	731
init . . . . .	473, 731
initialization . . . . .	408, 732
initialization of pointers . . . . .	920
ino.h . . . . .	735
inode.h . . . . .	735
install . . . . .	735
instruction set . . . . .	171
instructions . . . . .	171
int . . . . .	179, 738
integer division . . . . .	604, 783
Intel Binary Compatibility Standard . . . . .	388
interprocess communication . . . . .	867, 1004
interrupt . . . . .	738
introduction to C programming . . . . .	171
io.h . . . . .	738
ioctl() . . . . .	738
ipc.h . . . . .	739
is_fs() . . . . .	790
isalnum() . . . . .	739
isalpha() . . . . .	739
isascii() . . . . .	740
isatty() . . . . .	740
iscntrl() . . . . .	740
isdigit() . . . . .	740
islower() . . . . .	741
ispos() . . . . .	741
isprint() . . . . .	741
ispunct() . . . . .	741
isspace() . . . . .	742
isupper() . . . . .	742
itom() . . . . .	742

## J

j0() . . . . .	743
j1() . . . . .	744
jday_to_time() . . . . .	790
jday_to_tm() . . . . .	790
jn() . . . . .	744
jobs . . . . .	744
join . . . . .	745
Julian date . . . . .	790

## K

kermit . . . . .	746
kermit, interactive . . . . .	515
Kernighan, Brian W. . . . .	172
keyboard tables . . . . .	749
keys, function . . . . .	679
keyword	
parameters . . . . .	65
kill . . . . .	40-41, 43-44, 753
kill() . . . . .	754
King David . . . . .	298
King Lear . . . . .	297
Kirkendall, Steve . . . . .	563, 635, 644, 956, 1148
Korn shell . . . . .	754
ksh . . . . .	754
KSH_VERSION . . . . .	773

## L

l . . . . .	774
L-devices . . . . .	774
l.out . . . . .	410
l.out.h . . . . .	775
L.sys . . . . .	776
l3tol() . . . . .	778
LaserJet . . . . .	928
LASTERROR . . . . .	779
lc . . . . .	7, 14, 779
lcase() . . . . .	790
LCK files . . . . .	350, 1141
ld . . . . .	45, 780
error messages . . . . .	1181-1182
ldexp() . . . . .	783
LDHEAD . . . . .	782-783
ldiv() . . . . .	783
ldiv t . . . . .	783
LDTAIL . . . . .	782, 784
let . . . . .	784
lex . . . . .	784
\$ . . . . .	215
%% . . . . .	207
%S . . . . .	218
%{ %} . . . . .	222
( and ) . . . . .	214
* . . . . .	213
+ . . . . .	212
.. . . . .	215
// . . . . .	215
< > . . . . .	218
? . . . . .	213-214
abbreviations . . . . .	217
action . . . . .	207
alternatives . . . . .	214
angle brackets . . . . .	218
BEGIN action . . . . .	218
beginning of line \$ . . . . .	215
braces . . . . .	209
braces, in patterns . . . . .	214
character classes . . . . .	212

context match . . . . .	215-216	bc . . . . .	467
context, separate. . . . .	218	C . . . . .	45
context, start . . . . .	217	courses . . . . .	566
context, switch. . . . .	219	lex . . . . .	784
definitions. . . . .	207, 218	mathematics . . . . .	825
definitions section . . . . .	221	miscellaneous functions . . . . .	788
dot . . . . .	211	multiple-precision mathematics . . . . .	877
ECHO . . . . .	220	standard C . . . . .	696
end of line. . . . .	215	termcap . . . . .	1068
exception . . . . .	212	terminal operations . . . . .	1074
grouping, () . . . . .	214	yacc . . . . .	1158
header section . . . . .	222	libterm . . . . .	1068
lex specification . . . . .	205	libterm.a . . . . .	1074
macro . . . . .	217	liby . . . . .	1158
match, exception. . . . .	212	limits.h . . . . .	796
match, in context . . . . .	215-216	line control. . . . .	387
match, longest . . . . .	213	line numbering, reset. . . . .	387
match, non-graphic characters . . . . .	214	linefeed . . . . .	6
match, optional . . . . .	213	lines . . . . .	797
non-graphic character . . . . .	214	link() . . . . .	798
non-graphic characters . . . . .	215	linked list, example. . . . .	1047
optional match . . . . .	213	linker . . . . .	168
pattern . . . . .	207	error messages . . . . .	1181-1182
patterns . . . . .	210-211	linker-defined symbols . . . . .	798
program generator . . . . .	205	linking without compiling . . . . .	170
regular expressions . . . . .	210	links. . . . .	20
REJECT . . . . .	220	ln . . . . .	21, 799
repetition, zero or more. . . . .	212	load-module execution . . . . .	646
repetition . . . . .	212	locale-specific string transformation . . . . .	1050
repetition, specific count . . . . .	214	localtime() . . . . .	799
repetitions, zero or more . . . . .	209	lock files . . . . .	350, 1141
repetitions, zero or one . . . . .	214	lockexist() . . . . .	793
rules . . . . .	207	lockit() . . . . .	793
rules, context start . . . . .	217	locknrm() . . . . .	793
rules, with same action. . . . .	210	lockntty() . . . . .	793
section, header. . . . .	222	lockrm() . . . . .	793
sections, definitions . . . . .	221	locktty() . . . . .	793
start condition . . . . .	217	lockttyexist() . . . . .	794
statements . . . . .	208	log() . . . . .	801
statements multiple . . . . .	209	log10() . . . . .	801
tokens . . . . .	223	logging in . . . . .	
tutorial . . . . .	205	definition . . . . .	5
yacc . . . . .	223	logging out . . . . .	10
yylex . . . . .	221	login . . . . .	10, 48, 801
yytext . . . . .	210	time . . . . .	52
yywrap. . . . .	208, 223	login accounting . . . . .	393
	214	login identifier . . . . .	883
Lexicon . . . . .	787	logmsg . . . . .	802
introduction . . . . .	379	long . . . . .	802
If . . . . .	788	long integer, create from string . . . . .	1046
lib.b . . . . .	467	longjmp() . . . . .	803
libc . . . . .	696	look . . . . .	803
libcurses . . . . .	566	loop . . . . .	177
libl . . . . .	784	lower case . . . . .	
libm . . . . .	170, 825	in file names . . . . .	11
libmisc . . . . .	788	lp . . . . .	804
libmp . . . . .	877	lpd . . . . .	805
LIBPATH . . . . .	504, 795	lpioctl.h . . . . .	805
libraries. . . . .	795	lpr . . . . .	805
library. . . . .	173	lpskip . . . . .	806

lr. . . . .	806
ls . . . . .	8, 14, 806
lseek(). . . . .	808
lto13(). . . . .	809
lvalue . . . . .	809
lx . . . . .	810

## M

m4. . . . .	44, 46, 811
argument . . . . .	270
argument substitution . . . . .	271
changequote . . . . .	272
decision-making macro . . . . .	272
decr . . . . .	274-275
define . . . . .	270
divert . . . . .	273
divnum . . . . .	273
dnl . . . . .	272
dumpdef. . . . .	271, 277
endless loop . . . . .	277
errprint . . . . .	273
eval. . . . .	275
expression evaluation . . . . .	275
extra newlines . . . . .	272-273
ifdef . . . . .	272
ifelse . . . . .	275
include . . . . .	272
incr. . . . .	274
index. . . . .	275
macro name recognition . . . . .	270
maketemp. . . . .	276
nestable quotes . . . . .	270
output stream . . . . .	273
quote marks removing . . . . .	270
quoted text . . . . .	269
repeat . . . . .	275
sinclude . . . . .	272
string length . . . . .	275
substr . . . . .	273
syscmd . . . . .	276-277
translit . . . . .	274
tutorial . . . . .	269
undefine. . . . .	271
undivert. . . . .	273
unquoted text . . . . .	269
machine instructions. . . . .	46
machine.h . . . . .	813
macro . . . . .	44, 173, 813
macro, undefine. . . . .	389
madd(). . . . .	814
mail . . . . .	30, 36, 38, 814-815
receiving. . . . .	38
main . . . . .	45, 173, 175
main(). . . . .	817
major device number . . . . .	600
major number . . . . .	818
make . . . . .	46, 818
\$*. . . . .	286
\$< . . . . .	286

\$? . . . . .	286
\$@ . . . . .	286
~ . . . . .	284, 289
.DEFAULT. . . . .	289
.IGNORE . . . . .	289
.SILENT . . . . .	289
.SUFFIXES . . . . .	286
/usr/lib/makeactions . . . . .	284, 286
/usr/lib/makemacros . . . . .	284, 286
actions. . . . .	284, 286
archive. . . . .	287-288
assembler. . . . .	286
colon. . . . .	281, 287
command line . . . . .	281, 284-285
command line, macro definition. . . . .	285
command line, options . . . . .	284
command line, target specification . . . . .	285
command, error . . . . .	284, 289
command, printing . . . . .	284
comment . . . . .	282
debug option . . . . .	284
default rules . . . . .	286
double colon . . . . .	287
error messages . . . . .	1187
error status. . . . .	284, 289
errors . . . . .	289
exit status. . . . .	289
file . . . . .	281, 284
file modification time . . . . .	284
file option . . . . .	284
hyphen . . . . .	284
ignore errors option . . . . .	284, 289
interrupt . . . . .	289
lex . . . . .	286
macro . . . . .	285
macro, definition. . . . .	282, 284-285
macro, printing. . . . .	284
macros. . . . .	284, 286
Makefile . . . . .	284
modification time . . . . .	284
no execution option . . . . .	284
no rules option . . . . .	284
options . . . . .	284
print option. . . . .	284
printing . . . . .	284
program, maintenance . . . . .	288
program, specification . . . . .	281, 284
return value . . . . .	289
rules option. . . . .	284
silent option . . . . .	284, 289
special targets . . . . .	289
specification . . . . .	281, 284
target . . . . .	285, 289
target, line . . . . .	287
target, printing. . . . .	284
target, program. . . . .	285
target, specification . . . . .	285
test suites. . . . .	288
touch option . . . . .	284
tutorial . . . . .	279

usr/lib/makeactions	286
yacc	286
malloc()	821
malloc.h	823
man	9, 29, 823-824
Mandrake the Magician	960
manifest constant	384, 825
manual	
how to use	2
user reaction report	3
mark a conforming translator	390
mask, default	1120
master boot program	471
match()	790
math.h	825
mathematics library	170, 825
mboot	471, 826
mcmp()	826
mcopv()	827
mdata.h	827
mdiv()	827
me	32, 827
tutorial	75
mem	834
memccpy()	835
memchr()	835
memcmp()	837
memcpy()	837
memmove()	838
memok()	838
memory allocation	838
memory, copy	835, 837-838
memset()	839
mesg	840
message of the day	858
message passing	
driver	867
msgctl()	868
msgget()	870
msgrcv()	871
msgsnd()	873
metaphone()	790
MicroEMACS	32, 827
<ctrl-@>	83
<ctrl-A>	78
<ctrl-B>	78
<ctrl-C>	105
<ctrl-D>	80
<ctrl-E>	78
<ctrl-F>	78
<ctrl-G>	88
<ctrl-L>	84
<ctrl-N>	78
<ctrl-P>	78
<ctrl-T>	84
<ctrl-U>	91
<ctrl-U><ctrl-L>	85
<ctrl-V>	79
<ctrl-W>	83
<ctrl-X>	89, 106

<ctrl-X>!	105
<ctrl-X>1	95, 97
<ctrl-X>2	97
<ctrl-X><	106
<ctrl-X><ctrl-B>	95
<ctrl-X><ctrl-C>	79, 82
<ctrl-X><ctrl-F>	93
<ctrl-X><ctrl-N>	98
<ctrl-X><ctrl-P>	98
<ctrl-X><ctrl-R>	93
<ctrl-X><ctrl-S>	79
<ctrl-X><ctrl-V>	94
<ctrl-X><ctrl-W>	89, 93
<ctrl-X><ctrl-Z>	98
<ctrl-X>>	106
<ctrl-X>B	99
<ctrl-X>E	100
<ctrl-X>F	85
<ctrl-X>K	95
<ctrl-X>N	97
<ctrl-X>P	97
<ctrl-X>Z	97
<ctrl-Y>	81
<ctrl-Z>	90
<ctrl>	75
<del>	81
<esc>!	98
<esc>%	88
<esc>2	107
<esc><	79
<esc><del>	81
<esc>>	79
<esc>?	107
<esc>B	78
<esc>C	84
<esc>D	80
<esc>F	78
<esc>L	84
<esc>R	87
<esc>S	86
<esc>U	84
<esc>V	79
<return>	77, 87
arguments	91
arguments, default value	91
arguments, deleting	92
arguments, increasing or decreasing	91
arguments, selecting values	92
arguments, with create window	97
arrow keys	77
automatic mode	105
back	78
backspace key	77
backward, end of line	78
backward, one space	78
backward, one word	78
beginning of text	79
block indentation	85
block-kill text	82
buffer status	95

buffer status command . . . . .	95	previous error . . . . .	106
buffer status command, with windows . . . . .	100	previous line . . . . .	78
buffer status window . . . . .	95	program interrupt . . . . .	105
buffer, definition . . . . .	92	quit . . . . .	79
buffer, delete . . . . .	95	quit without saving text. . . . .	82
buffer, for killed text. . . . .	82	redraw screen . . . . .	84
buffer, how differs from file. . . . .	92	rename file . . . . .	93
buffer, naming . . . . .	92	repetition . . . . .	79
buffer, need unique names. . . . .	95	replace buffer with named file . . . . .	93
buffer, prompting for new name. . . . .	95	restore (yank back) killed text . . . . .	81
buffer, replace with named file. . . . .	93	return indent . . . . .	85
buffer, switch b. . . . .	94	reverse search . . . . .	87
buffer, with windows . . . . .	99	right . . . . .	78
buffers, number allowed . . . . .	95	saving text . . . . .	79, 89
cancel a command. . . . .	88	screen down . . . . .	79
capitalization . . . . .	84	screen redraw . . . . .	84
center line on screen . . . . .	85	screen up . . . . .	79
commands . . . . .	86	scroll down . . . . .	98
compiling and debugging . . . . .	105	scroll up. . . . .	98
copying text. . . . .	99	search and replace. . . . .	88
cursor movement display. . . . .	77	search, forward. . . . .	86
delete buffer command . . . . .	95	search, reverse . . . . .	87
delete key . . . . .	81	searching . . . . .	86
delete text, versus killing . . . . .	80	store command. . . . .	90
end macro command . . . . .	100	switch buffer command. . . . .	99
end of text. . . . .	79	switch buffers . . . . .	94
erase text . . . . .	80	text, block kill . . . . .	83
erase text, by line . . . . .	81	text, capitalize . . . . .	84
erase text, erasing spaces . . . . .	80	text, erase to left . . . . .	81
erase text, to the left . . . . .	81	text, erase to right . . . . .	80
erase text, to the right . . . . .	80	text, kill by lines . . . . .	81
execute macro command . . . . .	100	text, lowercase . . . . .	84
exit. . . . .	89	text, move. . . . .	82
extended commands . . . . .	89	text, move from one buffer to another . . . . .	94
f option . . . . .	832	text, restore (yank back) . . . . .	81
file and buffer commands . . . . .	93	text, saving . . . . .	89
file, definition. . . . .	92	text, uppercase. . . . .	84
file, how differs from buffer. . . . .	92	text, write to new file . . . . .	89
file, naming . . . . .	92	text, yank back (restore) . . . . .	81
file, rename . . . . .	93	transpose characters . . . . .	84
file, replace buffer with named f. . . . .	93	tutorial . . . . .	75
file, with windows . . . . .	99	uppercase. . . . .	84
forward, end of line . . . . .	78	visit command . . . . .	94
forward, one space. . . . .	78	window manipulation. . . . .	97
forward, one word . . . . .	78	window, buffer status command use . . . . .	100
help window . . . . .	106	window, copying text among. . . . .	99
help, in MicroEMACS . . . . .	106	window, enlarge . . . . .	97
kill and move commands . . . . .	82	window, move within . . . . .	98
kill text, block . . . . .	83	window, moving text among . . . . .	99
kill text, versus deleting . . . . .	80	window, number possible . . . . .	97
killing and deleting . . . . .	80	window, saving text . . . . .	100
left . . . . .	78	window, scroll down. . . . .	98
line position . . . . .	78	window, shifting between. . . . .	97
lowercase . . . . .	84	window, shrink. . . . .	98
metakey . . . . .	103	window, use with editing. . . . .	99
move text . . . . .	82	window, using multiple buffers . . . . .	99
movement commands. . . . .	77	word wrap. . . . .	85
next error . . . . .	106	write text to new file. . . . .	93
next line. . . . .	78	yank back text . . . . .	81, 92
number of buffers allowed . . . . .	95	MicroKVETCH Electronic Nag. . . . .	306

microprocessor	171
min()	840
minit().	840
minor device number	600
minor number	841
mintfr()	841
misc.h	789
mitom()	841
mkdir	16, 841
mkdir()	842
mkfnames	842
mkfs	24, 843
mknod	845
mknod().	846
mktemp().	846
mneg()	846
mnttab.h	847
mode	15
mode field	22
modem	847
adding	847
cabling	964
modem control	853
modem problems, UUCP	1134
modem, Trailblazer, with UUCP	1133
modemcap	851
modeminit	853
modf().	854
modulus	854
mon.h	855
moo	855
more	16, 856
motd	858
mount	24, 859
mount().	858
mount.all	859
mount.h	860
mout().	860
move files	17
mprec.h	860
ms	29, 860
MS-DOS	862
concatenate a file	608
copy directories	611
copy files	608
delete a file from	612
differences from COHERENT	862
equivalent COHERENT commands	862
format a floppy disk	613
label a floppy disk	613
list contents	614
list contents of directories	612
make a directory	614
on same hard drive as COHERENT	659
remove a directory	615
remove a file	614
MS-DOS file system, mounting	678
MS-DOS, copies files to/from	606
MS-DOS, reading floppy	677
msg	36, 867-868

msg.h	868
msgctl().	868
msgget().	870
msgrcv().	871
msgs	38, 872
msgsnd().	873
msig.h	874
msqrt().	875
msub().	875
mtab.h	875
mtioctl.h	876
mtol().	876
mtos().	876
mtype().	876
mtype.h	877
mult().	877
multi-tasking, definition	862
multi-user, definition	862
multiple source files	169
multiple-precision mathematics	877
multiprocessing execution	754, 993
multitasking	528
multiuser	528
multiuser mode	473
Munk, Udo	731, 1088, 1098
mv	17, 880
mvdir	881
mvfree().	881
MWC	556

## N

n.out.h	882
name of system	1138
name, generate for temporary file	1103
named pipe	882
ncheck	883
newcpy().	791
newgrp	883
newline	
in C strings	45
newusr	47, 883
nkb	884
nlist().	887
nm	888
non-COHERENT file system	
mounting	678
not modifiable, type qualifier	546
notmem().	890
nptx	891
nroff	29, 34, 891
% number register	317
%, page number	304
.AB macro	302
.ad primitive	310-311
.AE macro	302
.AI macro	302
.AU macro	302
.BD macro	307
.bp primitive	303, 308, 313



.br primitive . . . . .	309, 314	command, line space . . . . .	336
.CD macro . . . . .	307	command, page offset . . . . .	308, 335
.ce primitive . . . . .	313	command, title length . . . . .	317
.da primitive . . . . .	342	command, when . . . . .	316
.DE macro . . . . .	306	comments . . . . .	309
.di primitive . . . . .	341-342	conditional input . . . . .	331
.DS macro . . . . .	306	CT string . . . . .	303
.ds primitive . . . . .	303, 323	display . . . . .	306
.el primitive . . . . .	332	display indented . . . . .	307
.ev primitive . . . . .	335	display, block-centered . . . . .	307
.FE macro . . . . .	306	display, centered . . . . .	307
.fi primitive . . . . .	310-311	display, indented . . . . .	307
.FO macro . . . . .	316	display, left . . . . .	307
.FS macro . . . . .	306	diversion . . . . .	341
.ft primitive . . . . .	340	error messages . . . . .	1188
.hd primitive . . . . .	316	expression . . . . .	329
.ID macro . . . . .	307	fill . . . . .	310
.ie primitive . . . . .	332	fonts . . . . .	304
.IP macro . . . . .	296	footer . . . . .	303, 317
.KE macro . . . . .	308	footnote . . . . .	306
.KS macro . . . . .	308	header . . . . .	303
.LD macro . . . . .	307	headings, section . . . . .	301
.ll primitive . . . . .	308, 329	hyphenation . . . . .	295
.ls primitive . . . . .	336	indentation, relative . . . . .	298
.lt primitive . . . . .	317, 339	indented display . . . . .	307
.na primitive . . . . .	310-311	indented, display . . . . .	307
.nf primitive . . . . .	310	italic . . . . .	304
.NH macro . . . . .	301	justify . . . . .	310
.nr primitive . . . . .	325	justify text . . . . .	295
.pl primitive . . . . .	313	keep . . . . .	306, 308
.po primitive . . . . .	308, 331, 335	left display . . . . .	307
.PP macro . . . . .	294, 296, 315	line, length . . . . .	308
.QE macro . . . . .	300	LT string . . . . .	303
.QS macro . . . . .	300	macro . . . . .	314
.RE macro . . . . .	298	macro definition . . . . .	293
.RS macro . . . . .	298	macro, arguments . . . . .	318-319
.SH macro . . . . .	301	macro, definition . . . . .	319
.sp primitive . . . . .	296, 308, 312, 314	macro, name . . . . .	296
.ta primitive . . . . .	313	margin, right . . . . .	295
.tc primitive . . . . .	313	margins . . . . .	309
.ti primitive . . . . .	314	measurement . . . . .	329
.TL macro . . . . .	302	measurement, absolute . . . . .	332
.tl primitive . . . . .	317	measurement, units . . . . .	316, 329
.wh primitive . . . . .	316	ms macros . . . . .	293
/usr/lib/tmac . . . . .	345	new page . . . . .	308
adjust . . . . .	310	no-fill . . . . .	310
begin page . . . . .	308	numbered heading . . . . .	301
block-centered display . . . . .	307	page number . . . . .	304
boldface . . . . .	304	page, break . . . . .	308
break . . . . .	309, 312	page, offset . . . . .	308
breaking line . . . . .	295	paragraph . . . . .	296, 312
centered display . . . . .	307	paragraph tag . . . . .	297
characters, special . . . . .	305	paragraph, indented . . . . .	296
command, argument . . . . .	296	paragraph, quoted . . . . .	300
command, break . . . . .	309	quoted paragraph . . . . .	300
command, conditional . . . . .	331	register, number . . . . .	325
command, divert . . . . .	341	relative indent . . . . .	298
command, environment . . . . .	335	Roman . . . . .	304
command, fill . . . . .	310	RT string . . . . .	303
command, line length . . . . .	308	section heading . . . . .	301

skip lines . . . . . 308  
 space, vertical . . . . . 296  
 specification . . . . . 309  
 stack, environment . . . . . 337  
 string . . . . . 323  
 string, within strings . . . . . 324  
 strings . . . . . 303  
 tab . . . . . 313  
 tag on paragraph . . . . . 297  
 title . . . . . 303  
 traps . . . . . 314, 318  
 tutorial . . . . . 291  
 unit, default . . . . . 330  
 units . . . . . 329  
 nroff macros . . . . . 29  
 Nudleman, Mark . . . . . 858  
 NUL . . . . . 899  
 NULL . . . . . 181, 900  
 null . . . . . 900  
 null pointer . . . . . 920  
 number of arguments, variable . . . . . 1146  
 nybble . . . . . 900

## O

object format . . . . . 901  
 object module . . . . . 168, 170  
 od . . . . . 901  
 open() . . . . . 901  
 opendir() . . . . . 903  
 operating system . . . . . 528  
 operator . . . . . 904  
   precedence . . . . . 905  
 operator, stringize . . . . . 382  
 operator, token-pasting . . . . . 383  
 operators . . . . . 172, 413  
 optimization . . . . . 168  
 optimizer/object generator . . . . . 168  
 option . . . . . 8  
 options . . . . . 14  
 order  
   of matched file names . . . . . 62  
 ospeed . . . . . 1075  
 output formatting . . . . . 45

## P

packed decimal . . . . . 674  
 PAGER . . . . . 907  
 param.h . . . . . 907  
 parameter . . . . . 8  
   assigning keyword . . . . . 65  
   fewer . . . . . 63  
   keyword . . . . . 65  
   name . . . . . 8  
   null . . . . . 63  
   option . . . . . 8  
   positional . . . . . 62-63, 66  
   references . . . . . 63  
   substitution . . . . . 46, 69

parent directory . . . . . 67  
 parentheses . . . . . 45  
 Parkinson's law . . . . . 20  
 parser . . . . . 168  
 partition  
   root, changing size of . . . . . 719  
 partition, adding COHERENT p. . . . . 717  
 passwd . . . . . 28, 40, 48, 907-908  
 password . . . . . 32, 40, 47-48  
 paste . . . . . 908  
 patch . . . . . 910  
 PATH . . . . . 28, 67, 912  
 path name . . . . . 12-13  
   fully specified . . . . . 13  
 path() . . . . . 911  
 path.h . . . . . 912  
 pathn() . . . . . 791  
 paths . . . . . 912  
 patterns . . . . . 39, 60, 62  
 pause() . . . . . 914  
 pax . . . . . 914  
 PC . . . . . 1075  
 PCL . . . . . 928  
 pclose() . . . . . 914  
 permission  
   access . . . . . 22  
   read . . . . . 23  
   write . . . . . 23  
 Permissions . . . . . 915  
 perror() . . . . . 917  
 phone . . . . . 917  
 picture() . . . . . 794  
 PID . . . . . 42  
 pinout  
   DB-9P . . . . . 964  
   RS-232 . . . . . 964  
 pipe . . . . . 31, 755, 917, 994  
 pipe() . . . . . 918  
 pipeline, definition . . . . . 754, 993  
 pnmacth() . . . . . 920  
 pointer . . . . . 173, 920  
 pointer dereferencing . . . . . 920  
 pointer type . . . . . 920  
 pointer type derivation . . . . . 920  
 pointer-type mismatch . . . . . 920  
 poll() . . . . . 923  
 poll.h . . . . . 924  
 popd . . . . . 924  
 popen() . . . . . 925  
 port . . . . . 925  
 portability . . . . . 925  
 PostScript . . . . . 928, 935  
 pow() . . . . . 926  
 pr . . . . . 34, 926  
 precedence . . . . . 905  
 prep . . . . . 927  
 preprocessing directive, include source file . . . . . 387  
 preprocessing directive, reset line number . . . . . 387  
 print . . . . . 928  
 printer . . . . . 640, 723-724, 805, 928

cabling, serial	964
printf	45, 174, 177
printf()	931
proc.h	933
process	42, 58, 933
background	58
id	42, 58, 705
process accounting, file format	396
prof	933
profile	934
program	
debugging	46
modularity	46
program execution	646
programming	
structured	46
prompt	32, 60, 67
protected mode	
definition	527
protection	48
prototype	24
prps	935
prvd	412
prvi	412
ps	42, 58, 937
PS1	67, 939
PS2	67, 939
ptrace()	939
pty	941
Puddnhead Wilson	315
pun	942
pushd	942
putc()	943
putchar()	943
putp()	944
puts()	944
putw()	944
pwd	17, 945
pwd.h	945

## 9

qfind	946
qsort()	946
question mark	61
quot	947

## R

RAM	951
ram	949
ram1	950
ramdisk	950
rand()	951
randl()	791
random access	951
ranlib	952
raw devices	1053
raw files	27
raw terminal	1079

rc	952
read	952
read permission	23
read()	953
read-only memory	955
readdir()	954
readonly	954
real time	53
realloc()	955
reboot	51, 955
rebooting COHERENT	9
receiving mail	38
redirect file stream	757, 996
redirect standard error	756, 995
redirect standard input	756, 995
redirect standard output	756, 995
redirect standard output and append	756, 995
redirection	15
ref	955
referenced type	920
regerror()	791
regex()	791
regexp()	791
regexp.h	791
region of memory, copy	835, 837-838
region of memory, search for character	835
regions, compare	837
register	171, 956
register declaration	956
register names	410
register variable	956
regsub()	791
regular expressions	39
releases, software, preparing	735
remacc	908
remote access password	908
remote communication	847
remove a directory	20
rename	956
rename a file	956
rename files	17
replace()	791
reset line number	387
resetterm()	957
restor	957
restore	
files	51
return	6, 959
rev	960
reverse search for character in string	1042
rewind()	960
rewinddir()	960
rindex()	961, 1042
Ritchie, Dennis	167, 172
rm	19, 21, 961
rmail	962
rmdir	20, 963
rmdir()	963
ROM	955
root	12-13, 31, 44, 964

device . . . . .	472
directory . . . . .	27
file system . . . . .	26
root partition	
changing size of . . . . .	719
rpow() . . . . .	964
RS-232 . . . . .	964
rub out key . . . . .	7
rubik . . . . .	965
run time, check assertion . . . . .	452
rvalue . . . . .	966

## S

sa . . . . .	967
sbrk() . . . . .	968
scanf() . . . . .	968
scat . . . . .	970
sched.h . . . . .	972
screen editor . . . . .	32
script . . . . .	57, 59, 62
SCSI . . . . .	972
sdiv() . . . . .	972
search an array . . . . .	479
search for character in a string . . . . .	1033, 1042
search for character in region of memory . . . . .	835
search string for character . . . . .	1042
secondary boot . . . . .	472
SECONDS . . . . .	973
security . . . . .	973
sed . . . . .	974
\$ . . . . .	147
> . . . . .	144
change lines . . . . .	153
ed . . . . .	143
including a file . . . . .	153
line range . . . . .	147
line selection . . . . .	146
next line . . . . .	155
p command withs . . . . .	148
pattern . . . . .	147
pipes . . . . .	143
reading in . . . . .	153
substitution . . . . .	144
tutorial . . . . .	143
seekdir() . . . . .	976
seg.h . . . . .	977
sem . . . . .	977
sem.h . . . . .	978
semaphores	
driver . . . . .	977
semctl() . . . . .	978
semget() . . . . .	980
semop() . . . . .	981
semctl() . . . . .	978
semget() . . . . .	980
semicolon . . . . .	174
semicolons . . . . .	57
semop() . . . . .	981
set . . . . .	983
setbuf() . . . . .	984
setgid() . . . . .	985
setgrent() . . . . .	985
setjmp() . . . . .	985
setjmp.h . . . . .	986
setpgrp() . . . . .	986
setpwent() . . . . .	987
settz() . . . . .	987
setuid() . . . . .	987
setupterm() . . . . .	988
sgtty . . . . .	988
sgtty.h . . . . .	993
sh . . . . .	28, 30, 59, 993
tutorial . . . . .	57
shared memory	
driver . . . . .	1004
shmctl() . . . . .	1005
shmget() . . . . .	1006
SHELL . . . . .	1003
shell . . . . .	28, 30, 57
script . . . . .	59
sequential execution of commands . . . . .	57
simple commands . . . . .	57
variable . . . . .	64, 66
shell, Bourne . . . . .	993
Shell, D.L. . . . .	1003
shell, Korn . . . . .	754
shellsort() . . . . .	1003
shift . . . . .	1003
shm . . . . .	1004
shm.h . . . . .	1005
shmctl() . . . . .	1005
shmget() . . . . .	1006
short . . . . .	1008
showflag() . . . . .	791
shrd . . . . .	412
shri . . . . .	412
shutdown . . . . .	1008
shutting down COHERENT . . . . .	9
signal() . . . . .	1008
signal.h . . . . .	1011
signame . . . . .	1011
sin() . . . . .	1011
single-user mode . . . . .	473, 1008
sinh() . . . . .	1011
size . . . . .	1012
sizeof . . . . .	1012
skip() . . . . .	791
slash	
in path name . . . . .	13
sleep . . . . .	1013
sleep() . . . . .	1013
sload() . . . . .	1014
small . . . . .	1014
smart host . . . . .	913
smult() . . . . .	1018
soft fonts . . . . .	928
software, installing under COHERENT . . . . .	735
software, preparing releases . . . . .	735
sort . . . . .	1018

soundex . . . . .	790	string, break into tokens. . . . .	1044
source file . . . . .	170	string, compare two. . . . .	1034
source file inclusion . . . . .	387	string, comparison . . . . .	1035, 1042
source file name. . . . .	390	string, convert to floating-point number . . . . .	1043
source file, current line . . . . .	390	string, convert to long integer. . . . .	1046
source file, time translated . . . . .	391	string, convert to unsigned long integer. . . . .	1047
space . . . . .	64	string, find one within another . . . . .	1043
span() . . . . .	791	string, reverse search for character . . . . .	1042
special file		string, search for character . . . . .	1042
block. . . . .	27	string, search for character in . . . . .	1033, 1042
spell. . . . .	1019	string-ize operator . . . . .	382
spelling, looking up a word . . . . .	1019	string.h. . . . .	1036
split . . . . .	1020	strings . . . . .	1038
splitter() . . . . .	790	strip. . . . .	1039
spow(). . . . .	1021	strlen() . . . . .	1039
sprintf(). . . . .	1021	strn . . . . .	412
sqrt() . . . . .	1021	strncat() . . . . .	1039
srand() . . . . .	1022	strncmp(). . . . .	1040
srandl(). . . . .	791	strncpy(). . . . .	1040
srcpath . . . . .	1022	strpbrk(). . . . .	1042
ss . . . . .	1022	strchr(). . . . .	1042
sscanf(). . . . .	1024	strspn(). . . . .	1042
stack . . . . .	1025	strstr(). . . . .	1043
alter size of . . . . .	782	strtod(). . . . .	1043
stack size. . . . .	171	strtok(). . . . .	1044
standard		strtol(). . . . .	1046
input. . . . .	30	strtoul(). . . . .	1047
output. . . . .	30	struct . . . . .	1049
standard error. . . . .	1025	group . . . . .	715
standard I/O. . . . .	29	structure assignment. . . . .	1050
standard input . . . . .	1025	structured	
standard output. . . . .	15, 1026	programming. . . . .	46
stat(). . . . .	1026	structured programming. . . . .	172
stat.h . . . . .	1028	strxfrm(). . . . .	1050
stats(). . . . .	1028	stty . . . . .	6, 40, 1052
static . . . . .	1029	stty(). . . . .	1051
stdarg.h. . . . .	1029	su . . . . .	44, 1054
stddef.h. . . . .	1029	subject sequence . . . . .	1043, 1046-1047
stderr . . . . .	1030	substitution	
stdin . . . . .	1030	in commands. . . . .	60
STDIO. . . . .	1030	of parameters. . . . .	46, 69
stdio.h . . . . .	178, 1031	success. . . . .	68
stdlib.h . . . . .	1031	success, execute upon . . . . .	755
stdout. . . . .	1032	succotash . . . . .	560
sticky bit . . . . .	511, 1032	suload(). . . . .	1054
stime(). . . . .	1032	sum . . . . .	1054
storage class. . . . .	1033	superuser . . . . .	31, 44, 1055
strcat(). . . . .	1033	swab(). . . . .	1055
strchr(). . . . .	1033	switch. . . . .	1055
strchr(). . . . .	792	symt. . . . .	412
strcmp(). . . . .	1034	sync. . . . .	26-27, 51, 474, 1056
strcmpl(). . . . .	792	sync(). . . . .	1057
strcoll(). . . . .	1034	system	
strcpy(). . . . .	1034	time . . . . .	53
strcspn(). . . . .	1035	system calls . . . . .	1057
stream . . . . .	1035	system maintenance . . . . .	1059
stream.h . . . . .	1035	system name. . . . .	1138
strerror(). . . . .	1035	system(). . . . .	1057
string functions . . . . .	1036		
string transformation, locale specific . . . . .	1050		

**T**

<b>T</b>		<b>TMPDIR</b>	1102
tab	40	tmpnam()	1103
tail	1060	token pasting	383
tan()	1060	token, break a string into sequence of	1044
tanh()	1061	token, definition	754, 993
tape	1061	token-pasting operator	383
tar	1062	tolower()	1103
tboot	473, 1064	touch	1104
technical information	1065	toupper()	1104
tee	1065	tparm()	1105
telldir()	1066	tputs()	1105
tempnam()	1066	tr	1106
temporary file, generate name	1103	Trailblazer modem with UUCP	1133
TERM	1067	transform a string	1050
term	1067	translation, date	389
termcap	1068	translator, mark conforming	390
terminal	40, 1078	trap	1106
adding	1078	tree-structured	529
cabling	964	trim()	792
cooked	1079	troff	34, 1107
functions	988, 1088	true	1112
interface	988, 1088	tsort	1113
mode	27	ttt	1113
raw	1079	tty	1113
terminfo	1080	tty.h	1113
compile source file	1097	ttyname()	1114
de-compile binary	731	ttys	1114
file format	1067	ttyslot()	1116
termio	1088	ttystat	1116
termio.h	1093	type checking	1117
tertiary booting	1064	type promotion	1117
test	68, 1094	type qualifier, not modifiable	546
testing		type, pointer	920
strings	69	type, referenced	920
text of error message, return	1035	typedef	1117
tgetent()	1095	types.h	1117
tgetflag()	1096	typeset	1117
tgetnum()	1096	typo	1118
tgetstr()	1096		
tgoto()	1097	<b>U</b>	
The C Programming Language	172	ucase()	792
Thompson, Ken	167	umask	1120
tic	1097	umask()	1120
tick()	1098	umount	25-26, 1121
time	39, 1098-1099	umount()	1121
time source file is translated	391	unalias	1122
time()	1099	uname()	1122
time.h	1099	uncompress	1122
time_to_jday()	792	undefine a macro	389
timeb.h	1099	ungetc()	1123
timef.h	1100	uninstall bootstrap	736
timeout.h	1100	uninstall COHERENT	737
times	1100	union	1123
times()	1100	uniq	1123
times.h	1100	unique()	1124
timesharing	528	units	29, 1124
TIMEZONE	1101	unlink()	1125
timezone	40	unlockit()	794
tm to jday()	792	unlockntty()	794

unlocktty()	794
unmkfs	1126
unsigned	1127
unsigned long integer, create from string	1047
until	73, 1127
update	474, 1127
uproc.h	1127
usage()	792
USENIX	50
USENIX Association	553
USER	1127
user	
id	47
name	47
time	53
user name	30
user reaction report	3
usr	13
ustar	49, 1128
ustat()	1129
utime()	1129
utmp.h	1130
utsname.h	1130
uucheck	1131
uucico	1131
UUCP	1132
uucp	1136
UUCP	
domain name	1136
lock files	350, 1141
system name	1136
tutorial	347
uucpname	1138
uudecode	1138
uuencode	1139
uuinstall	1140
uulog	1140
uumvlog	1140
uuname	1141
uurmlock	1141
uutouch	1141
uux	1142
uuxqt	1144

## V

va_arg()	1145
va_end()	1145
va_start()	1146
value from command	68
variable	
shell	64, 66
variable arguments	1146
vertical bar	73
vfind()	793
vi	1147
vidattr()	1148
vidputs()	1148
Viduya, Robert	497
view	1148

vinit()	792
virec	1149
void	1150
volatile	1150
vopen()	793
vshutdown()	792

## W

wait	58, 1151
wait()	1151
wall	50, 1152
wc	1152
whence	1152
whereis	1153
which	1154
while	73, 1154
who	30, 35, 50, 1155
wild pointer	920
wildcards	1155
word	470
write	36, 1155
write permission	23
write()	1156

## X

xdump()	792
XENIX file system, mounting	678
xgcd()	1157
xopen()	792

## Y

yacc	1158
%%	230
%left	239-240
%nonassoc	240
%prec	240
%right	239-240
%token	236, 239
accept action	230
action statements	231
action, accept	230
action, error	230
action, reduce	230
action, shift	230
actions	232
ambiguity	237
ambiguity, default handling	238
ambiguity, resolution	238
associative, left	239
associative, right	239
associativity	238
Backus-Naur Form	229
BNF	229
comments, in rules	231
default, action	237
definition section	230, 238
definitions section	231

error action . . . . .	230
error, recovery . . . . .	240-241
error, token . . . . .	240-241
LALR. . . . .	229
left-to-right parsing . . . . .	229
library . . . . .	229
library, yacc . . . . .	229
LR parsing . . . . .	229
nonassociative . . . . .	240
nonterminals . . . . .	231
parse actions . . . . .	230
precedence . . . . .	239-240
production . . . . .	231
push-down list . . . . .	230
reduce . . . . .	230, 238
reduction . . . . .	231
right . . . . .	240
rule format . . . . .	231
rule, actions . . . . .	233
rule, format . . . . .	232
rule, sections . . . . .	231
rule, style . . . . .	232
rule, type . . . . .	236
rule, values . . . . .	233
rules section . . . . .	230
rules, precedence . . . . .	240
section, definition . . . . .	230
section, rules . . . . .	230
shift . . . . .	230, 238
shift-reduce conflicts . . . . .	238
stack. . . . .	230
start symbol . . . . .	230-231
terminals . . . . .	231
token definition . . . . .	231
token, definition . . . . .	236
token, error . . . . .	240-241
token, value. . . . .	234
tutorial . . . . .	225
type, of nonterminal. . . . .	236
user code . . . . .	231
value, qualification . . . . .	236
yyerrok . . . . .	241
yyparse . . . . .	229
{ } . . . . .	230
yes. . . . .	1159
yn() . . . . .	792

## Z

zcat . . . . .	1160
zerop(). . . . .	1160
⌀ . . . . .	45
. . . . .	31, 73, 755, 994
. . . . .	69, 755, 994



# **MARK WILLIAMS COMPANY ("MWC")**

## **Software License Agreement**

YOU SHOULD CAREFULLY READ THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT BEFORE BREAKING THE SEAL ON THE DISKETTE ENVELOPE. BREAKING THE SEAL INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THEM, YOU SHOULD PROMPTLY RETURN THE DISKETTE UNOPENED, AND YOUR MONEY WILL BE REFUNDÉD.

MWC provides this software and licenses its use to you. You assume responsibility for the selection of the software to achieve your intended results, and for the installation, use and results obtained from it.

### **LICENSE**

MWC grants you a license only to: (a) use the software on a single machine; and (b) copy the software into any machine readable form for backup purposes in support of your use of the software on the single machine.

As an exception to the foregoing paragraph, we grant you the right to include portions of the MWC Runtime Library (as defined below) in software programs that you develop, called Composite Programs, and to use, distribute and license Composite Programs to third parties without payment of any fee. You shall, however, include in each Composite Program, and on the exterior label of every diskette, a copyright notice in this form: "Portions of this program, copyright 1982, 1992, Mark Williams Company." As an express condition to the use of the software, you agree to indemnify and hold MWC harmless from all claims by you and third parties arising out of the use of any Composite Program. Any portion of the Runtime Library merged into another program will continue to be subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement. "Runtime Library" is defined as the set of copyrighted MWC language subroutines provided with the software, a portion of which must be linked to and become part of a Composite Program for that Program to run on a computer.

You may not transfer the software, or any copy, modification or merged portion, in whole or in part, except as expressly provided herein.

### **TERM**

You may terminate the license at any time by destroying the software together with all copies, modifications and merged portions in any form. It will also terminate upon conditions set forth elsewhere in this Agreement or if you fail to comply with any terms or conditions of this Agreement. You agree upon termination to destroy the software together with all copies, modifications and merged portions in any form. The license shall terminate upon termination of this Agreement.

### **LIMITED WARRANTY**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH IN THE NEXT PARAGRAPH, THE PROGRAM IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU (AND NOT MWC OR ANY AUTHORIZED MWC DEALER) ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. MWC DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE.

MWC warrants to the original licensee that the diskettes on which the software program is recorded is free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of 60 days from the delivery date as evidenced by a copy of your receipt. Your exclusive remedy is the return of the diskettes as described below.

IN NO EVENT WILL MWC BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS OR OTHER INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE EVEN IF MWC OR AN AUTHORIZED MWC DEALER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY ANY OTHER PARTY.

### **MISCELLANEOUS**

If you are dissatisfied with the diskette[s] for any reason whatsoever (including if the diskettes are defective in material or workmanship), you may return them for replacement or refund of amounts previously paid them so long as the return is made within 60 days after purchase, and is accompanied by (a) a Return Authorization Number form Mark Williams Company, (b) your receipt, (c) an affirmative statement that you have not retained any copies of the software (including back-up copies) and (d) a statement as to the reason for the return.

You may not sublicense, assign or transfer the license to the software except as expressly provided in this Agreement. Any attempt otherwise to sublicense, assign or transfer any of the rights, duties or obligations hereunder is void. This Agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement, you may contact MWC by writing to the Mark Williams Company, 60 Revere Drive, Northbrook, IL 60062.

YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS AGREEMENT, UNDERSTAND IT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ITS TERMS AND CONDITIONS. YOU FURTHER AGREE THAT IT IS THE COMPLETE AND EXCLUSIVE STATEMENT OF THE AGREEMENT BETWEEN US WHICH SUPERSEDES ANY PROPOSAL OR PRIOR AGREEMENT, ORAL OR WRITTEN, AND ANY OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN US RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER OF THIS AGREEMENT.

# COHERENT™



Mark Williams  
Company